



Office de la Propriété
Intellectuelle
du Canada

Un organisme
d'Industrie Canada

Canadian
Intellectual Property
Office

An agency of
Industry Canada

CA 2697454 A1 2009/03/12

(21) **2 697 454**

(12) **DEMANDE DE BREVET CANADIEN
CANADIAN PATENT APPLICATION**

(13) **A1**

(86) Date de dépôt PCT/PCT Filing Date: 2008/08/27
(87) Date publication PCT/PCT Publication Date: 2009/03/12
(85) Entrée phase nationale/National Entry: 2010/02/22
(86) N° demande PCT/PCT Application No.: US 2008/010148
(87) N° publication PCT/PCT Publication No.: 2009/032124
(30) Priorité/Priority: 2007/08/29 (US60/968,698)

(51) Cl.Int./Int.Cl. *C07D 401/04* (2006.01),
A61K 31/513 (2006.01), *A61P 31/12* (2006.01),
C07D 403/04 (2006.01)

(71) Demandeur/Applicant:
SCHERING CORPORATION, US

(72) Inventeurs/Inventors:
ANILKUMAR, GOPINADHAN N., US;
BENNETT, FRANK, US;
CHAN, TIN-YAU, US;
CHEN, KEVIN X., US;
SANNIGRAHI, MOUSUMI, US;
VELAZQUEZ, FRANCISCO, US;

...

(74) Agent: OGILVY RENAULT LLP/S.E.N.C.R.L., S.R.L.

(54) Titre : DERIVES D'INDOLE SUBSTITUES ET PROCEDES D'UTILISATION ASSOCIES

(54) Title: 2-CARBOXY SUBSTITUTED INDOLE DERIVATIVES AND METHODS OF USE THEREOF

(57) **Abrégé/Abstract:**

The present invention relates to Substituted Indole Derivatives, compositions comprising at least one Substituted Indole Derivative, and methods of using these Substituted Indole Derivatives for treating or preventing a viral infection or a virus-related disorder in a patient.



(72) **Inventeurs(suite)/Inventors(continued)**: VENKATRAMAN, SRIKANTH, US; ZENG, QINGBEI, US; DUCA, JOSE S., US; LESBURG, CHARLES A., US; KOZLOWSKI, JOSEPH A., US; NJOROGI, F. GEORGE, US; ROSENBLUM, STUART B., US; SHIH, NENG-YANG, US

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
12 March 2009 (12.03.2009)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2009/032124 A1

(51) International Patent Classification:

C07D 401/04 (2006.01) **A61K 31/513** (2006.01)
C07D 403/04 (2006.01) **A61P 31/12** (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/US2008/010148

[US/US]; 1066 Stuart Road, Princeton, New Jersey 08540 (US). **NJOROGE, F., George** [US/US]; 11 Softwood Way, Warren, New Jersey 07059 (US). **ROSENBLUM, Stuart, B.** [US/US]; 16 Steven Terrace, West Orange, New Jersey 07052 (US). **SHIH, Neng-Yang** [US/US]; 2 Tyler Road, Lexington, Massachusetts 02420 (US).

(22) International Filing Date: 27 August 2008 (27.08.2008)

(74) Agents: **BERGMAN, Jeffrey, P.** et al.; Schering Corporation, 2000 Galloping Hill Road, Patent Dept. K-6-1 1990, Kenilworth, New Jersey 07033 (US).

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:

60/968,698 29 August 2007 (29.08.2007) US

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): **SCHERING CORPORATION** [US/US]; 2000 Galloping Hill Road, Kenilworth, New Jersey 07033 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): **ANILKUMAR, Gopinadhan, N.** [IN/US]; 560 Darwin Boulevard, Edison, New Jersey 08820 (US). **BENNETT, Frank** [GB/US]; 38 Keith Jeffries Avenue, Cranford, New Jersey 07016 (US). **CHAN, Tin-Yau** [CN/US]; 26 Barlow Road, Edison, New Jersey 08817 (US). **CHEN, Kevin, X.** [US/US]; 9 Gloria Avenue, Edison, New Jersey 08820 (US). **SANNI-GRAHI, Mousumi** [CA/US]; 2 New Providence Avenue, Summit, New Jersey 07901 (US). **VELAZQUEZ, Francisco** [MX/US]; 4 Alexandra Way, Clinton, New Jersey 08809 (US). **VENKATRAMAN, Srikanth** [IN/US]; 35 Roanoke Street, Woodbridge, New Jersey 07095 (US). **ZENG, Qingbei** [CN/US]; 509 Cinder Road, Edison, New Jersey 08820 (US). **DUCA, Jose, S.** [AR/US]; 5 Tuxedo Place, Cranford, New Jersey 07016 (US). **LESBURG, Charles, A.** [US/US]; 40 Elmwood Place, Short Hills, New Jersey 07078 (US). **KOZLOWSKI, Joseph, A.**

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RS, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Declaration under Rule 4.17:

— as to the applicant's entitlement to claim the priority of the earlier application (Rule 4.17(iii))

Published:

— with international search report

(54) Title: SUBSTITUTED INDOLE DERIVATIVES AND METHODS OF USE THEREOF

(57) Abstract: The present invention relates to Substituted Indole Derivatives, compositions comprising at least one Substituted Indole Derivative, and methods of using these Substituted Indole Derivatives for treating or preventing a viral infection or a virus-related disorder in a patient.

WO 2009/032124 A1

2-CARBOXY SUBSTITUTED INDOLE DERIVATIVES AND METHODS OF USE
THEREOF

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives, compositions comprising at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative, and methods of using the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives for treating or preventing a viral infection or a virus-related disorder in a patient.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

HCV is a (+)-sense single-stranded RNA virus that has been implicated as the major causative agent in non-A, non-B hepatitis (NANBH). NANBH is distinguished from other types of viral-induced liver disease, such as hepatitis A virus (HAV), hepatitis B virus (HBV), hepatitis delta virus (HDV), as well as from other forms of liver disease such as alcoholism and primary biliary cirrhosis.

Hepatitis C virus is a member of the hepacivirus genus in the family Flaviviridae. It is the major causative agent of non-A, non-B viral hepatitis and is the major cause of transfusion-associated hepatitis and accounts for a significant proportion of hepatitis cases worldwide. Although acute HCV infection is often asymptomatic, nearly 80% of cases resolve to chronic hepatitis. About 60% of patients develop liver disease with various clinical outcomes ranging from an asymptomatic carrier state to chronic active hepatitis and liver cirrhosis (occurring in about 20% of patients), which is strongly associated with the development of hepatocellular carcinoma (occurring in about 1-5% of patients). The World Health Organization estimates that 170 million people are chronically infected with HCV, with an estimated 4 million living in the United States.

HCV has been implicated in cirrhosis of the liver and in induction of hepatocellular carcinoma. The prognosis for patients suffering from HCV infection remains poor as HCV infection is more difficult to treat than other forms of hepatitis. Current data indicates a four-year survival rate of below 50% for patients suffering from cirrhosis and a five-year survival rate of below 30% for patients diagnosed with localized resectable hepatocellular carcinoma. Patients diagnosed with localized unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma fare even worse, having a five-year survival rate of less than 1%.

2

HCV is an enveloped RNA virus containing a single-stranded positive-sense RNA genome approximately 9.5 kb in length. The RNA genome contains a 5'-nontranslated region (5' NTR) of 341 nucleotides, a large open reading frame (ORF) encoding a single polypeptide of 3,010 to 3,040 amino acids, and a 3'-nontranslated region (3'-NTR) of variable length of about 230 nucleotides. HCV is similar in amino acid sequence and genome organization to flaviviruses and pestiviruses, and therefore HCV has been classified as a third genus of the family Flaviviridae.

The 5' NTR, one of the most conserved regions of the viral genome, contains an internal ribosome entry site (IRES) which plays a pivotal role in the initiation of translation of the viral polyprotein. A single long open reading frame encodes a polyprotein, which is co- or post-translationally processed into structural (core, E1, E2 and p7) and nonstructural (NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A, and NS5B) viral proteins by either cellular or viral proteinases. The 3' NTR consists of three distinct regions: a variable region of about 38 nucleotides following the stop codon of the polyprotein, a polyuridine tract of variable length with interspersed substitutions of cytidines, and 98 nucleotides (nt) at the very 3' end which are highly conserved among various HCV isolates. By analogy to other plus-strand RNA viruses, the 3'-NTR is thought to play an important role in viral RNA synthesis. The order of the genes within the genome is: NH₂-C-E1-E2-p7-NS2-NS3-NS4A-NS4B-NS5A-NS5B-COOH.

Processing of the structural proteins core (C), envelope protein 1 and (E1, E2), and the p7 region is mediated by host signal peptidases. In contrast, maturation of the nonstructural (NS) region is accomplished by two viral enzymes. The HCV polyprotein is first cleaved by a host signal peptidase generating the structural proteins C/E1, E1/E2, E2/p7, and p7/NS2. The NS2-3 proteinase, which is a metalloprotease, then cleaves at the NS2/NS3 junction. The NS3/4A proteinase complex (NS3 being a serine protease and NS4A acting as a cofactor of the NS3 protease), is then responsible for processing all the remaining cleavage junctions. RNA helicase and NTPase activities have also been identified in the NS3 protein. One-third of the NS3 protein functions as a protease, and the remaining two-thirds of the molecule acts as the helicase/ATPase that is thought to be involved in HCV replication. NS5A may be phosphorylated and acts as a putative cofactor of NS5B. The fourth viral enzyme, NS5B, is a membrane-associated RNA-dependent RNA polymerase (RdRp) and a key component responsible for replication of the viral RNA genome. NS5B contains the "GDD" sequence motif, which is highly conserved among all RdRps characterized to date.

Replication of HCV is thought to occur in membrane-associated replication complexes. Within these, the genomic plus-strand RNA is transcribed into minus-strand RNA, which in turn can be used as a template for synthesis of progeny genomic plus-strands. At least two viral enzymes appear to be involved in this reaction: the NS3 helicase/NTPase, and the NS5B RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. While the role of NS3 in RNA replication is less clear, NS5B is the key enzyme responsible for synthesis of progeny RNA strands. Using recombinant baculoviruses to express NS5B in insect cells and a synthetic nonviral RNA as a substrate, two enzymatic activities have been identified as being associated with it: a primer-dependent RdRp and a terminal transferase (TNTase) activity. It was subsequently confirmed and further characterized through the use of the HCV RNA genome as a substrate. Other studies have shown that NS5B with a C-terminal 21 amino-acid truncation expressed in *Escherichia coli* is also active for *in vitro* RNA synthesis. On certain RNA templates, NS5B has been shown to catalyze RNA synthesis via a *de novo* initiation mechanism, which has been postulated to be the mode of viral replication *in vivo*. Templates with single-stranded 3' termini, especially those containing a 3'-terminal cytidylate moiety, have been found to direct *de novo* synthesis efficiently. There has also been evidence for NS5B to utilize di- or tri-nucleotides as short primers to initiate replication.

It is well-established that persistent infection of HCV is related to chronic hepatitis, and as such, inhibition of HCV replication is a viable strategy for the prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma. Present treatment approaches for HCV infection suffer from poor efficacy and unfavorable side-effects and there is currently a strong effort directed to the discovery of HCV replication inhibitors that are useful for the treatment and prevention of HCV related disorders. New approaches currently under investigation include the development of prophylactic and therapeutic vaccines, the identification of interferons with improved pharmacokinetic characteristics, and the discovery of agents designed to inhibit the function of three major viral proteins: protease, helicase and polymerase. In addition, the HCV RNA genome itself, particularly the IRES element, is being actively exploited as an antiviral target using antisense molecules and catalytic ribozymes.

Particular therapies for HCV infection include α -interferon monotherapy and combination therapy comprising α -interferon and ribavirin. These therapies have been shown to be effective in some patients with chronic HCV infection. The use of antisense oligonucleotides for treatment of HCV infection has also been proposed as has the use of free

bile acids, such as ursodeoxycholic acid and chenodeoxycholic acid, and conjugated bile acids, such as tauroursodeoxycholic acid. Phosphonoformic acid esters have also been proposed as potentially for the treatment of various viral infections including HCV. Vaccine development, however, has been hampered by the high degree of viral strain heterogeneity and immune evasion and the lack of protection against reinfection, even with the same inoculum.

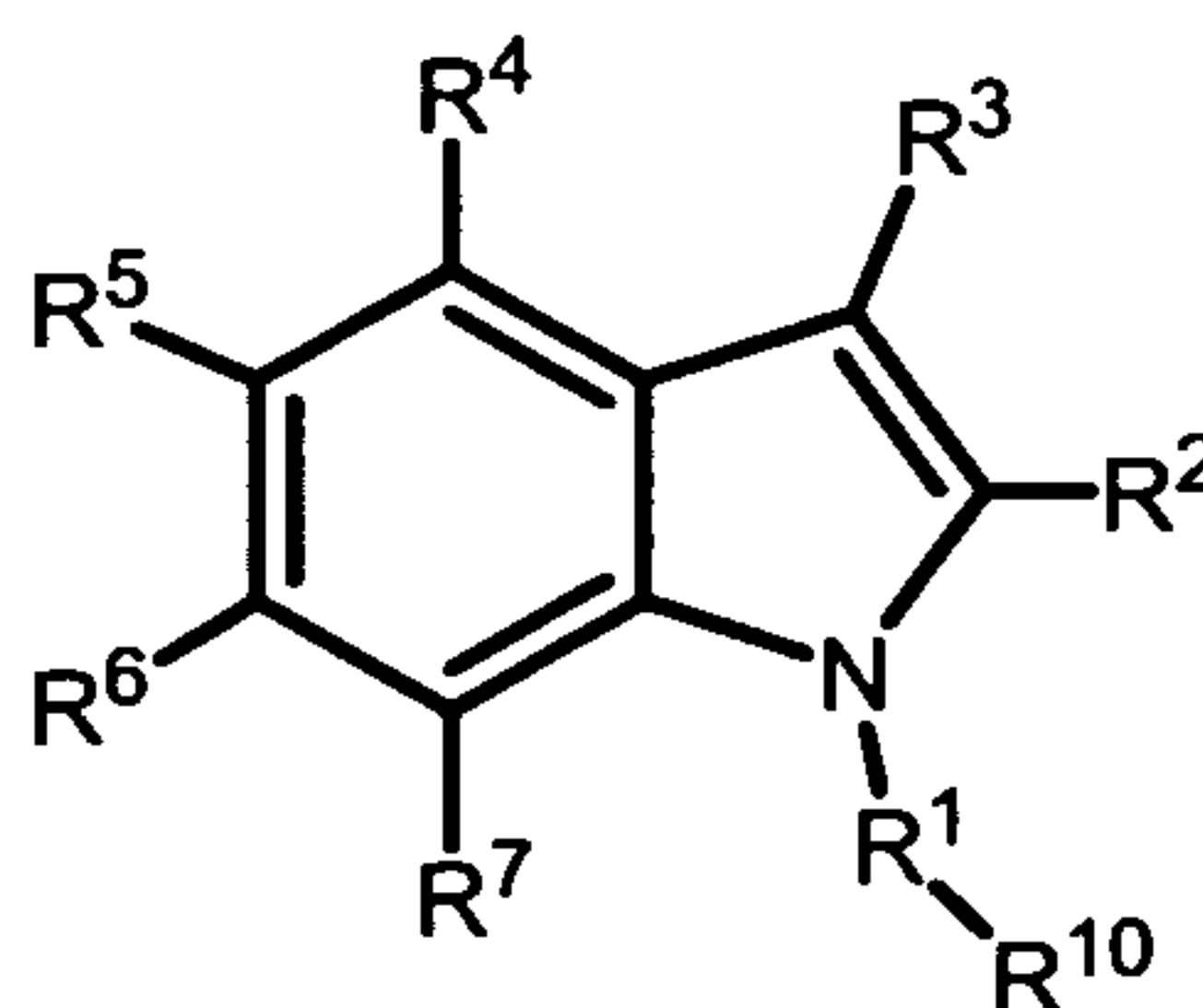
The development of small-molecule inhibitors directed against specific viral targets has become a major focus of anti-HCV research. The determination of crystal structures for NS3 protease, NS3 RNA helicase, and NS5B polymerase has provided important structural insights that should assist in the rational design of specific inhibitors.

NS5B, the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, is an important and attractive target for small-molecule inhibitors. Studies with pestiviruses have shown that the small molecule compound VP32947 (3-(((2-dipropylamino)ethyl)thio]-5H-1,2,4-triazino[5,6-b]indole) is a potent inhibitor of pestivirus replication and most likely inhibits the NS5B enzyme since resistant strains are mutated in this gene. Inhibition of RdRp activity by (-)- β -L-2',3'-dideoxy-3'-thiacytidine 5'-triphosphate (3TC; lamivudine triphosphate) and phosphonoacetic acid also has been observed.

Despite the intensive effort directed at the treatment and prevention of HCV and related viral infections, there exists a need in the art for non-peptide, small-molecule compounds having desirable or improved physicochemical properties that are useful for inhibiting viruses and treating viral infections and virus-related disorders.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

In one aspect, the present invention provides compounds of formula (I):



(I)

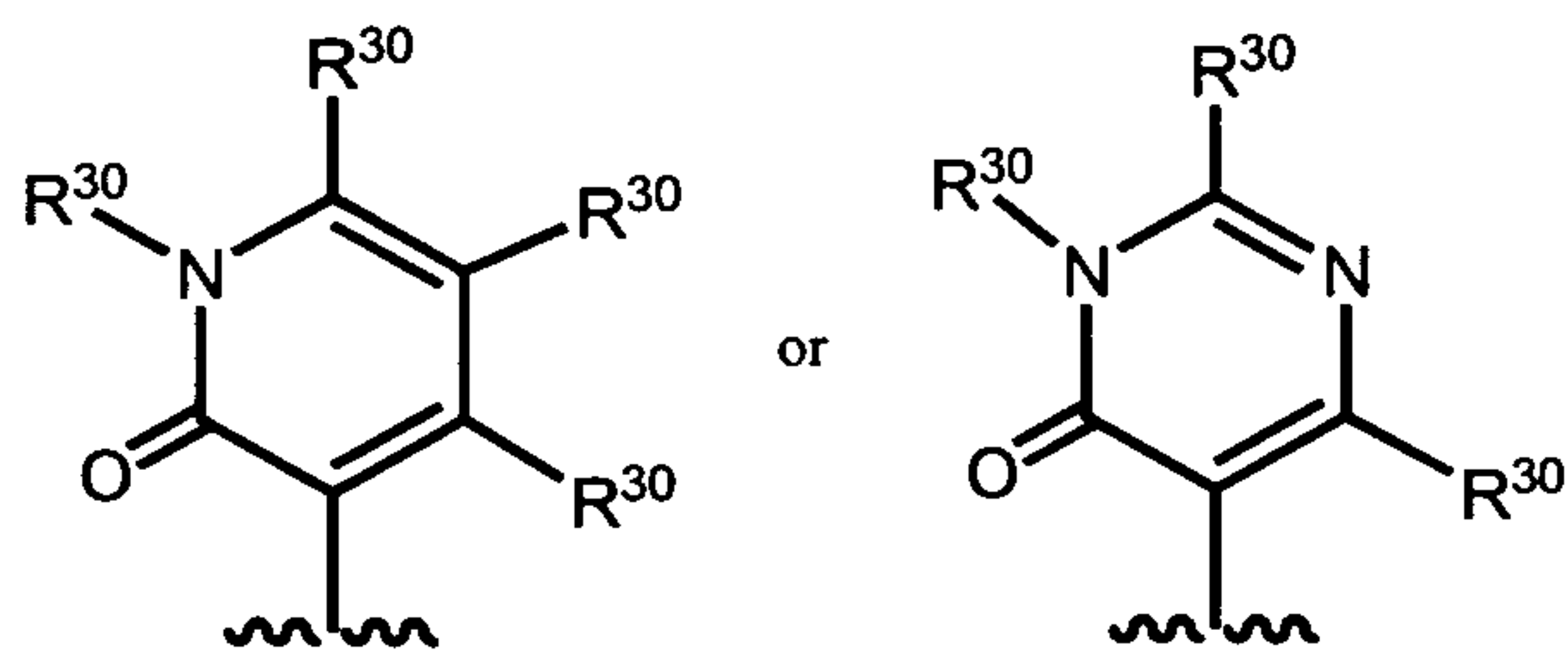
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, esters and prodrugs thereof, wherein:

5

R^1 is a bond, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-O-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-N(R^9)-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-CH=CH-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C\equiv C-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$;

R^2 is $-C(O)R^9$, $-C(O)OR^9$, $-C(O)OCH_2OR^9$, $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)C(=NR^9)NR^9$, alkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, wherein an aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl or heteroaryl, group can be optionally substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are the same or different, and are selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl, halo, $-OH$, $-OR^9$, $-CN$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ and $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

R^3 is:



R^4 , R^5 , R^6 and R^7 are each, independently, H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl, halo, $-OH$, $-OR^9$, $-CN$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ or $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

each occurrence of R^8 is independently H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

each occurrence of R^9 is independently H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -O-alkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -N(alkyl)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

6

R^{10} is H, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl, heteroaryl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl or heteroaryl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl, halo, -OH, $-OR^9$, -CN, $-NO_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ and $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$, such that when R^1 is a bond, R^{10} is not H;

each occurrence of R^{11} is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, heteroaryl, haloalkyl, hydroxy or hydroxyalkyl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl or heteroaryl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from -H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl, halo, -OH, $-OR^9$, -CN, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2alkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2cycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2aryl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ and $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

each occurrence of R^{12} is independently H, halo, $-N(R^9)_2$, $-OR^9$, alkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl or heterocycloalkenyl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl or heterocycloalkenyl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from alkyl, halo, haloalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, -OH, -CN, $-C(O)alkyl$, $-C(O)Oalkyl$, $-C(O)NHalkyl$, $-C(O)N(alkyl)_2$, -O-alkyl, $-NH_2$, $-NH(alkyl)$, $-N(alkyl)_2$, $-NHC(O)alkyl$, $-NHSO_2alkyl$, $-SO_2alkyl$ or $-SO_2NH-alkyl$, or two R^{12} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or C=O group;

each occurrence of R^{20} is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl, or both R^{20} groups and the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a cycloalkyl, cycloheteroalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl group wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloheteroalkyl,

aryl or heteroaryl group can be substituted with up to 4 groups, which are each independently selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, halo, -OH, -OR⁹, -CN, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-haloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-hydroxyalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)R⁸, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)OR⁹, -
 5 [C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NHC(O)R⁸, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NR⁸C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NH₂SO₂R¹¹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-S(O)_pR¹¹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-SO₂N(R⁹)₂ and -SO₂N(R⁹)C(O)N(R⁹)₂;

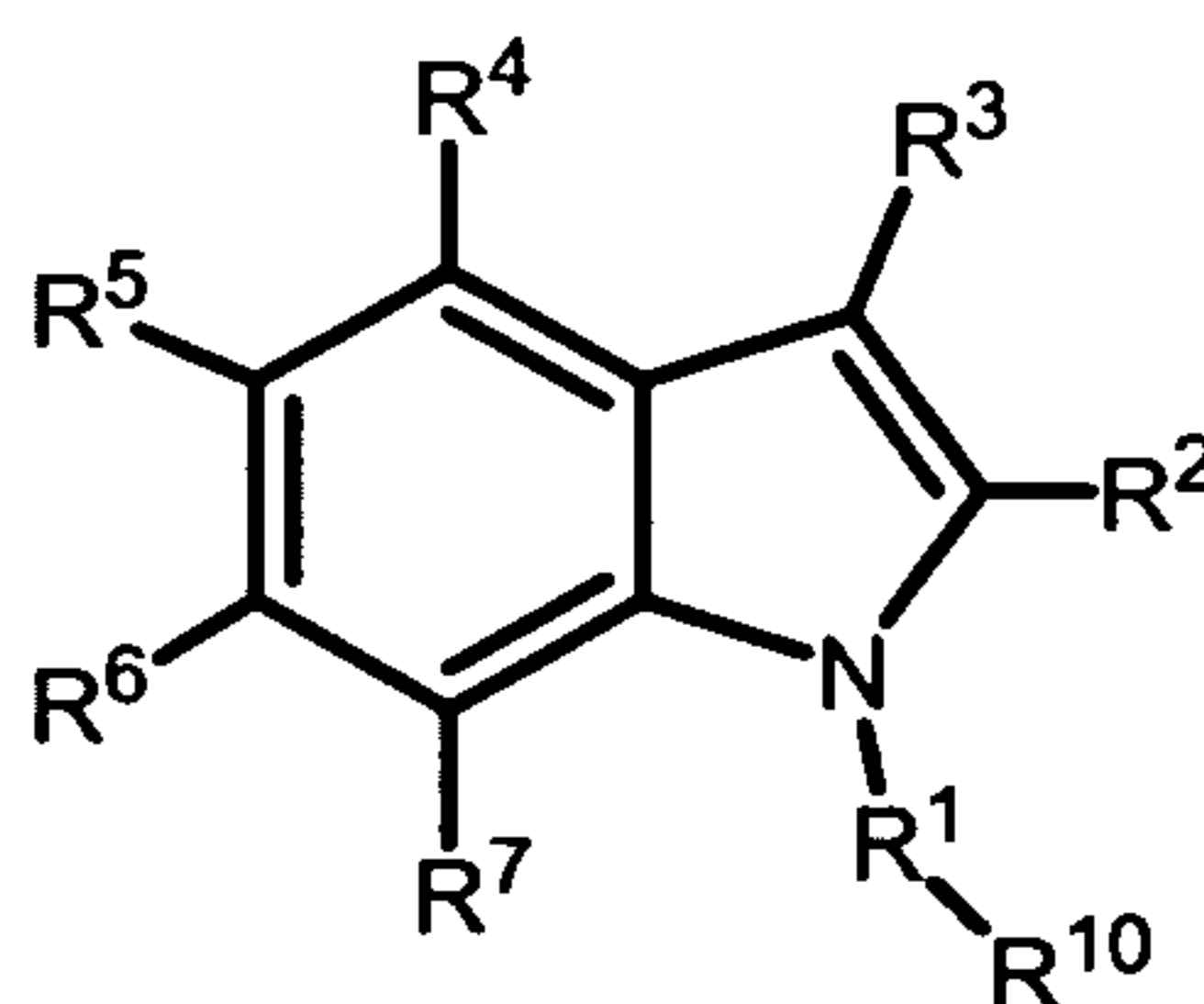
each occurrence of R³⁰ is independently H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heteroaryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-haloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-hydroxyalkyl, halo, -OH, -OR⁹, -CN, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)R⁸, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NHC(O)R⁸, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NR⁸C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NH₂SO₂R¹¹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-S(O)_pR¹¹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-SO₂N(R⁹)₂ or -SO₂N(R⁹)C(O)N(R⁹)₂,
 10 or two adjacent R³⁰ groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a -3- to 7-membered ring selected from aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl and heterocycloalkyl;

each occurrence of p is independently 0, 1 or 2;

each occurrence of q is independently an integer ranging from 0 to 4; and

each occurrence of r is independently an integer ranging from 1 to 4.

20 In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of formula (II):



(II)

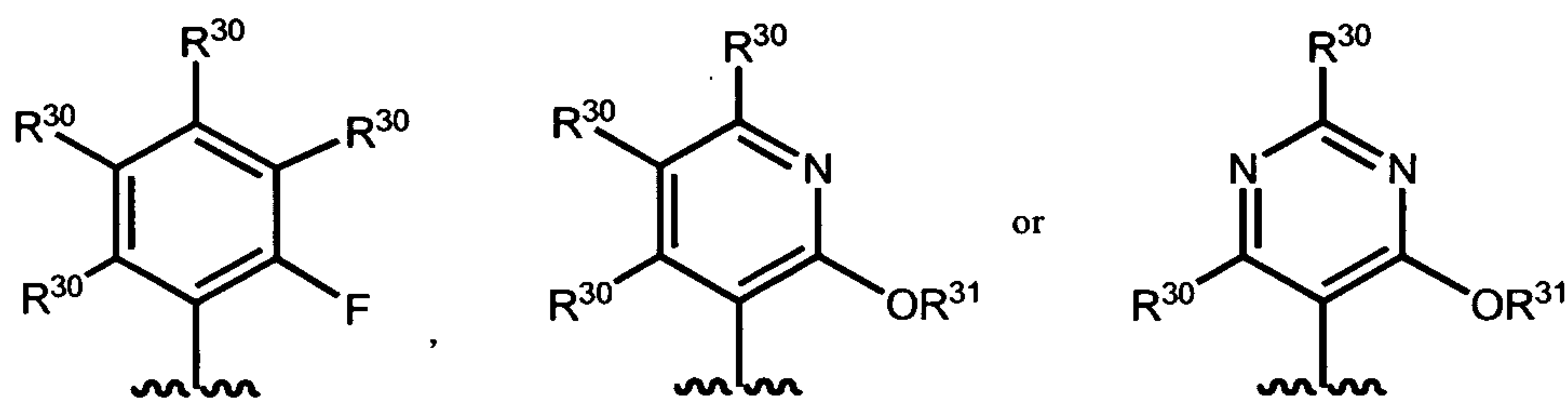
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, esters and prodrugs thereof, wherein:

25 R¹ is a bond, -[C(R¹²)₂]_r-, -[C(R¹²)₂]_r-O-[C(R¹²)₂]_q-, -[C(R¹²)₂]_r-N(R⁹)-[C(R¹²)₂]_q-, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-CH=CH-[C(R¹²)₂]_q-, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C≡C-[C(R¹²)₂]_q- or -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-SO₂-[C(R¹²)₂]_q-;
 R² is -C(O)R⁹, -C(O)OR⁹, -C(O)OCH₂OR⁹, -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)N(R⁹)C(=NR⁹)NR⁹, -alkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-aryl, -

8

[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heteroaryl or -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkenyl, wherein an aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl or heteroaryl, group can be optionally substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are the same or different, and are selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heteroaryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-haloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-hydroxyalkyl, halo, -OH, -OR⁹, -CN, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)R⁸, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NHC(O)R⁸, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NR⁸C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NHSO₂R¹¹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-S(O)_pR¹¹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-SO₂N(R⁹)₂ and -SO₂N(R⁹)C(O)N(R⁹)₂;

R³ is



R⁴, R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are each, independently, H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heteroaryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-haloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-hydroxyalkyl, halo, -OH, -OR⁹, -CN, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)R⁸, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NHC(O)R⁸, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NR⁸C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NHSO₂R¹¹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-S(O)_pR¹¹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-SO₂N(R⁹)₂ or -SO₂N(R⁹)C(O)N(R⁹)₂;

each occurrence of R⁸ is independently H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-aryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heteroaryl, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

each occurrence of R⁹ is independently H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-O-alkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-N(alkyl)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-aryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heteroaryl, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

R¹⁰ is H, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl, heteroaryl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl or heteroaryl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from -H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-

9

cycloalkyl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heteroaryl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-haloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-hydroxyalkyl}$, halo, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}^9$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NR}^8\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-S(O)}_p\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)_2$ and $-\text{SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, such that when R^1 is a bond, R^{10} is not H;

each occurrence of R^{11} is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, heteroaryl, haloalkyl, hydroxy or hydroxyalkyl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl or heteroaryl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from $-\text{H}$, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heteroaryl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-haloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-hydroxyalkyl}$, halo, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}^9$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NR}^8\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{aryl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)_2$ and $-\text{SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$;

each occurrence of R^{12} is independently H, halo, $-\text{N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{OR}^9$, alkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl or heterocycloalkenyl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl or heterocycloalkenyl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from alkyl, halo, haloalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{C(O)alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)Oalkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)NHalkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)N(alkyl)}_2$, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NH(alkyl)}$, $-\text{N(alkyl)}_2$, $-\text{NHC(O)alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{alkyl}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, or two R^{12} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or C=O group;

each occurrence of R^{20} is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl, or both R^{20} groups and the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a cycloalkyl, cycloheteroalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl group wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloheteroalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl group can be substituted with up to 4 groups, which are each independently selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, halo, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}^9$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-haloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-hydroxyalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NR}^8\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{aryl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)_2$ and $-\text{SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$;

$[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ and $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

each occurrence of R^{30} is independently selected from $-H$, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl,
 5 $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl, halo, $-OH$, $-OR^9$, $-CN$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ and $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$,
 10 or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a 3- to 7-membered ring selected from aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl and heterocycloalkyl;

R^{31} is alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl;

15 each occurrence of p is independently 0, 1 or 2;
 each occurrence of q is independently an integer ranging from 0 to 4; and
 each occurrence of r is independently an integer ranging from 1 to 4.

The compounds of formulas (I) and (II) (herein referred to collectively as the “2-
 20 Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives”) and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, esters and prodrugs thereof can be useful for treating or preventing a viral infection or a virus-related disorder in a patient.

Also provided by the invention are methods for treating or preventing a viral infection or a virus-related disorder in a patient, comprising administering to the patient an effective
 25 amount of at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative.

The present invention further provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising an effective amount of at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. The compositions can be useful for treating or preventing a viral infection or a virus-related disorder in a patient.

30 The details of the invention are set forth in the accompanying detailed description below.

Although any methods and materials similar to those described herein can be used in the practice or testing of the present invention, illustrative methods and materials are now described. Other features, objects, and advantages of the invention will be apparent from the description and the claims. All patents and publications cited in this specification are
5 incorporated herein by reference.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

In an embodiment, the present invention provides 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives, pharmaceutical compositions comprising at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted
10 Indole Derivative, and methods of using the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives for treating or preventing a viral infection or in a patient.

Definitions and Abbreviations

The terms used herein have their ordinary meaning and the meaning of such terms is
15 independent at each occurrence thereof. That notwithstanding and except where stated otherwise, the following definitions apply throughout the specification and claims. Chemical names, common names, and chemical structures may be used interchangeably to describe the same structure. If a chemical compound is referred to using both a chemical structure and a chemical name and an ambiguity exists between the structure and the name, the structure
20 predominates. These definitions apply regardless of whether a term is used by itself or in combination with other terms, unless otherwise indicated. Hence, the definition of "alkyl" applies to "alkyl" as well as the "alkyl" portions of "hydroxyalkyl," "haloalkyl," "alkoxy," etc...

As used herein, and throughout this disclosure, the following terms, unless otherwise indicated, shall be understood to have the following meanings:

25 A "patient" is a human or non-human mammal. In one embodiment, a patient is a human. In another embodiment, a patient is a non-human mammal, including, but not limited to, a monkey, dog, baboon, rhesus, mouse, rat, horse, cat or rabbit. In another embodiment, a patient is a companion animal, including but not limited to a dog, cat, rabbit, horse or ferret. In one embodiment, a patient is a dog. In another embodiment, a patient is a cat.

30 The term "alkyl" as used herein, refers to an aliphatic hydrocarbon group, wherein one of the aliphatic hydrocarbon group's hydrogen atoms is replaced with a single bond. An alkyl group can be straight or branched and can contain from about 1 to about 20 carbon atoms. In

one embodiment, an alkyl group contains from about 1 to about 12 carbon atoms. In another embodiment, an alkyl group contains from about 1 to about 6 carbon atoms. Non-limiting examples of alkyl groups include methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, sec-butyl, isobutyl, tert-butyl, n-pentyl, neopentyl, isopentyl, n-hexyl, isohexyl and neohexyl. An alkyl group may be unsubstituted or optionally substituted by one or more substituents which may be the same or different, each substituent being independently selected from the group consisting of halo, alkenyl, alkynyl, -O-aryl, aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, cyano, -OH, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -alkylene-O-alkyl, alkylthio, -NH₂, -NH(alkyl), -N(alkyl)₂, -NH-aryl, -NH-heteroaryl, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -NHC(O)NH-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NHSO₂-aryl, -NHSO₂-heteroaryl, -NH(cycloalkyl), -OC(O)-alkyl, -OC(O)-aryl, -OC(O)-cycloalkyl, -C(O)alkyl, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH and -C(O)O-alkyl. In one embodiment, an alkyl group is unsubstituted. In another embodiment, an alkyl group is a straight chain alkyl group. In another embodiment, an alkyl group is a branched alkyl group.

The term "alkenyl" as used herein, refers to an aliphatic hydrocarbon group having at least one carbon-carbon double bond, wherein one of the aliphatic hydrocarbon group's hydrogen atoms is replaced with a single bond. An alkenyl group can be straight or branched and can contain from about 2 to about 15 carbon atoms. In one embodiment, an alkenyl group contains from about 2 to about 10 carbon atoms. In another embodiment, an alkenyl group contains from about 2 to about 6 carbon atoms. Non-limiting examples of illustrative alkenyl groups include ethenyl, propenyl, n-butenyl, 3-methylbut-2-enyl, n-pentenyl, octenyl and decenyl. An alkenyl group may be unsubstituted or optionally substituted by one or more substituents which may be the same or different, each substituent being independently selected from the group consisting of halo, alkyl, alkynyl, -O-aryl, aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, cyano, -OH, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -alkylene-O-alkyl, alkylthio, -NH₂, -NH(alkyl), -N(alkyl)₂, -NH-aryl, -NH-heteroaryl, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -NHC(O)NH-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NHSO₂-aryl, -NHSO₂-heteroaryl, -NH(cycloalkyl), -OC(O)-alkyl, -OC(O)-aryl, -OC(O)-cycloalkyl, -C(O)alkyl, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH and -C(O)O-alkyl. In one embodiment, an alkenyl group is unsubstituted. In another embodiment, an alkenyl group is a straight chain alkenyl group. In another embodiment, an alkenyl group is a branched alkenyl group.

The term "alkynyl" as used herein, refers to an aliphatic hydrocarbon group having at least one carbon-carbon triple bond, wherein one of the aliphatic hydrocarbon group's hydrogen atoms is replaced with a single bond. An alkynyl group can be straight or branched

13

and can contain from about 2 to about 15 carbon atoms. In one embodiment, an alkynyl group contains from about 2 to about 10 carbon atoms. In another embodiment, an alkynyl group contains from about 2 to about 6 carbon atoms. Non-limiting examples of illustrative alkynyl groups include ethynyl, propynyl, 2-butyne and 3-methylbutynyl. An alkynyl group may be
5 unsubstituted or optionally substituted by one or more substituents which may be the same or different, each substituent being independently selected from the group consisting of halo, alkyl, alkenyl, -O-aryl, aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, cyano, -OH, -O-alkyl, -alkylene-O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -alkylthio, -NH₂, -NH(alkyl), -N(alkyl)₂, -NH-aryl, -NH-heteroaryl, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -NHC(O)NH-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NHSO₂-aryl, -NHSO₂-heteroaryl, -NH(cycloalkyl),
10 -OC(O)-alkyl, -OC(O)-aryl, -OC(O)-cycloalkyl, -C(O)alkyl, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH and -C(O)O-alkyl. In one embodiment, an alkynyl group is unsubstituted. In another embodiment, an alkynyl group is a straight chain alkynyl group. In another embodiment, an alkynyl group is a branched alkynyl group.

The term "alkylene" as used herein, refers to an alkyl group, as defined above, wherein
15 one of the alkyl group's hydrogen atoms is replaced with a bond. Illustrative examples of alkylene include, but are not limited to, -CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₂-, -CH(CH₃)CH₂CH₂-, -CH₂CH(CH₃)CH₂- and -CH₂CH₂CH(CH₃)-. In one embodiment, an alkylene group is a straight chain alkylene group. In another embodiment, an alkylene group is a branched alkylene group.

20 "Aryl" means an aromatic monocyclic or multicyclic ring system having from about 6 to about 14 ring carbon atoms. In one embodiment, an aryl group has from about 6 to about 10 ring carbon atoms. An aryl group can be optionally substituted with one or more "ring system substituents" which may be the same or different, and are as defined herein below. Non-limiting examples of illustrative aryl groups include phenyl and naphthyl. In one embodiment,
25 an aryl group is unsubstituted. In another embodiment, an aryl group is a phenyl group.

The term "cycloalkyl" as used herein, refers to a non-aromatic mono- or multicyclic ring system having from about 3 to about 10 ring carbon atoms. In one embodiment, a cycloalkyl has from about 5 to about 10 ring carbon atoms. In another embodiment, a cycloalkyl has from about 5 to about 7 ring carbon atoms. Non-limiting examples of
30 illustrative monocyclic cycloalkyls include cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl and the like. Non-limiting examples of illustrative multicyclic cycloalkyls include 1-decalinyl, norbornyl, adamantyl and the like. A cycloalkyl group can be optionally substituted with one

or more "ring system substituents" which may be the same or different, and are as defined herein below. In one embodiment, a cycloalkyl group is unsubstituted.

The term "cycloalkenyl" as used herein, refers to a non-aromatic mono- or multicyclic ring system comprising from about 3 to about 10 ring carbon atoms and containing at least one endocyclic double bond. In one embodiment, a cycloalkenyl contains from about 5 to about 10 ring carbon atoms. In another embodiment, a cycloalkenyl contains 5 or 6 ring carbon atoms. Non-limiting examples of illustrative monocyclic cycloalkenyls include cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cyclohepta-1,3-dienyl, and the like. A cycloalkenyl group can be optionally substituted with one or more "ring system substituents" which may be the same or different, and are as defined herein below. In one embodiment, a cycloalkenyl group is unsubstituted.

The term "halo" as used herein, means -F, -Cl, -Br or -I. In one embodiment, halo refers to -Cl or -F.

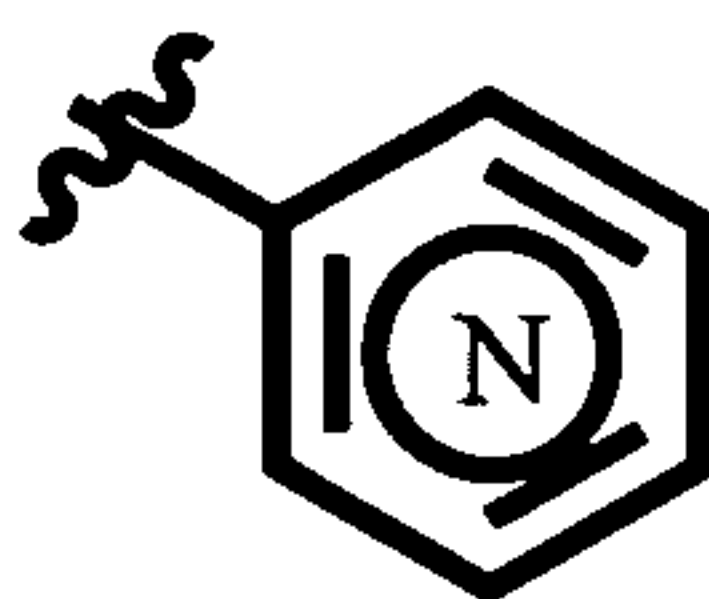
The term "haloalkyl" as used herein, refers to an alkyl group as defined above, wherein one or more of the alkyl group's hydrogen atoms has been replaced with a halogen. In one embodiment, a haloalkyl group has from 1 to 6 carbon atoms. In another embodiment, a haloalkyl group is substituted with from 1 to 3 F atoms. Non-limiting examples of illustrative haloalkyl groups include -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃, -CH₂Cl and -CCl₃.

The term "hydroxyalkyl" as used herein, refers to an alkyl group as defined above, wherein one or more of the alkyl group's hydrogen atoms has been replaced with an -OH group. In one embodiment, a hydroxyalkyl group has from 1 to 6 carbon atoms. Non-limiting examples of illustrative hydroxyalkyl groups include hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, 3-hydroxypropyl, 4-hydroxybutyl and -CH(OH)CH₂CH₃.

The term "heteroaryl" as used herein, refers to an aromatic monocyclic or multicyclic ring system comprising about 5 to about 14 ring atoms, wherein from 1 to 4 of the ring atoms is independently O, N or S and the remaining ring atoms are carbon atoms. In one embodiment, a heteroaryl group has 5 to 10 ring atoms. In another embodiment, a heteroaryl group is monocyclic and has 5 or 6 ring atoms. In another embodiment, a heteroaryl group is monocyclic and has 5 or 6 ring atoms and at least one nitrogen ring atom. A heteroaryl group can be optionally substituted by one or more "ring system substituents" which may be the same or different, and are as defined herein below. A heteroaryl group is joined via a ring carbon atom and any nitrogen atom of a heteroaryl can be optionally oxidized to the corresponding N-oxide. The term "heteroaryl" also encompasses a heteroaryl group, as defined above, which

has been fused to a benzene ring. Non-limiting examples of illustrative heteroaryls include pyridyl, pyrazinyl, furanyl, thienyl, pyrimidinyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, furazanyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, triazolyl, 1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, quinoxaliny, phthalazinyl, oxindolyl, imidazo[1,2-a]pyridinyl, imidazo[2,1-b]thiazolyl, benzofurazanyl, indolyl, azaindolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzothienyl, quinolinyl, imidazolyl, thienopyridyl, quinazolinyl, thienopyrimidyl, pyrrolopyridyl, imidazopyridyl, isoquinolinyl, benzoazaindolyl, 1,2,4-triazinyl, benzothiazolyl and the like. The term "heteroaryl" also refers to partially saturated heteroaryl moieties such as, for example, tetrahydroisoquinolyl, tetrahydroquinolyl and the like. In one embodiment, a heteroaryl group is a 6-membered heteroaryl group. In another embodiment, a heteroaryl group is a 5-membered heteroaryl group.

Unless otherwise indicated, the group:

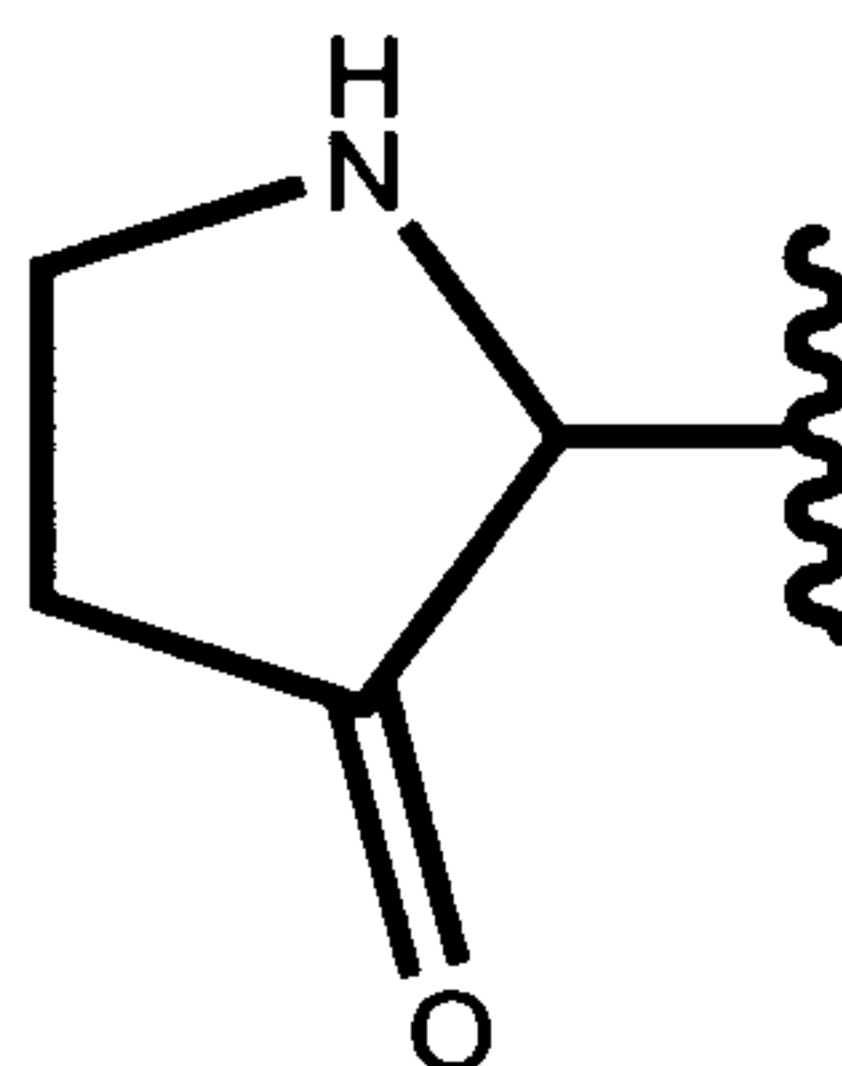


represents a 6-membered heteroaryl group containing 1 or 2 ring nitrogen atoms and no other ring heteroatoms. Examples of such a group include, but are not limited to pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyridazinyl and pyrazinyl. In one embodiment, this group has 1 ring nitrogen atom. In another embodiment, this group has 2 ring nitrogen atoms.

The term "heterocycloalkyl" as used herein, refers to a non-aromatic saturated monocyclic or multicyclic ring system comprising 3 to about 10 ring atoms, wherein from 1 to 4 of the ring atoms are independently O, S or N and the remainder of the ring atoms are carbon atoms. In one embodiment, a heterocycloalkyl group has from about 5 to about 10 ring atoms. In another embodiment, a heterocycloalkyl group has 5 or 6 ring atoms. There are no adjacent oxygen and/or sulfur atoms present in the ring system. Any -NH group in a heterocycloalkyl ring may exist protected such as, for example, as an -N(Boc), -N(CBz), -N(Tos) group and the like; such protected heterocycloalkyl groups are considered part of this invention. A heterocycloalkyl group can be optionally substituted by one or more "ring system substituents" which may be the same or different, and are as defined herein below. The nitrogen or sulfur atom of the heterocyclyl can be optionally oxidized to the corresponding N-oxide, S-oxide or S,S-dioxide. Non-limiting examples of illustrative monocyclic heterocycloalkyl rings include piperidyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidinyl, 1,4-dioxanyl,

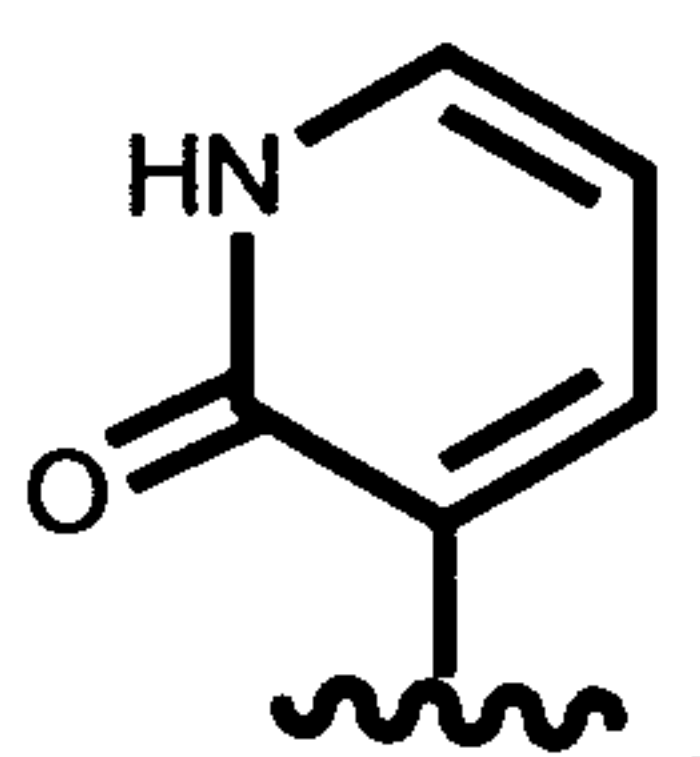
16

tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl, lactam, lactone, and the like. A ring carbon atom of a heterocycloalkyl group may be functionalized as a carbonyl group. An illustrative example of such a heterocycloalkyl group is pyrrolidonyl:



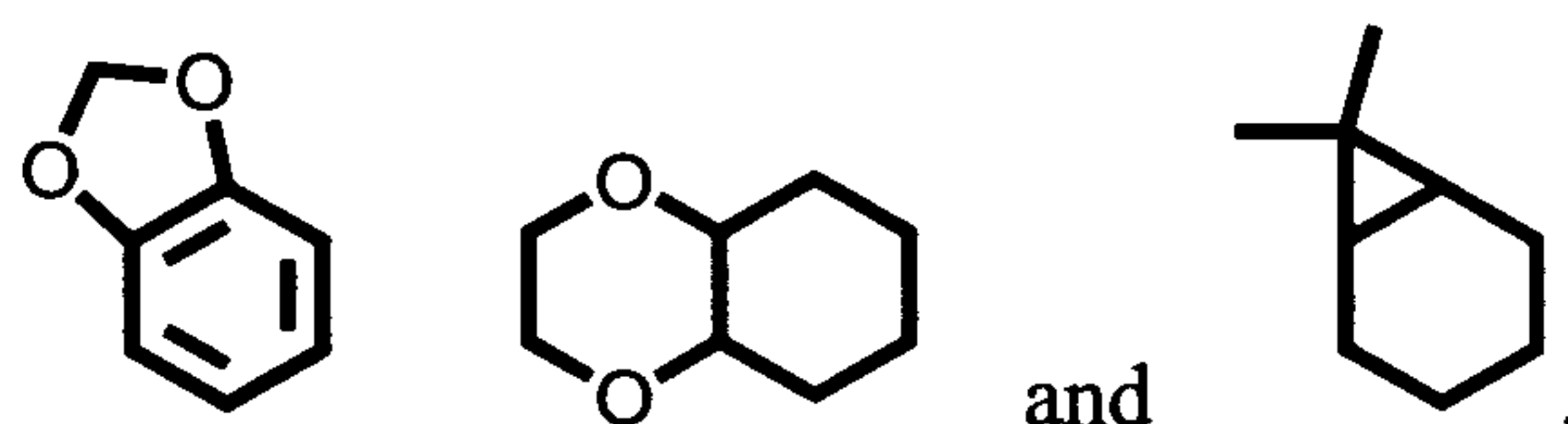
- 5 In one embodiment, a heterocycloalkyl group is a 6-membered heterocycloalkyl group. In another embodiment, a heterocycloalkyl group is a 5-membered heterocycloalkyl group.

The term "heterocycloalkenyl" as used herein, refers to a heterocycloalkyl group, as defined above, wherein the heterocycloalkyl group contains from 3 to 10 ring atoms, and at least one endocyclic carbon-carbon or carbon-nitrogen double bond. In one embodiment, a
 10 heterocycloalkenyl group has from 5 to 10 ring atoms. In another embodiment, a heterocycloalkenyl group is monocyclic and has 5 or 6 ring atoms. A heterocycloalkenyl group can optionally substituted by one or more ring system substituents, wherein "ring system substituent" is as defined above. The nitrogen or sulfur atom of the heterocycloalkenyl can be optionally oxidized to the corresponding N-oxide, S-oxide or S,S-dioxide. Non-limiting
 15 examples of illustrative heterocycloalkenyl groups include 1,2,3,4- tetrahydropyridinyl, 1,2-dihydropyridinyl, 1,4-dihydropyridinyl, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridinyl, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidinyl, 2-pyrrolinyl, 3-pyrrolinyl, 2-imidazolynyl, 2-pyrazolynyl, dihydroimidazolyl, dihydrooxazolyl, dihydrooxadiazolyl, dihydrothiazolyl, 3,4-dihydro-2H-pyranyl, dihydrofuranyl, fluorodihydrofuranyl, 7-oxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptenyl,
 20 dihydrothiophenyl, dihydrothiopyranyl, and the like. A ring carbon atom of a heterocyclenyl group may be functionalized as a carbonyl group. An illustrative example of such a heterocyclenyl group is:



- In one embodiment, a heterocycloalkenyl group is a 6-membered heterocycloalkenyl group. In
 25 another embodiment, a heterocycloalkenyl group is a 5-membered heterocycloalkenyl group.

The term "ring system substituent" as used herein, refers to a substituent group attached to an aromatic or non-aromatic ring system which, for example, replaces an available hydrogen on the ring system. Ring system substituents may be the same or different, each being independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, heteroaryl, aralkyl, alkylaryl, heteroaralkyl, heteroarylalkenyl, heteroarylalkynyl, alkylheteroaryl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -O-alkyl, -alkylene-O-alkyl, -O-aryl, aralkoxy, acyl, halo, nitro, cyano, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, aryloxy, carbonyl, aralkoxycarbonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, heteroarylsulfonyl, alkylthio, arylthio, heteroarylthio, aralkylthio, heteroaralkylthio, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, -OC(O)-alkyl, -OC(O)-aryl, -OC(O)-cycloalkyl, -C(=N-CN)-NH₂, -C(=NH)-NH₂, -C(=NH)-NH(alkyl), Y₁Y₂N-, Y₁Y₂N-alkylene-, Y₁Y₂NC(O)-, Y₁Y₂NSO₂- and -SO₂NY₁Y₂, wherein Y₁ and Y₂ can be the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, and aralkyl. "Ring system substituent" may also mean a single moiety which simultaneously replaces two available hydrogens on two adjacent carbon atoms (one H on each carbon) on a ring system. Examples of such moiety are methylene dioxy, ethylenedioxy, -C(CH₃)₂- and the like which form moieties such as, for example:



The term "substituted," as used herein, means that one or more hydrogens on the designated atom is replaced with a selection from the indicated group, provided that the designated atom's normal valency under the existing circumstances is not exceeded, and that the substitution results in a stable compound. Combinations of substituents and/or variables are permissible only if such combinations result in stable compounds. By "stable compound" or "stable structure" is meant a compound that is sufficiently robust to survive isolation to a useful degree of purity from a reaction mixture, and formulation into an efficacious therapeutic agent.

The term "optionally substituted" as used herein, means optional substitution with the specified groups, radicals or moieties.

The terms "purified", "in purified form" or "in isolated and purified form" as used herein, for a compound refers to the physical state of said compound after being isolated from

a synthetic process (e.g. from a reaction mixture), or natural source or combination thereof. Thus, the term "purified", "in purified form" or "in isolated and purified form" for a compound refers to the physical state of said compound after being obtained from a purification process or processes described herein or well known to the skilled artisan (e.g., chromatography, recrystallization and the like), in sufficient purity to be characterizable by standard analytical techniques described herein or well known to the skilled artisan.

It should also be noted that any carbon as well as heteroatom with unsatisfied valences in the text, schemes, examples and Tables herein is assumed to have the sufficient number of hydrogen atom(s) to satisfy the valences.

When a functional group in a compound is termed "protected", this means that the group is in modified form to preclude undesired side reactions at the protected site when the compound is subjected to a reaction. Suitable protecting groups will be recognized by those with ordinary skill in the art as well as by reference to standard textbooks such as, for example, T. W. Greene *et al*, *Protective Groups in organic Synthesis* (1991), Wiley, New York.

When any variable (e.g., aryl, heterocycle, R^{11} , etc.) occurs more than one time in any constituent or in Formula (I) or (II), its definition on each occurrence is independent of its definition at every other occurrence, unless otherwise noted.

Prodrugs and solvates of the compounds of the invention are also contemplated herein. A discussion of prodrugs is provided in T. Higuchi and V. Stella, *Pro-drugs as Novel Delivery Systems* (1987) 14 of the A.C.S. Symposium Series, and in *Bioreversible Carriers in Drug Design*, (1987) Edward B. Roche, ed., American Pharmaceutical Association and Pergamon Press. The term "prodrug" as used herein, refers to a compound (e.g, a drug precursor) that is transformed *in vivo* to yield a 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivative or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate or solvate of the compound. The transformation may occur by various mechanisms (e.g., by metabolic or chemical processes), such as, for example, through hydrolysis in blood. A discussion of the use of prodrugs is provided by T. Higuchi and W. Stella, "Pro-drugs as Novel Delivery Systems," Vol. 14 of the A.C.S. Symposium Series, and in *Bioreversible Carriers in Drug Design*, ed. Edward B. Roche, American Pharmaceutical Association and Pergamon Press, 1987.

For example, if a 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivative or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate or solvate of the compound contains a carboxylic acid functional group, a prodrug can comprise an ester formed by the replacement of the hydrogen atom of the acid group with

a group such as, for example, (C₁–C₈)alkyl, (C₂–C₁₂)alkanoyloxymethyl, 1-(alkanoyloxy)ethyl having from 4 to 9 carbon atoms, 1-methyl-1-(alkanoyloxy)-ethyl having from 5 to 10 carbon atoms, alkoxycarbonyloxymethyl having from 3 to 6 carbon atoms, 1-(alkoxycarbonyloxy)ethyl having from 4 to 7 carbon atoms, 1-methyl-1-(alkoxycarbonyloxy)ethyl having from 5 to 8 carbon atoms, N-(alkoxycarbonyl)aminomethyl having from 3 to 9 carbon atoms, 1-(N-(alkoxycarbonyl)amino)ethyl having from 4 to 10 carbon atoms, 3-phthalidyl, 4-crotonolactonyl, gamma-butyrolacton-4-yl, di-N,N-(C₁–C₂)alkylamino(C₂–C₃)alkyl (such as β-dimethylaminoethyl), carbamoyl-(C₁–C₂)alkyl, N,N-di(C₁–C₂)alkylcarbamoyl-(C₁–C₂)alkyl and piperidino-, pyrrolidino- or morpholino(C₂–C₃)alkyl, and the like.

Similarly, if a 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivative contains an alcohol functional group, a prodrug can be formed by the replacement of the hydrogen atom of the alcohol group with a group such as, for example, (C₁–C₆)alkanoyloxymethyl, 1-((C₁–C₆)alkanoyloxy)ethyl, 1-methyl-1-((C₁–C₆)alkanoyloxy)ethyl, (C₁–C₆)alkoxycarbonyloxymethyl, N-(C₁–C₆)alkoxycarbonylaminomethyl, succinoyl, (C₁–C₆)alkanoyl, α-amino(C₁–C₄)alkanyl, arylacyl and α-aminoacyl, or α-aminoacyl-α-aminoacyl, where each α-aminoacyl group is independently selected from the naturally occurring L-amino acids, P(O)(OH)₂, -P(O)(O(C₁–C₆)alkyl)₂ or glycosyl (the radical resulting from the removal of a hydroxyl group of the hemiacetal form of a carbohydrate), and the like.

If a 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivative incorporates an amine functional group, a prodrug can be formed by the replacement of a hydrogen atom in the amine group with a group such as, for example, R-carbonyl, RO-carbonyl, NRR'-carbonyl where R and R' are each independently (C₁–C₁₀)alkyl, (C₃–C₇) cycloalkyl, benzyl, or R-carbonyl is a natural α-aminoacyl or natural α-aminoacyl, —C(OH)C(O)OY¹ wherein Y¹ is H, (C₁–C₆)alkyl or benzyl, —C(OY²)Y³ wherein Y² is (C₁–C₄) alkyl and Y³ is (C₁–C₆)alkyl, carboxy (C₁–C₆)alkyl, amino(C₁–C₄)alkyl or mono-N— or di-N,N-(C₁–C₆)alkylaminoalkyl, —C(Y⁴)Y⁵ wherein Y⁴ is H or methyl and Y⁵ is mono-N— or di-N,N-(C₁–C₆)alkylamino morpholino, piperidin-1-yl or pyrrolidin-1-yl, and the like.

One or more compounds of the invention may exist in unsolvated as well as solvated forms with pharmaceutically acceptable solvents such as water, ethanol, and the like, and it is intended that the invention embrace both solvated and unsolvated forms. "Solvate" means a physical association of a compound of this invention with one or more solvent molecules. This

physical association involves varying degrees of ionic and covalent bonding, including hydrogen bonding. In certain instances the solvate will be capable of isolation, for example when one or more solvent molecules are incorporated in the crystal lattice of the crystalline solid. "Solvate" encompasses both solution-phase and isolatable solvates. Non-limiting
5 examples of illustrative solvates include ethanolates, methanolates, and the like. "Hydrate" is a solvate wherein the solvent molecule is H₂O.

One or more compounds of the invention may optionally be converted to a solvate. Preparation of solvates is generally known. Thus, for example, M. Caira *et al*, *J. Pharmaceutical Sci.*, 93(3), 601-611 (2004) describe the preparation of the solvates of the
10 antifungal fluconazole in ethyl acetate as well as from water. Similar preparations of solvates, hemisolvate, hydrates and the like are described by E. C. van Tonder *et al*, *AAPS PharmSciTech.*, 5(1), article 12 (2004); and A. L. Bingham *et al*, *Chem. Commun.*, 603-604 (2001). A typical, non-limiting, process involves dissolving the inventive compound in desired amounts of the desired solvent (organic or water or mixtures thereof) at a higher than ambient
15 temperature, and cooling the solution at a rate sufficient to form crystals which are then isolated by standard methods. Analytical techniques such as, for example I. R. spectroscopy, show the presence of the solvent (or water) in the crystals as a solvate (or hydrate).

The term "effective amount" or "therapeutically effective amount" is meant to describe an amount of compound or a composition of the present invention that is effective to treat or
20 prevent a viral infection or a virus-related disorder.

Metabolic conjugates, such as glucuronides and sulfates which can undergo reversible conversion to the 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivatives are contemplated in the present invention.

The 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivatives may form salts, and all such salts are contemplated within the scope of this invention. Reference to a 2,3-Substituted Indole
25 Derivative herein is understood to include reference to salts thereof, unless otherwise indicated. The term "salt(s)", as employed herein, denotes acidic salts formed with inorganic and/or organic acids, as well as basic salts formed with inorganic and/or organic bases. In addition, when a 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivative contains both a basic moiety, such as, but not limited to a pyridine or imidazole, and an acidic moiety, such as, but not limited to a carboxylic acid,
30 zwitterions ("inner salts") may be formed and are included within the term "salt(s)" as used herein. Pharmaceutically acceptable (i.e., non-toxic, physiologically acceptable) salts are preferred, although other salts are also useful. Salts of the compounds of the Formula I may be

21

formed, for example, by reacting a 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivative with an amount of acid or base, such as an equivalent amount, in a medium such as one in which the salt precipitates or in an aqueous medium followed by lyophilization.

Exemplary acid addition salts include acetates, ascorbates, benzoates, benzenesulfonates, bisulfates, borates, butyrates, citrates, camphorates, camphorsulfonates, fumarates, hydrochlorides, hydrobromides, hydroiodides, lactates, maleates, methanesulfonates, naphthalenesulfonates, nitrates, oxalates, phosphates, propionates, salicylates, succinates, sulfates, tartarates, thiocyanates, toluenesulfonates (also known as tosylates,) and the like. Additionally, acids which are generally considered suitable for the formation of pharmaceutically useful salts from basic pharmaceutical compounds are discussed, for example, by P. Stahl *et al*, Camille G. (eds.) *Handbook of Pharmaceutical Salts. Properties, Selection and Use*. (2002) Zurich: Wiley-VCH; S. Berge *et al*, *Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences* (1977) 66(1) 1-19; P. Gould, *International J. of Pharmaceutics* (1986) 33 201-217; Anderson *et al*, *The Practice of Medicinal Chemistry* (1996), Academic Press, New York; and in *The Orange Book* (Food & Drug Administration, Washington, D.C. on their website). These disclosures are incorporated herein by reference thereto.

Exemplary basic salts include ammonium salts, alkali metal salts such as sodium, lithium, and potassium salts, alkaline earth metal salts such as calcium and magnesium salts, salts with organic bases (for example, organic amines) such as dicyclohexylamines, t-butyl amines, choline, and salts with amino acids such as arginine, lysine and the like. Basic nitrogen-containing groups may be quarternized with agents such as lower alkyl halides (e.g. methyl, ethyl, and butyl chlorides, bromides and iodides), dialkyl sulfates (e.g. dimethyl, diethyl, and dibutyl sulfates), long chain halides (e.g. decyl, lauryl, and stearyl chlorides, bromides and iodides), aralkyl halides (e.g. benzyl and phenethyl bromides), and others.

All such acid salts and base salts are intended to be pharmaceutically acceptable salts within the scope of the invention and all acid and base salts are considered equivalent to the free forms of the corresponding compounds for purposes of the invention.

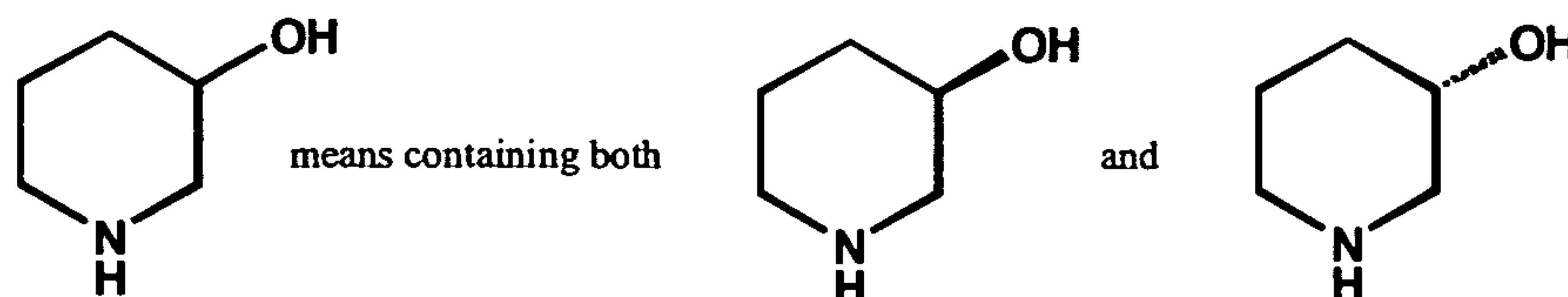
Pharmaceutically acceptable esters of the present compounds include the following groups: (1) carboxylic acid esters obtained by esterification of the hydroxy groups, in which the non-carbonyl moiety of the carboxylic acid portion of the ester grouping is selected from straight or branched chain alkyl (for example, acetyl, n-propyl, t-butyl, or n-butyl), alkoxyalkyl (for example, methoxymethyl), aralkyl (for example, benzyl), aryloxyalkyl (for example,

phenoxymethyl), aryl (for example, phenyl optionally substituted with, for example, halogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, or C₁₋₄alkoxy or amino); (2) sulfonate esters, such as alkyl- or aralkylsulfonyl (for example, methanesulfonyl); (3) amino acid esters (for example, L-valyl or L-isoleucyl); (4) phosphonate esters and (5) mono-, di- or triphosphate esters. The phosphate esters may be further esterified by, for example, a C₁₋₂₀ alcohol or reactive derivative thereof, or by a 2,3-di (C₆₋₂₄)acyl glycerol.

The 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivatives may contain asymmetric or chiral centers, and, therefore, exist in different stereoisomeric forms. It is intended that all stereoisomeric forms of the 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivatives as well as mixtures thereof, including racemic mixtures, form part of the present invention. In addition, the present invention embraces all geometric and positional isomers. For example, if a 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivative incorporates a double bond or a fused ring, both the cis- and trans-forms, as well as mixtures, are embraced within the scope of the invention.

Diastereomeric mixtures can be separated into their individual diastereomers on the basis of their physical chemical differences by methods well known to those skilled in the art, such as, for example, by chromatography and/or fractional crystallization. Enantiomers can be separated by converting the enantiomeric mixture into a diastereomeric mixture by reaction with an appropriate optically active compound (e.g., chiral auxiliary such as a chiral alcohol or Mosher's acid chloride), separating the diastereomers and converting (e.g., hydrolyzing) the individual diastereomers to the corresponding pure enantiomers. Also, some of the 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivatives may be atropisomers (e.g., substituted biaryls) and are considered as part of this invention. Enantiomers can also be separated by use of chiral HPLC column.

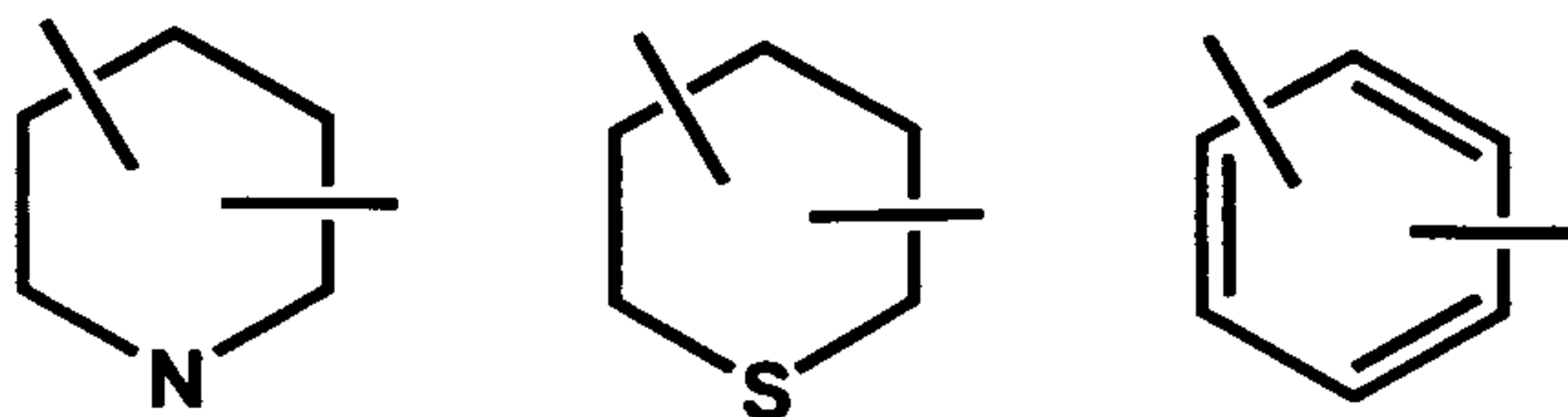
The straight line — as a bond generally indicates a mixture of, or either of, the possible isomers, non-limiting example(s) include, containing (R)- and (S)- stereochemistry. For example,



A dashed line (-----) represents an optional bond.

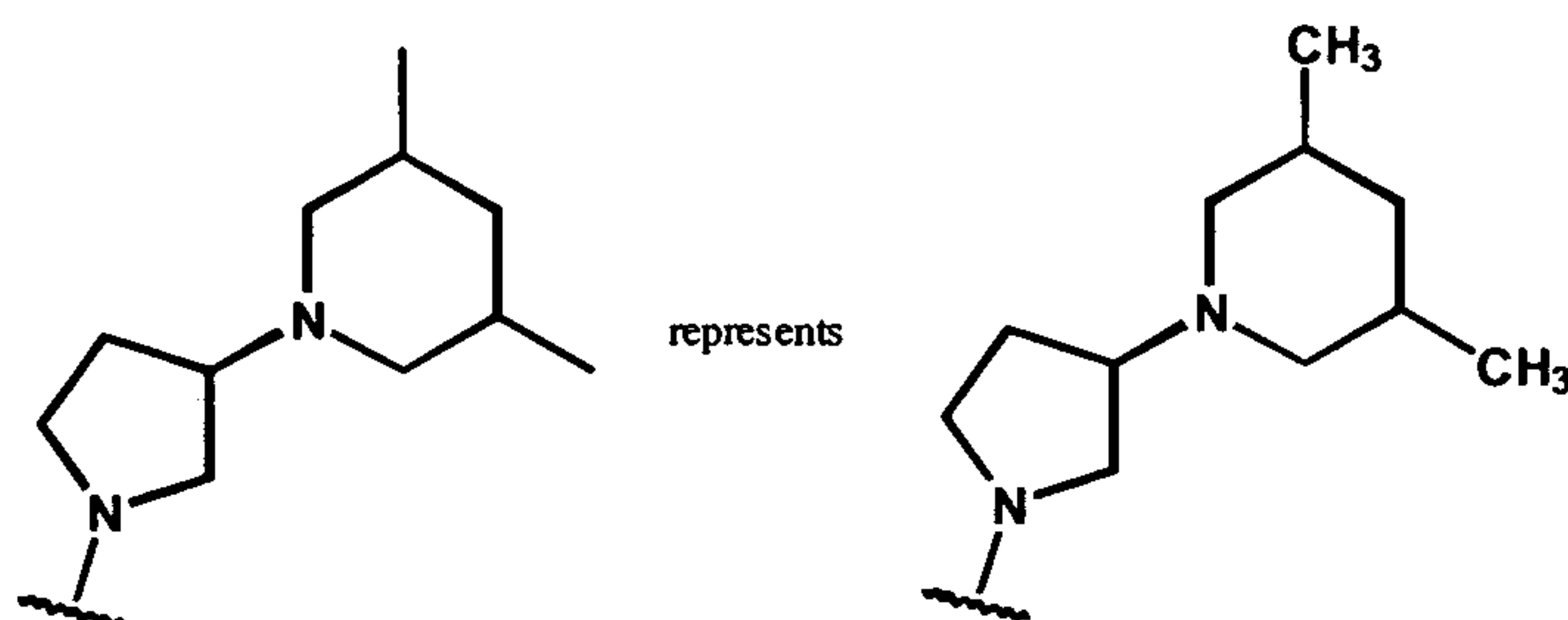
Lines drawn into the ring systems, such as, for example:

23



indicate that the indicated line (bond) may be attached to any of the substitutable ring atoms, non limiting examples include carbon, nitrogen and sulfur ring atoms.

As well known in the art, a bond drawn from a particular atom wherein no moiety is depicted at the terminal end of the bond indicates a methyl group bound through that bond to the atom, unless stated otherwise. For example:



All stereoisomers (for example, geometric isomers, optical isomers and the like) of the present compounds (including those of the salts, solvates, hydrates, esters and prodrugs of the compounds as well as the salts, solvates and esters of the prodrugs), such as those which may exist due to asymmetric carbons on various substituents, including enantiomeric forms (which may exist even in the absence of asymmetric carbons), rotameric forms, atropisomers, and diastereomeric forms, are contemplated within the scope of this invention, as are positional isomers (such as, for example, 4-pyridyl and 3-pyridyl). For example, if a 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivative incorporates a double bond or a fused ring, both the cis- and trans-forms, as well as mixtures, are embraced within the scope of the invention.

Individual stereoisomers of the compounds of the invention may, for example, be substantially free of other isomers, or may be admixed, for example, as racemates or with all other, or other selected, stereoisomers. The chiral centers of the present invention can have the S or R configuration as defined by the *IUPAC* 1974 Recommendations. The use of the terms "salt", "solvate", "ester", "prodrug" and the like, is intended to equally apply to the salt, solvate, ester and prodrug of enantiomers, stereoisomers, rotamers, positional isomers, racemates or prodrugs of the inventive compounds.

The present invention also embraces isotopically-labelled compounds of the present invention which are identical to those recited herein, but for the fact that one or more atoms are

replaced by an atom having an atomic mass or mass number different from the atomic mass or mass number usually found in nature. Such compounds are useful as therapeutic, diagnostic or research reagents. Examples of isotopes that can be incorporated into compounds of the invention include isotopes of hydrogen, carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorus, fluorine and chlorine, such as ^2H , ^3H , ^{13}C , ^{14}C , ^{15}N , ^{18}O , ^{17}O , ^{31}P , ^{32}P , ^{35}S , ^{18}F , and ^{36}Cl , respectively.

Certain isotopically-labelled 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivatives (e.g., those labeled with ^3H and ^{14}C) are useful in compound and/or substrate tissue distribution assays. Tritiated (i.e., ^3H) and carbon-14 (i.e., ^{14}C) isotopes are particularly preferred for their ease of preparation and detectability. Further, substitution with heavier isotopes such as deuterium (i.e., ^2H) may afford certain therapeutic advantages resulting from greater metabolic stability (e.g., increased in vivo half-life or reduced dosage requirements) and hence may be preferred in some circumstances. Isotopically labelled 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivatives can generally be prepared by following procedures analogous to those disclosed in the Schemes and/or in the Examples herein below, by substituting an appropriate isotopically labelled reagent for a non-isotopically labelled reagent.

Polymorphic forms of the 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivatives, and of the salts, solvates, hydrates, esters and prodrugs of the 2,3-Substituted Indole Derivatives, are intended to be included in the present invention.

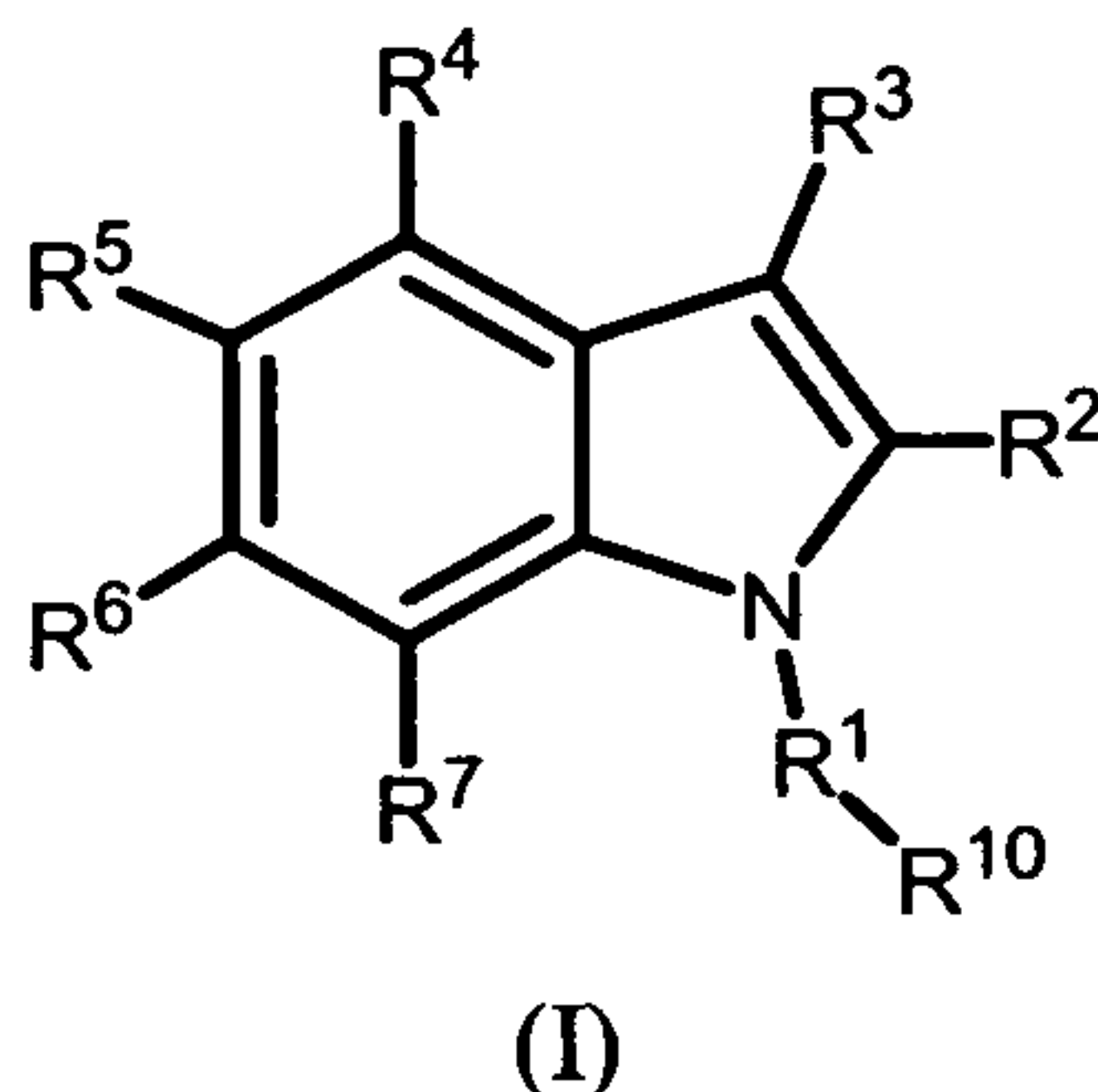
The following abbreviations are used below and have the following meanings:

CDI is N,N'-Carbonyldiimidazole; DABCO is 1,4-Diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane; dba is dibenzylideneacetone; DBU is 1,8-Diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene; DCM is dichloromethane; DIEA is diethylamine; DIPEA is diisopropylethylamine; DMF is dimethylformamide; dppf is 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene; EDCI is 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide; Et is ethyl; Et₃N is triethylamine; EtOAc is ethyl acetate; HATU is N-(diethylamino)-1H-1,2,3-triazolo[4,5-b]pyridine-1-yl-methylene]-N-methylmethanaminium hexafluorophosphate N-oxide; HPLC is high performance liquid chromatography; MeOH is methanol; MS is mass spectrometry; NBS is N-bromosuccinimide; NIS is N-iodosuccinimide; PPA is polyphosphoric acid; TBAF is tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride; THF is tetrahydrofuran; TLC is thin layer chromatography and TMS is trimethylsilyl.

The 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives of Formula (I)

25

The present invention provides 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives having the formula:



5 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, esters and prodrugs thereof, wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 and R^{10} are defined above for the compounds of formula (I).

In one embodiment, R^1 is bond.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$.

10 In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-O-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$.

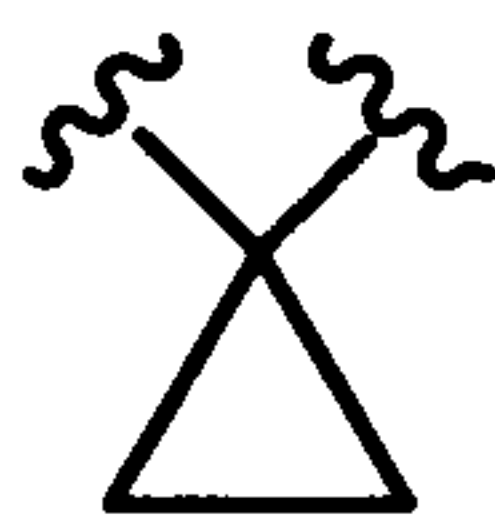
In still another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-N(R^9)-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$.

In yet another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-CH=CH-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$.

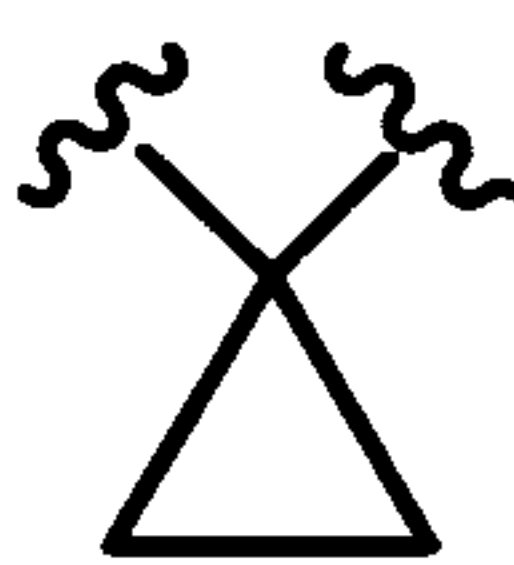
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C\equiv C-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$.

In a further embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$.

15 In one embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$, $-CH(CH_3)-$ or



In another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$.



In another embodiment, R^1 is

20 In one embodiment, R^{10} is aryl.

In another embodiment, R^{10} is H.

In another embodiment, R^{10} is cycloalkyl.

In another embodiment, R^{10} is cycloalkenyl.

In still another embodiment, R^{10} is heterocycloalkenyl.

25 In another embodiment, R^{10} is heteroaryl.

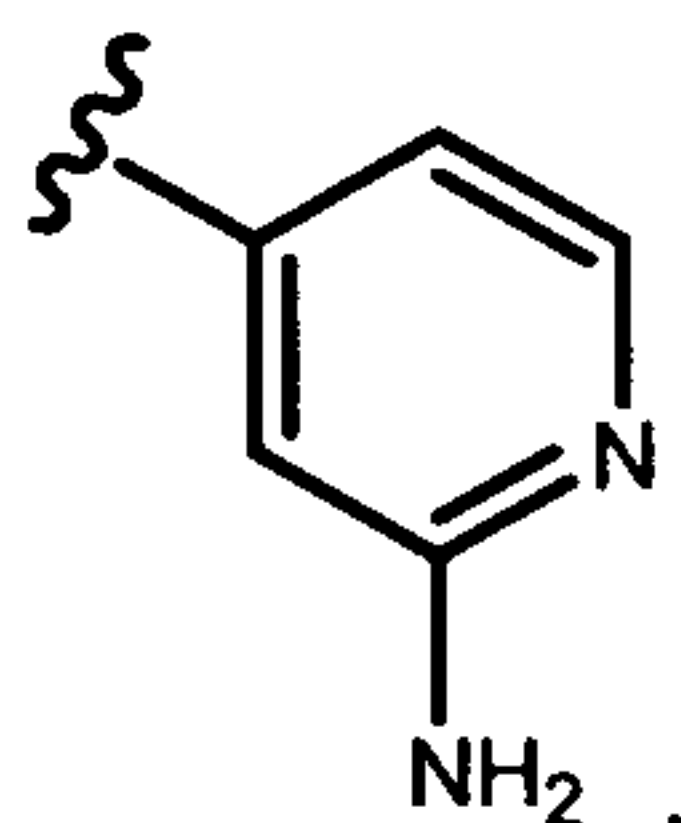
In another embodiment, R¹⁰ is heterocycloalkyl.

In another embodiment, R¹⁰ is phenyl.

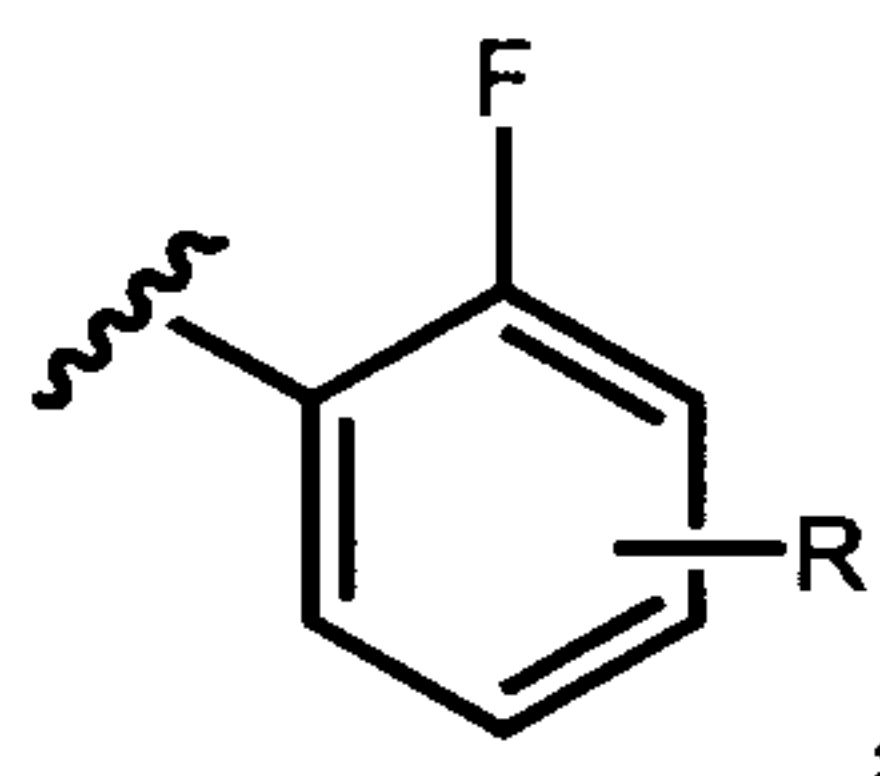
In another embodiment, R¹⁰ is phenyl, which is substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, -NH₂, -NHSO₂-alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, -O-haloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NHC(O)NH-alkyl, alkyl, -OH, -CN, -C(O)NH₂ or -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NH₂.

In yet another embodiment, R¹⁰ is pyridyl.

In a further embodiment, R^{10} is

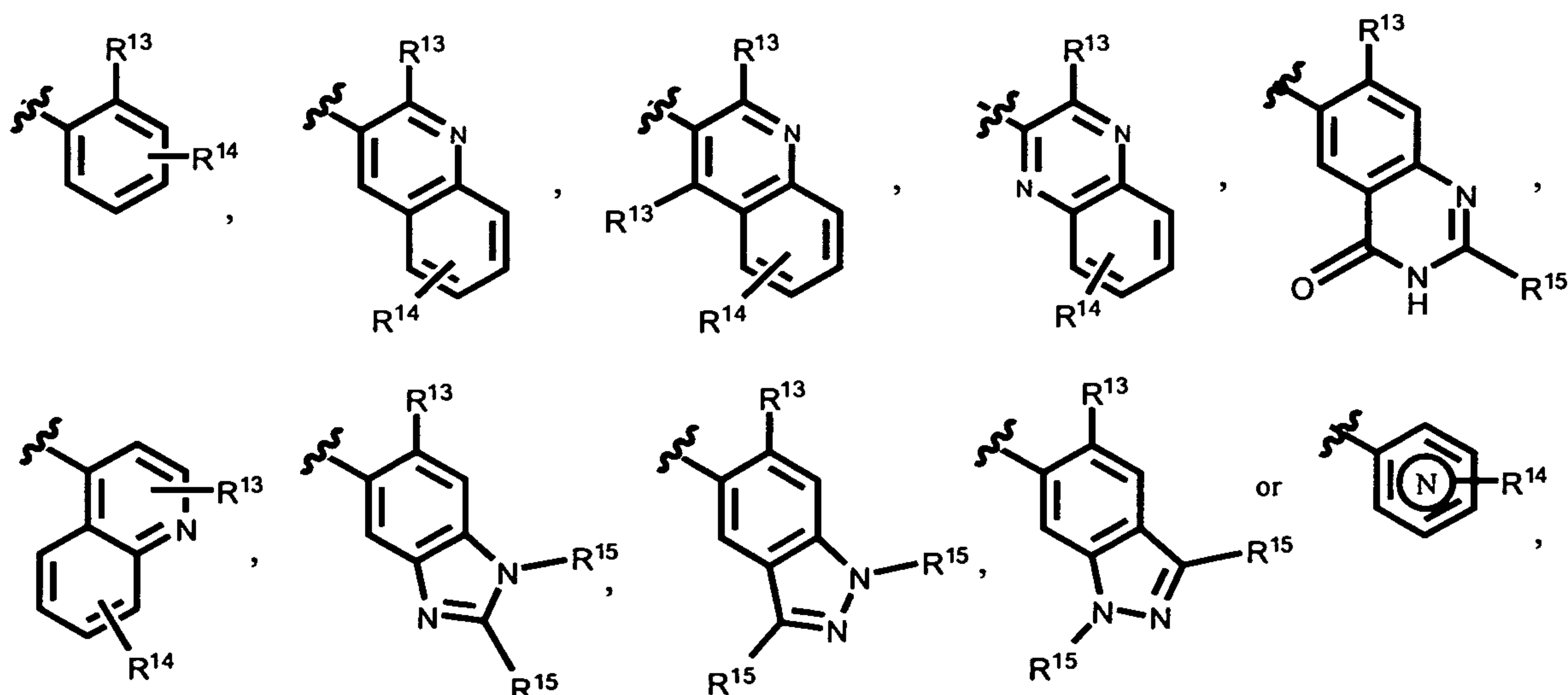


In another embodiment, -R¹⁰ is:



wherein R represents up to 2 optional and additional phenyl substituents, each independently selected from halo, -O-alkyl, alkyl, -CF₃, -CN, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

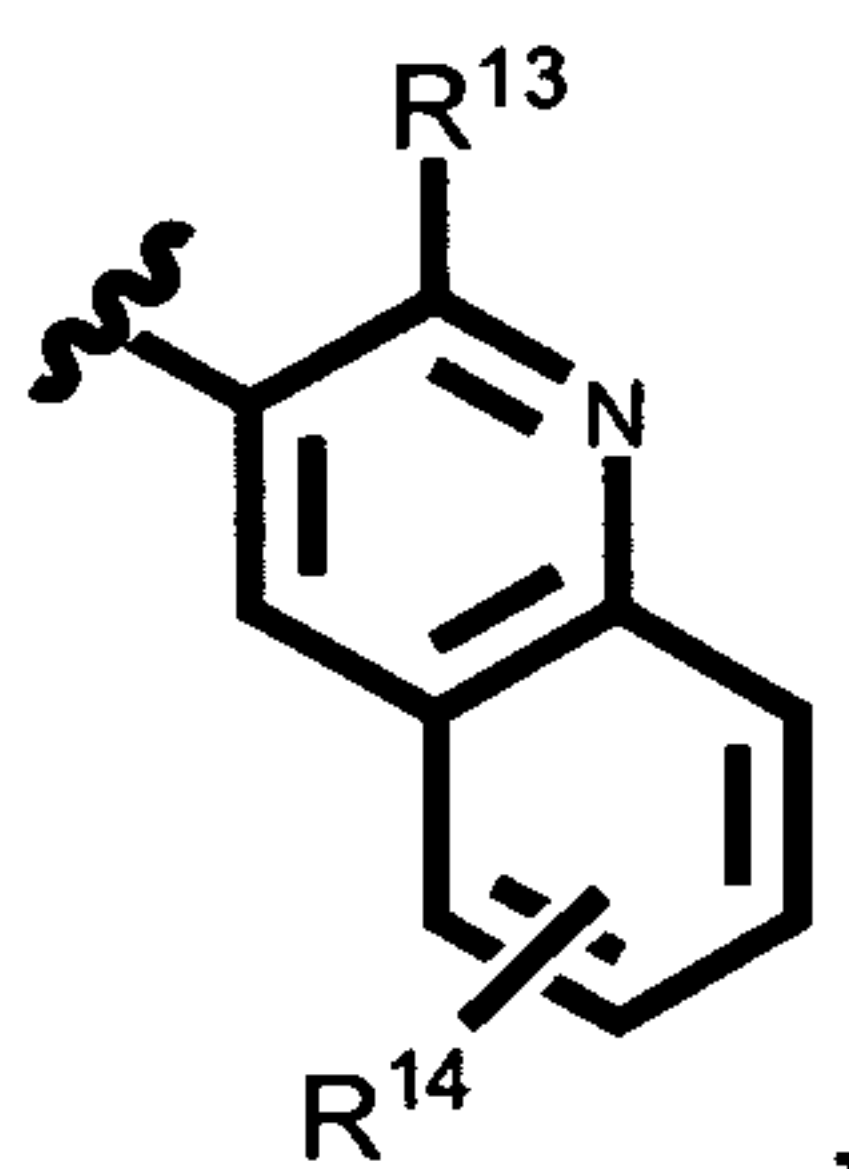
In another embodiment, R^{10} is



27

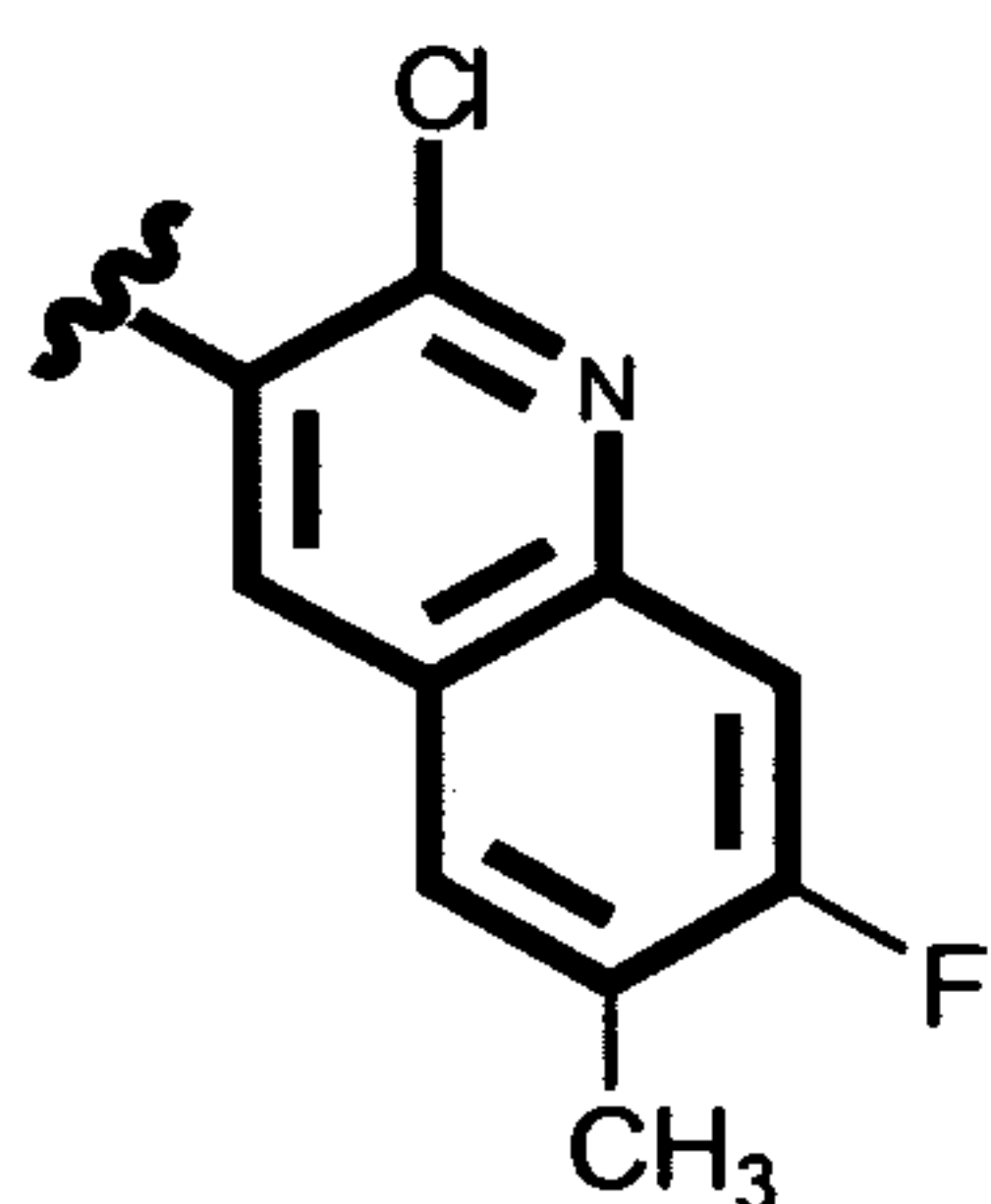
wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

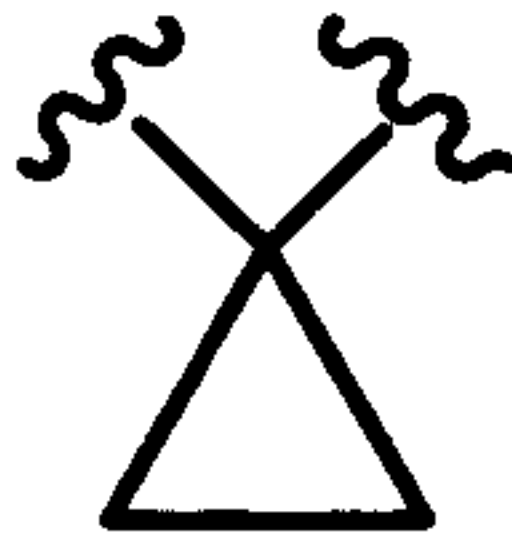
In another embodiment, R^{10} is:



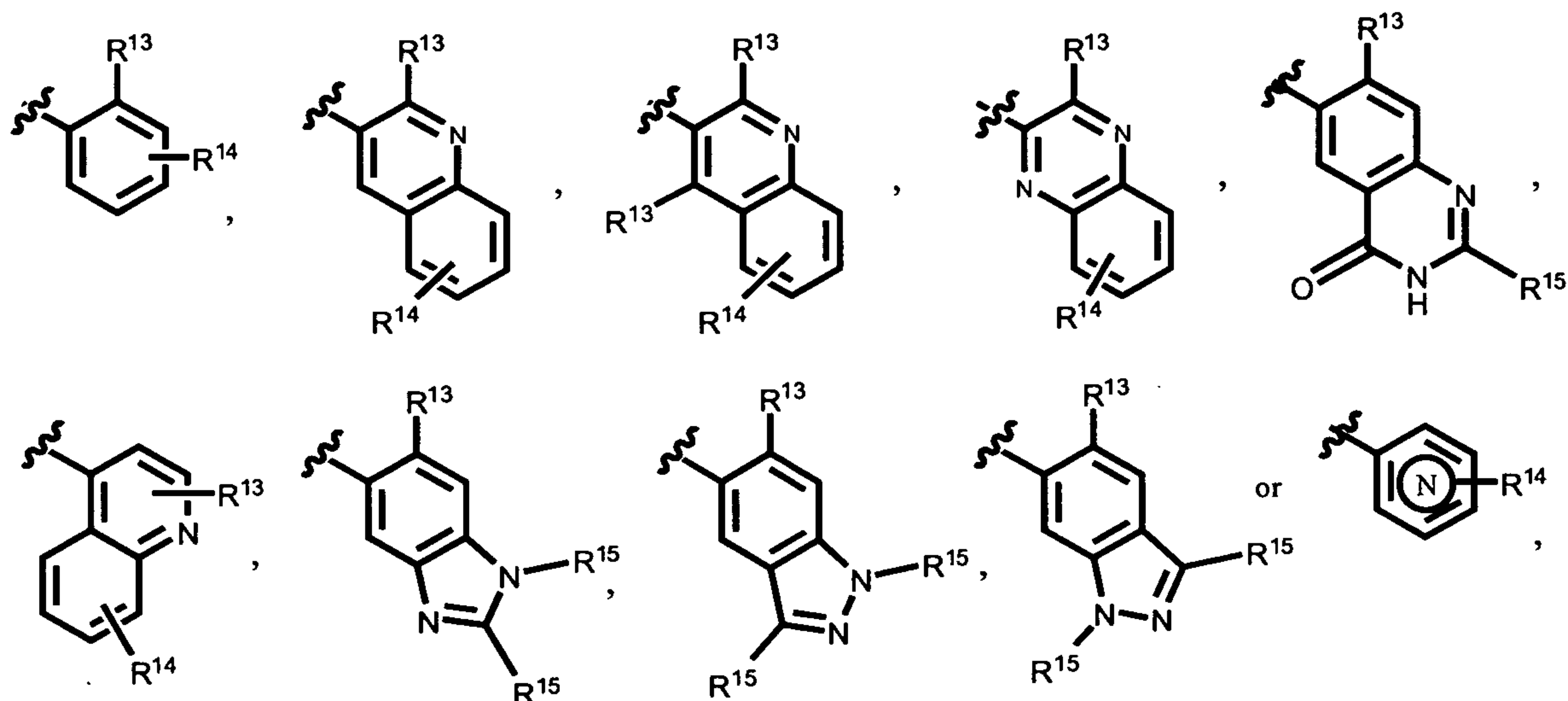
wherein R^{13} is Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl or halo.

In one embodiment, R^{10} is:



In still another embodiment, R^1 is -CH₂- or  and R^{10} is

28

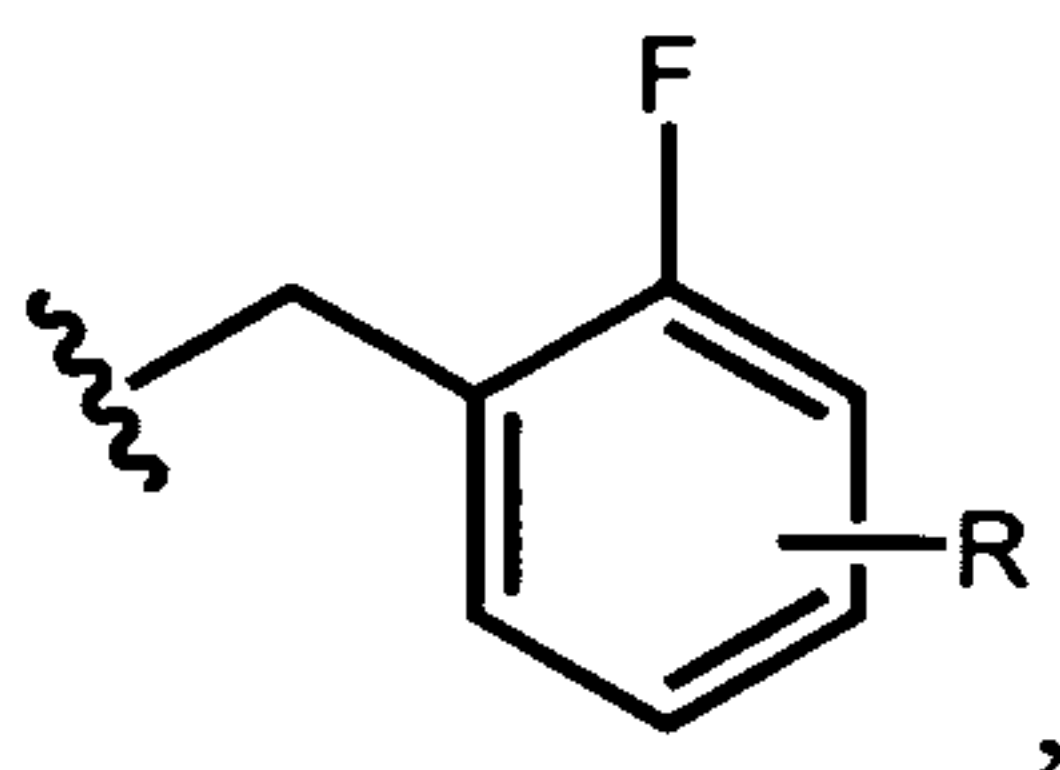


wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

In one embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is benzyl.

In another embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, -NH₂, -NHSO₂-alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, -O-haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, -OH, -CN, -C(O)NH₂ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$.

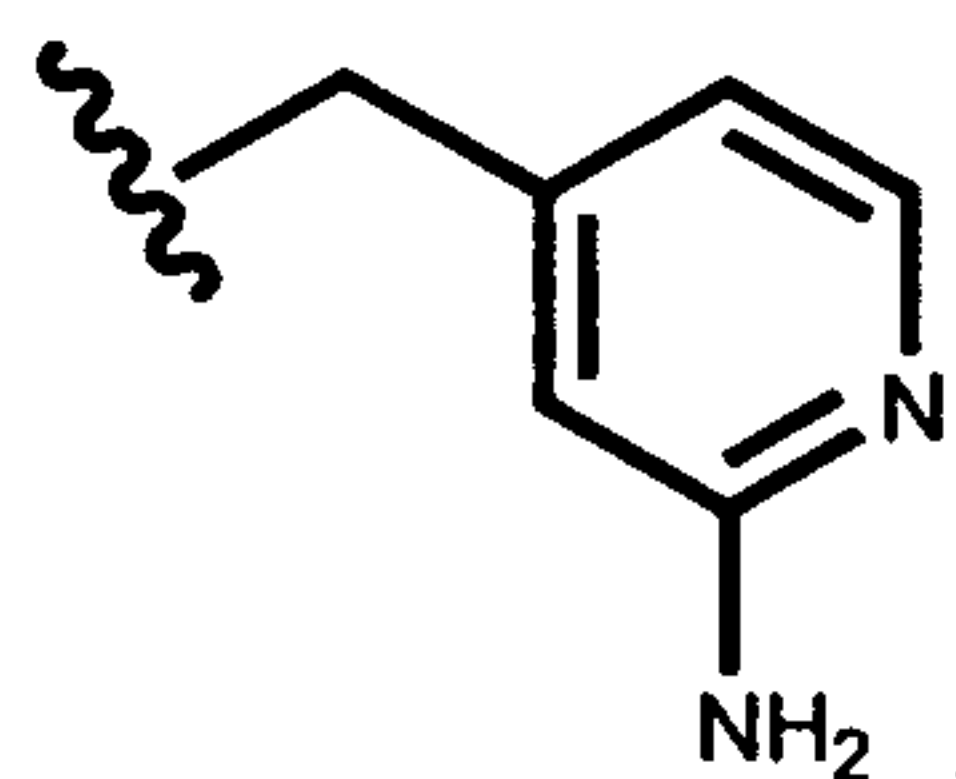
In still another embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is



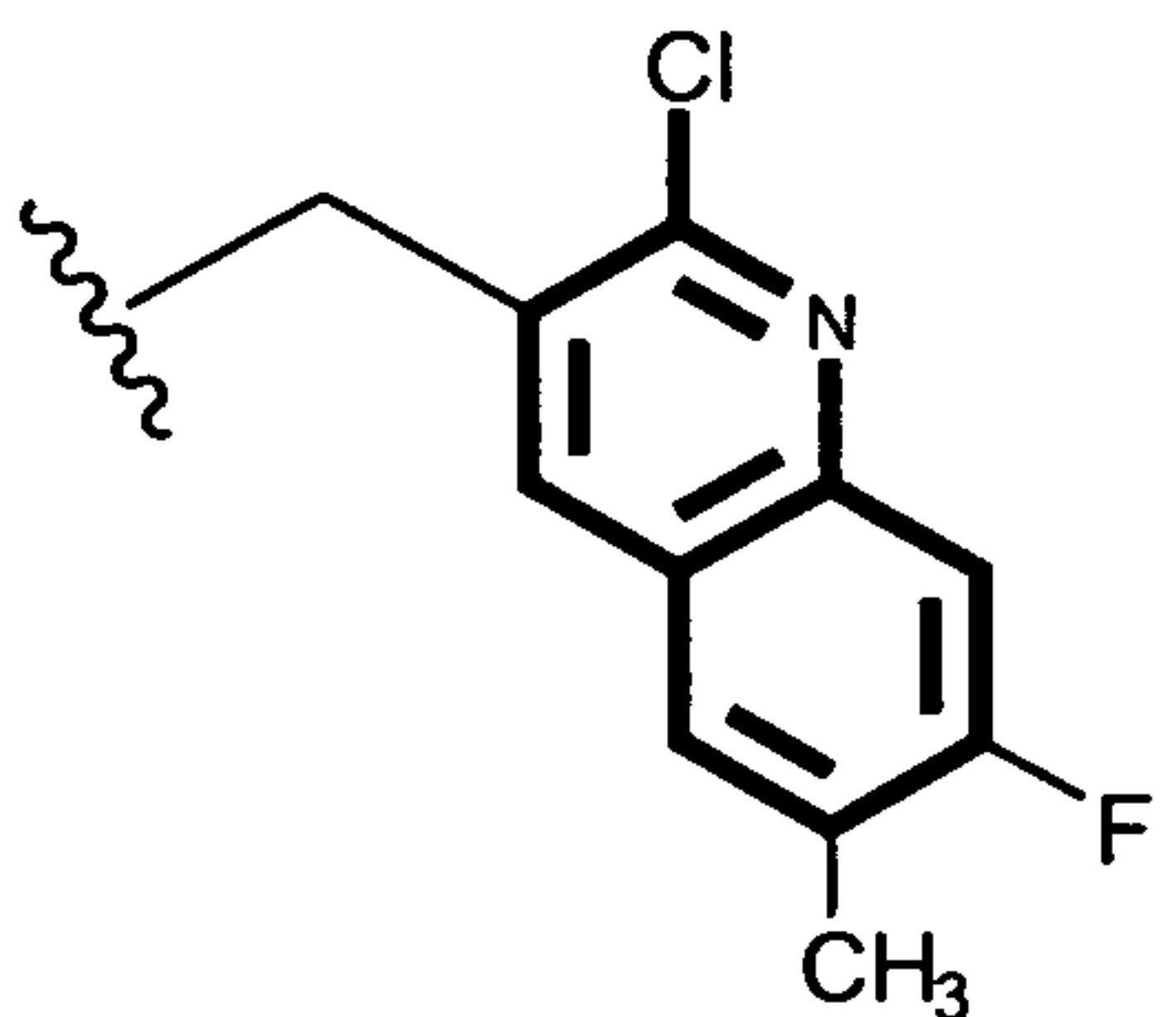
wherein R represents up to 2 optional and additional phenyl substituents, each independently selected from halo, -O-alkyl, alkyl, - CF_3 , -CN, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is

29



In another embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is



In still another embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is alkyl.

5 In yet another embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is $-R^1-R^{10}$ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is substituted with 1 or 2 fluorine atoms.

In yet another embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is $-R^1-R^{10}$ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is substituted with 1 or 2 methyl groups.

10 In yet another embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is $-R^1-R^{10}$ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is substituted with one fluorine atom and one methyl group.

In another embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is haloalkyl.

In a further embodiment, $-R^1-R^{10}$ is $-\text{CH}_2\text{-cycloalkyl}$.

In one embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^9$.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$.

15 In another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OCH}_2\text{OR}^9$.

In still another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^9)_2$.

In yet another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^9)_2$.

In a further embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{alkyl}$.

20 In another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-aryl}$.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkyl}$.

In still another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkenyl}$.

In still another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$.

In yet another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heteroaryl}$.

25 In another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkenyl}$.

30

In a further embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)OCH_2OR^9$.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl.

5 In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OH$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -cycloalkyl, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl or $-C(O)NH$ -cycloalkyl.

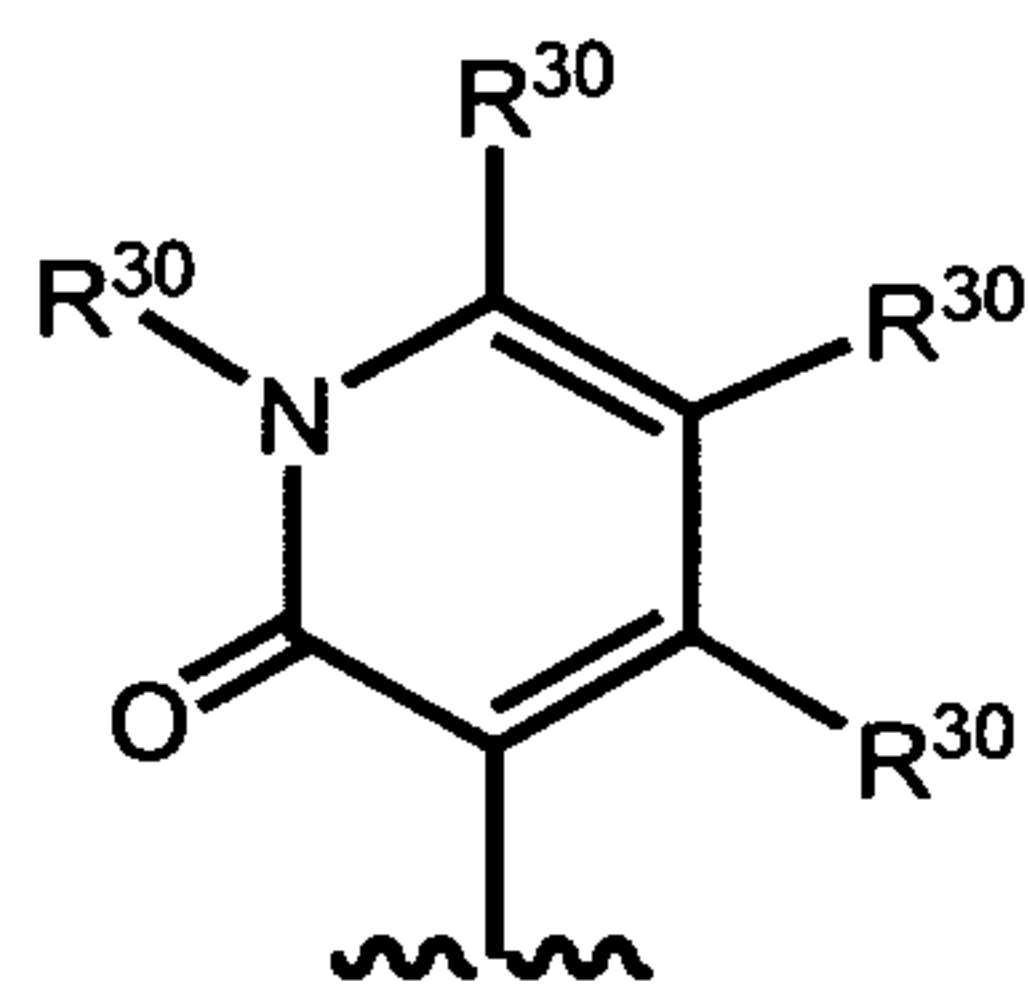
In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OH$.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)NHR^9$.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)NH_2$.

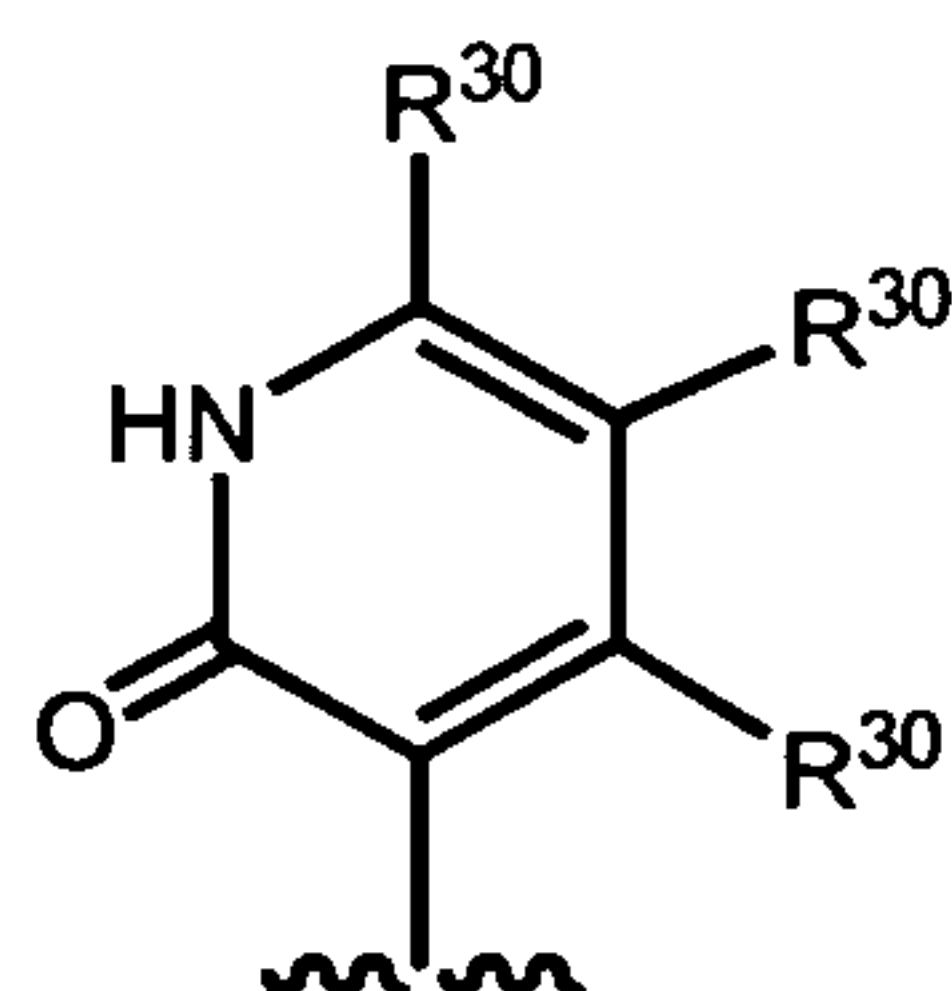
10 In still another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)R^9$, $-C(O)OR^9$, $-C(O)OCH_2OR^9$, $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl wherein a heteroaryl group can be optionally substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are the same or different, and are selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl, halo, $-OH$, $-OR^9$, $-CN$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ and $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$.

In one embodiment, R^3 is



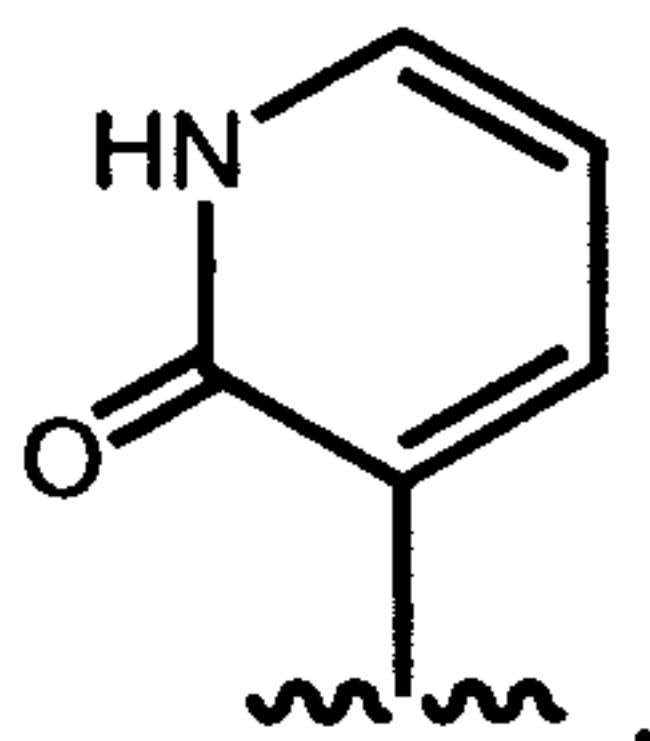
20

In another embodiment, R^3 is

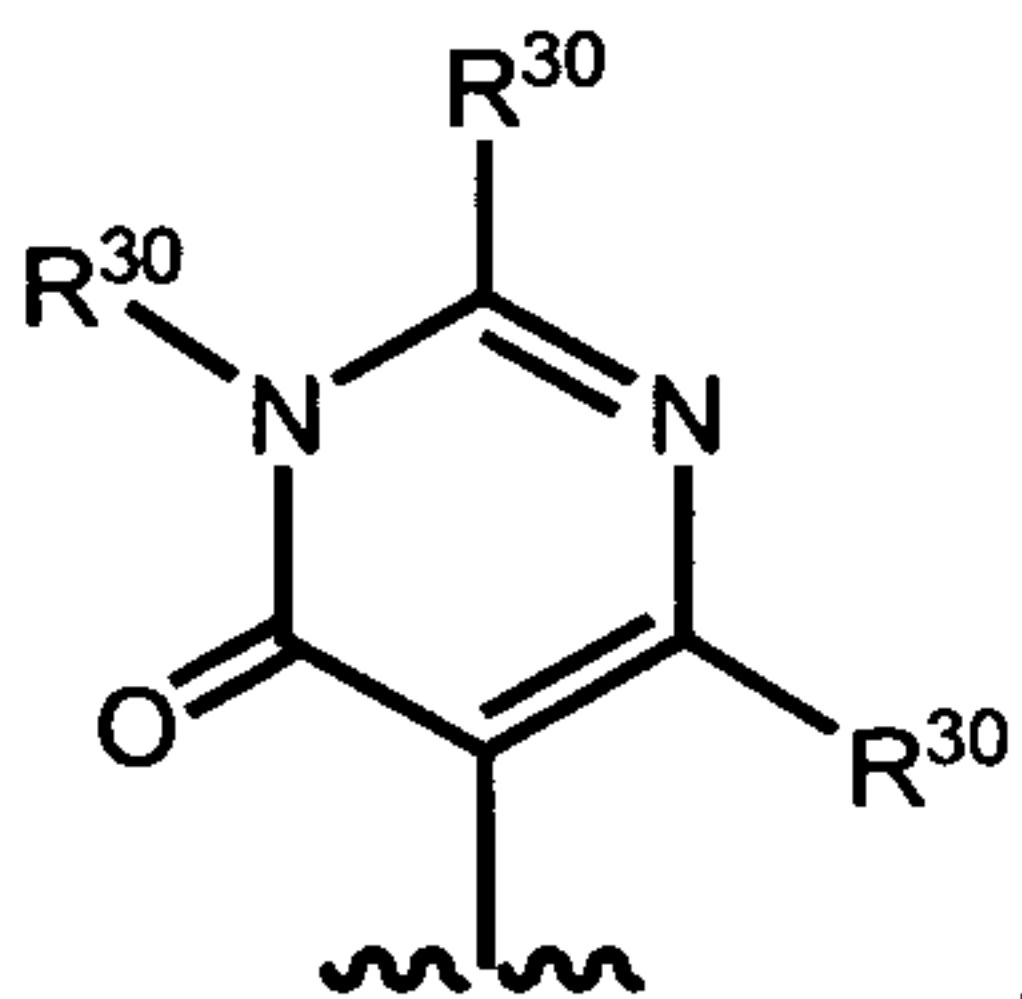


In another embodiment, R^3 is

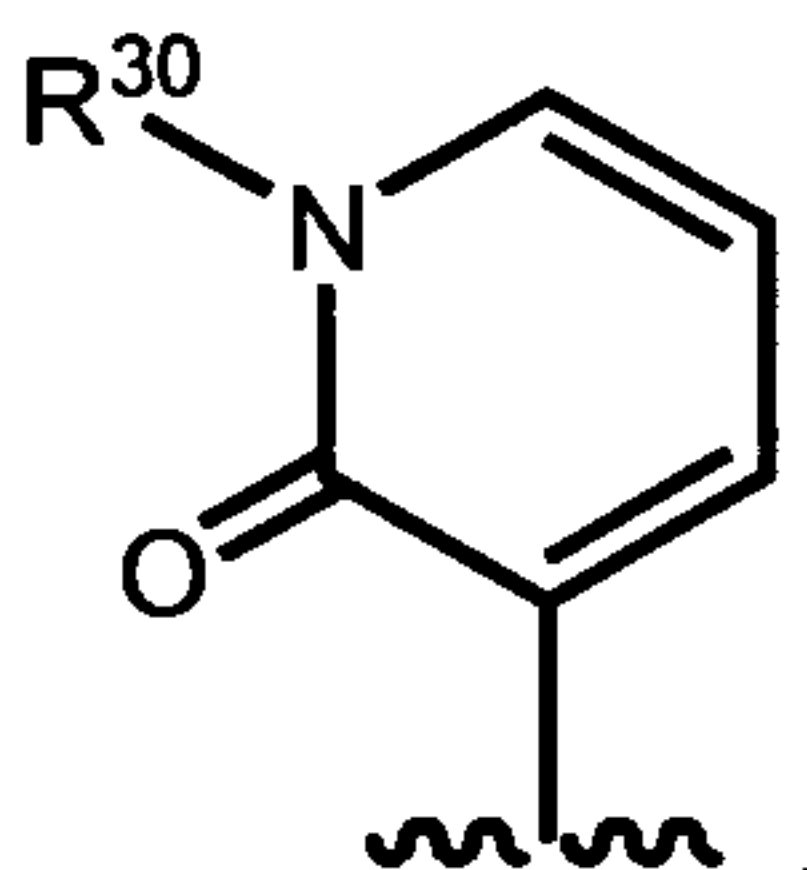
31



In still another embodiment, R^3 is

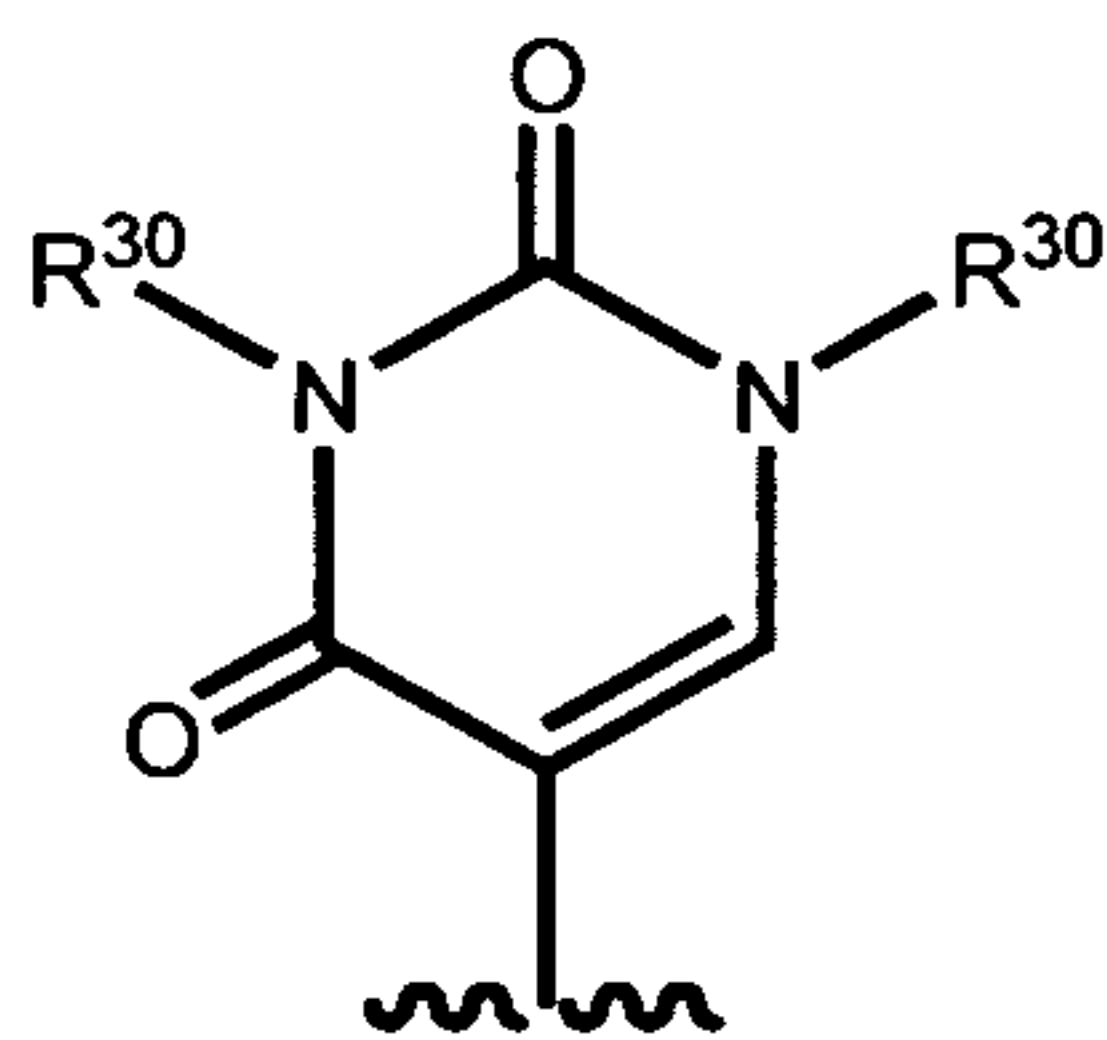


In another embodiment, R^3 is



5

In another embodiment, R^3 is



In one embodiment, R^4 is H.

In another embodiment, R^4 is H or F.

10

In another embodiment, R^4 is F.

In another embodiment, R^5 is H.

In another embodiment, R^6 is H.

In another embodiment, R^6 is H or F.

In another embodiment, R^6 is F.

15

In still another embodiment, R^7 is H.

In another embodiment, R^4 and R^7 are each H.

In another embodiment, R^5 and R^6 are each other than H.

In yet another embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H.

In another embodiment, R^4 , R^5 , R^6 and R^7 are each H.

In a further embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H and R^5 is other than H.

In another embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H and R^5 is alkyl.

In another embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H and R^5 is halo.

In another embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H and R^5 is methyl.

5 In a further embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H and R^5 is Cl.

In another embodiment, R^4 and R^7 are each H and R^5 and R^6 are each other than H.

In another embodiment, R^4 and R^7 are each H and R^5 and R^6 are each independently selected from alkyl, halo and haloalkyl.

10 In yet another embodiment, R^4 and R^7 are each H and R^5 and R^6 are each independently selected from alkyl and halo.

In another embodiment, R^5 is other than H.

In still another embodiment, R^5 is alkyl.

In yet another embodiment, R^5 is halo.

In still another embodiment, R^5 is methyl.

15 In another embodiment, R^5 is ethyl.

In another embodiment, R^6 is H.

In another embodiment, R^6 is other than H.

In a further embodiment, R^6 is alkyl.

In yet another embodiment, R^6 is halo.

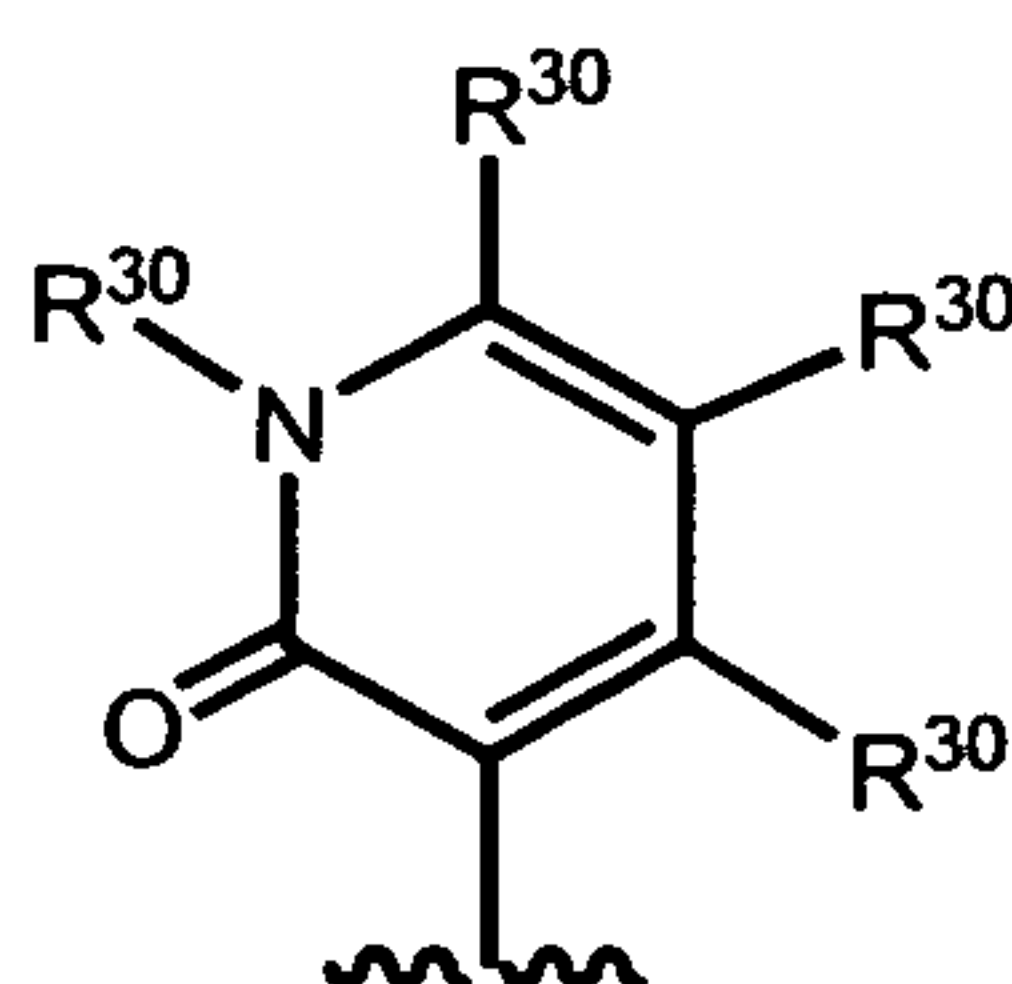
20 In still another embodiment, R^6 is methyl.

In another embodiment, R^6 is F.

In another embodiment, R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

25 In a further embodiment, R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or -OH, R^5 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN, and R^6 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN.

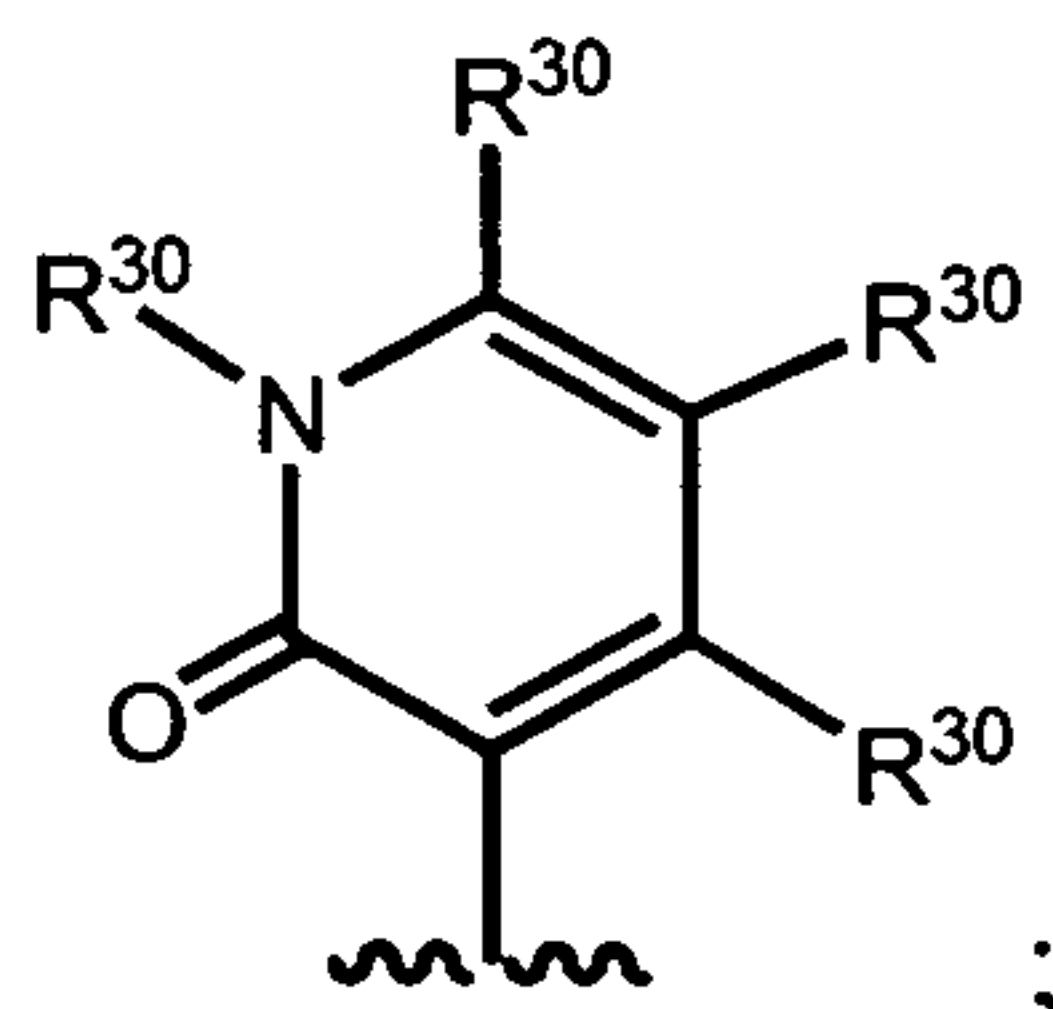
In one embodiment, R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, and R^3 is :



33

In one embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)O\text{-alkyl}$ or $-C(O)NHR^9$,

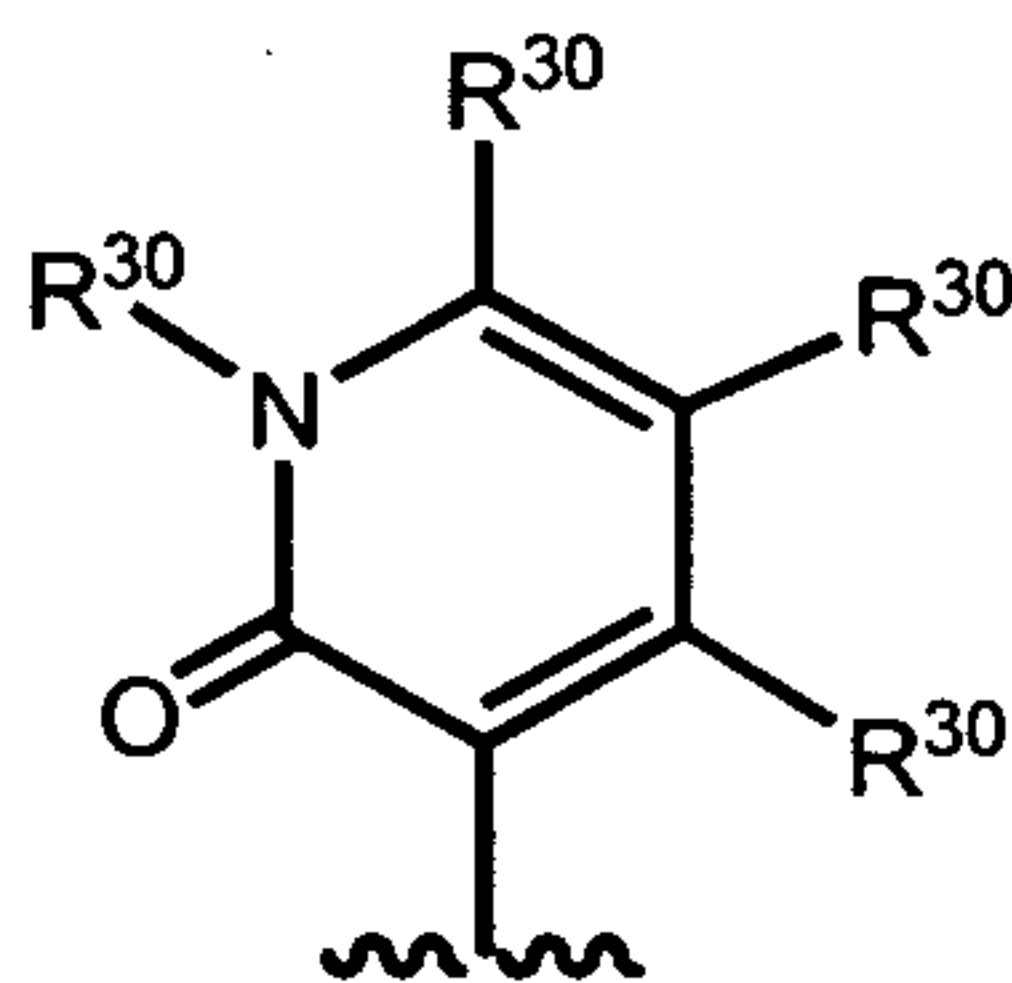
R^3 is :



and two adjacent R^{30} groups and the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a benzene ring.

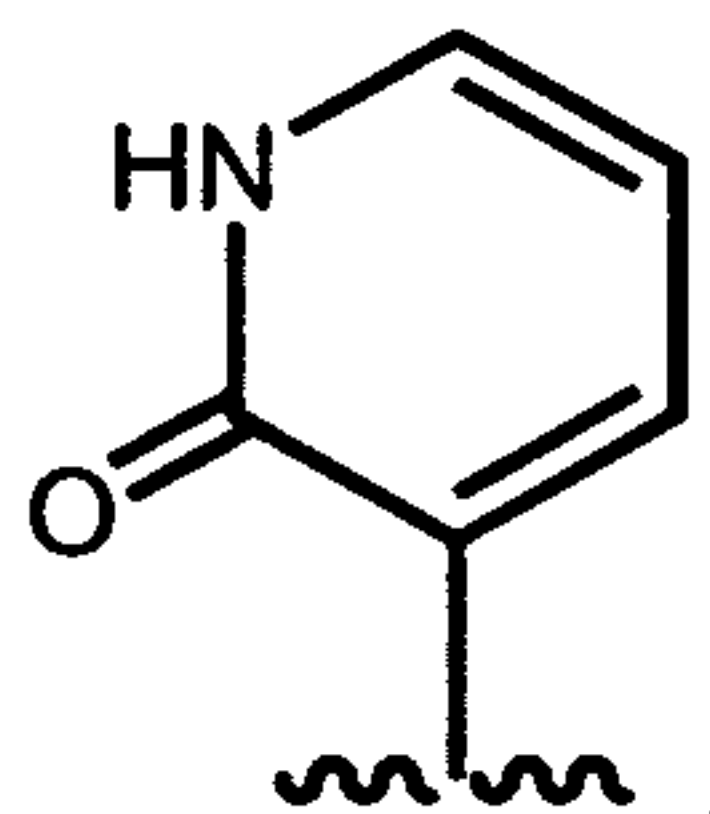
In one embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OH$, and

R^3 is



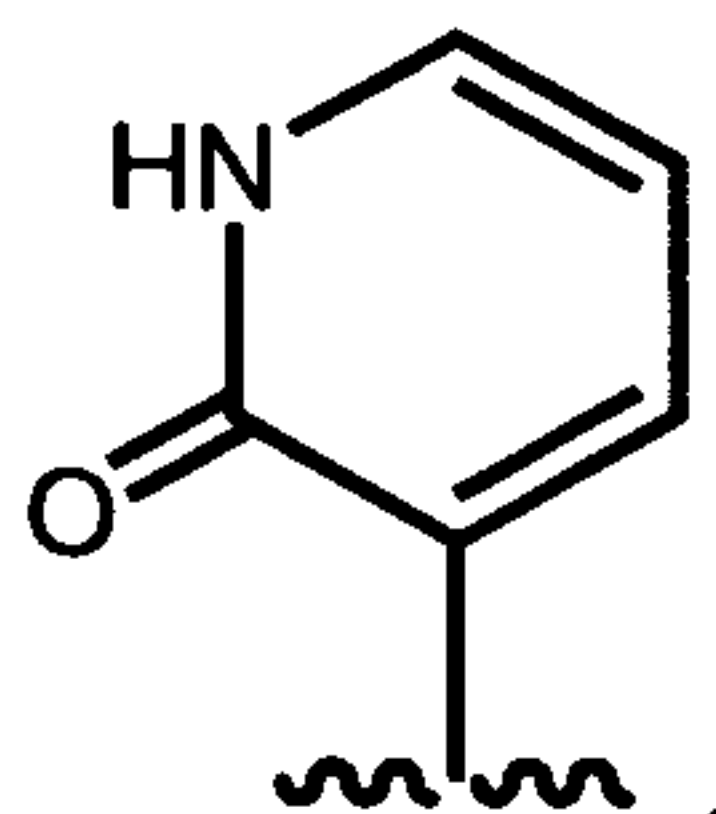
In still another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)R^9$, $-C(O)OR^9$, $-C(O)OCH_2OR^9$, $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q\text{-heteroaryl}$ wherein a heteroaryl group can be optionally substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are the same or different, and are selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkyl}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkenyl}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkenyl}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q\text{-heteroaryl}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q\text{-haloalkyl}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q\text{-hydroxyalkyl}$, halo, $-OH$, $-OR^9$, $-CN$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ and $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$.

, and R^3 is

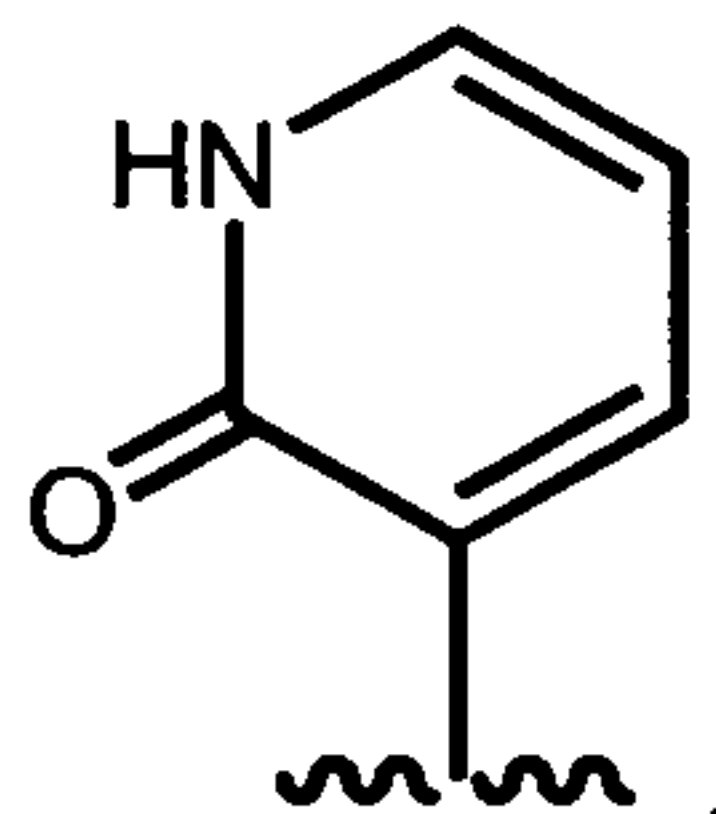


In one embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ and R^3 is

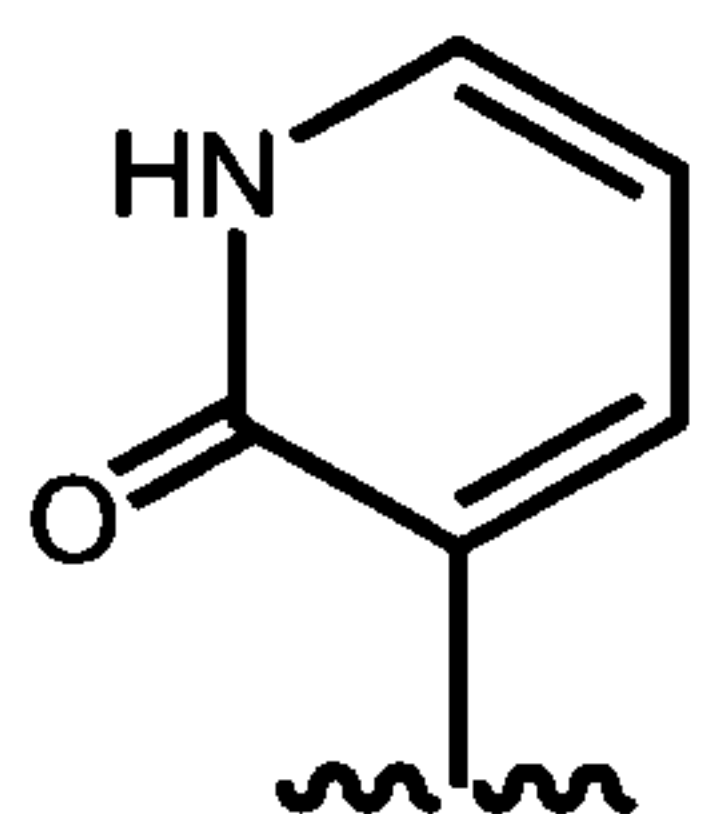
34



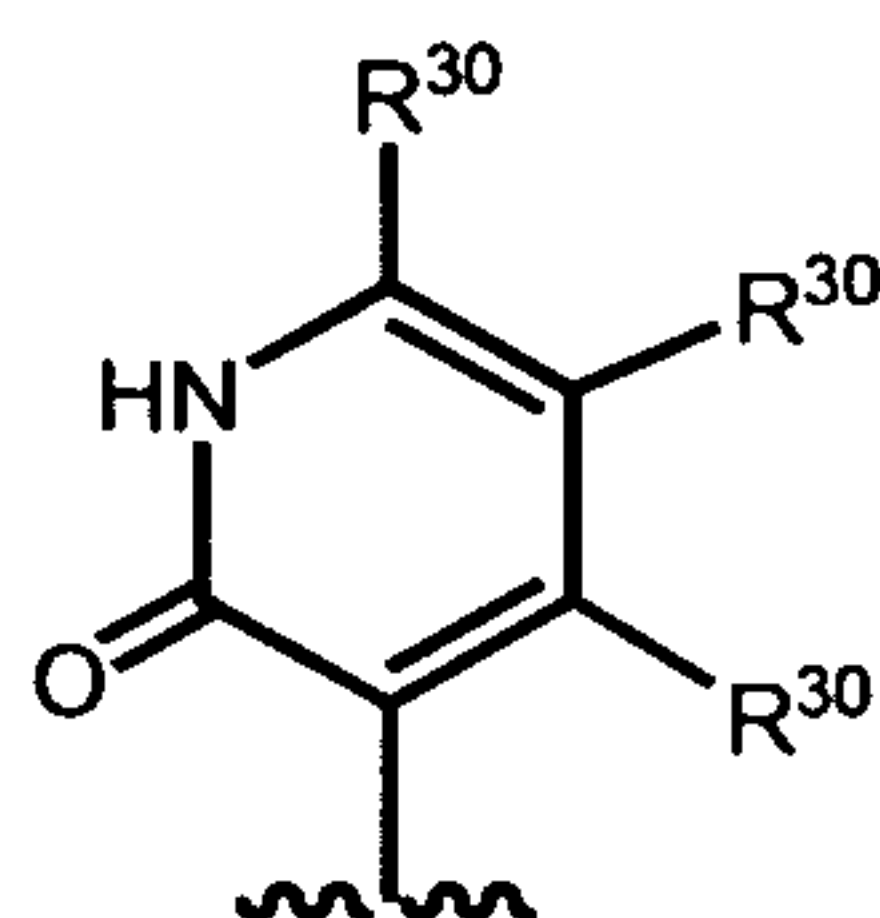
In one embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OH$, and R^3 is



In one embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, where R^9 is H, alkyl, cycloalkyl, or
5 heterocycloalkyl; and R^3 is



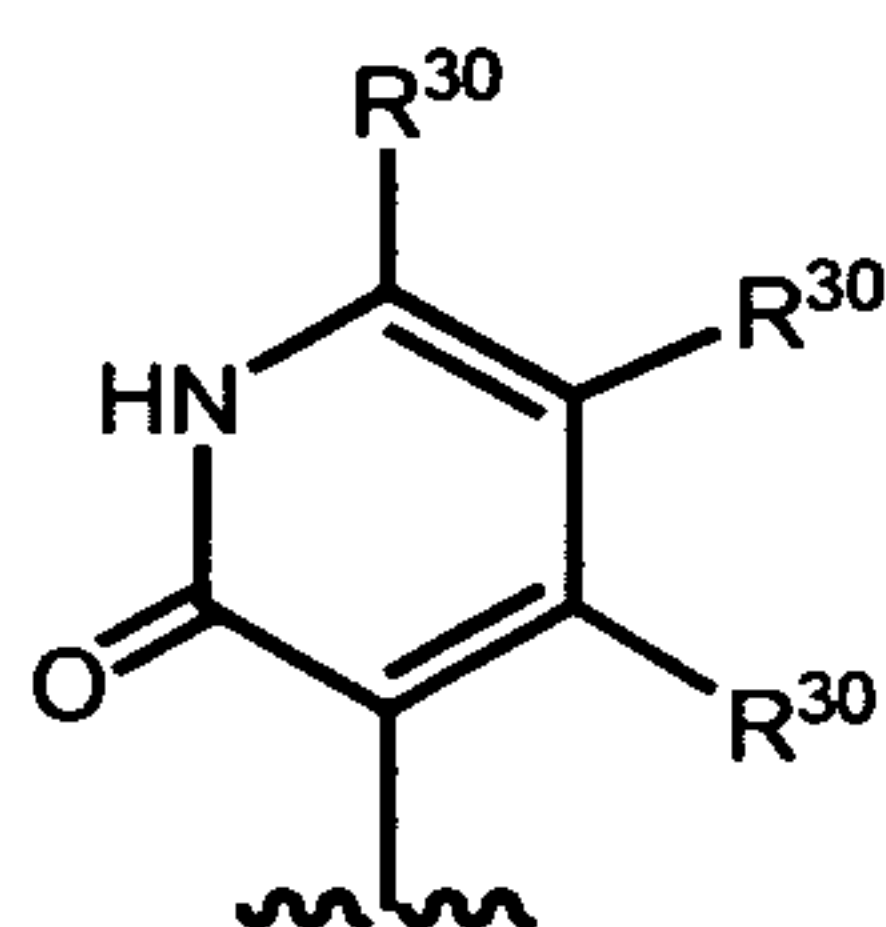
In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$;
 R^3 is :



; and R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, halo or hydroxy.

10

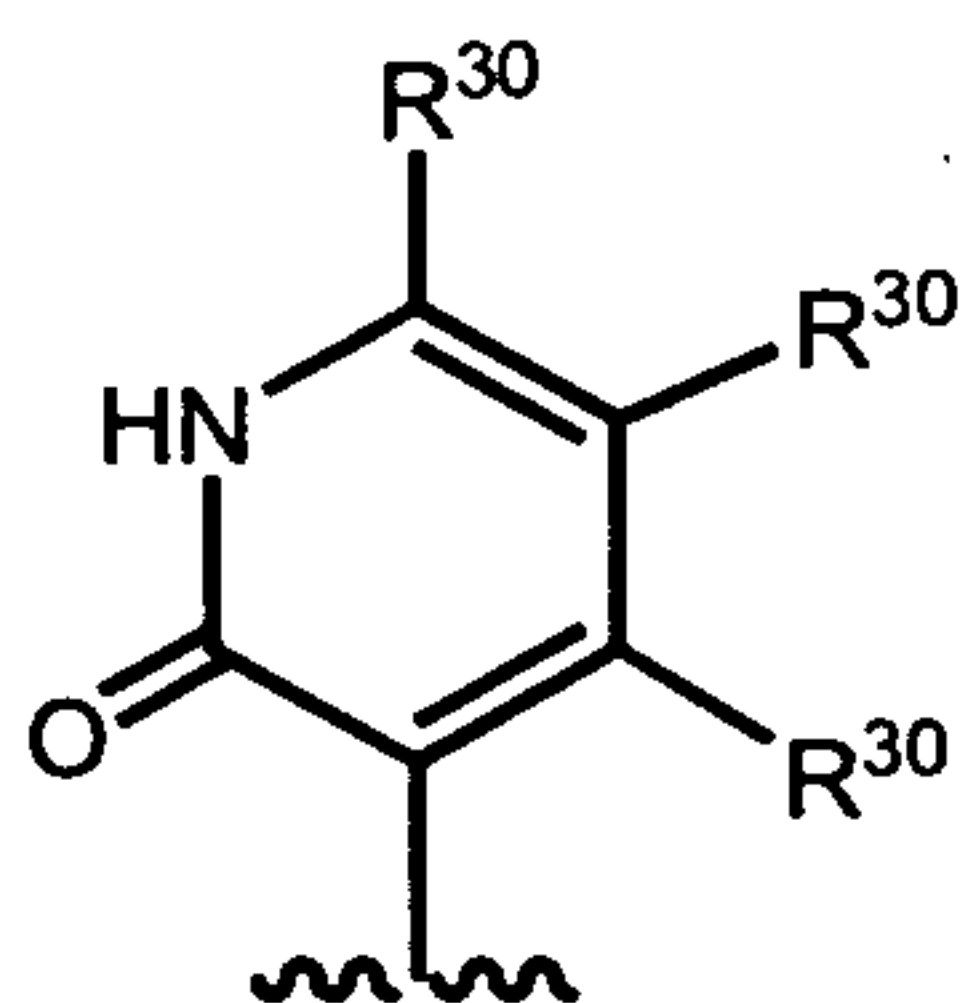
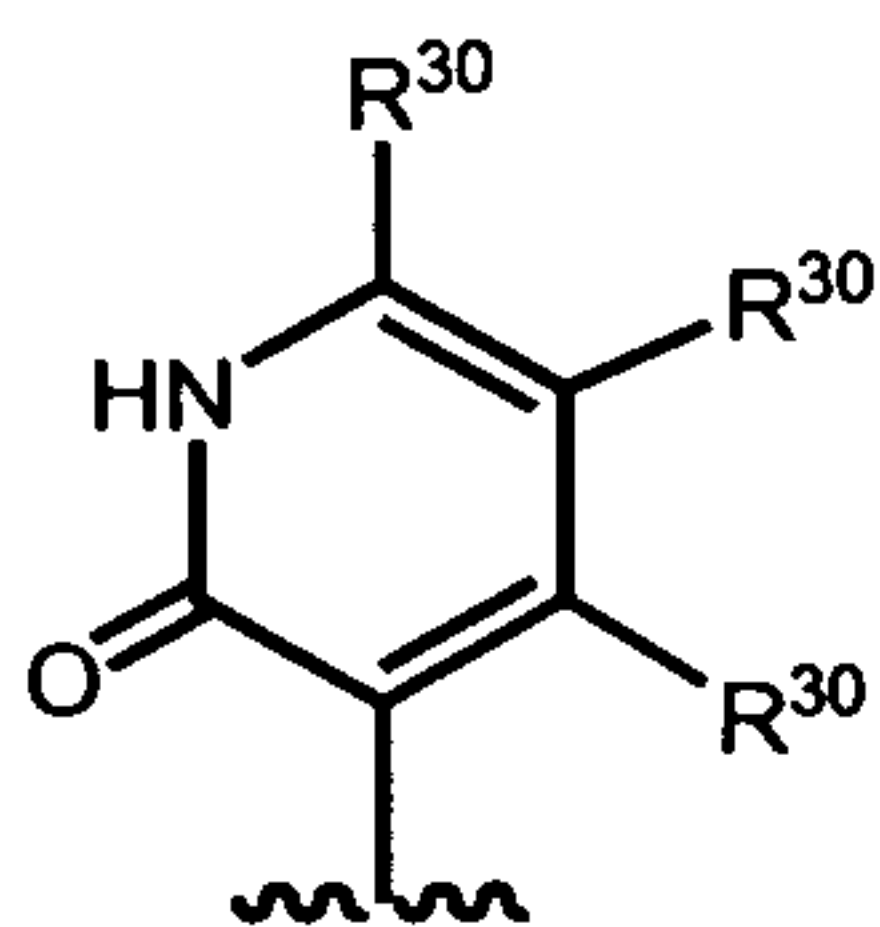
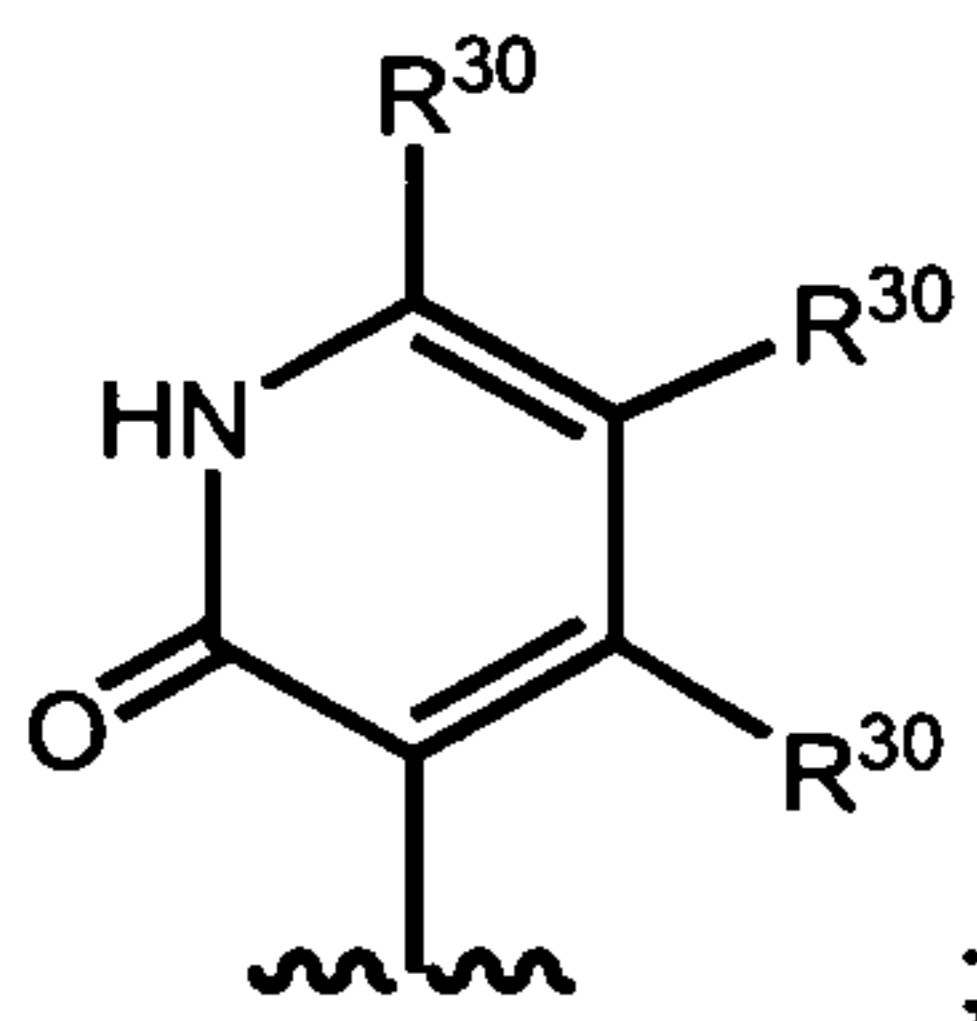
In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$;
 R^3 is :



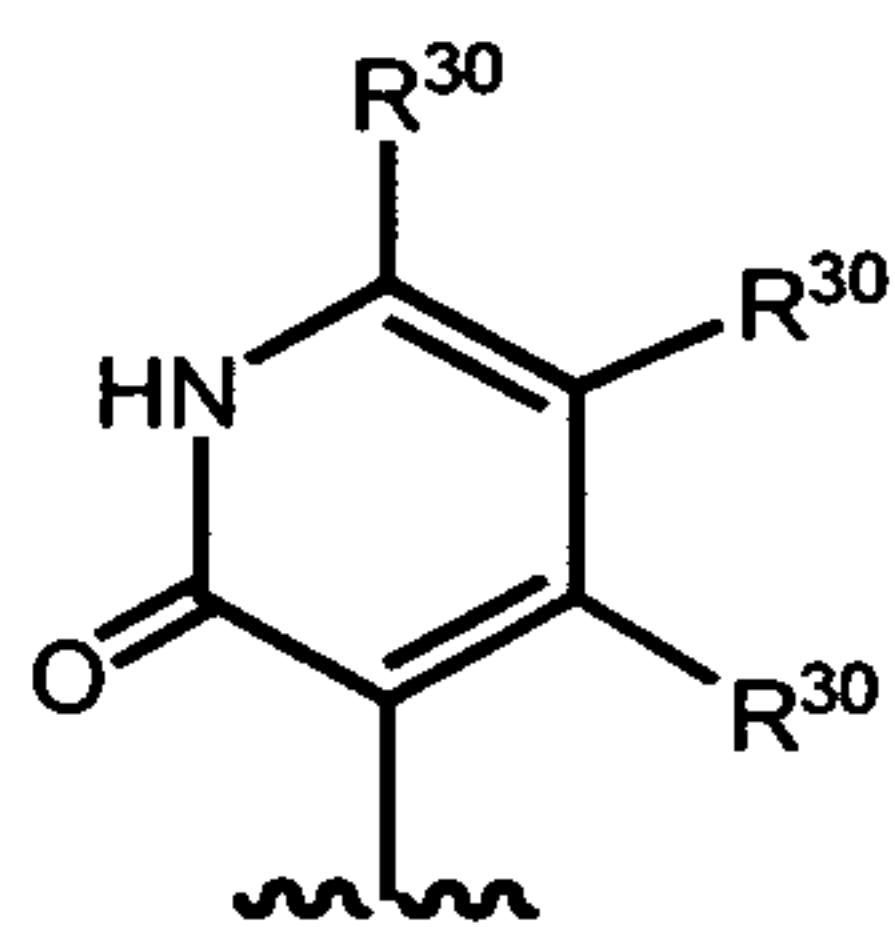
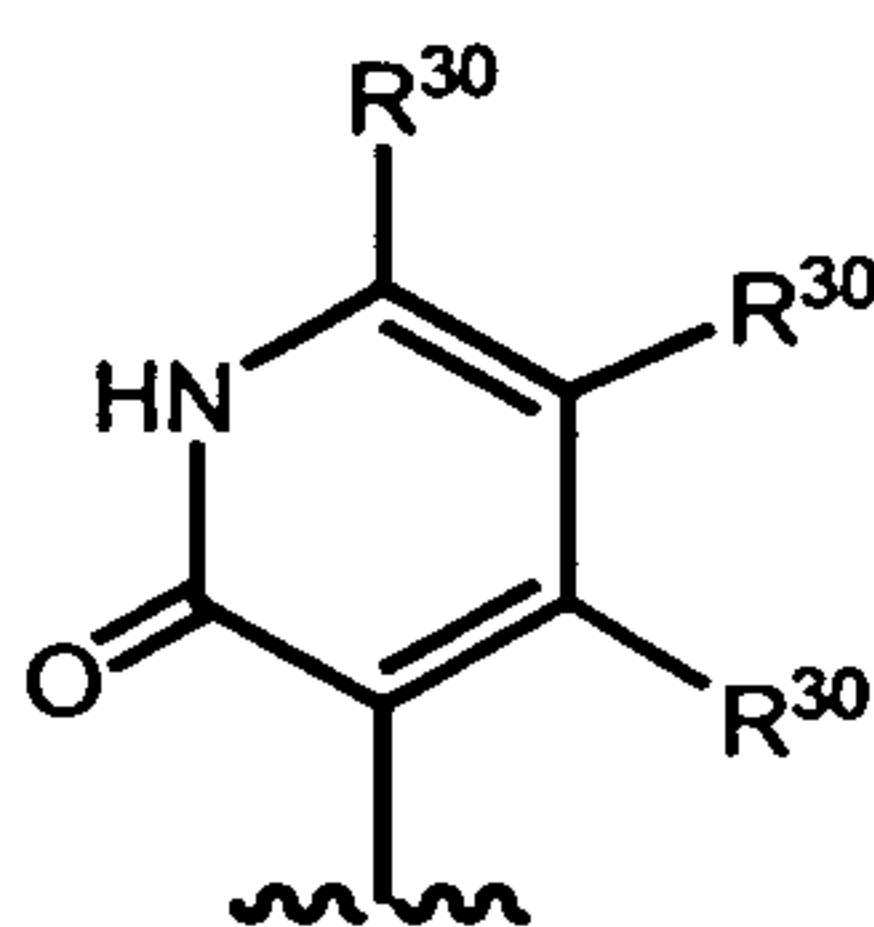
; and R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$.

15 In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$;
 R^3 is

35

; and R⁵ is alkyl, cycloalkyl, halo or hydroxy.In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂;R³ is :; and R⁶ is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -5 NH₂ or -CN.In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂;R³ is

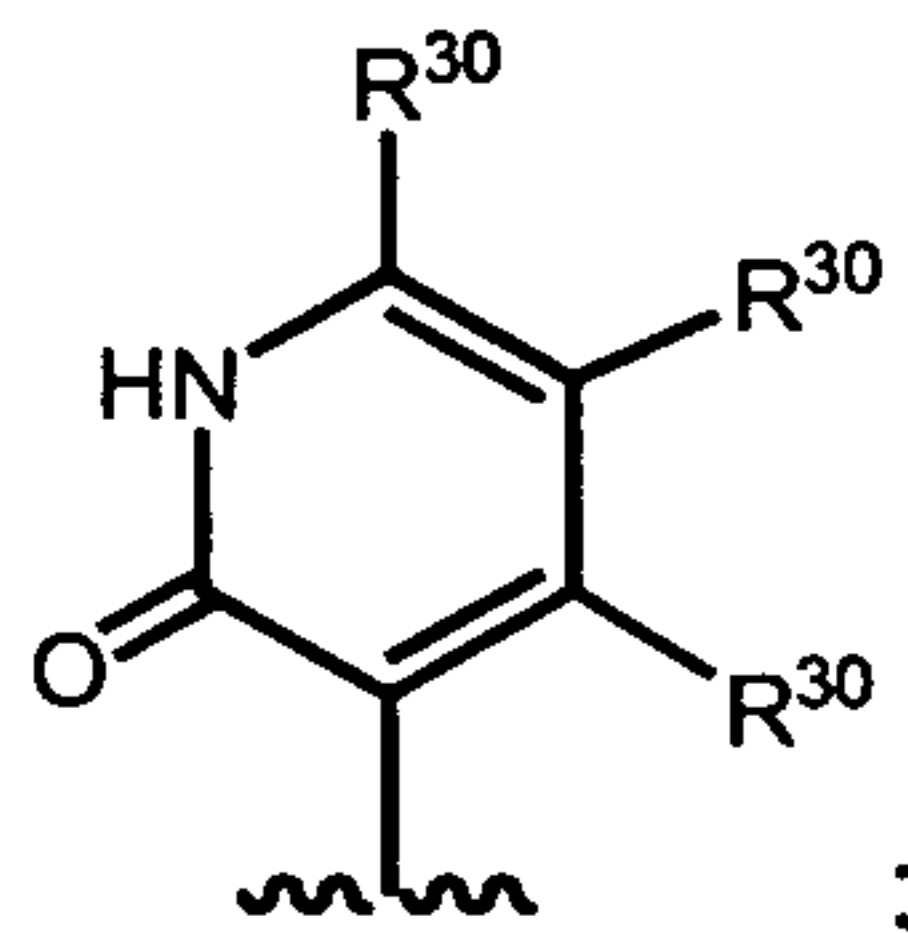
;

and R⁶ is alkyl, cycloalkyl, halo or hydroxy.10 In still another embodiment, R¹ is -[C(R¹²)₂]_r; R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂;R³ is :, and R¹⁰ is aryl or heteroaryl;In one embodiment, R¹ is -[C(R¹²)₂]_r; R² R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂;and R³ is :

36

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

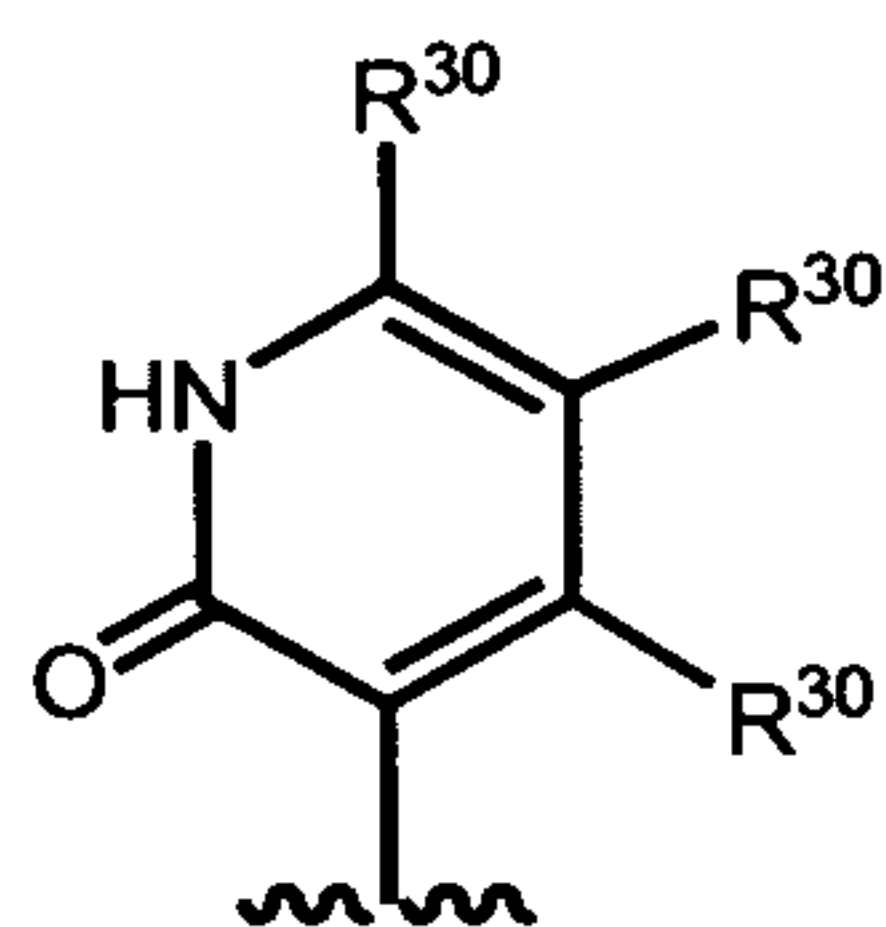
R^3 is :



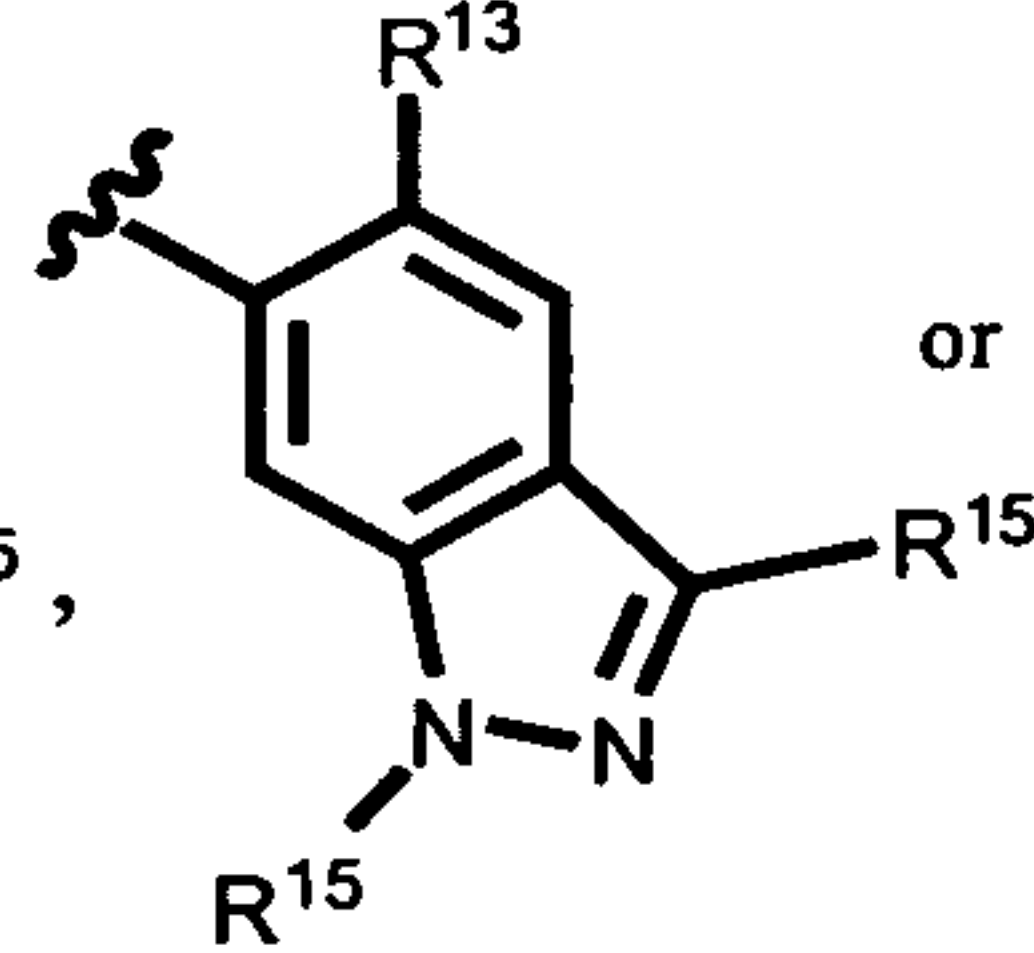
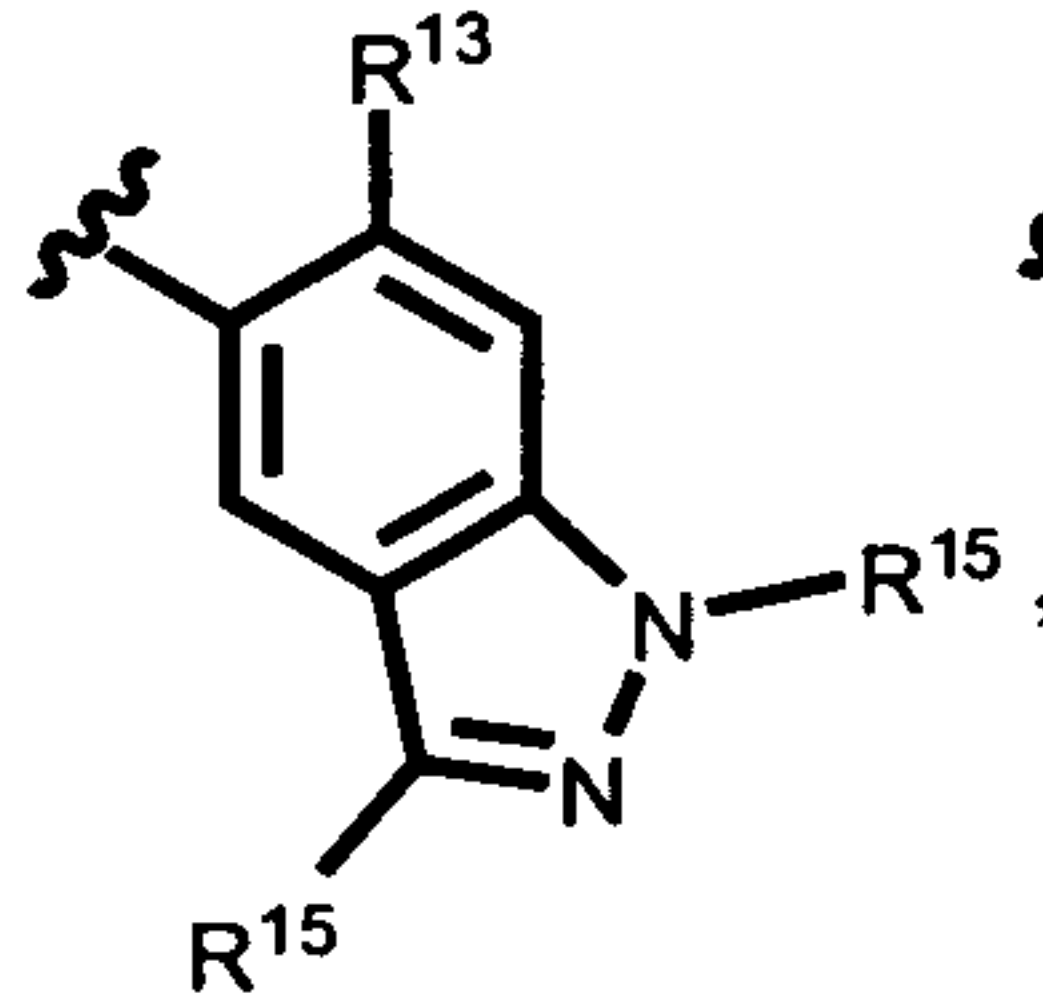
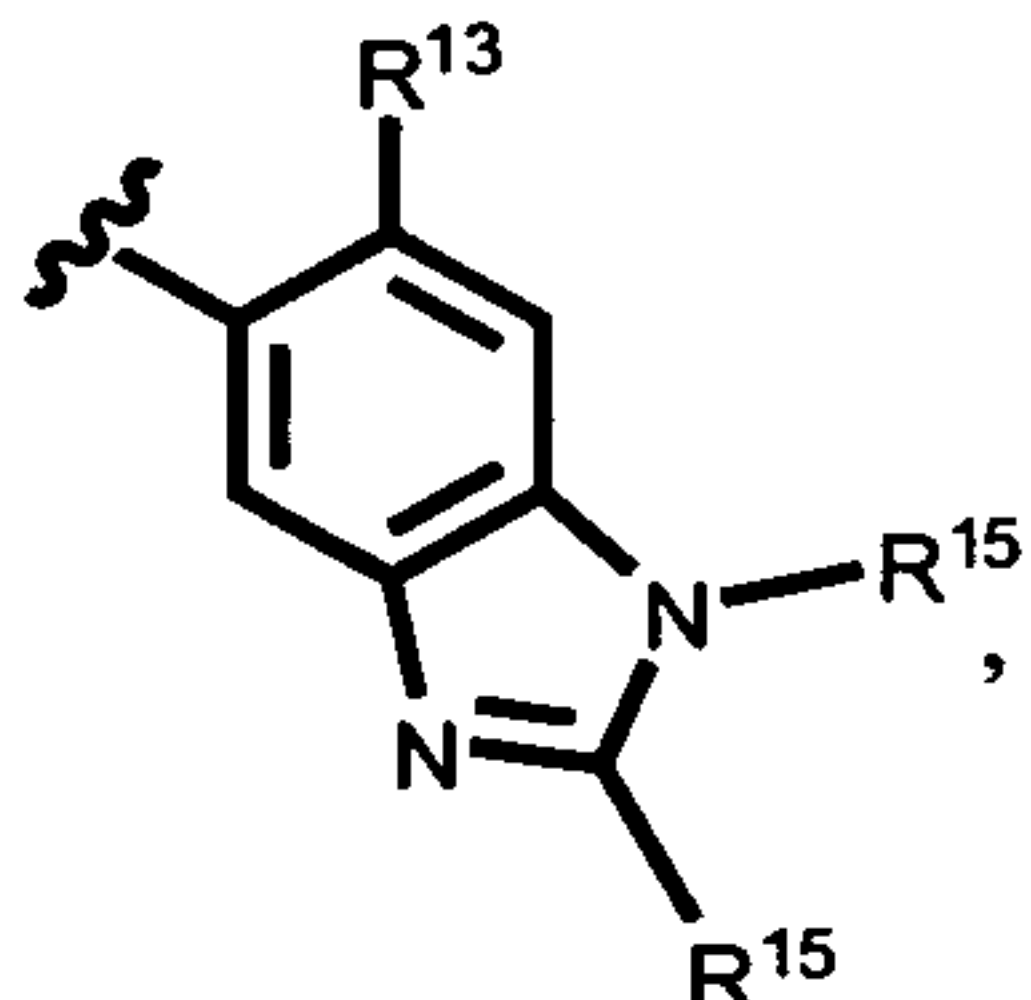
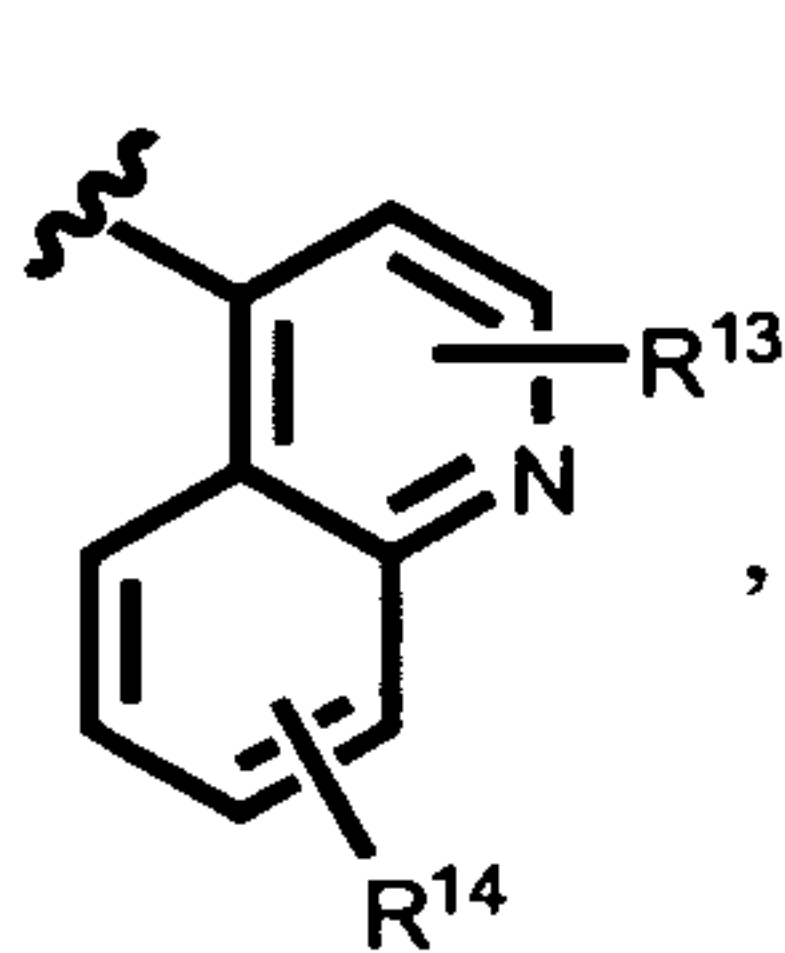
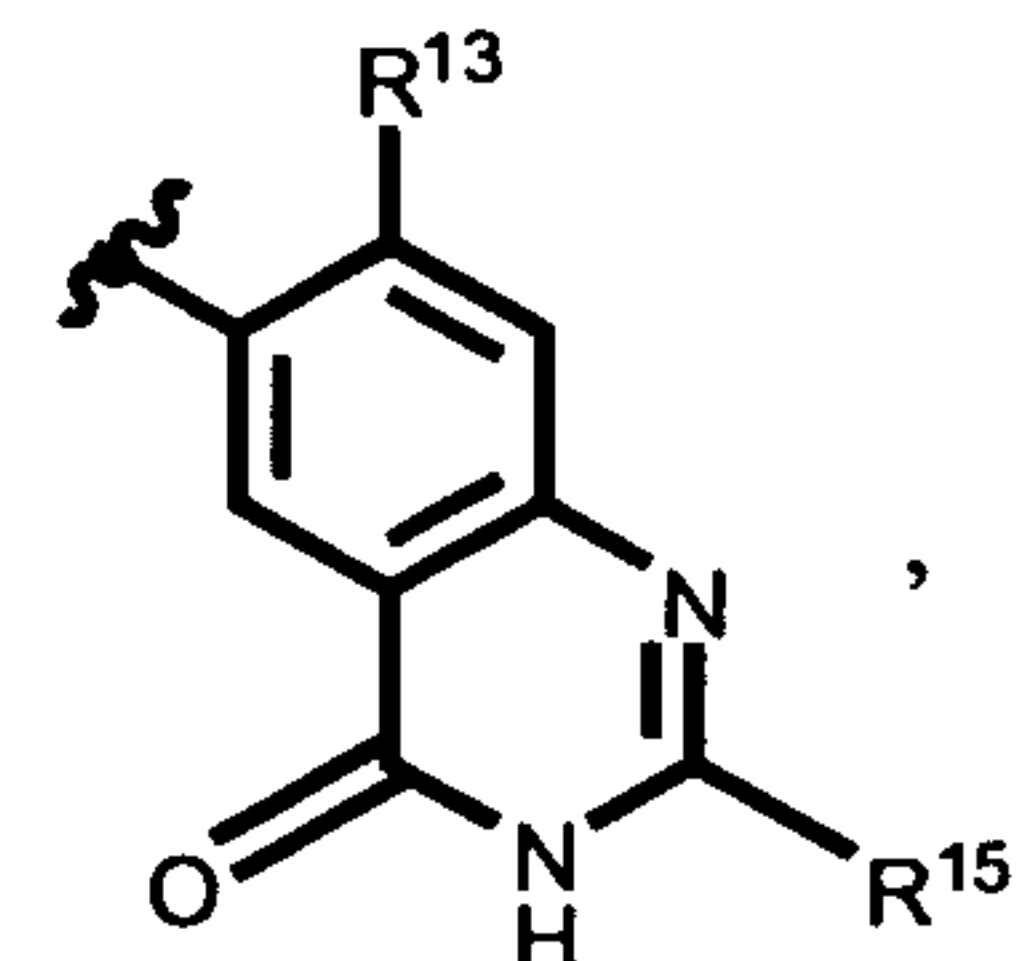
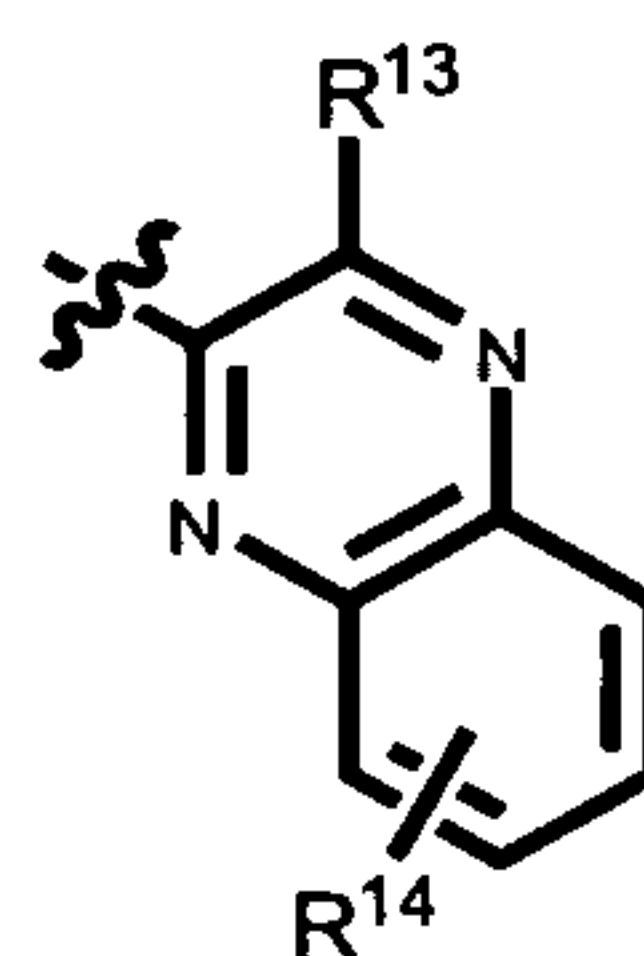
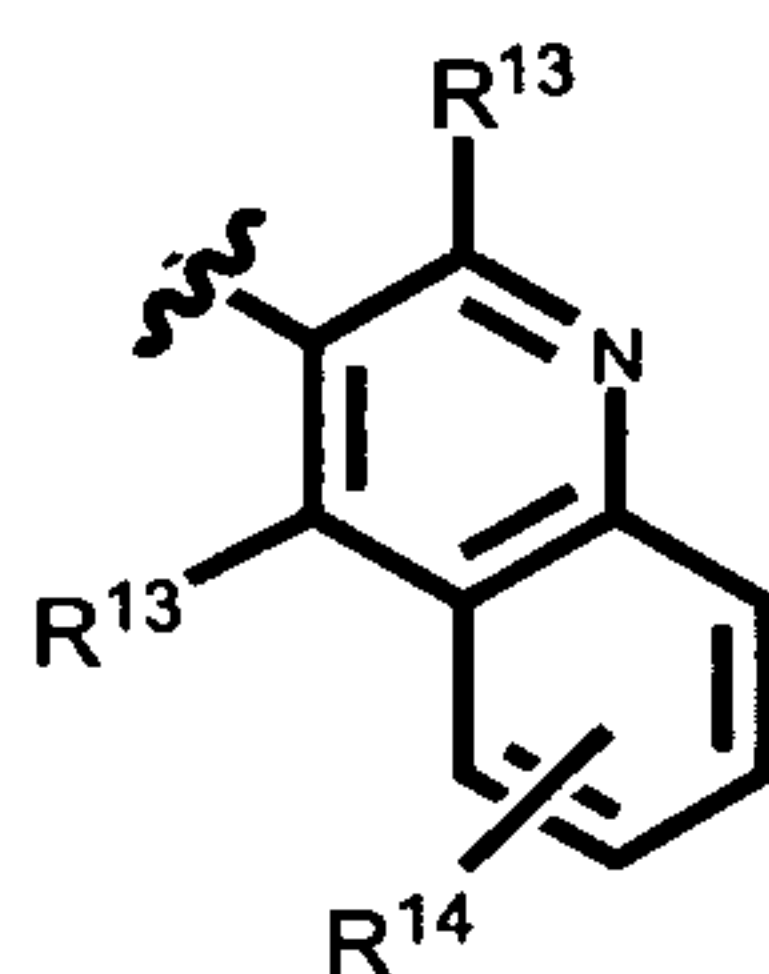
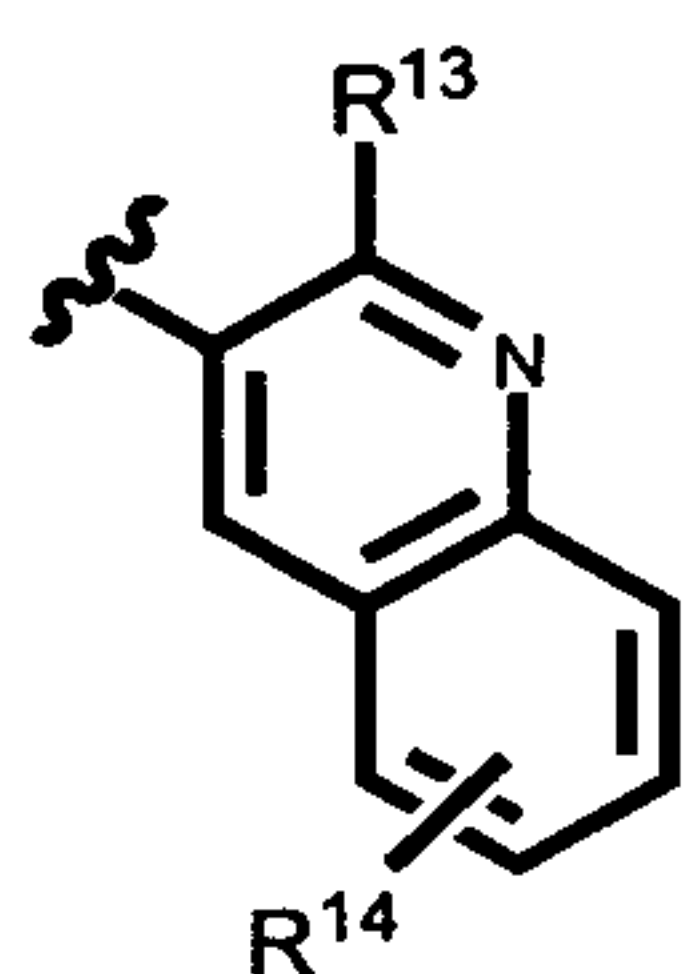
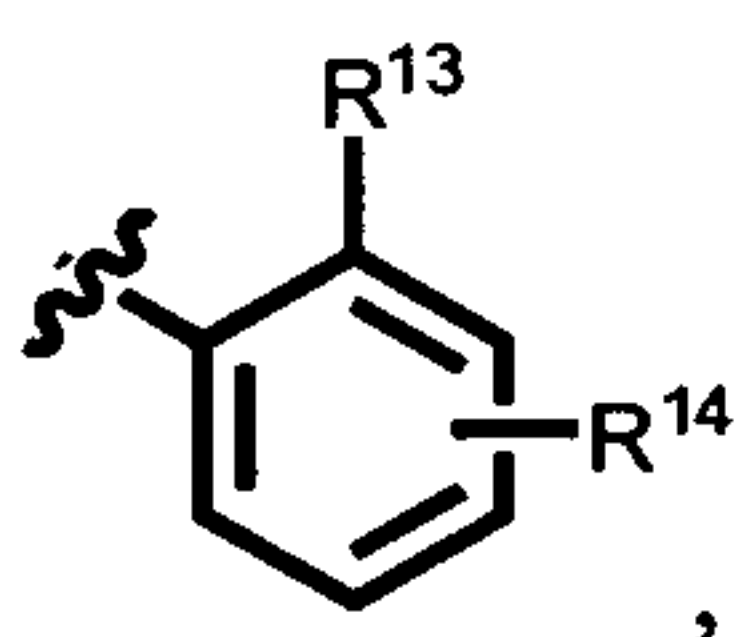
and R^{10} is phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolinyll or quinoxalinyll, each of which can be optionally substituted as set forth in claim 1;

In yet another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

R^3 is :



; and R^{10} is:

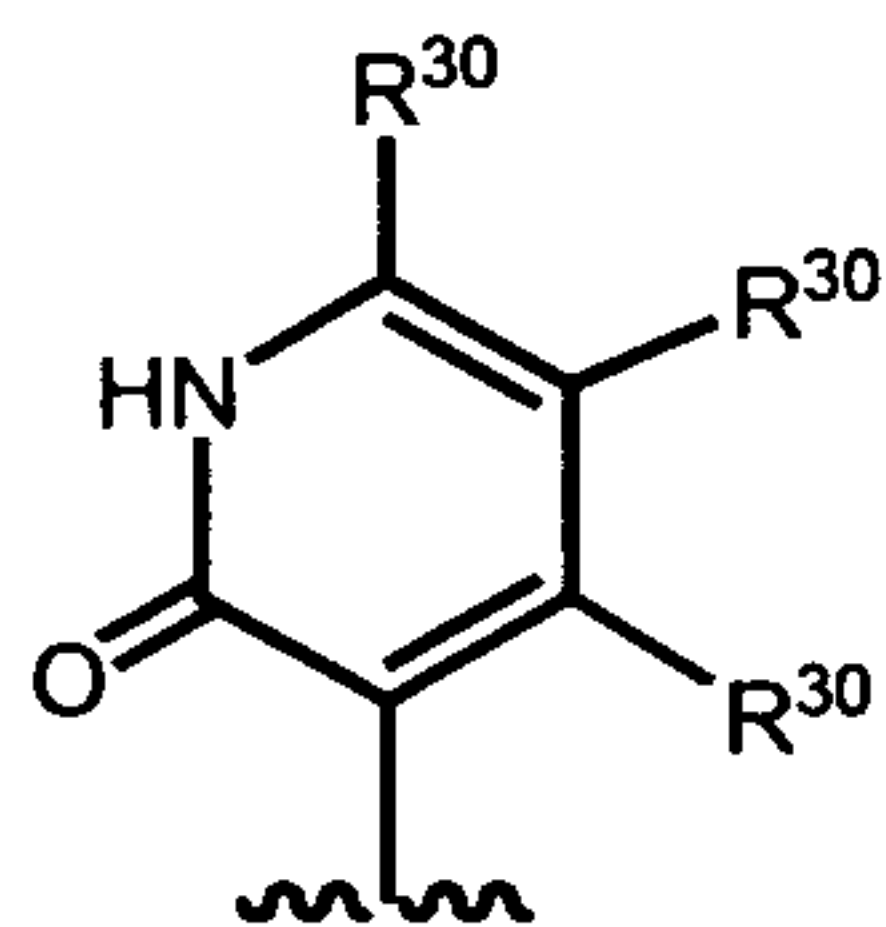


or

- 10 wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -
- 15 alkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

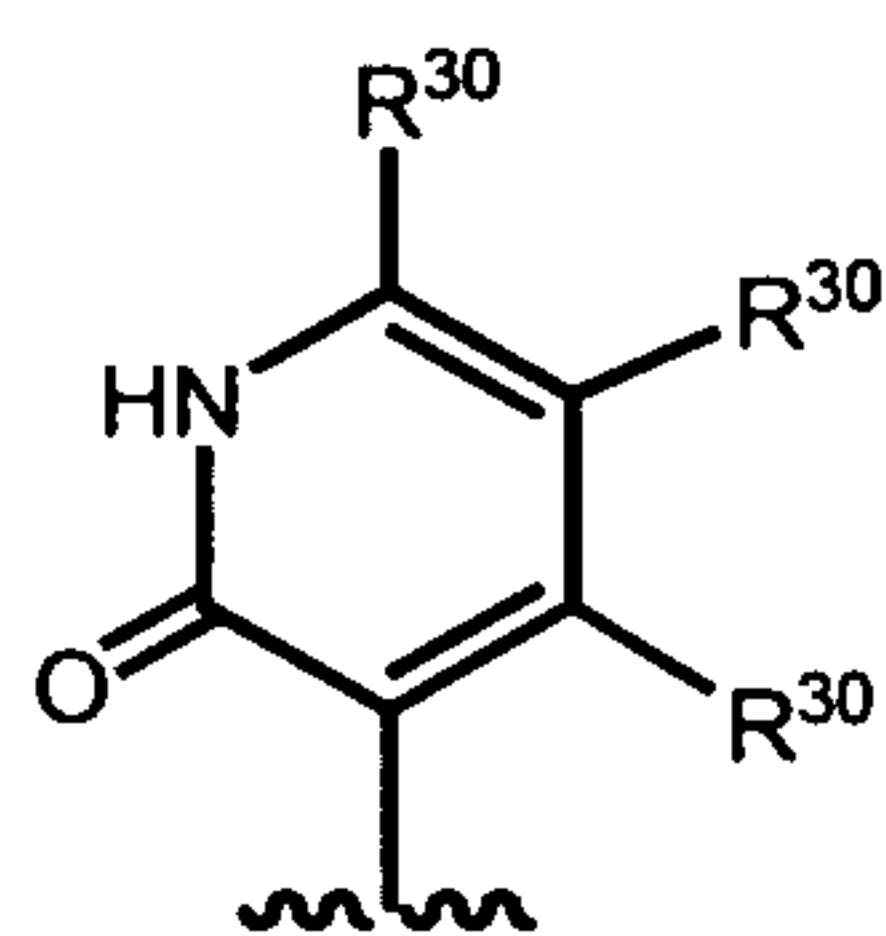
R^3 is :



; R^5 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN; R^6 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN; and R^{10} is phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolinyl or quinoxaliny, each of which can be optionally substituted as set forth in claim 1.

In a further embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

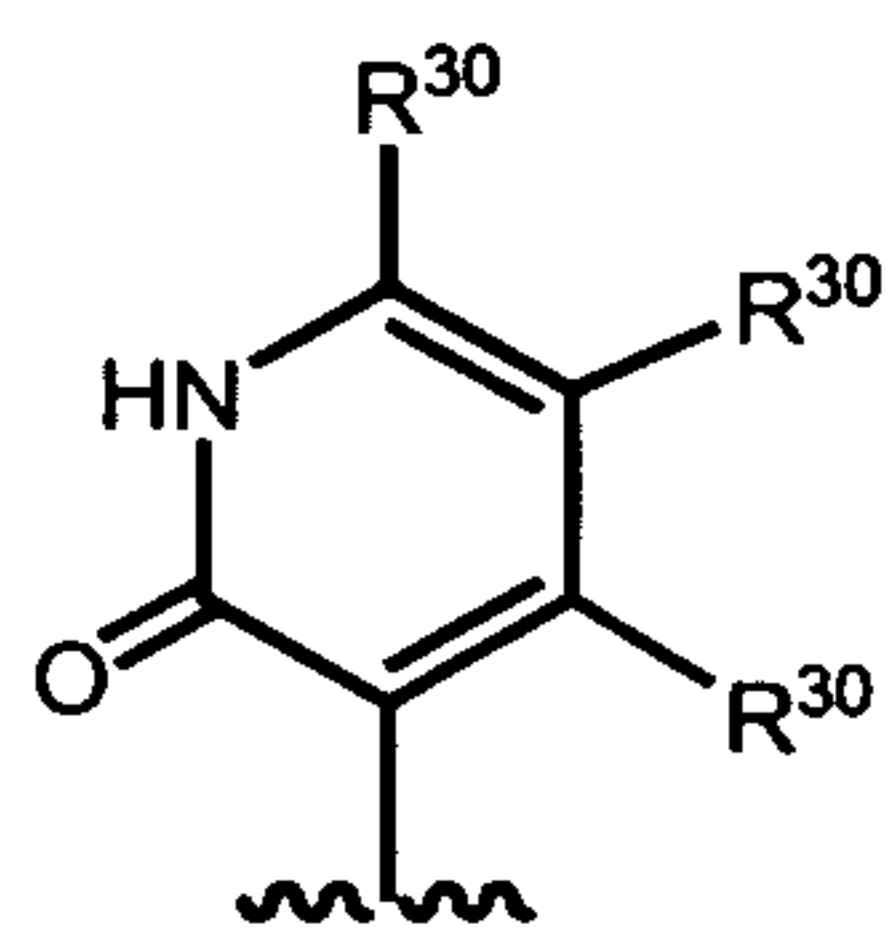
R^3 is :



; R^5 is H, methyl, ethyl or cyclopropyl; R^6 is H, F or hydroxy; and R^{10} is phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolinyl or quinoxaliny, each of which can be optionally substituted as set forth in claim 1.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

R^3 is :

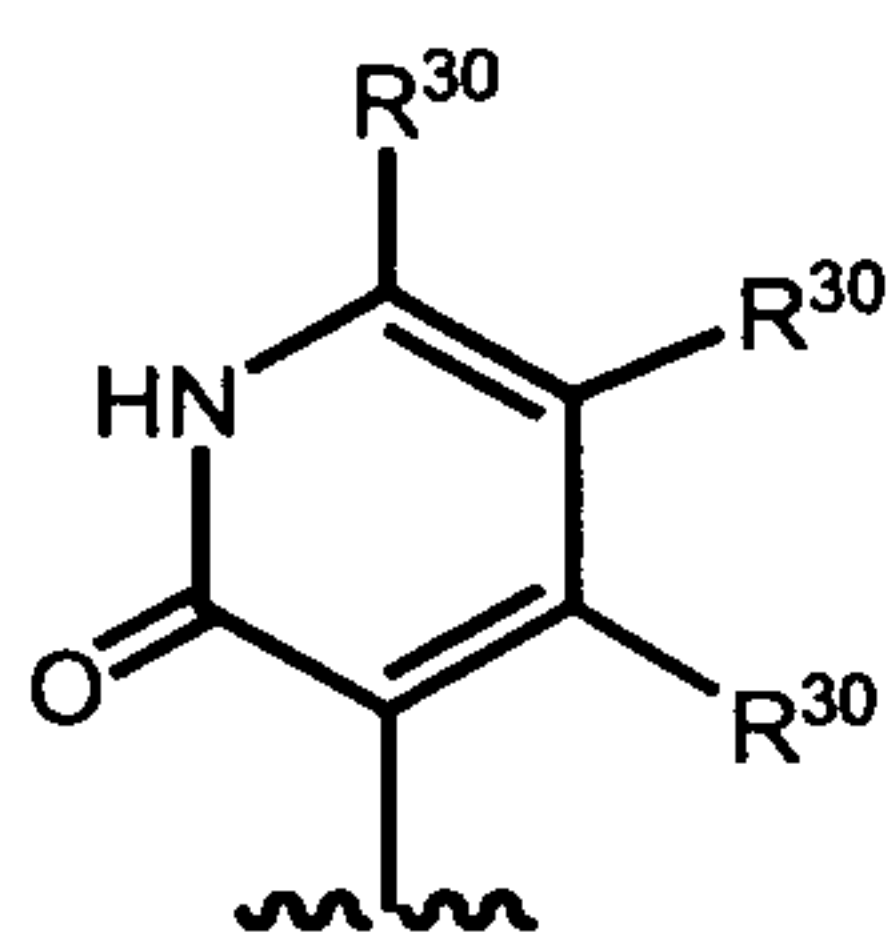


; R^9 is H, methyl or ethyl; R^{10} is phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolinyl or quinoxaliny, each of which can be optionally substituted as set forth in claim 1; and R^{11} is methyl, ethyl, cyclopropyl or phenyl.

In one embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

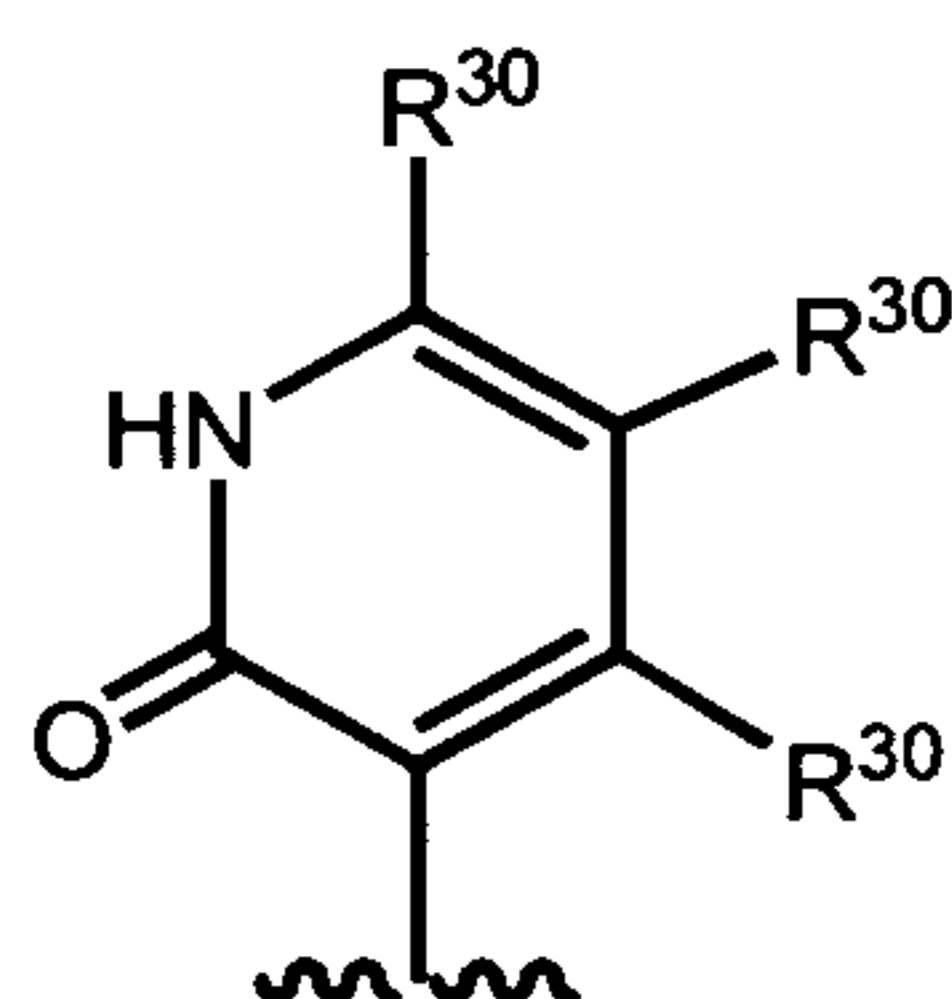
R^3 is :

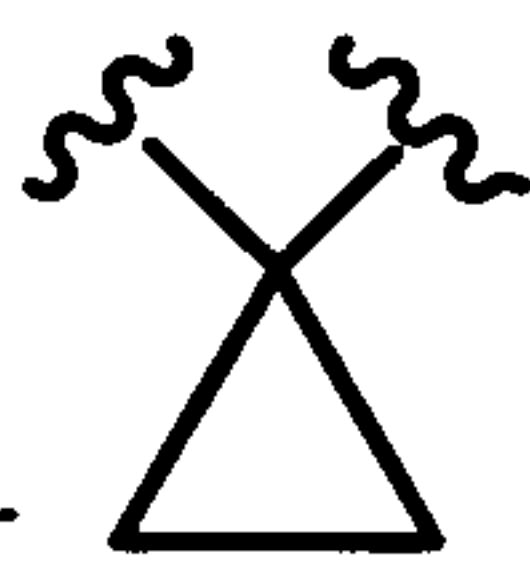
38

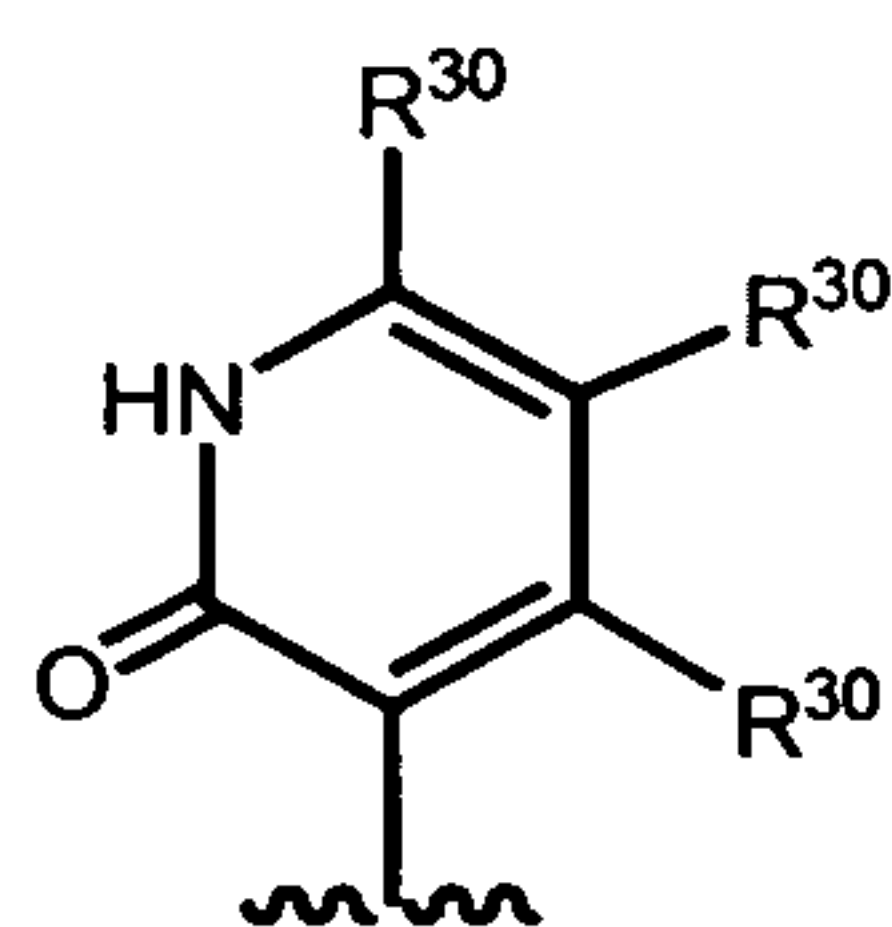


; R^9 is H, methyl or ethyl; R^{10} is phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinoliny or quinoxaliny, each of which can be optionally substituted as set forth in claim 1; and R^{11} is methyl, cyclopropyl or phenyl.

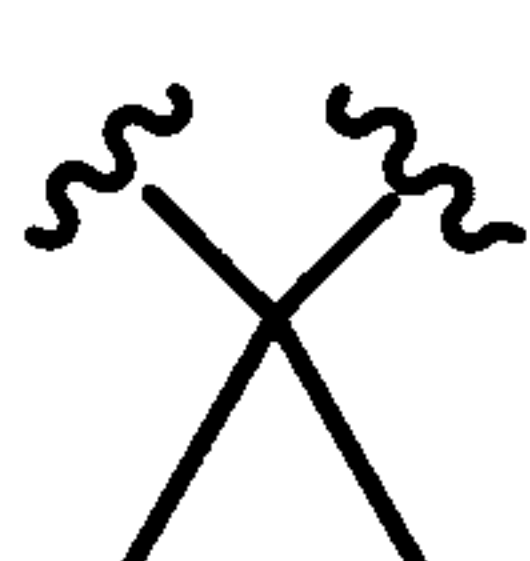
- 5 In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; and R^3 is

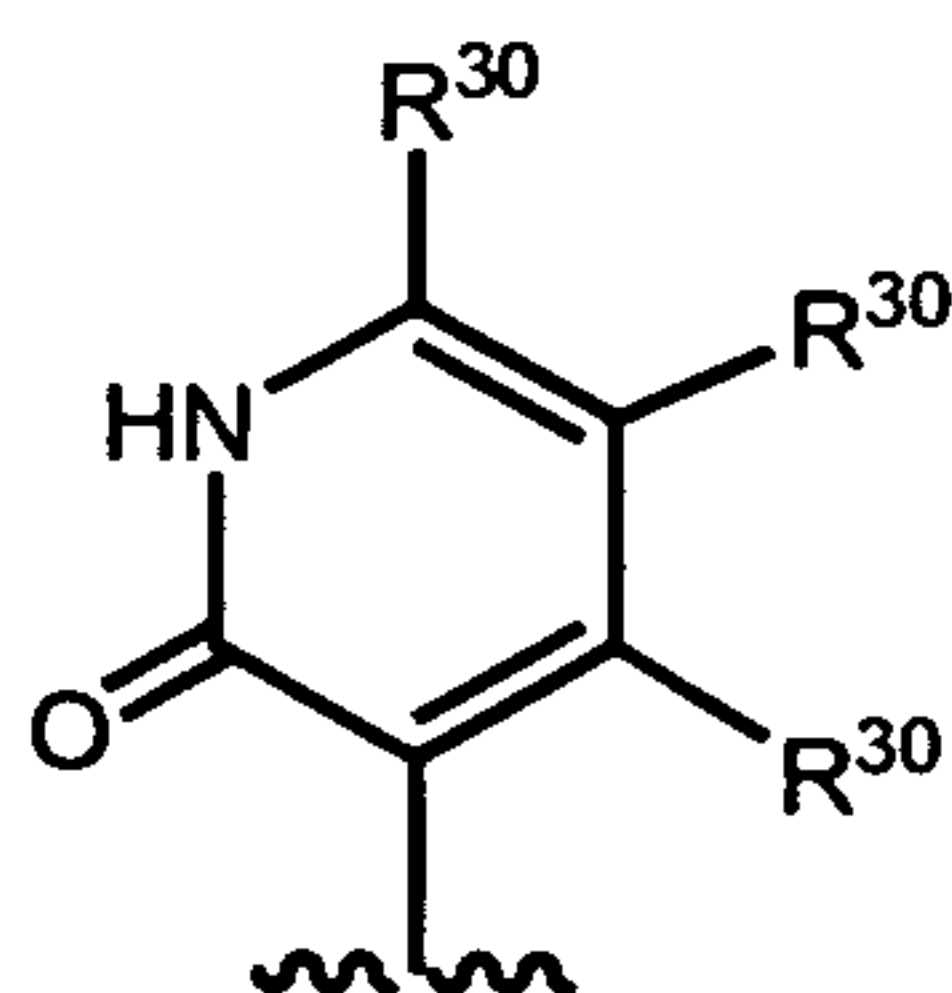


In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or ; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; and R^3 is :

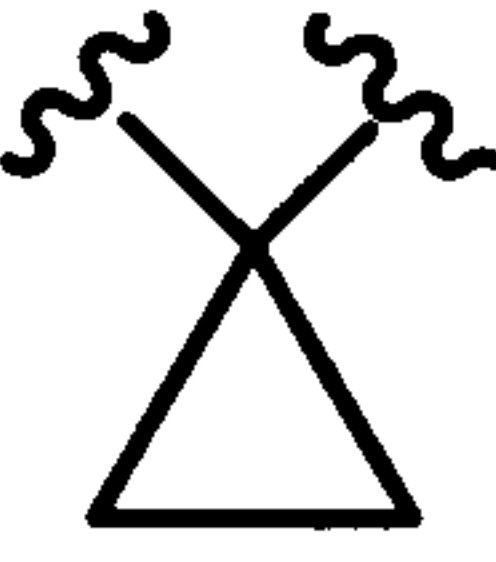


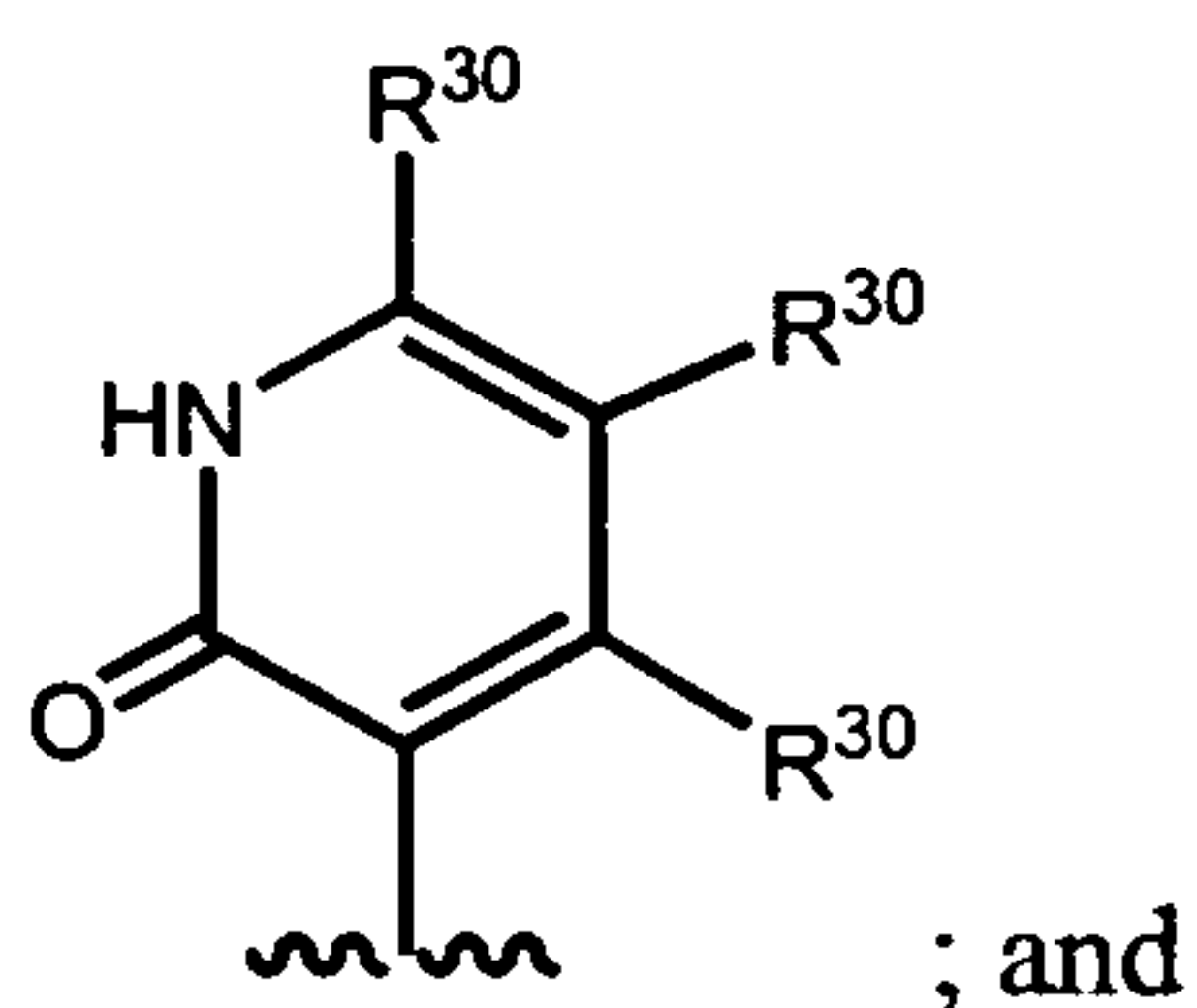
10

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$ or ; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; and R^3 is

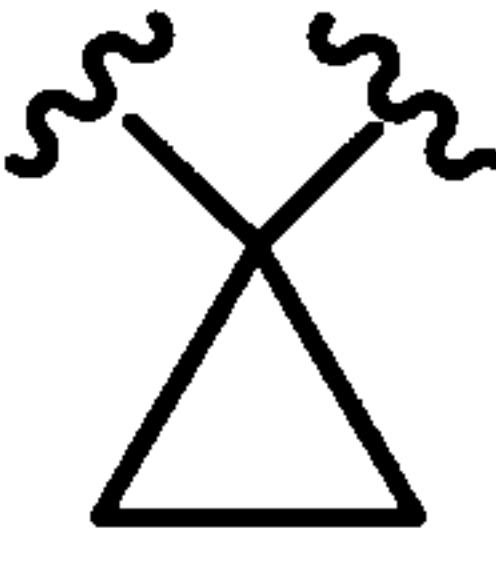


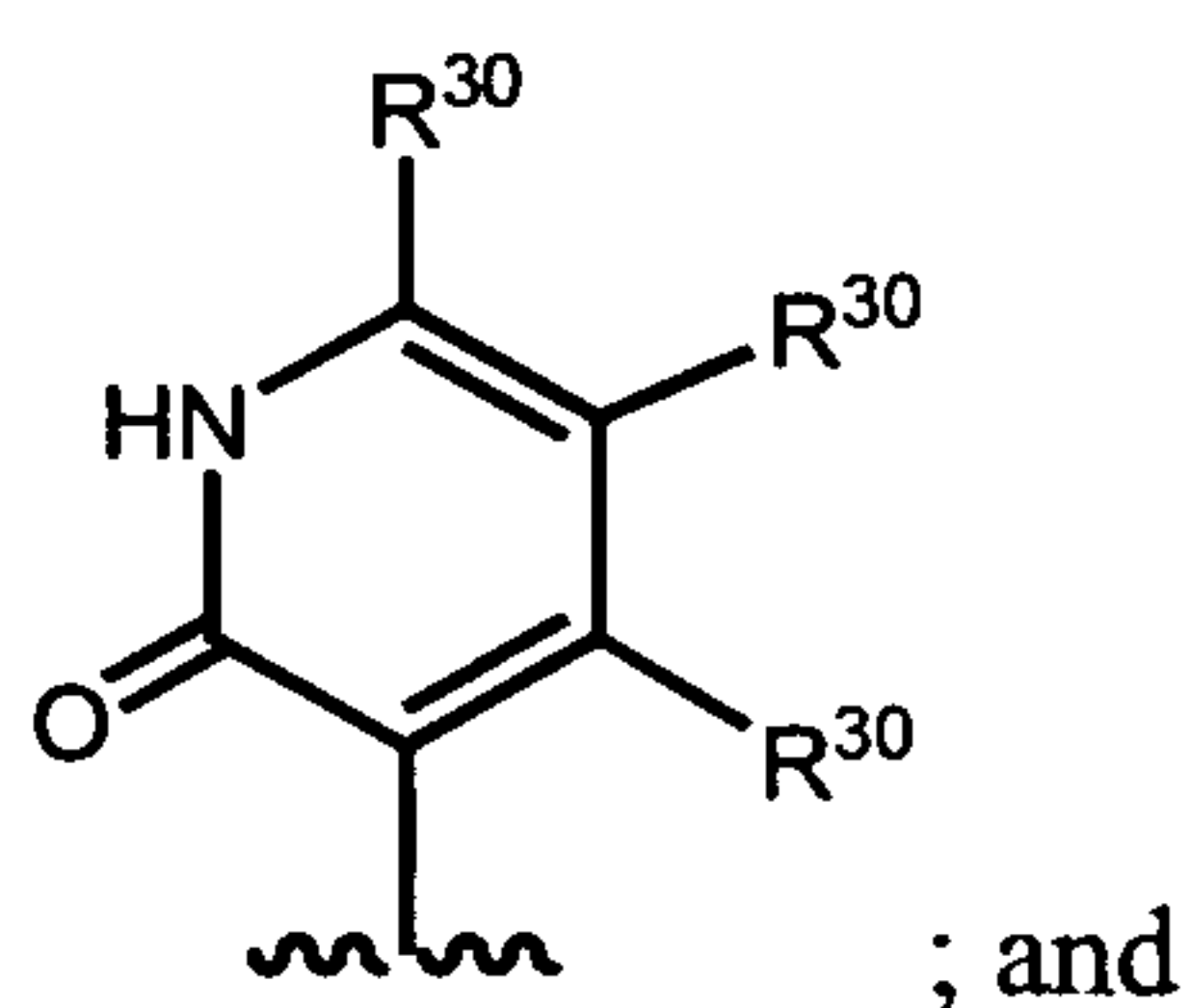
39

In one embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$ or ; R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^9)_2$; R^3 is

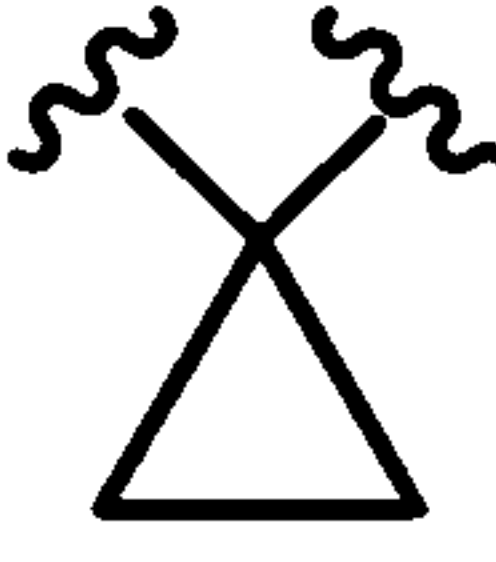


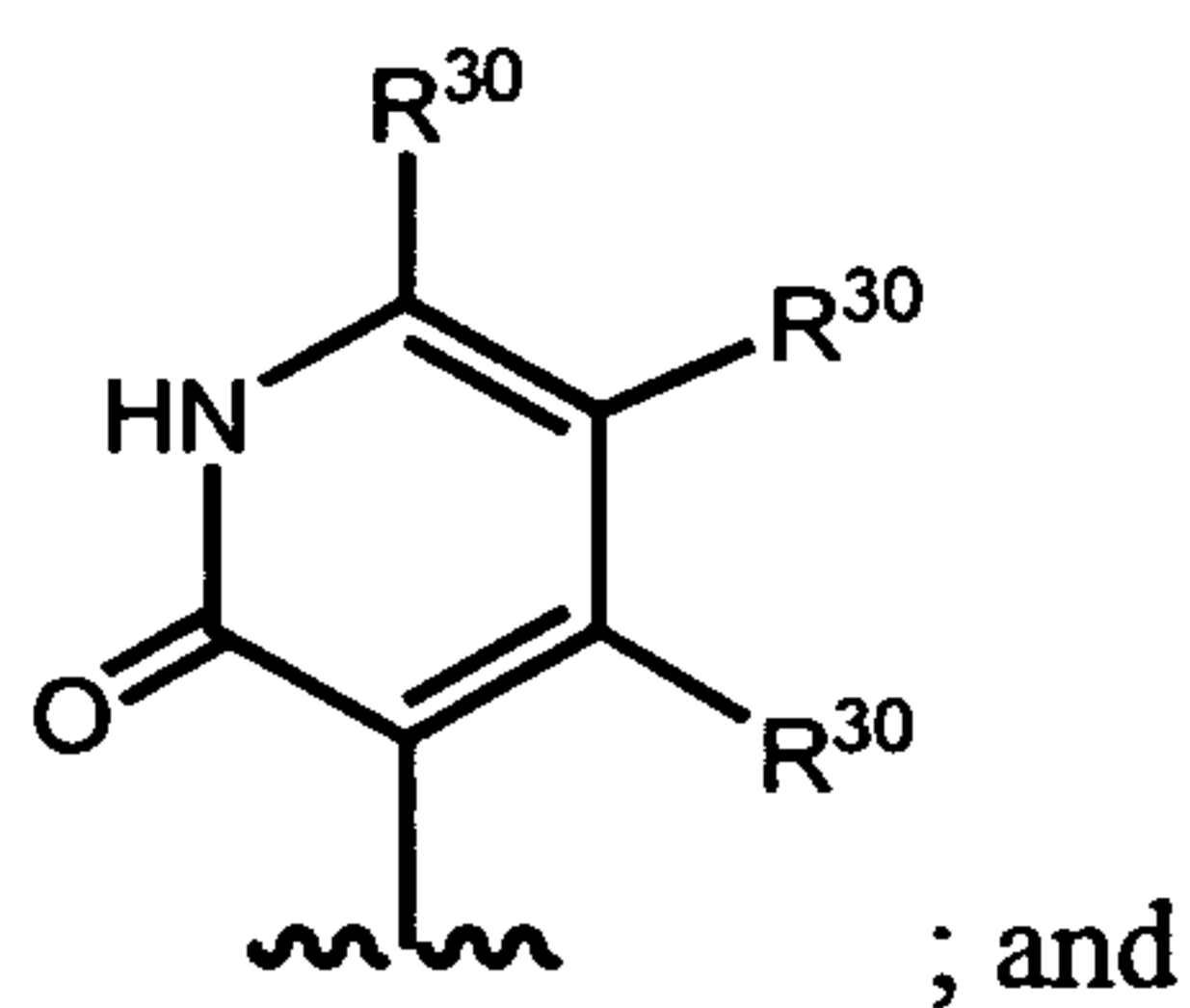
R^{10} is aryl or heteroaryl.

5 In one embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$ or ; R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^9)_2$; R^3 is



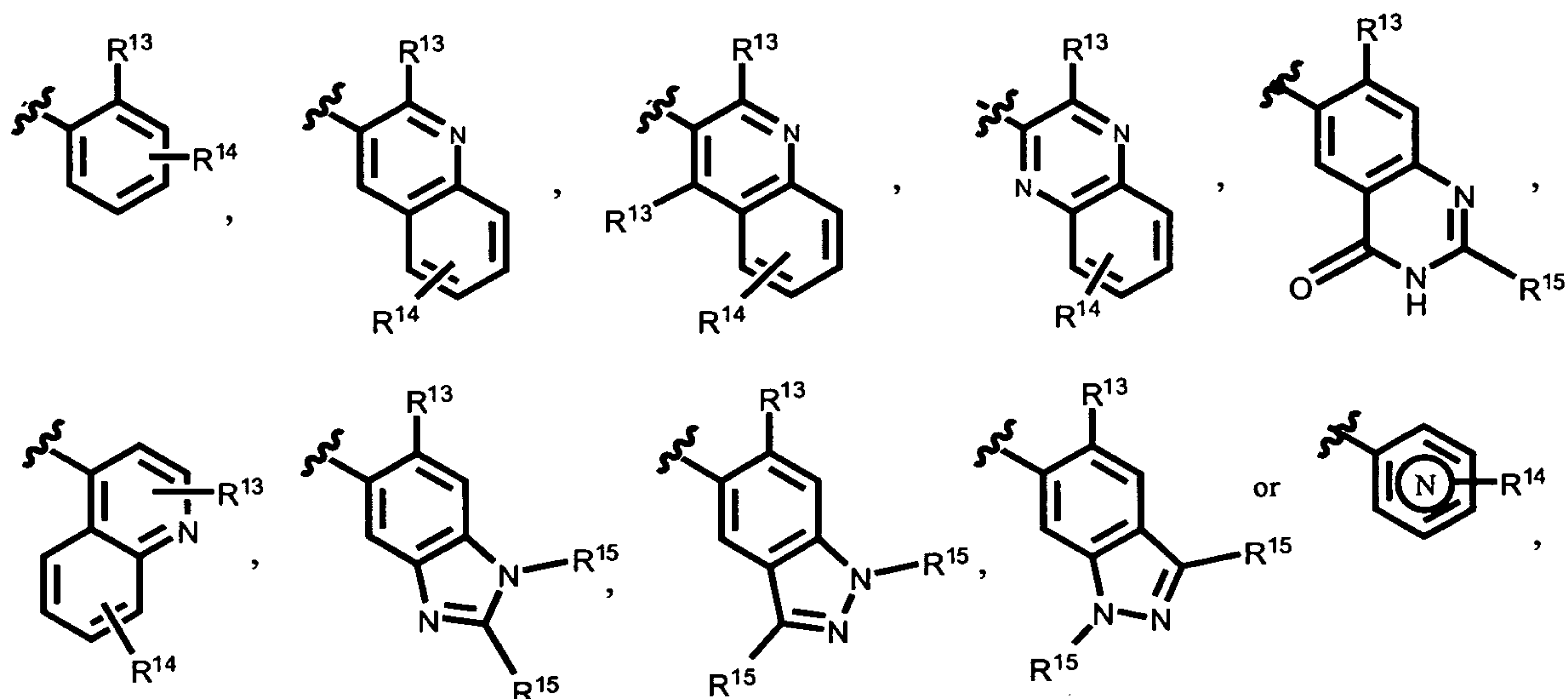
R^{10} is phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinoliny, or quinoxaliny, each of which can be optionally substituted as set forth in formula (I).

10 In one embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$ or ; R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^9)_2$; R^3 is

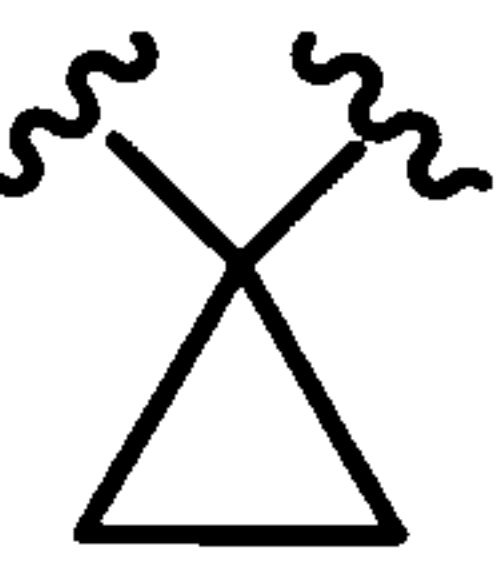


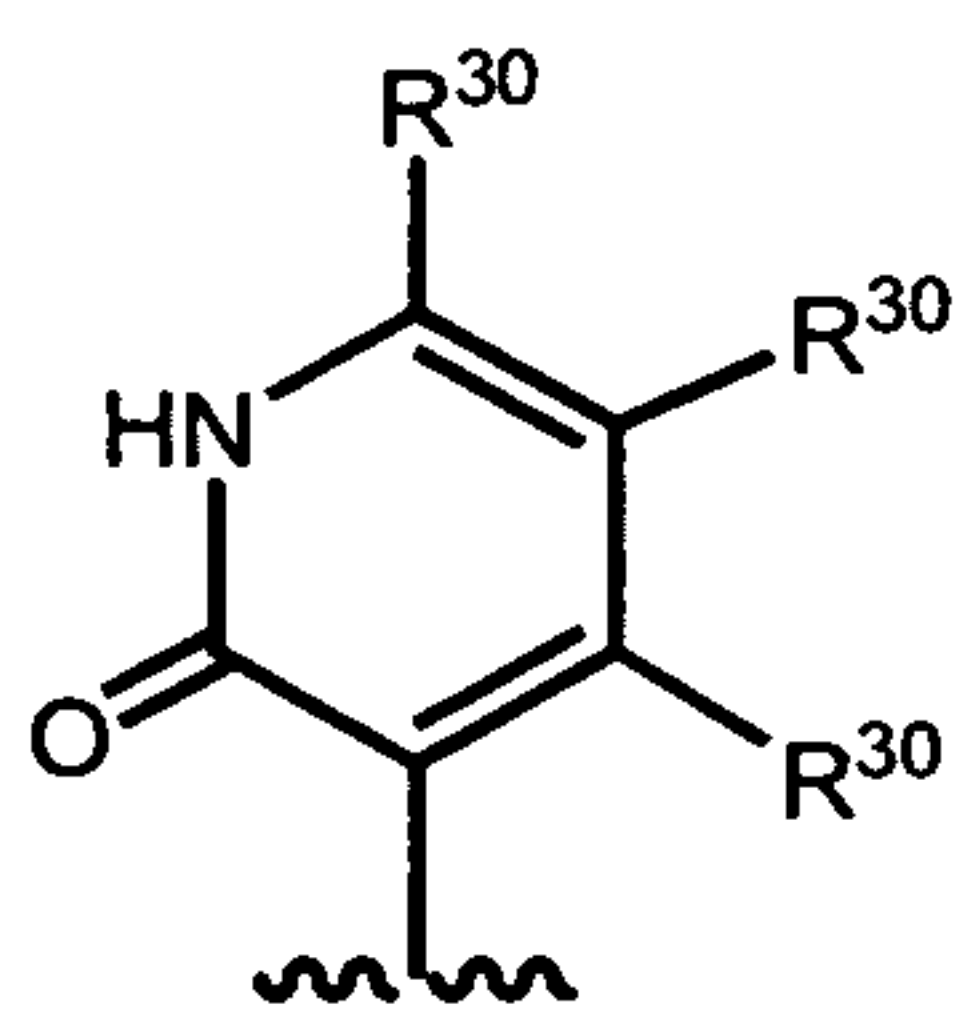
R^{10} is

40



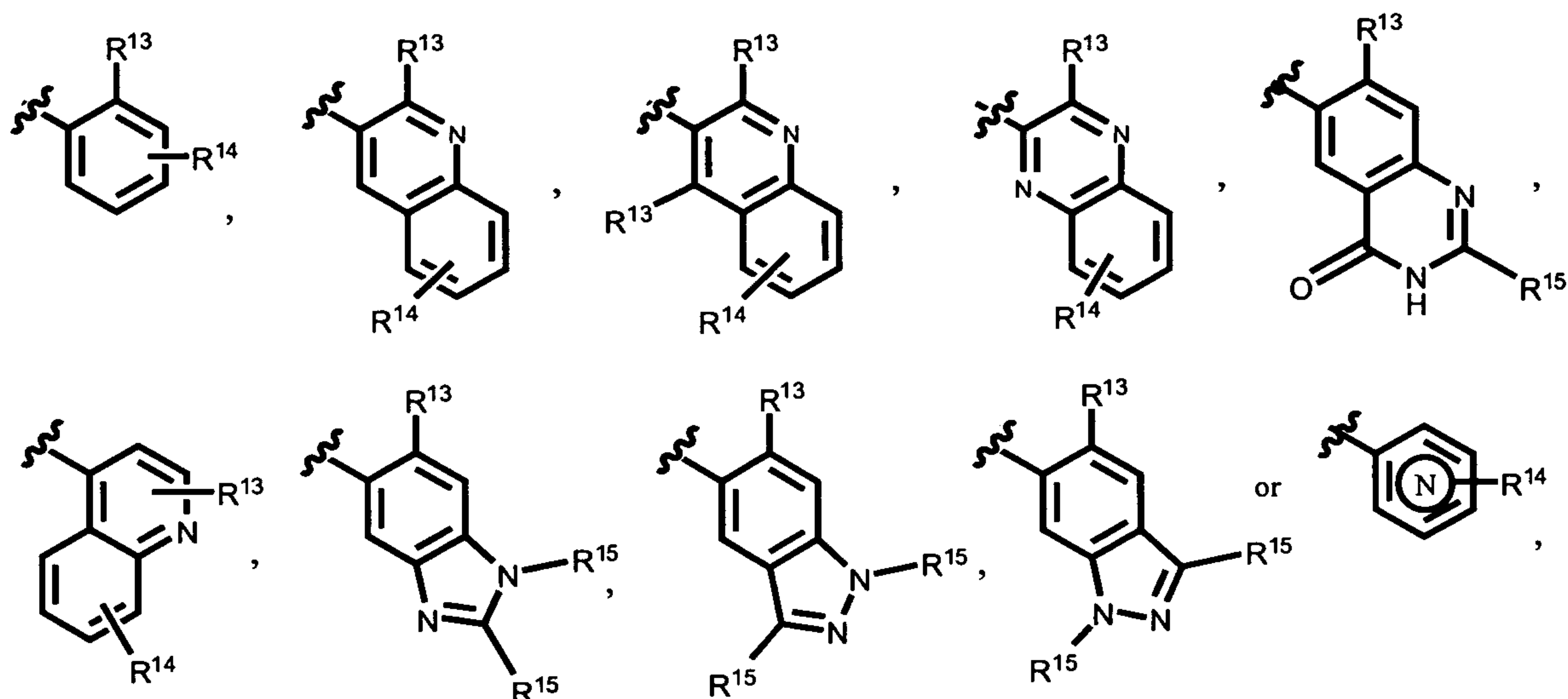
wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

10 In another embodiment, R^1 is -CH₂- or ; R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂; R^3 is

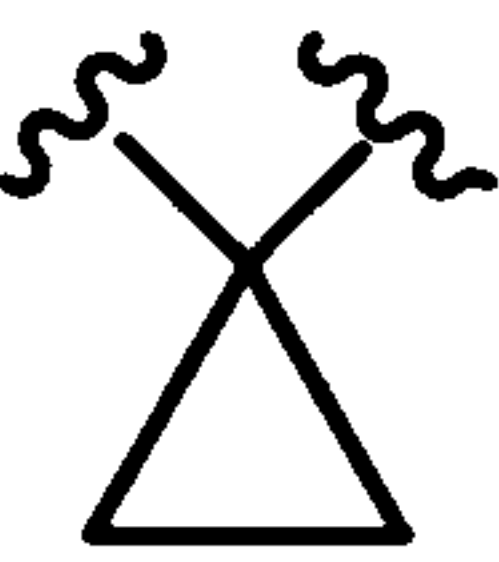


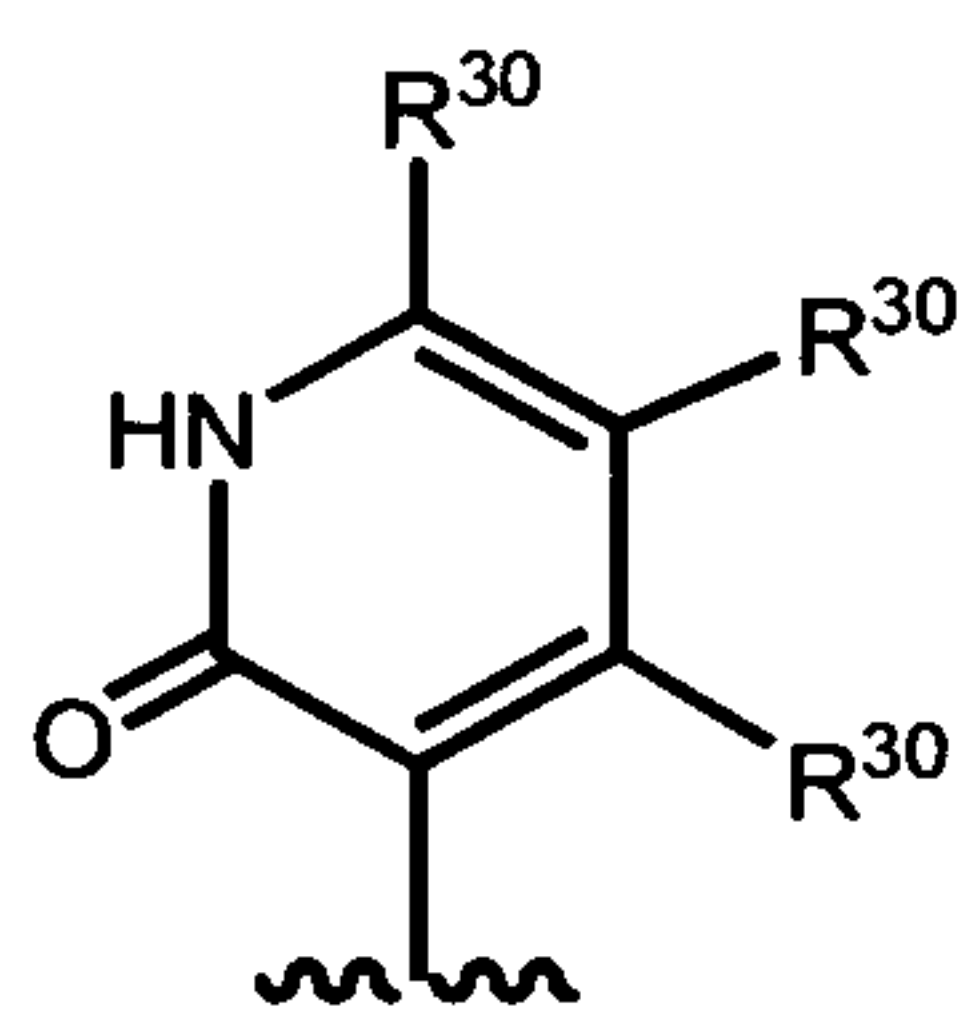
; R^5 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, halo or hydroxy; R^6 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, halo or hydroxy; and R^{10} is

41



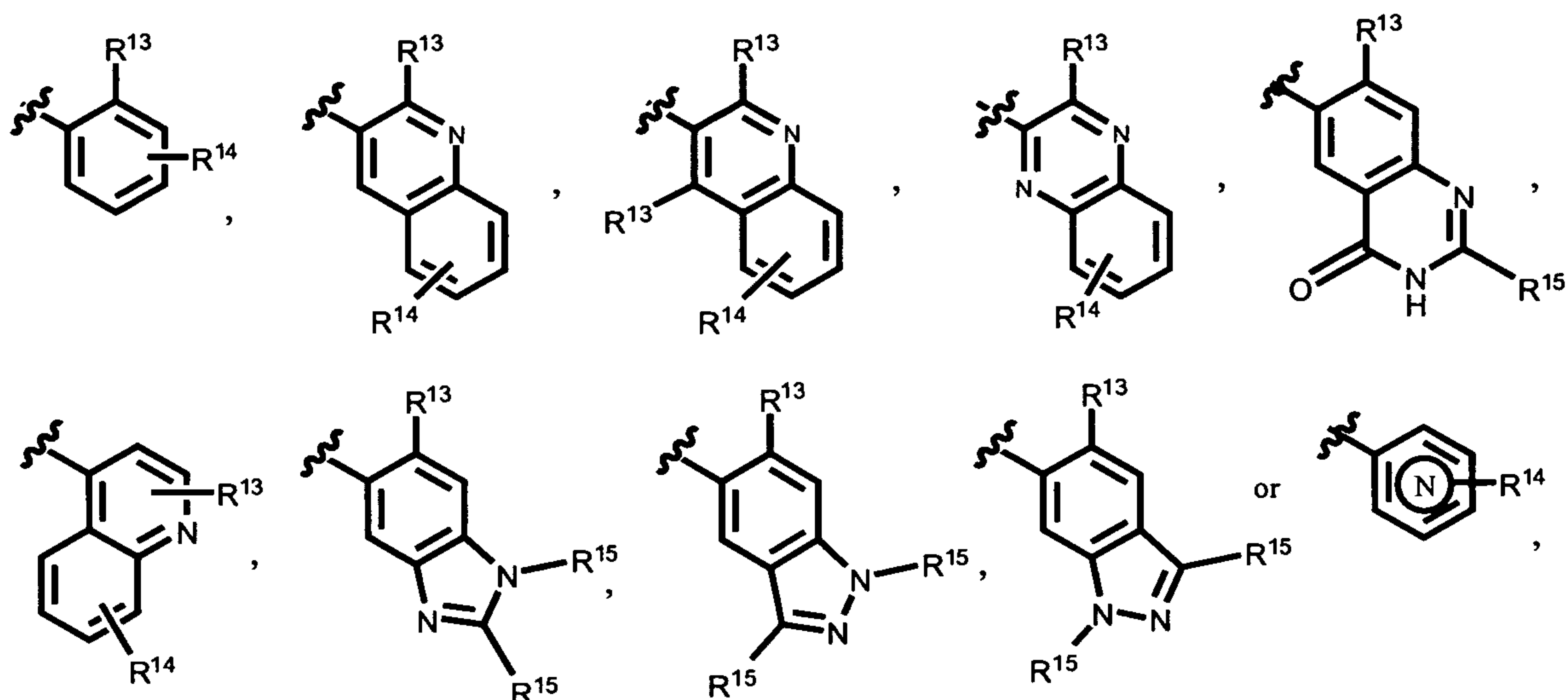
wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂alkyl, -SO₂NHalkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

10 In another embodiment, R^1 is -CH₂- or ; R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂; R^3 is

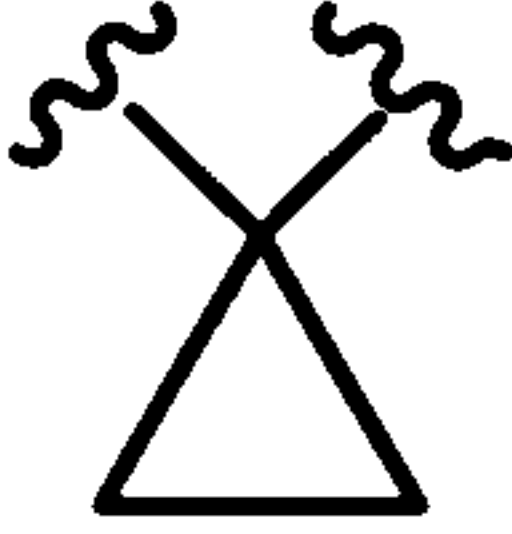


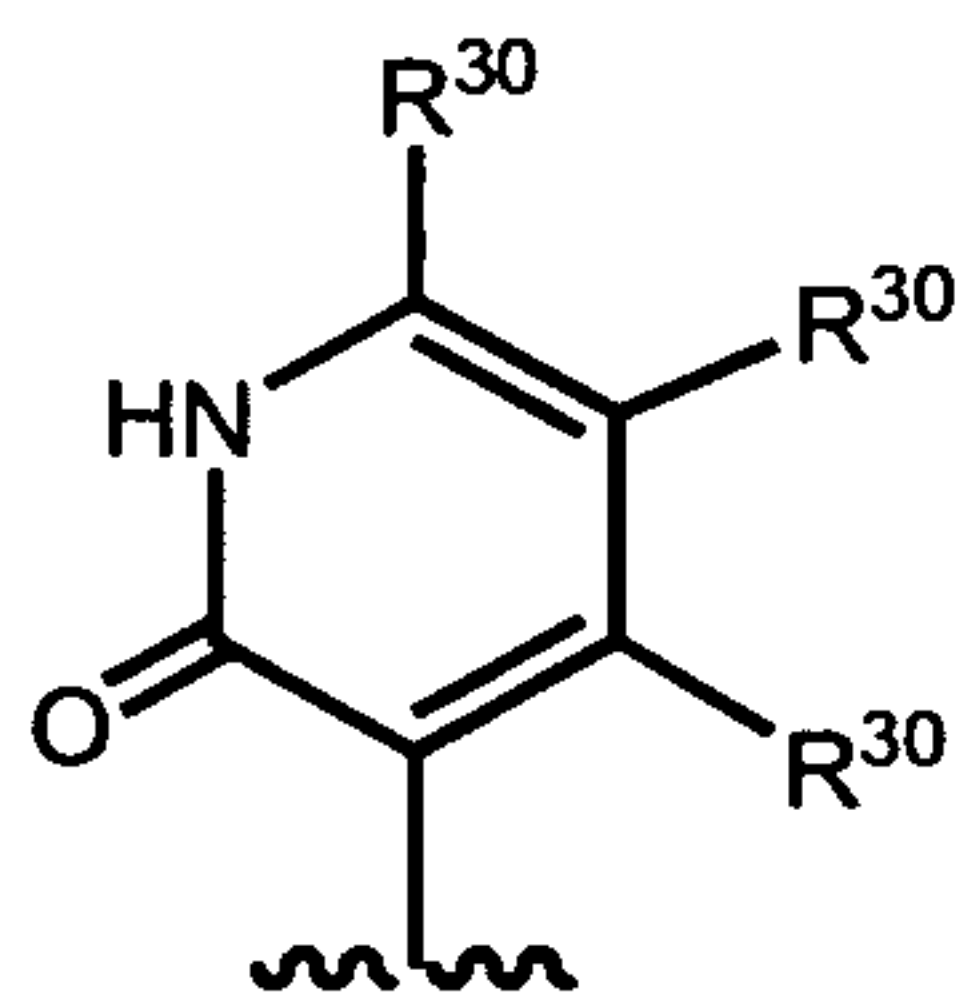
; R^5 is methyl, ethyl or cyclopropyl; R^6 is H, F or hydroxy; and R^{10} is

42



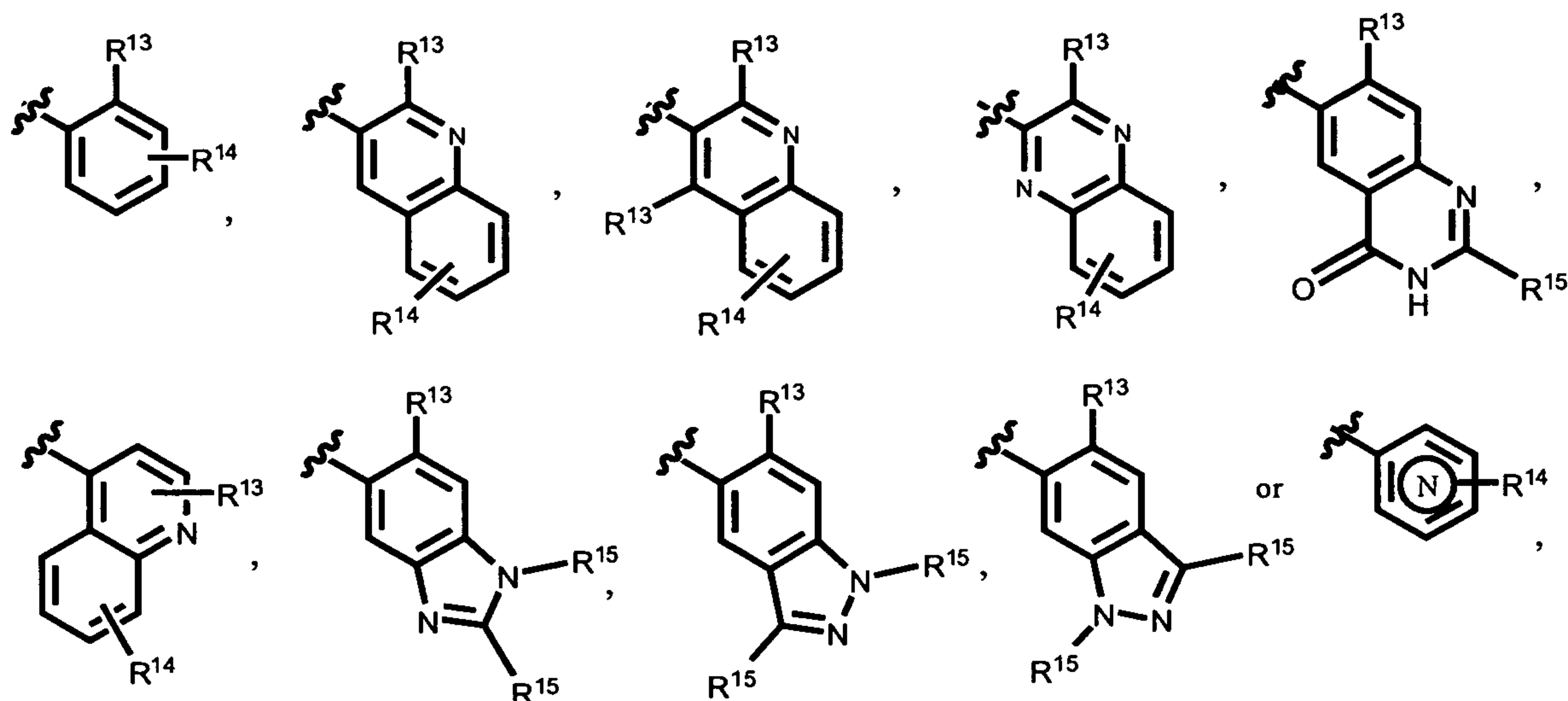
wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

10 In still another embodiment, R^1 is -CH₂- or ; R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂; R^3 is

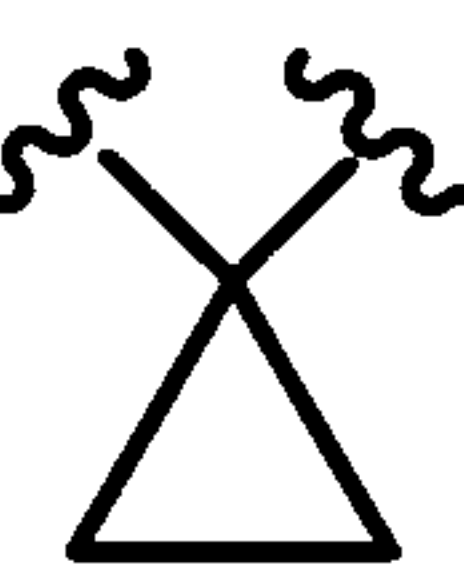


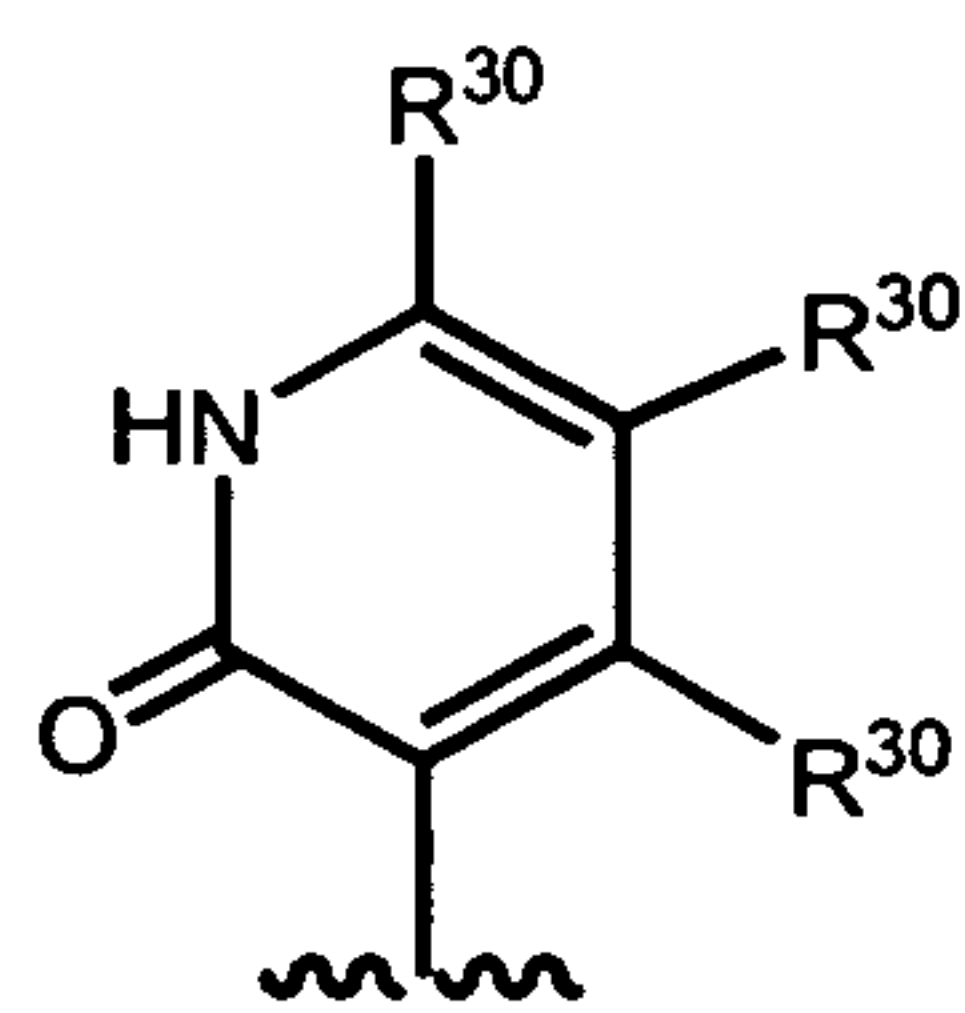
; R^9 is H, methyl or ethyl; R^{10} is

43



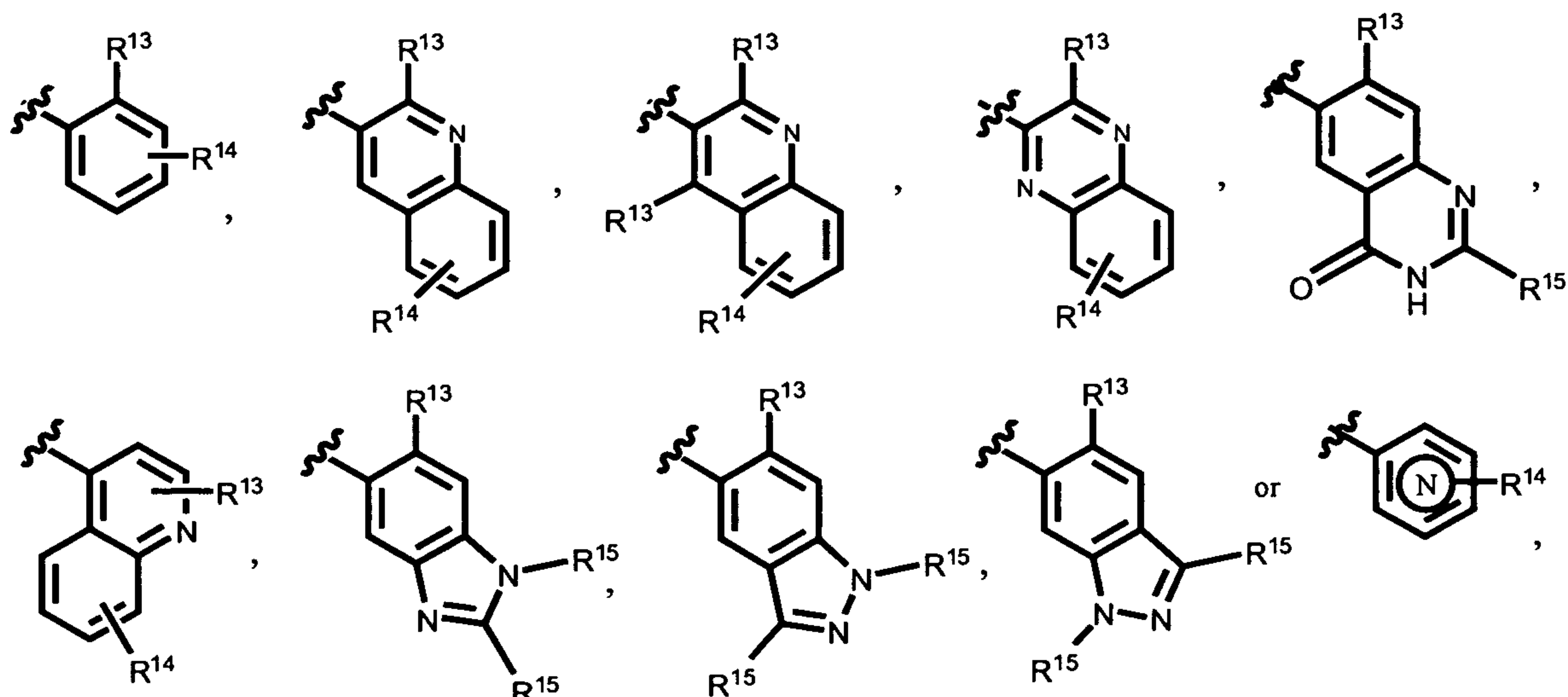
wherein R¹³ is F or Cl; R¹⁴ represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R¹⁵ is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and R¹¹ is methyl, ethyl, cyclopropyl or phenyl.

In another embodiment, R¹ is -CH₂- or ; R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂; R³ is



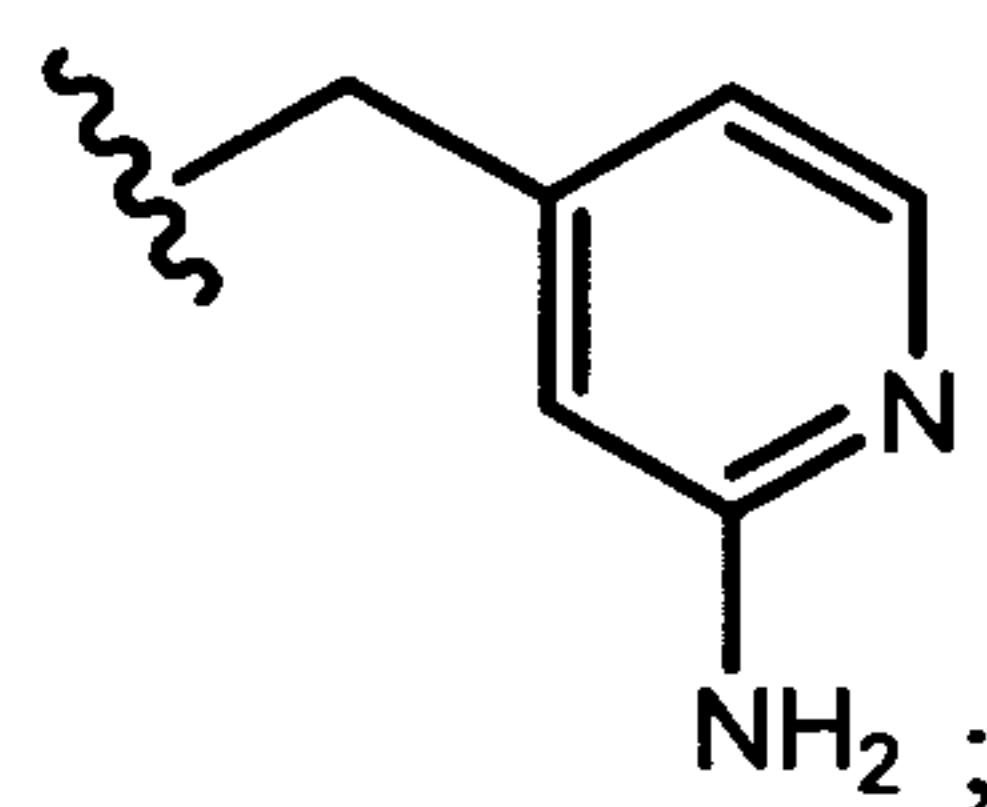
; R⁹ is H, methyl or ethyl; R¹⁰ is

44

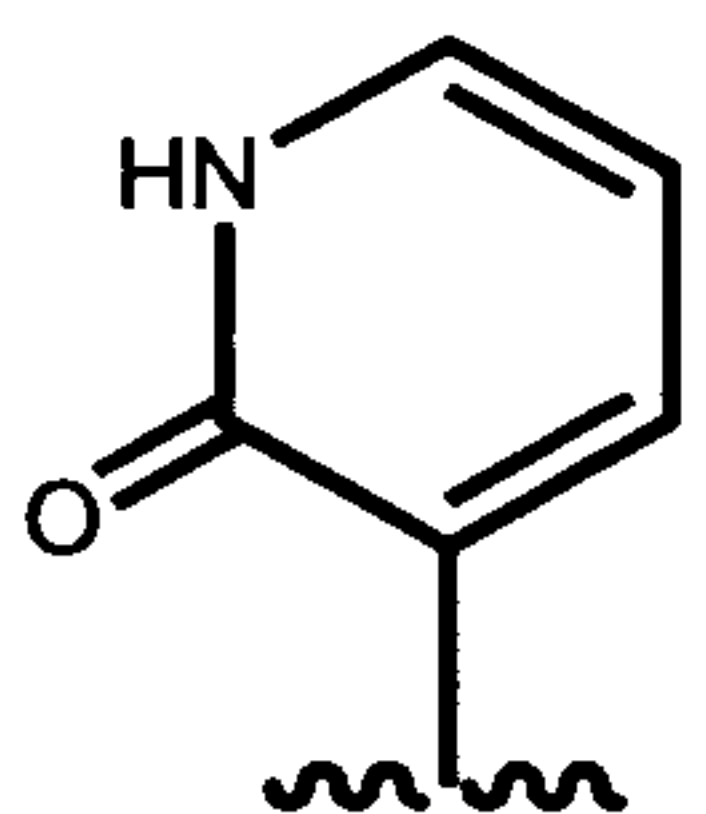


wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and R^{11} is methyl, ethyl or phenyl.

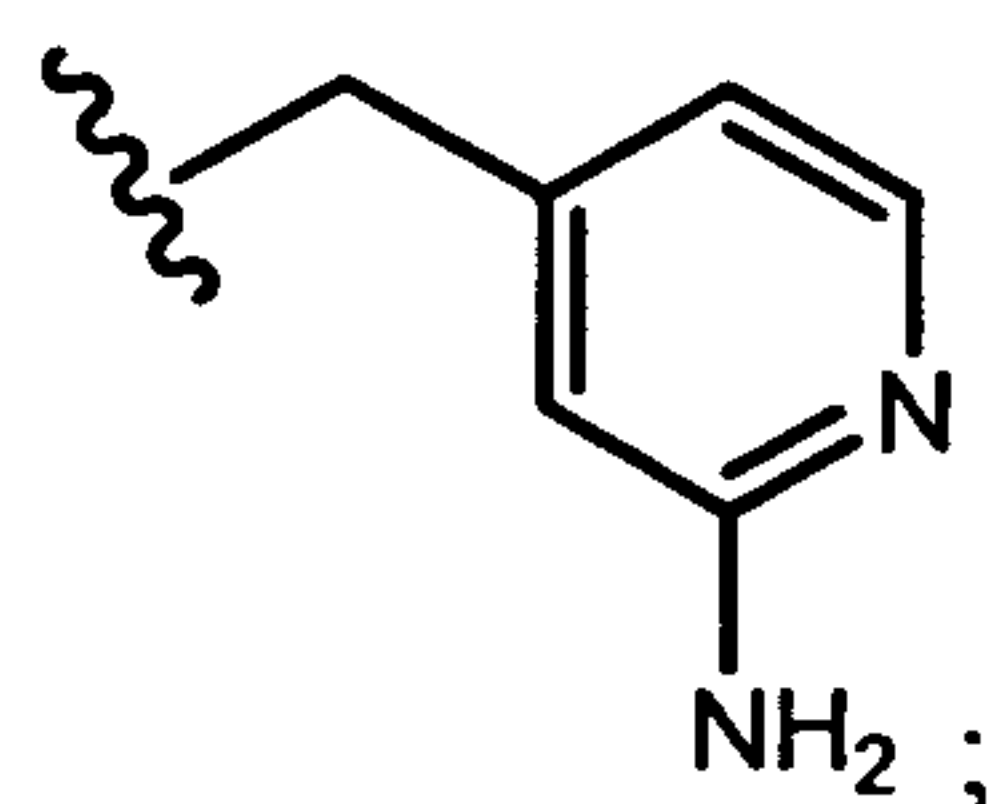
10 In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is



R^2 is -C(O)OH and R^3 is

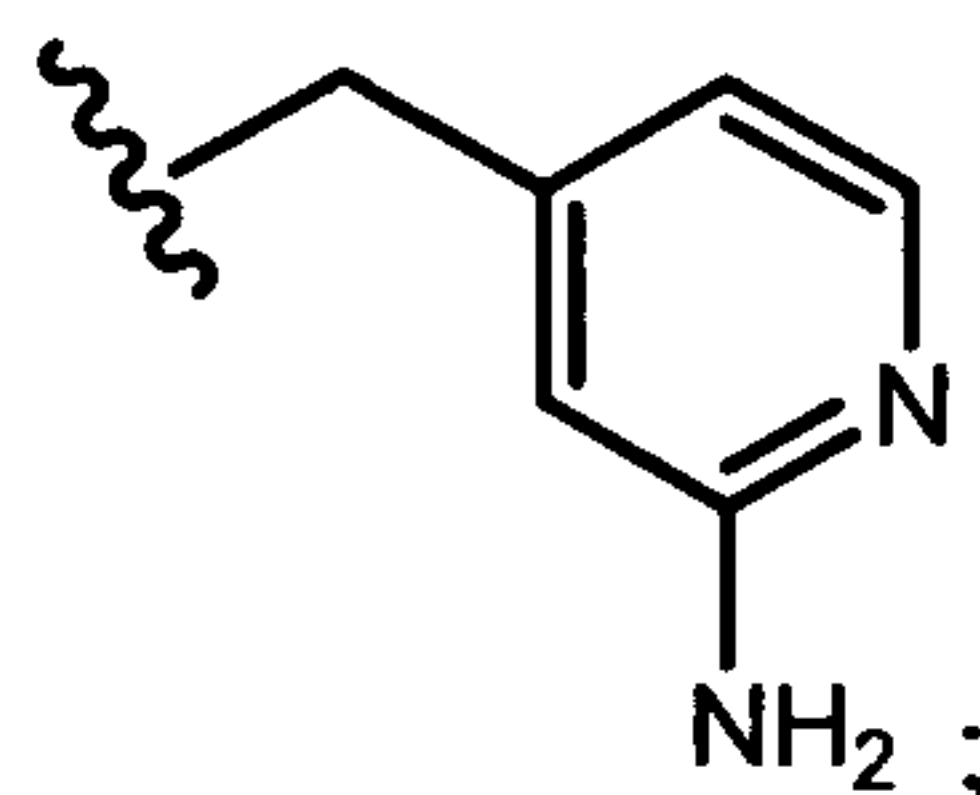


In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is

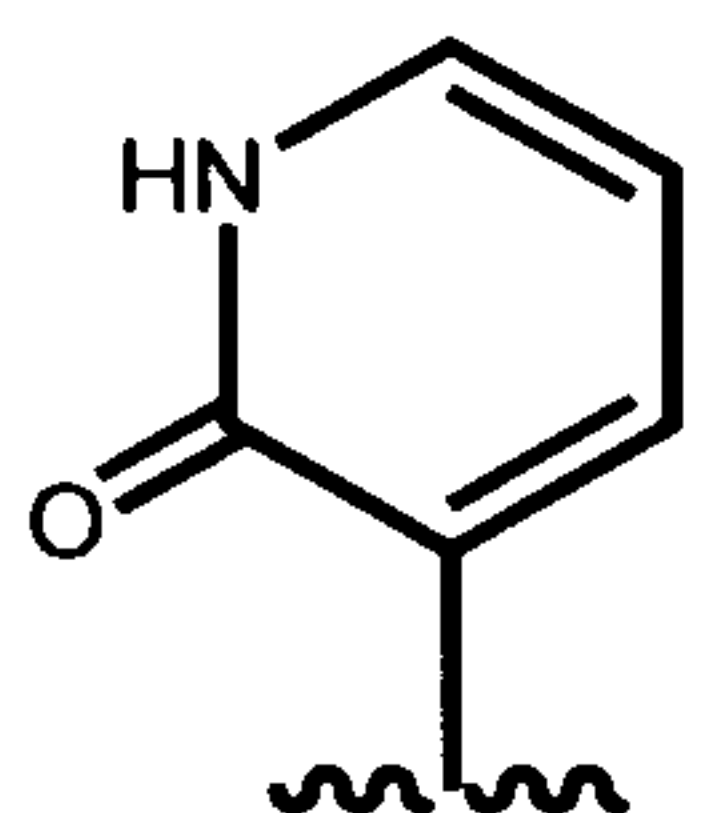


45

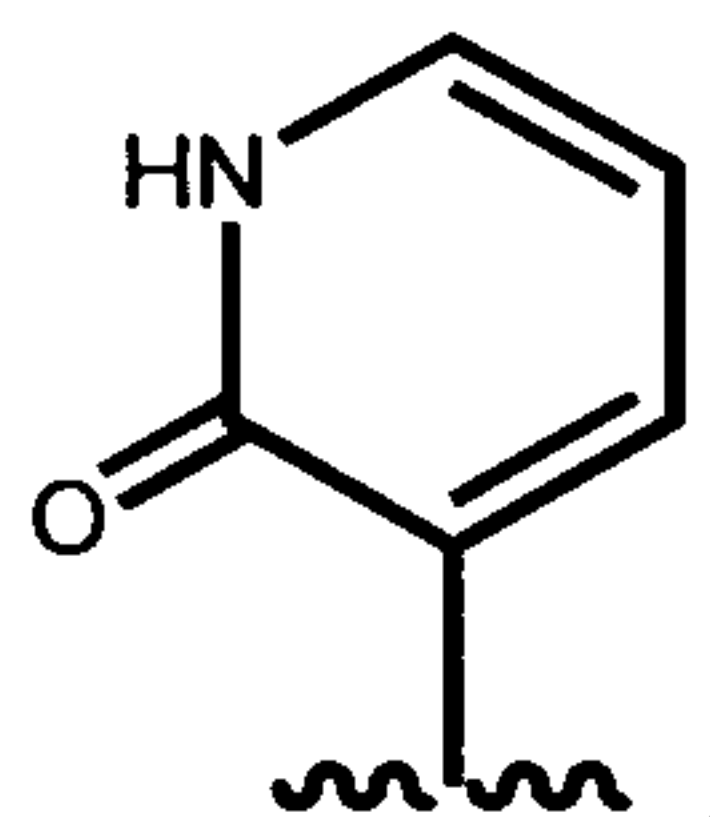
In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is



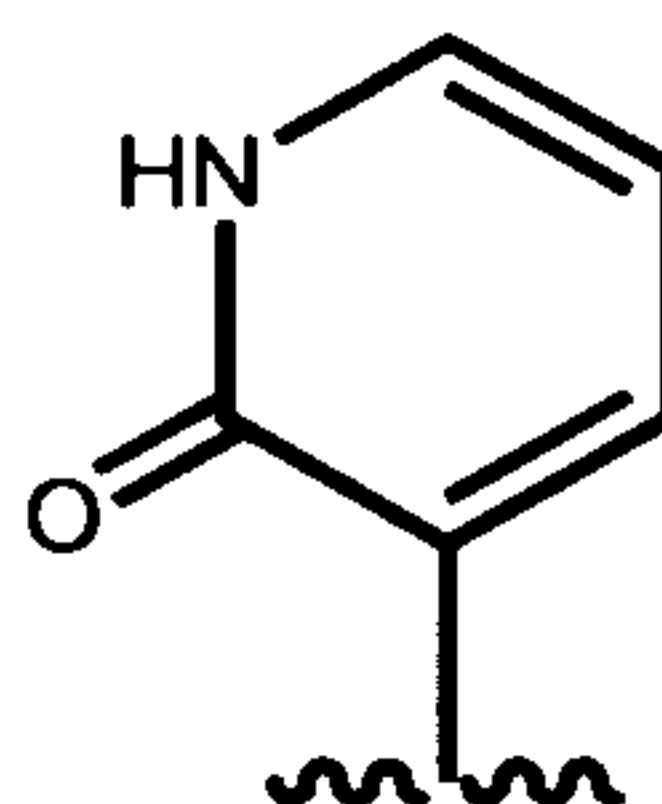
R^2 is $-C(O)OH$; and R^3 is



- 5 In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$, and R^3 is

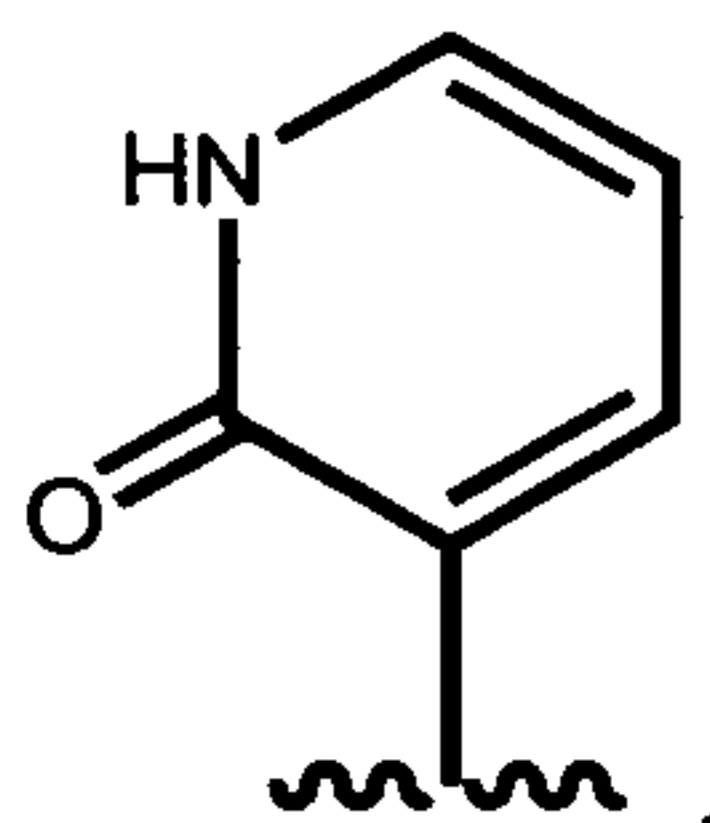


- 10 In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $-C(O)OH$; and R^3 is

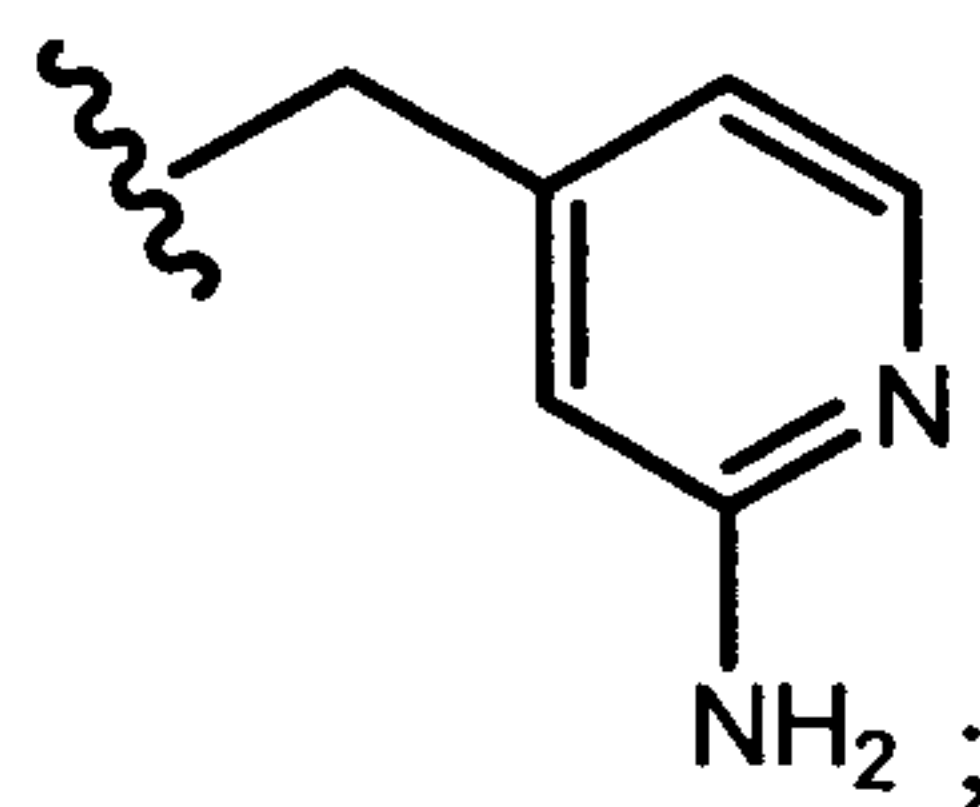


- 15 In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$, and R^3 is

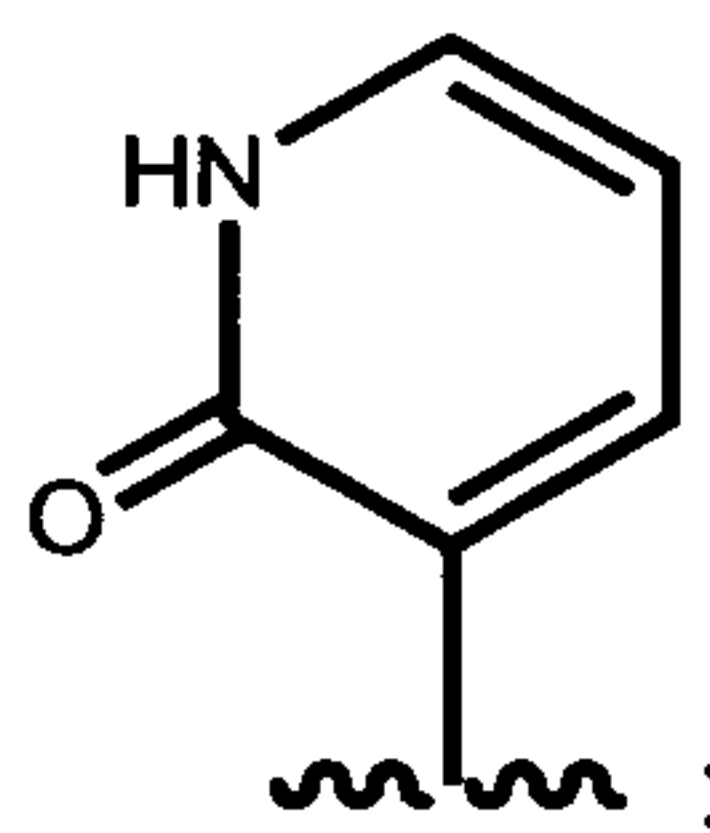
46



In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is



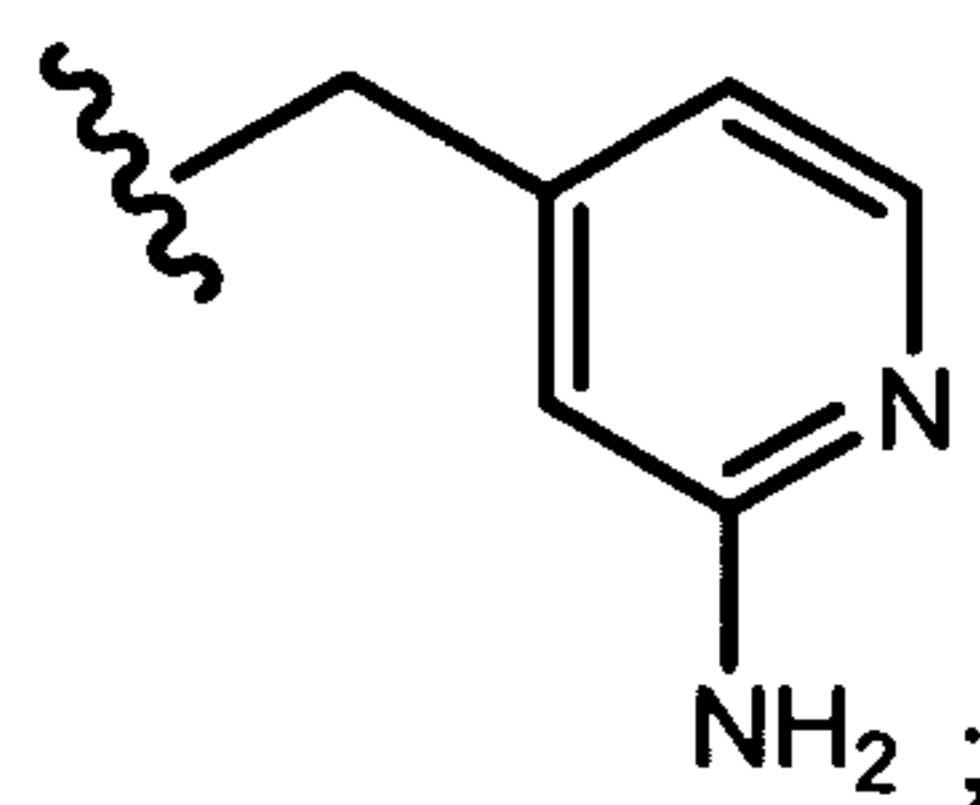
R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$; R^3 is



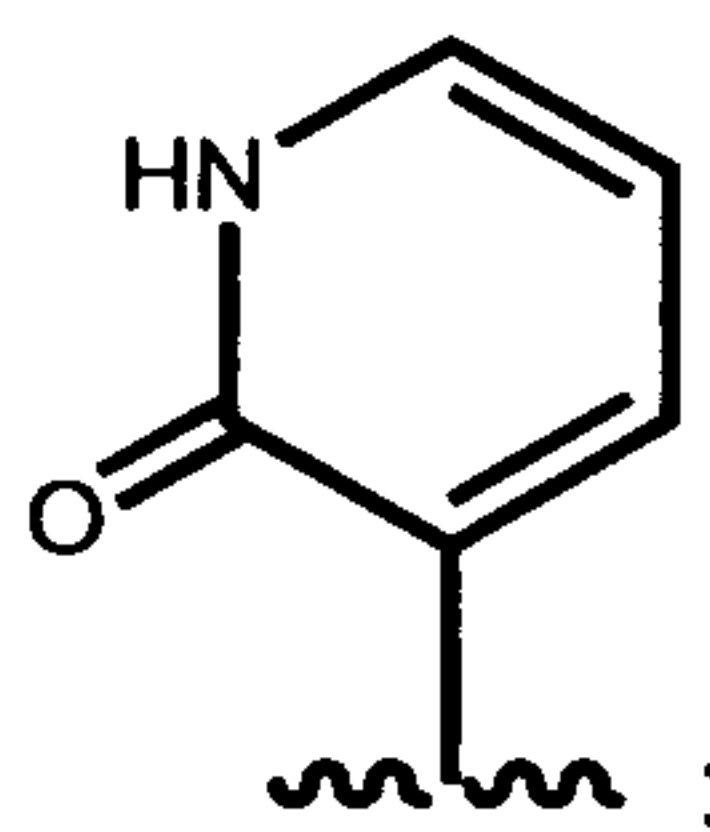
5

R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is



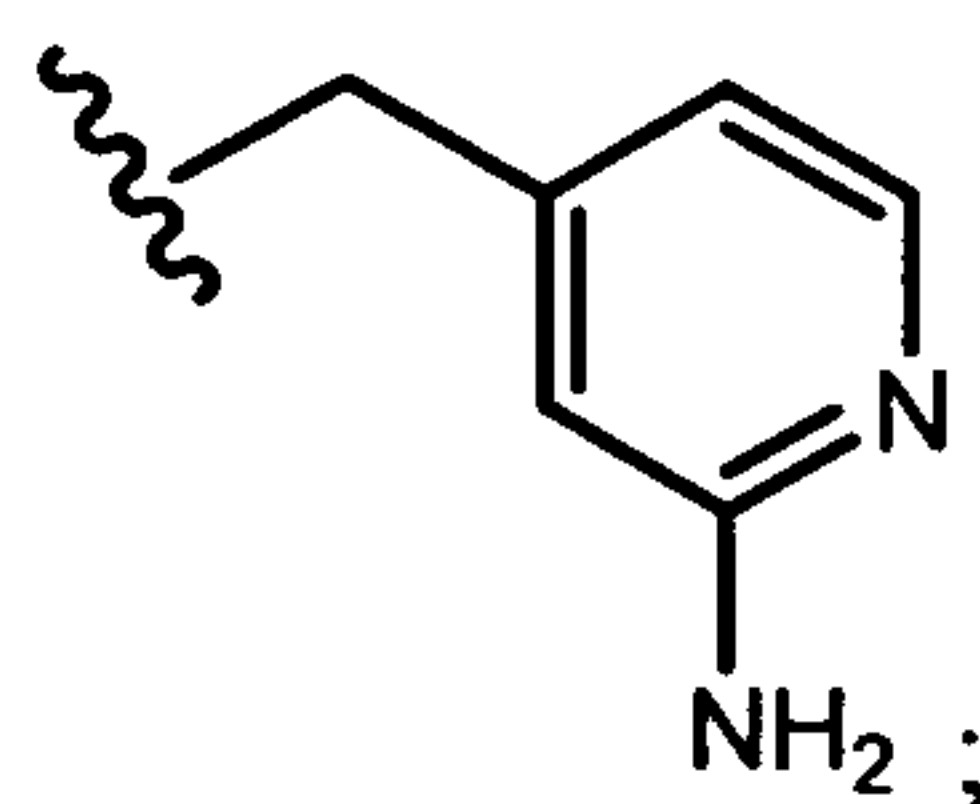
R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$; R^3 is



10

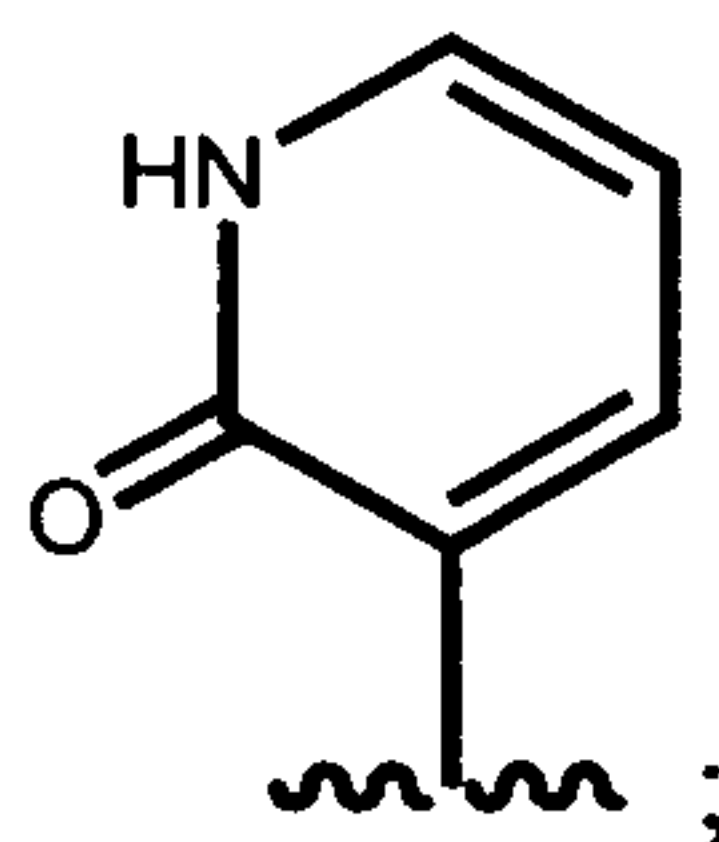
R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is



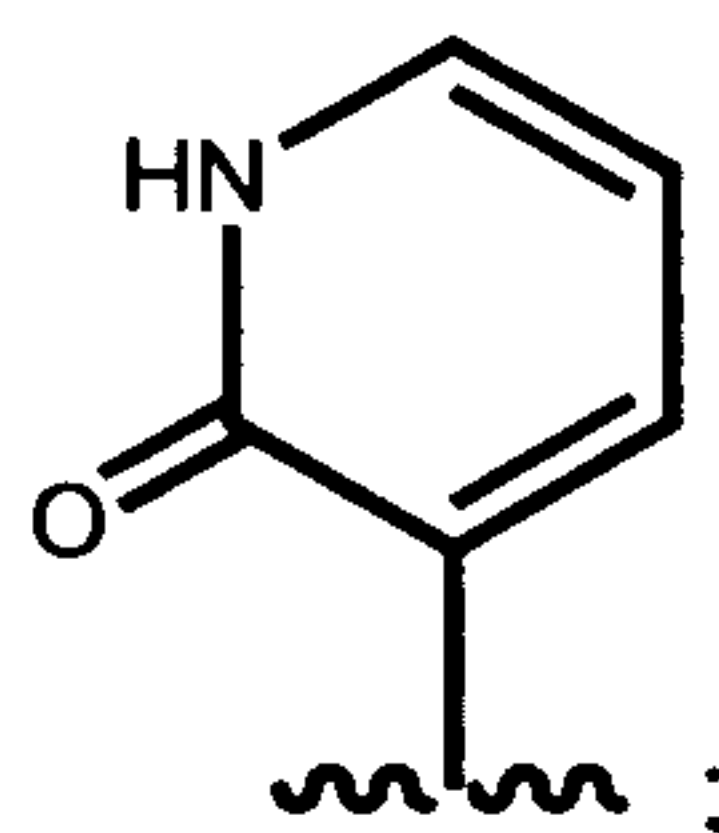
R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$; R^3 is

47



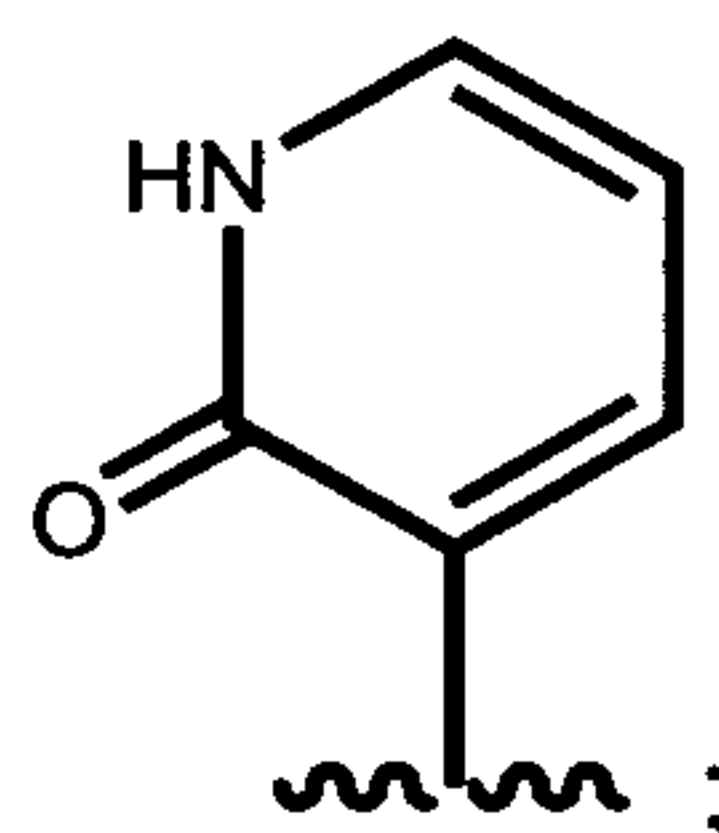
R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$; R^3 is



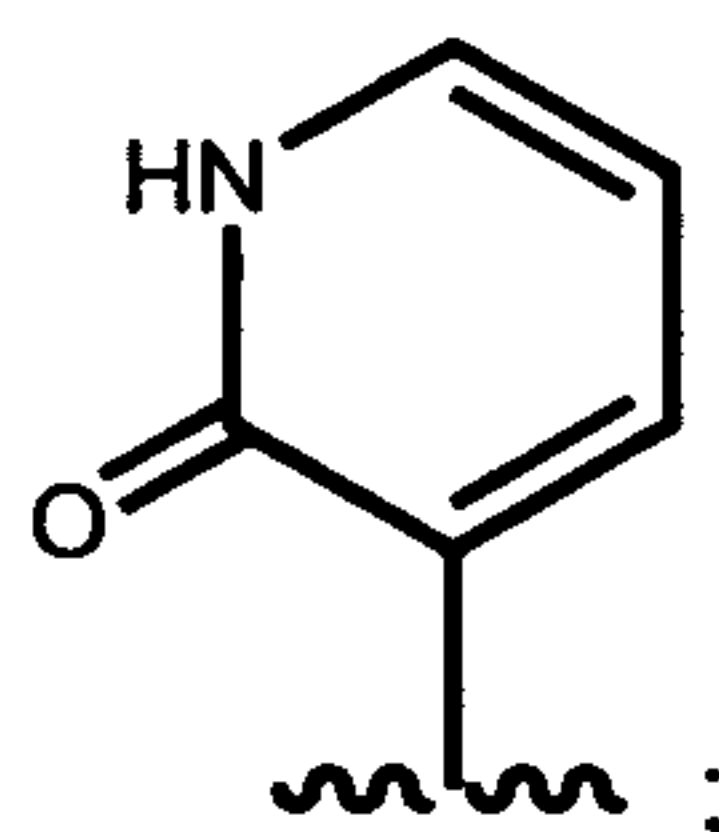
R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $-C(O)OH$; R^3 is



R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

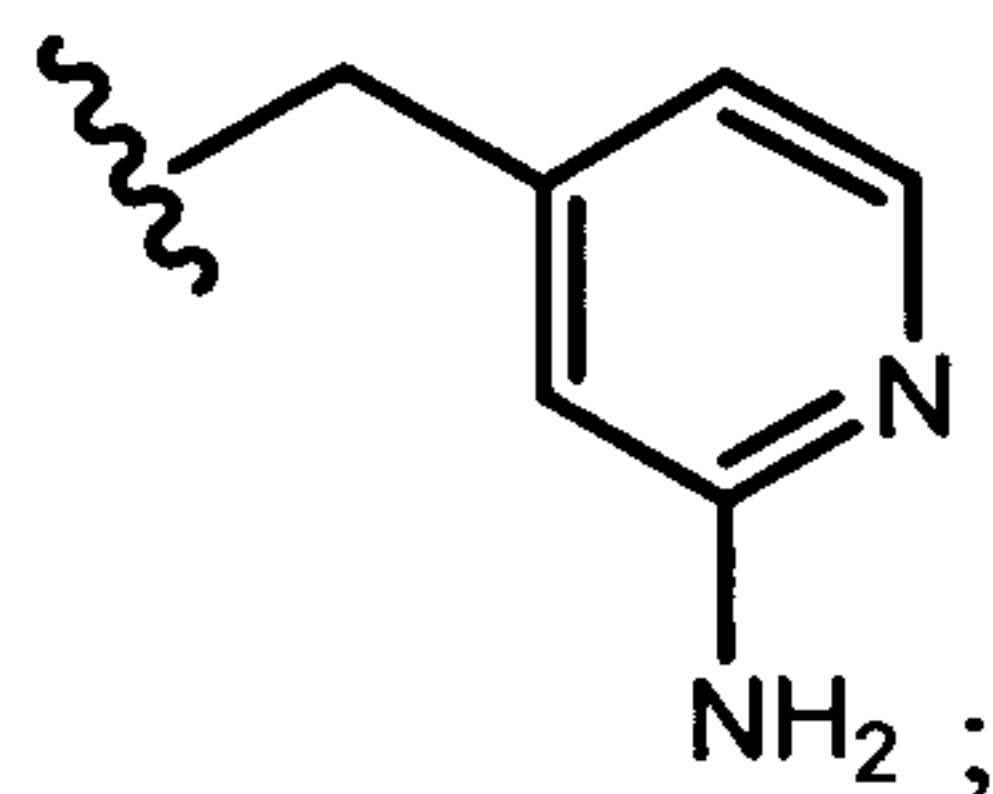
In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$, R^9 is H, alkyl, or cycloalkyl; R^3 is



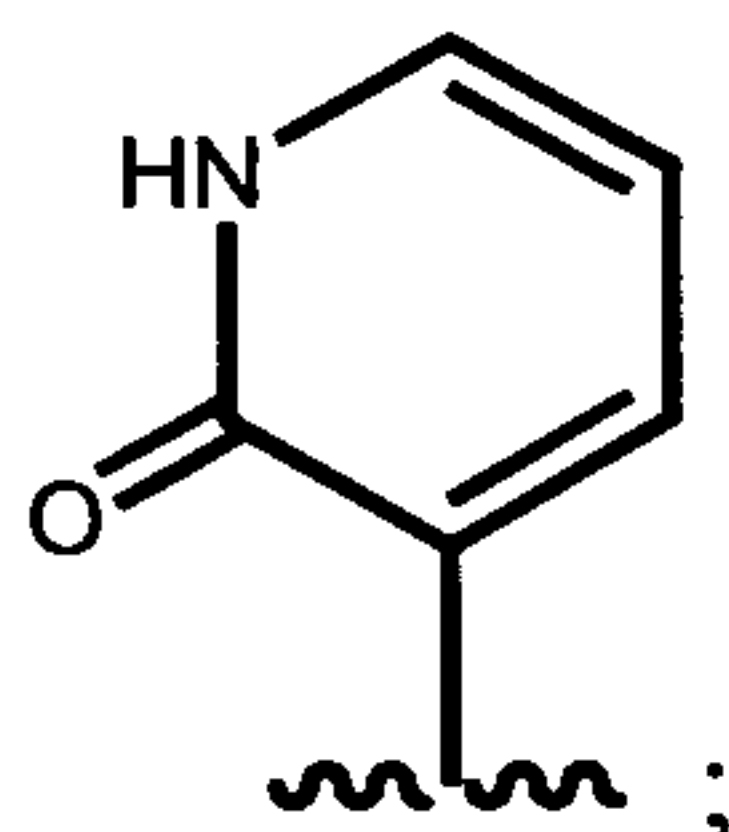
R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

48

In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is

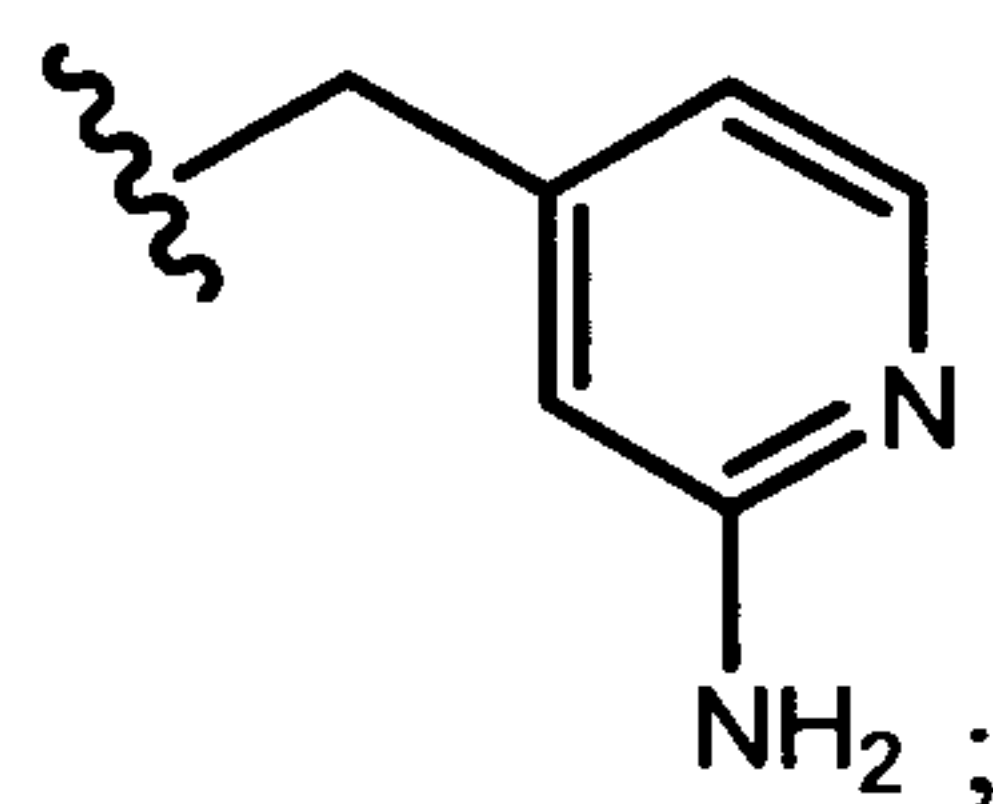


R^2 is $-C(O)OH$; R^3 is

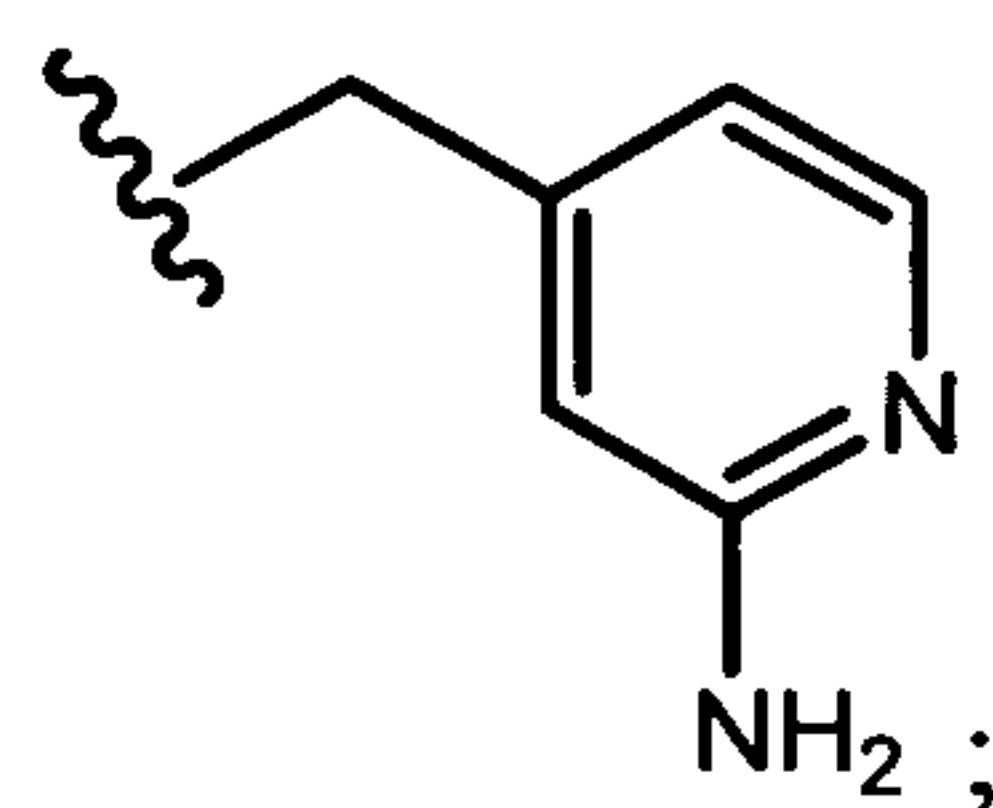


5 R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

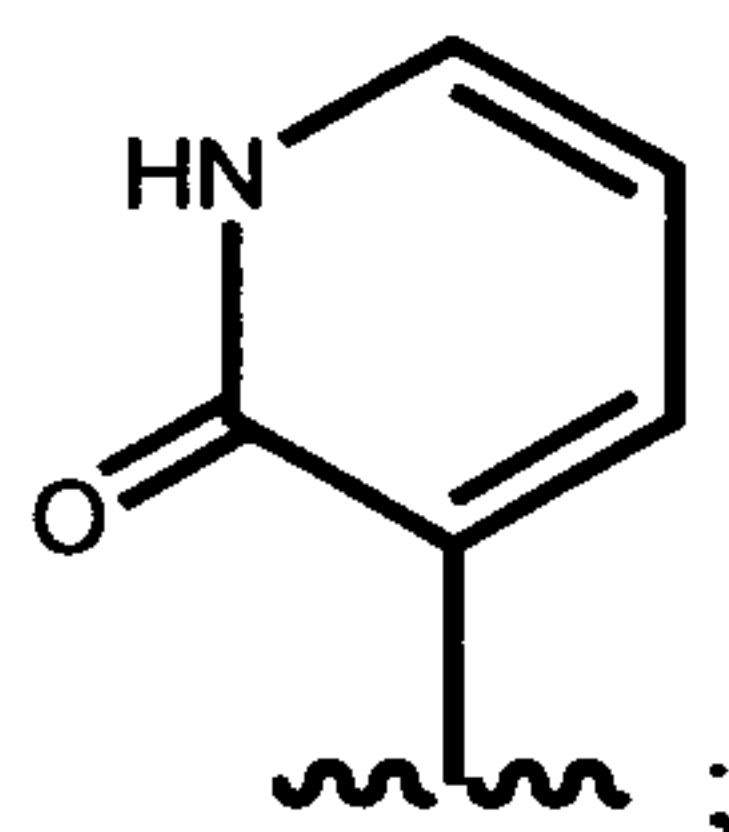
In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is



In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is



10 R^2 is $-C(O)OH$; R^3 is

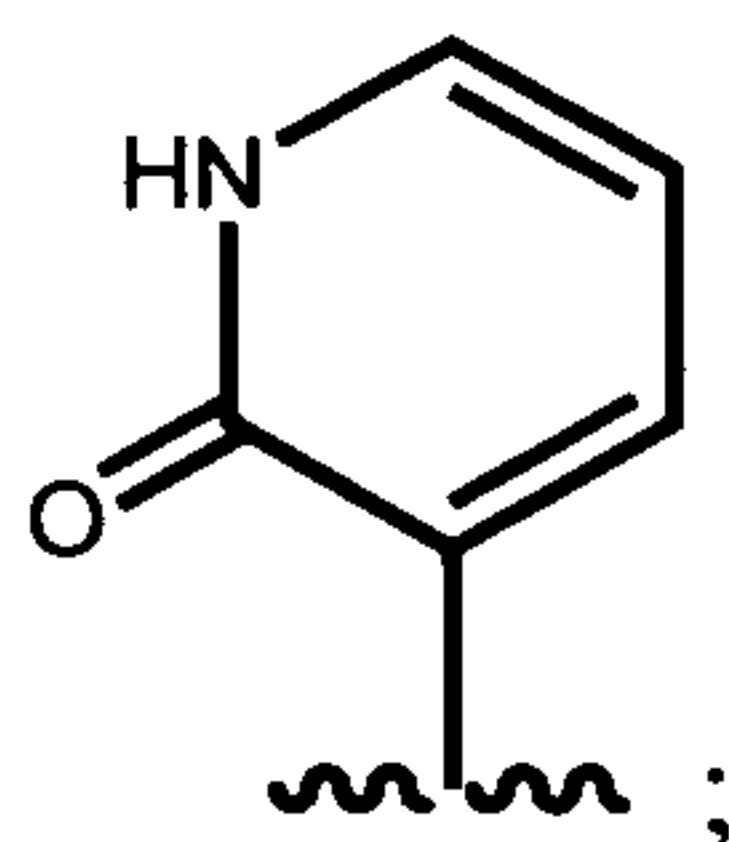


R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, -

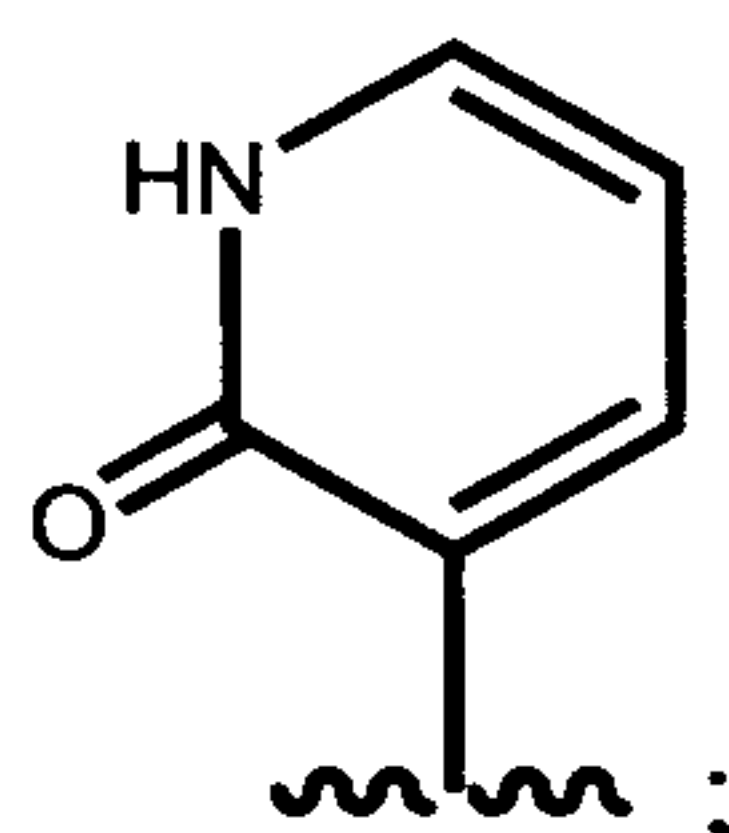
15 $NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $-C(O)OH$; R^3 is

49



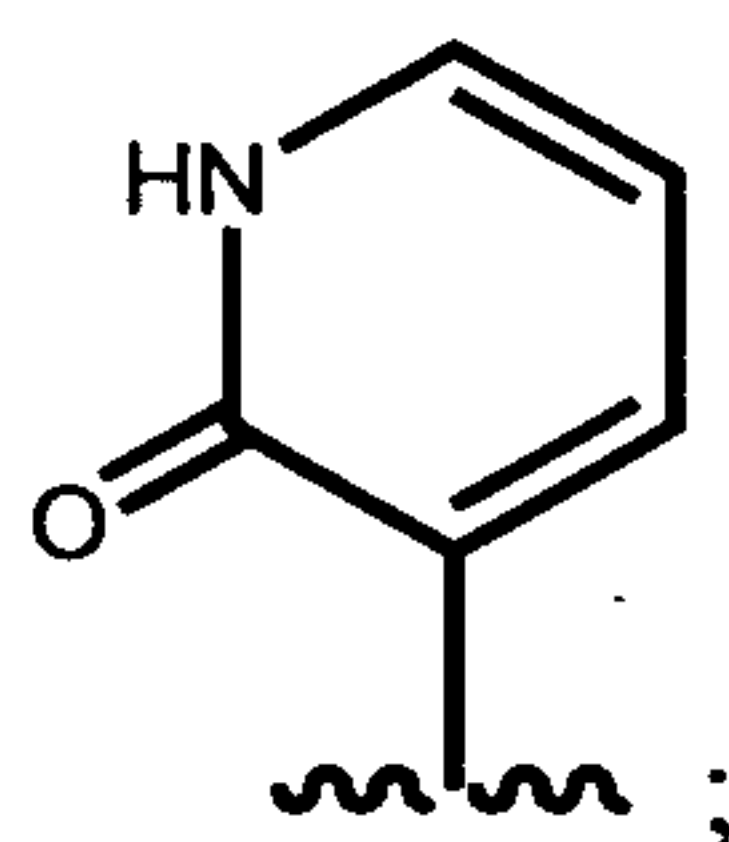
R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $-C(O)OH$, R^3 is



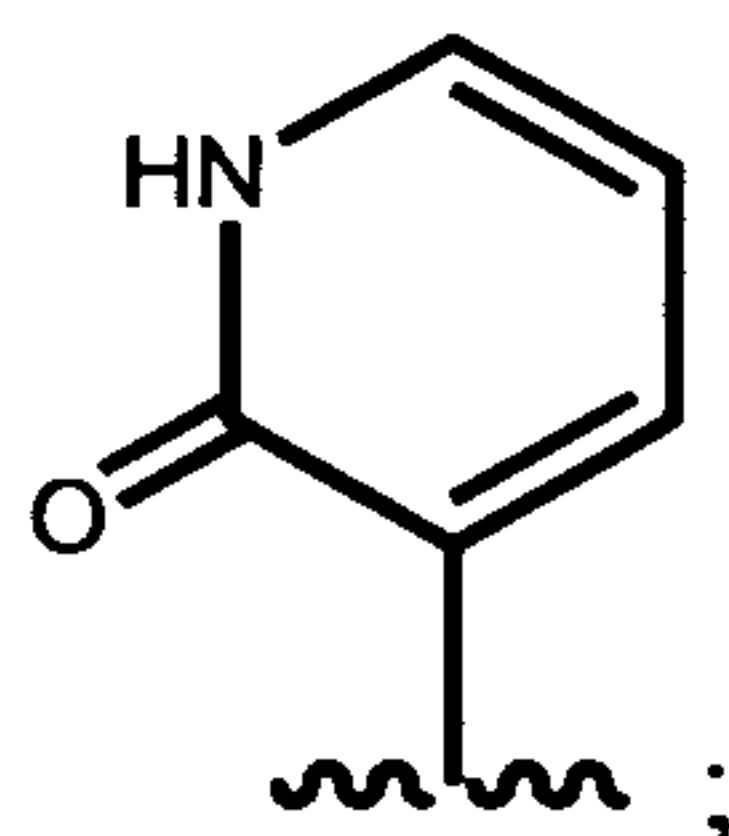
R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$, R^9 is H, alkyl or cycloalkyl; R^3 is



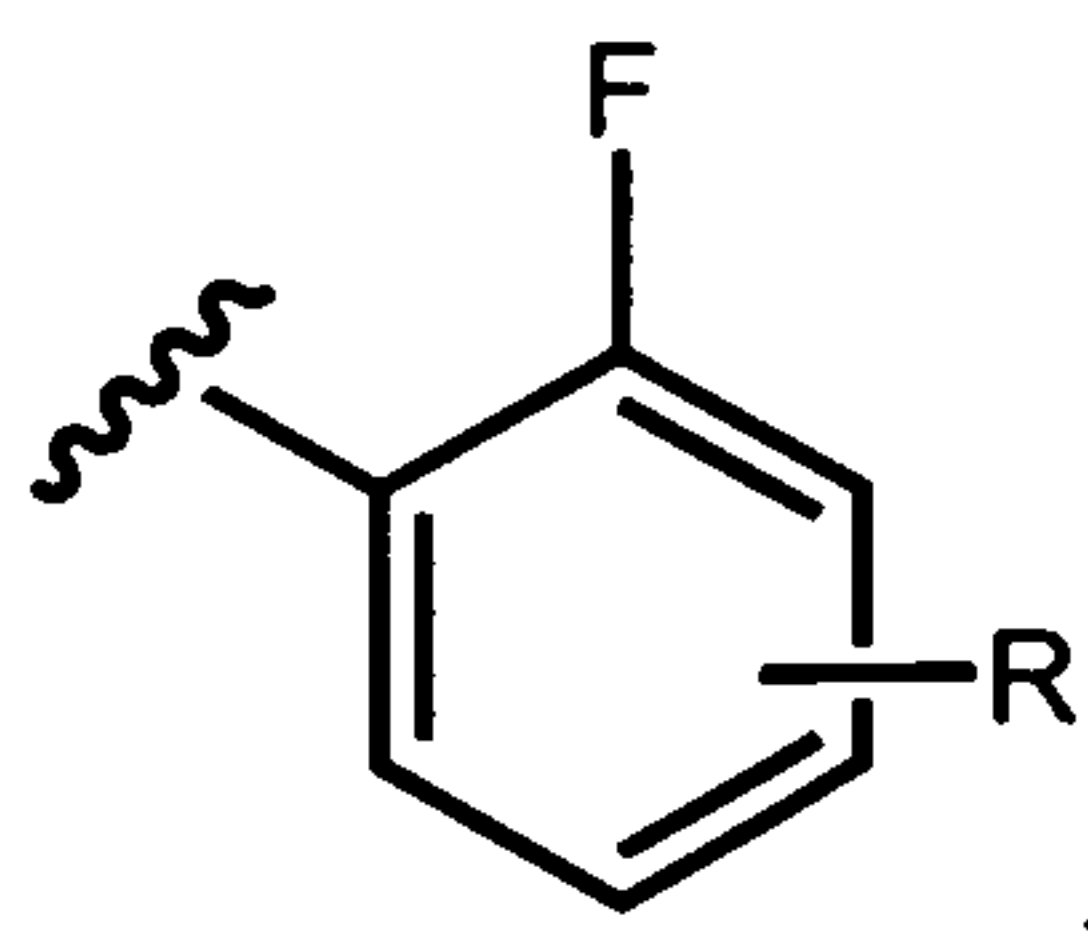
R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

In one embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OH$ or $-C(O)NH_2$; R^3 is



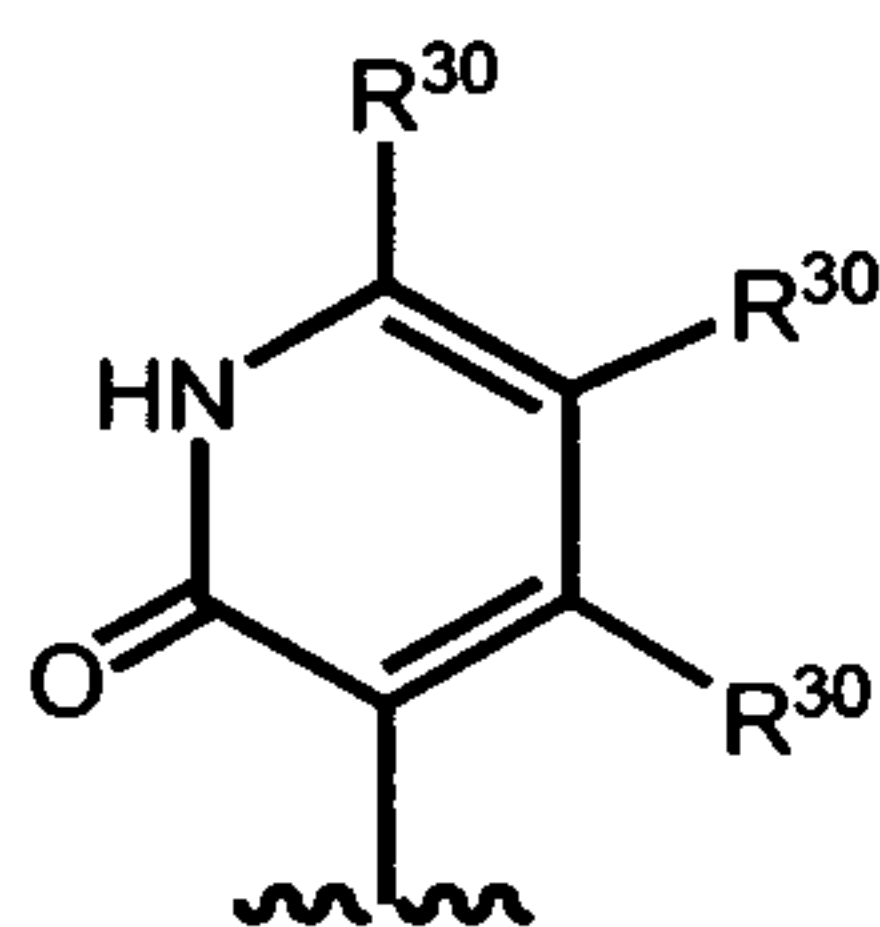
R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; R^7 is H; and $-R^{10}$ is:

50



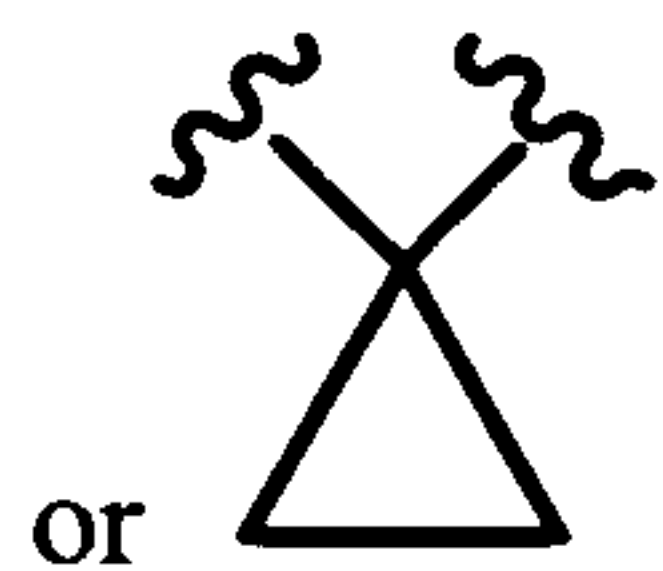
wherein R represents up to 2 optional and additional phenyl substituents, each independently selected from halo, -O-alkyl, alkyl, -CF₃, -CN, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, wherein R⁹ is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; and R³ is :



In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, wherein R⁹ is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl and R¹¹ is alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl; and R¹ is -[C(R¹²)₂]_r.

In still another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, wherein R⁹ is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl and R¹¹ is alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl; and R¹ is -CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂-, -CH(CH₃)-



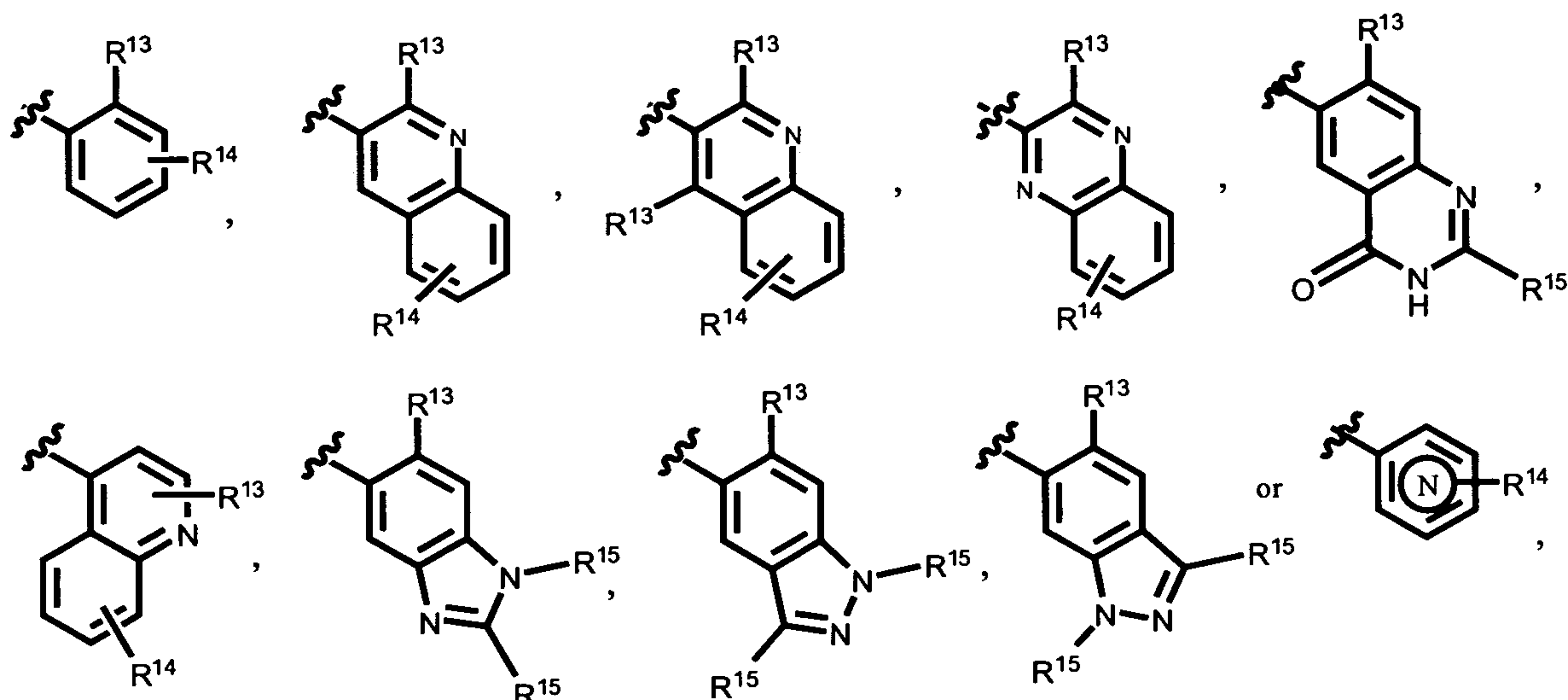
or

In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, wherein R⁹ is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; and wherein R⁴ and R⁷ are each independently H, alkyl, halo or -OH, R⁵ is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN, and R⁶ is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN.

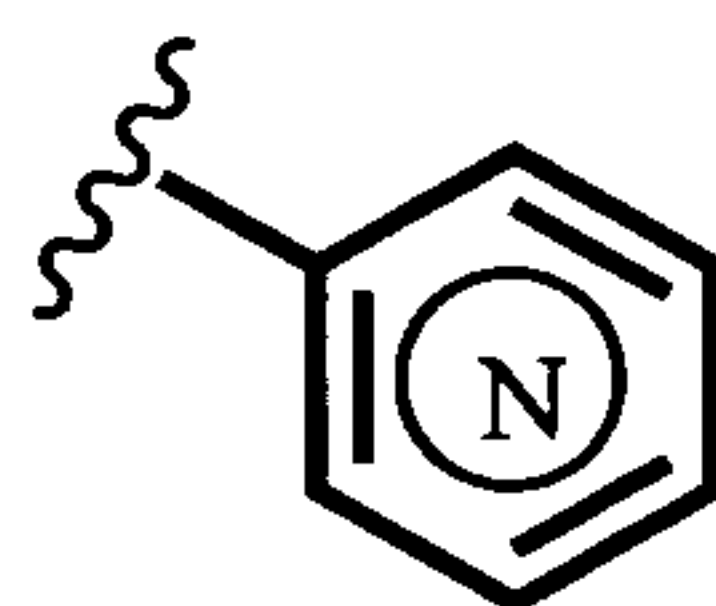
In yet another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, wherein R⁹ is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl and R¹¹ is alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl; and R¹⁰ is aryl or heteroaryl.

51

In yet another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl and R^{11} is alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl; and R^{10} is:



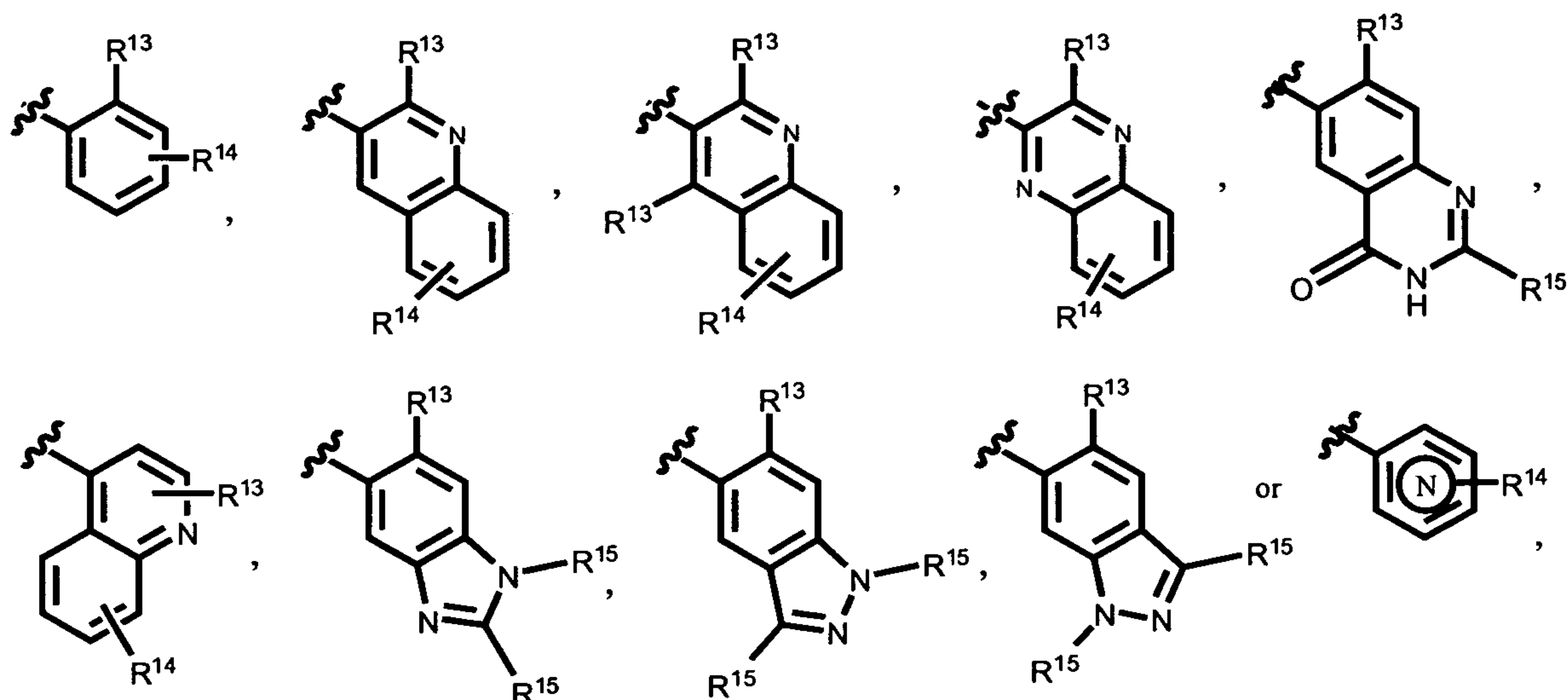
- 5 wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -
- 10



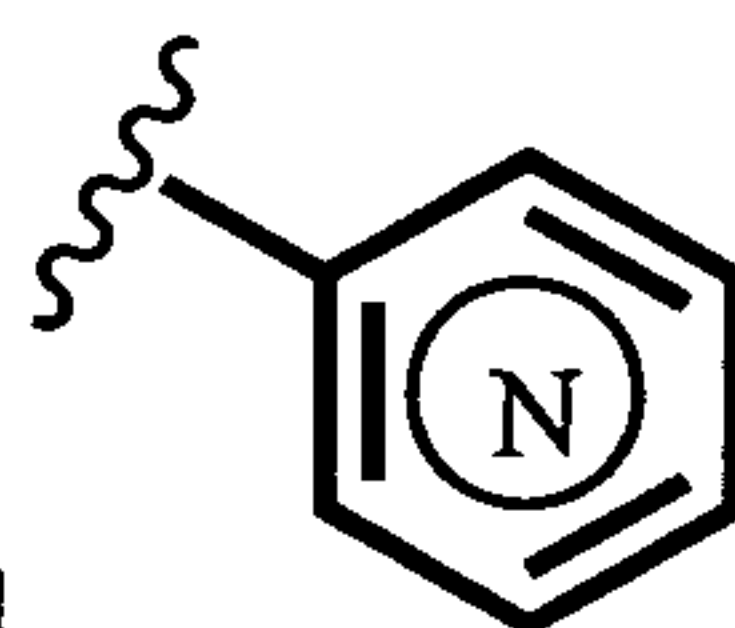
heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

- In yet another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; R^{10} is:
- 15

52



wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-

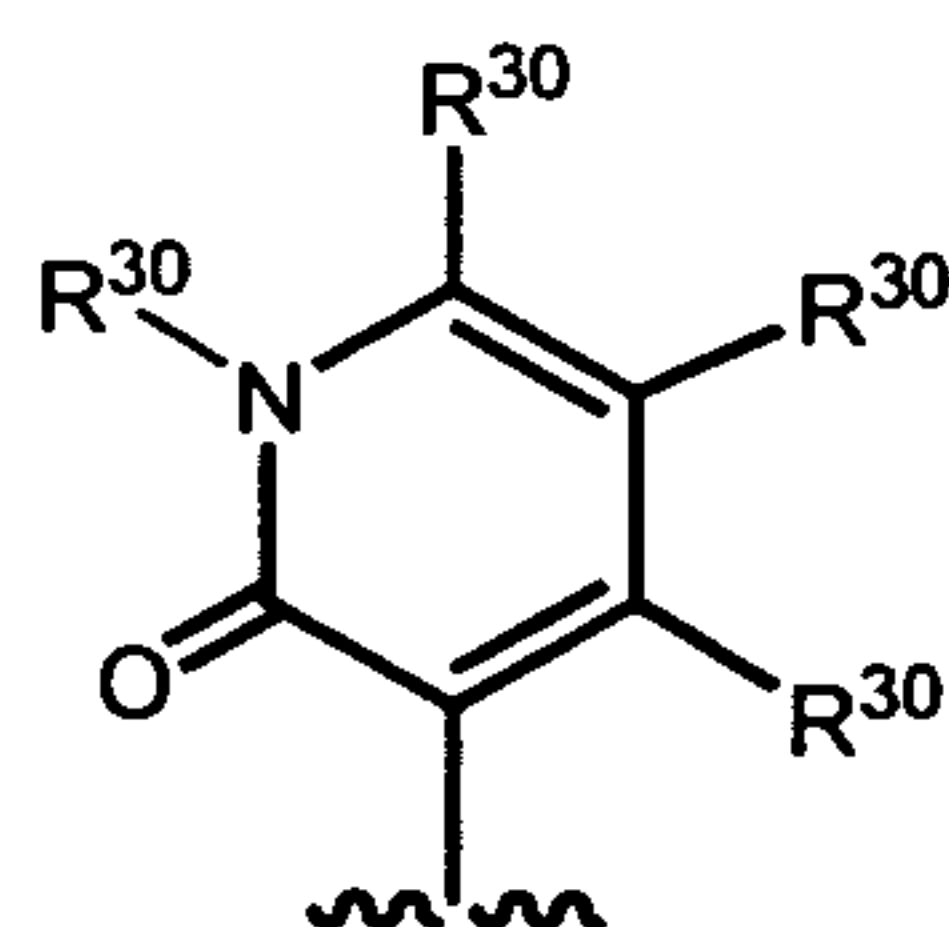


heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and

represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring

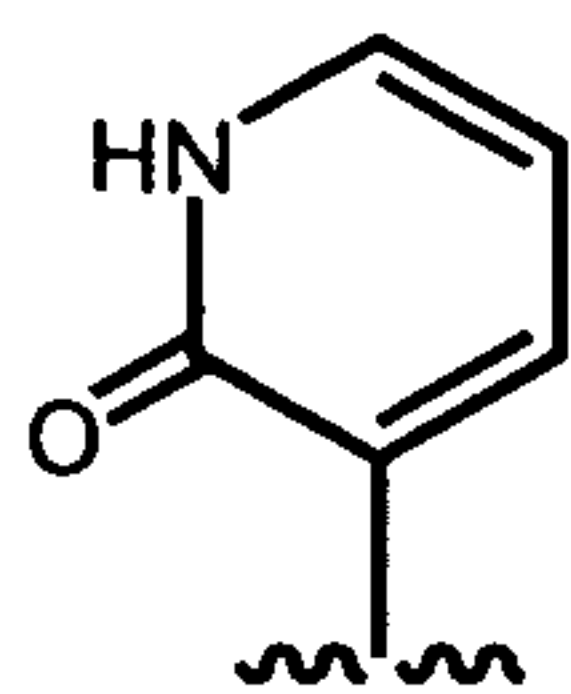
nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions; and R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, halo or hydroxy; R^5 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN; and R^6 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN.

In one embodiment, R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, and R^3 is :



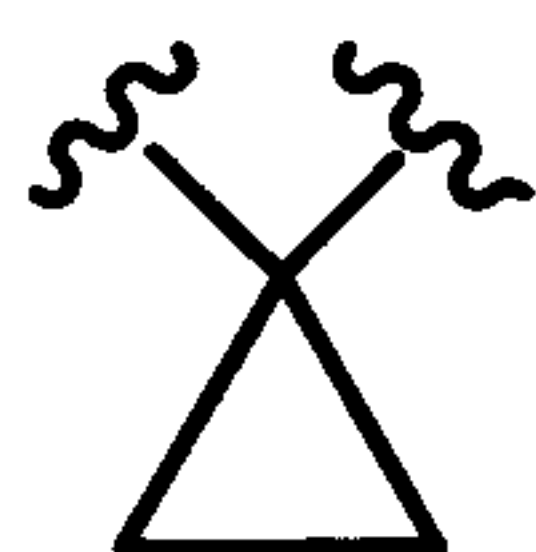
In another embodiment, R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, and R^3 is :

53



In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, and R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$.

In still another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, and R^1 is $-CH_2-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$, $-CH(CH_3)-$ or



In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or $-OH$; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; and R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^4 and R^7 are each H; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; and R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$.

In a further embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^4 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 and R^6 are each other than H.

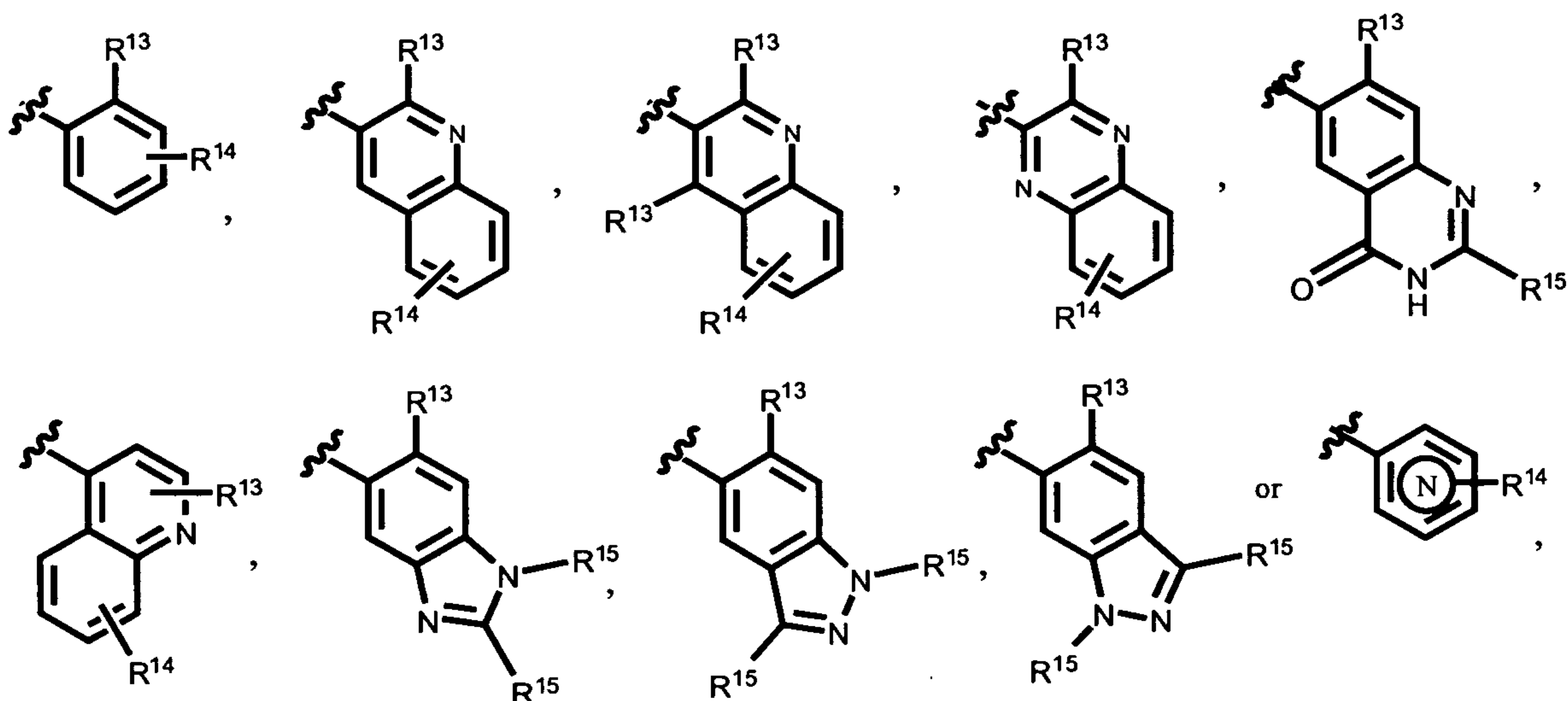
In one embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^4 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 and R^6 are each independently selected from alkyl, halo and haloalkyl.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^4 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 and R^6 are each independently selected from alkyl and halo.

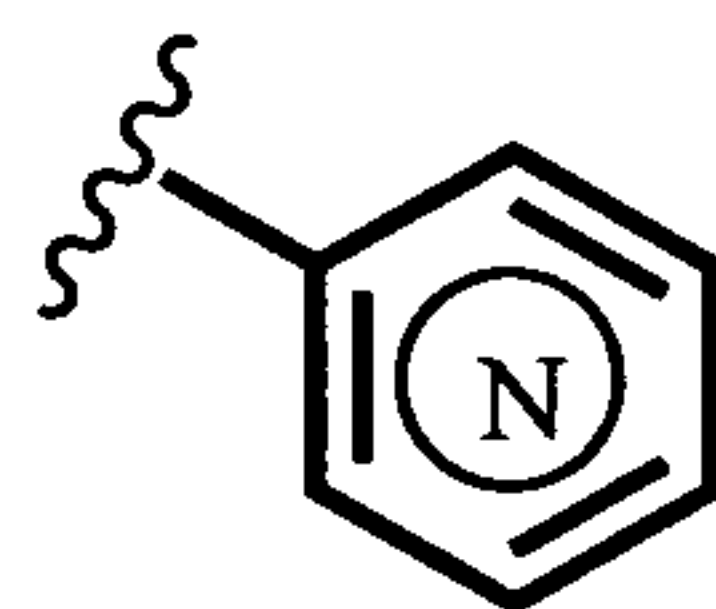
In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, and R^{10} is aryl or heteroaryl.

In still another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, and R^{10} is:

54



wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-

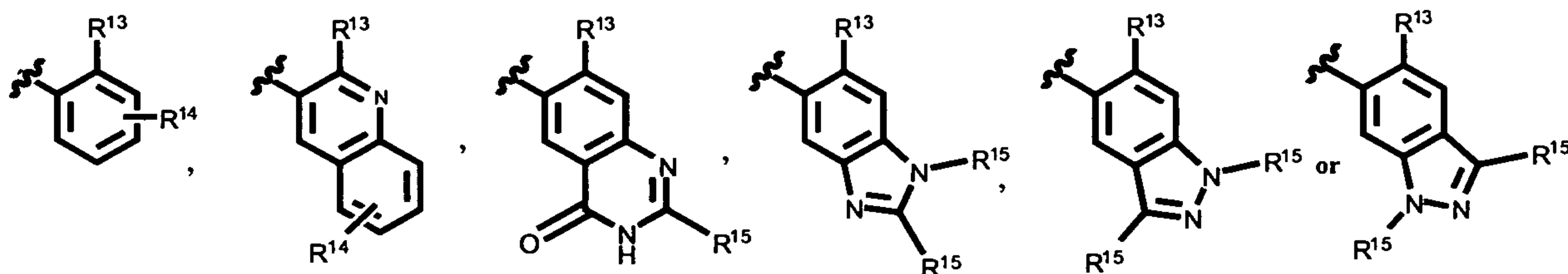


alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and

represents a pyridyl group,

wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

In another embodiment, R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, and R^{10} is:

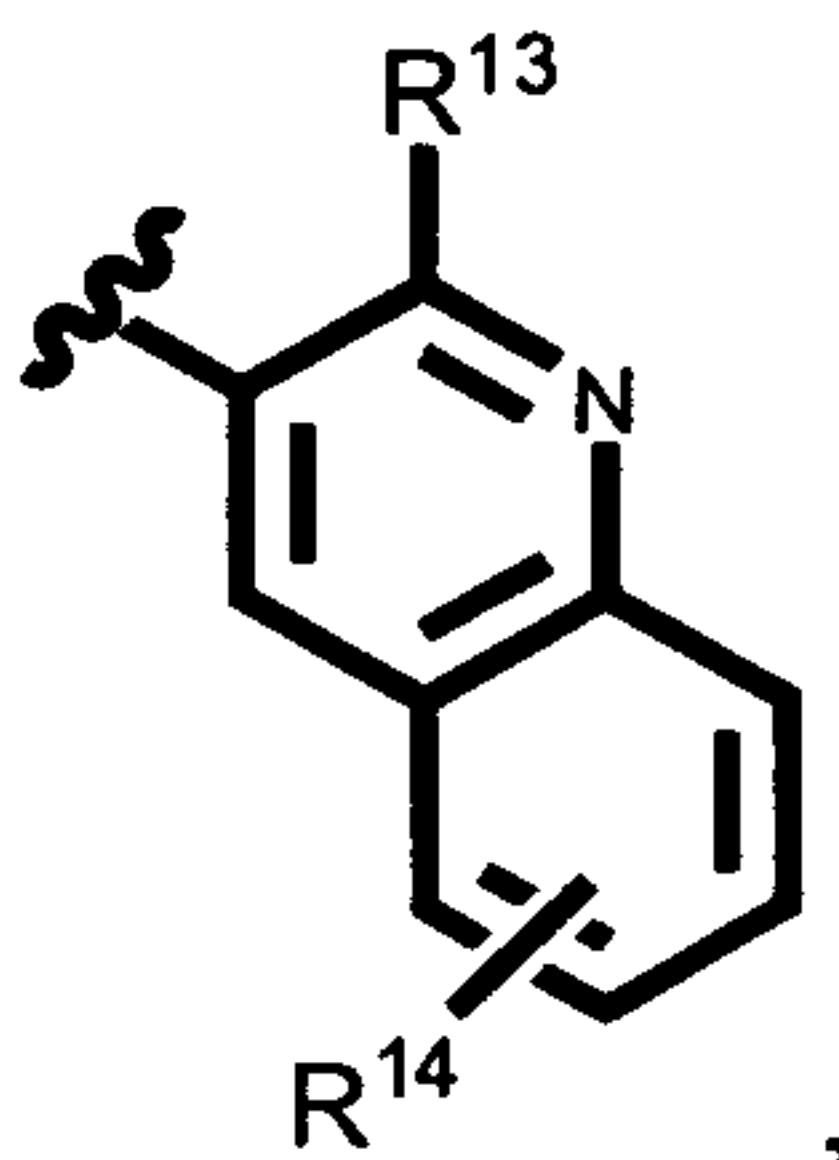


wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -

55

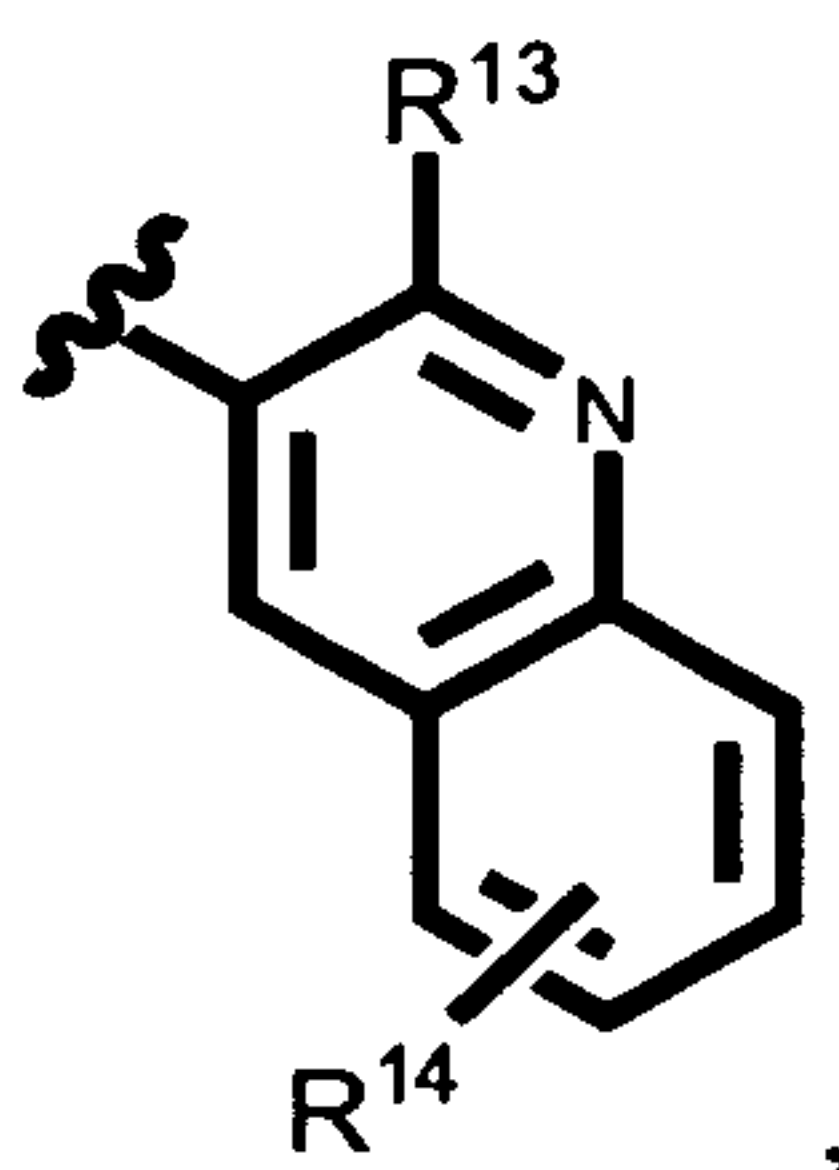
SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, and R¹⁰ is:



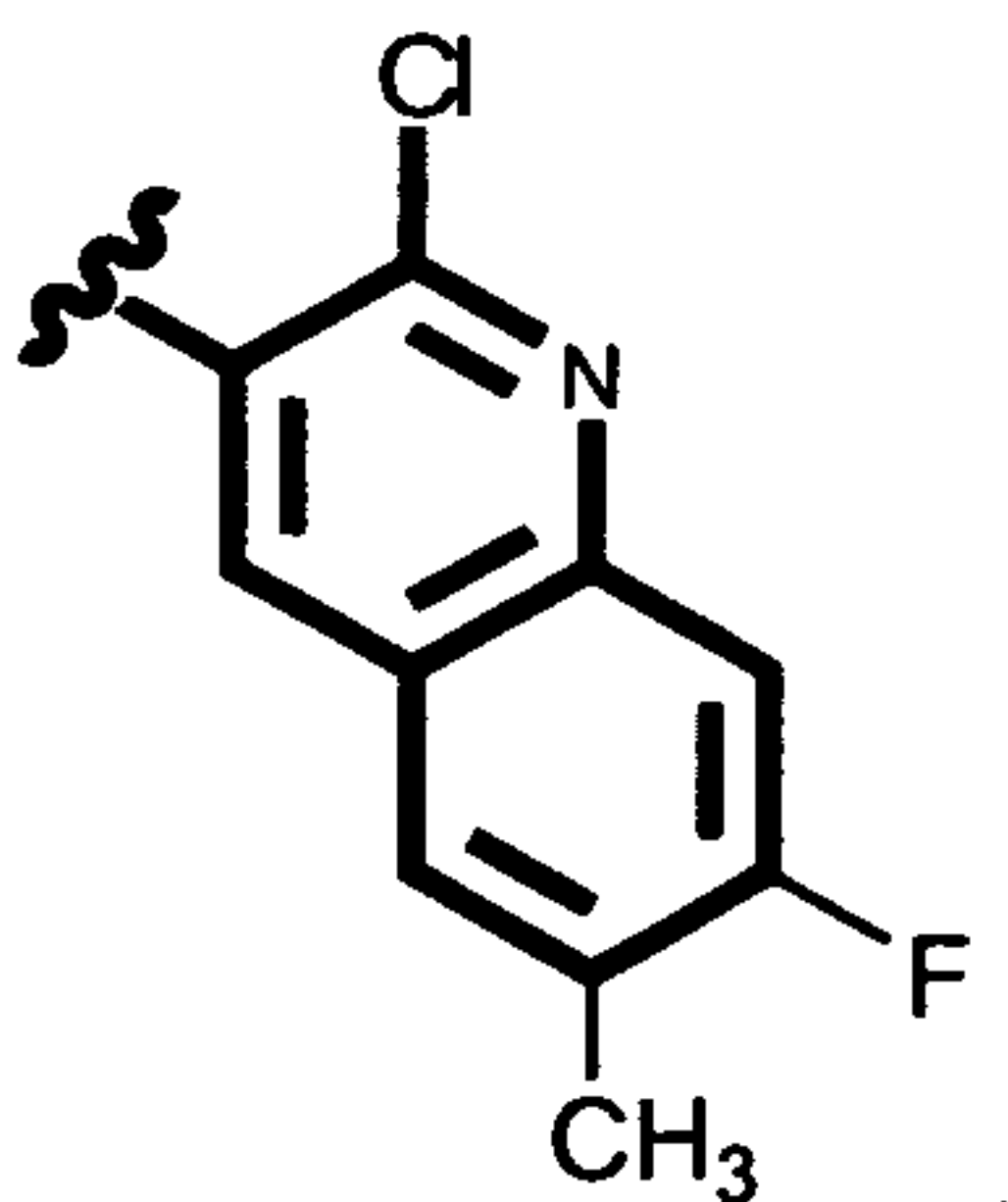
5 wherein R¹³ is H, F, Br or Cl and R¹⁴ represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

10 In yet another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, and R¹⁰ is:



wherein R¹³ is Cl and R¹⁴ represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl or halo.

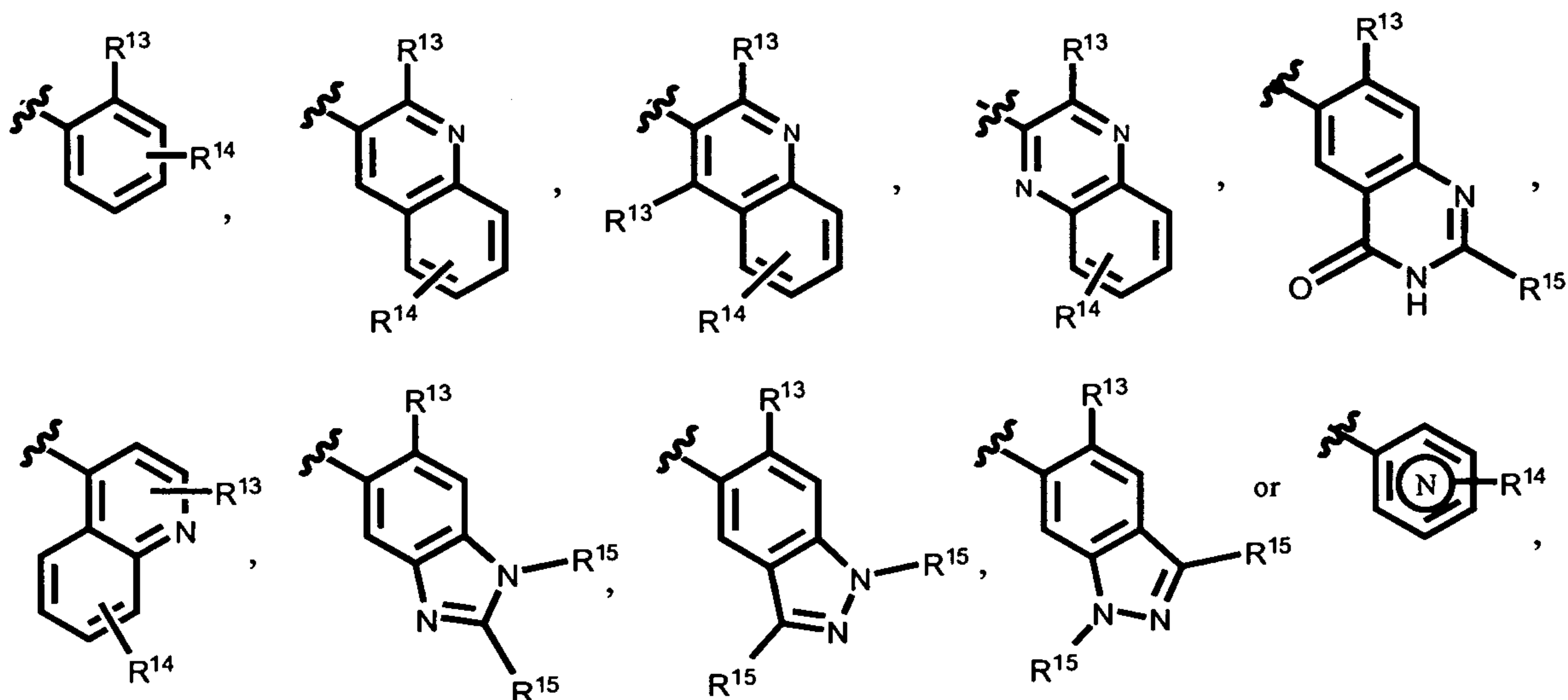
In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, and R¹⁰ is:



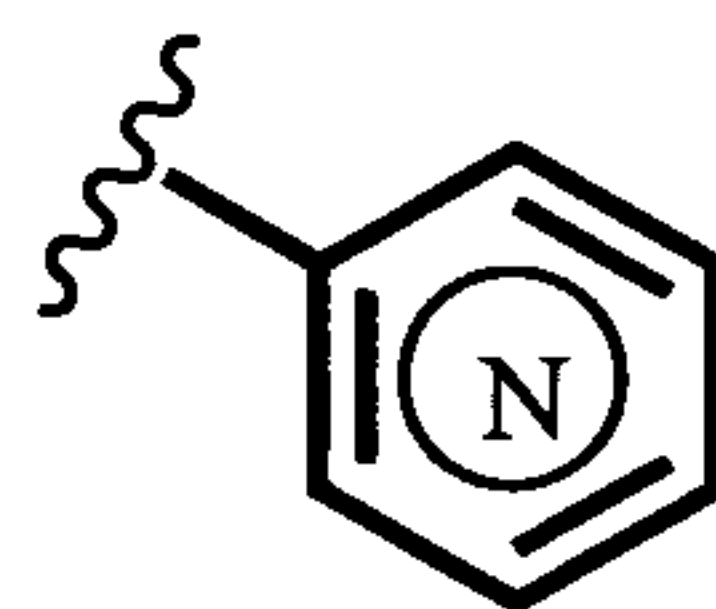
15

In another embodiment, R¹ is -CH₂-; R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, R¹⁰ is:

56

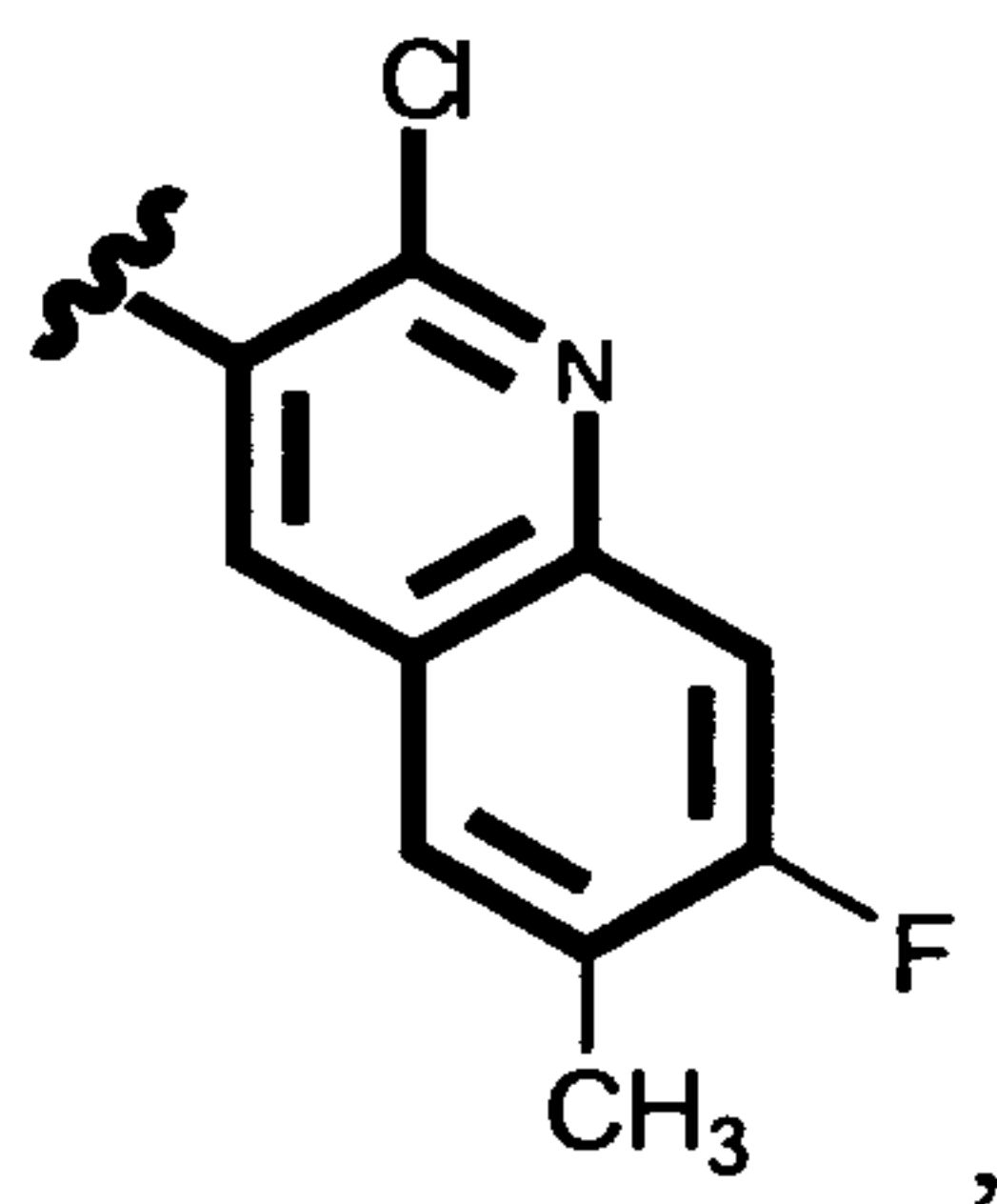


R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-



alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

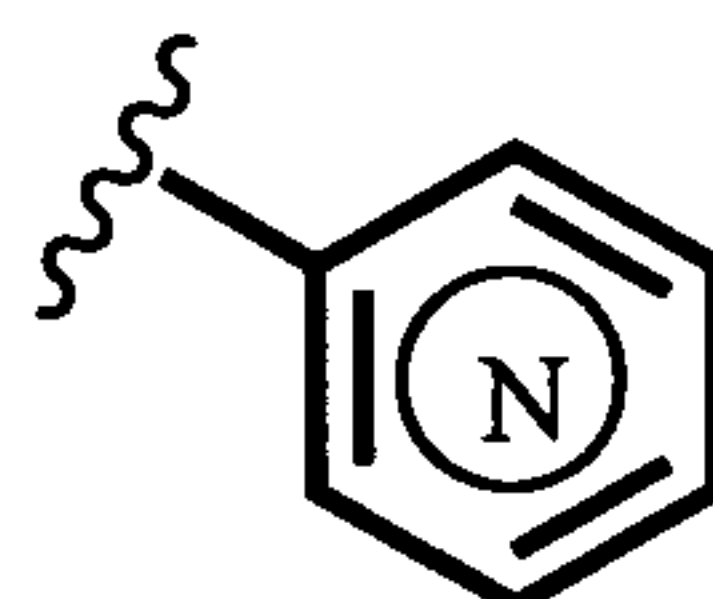
In a further embodiment, R^1 is -CH₂-; R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, R^{10} is:



R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl

57

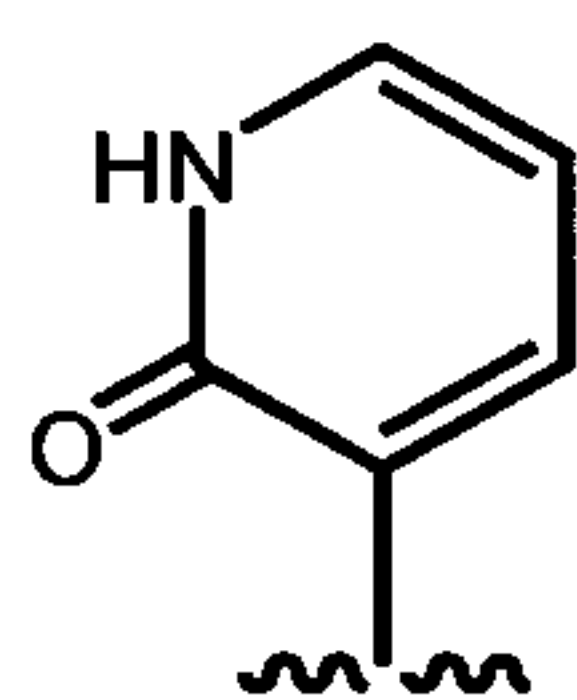
and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-



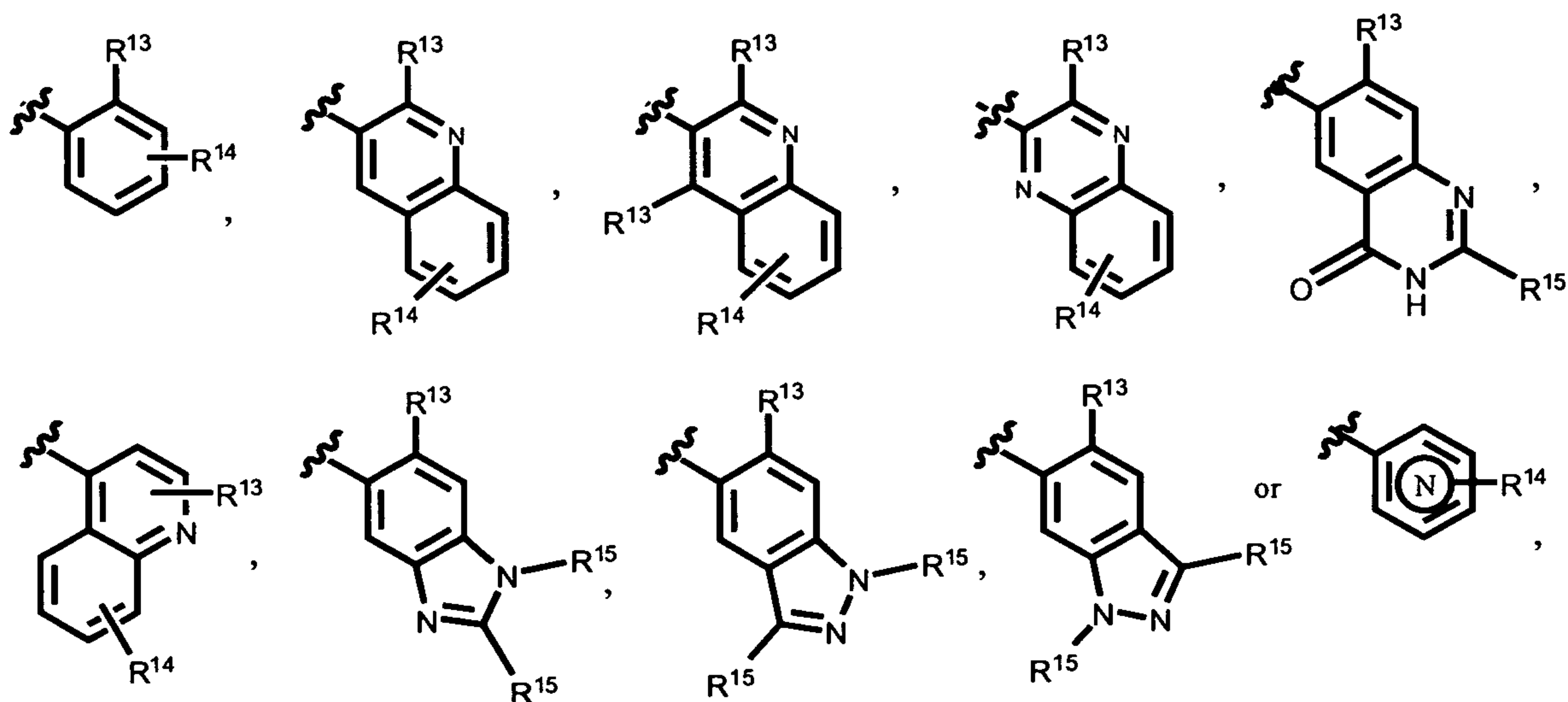
alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and represents a pyridyl group,

5 wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

In one embodiment, R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂; R^3 is :

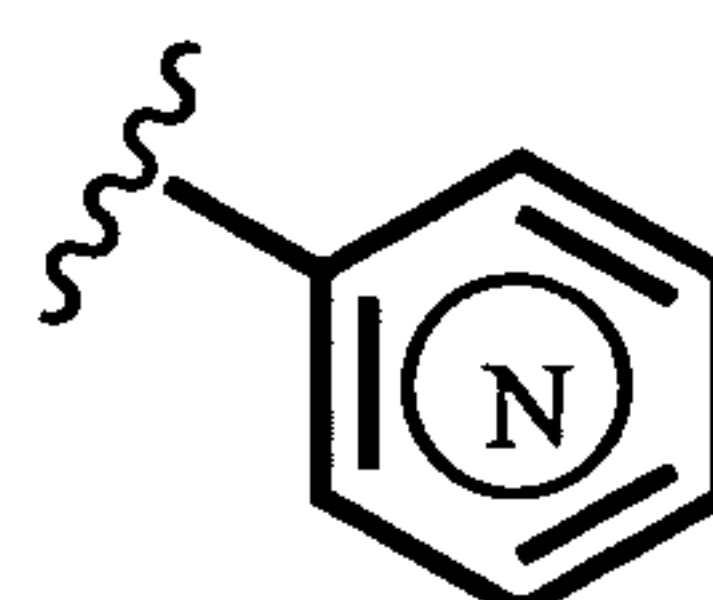


; and R^{10} is:



wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each

10 independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-

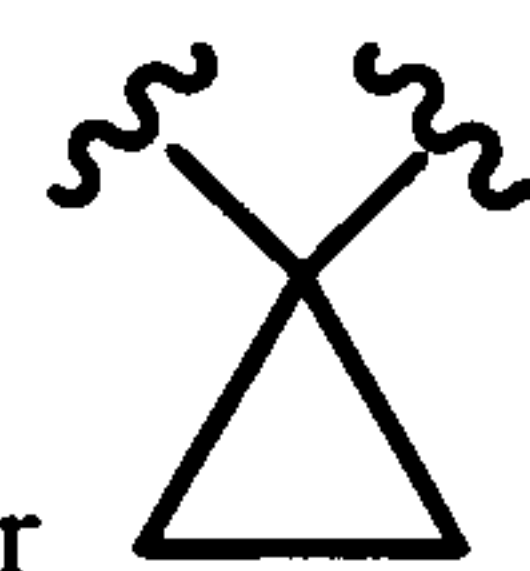
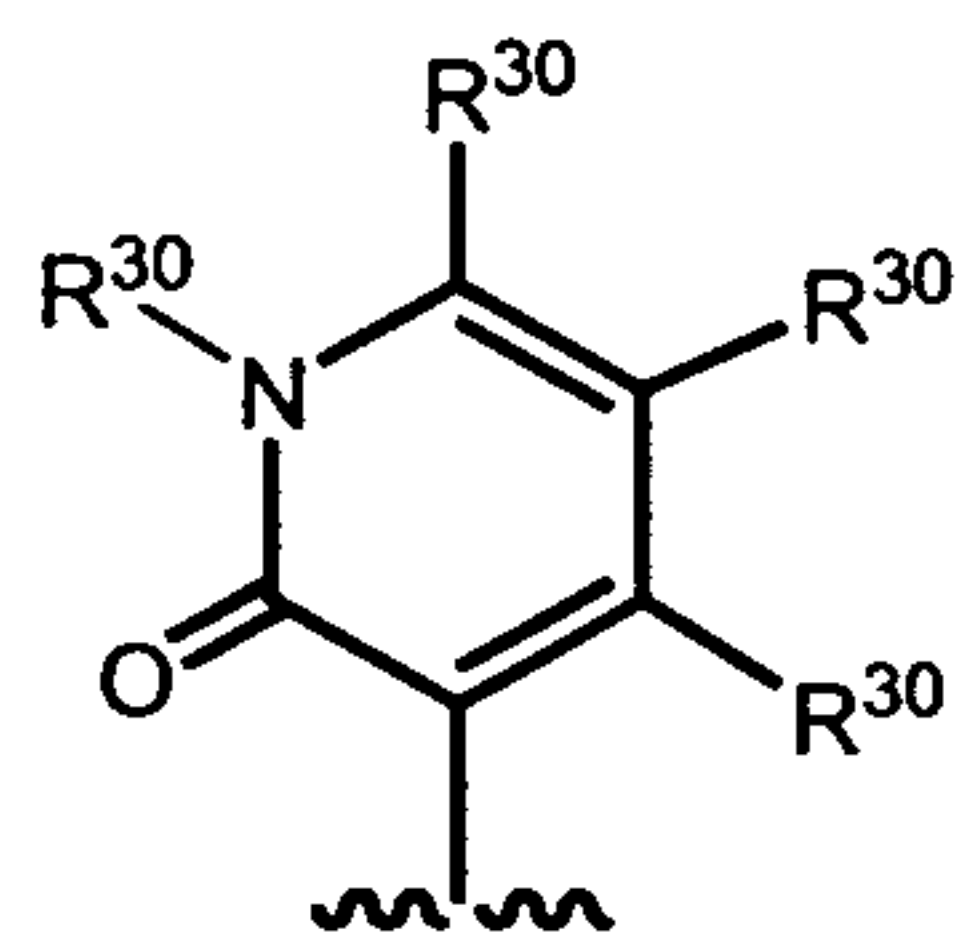


alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and represents a pyridyl group,

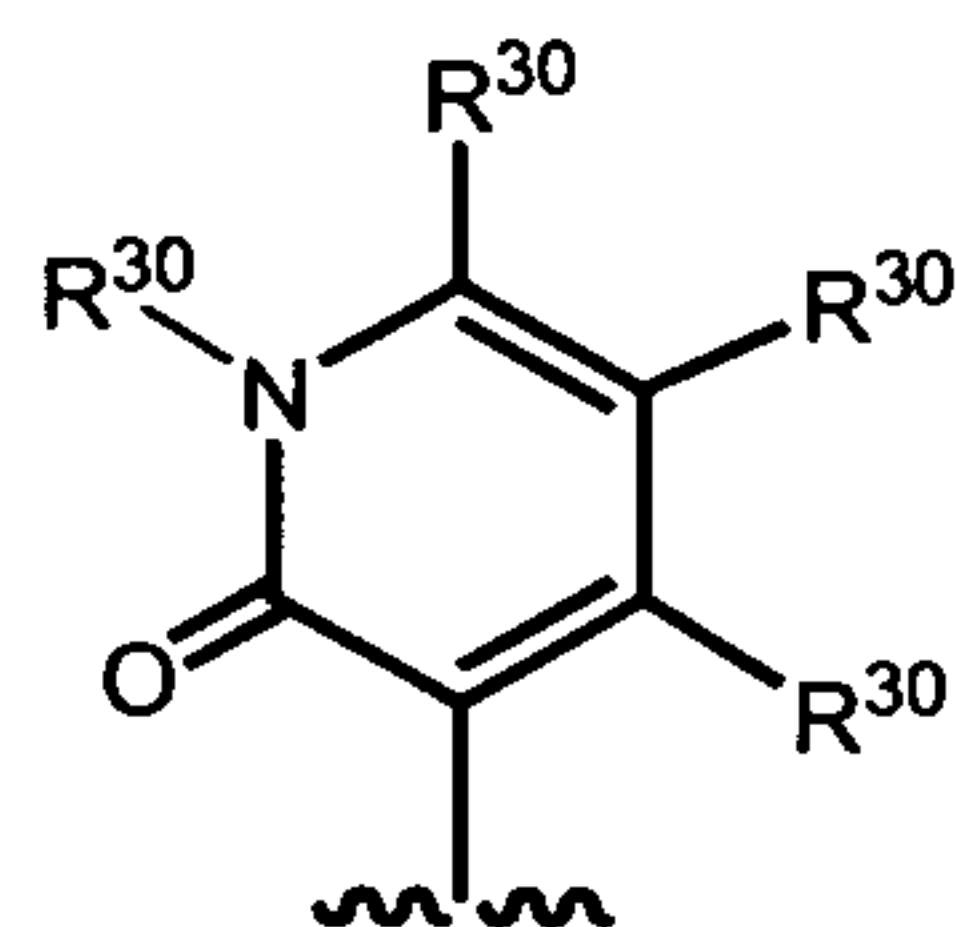
wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

58

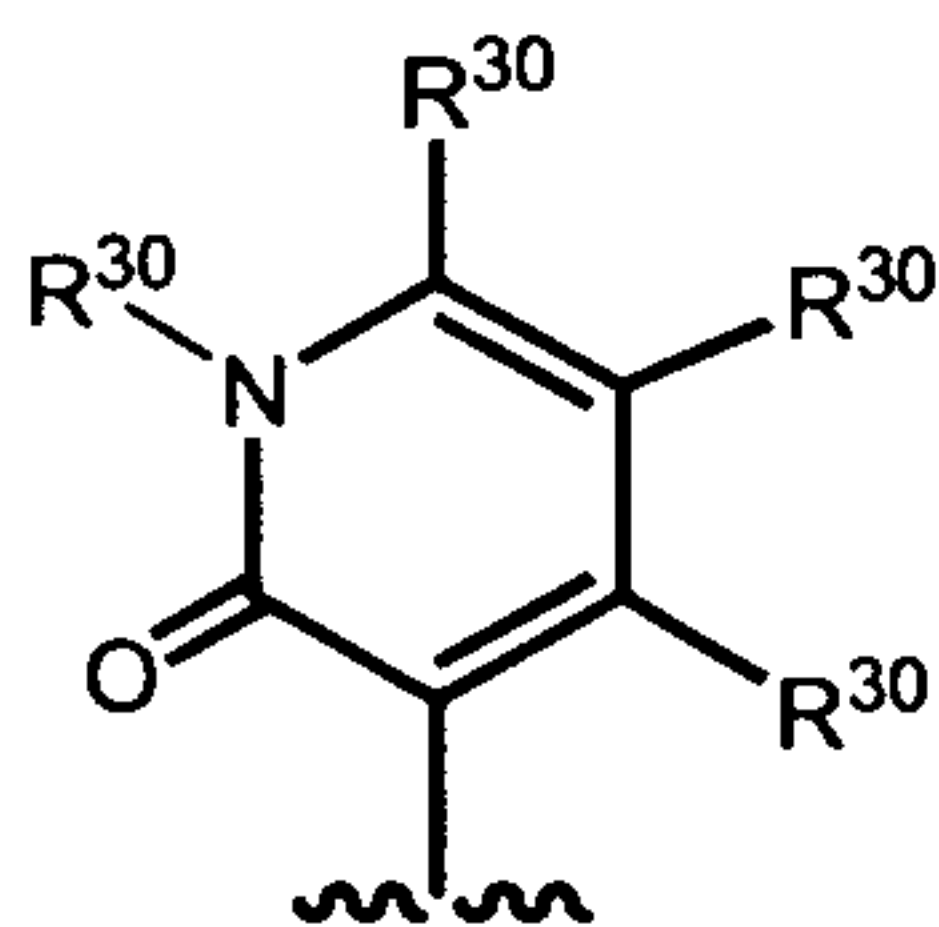
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, and R^3 is :



In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or  ; R^2 is -
5 $C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; and R^3 is :

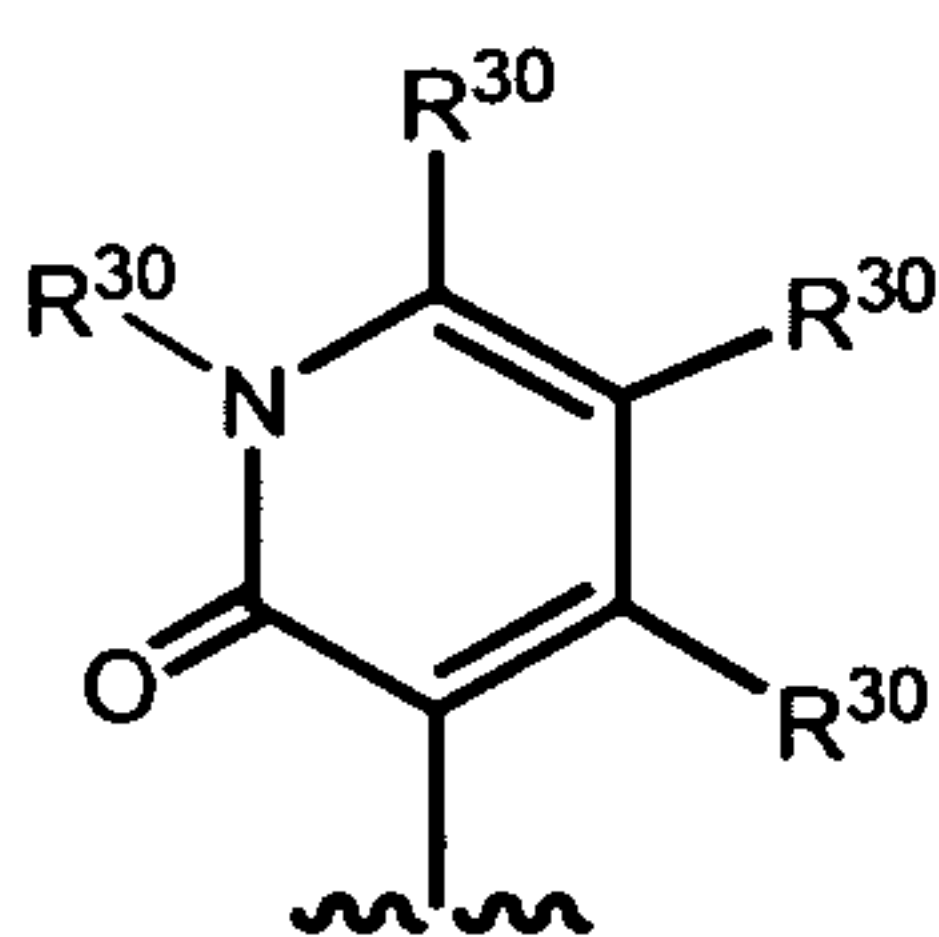


In still another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^3 is :



; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or $-\text{OH}$; R^5 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, $-\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{CN}$, and R^6 is H,
10 alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, $-\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{CN}$.

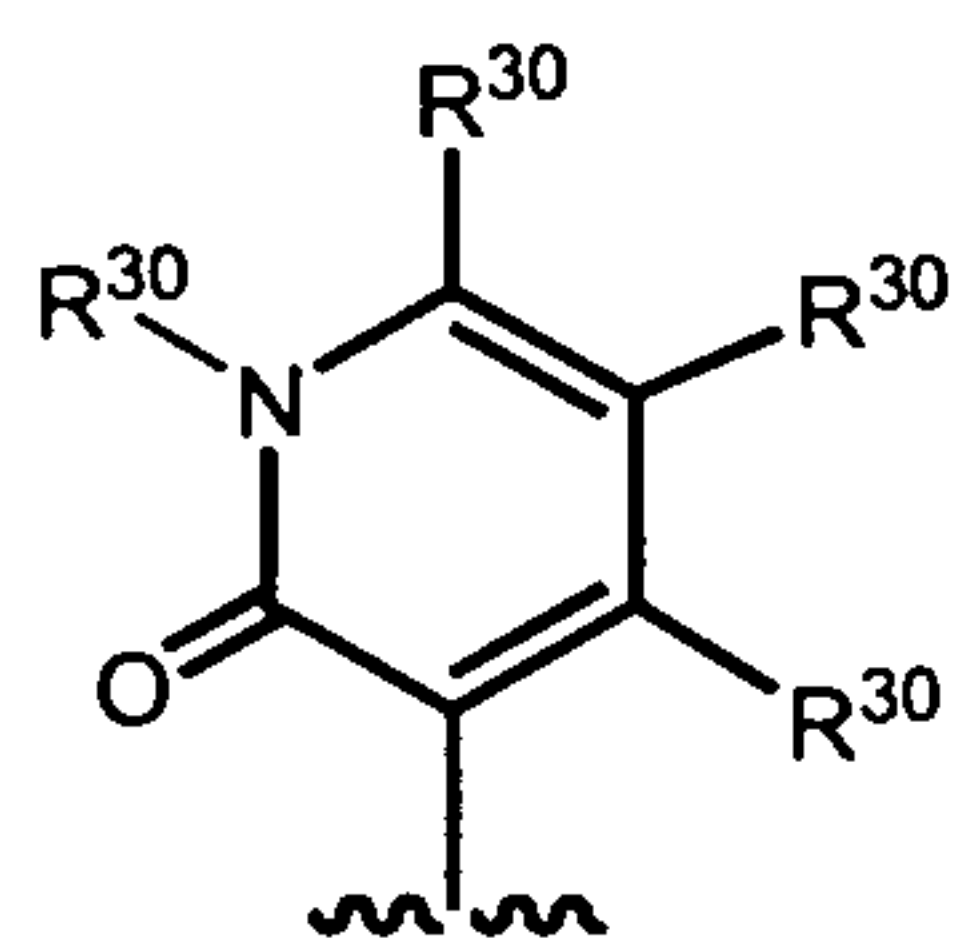
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, and R^3 is :



; R^4 and R^7 are each H; R^5 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, $-\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{CN}$, and R^6 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, $-\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{CN}$.

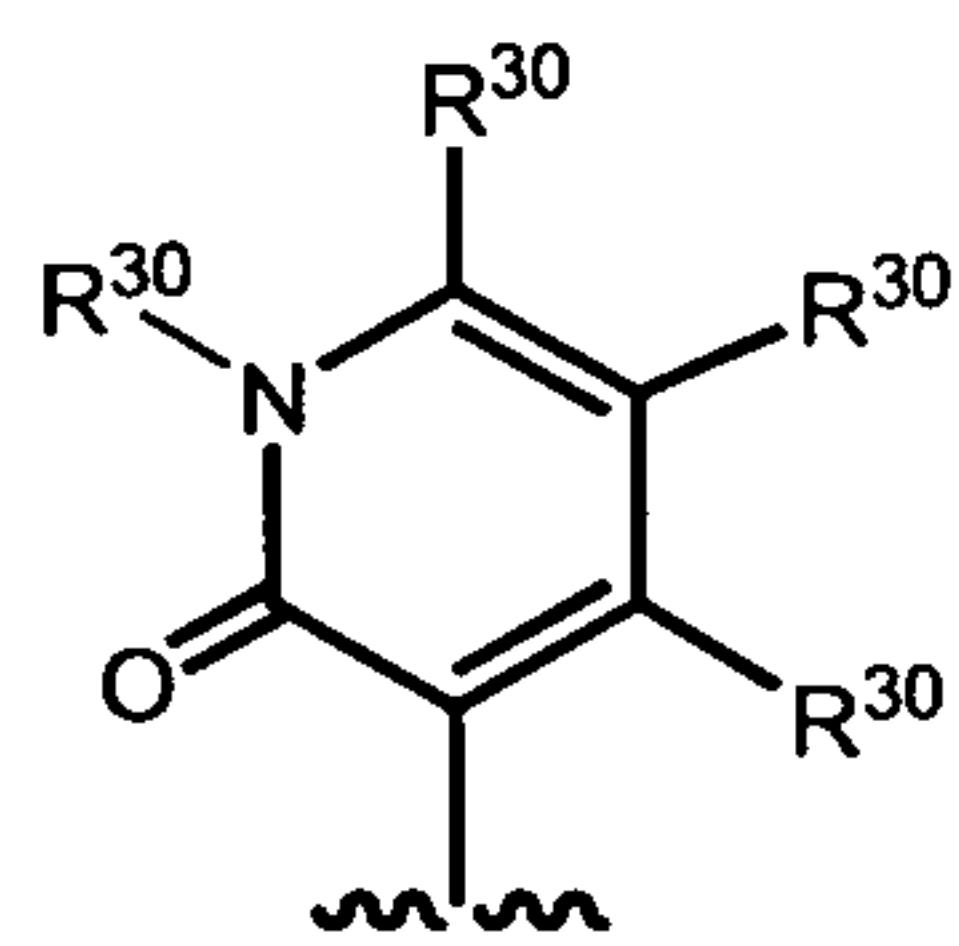
15 In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, and R^3 is :

59



; R^4 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 and R^6 are each other than H.

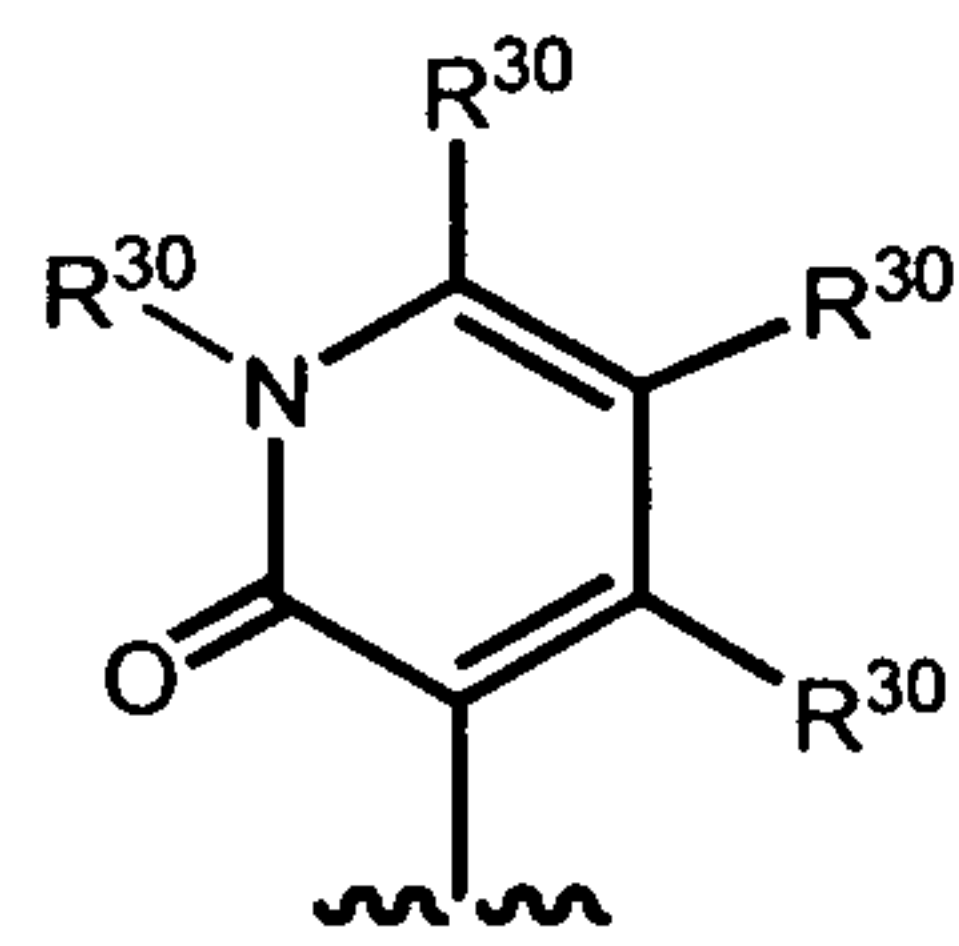
In yet another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, and R^3 is :



; R^4 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 and R^6 are each independently selected from

5 alkyl, halo and haloalkyl.

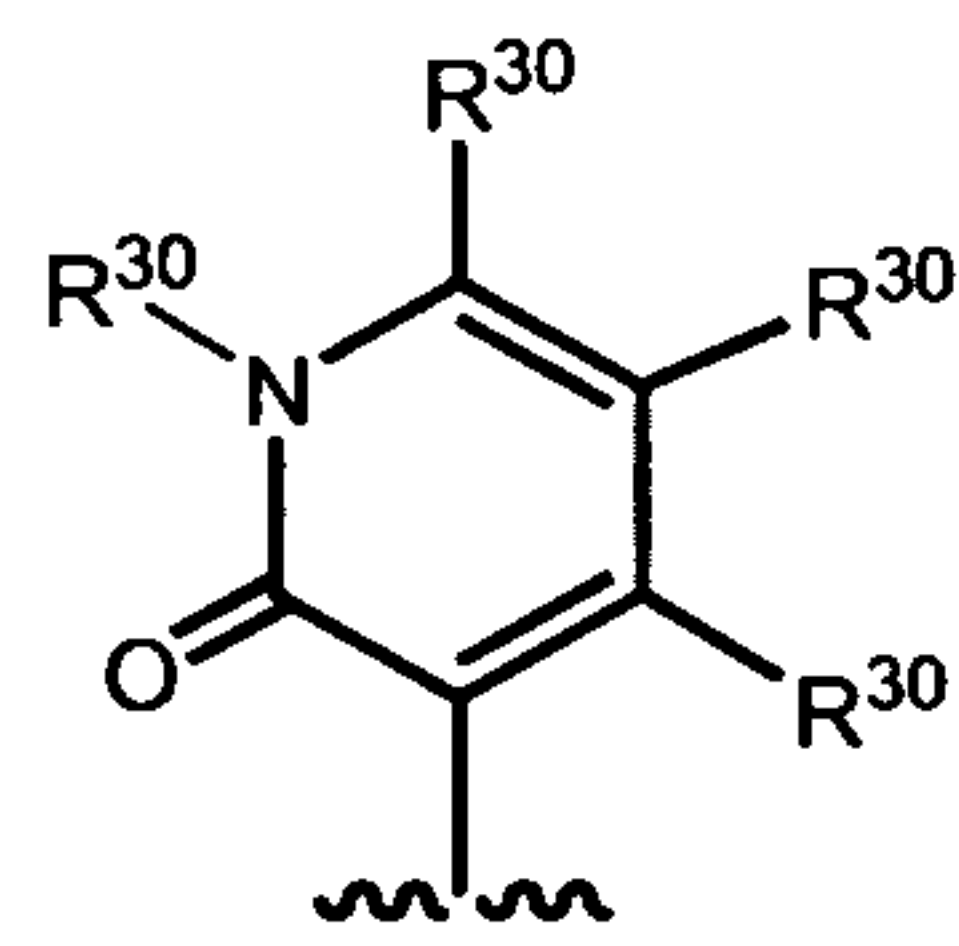
In a further embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, and R^3 is :



; R^4 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 and R^6 are each independently selected from

alkyl and halo.

In one embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^3 is :



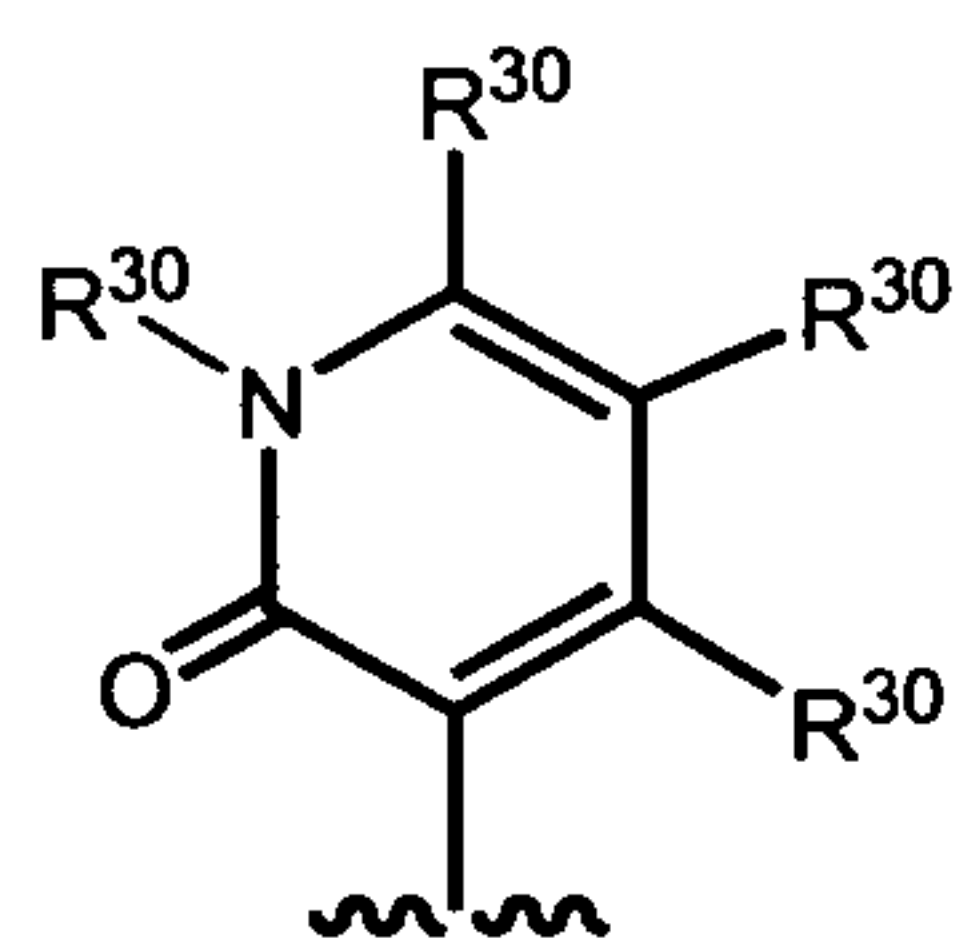
; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or $-OH$; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O-$

alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; and R^{10} is aryl or heteroaryl.

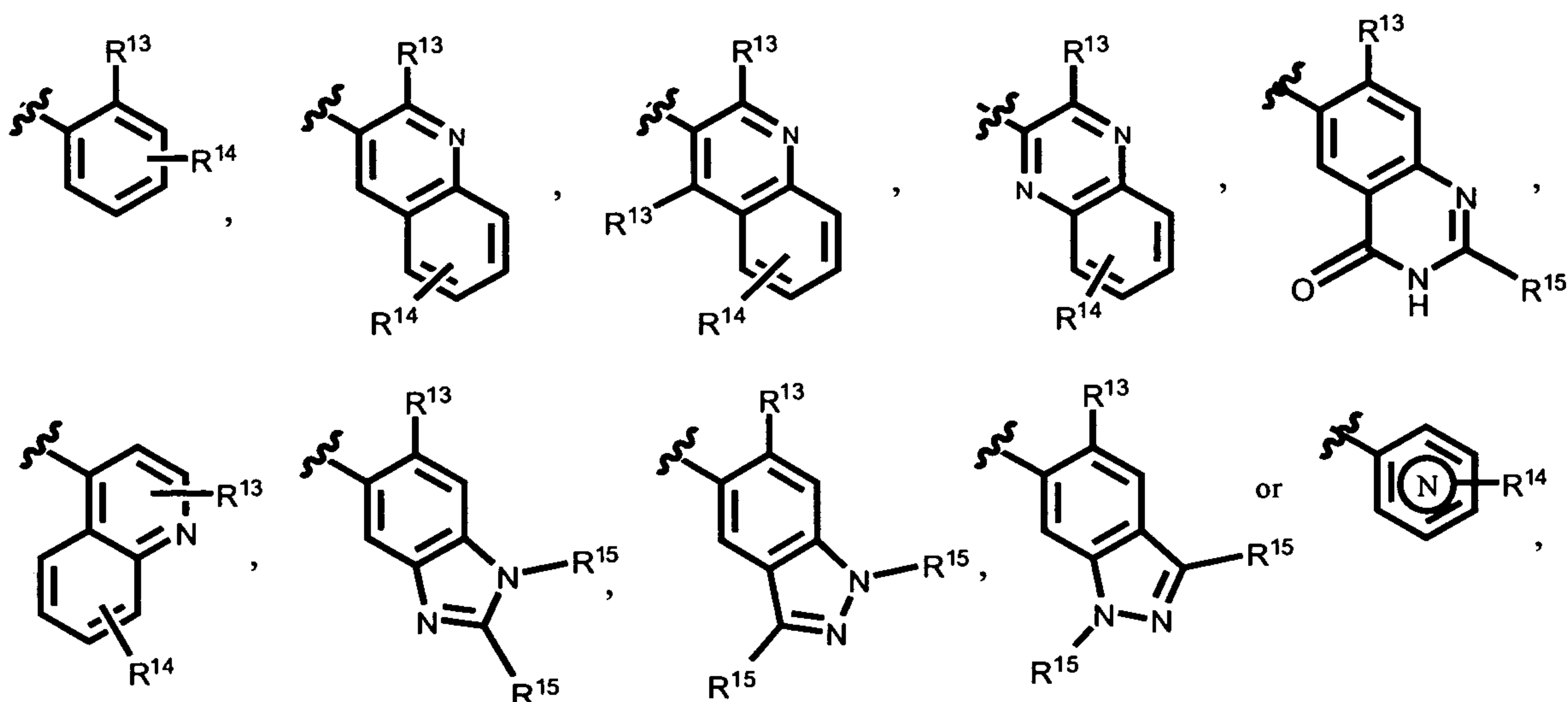
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^3 is :

10

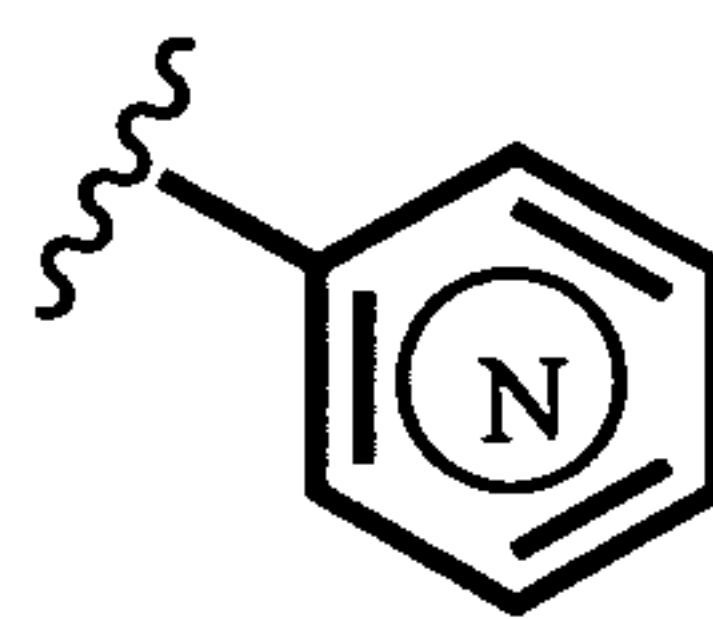
60



; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or $-OH$; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; and R^{10} is:



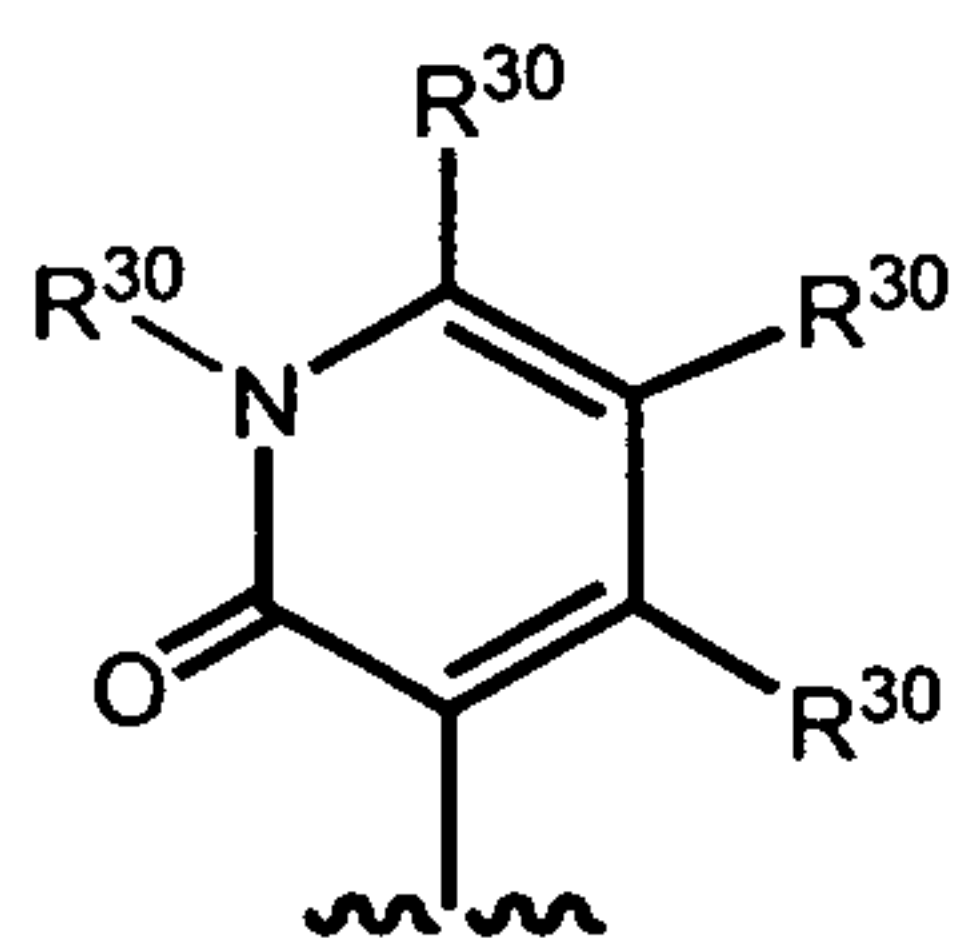
wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -



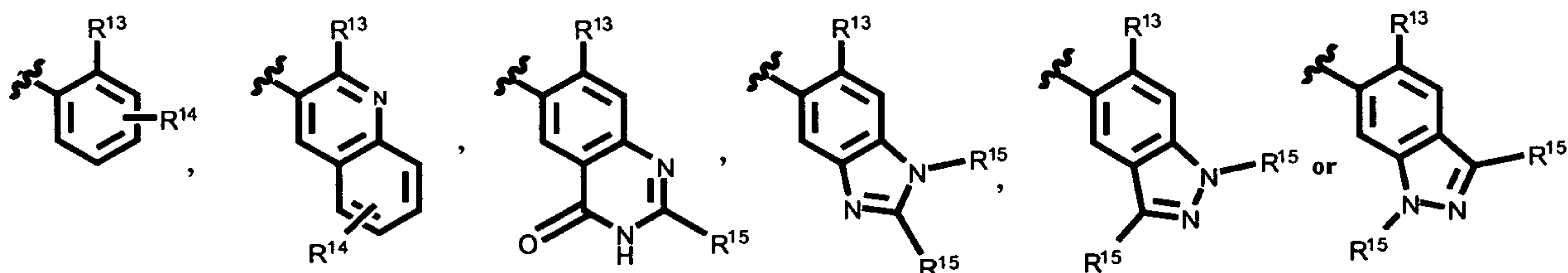
alkyl, $-C(O)$ -heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^3 is :

61

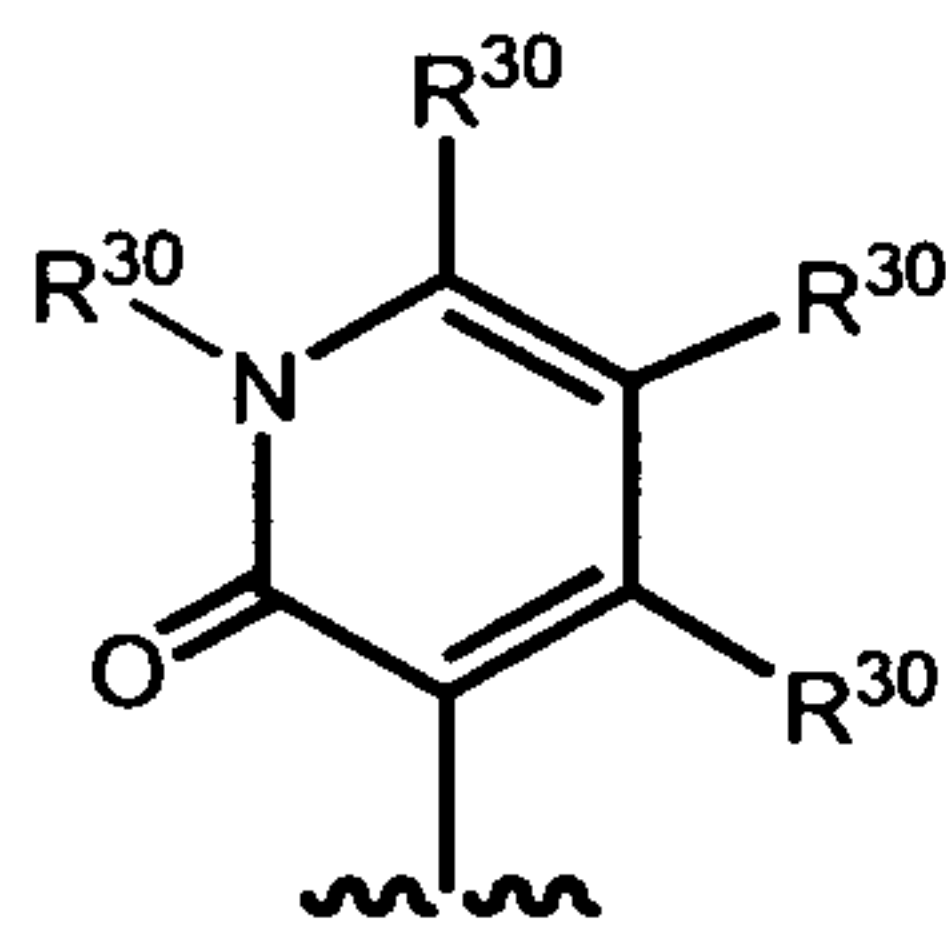


; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or $-OH$; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; and R^{10} is:



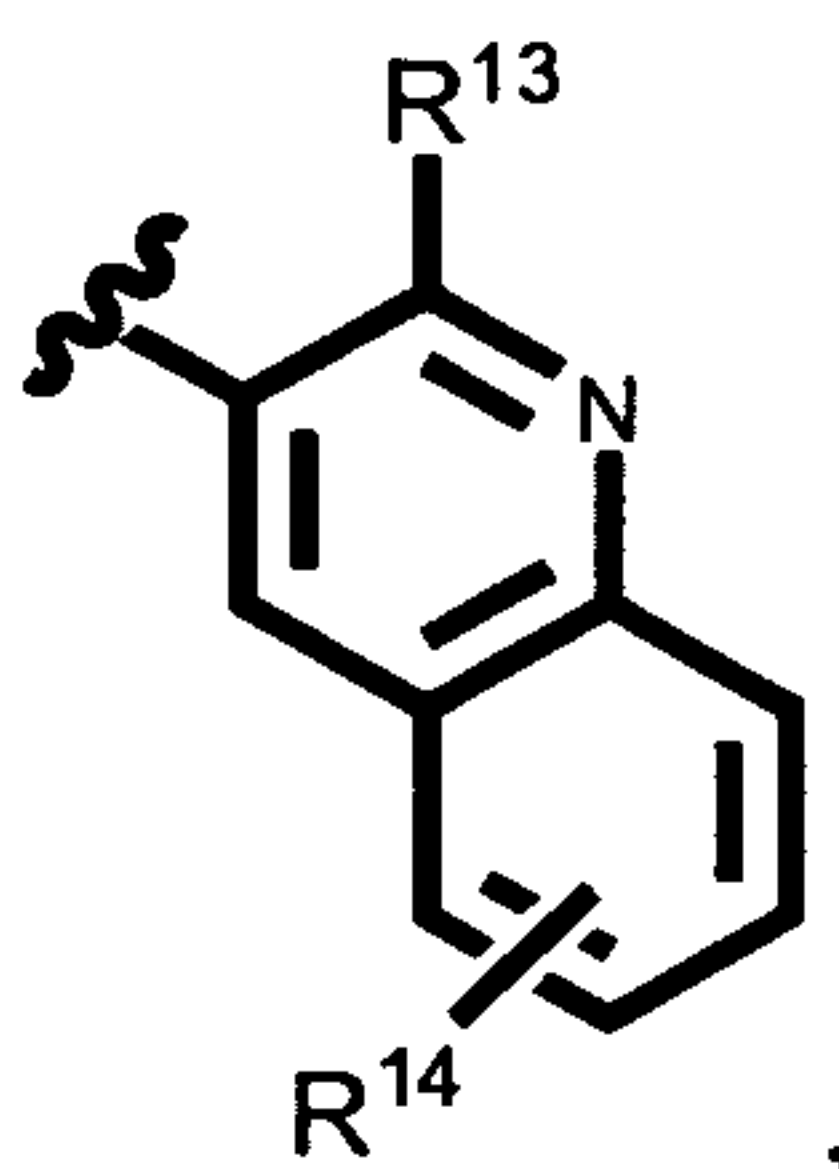
wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^3 is :



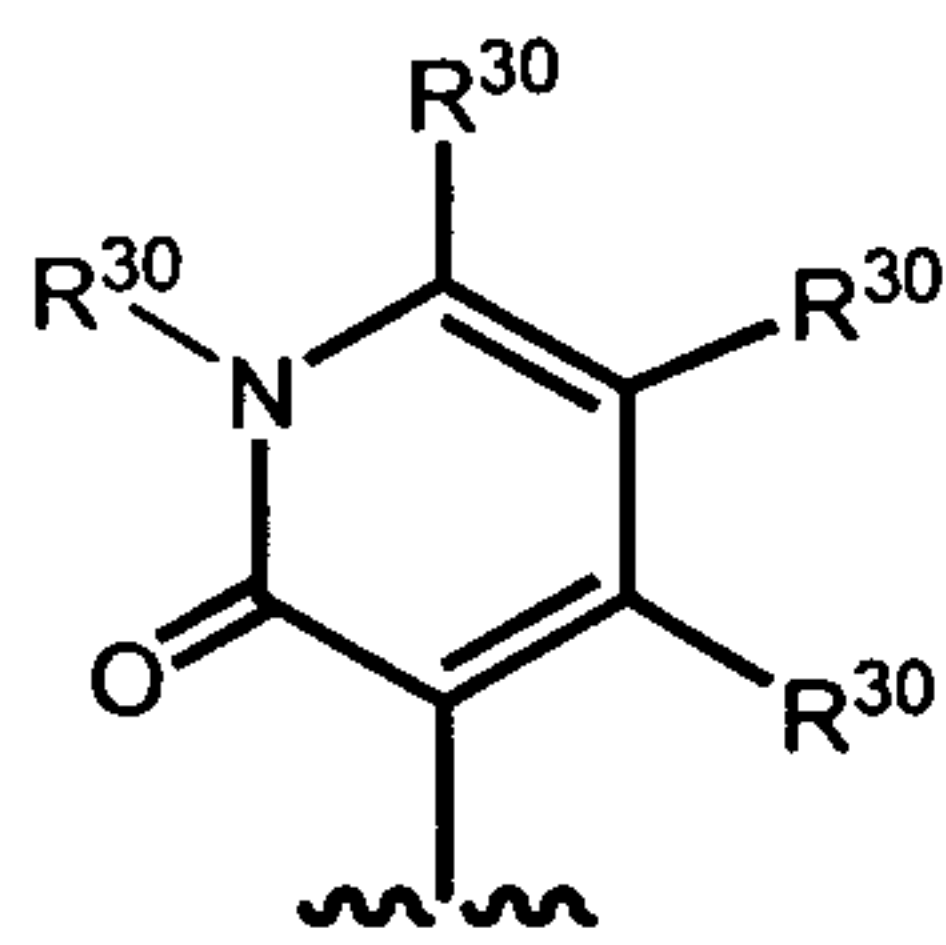
; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or $-OH$; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; and R^{10} is:

62

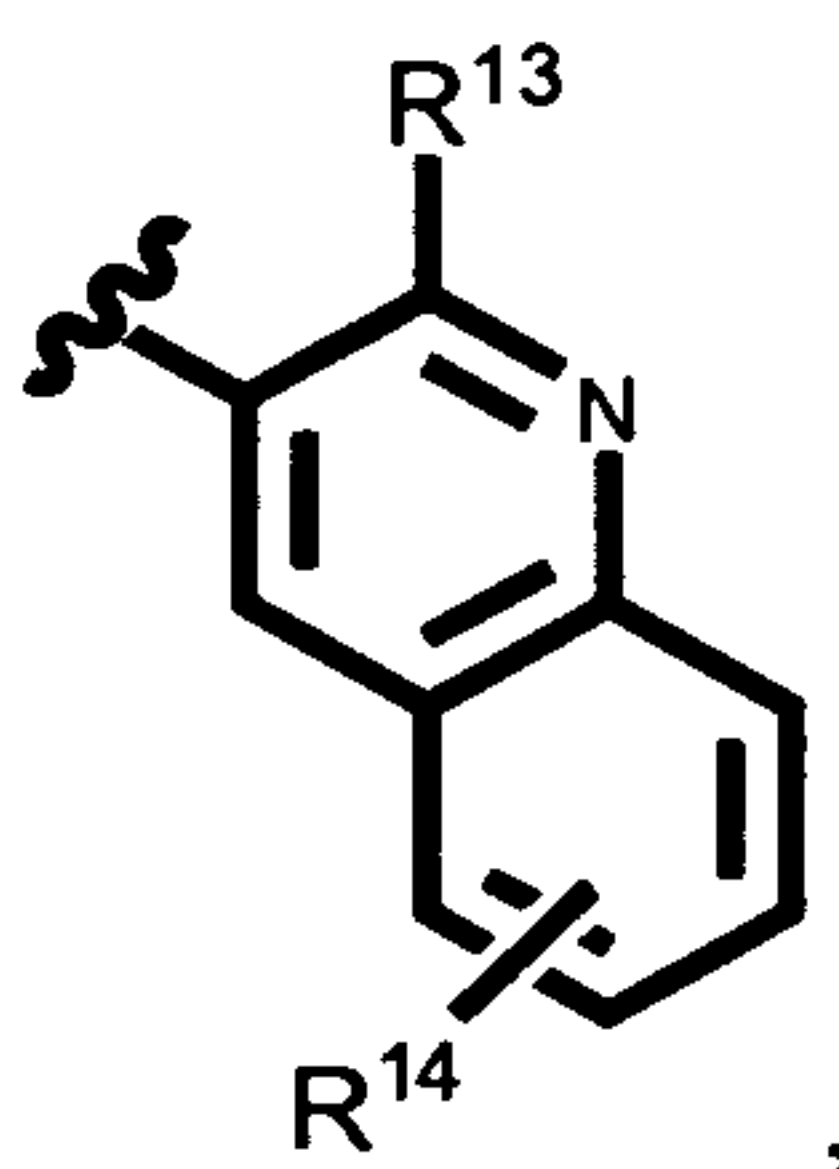


wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

In still another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^3 is :



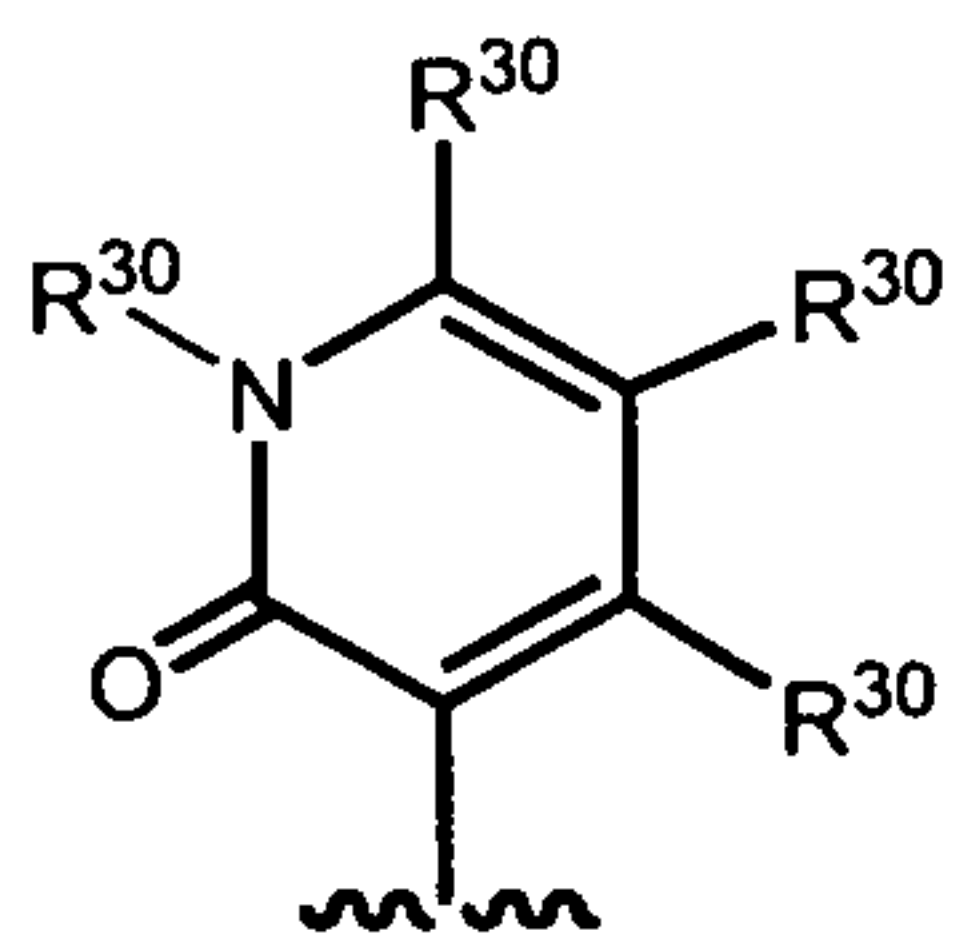
; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or -OH; R^5 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN; R^6 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN; and R^{10} is:



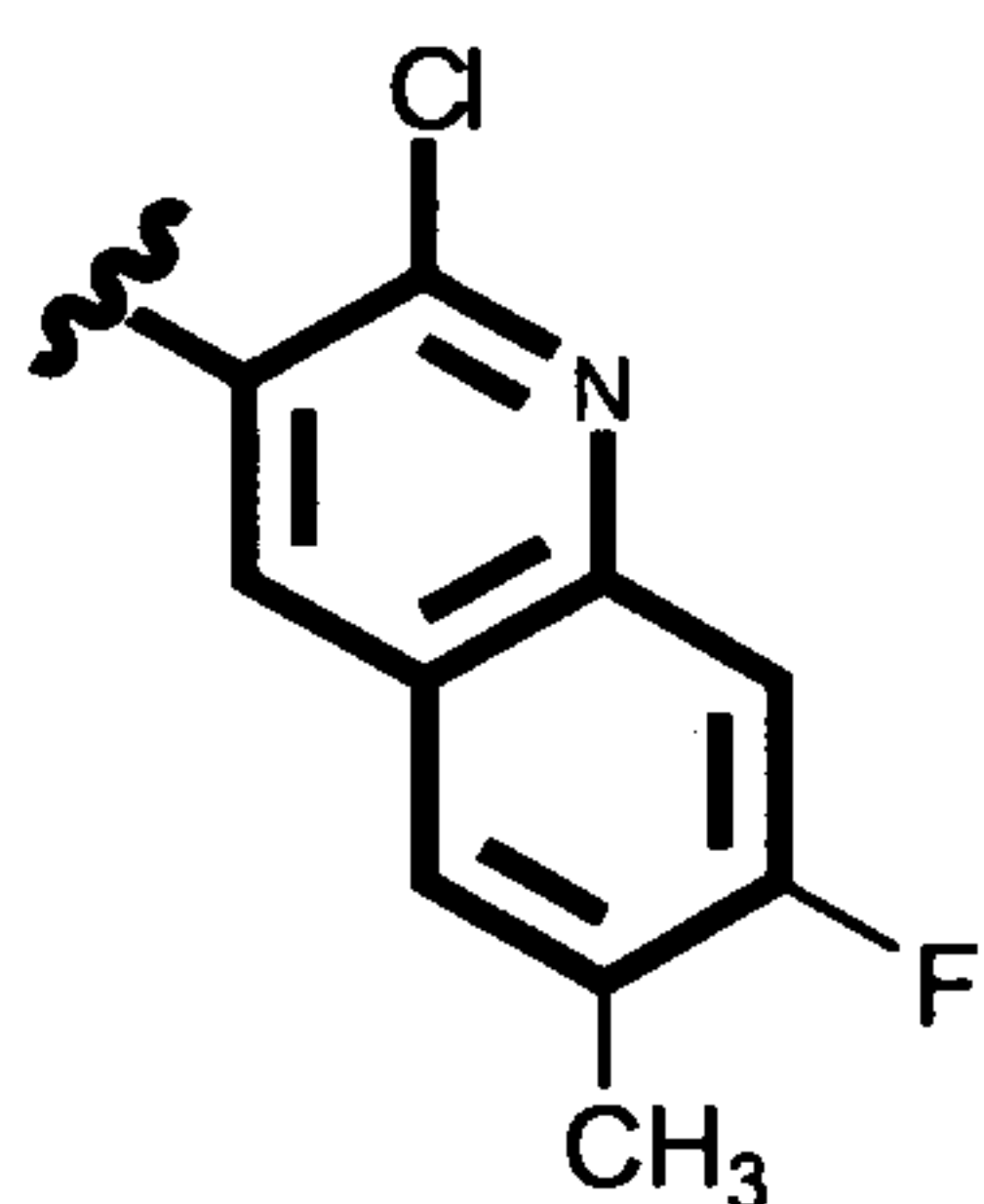
wherein R^{13} is Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl or halo.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^3 is :

63

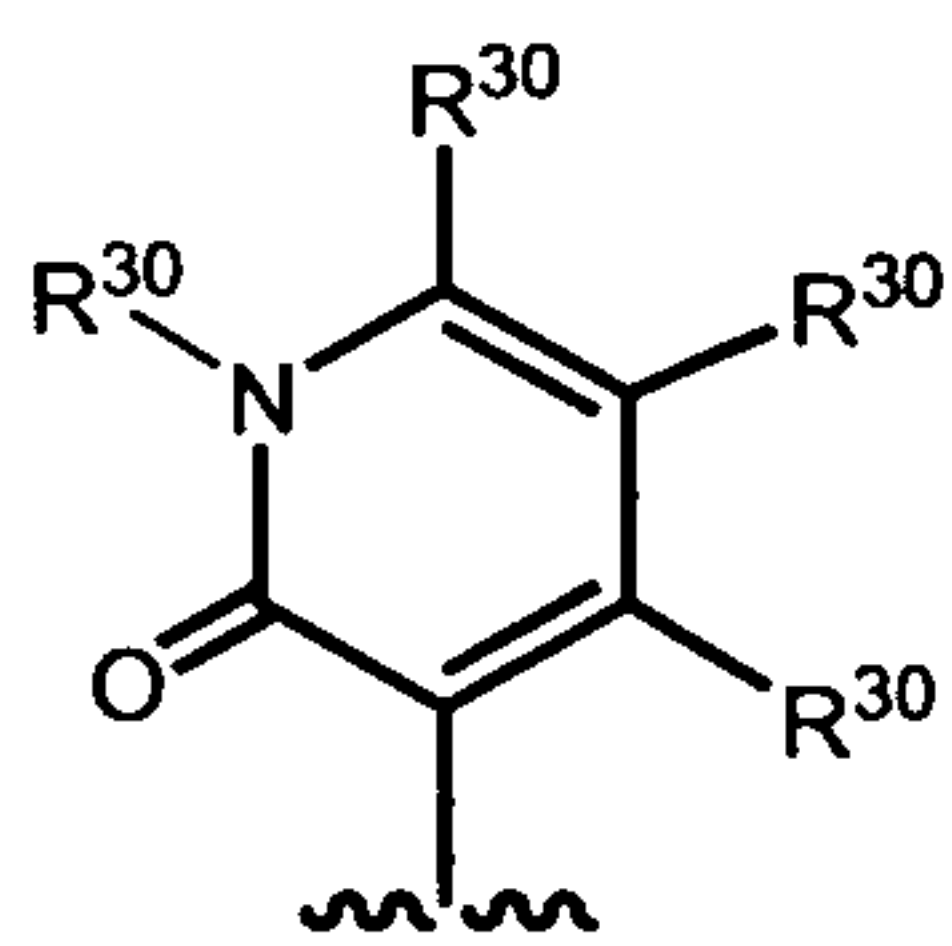


; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or $-OH$; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; and R^{10} is:



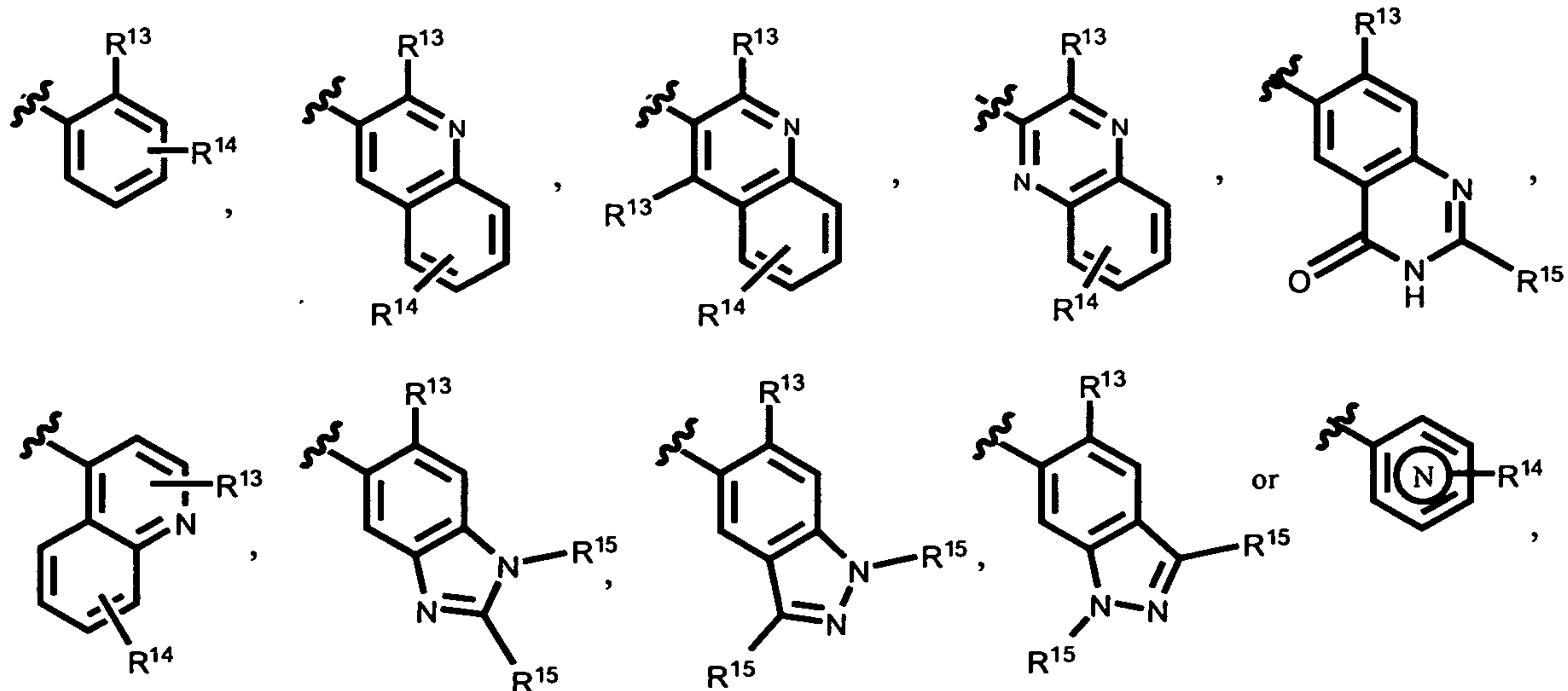
5

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^3 is :



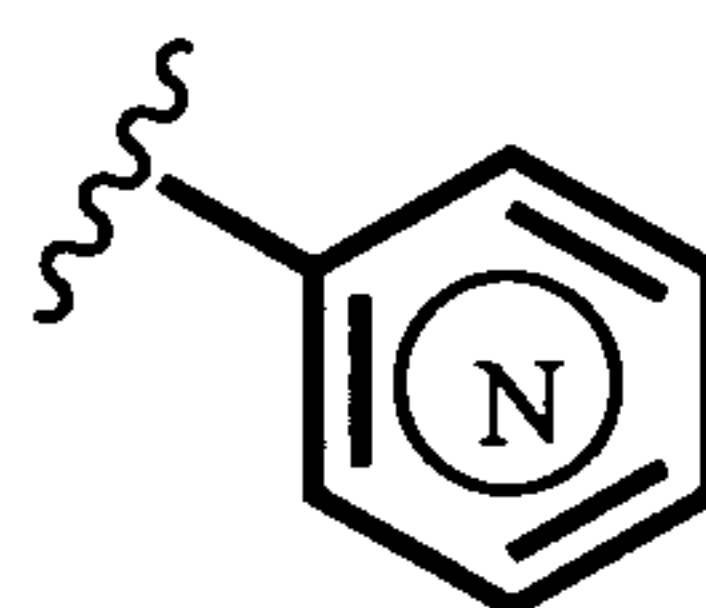
; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or $-OH$; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; and R^{10} is:

10



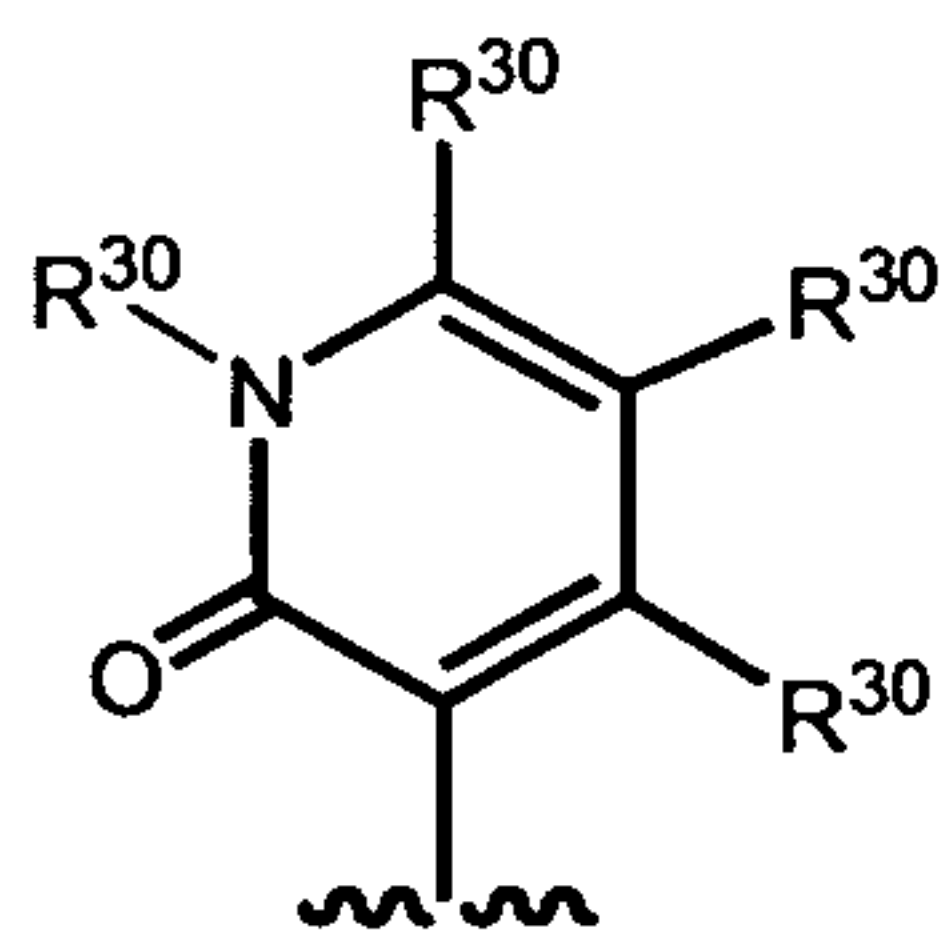
64

wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-

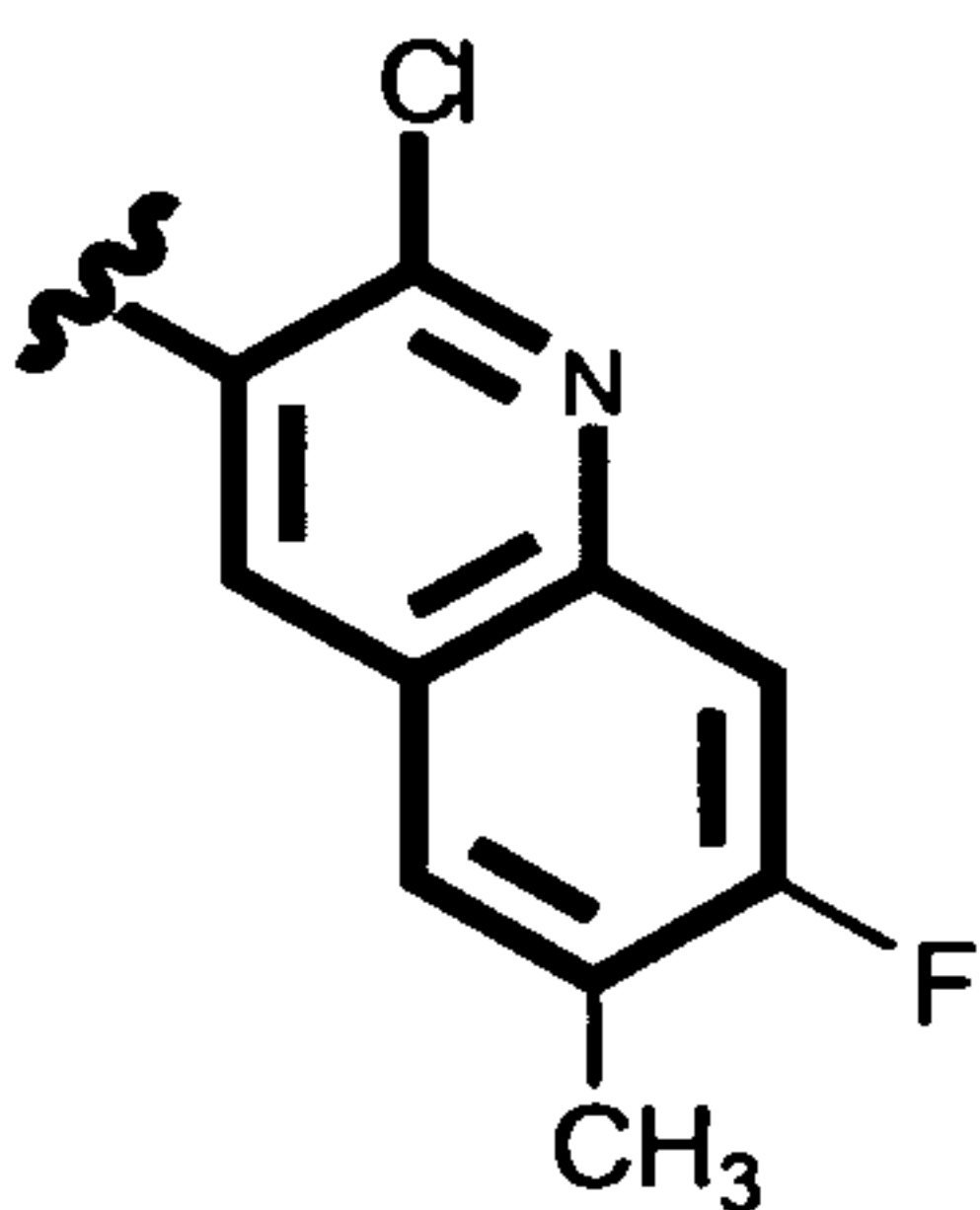


alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

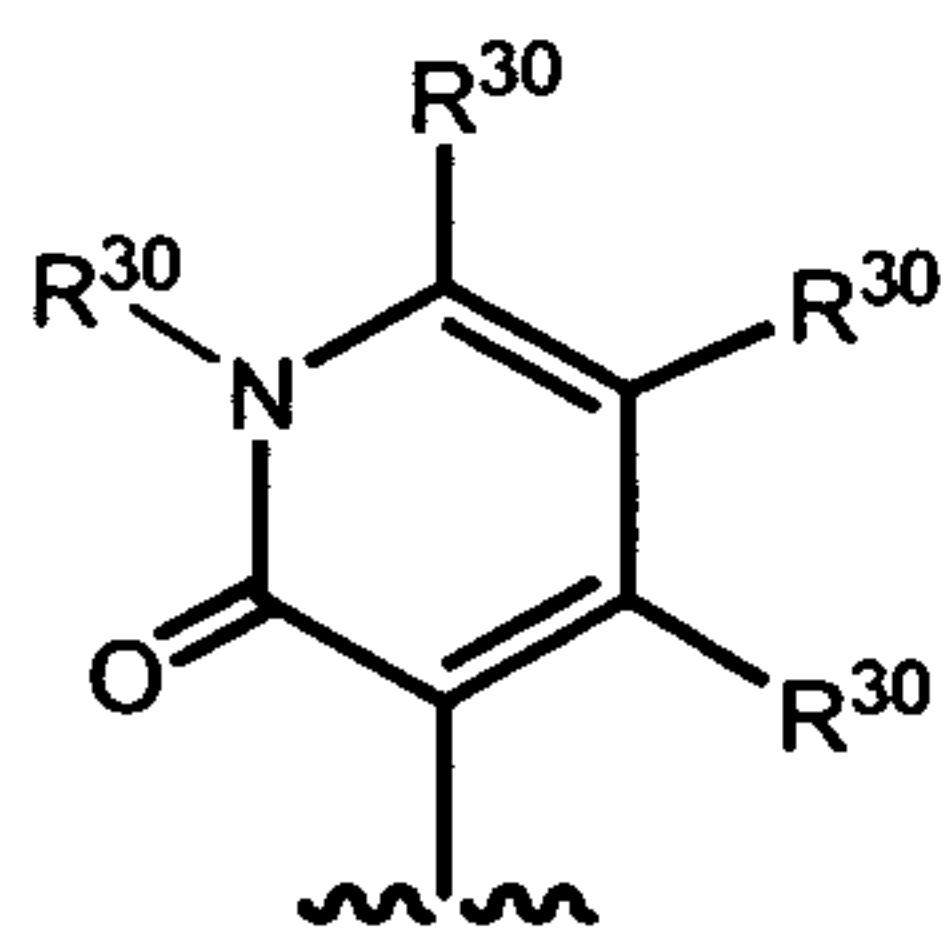
In still another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, R^3 is :



; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or -OH; R^5 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN; R^6 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN; and R^{10} is:



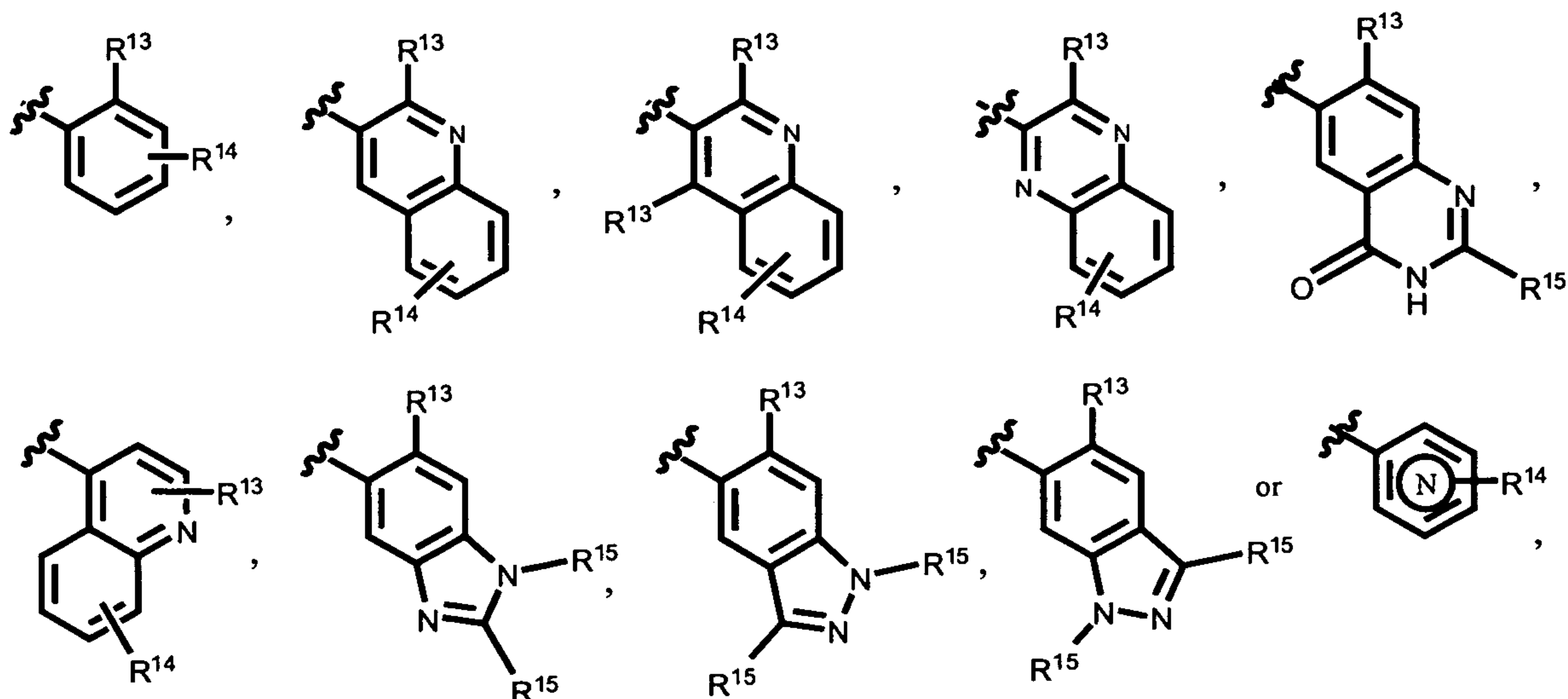
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$, R^2 is $-C(O)OH$; R^3 is :



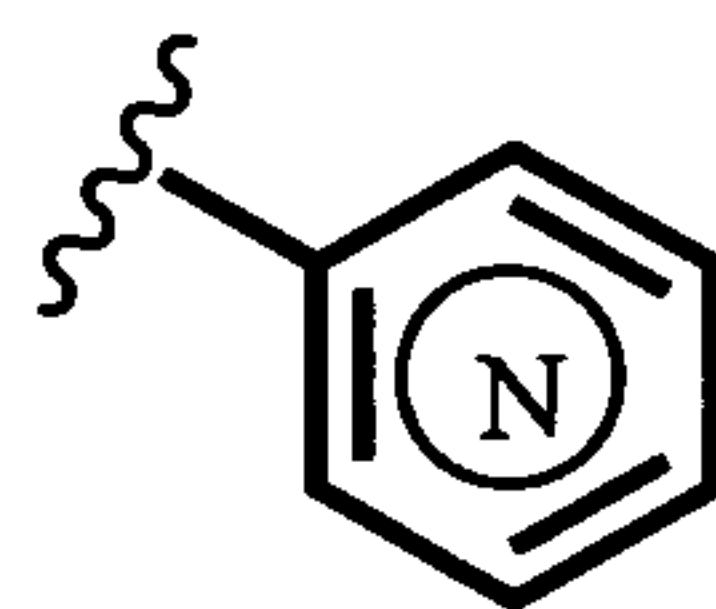
; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or -OH; R^5 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN; R^6 is H,

65

alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN;
and R¹⁰ is:

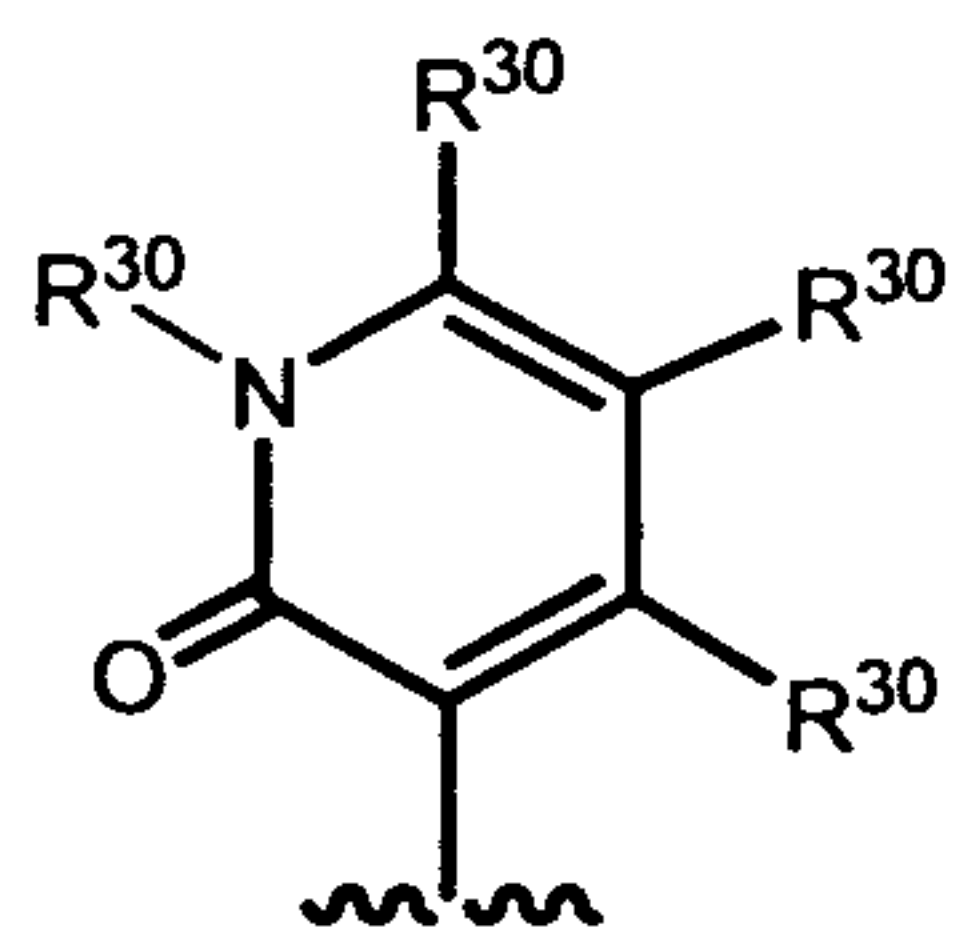


wherein R¹³ is H, F, Br or Cl; R¹⁴ represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each
5 independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-
alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-
alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl
and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R¹⁵ is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-
alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -
10 SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-



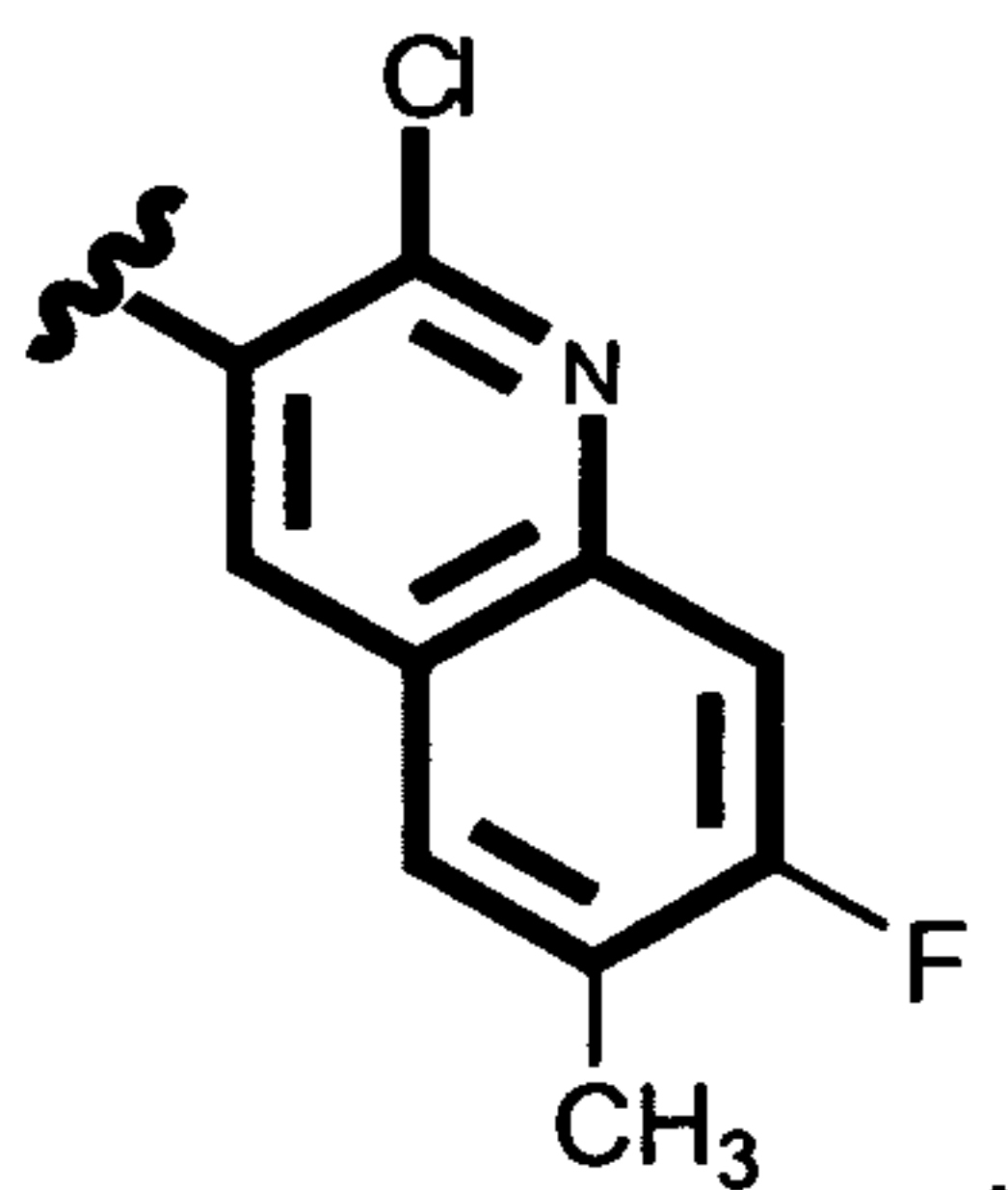
alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and represents a pyridyl group,
wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

In another embodiment, R¹ is -CH₂-, R² is -C(O)OH; R³ is :



; R⁴ and R⁷ are each independently H, alkyl, halo or -OH; R⁵ is H, alkyl, -O-
15 alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN; R⁶ is H,
alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN;
and R¹⁰ is:

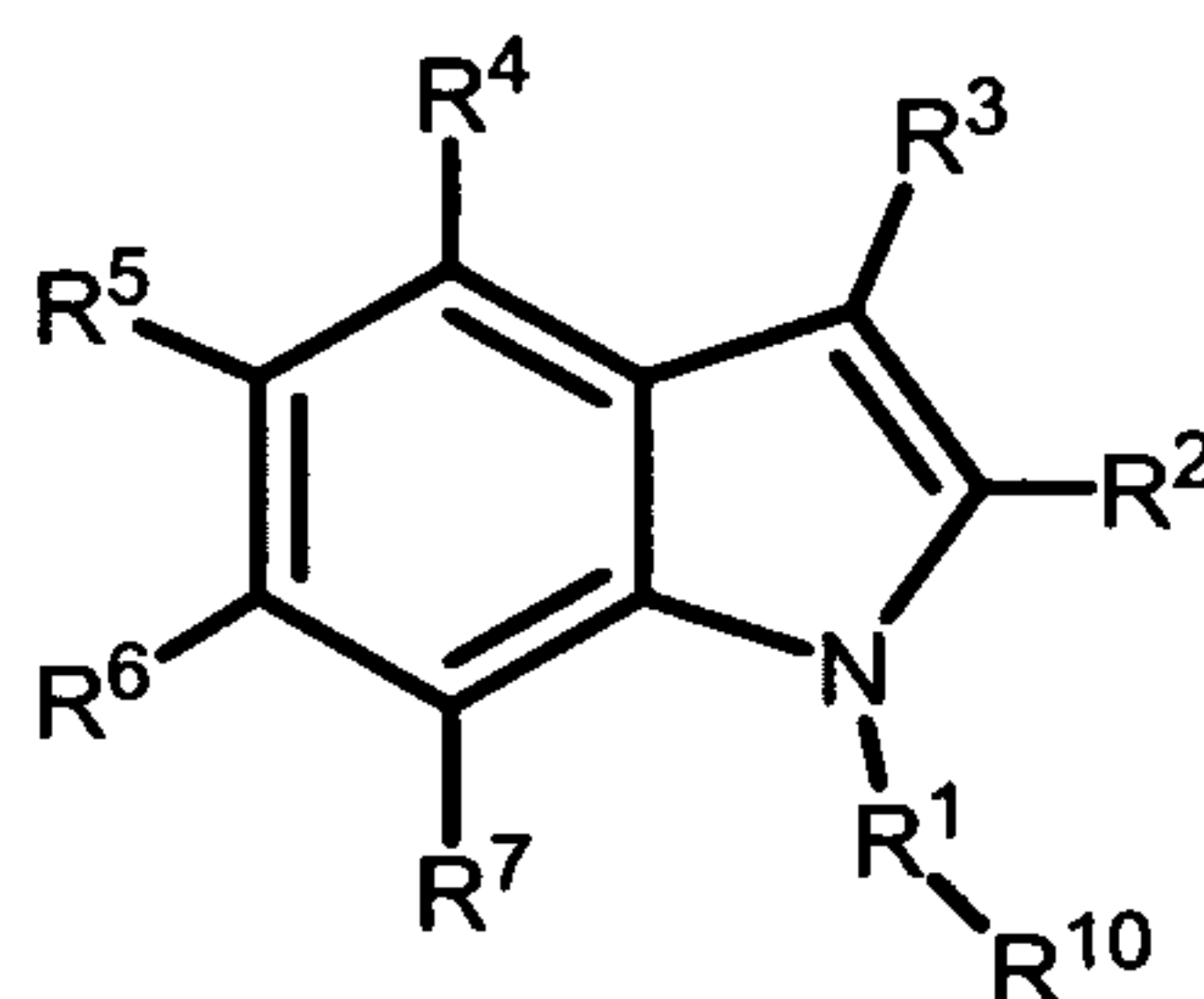
66



In one embodiment, for the compounds of formula (I), variables R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 and R^{10} are selected independently from each other.

In another embodiment, the compounds of formula (I) are in purified form.

5 In one embodiment, the compounds of formula (I) have the formula (Ia):



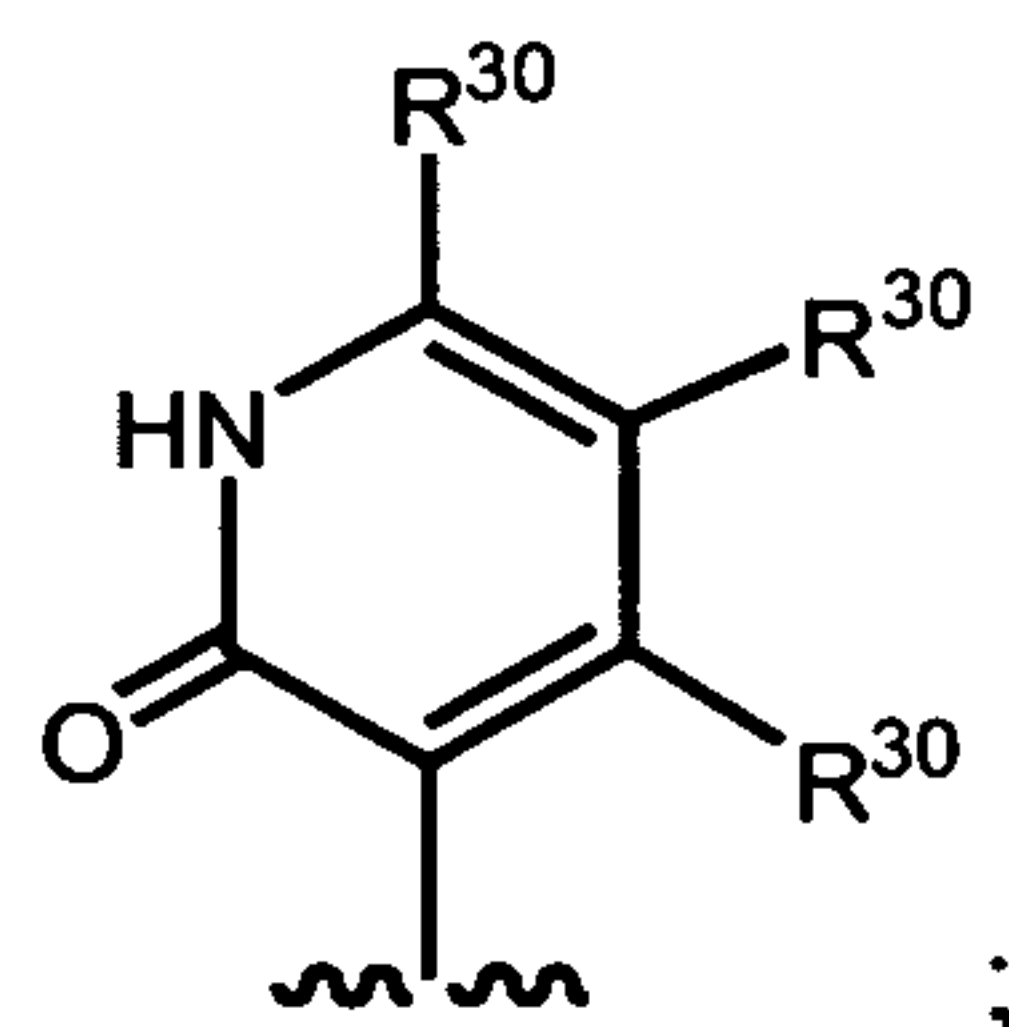
(Ia)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof,
wherein:

10 R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or  ;

R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{Oalkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NHalkyl}$, or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-cycloalkyl}$;

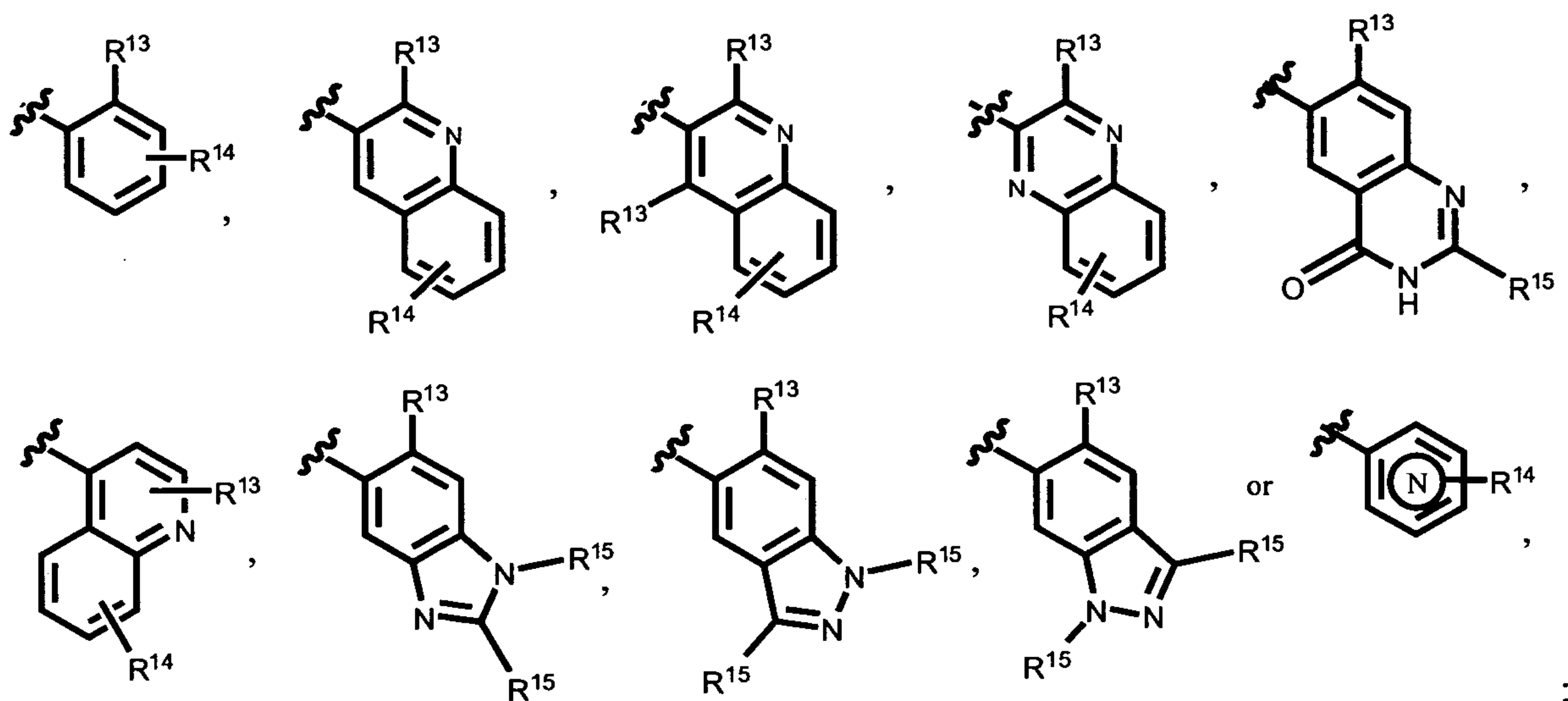
R^3 is:



15 R^4 , R^5 , R^6 and R^7 are each, independently, H, alkyl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$, haloalkyl, halo, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}^9$ or $-\text{N(R}^9)_2$;

each occurrence of R^9 is independently H, alkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

67

 R^{10} is:

each occurrence of R^{11} is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

5 each occurrence of R^{12} is independently H, halo, $-N(alkyl)_2$, $-OH$, $-O-alkyl$, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two R^{12} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or $C=O$ group;

R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl;

10 R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O-alkyl$, $-O-haloalkyl$, $-NHSO_2-alkyl$, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH-alkyl$, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2-alkyl$, $-SO_2NH-alkyl$, $-S-alkyl$, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)-alkyl$, $-C(O)O-alkyl$, $-C(O)-heterocycloalkyl$ and heteroaryl;

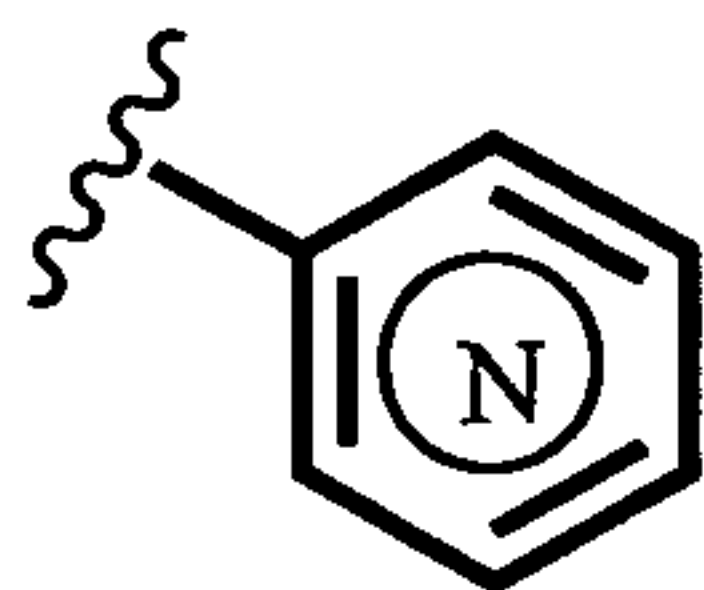
15 each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O-alkyl$, $-O-haloalkyl$, $-NHSO_2-alkyl$, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH-alkyl$, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2-alkyl$, $-SO_2NH-alkyl$, $-S-alkyl$, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)-alkyl$, $-C(O)O-alkyl$, $-C(O)-heterocycloalkyl$ or heteroaryl;

20 each occurrence of R^{30} is independently, H, halo, $-N(alkyl)_2$, $-OH$, $-O-alkyl$, $-O-haloalkyl$, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a -3- to 7-membered ring selected from aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl and heterocycloalkyl;;

each occurrence of q is independently an integer ranging from 0 to 4;

each occurrence of r is independently an integer ranging from 1 to 4; and

68

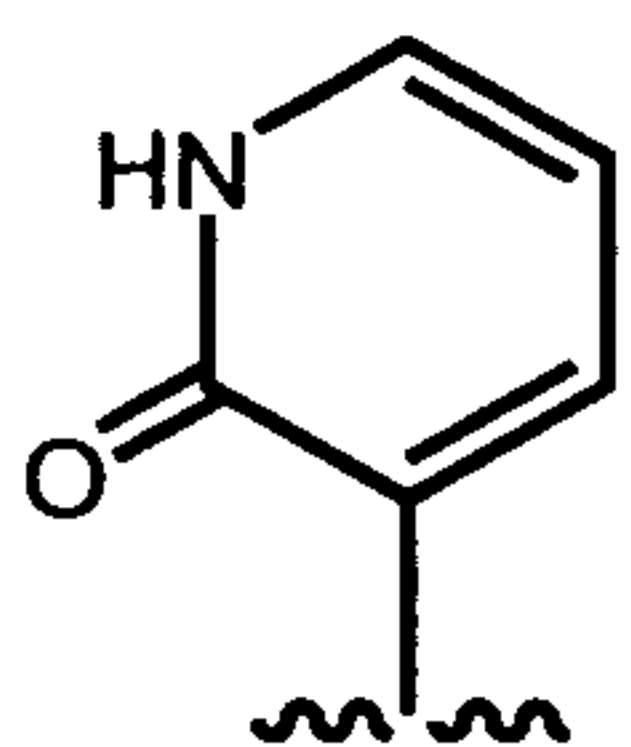


represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

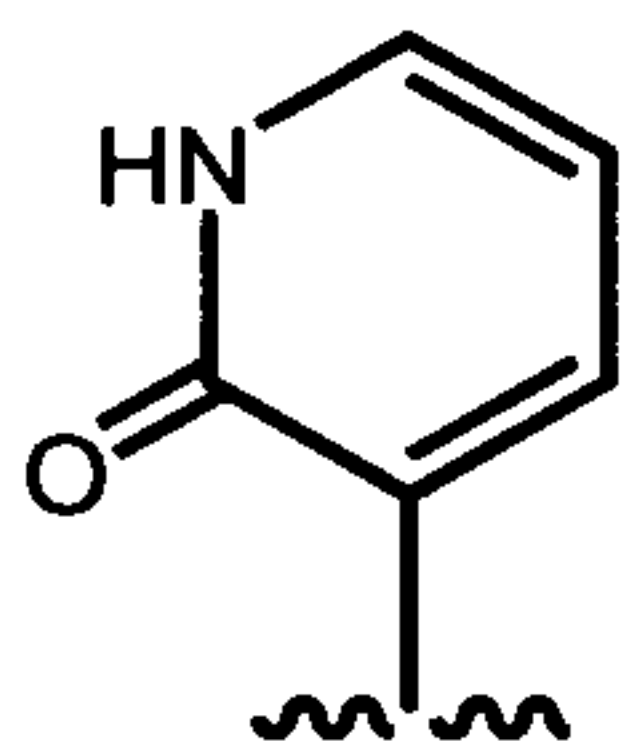
The following embodiments pertain to the compounds of formula (Ia):

5 In one embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OH$ or $-C(O)O$ -alkyl.

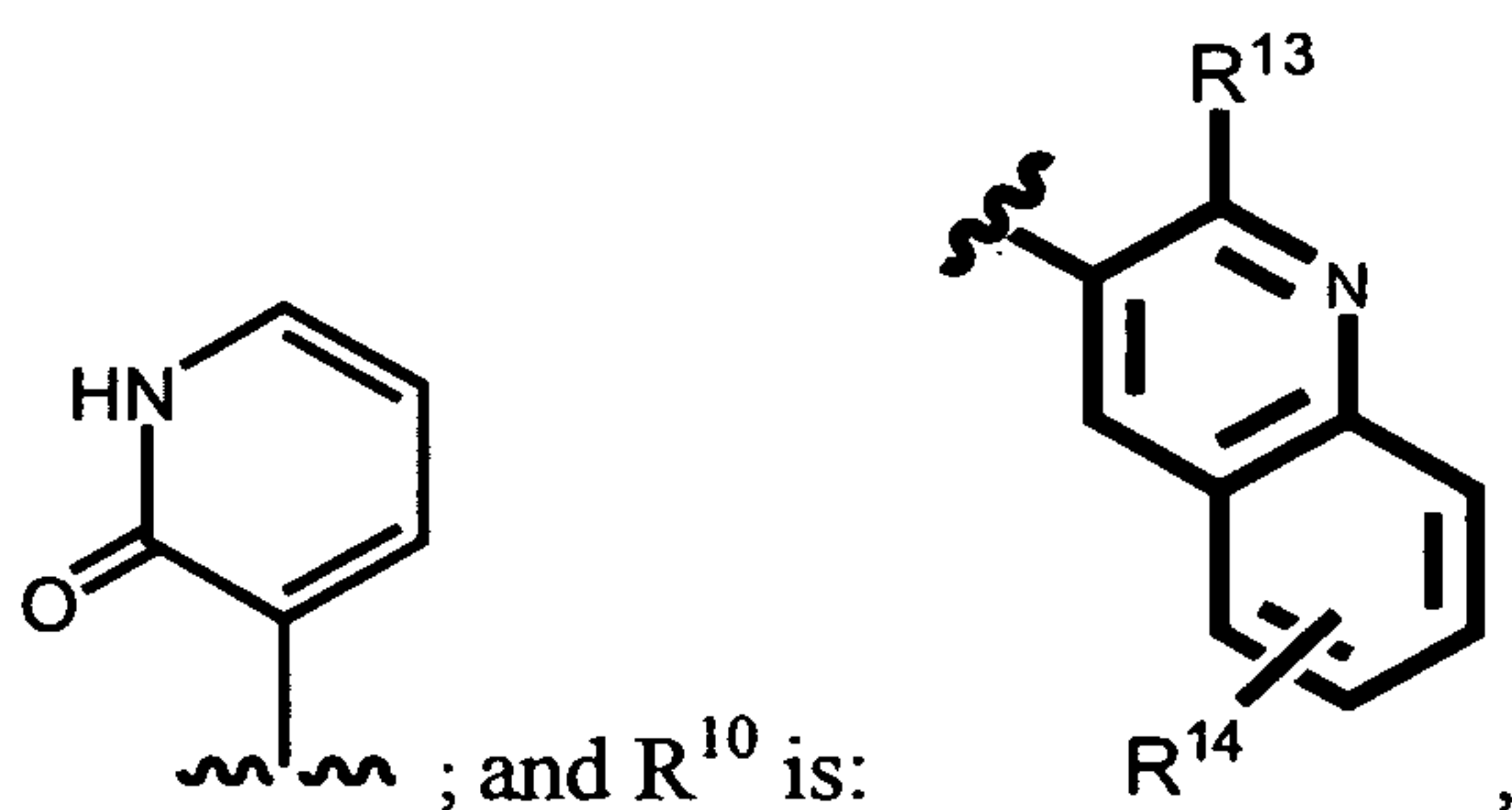
In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OH$ or $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, and R^3 is:



In another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OH$ or $-C(O)O$ -alkyl; and R^3 is:

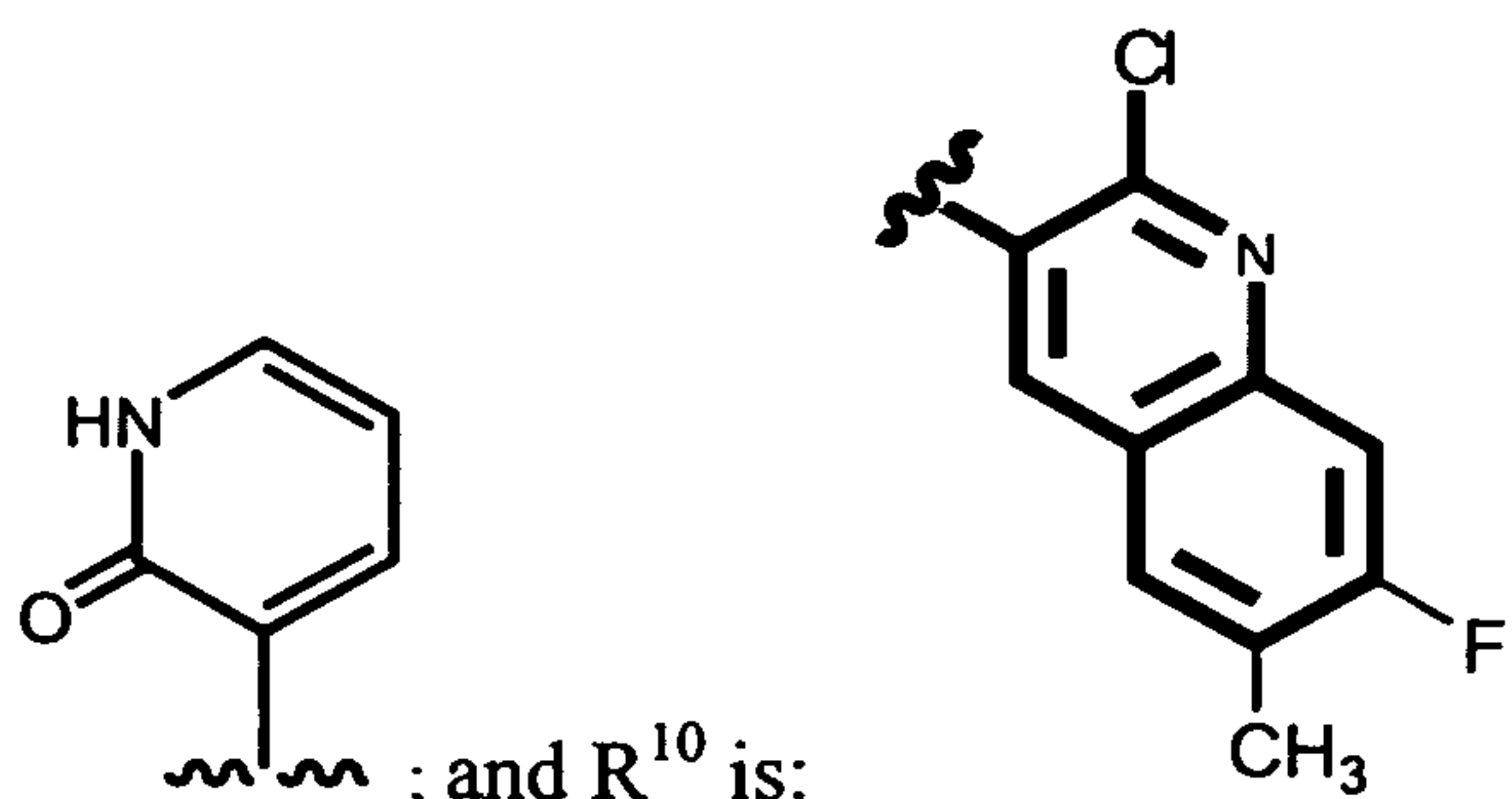


10 In still another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OH$ or $-C(O)O$ -alkyl; R^3 is:



wherein R^{13} is Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl or halo.

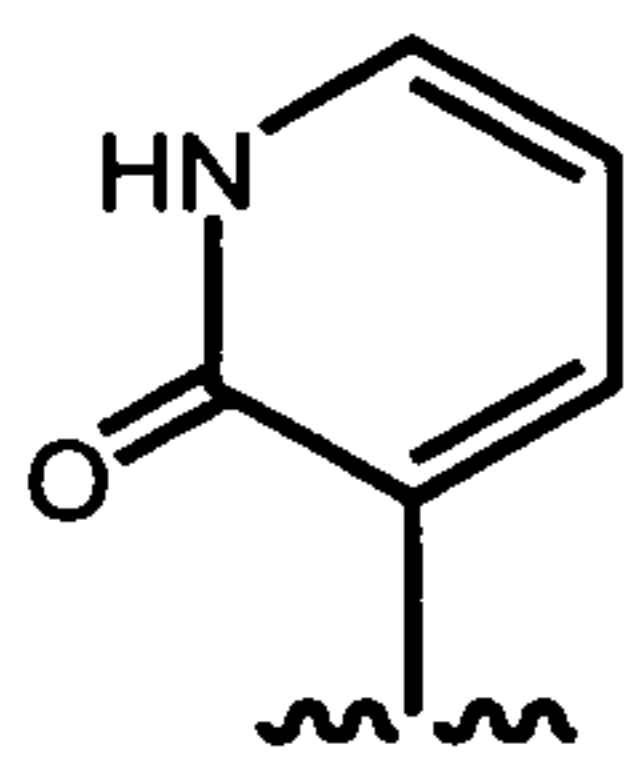
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OH$ or $-C(O)O$ -alkyl; R^3 is:



15 ; and R^{10} is:

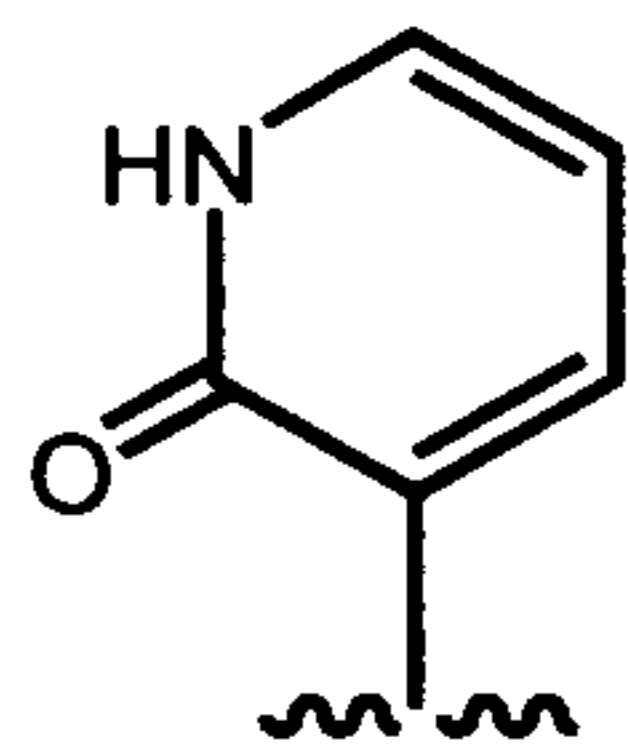
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OH$ or $-C(O)O$ -alkyl; R^3 is:

69



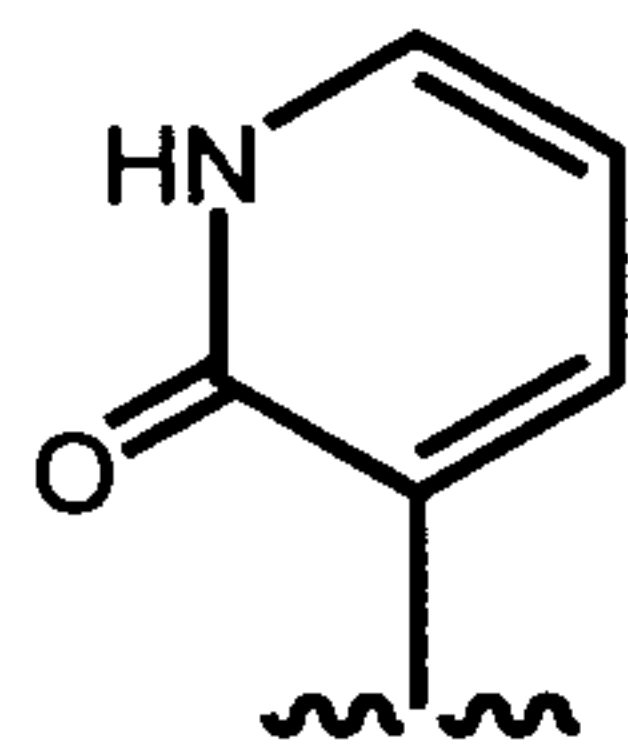
; and R^4 and R^7 are each H.

In yet another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$; R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$; R^3 is:



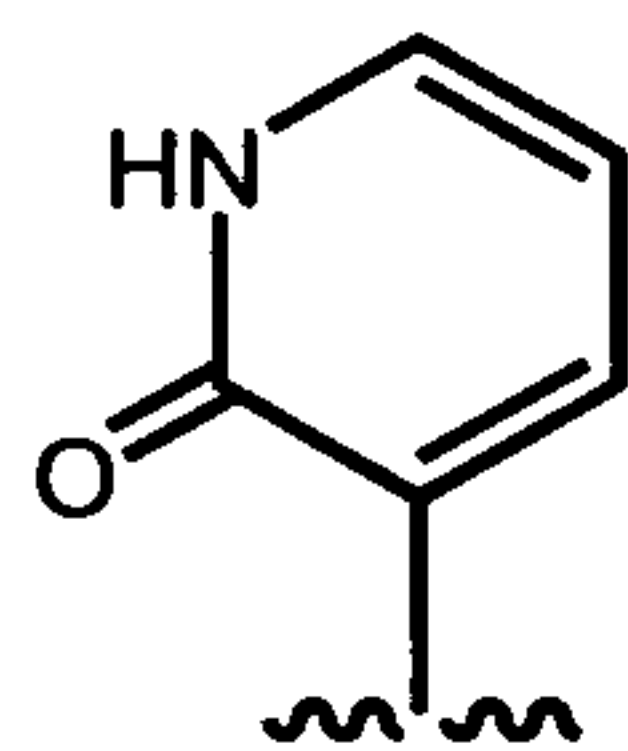
; R^4 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 and R^6 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or haloalkyl.

5 In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$; R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$; R^3 is:

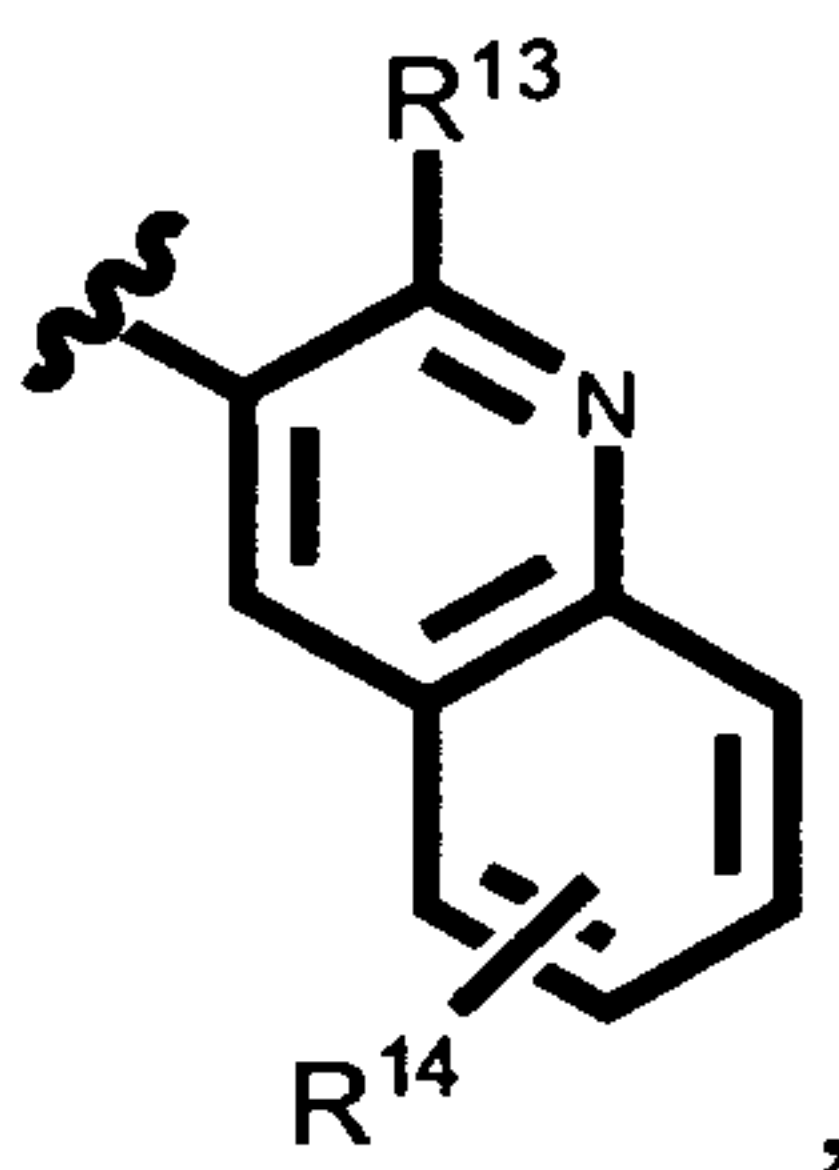


; R^4 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 and R^6 are each independently alkyl or halo.

In a further embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$; R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$; R^3 is:



; R^4 and R^7 are each H; R^5 and R^6 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or haloalkyl; and R^{10} is:

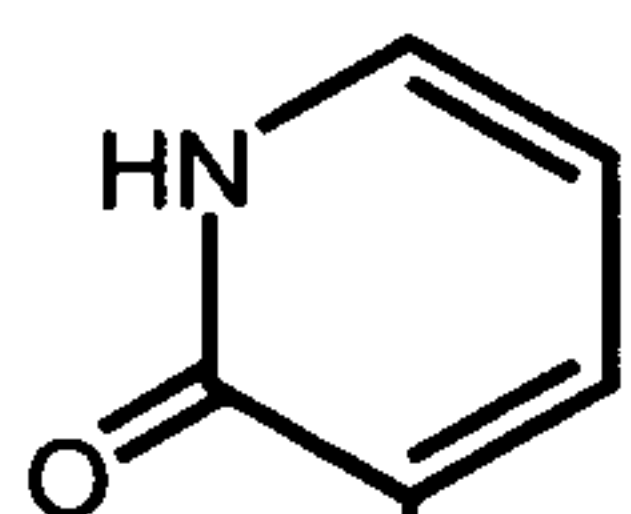


10

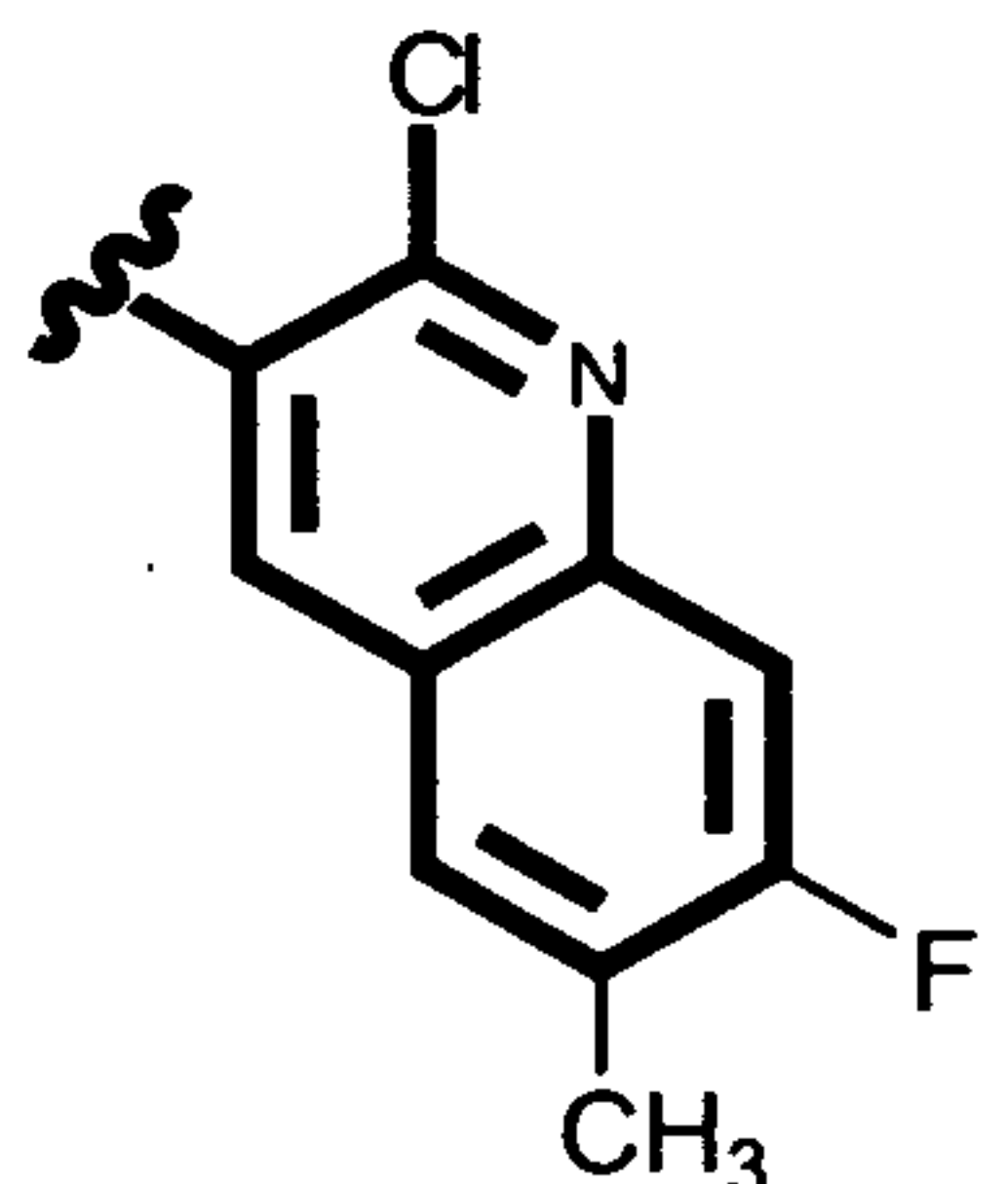
wherein R^{13} is Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl or halo.

In one embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$; R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$; R^3 is:

70



; R^4 and R^7 are each H; R^5 and R^6 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or haloalkyl; and R^{10} is:



5

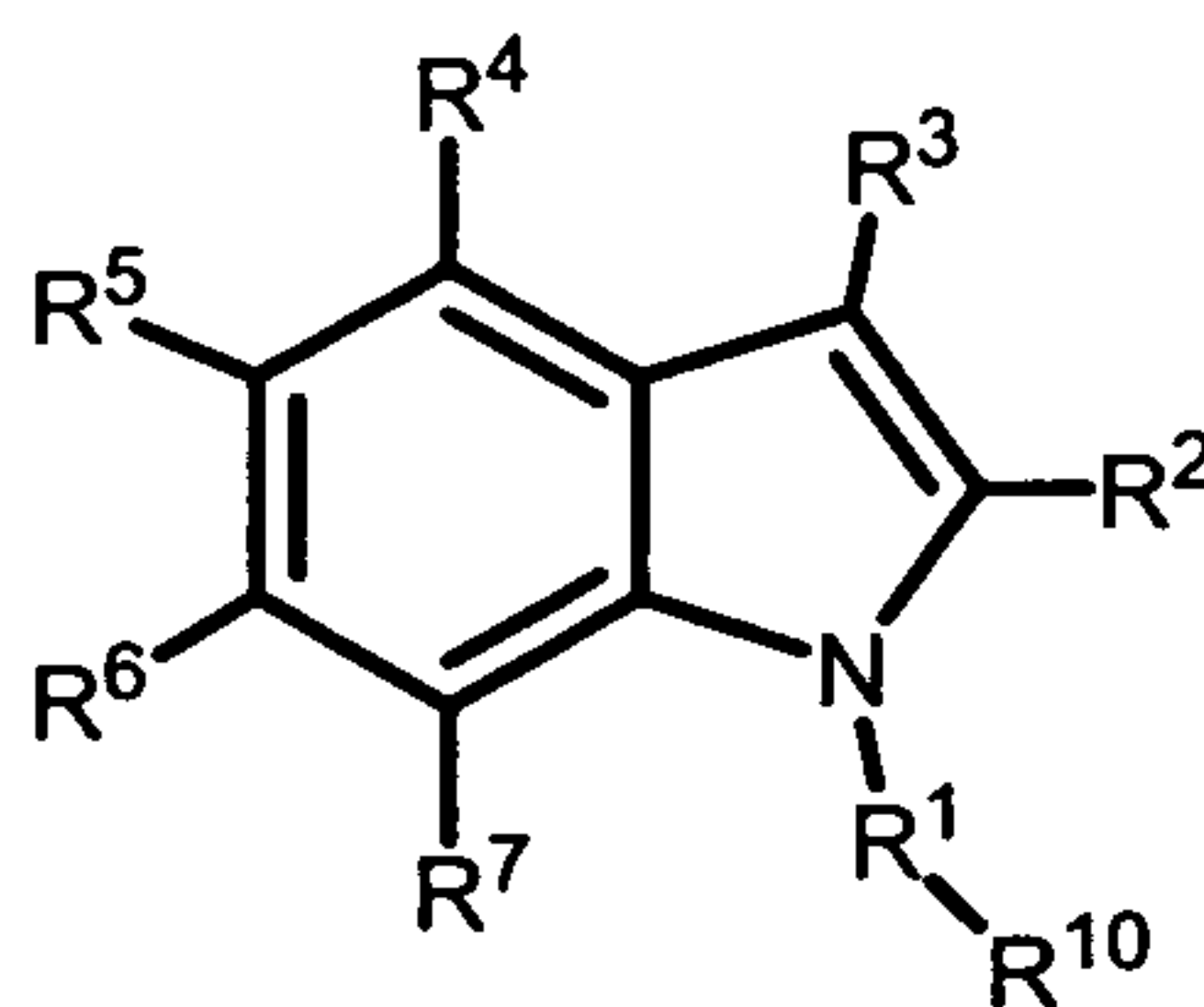
In one embodiment, for the compounds of formula (Ia), variables R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 and R^{10} are selected independently from each other.

In another embodiment, the compounds of formula (Ia) are in purified form.

10

The 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives of Formula (II)

The present invention also provides 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives having the formula:



15

(II)

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, esters and prodrugs thereof, wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 and R^{10} are defined above for the compounds of formula (II).

In one embodiment, R^1 is bond.

20

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-O-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$.

71

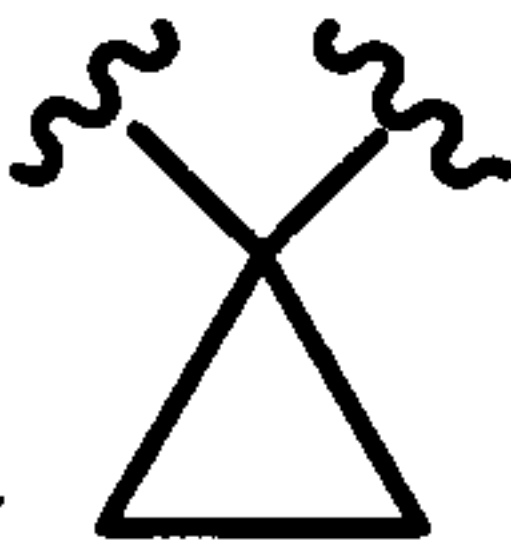
In still another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-N(R^9)-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$.

In yet another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-CH=CH-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$.

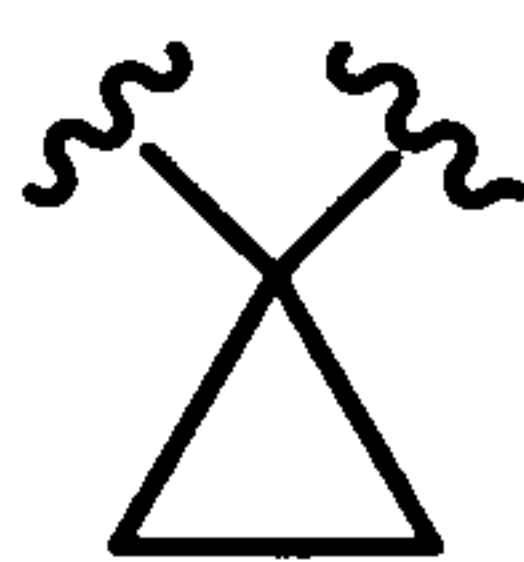
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C\equiv C-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$.

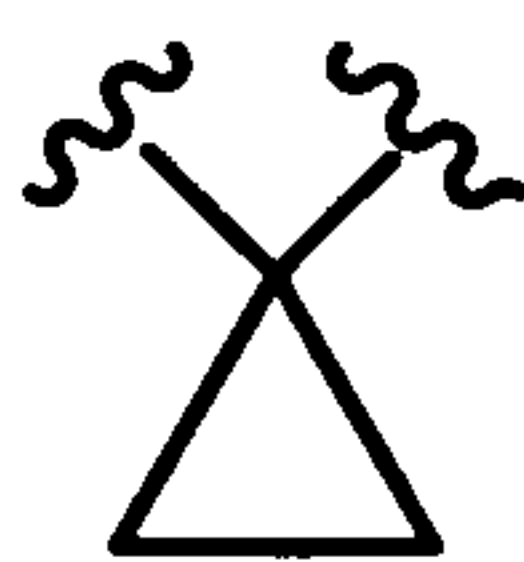
In a further embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$.

5

In one embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$, $-CH(CH_3)-$ or  .

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$.



In another embodiment, R^1 is  .

In one embodiment, R^{10} is aryl.

In another embodiment, R^{10} is $-H$.

10

In another embodiment, R^{10} is cycloalkyl.

In another embodiment, R^{10} is cycloalkenyl.

In still another embodiment, R^{10} is heterocycloalkenyl.

In another embodiment, R^{10} is heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, R^{10} is heterocycloalkyl.

15

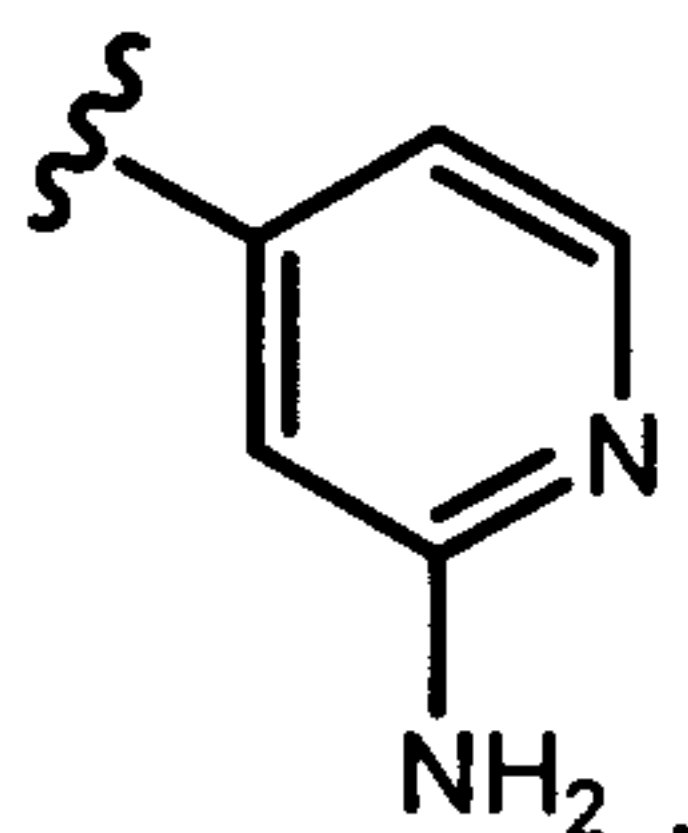
In another embodiment, R^{10} is phenyl.

In another embodiment, R^{10} is phenyl, which is substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$.

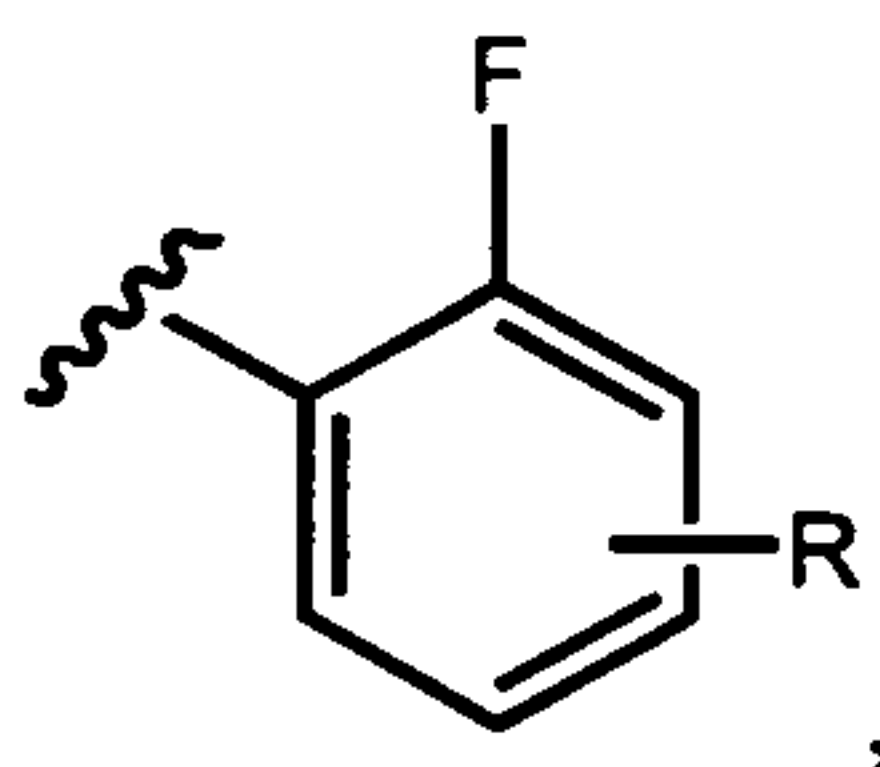
In yet another embodiment, R^{10} is pyridyl.

20

In a further embodiment, R^{10} is



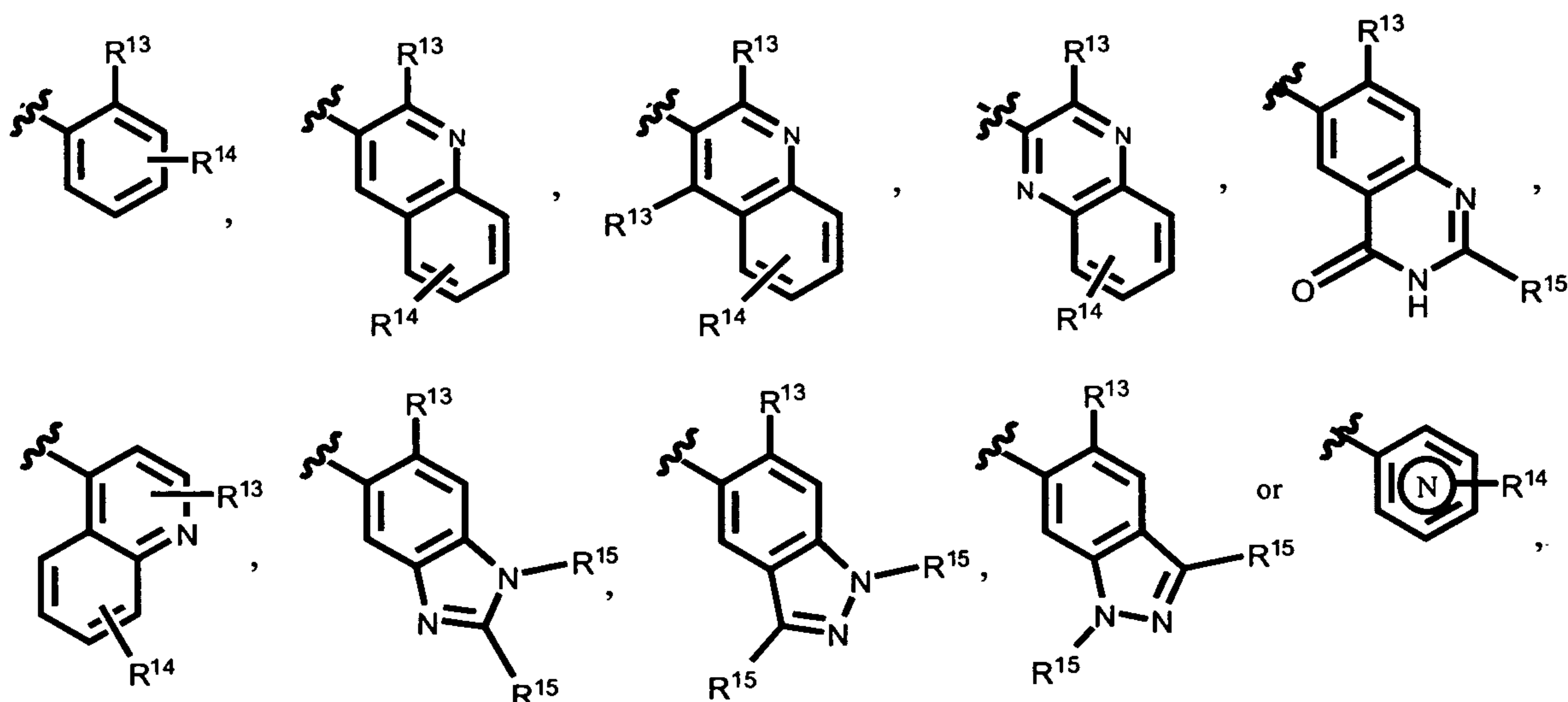
In another embodiment, $-R^{10}$ is:



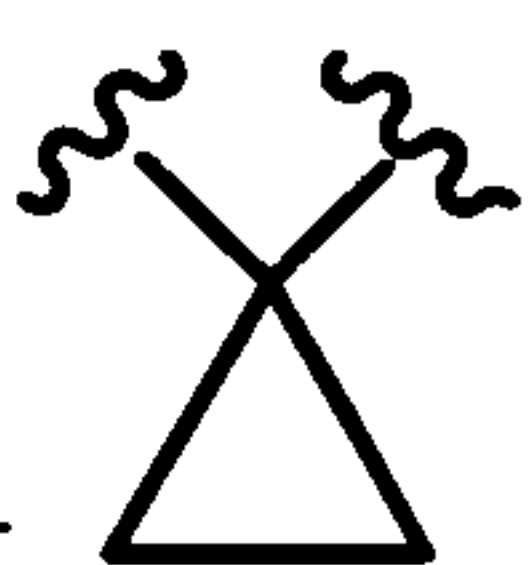
72

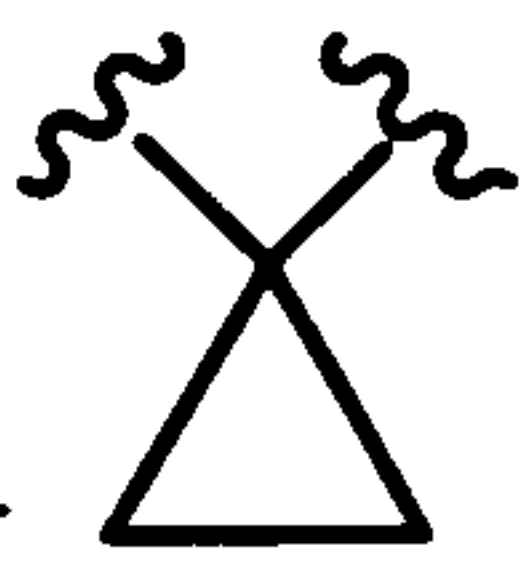
wherein R represents up to 2 optional and additional phenyl substituents, each independently selected from halo, -O-alkyl, alkyl, -CF₃, -CN, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

5 In another embodiment, R¹⁰ is

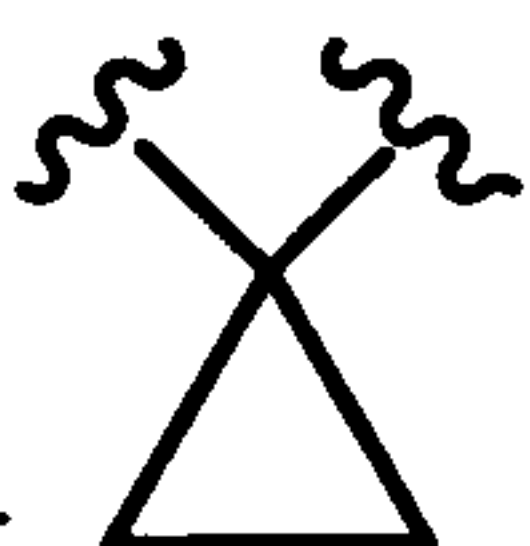


wherein R¹³ is F or Cl; R¹⁴ represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R¹⁵ is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

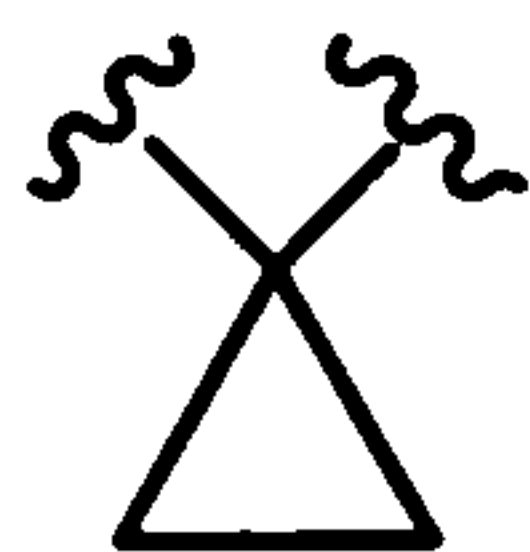
15 In another embodiment, R¹ is -CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂-, -CH(CH₃)- or , and R¹⁰ is aryl or heteroaryl.

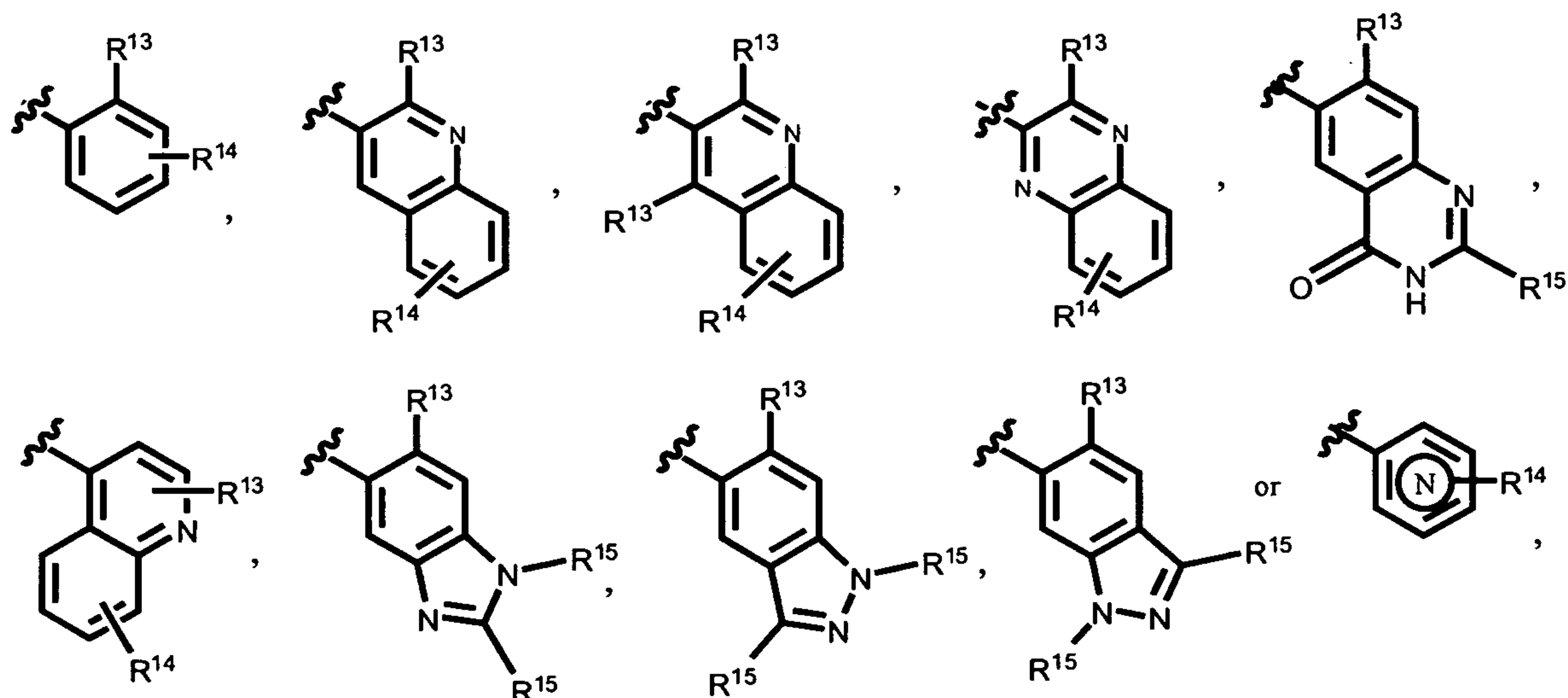
20 In another embodiment, R¹ is -CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂-, -CH(CH₃)- or , and R¹⁰ is phenyl.

73

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or , and R^{10} is alkyl or cycloalkyl.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$ and R^{10} is aryl or heteroaryl.

5 In still another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$ or  and R^{10} is



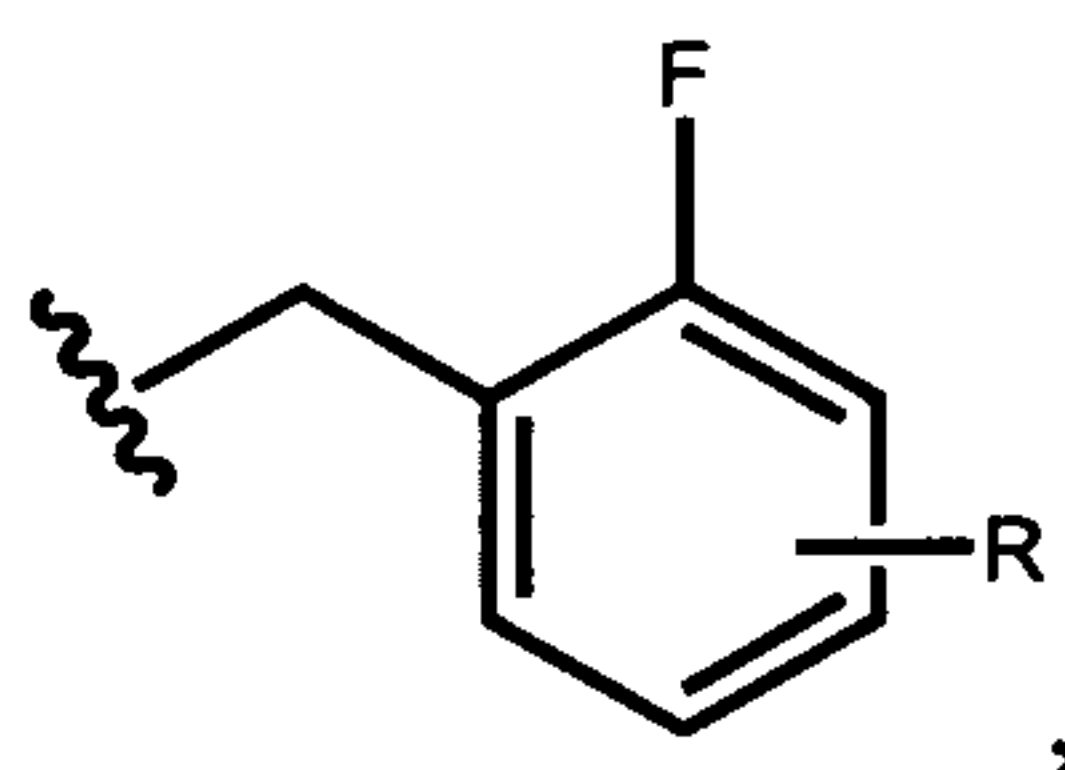
wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$ and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$ or heteroaryl.

15 In one embodiment, $-\text{R}^1\text{-R}^{10}$ is benzyl.

In another embodiment, $-\text{R}^1\text{-R}^{10}$ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-\text{O-haloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC}(\text{O})\text{NH-alkyl}$, alkyl, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NH}_2$.

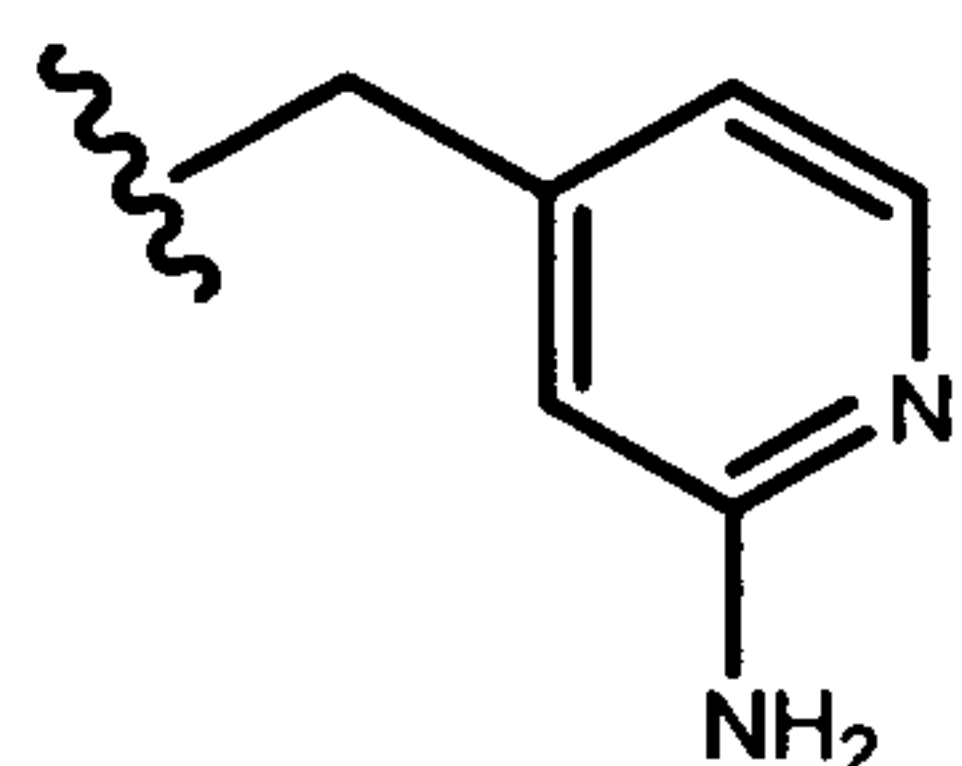
20 In still another embodiment, $-\text{R}^1\text{-R}^{10}$ is

74



wherein R represents up to 2 optional and additional phenyl substituents, each independently selected from halo, -O-alkyl, alkyl, -CF₃, -CN, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, -R¹-R¹⁰ is



In still another embodiment, -R¹-R¹⁰ is alkyl.

In yet another embodiment, -R¹-R¹⁰ is -R¹-R¹⁰ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is substituted with 1 or 2 fluorine atoms.

In yet another embodiment, -R¹-R¹⁰ is -R¹-R¹⁰ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is substituted with 1 or 2 methyl groups.

In yet another embodiment, -R¹-R¹⁰ is -R¹-R¹⁰ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is substituted with one fluorine atom and one methyl group.

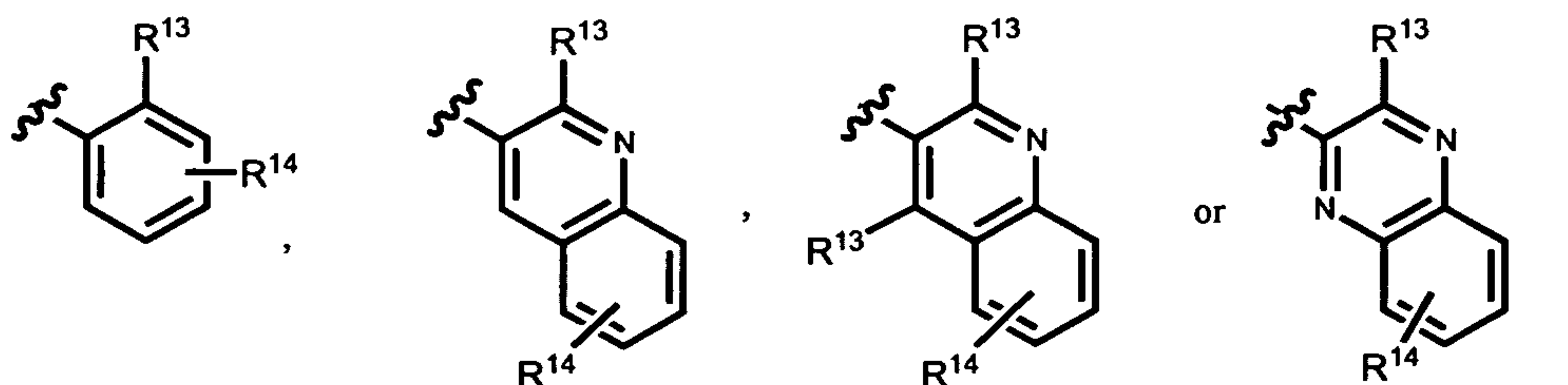
In another embodiment, -R¹-R¹⁰ is haloalkyl.

In a further embodiment, -R¹-R¹⁰ is -CH₂-cycloalkyl.

In another embodiment, -R¹-R¹⁰ is other than H.

In another embodiment, R¹ is -CH₂- and R¹⁰ is alkyl or cycloalkyl.

In another embodiment, R¹ is -CH₂- and R¹⁰ is



wherein R¹³ is F or Cl and R¹⁴ represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂alkyl, -SO₂NHalkyl, -S-alkyl, -

CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

In one embodiment, R² is -C(O)R⁹.

In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹.

5 In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OCH₂OR⁹.

In still another embodiment, R² is -C(O)N(R⁹)₂.

In yet another embodiment, R² is -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)OR⁹.

In another embodiment, R² is -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)N(R⁹)₂.

In a further embodiment, R² is -alkyl.

10 In another embodiment, R² is -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-aryl.

In another embodiment, R² is -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkyl.

In still another embodiment, R² is -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkenyl.

In still another embodiment, R² is -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkyl.

In yet another embodiment, R² is -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heteroaryl.

15 In another embodiment, R² is -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkenyl.

In a further embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)OCH₂OR⁹.

In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OR⁹ or -C(O)N(R⁹)₂.

In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OH, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)O-cycloalkyl, -C(O)NH-alkyl or -C(O)NH-cycloalkyl.

20 In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)OH.

In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)NHR⁹.

In another embodiment, R² is -C(O)NH₂.

In still another embodiment, R² is -C(O)R⁹, -C(O)OR⁹, -C(O)OCH₂OR⁹, -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)N(R⁹)₂ or -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heteroaryl wherein a heteroaryl

25 group can be optionally substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are the same or different,

and are selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-cycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-

cycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-heterocycloalkenyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-

heteroaryl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-haloalkyl, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-hydroxyalkyl, halo, -OH, -OR⁹, -CN, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-

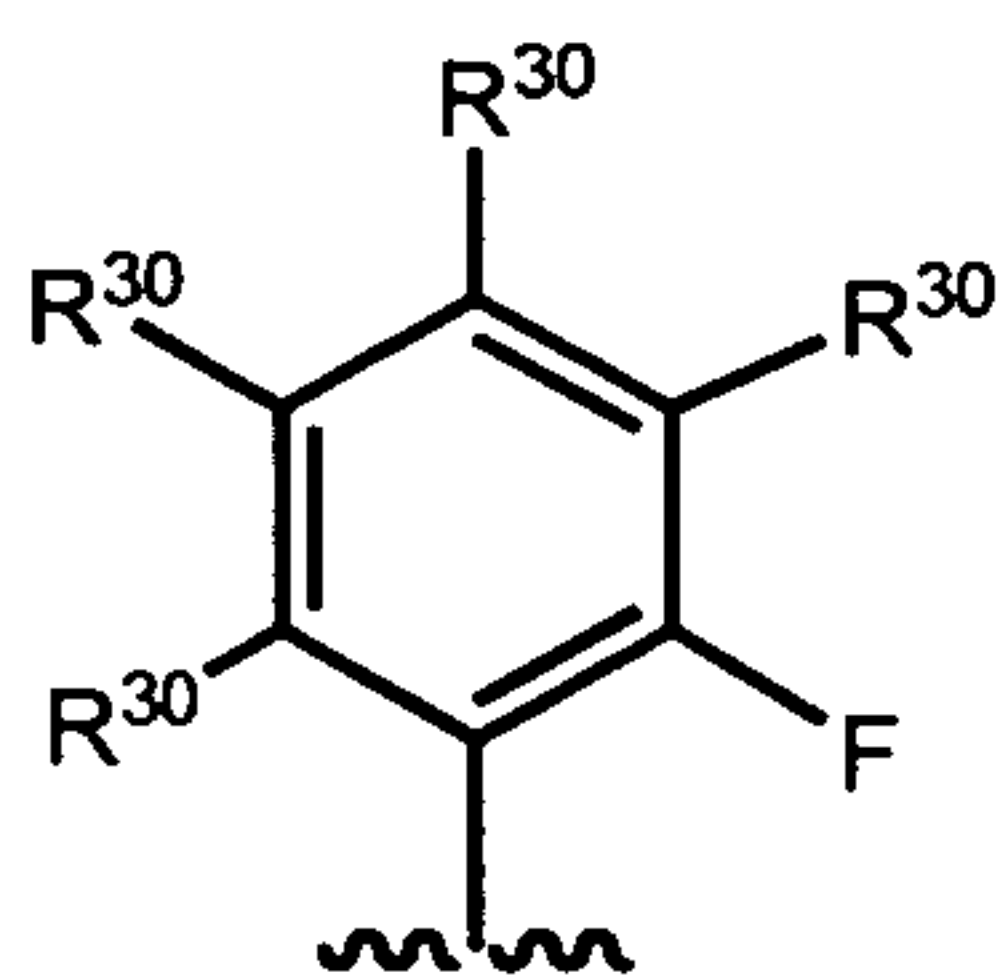
C(O)R⁸, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-OR⁹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-N(R⁹)₂, -

30 [C(R¹²)₂]_q-NHC(O)R⁸, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NR⁸C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-NHSO₂R¹¹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-

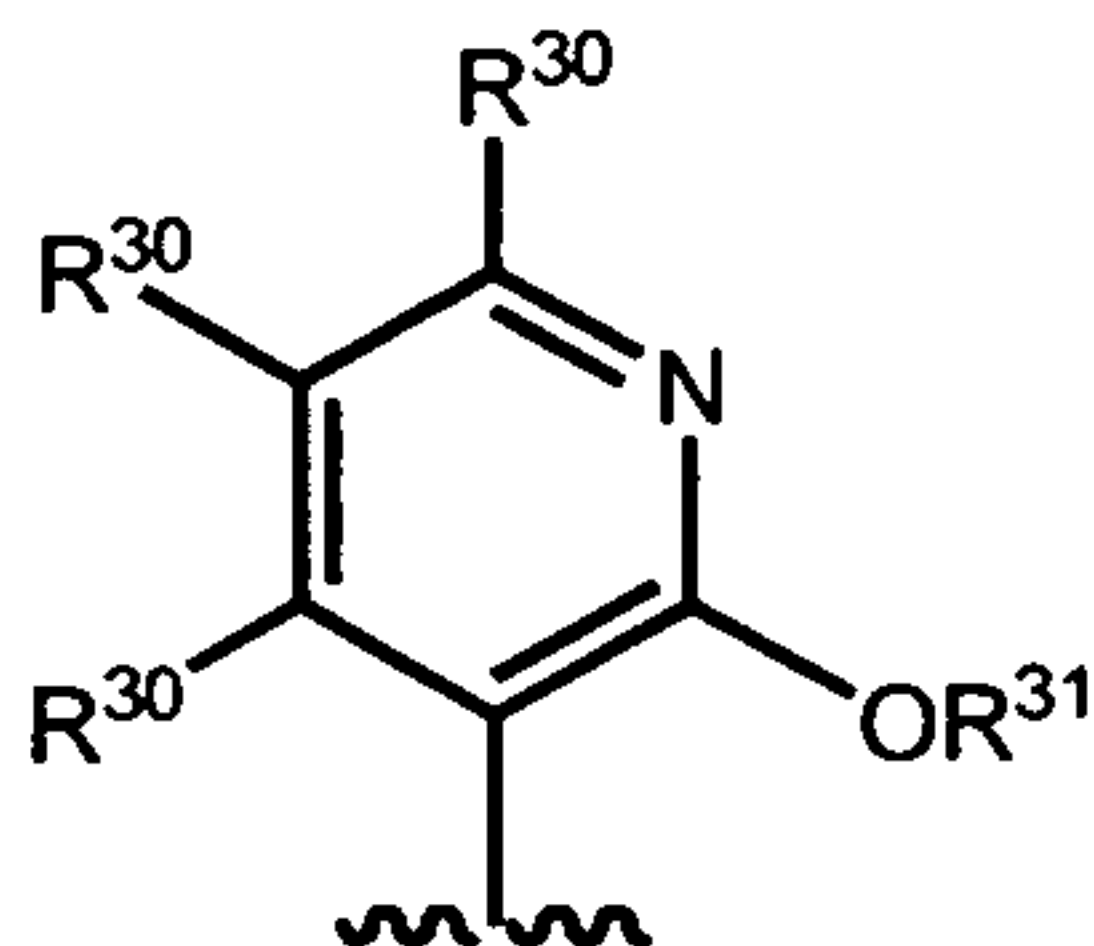
S(O)_pR¹¹, -[C(R¹²)₂]_q-SO₂N(R⁹)₂ and -SO₂N(R⁹)C(O)N(R⁹)₂.

In one embodiment, R³ is

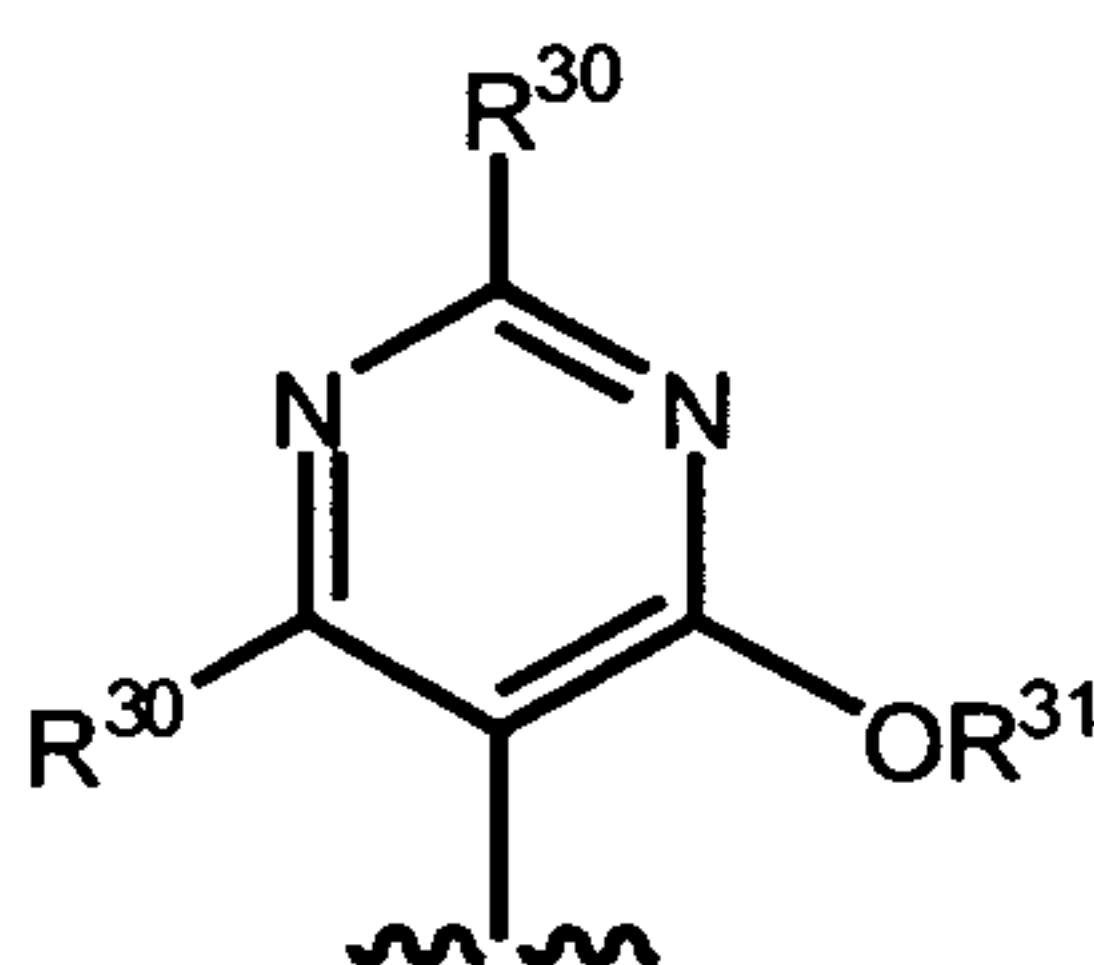
76



In another embodiment, R^3 is

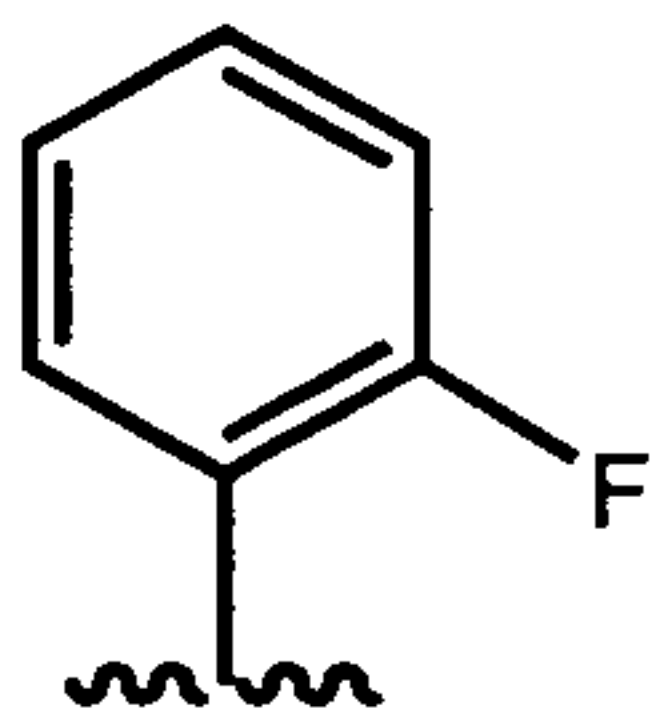


In another embodiment, R^3 is



5

In another embodiment, R^3 is



In one embodiment, R^4 is H.

In another embodiment, R^4 is H or F.

10

In another embodiment, R^4 is F.

In another embodiment, R^5 is H.

In another embodiment, R^5 is other than H.

In yet another embodiment, R^6 is H.

In another embodiment, R^6 is other than H.

15

In another embodiment, R^6 is H or F.

In a further embodiment, R^6 is F.

In one embodiment, R^9 is H and R^{11} is methyl or ethyl.

In another embodiment, R^9 is H and R^{11} is cyclopropyl.

In still another embodiment, R^7 is H.

In another embodiment, R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, halo or hydroxy.

In another embodiment, R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, F or hydroxy.

In another embodiment, R^4 and R^7 are each H.

In yet another embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H.

5 In another embodiment, R^4 , R^5 , R^6 and R^7 are each H.

In a further embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H and R^5 is other than H.

In another embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H and R^5 is alkyl.

In another embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H and R^5 is halo.

In another embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H and R^5 is methyl.

10 In a further embodiment, R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H and R^5 is Cl.

In another embodiment, R^4 and R^7 are each H and R^5 and R^6 are other than H.

In another embodiment, R^5 is other than H.

In still another embodiment, R^5 is alkyl.

In yet another embodiment, R^5 is halo.

15 In still another embodiment, R^5 is methyl.

In another embodiment, R^5 is ethyl.

In another embodiment, R^6 is H.

In another embodiment, R^6 is other than H.

In a further embodiment, R^6 is alkyl.

20 In yet another embodiment, R^6 is halo.

In still another embodiment, R^6 is methyl.

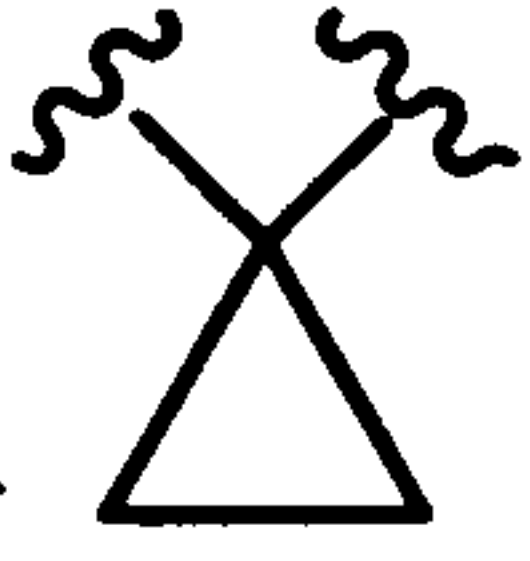
In another embodiment, R^6 is F.

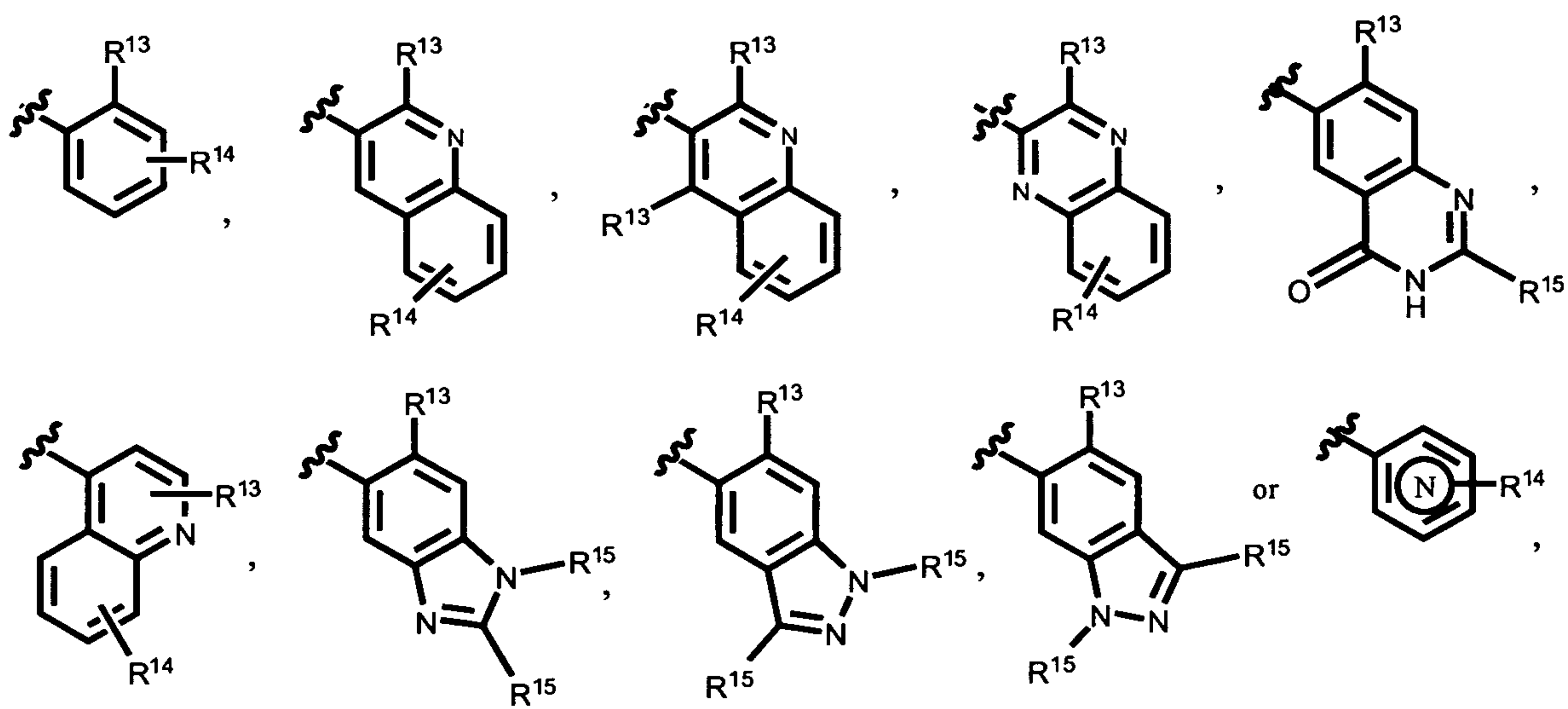
In one embodiment, R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

25 In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; and R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$.

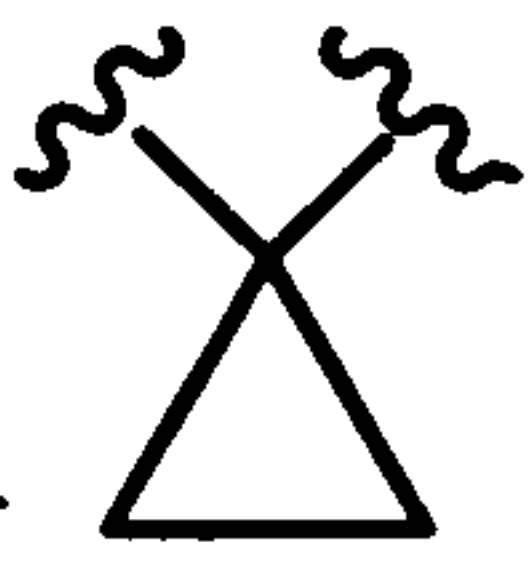
30 In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; and R^2 is $-C(O)OH$.

78

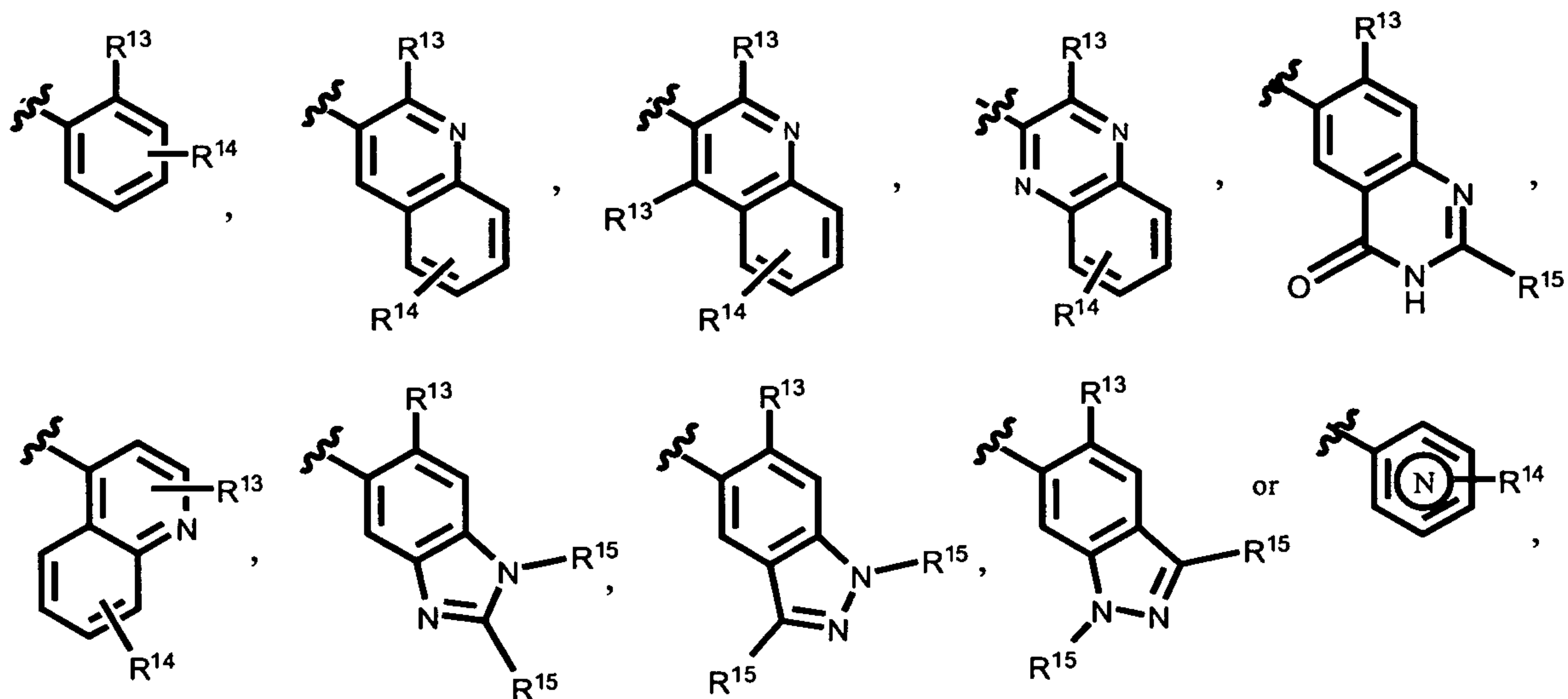
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or ; R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$; and R^{10} is:



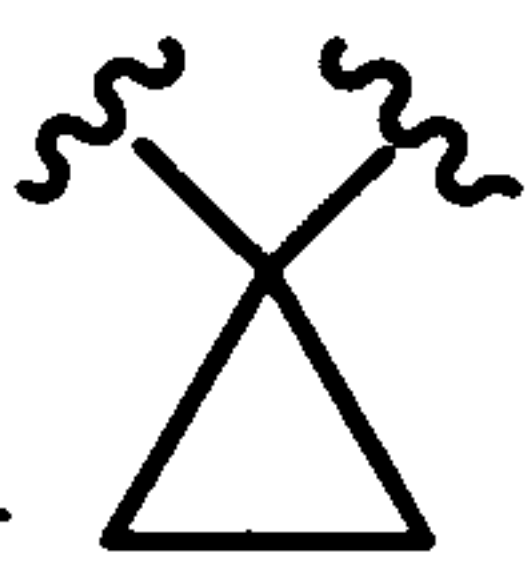
wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each
 5 independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O}-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$,
 $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{S}-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{heterocycloalkyl}$ and
 heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O}-$
 10 alkyl , $-\text{NHSO}_2-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{S}-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$
 heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

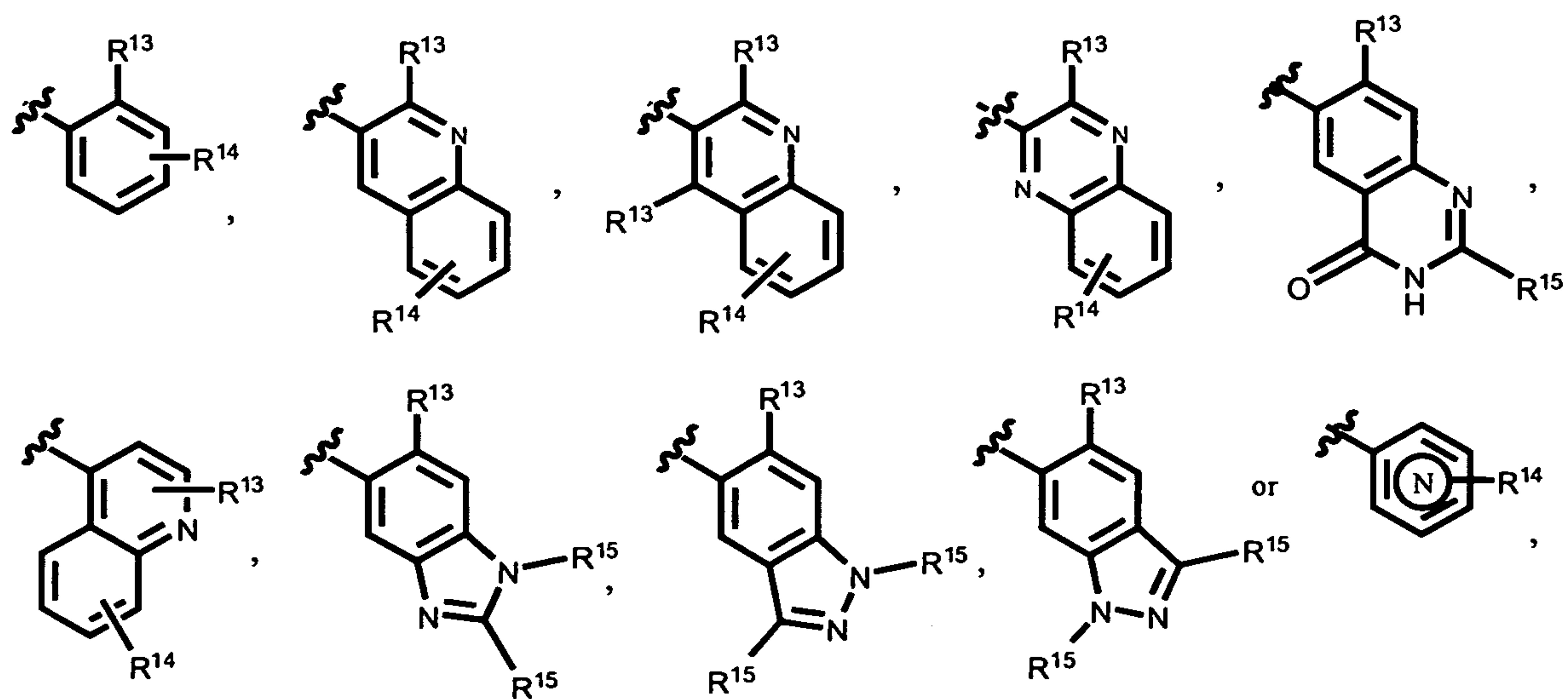
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or ; R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$; R^5 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, halo or hydroxy; R^6 is H, halo or hydroxy; and
 R^{10} is:

79

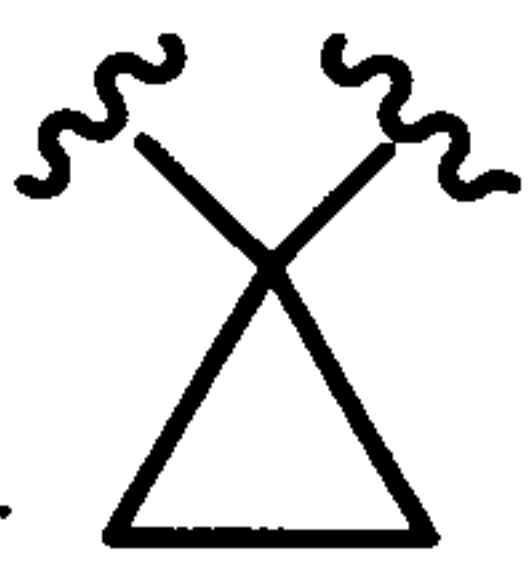


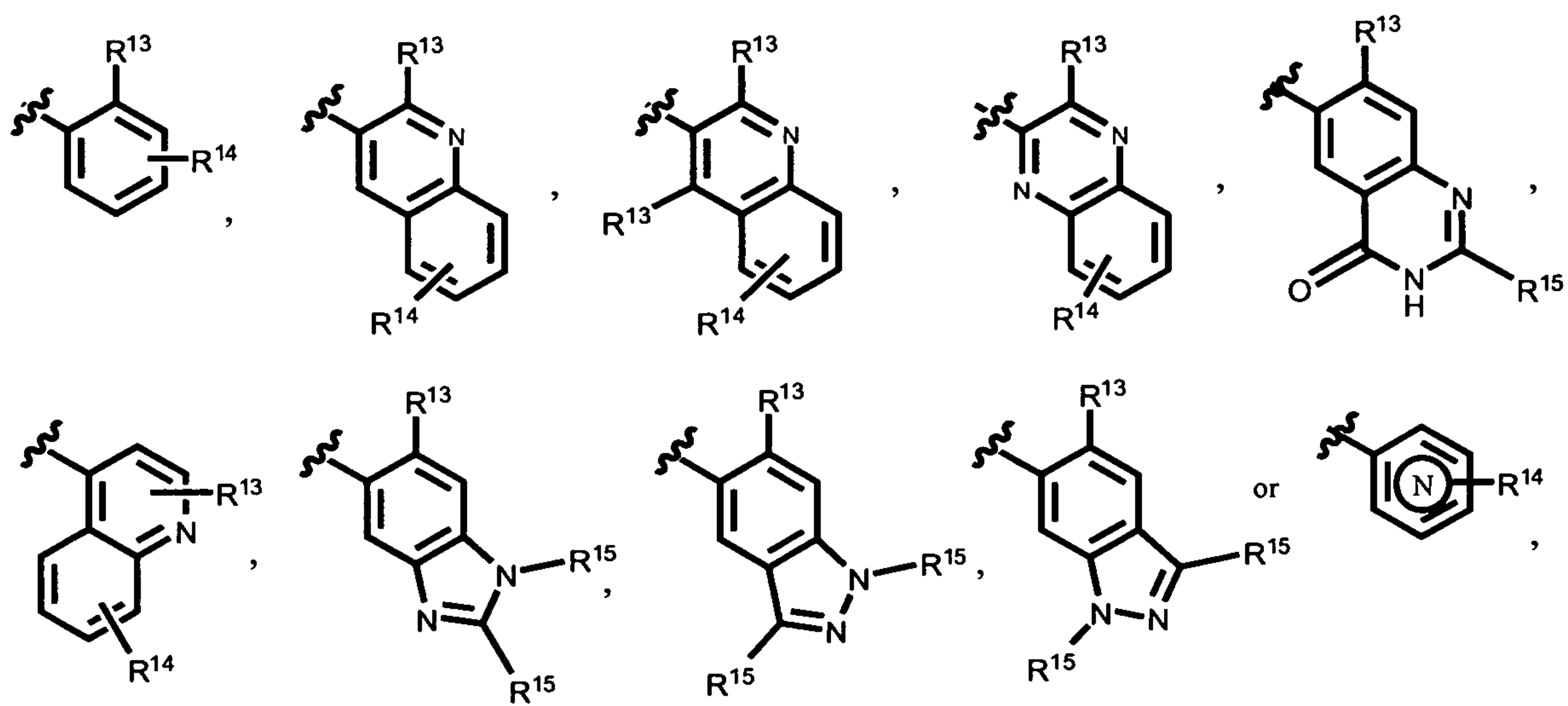
wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, R^1 is -CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂-, -CH(CH₃)- or ; R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H, F or Cl; and R^{10} is:



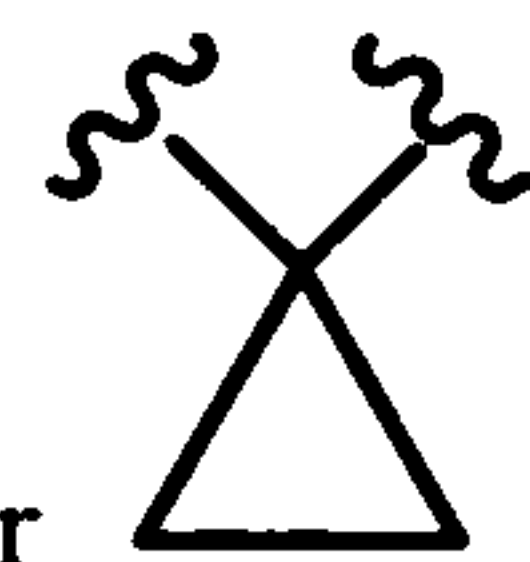
wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, R^1 is -CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂-, -CH(CH₃)- or ; R^2 is -C(O)OR⁹; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H, F or Cl; R^9 is H; R^{10} is:

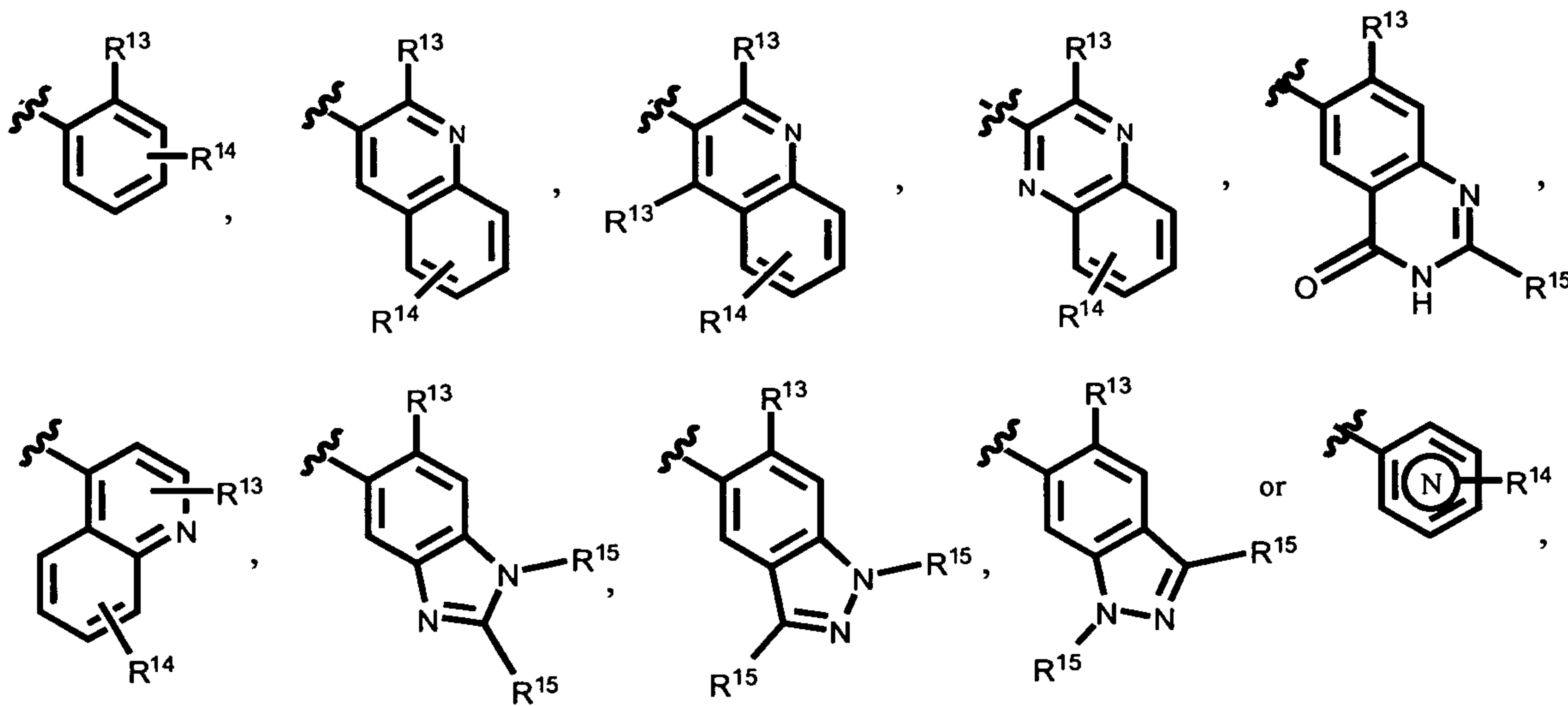


R^{11} is methyl; R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

81

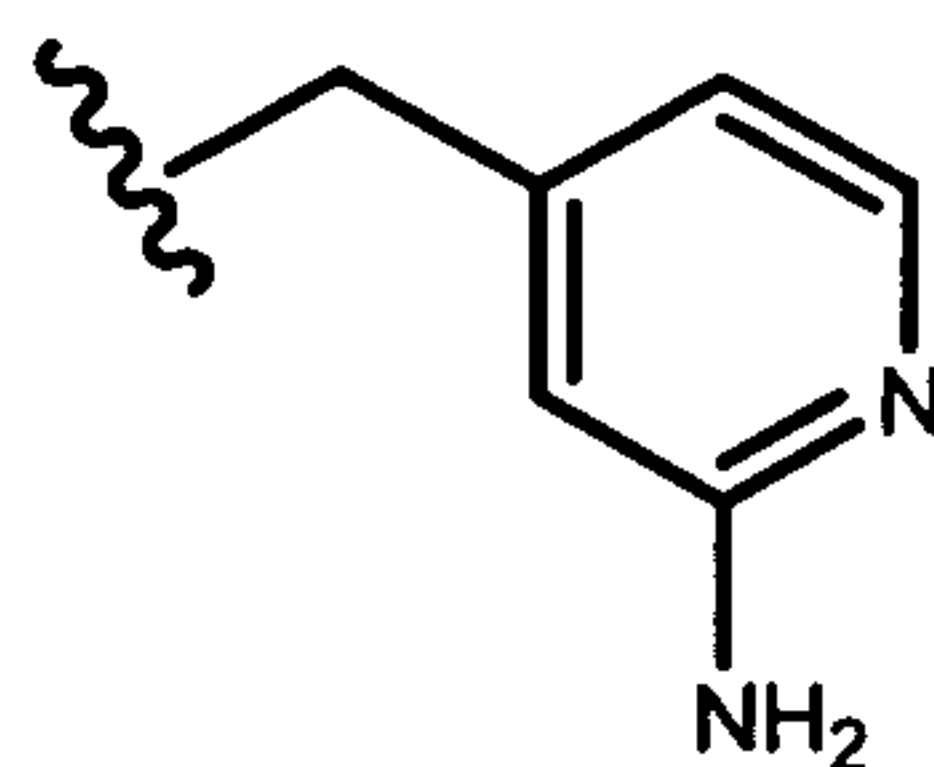


In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or ; R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H, F or Cl; R^9 is H; R^{10} is:



- 5 R^{11} is cyclopropyl; R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$ and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl,
- 10 CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$ or heteroaryl.

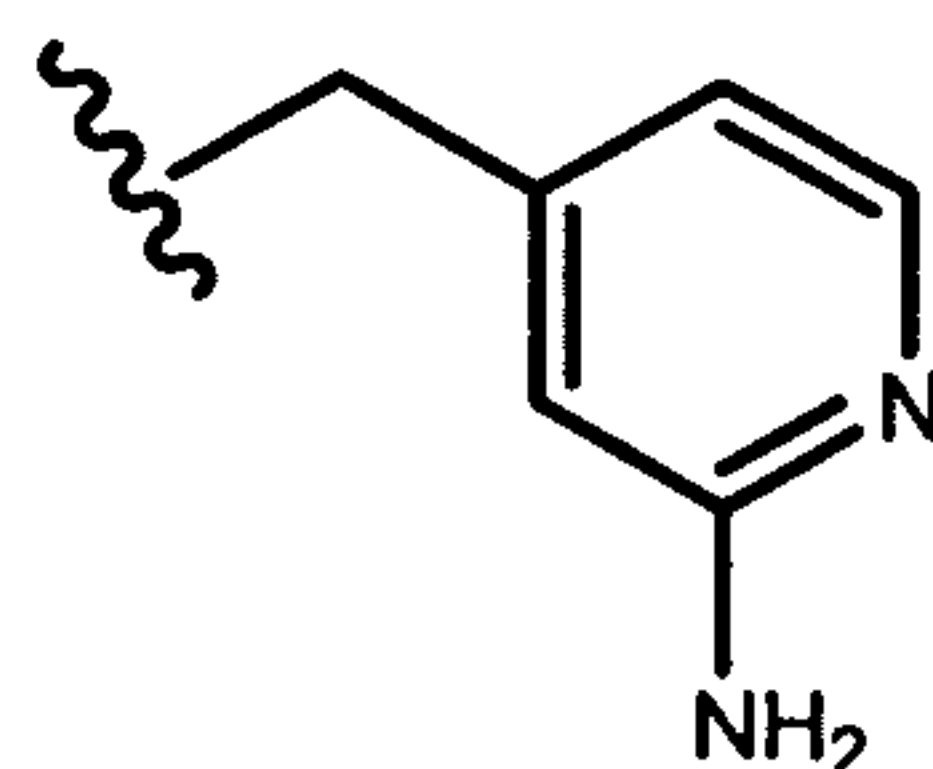
In one embodiment, $R^1\text{-}R^{10}$ is



- 15 and R^2 is $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$.

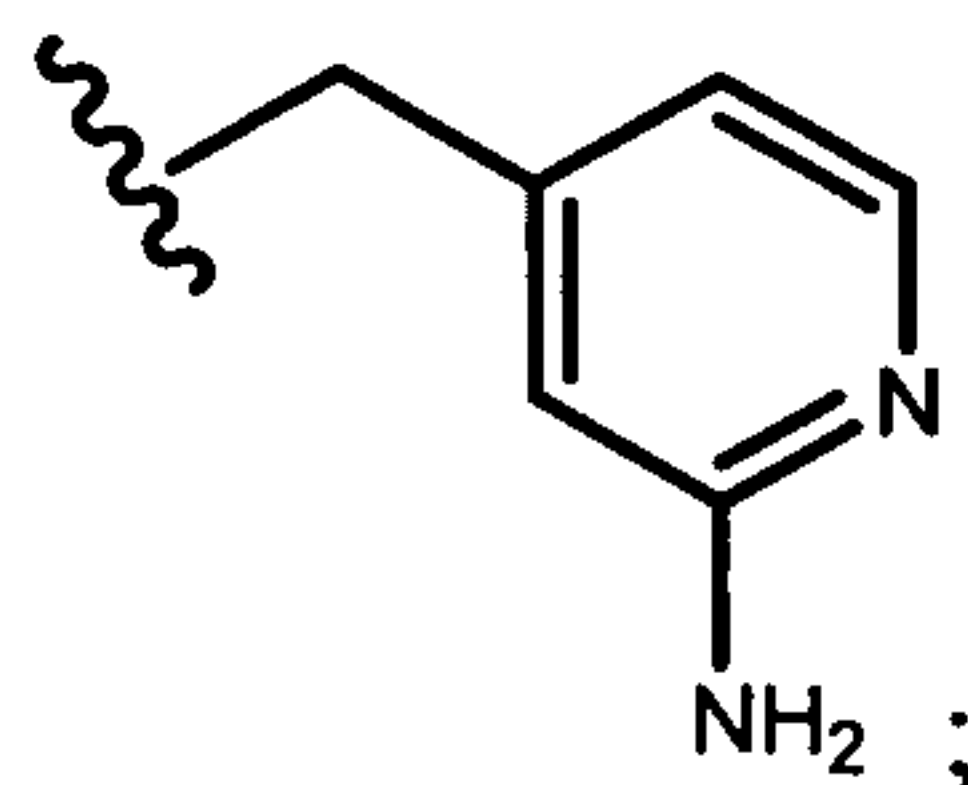
In one embodiment, $R^1\text{-}R^{10}$ is

82



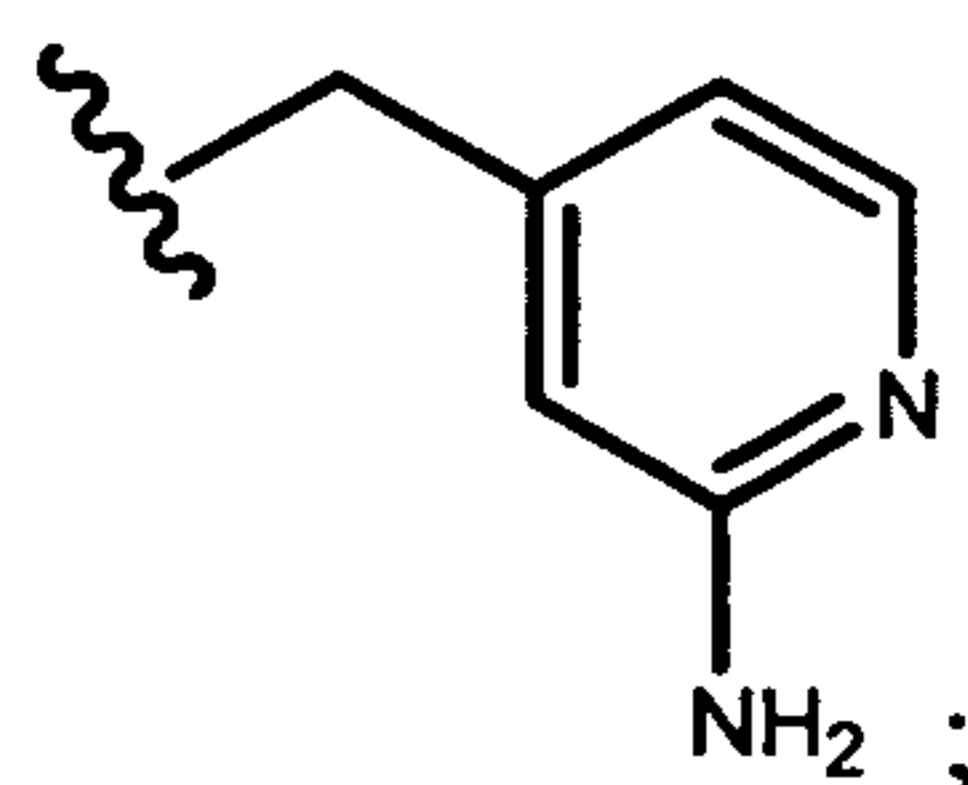
and R^2 is $-C(O)OH$.

In one embodiment, R^1-R^{10} is



- 5 R^2 is $C(O)OR^9$; and R^{11} is phenyl, which is optionally substituted with up to 3 groups independently selected from: alkyl, F, Cl, methyl, $-NH_2$, $-NO_2$, methoxy, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-COOH$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-OH$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-CF_3$, $-CN$, thiazolyl, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -phenyl, $-NHSO_2$ -cyclopropyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, pyrazolyl or $-OCH_2C(O)NH_2$.
- 10 In one embodiment, R^1-R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$; and R^{11} is phenyl, which is optionally substituted with up to 3 groups independently selected from: alkyl, F, Cl, methyl, $-NH_2$, $-NO_2$,
- 15 methoxy, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-COOH$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-OH$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-CF_3$, $-CN$, thiazolyl, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -phenyl, $-NHSO_2$ -cyclopropyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, pyrazolyl or $-OCH_2C(O)NH_2$.

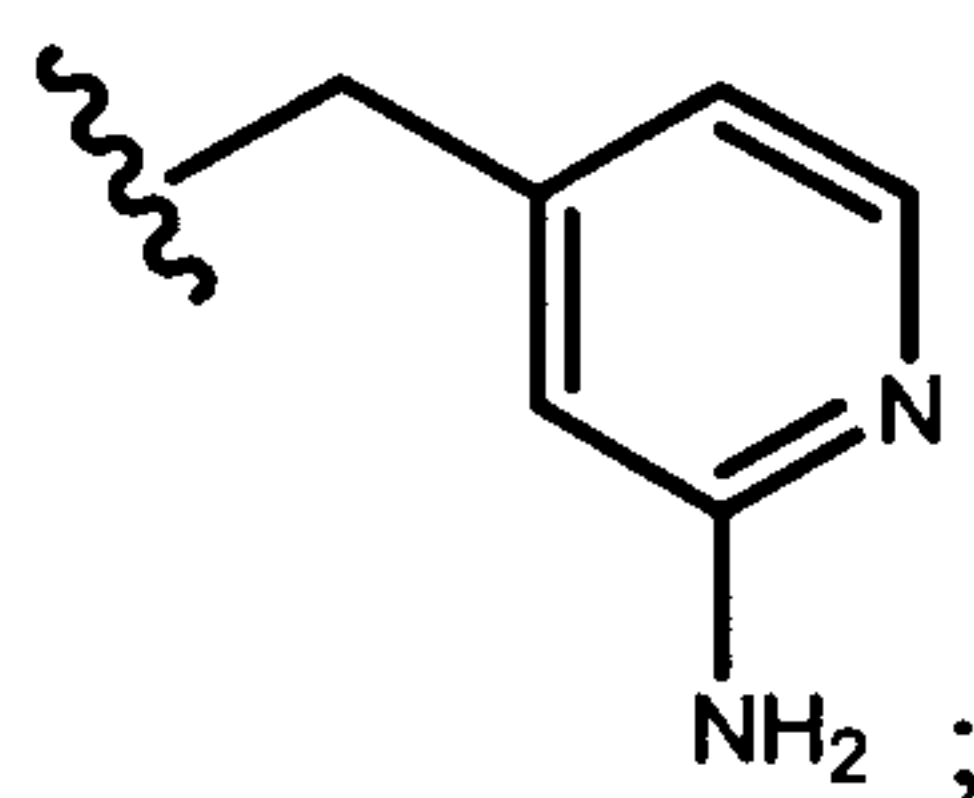
In one embodiment, R^1-R^{10} is



- 20 R^2 is $C(O)OR^9$; R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

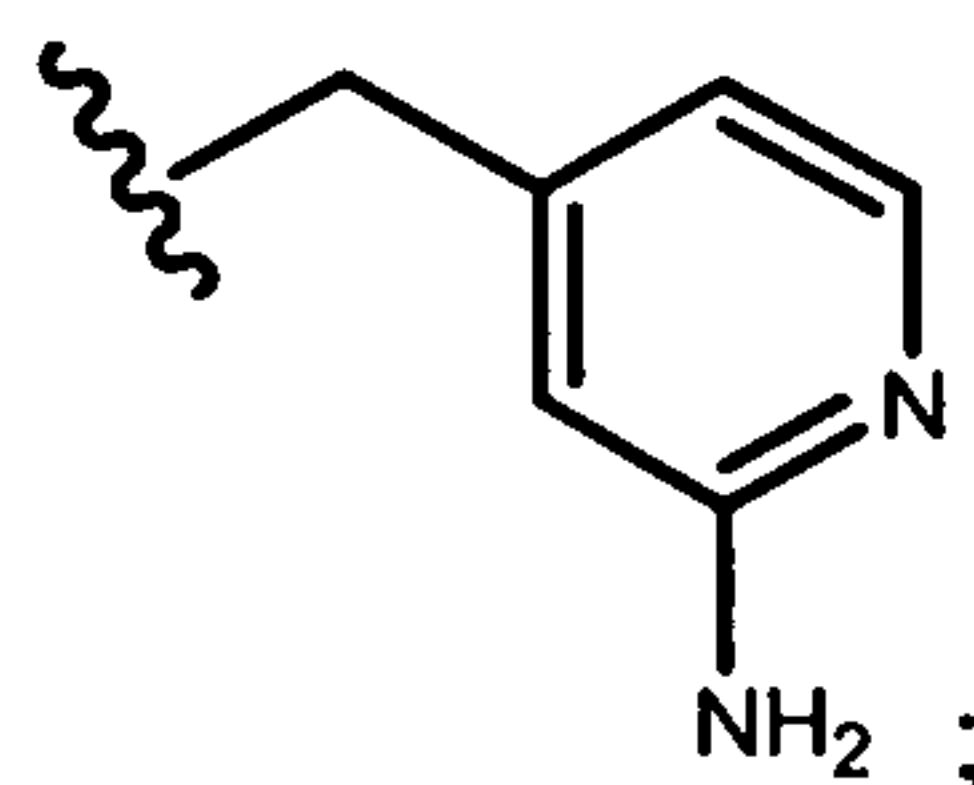
In another embodiment, R^1-R^{10} is

83



R^2 is R^2 is $C(O)OH$; R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is



R^2 is $C(O)OR^9$, R^{11} is phenyl, which is optionally substituted with up to 3 groups independently selected from: alkyl, F, Cl, methyl, $-NH_2$, $-NO_2$, methoxy, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-COOH$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-OH$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-CF_3$, $-CN$, thiazolyl, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -phenyl, $-NHSO_2$ -cyclopropyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)$ alkyl, pyrazolyl or $-OCH_2C(O)NH_2$; R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

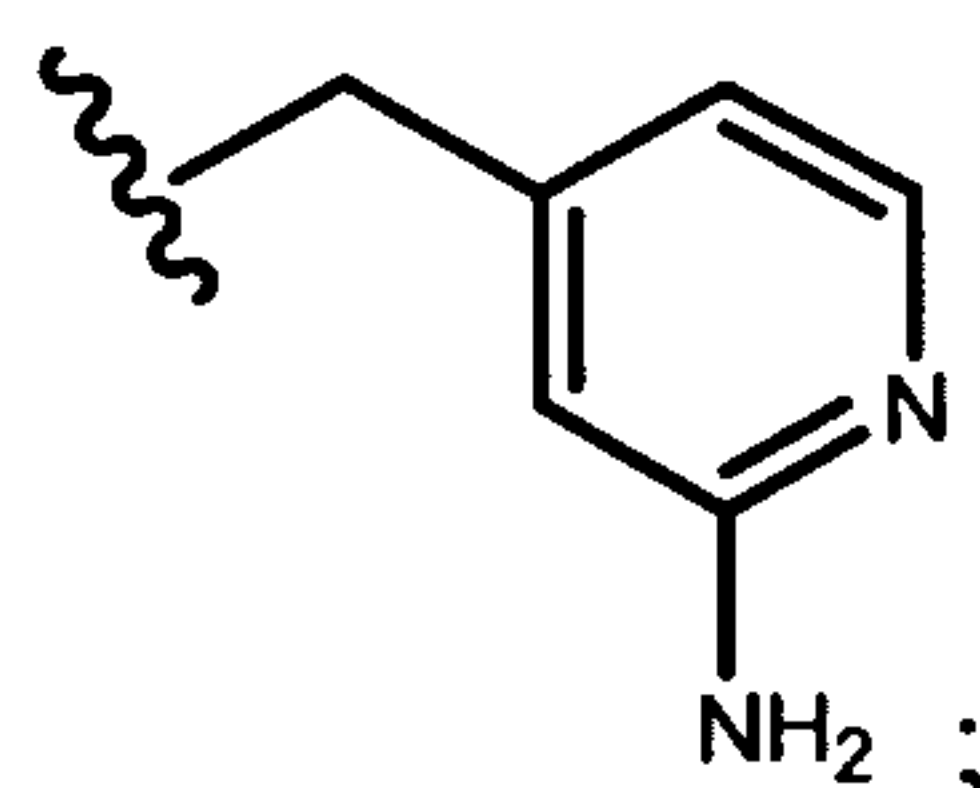
In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $C(O)OR^9$; R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $C(O)OH$; R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

In another embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)NH$ -alkyl, alkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)NH_2$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NH_2$; R^2 is $C(O)OR^9$; R^4 , R^6 and R^7 are each H; and R^5 is other than H.

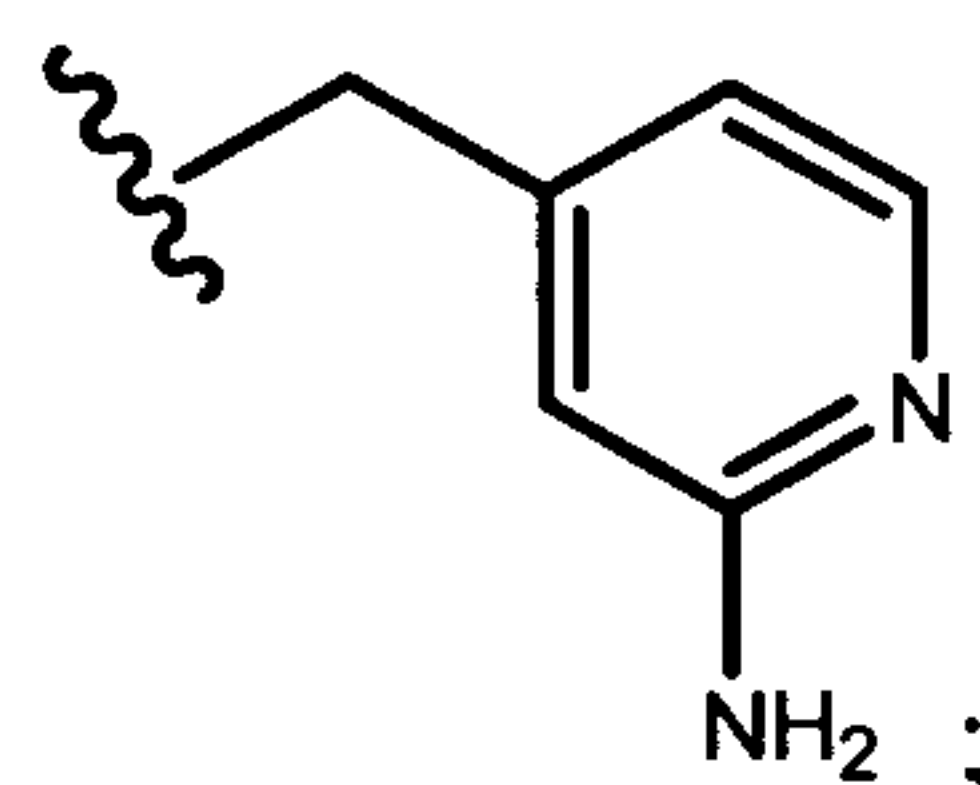
In one embodiment, R^1 - R^{10} is

84



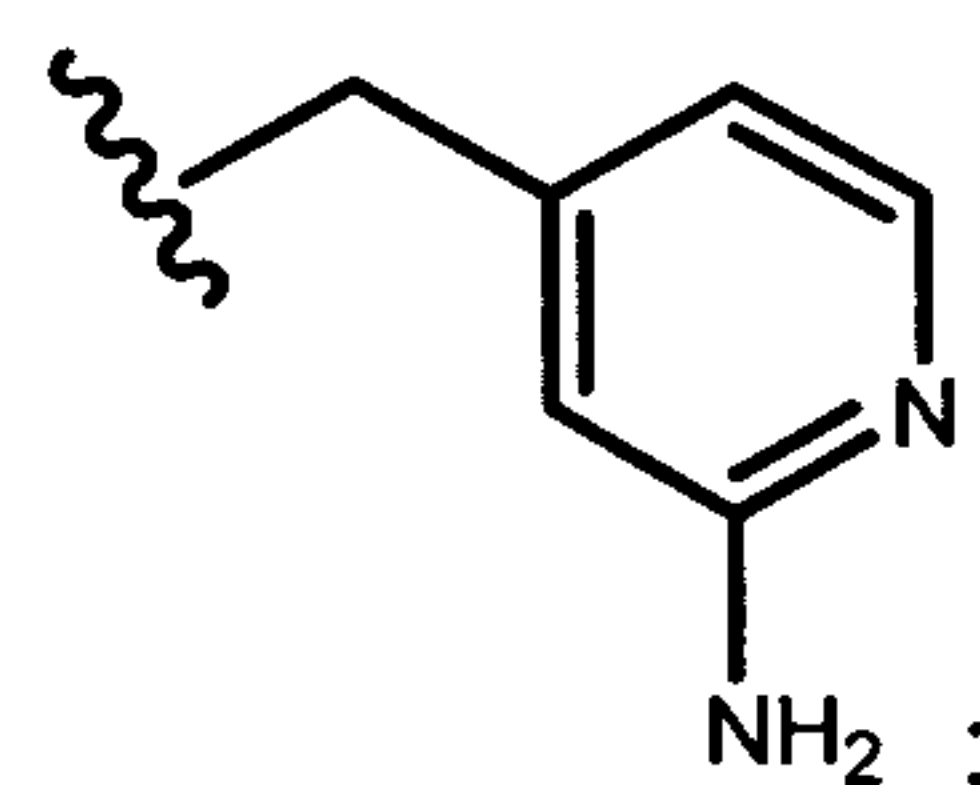
R^2 is $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$; R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

In another embodiment, $\text{R}^1\text{-R}^{10}$ is



R^2 is $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$; R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

In another embodiment, $\text{R}^1\text{-R}^{10}$ is



R^2 is $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$, R^9 is H, alkyl, cycloalkyl; R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

In one embodiment, $\text{R}^1\text{-R}^{10}$ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-\text{NH}_2$, -

NHSO_2 -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-\text{O}$ -haloalkyl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC(O)NH-alkyl}$, alkyl, $-\text{OH}$, -

CN , $-\text{C(O)NH}_2$ or $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NH}_2$; R^2 is $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$; R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

In another embodiment, $\text{R}^1\text{-R}^{10}$ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-\text{NH}_2$, -

NHSO_2 -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-\text{O}$ -haloalkyl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC(O)NH-alkyl}$, alkyl, $-\text{OH}$, -

CN , $-\text{C(O)NH}_2$ or $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NH}_2$; R^2 is $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$; R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

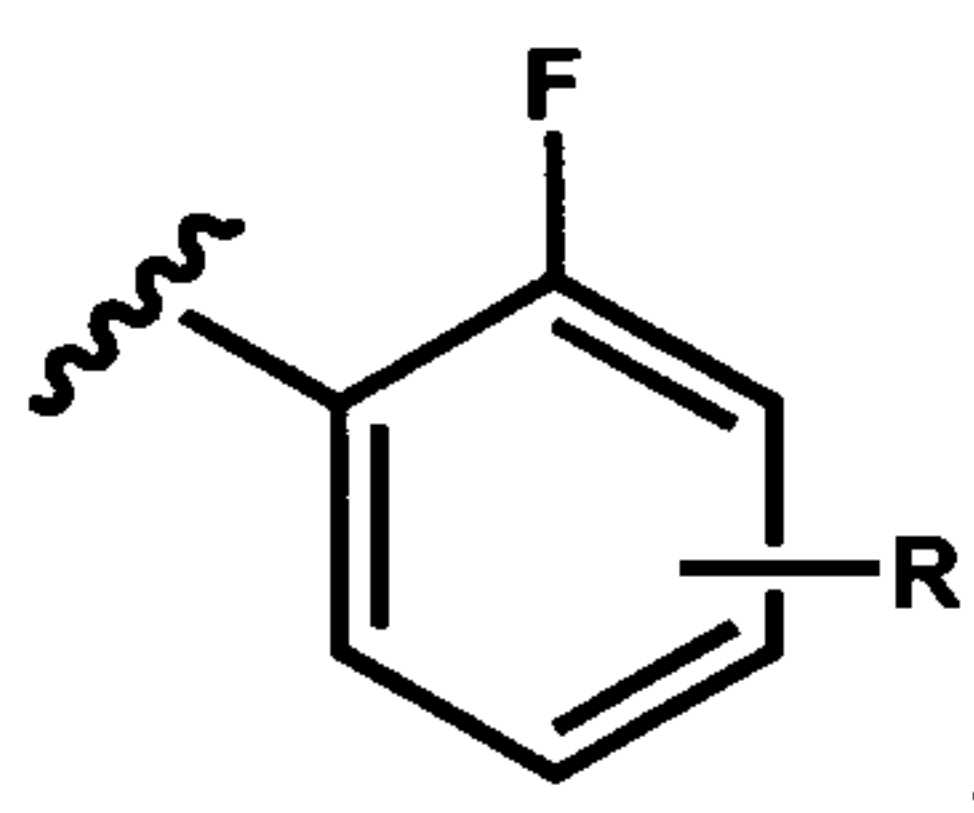
In another embodiment, $\text{R}^1\text{-R}^{10}$ is benzyl, wherein the phenyl moiety of the benzyl group is optionally substituted with from 1-4 groups independently selected from: halo, $-\text{NH}_2$, -

NHSO_2 -alkyl, haloalkyl, methoxy, $-\text{O}$ -haloalkyl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC(O)NH-alkyl}$, alkyl, $-\text{OH}$, -

85

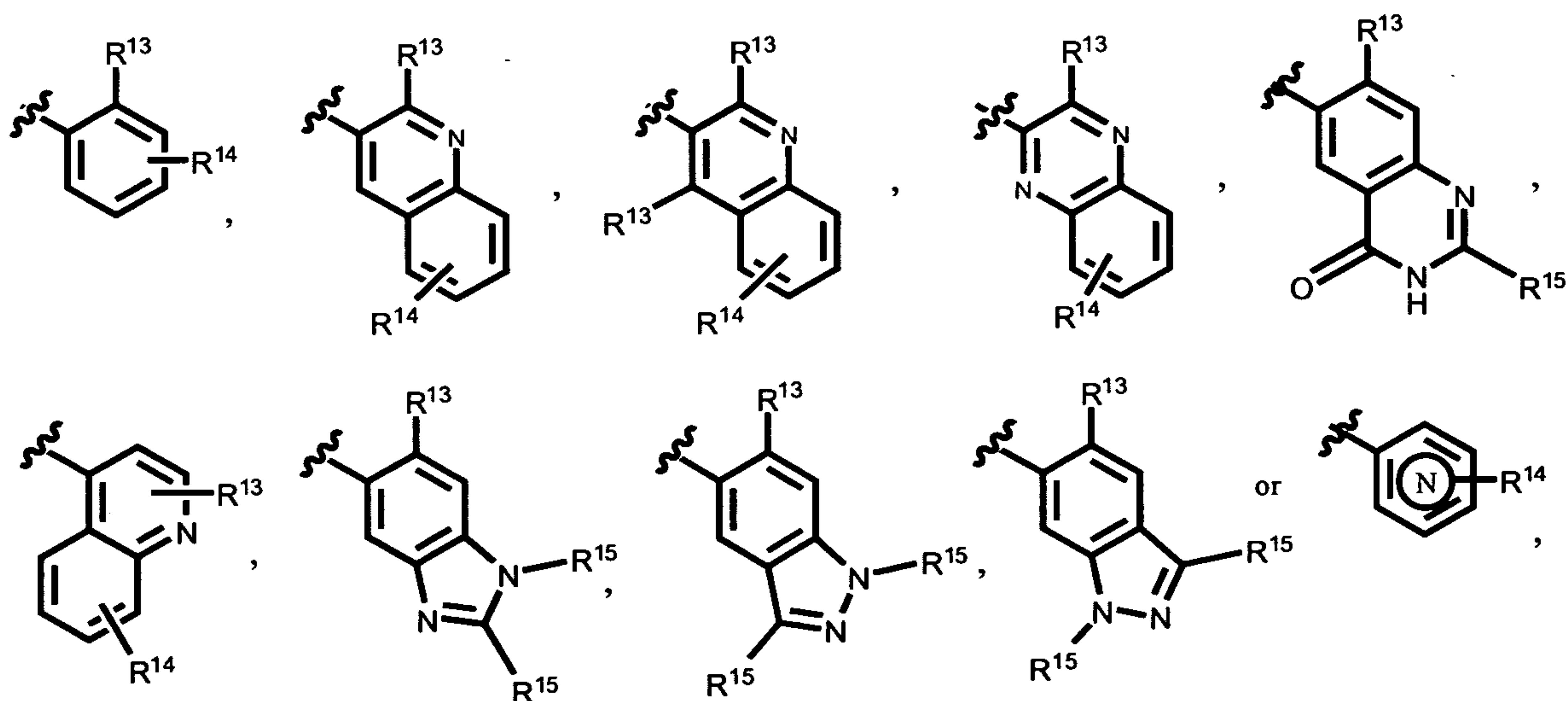
CN, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NH}_2$; R^2 is $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$; R^{11} is phenyl, which is optionally substituted with up to 3 groups independently selected from: alkyl, F, Cl, methyl, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NO}_2$, methoxy, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{COOH}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{CN}$, thiazolyl, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-phenyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-cyclopropyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC}(\text{O})\text{-alkyl}$, pyrazolyl or $-\text{OCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$; R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; and R^7 is H.

In one embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$; R^2 is $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$; or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$; R^4 is H or F; R^5 is methyl or ethyl; R^6 is H or F; R^7 is H; and $-\text{R}^{10}$ is:



wherein R represents up to 2 optional and additional phenyl substituents, each independently selected from halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, alkyl, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$ and heteroaryl.

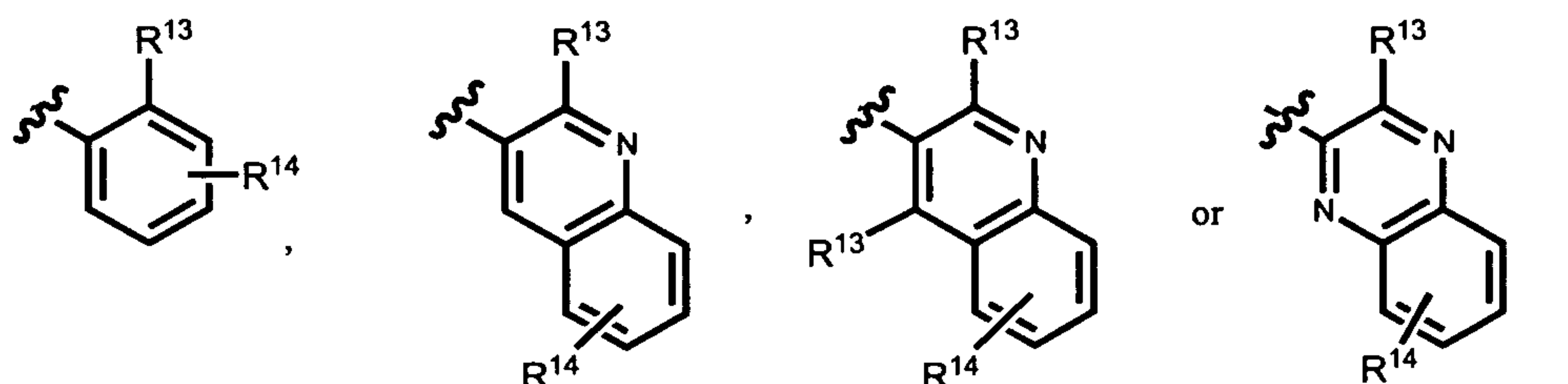
In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$; R^5 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, halo or hydroxy; R^6 is H, halo or hydroxy; and R^{10} is



wherein R^{13} is F or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$ and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-}$

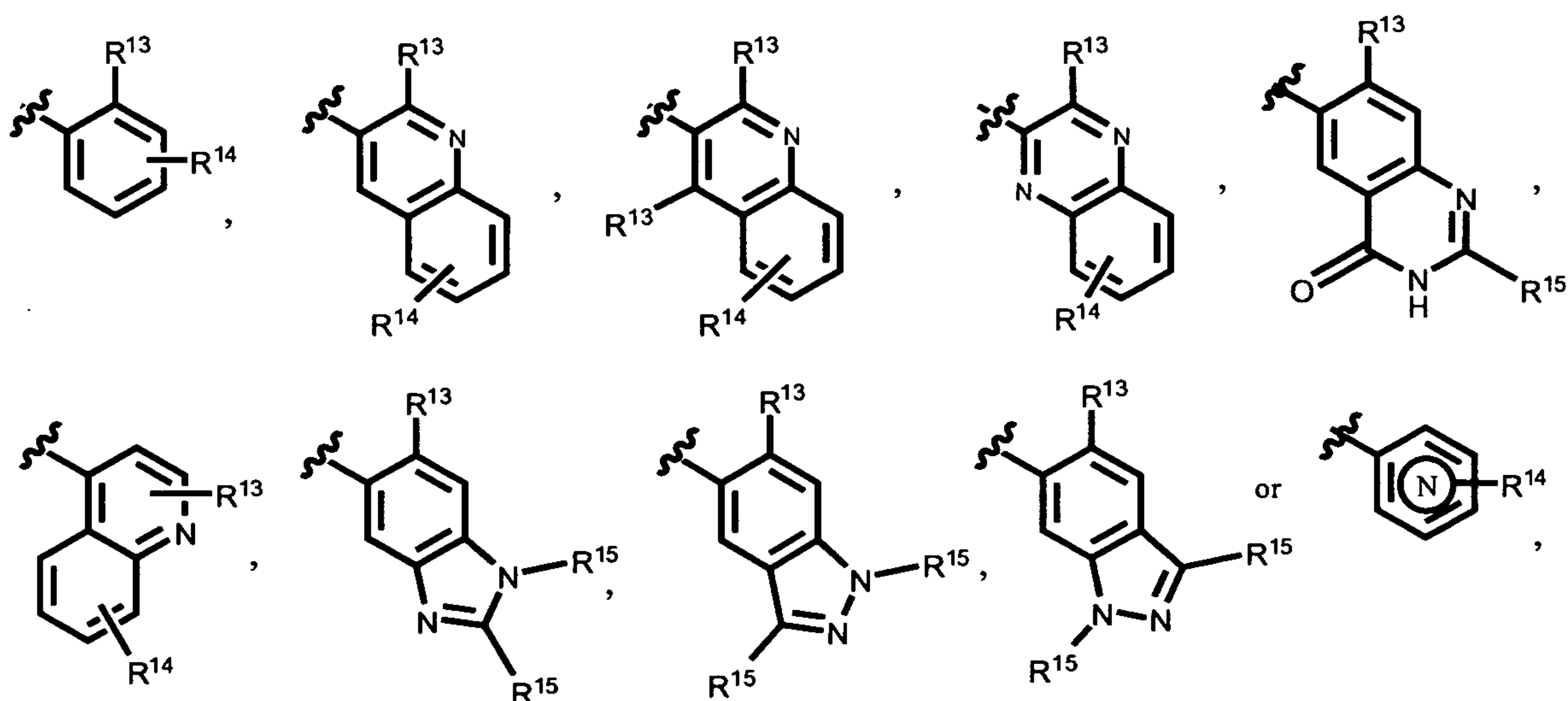
alkyl, -NH₂SO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, R¹ is -CH₂-; R⁵ is methyl or ethyl; R⁶ is H or F; and R¹⁰ is



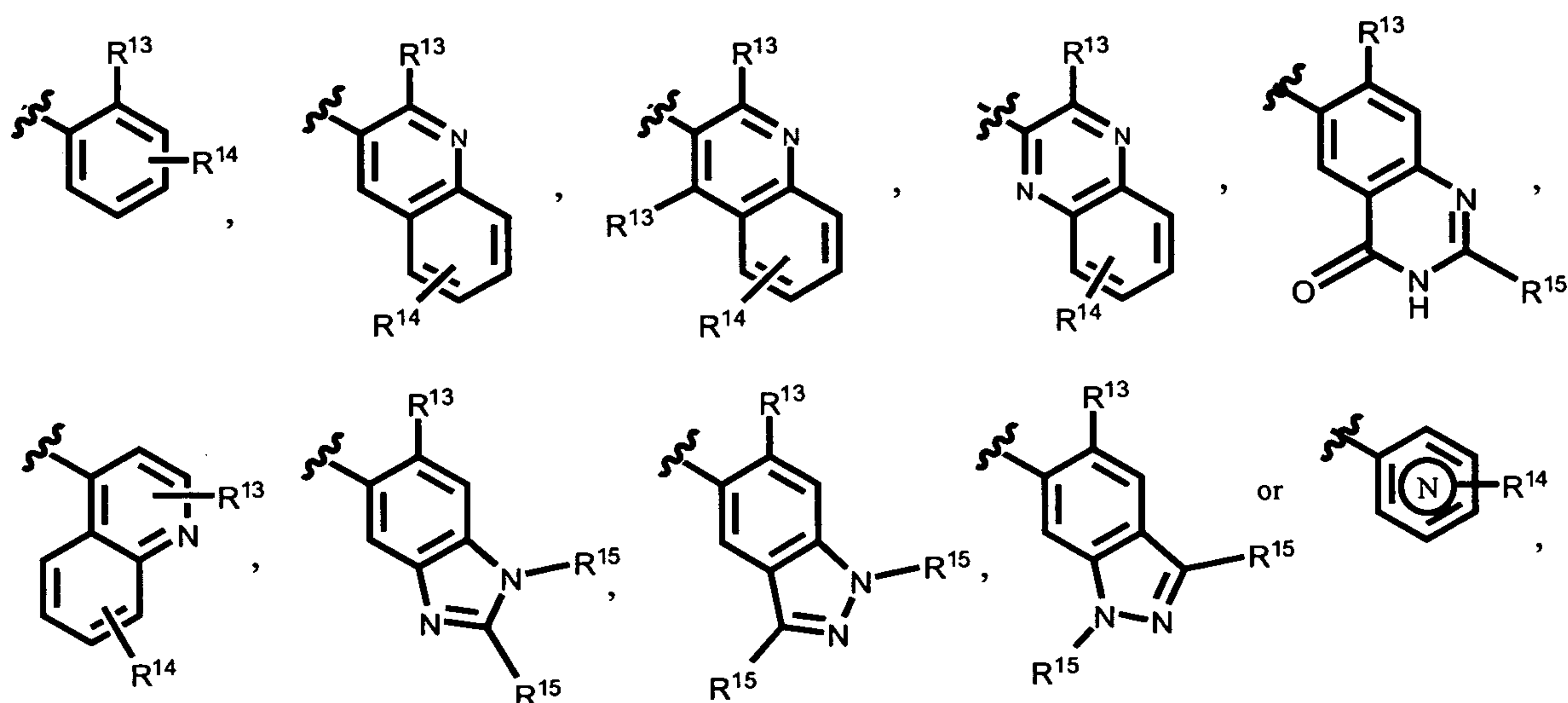
wherein R¹³ is F or Cl and R¹⁴ represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NH₂SO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂alkyl, -SO₂NHalkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

In still another embodiment, R¹ is -CH₂-; R⁹ is H; R¹⁰ is



wherein R¹³ is F or Cl; R¹⁴ represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NH₂SO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R¹⁵ is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -NH₂SO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and R¹¹ is methyl.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$; R^9 is H; R^{10} is



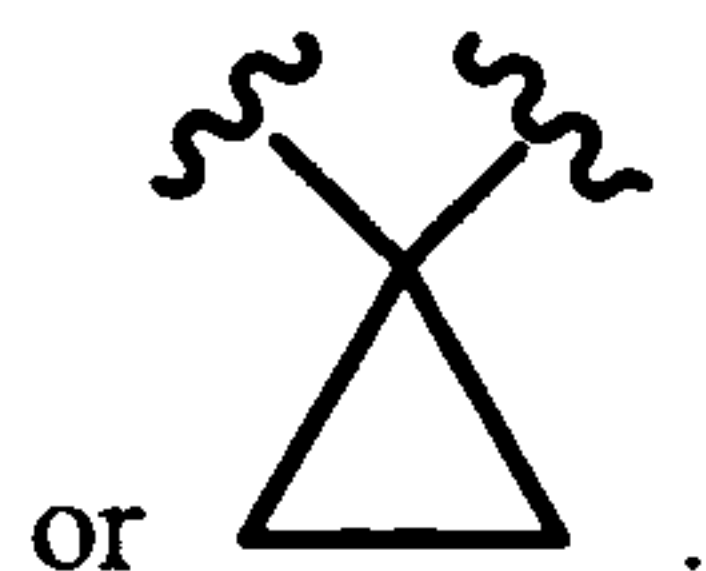
wherein R^{13} is F or Cl, R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C(O)NH}_2$, $-\text{C(O)NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC(O)-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)-heterocycloalkyl}$ and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C(O)NH}_2$, $-\text{C(O)NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC(O)-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)-heterocycloalkyl}$ or heteroaryl; and R^{11} is cyclopropyl.

In one embodiment, $-\text{C(O)OR}^9$ or $-\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl and R^{11} is alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{C(O)OR}^9$ or $-\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl and R^{11} is alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl; and each occurrence of R^{30} is independently, H, halo, $-\text{N(alkyl)}_2$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{O-haloalkyl}$, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form an aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl group.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-\text{C(O)OR}^9$ or $-\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl and R^{11} is alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl; and R^1 is $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_r-$.

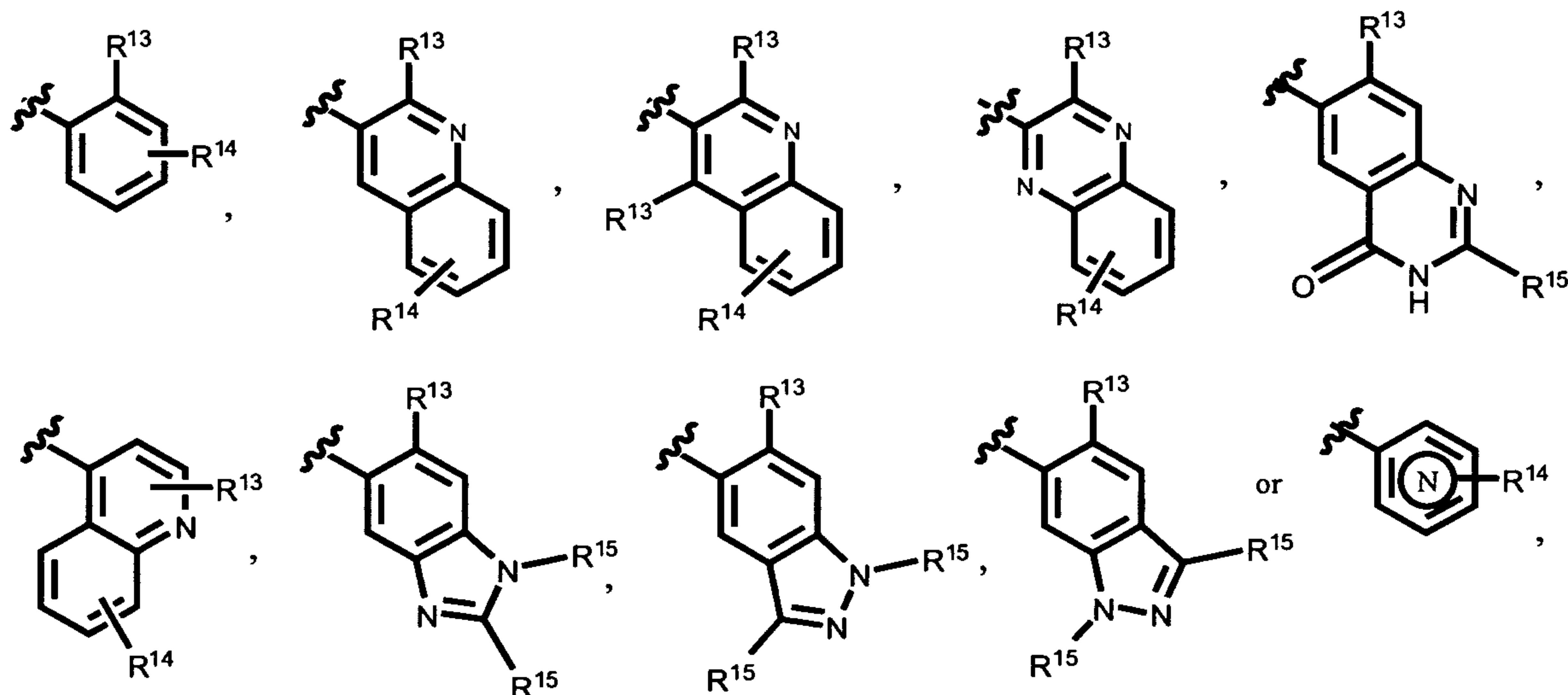
In still another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; and R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$



In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; and wherein R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or $-\text{OH}$, R^5 is H, alkyl, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{O-haloalkyl}$, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-\text{OH}$, hydroxyalkyl, $-\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{CN}$, and R^6 is H, alkyl, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{O-haloalkyl}$, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-\text{OH}$, hydroxyalkyl, $-\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{CN}$.

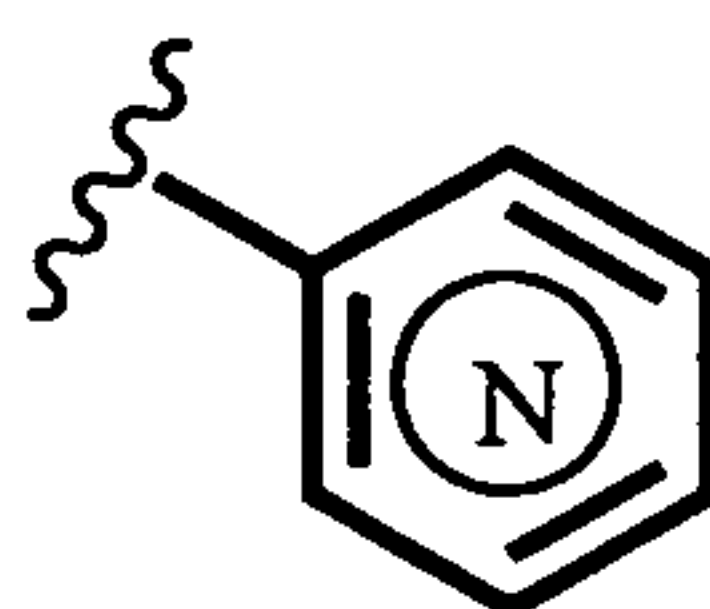
In yet another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; and R^{10} is aryl or heteroaryl.

In yet another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; and R^{10} is:



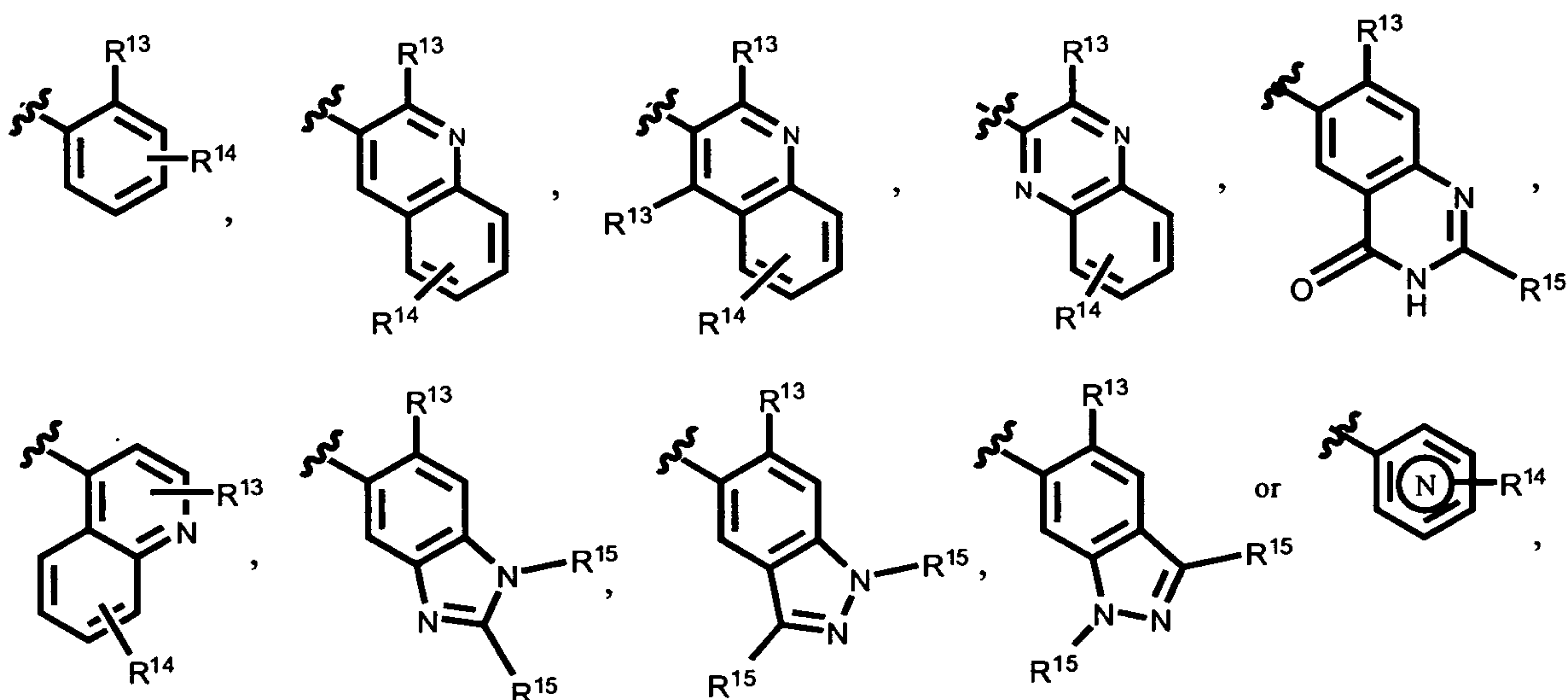
wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C(O)NH}_2$, $-\text{C(O)NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC(O)-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)-heterocycloalkyl}$ and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C(O)NH}_2$, $-\text{C(O)NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC(O)-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C(O)-}$

89

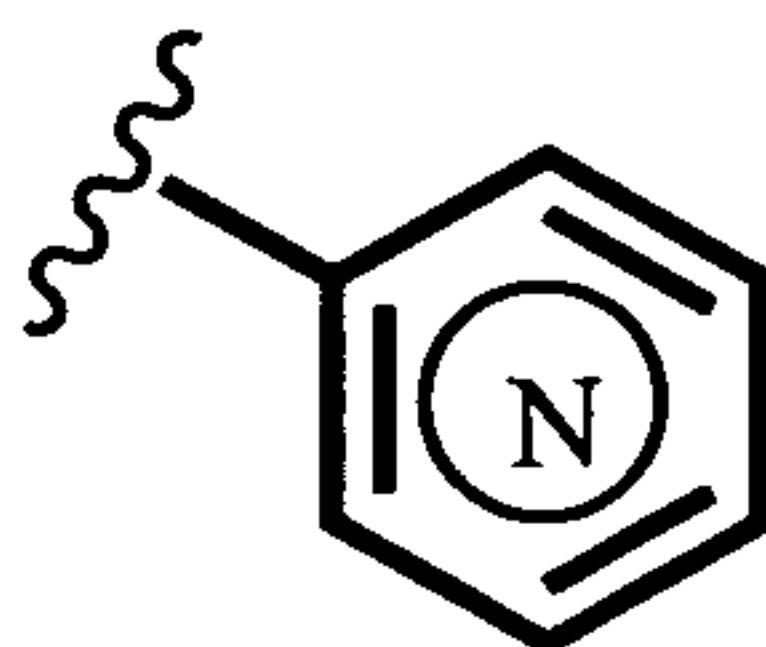


heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

In yet another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl and R^{11} is alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl; R^{10} is:



wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -



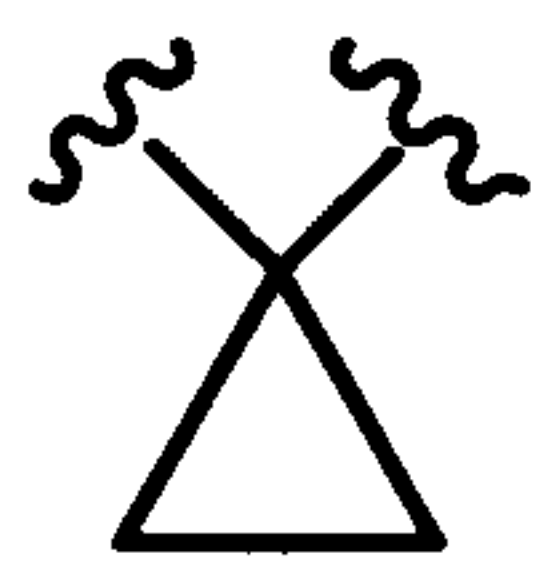
heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions; and R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, halo or hydroxy; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; and R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$.

In one embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; and each occurrence of R^{30} is independently, H, halo, $-N(alkyl)_2$, $-OH$, $-O-alkyl$, $-O-haloalkyl$, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form an aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl group.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; and R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl.

In still another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$, $-CH(CH_3)-$ or



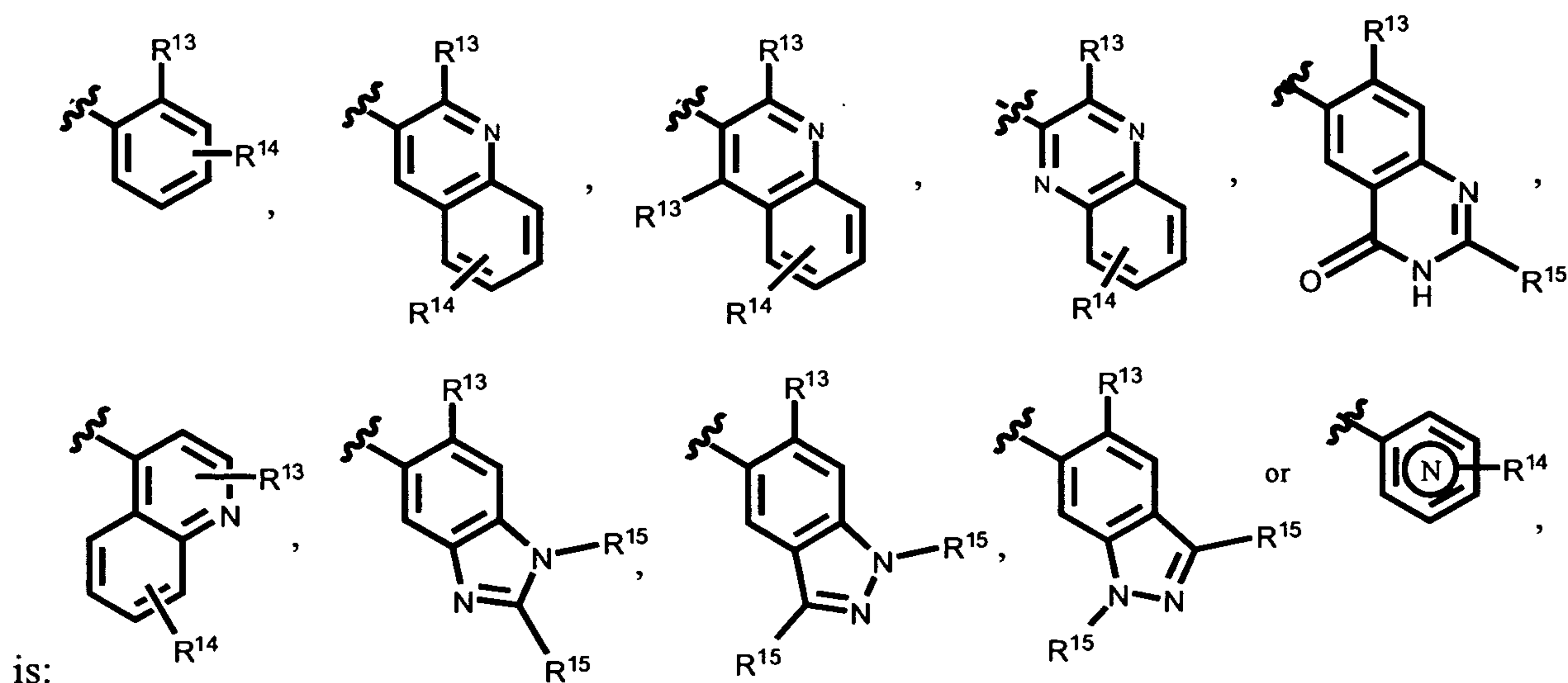
; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; and R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl.

In another embodiment, R^1 is $-CH_2-$; R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; and R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl.

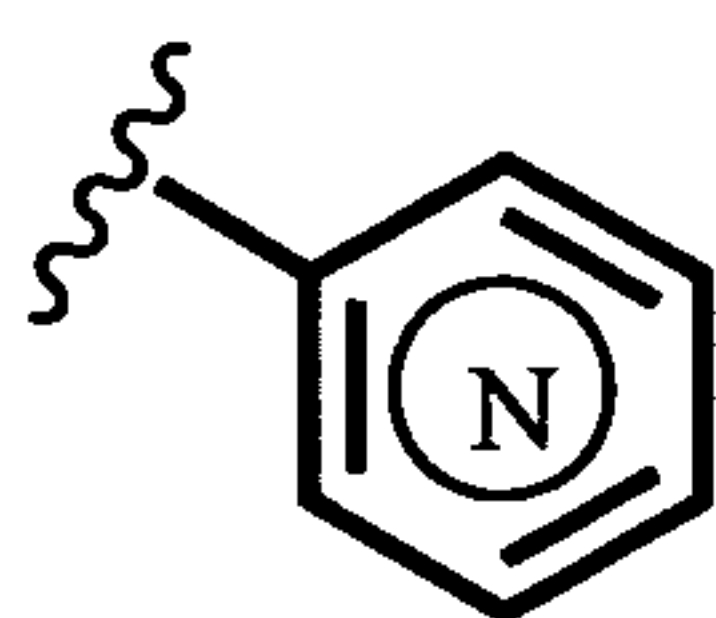
In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, halo or $-OH$; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O-alkyl$, $-O-haloalkyl$, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O-alkyl$, $-O-haloalkyl$, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; and each occurrence of R^{30} is independently, H, halo, $-N(alkyl)_2$, $-OH$, $-O-alkyl$, $-O-haloalkyl$, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form an aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl group.

In yet another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, halo or $-OH$; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O-alkyl$, $-O-haloalkyl$, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O-alkyl$, $-O-haloalkyl$, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; and each occurrence of R^{30} is independently, H, halo, $-N(alkyl)_2$, $-OH$, $-O-alkyl$, $-O-haloalkyl$, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form an aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl group; and R^{10} is aryl or heteroaryl.

In another embodiment, R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$; R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, halo or $-OH$; R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$; R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl; and each occurrence of R^{30} is independently, H, halo, $-N(alkyl)_2$, $-OH$, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form an aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl group; and R^{10}



wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-CN$, halo, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, $-NHSO_2$ -alkyl, $-NO_2$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-C(O)NH$ -alkyl, $-C(O)OH$, $-OH$, $-NH_2$, $-SO_2$ -alkyl, $-SO_2NH$ -alkyl, $-S$ -alkyl, $-CH_2NH_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-NHC(O)$ -alkyl, $-C(O)O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)$ -heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and



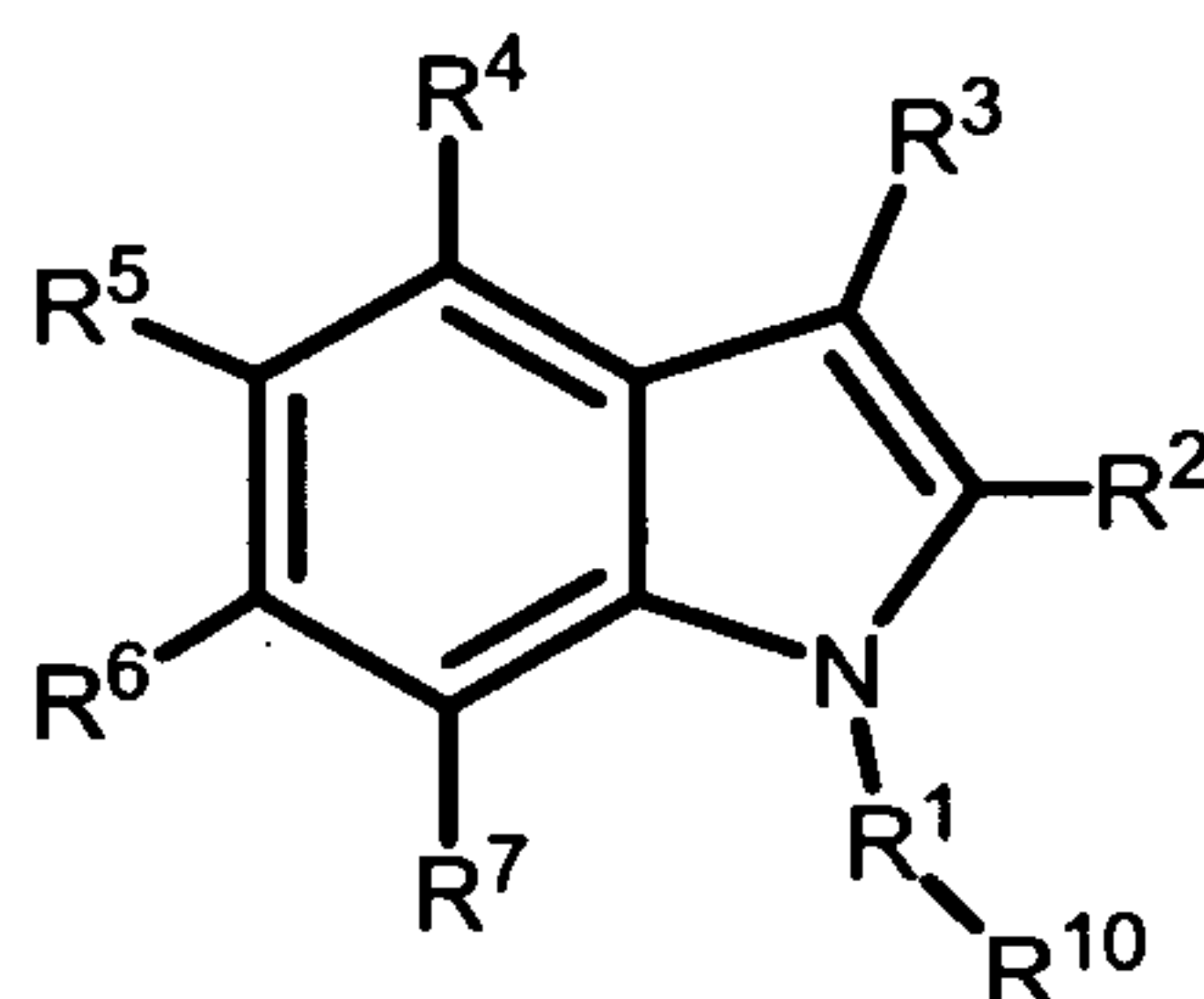
represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

In one embodiment, for the compounds of formula (II), variables R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 and R^{10} are selected independently from each other.

92

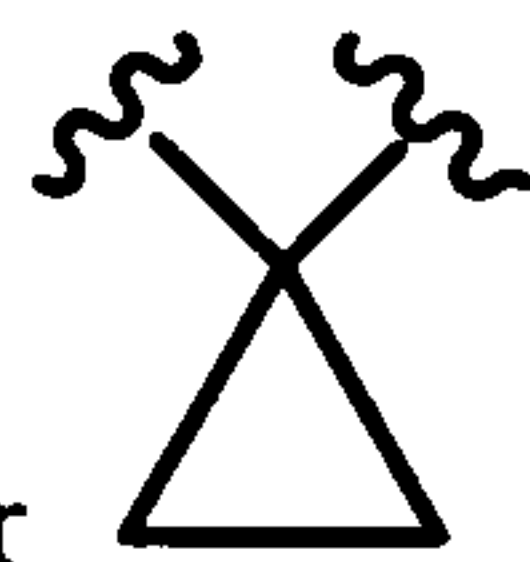
In another embodiment, the compounds of formula (II) are in purified form.

In one embodiment, the compounds of formula (II) have the formula (IIa):



(IIa)

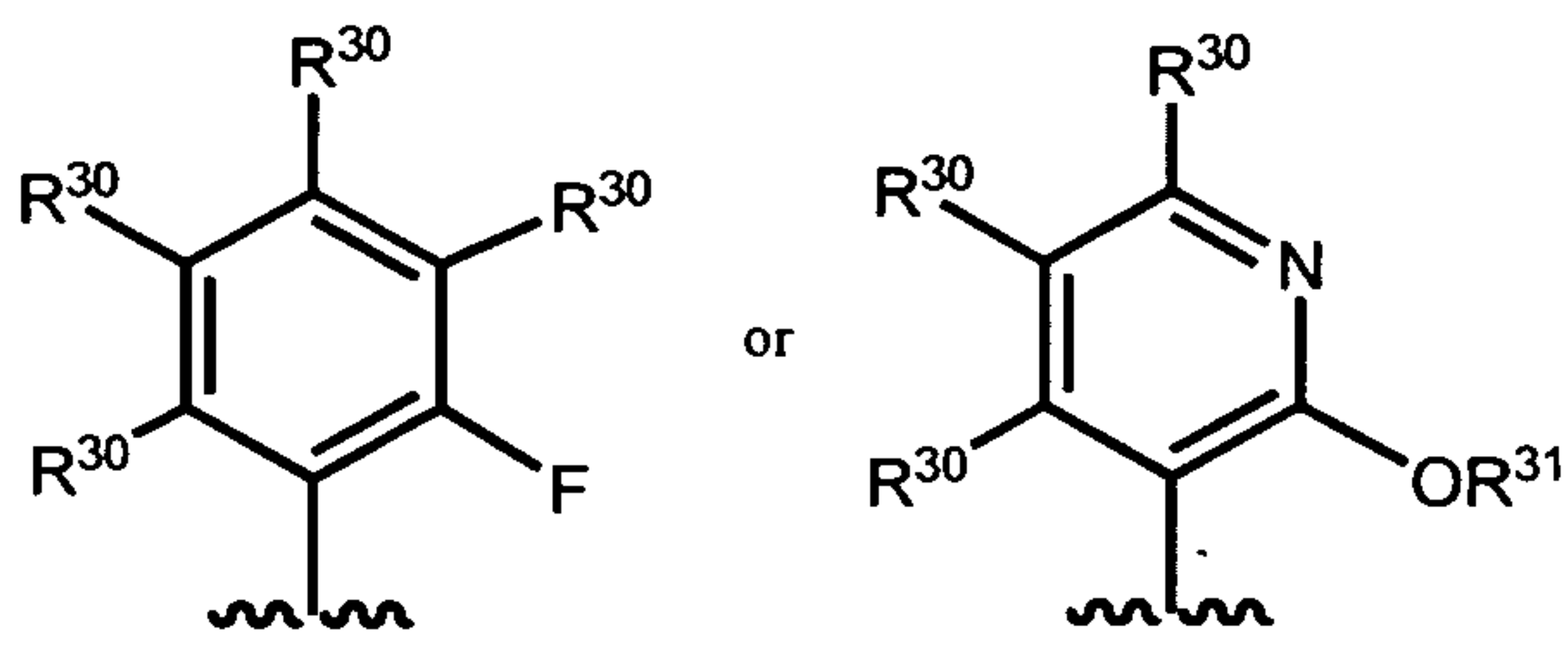
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof,
wherein:



R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or  ;

R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^9)_2$;

R^3 is:



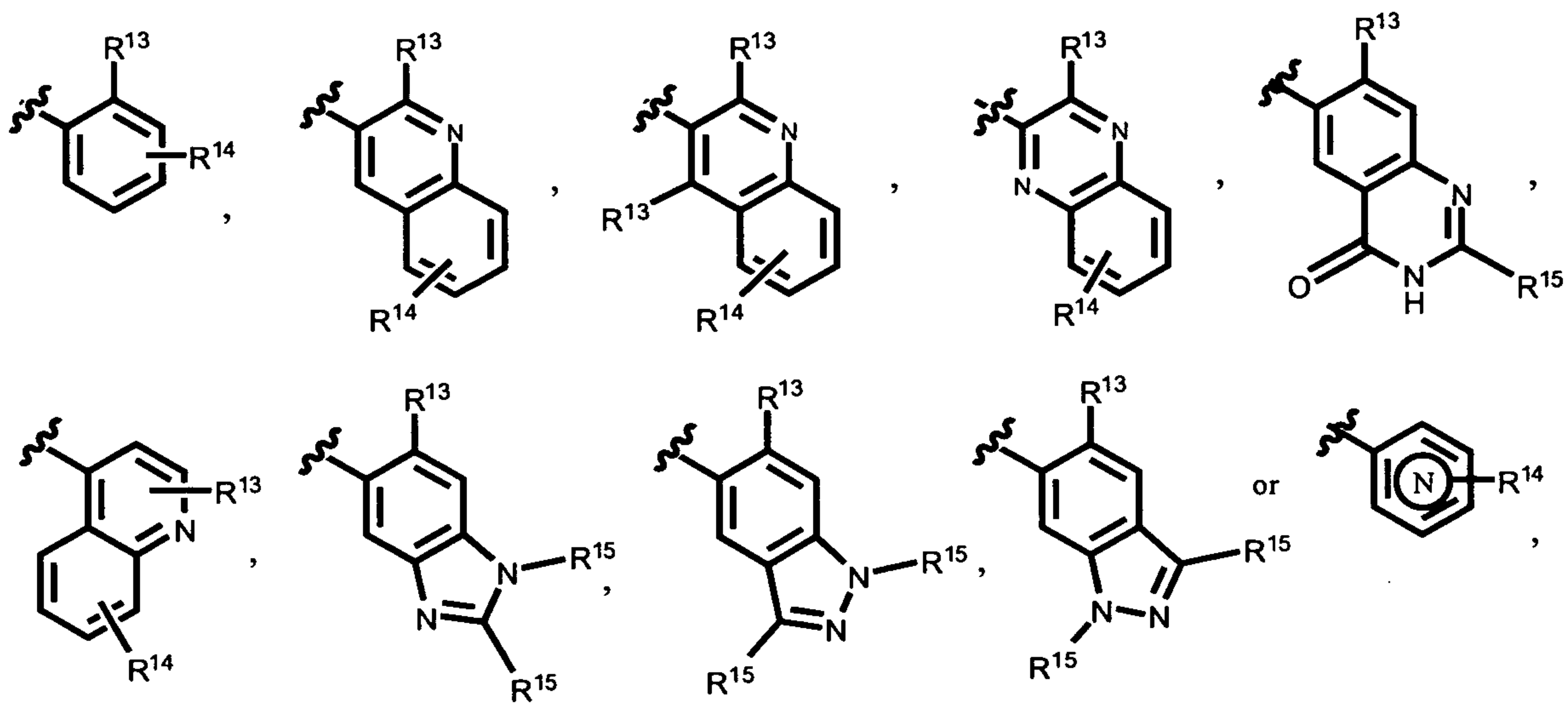
R^4 , R^5 , R^6 and R^7 are each, independently, H, alkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, haloalkyl, halo, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{O-haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NH-alkyl}$ or $-\text{N(alkyl)}_2$;

each occurrence of R^9 is independently H, alkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, haloalkyl

or hydroxyalkyl;

R^{10} is:

93



each occurrence of R¹¹ is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

R¹³ is H, F, Br or Cl;

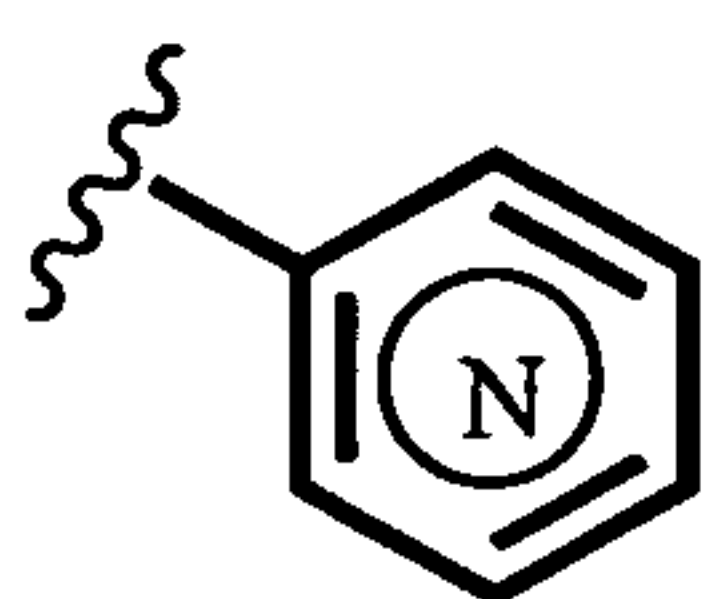
5 R¹⁴ represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl;

10 each occurrence of R¹⁵ is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF₃, -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl;

15 each occurrence of R³⁰ is independently, H, halo, -N(alkyl)₂, -OH, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two adjacent R³⁰ groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form an aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl group;

each occurrence of q is independently an integer ranging from 0 to 4;

each occurrence of r is independently an integer ranging from 1 to 4; and



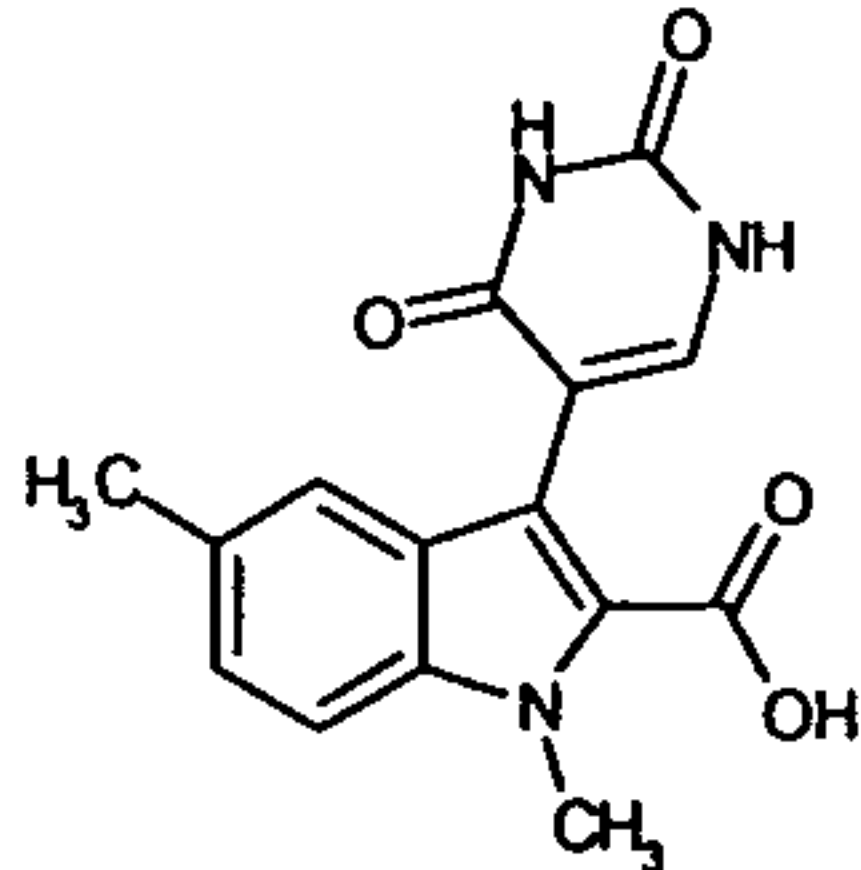
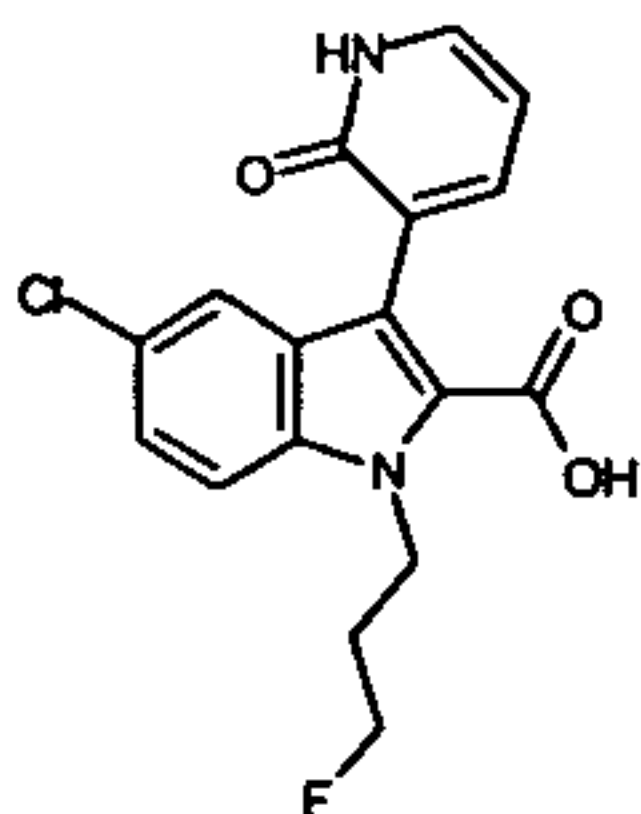
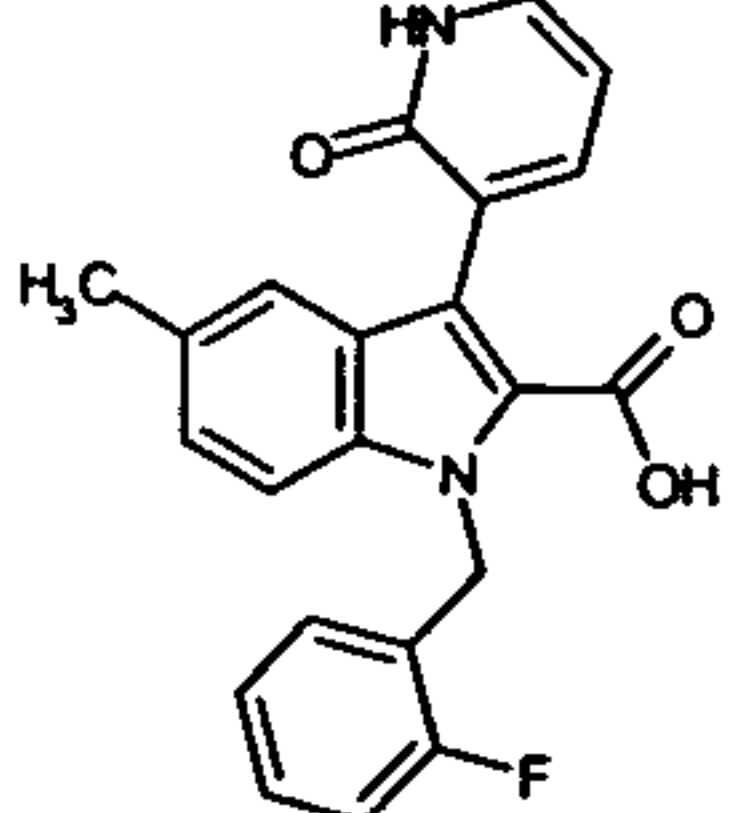
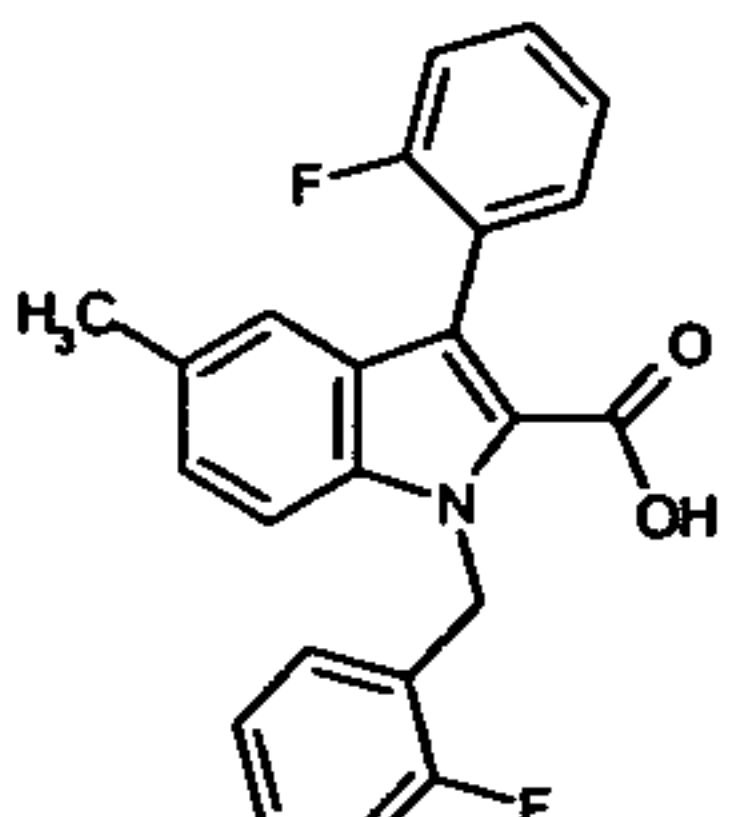
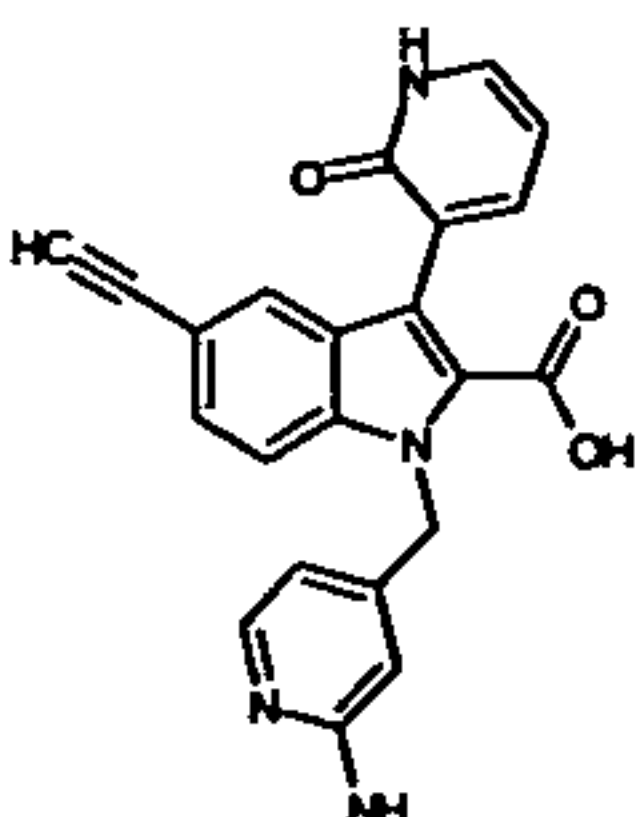
20 represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

In one embodiment, for the compounds of formula (IIa), variables R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 and R^{10} are selected independently from each other.

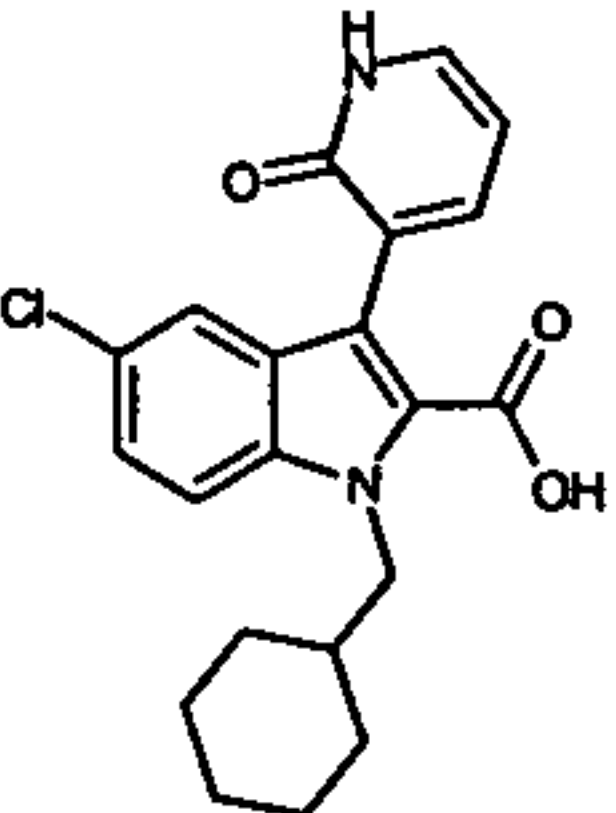
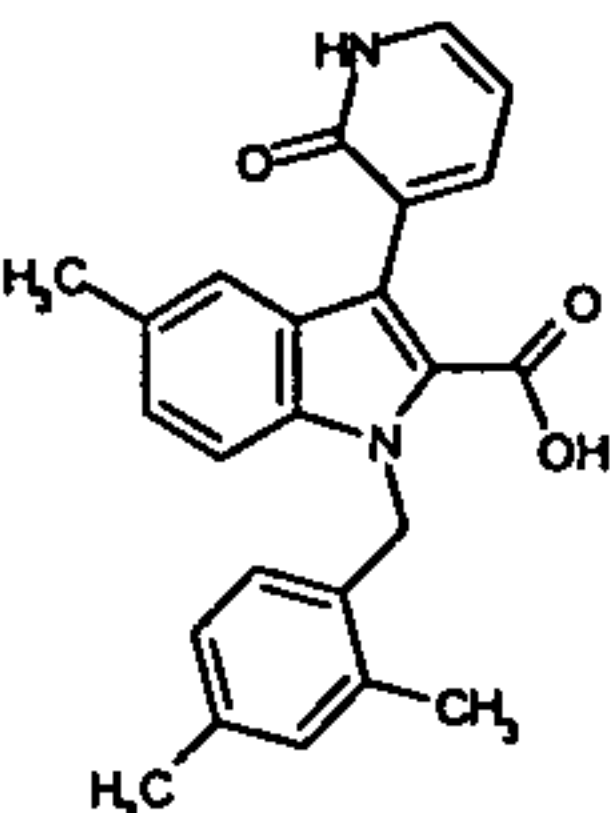
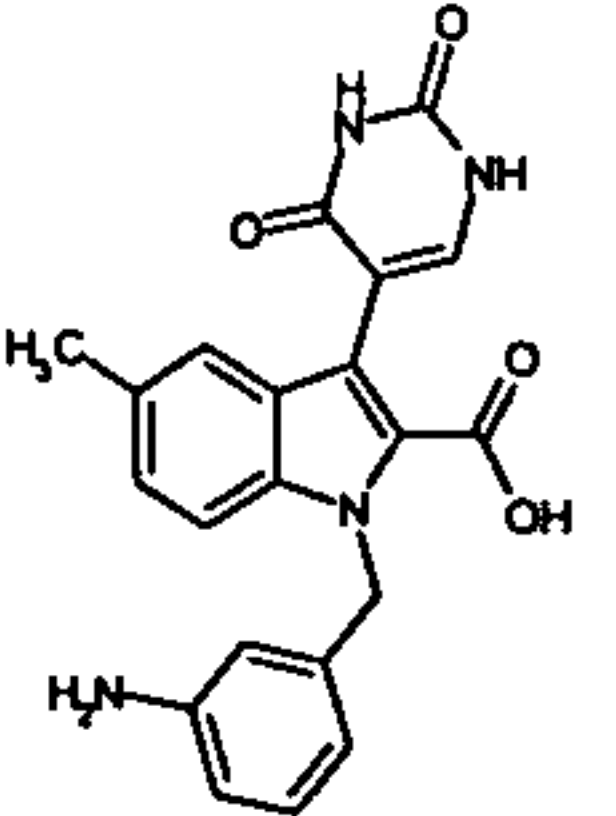
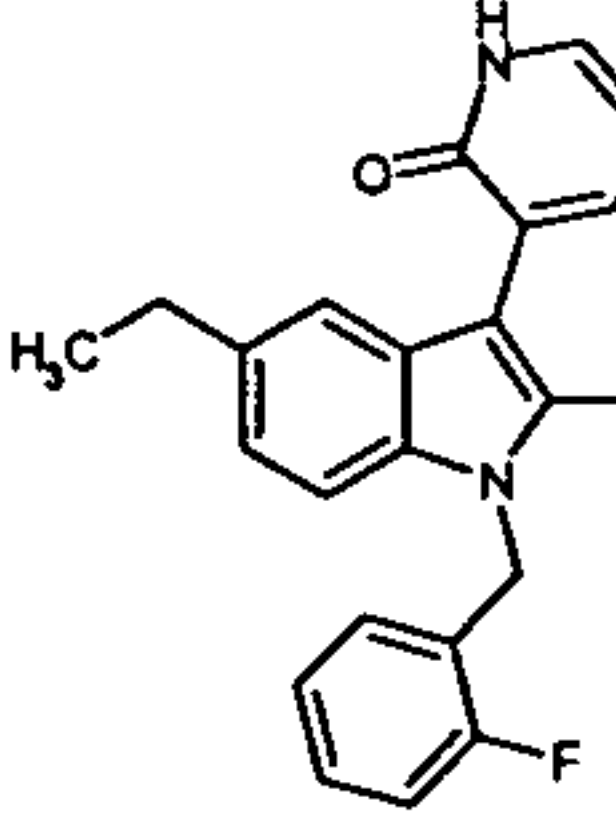
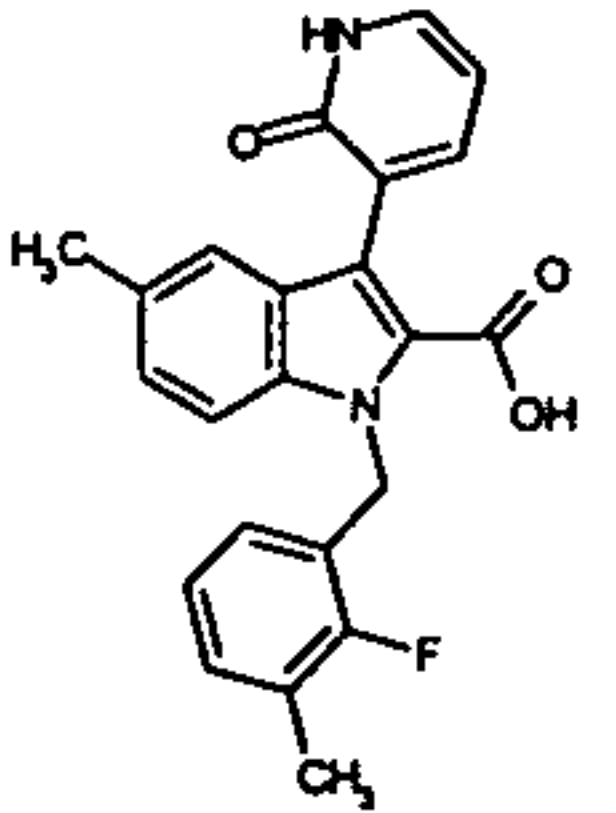
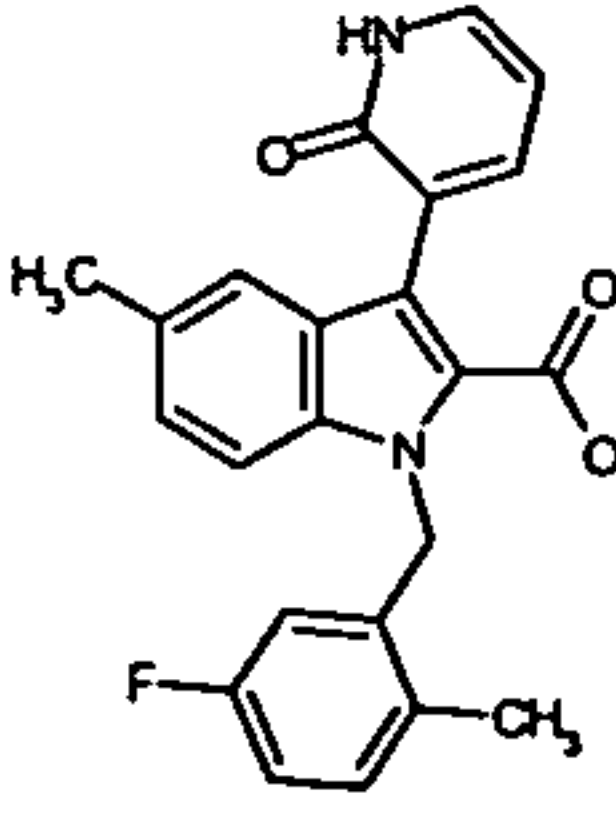
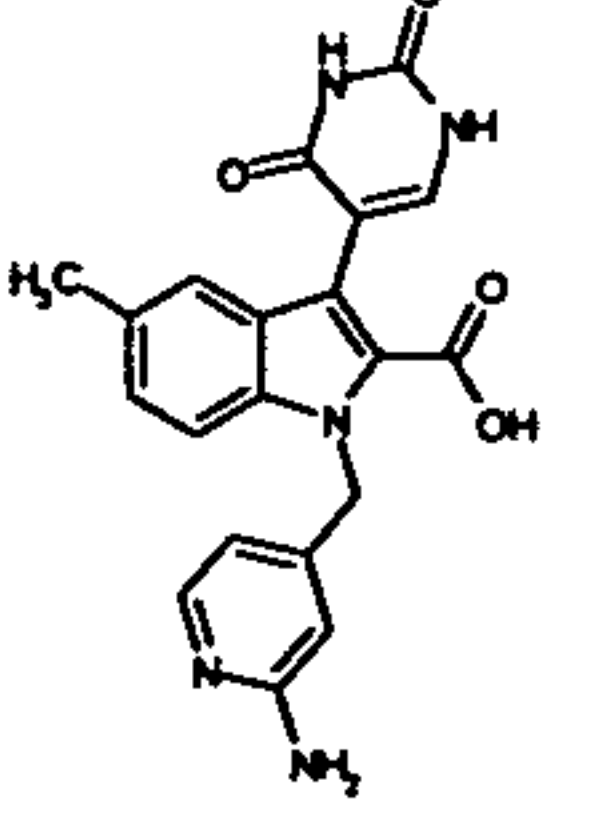
In another embodiment, the compounds of formula (IIa) are in purified form.

5 Non-limiting illustrative examples of the compounds of the present invention are set forth below in Table 1 and in the Examples section below.

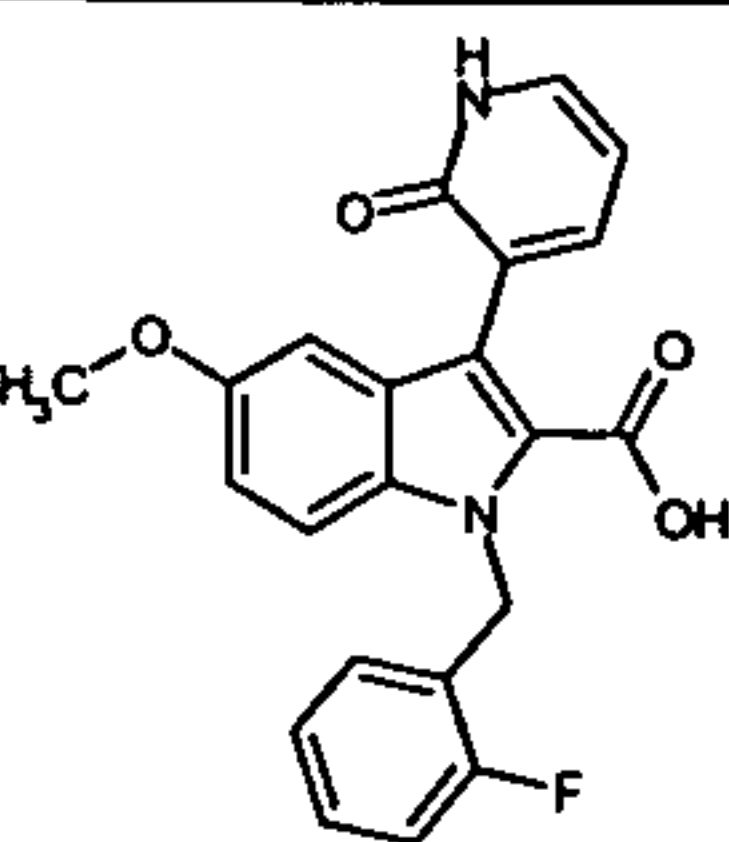
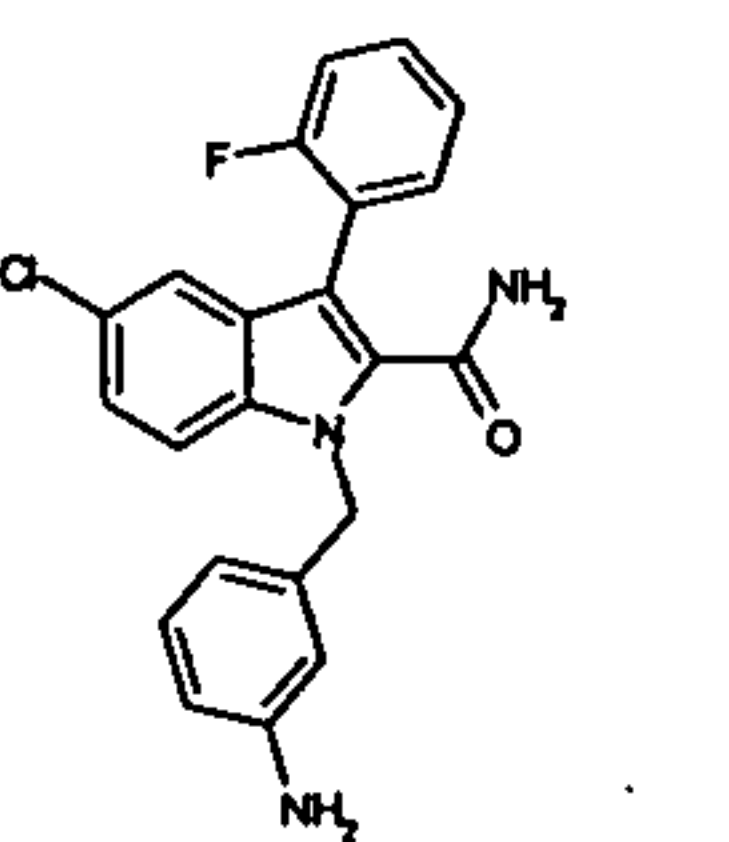
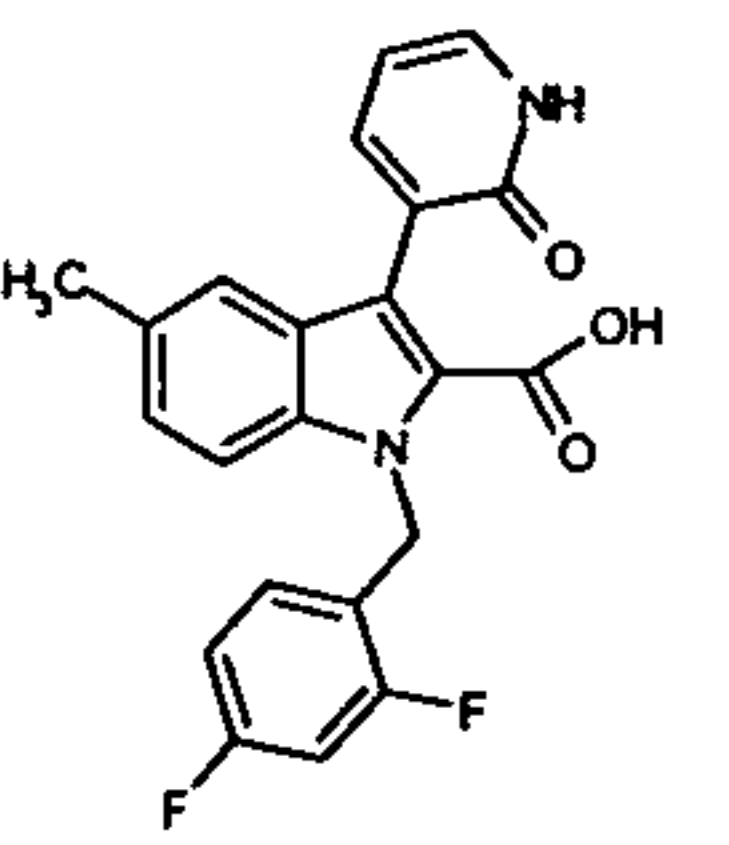
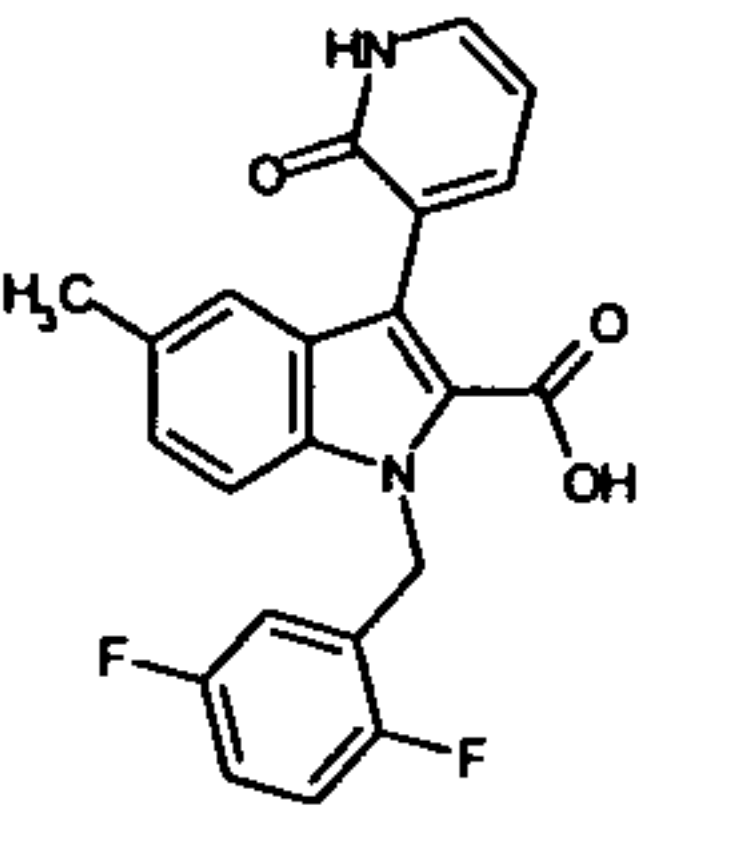
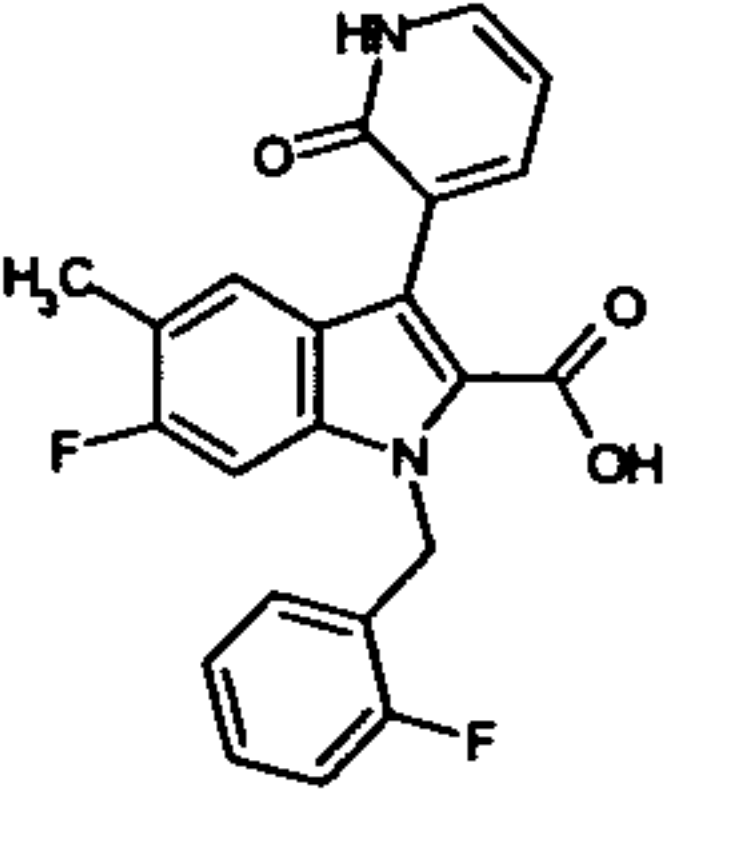
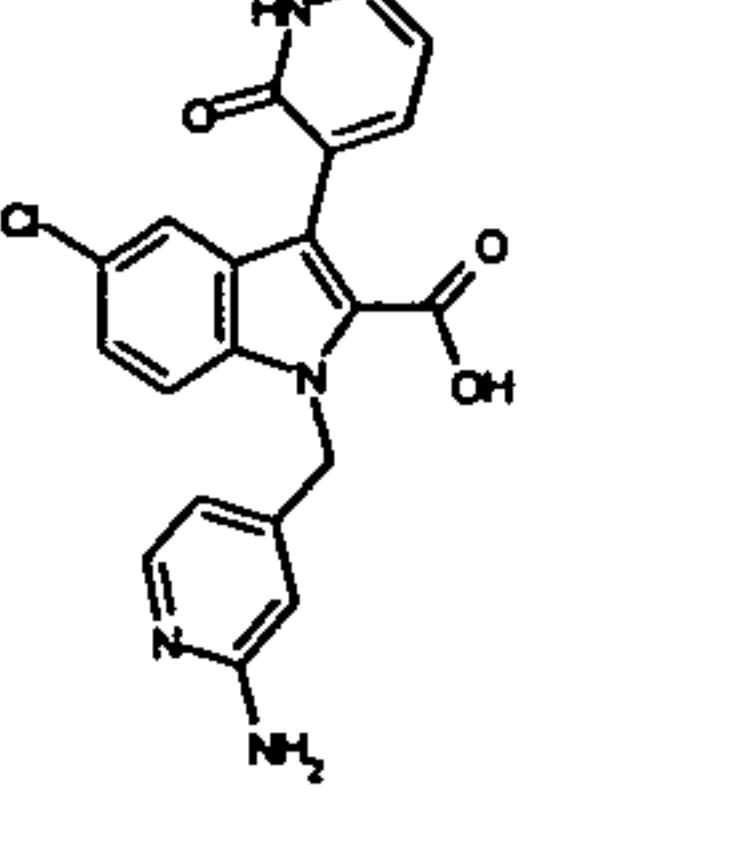
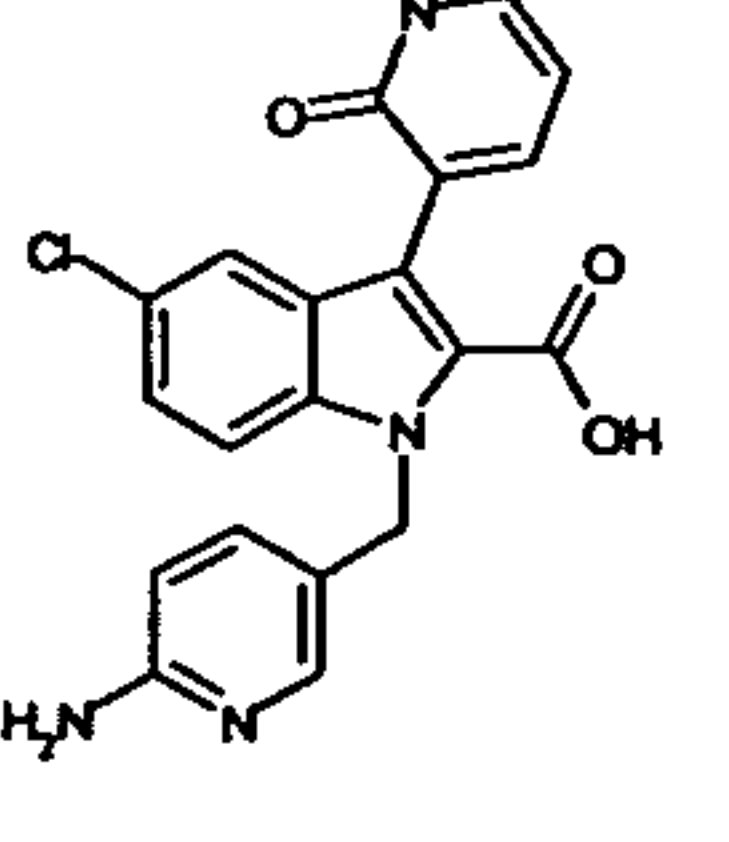
Table 1

No.	STRUCTURE	M+H
1		300.3
2		349.8
3		377.4
4		378.4
5		385.4

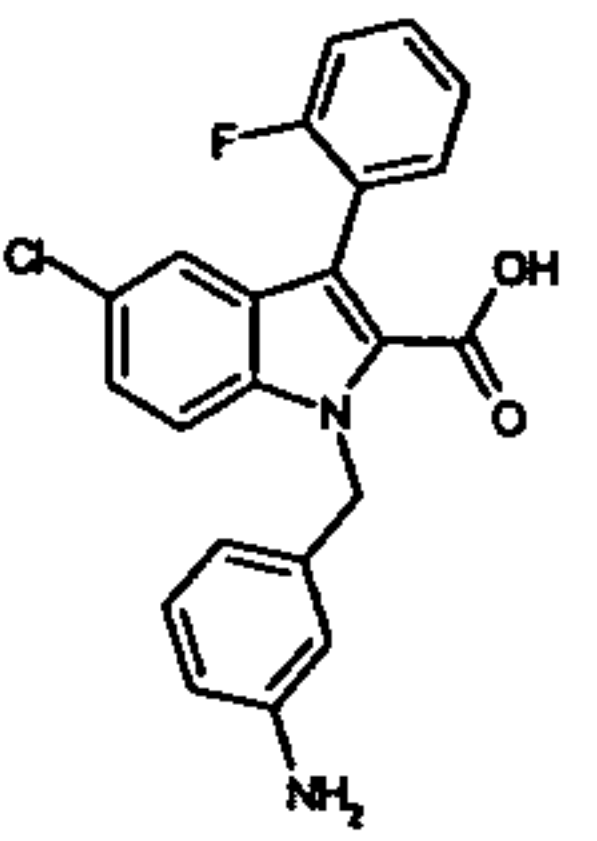
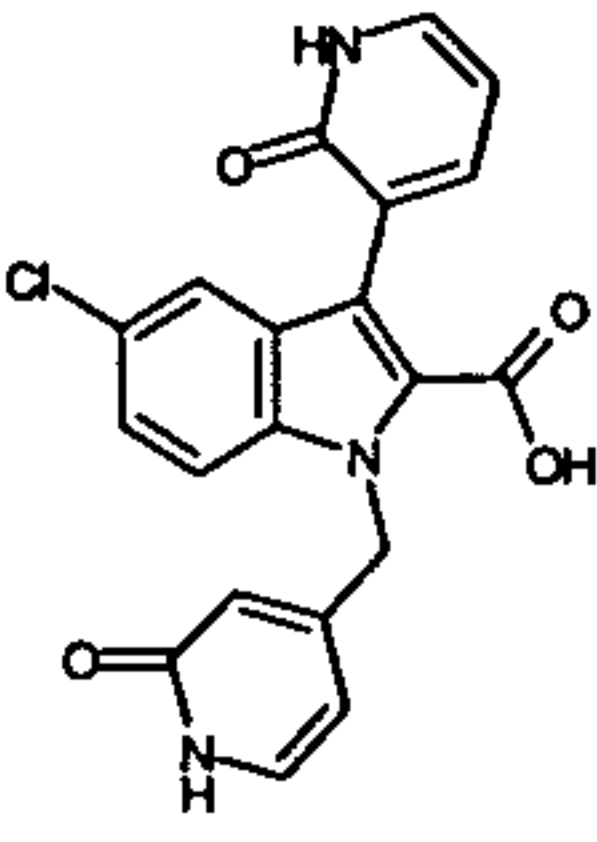
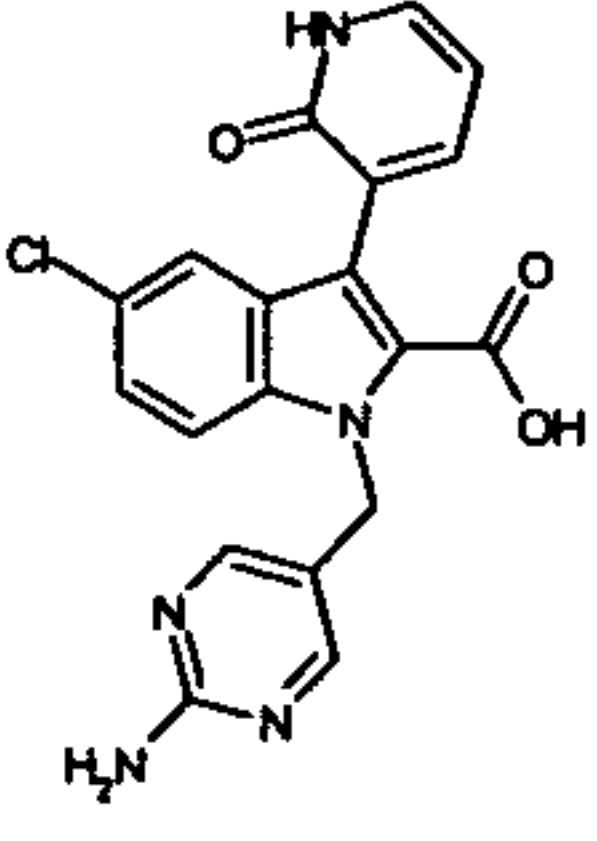
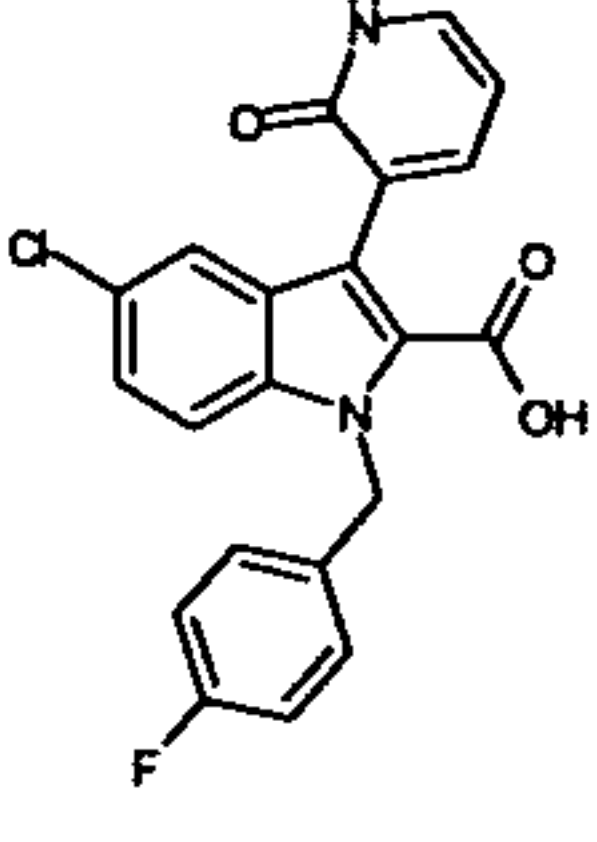
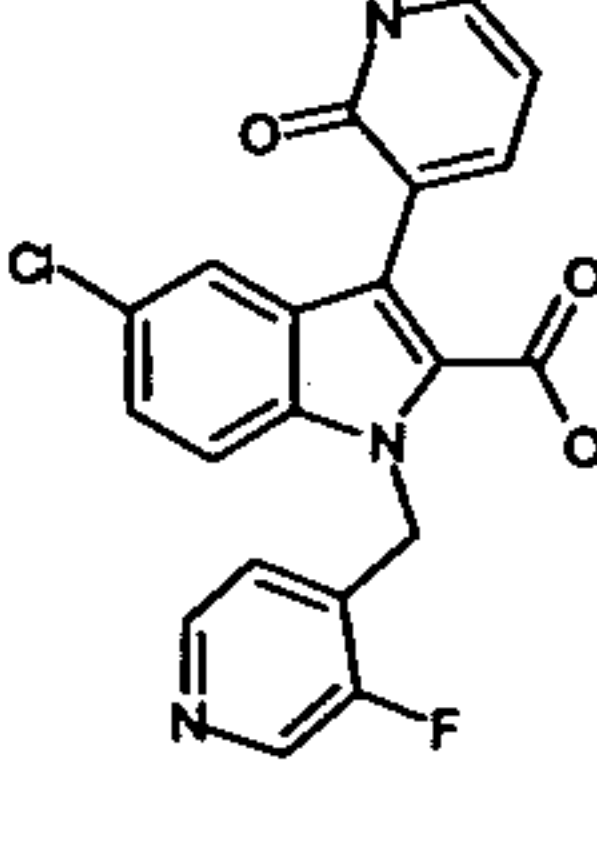
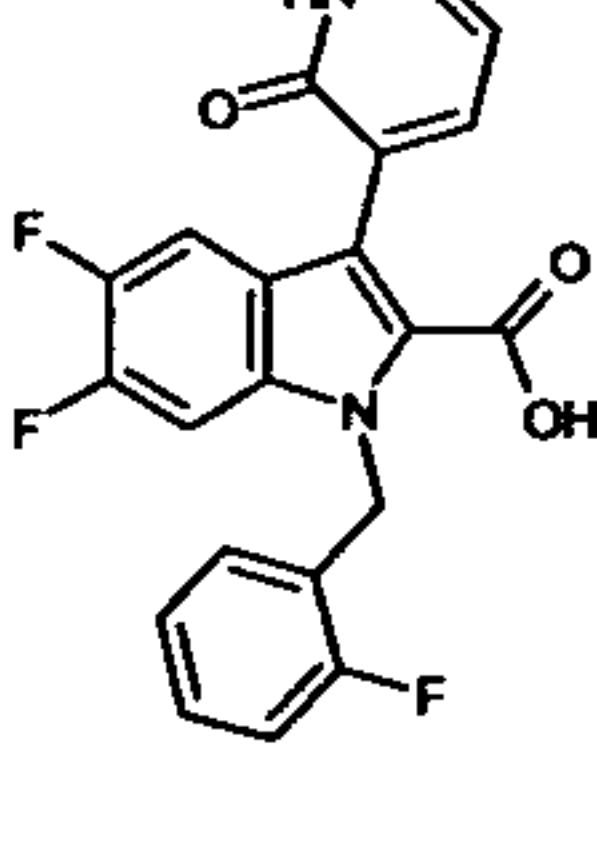
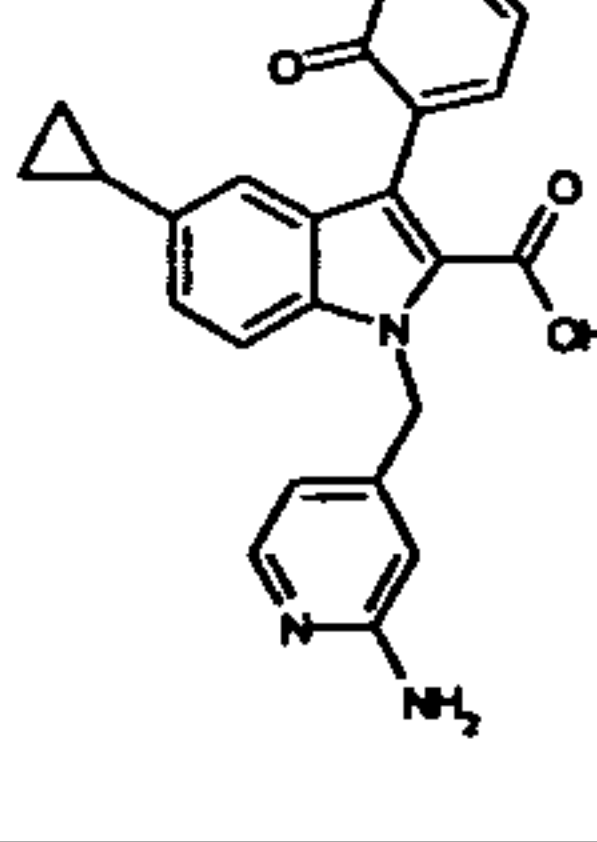
95

6		385.9
7		387.5
8		391.4
9		391.4
10		391.4
11		391.4
12		392.4

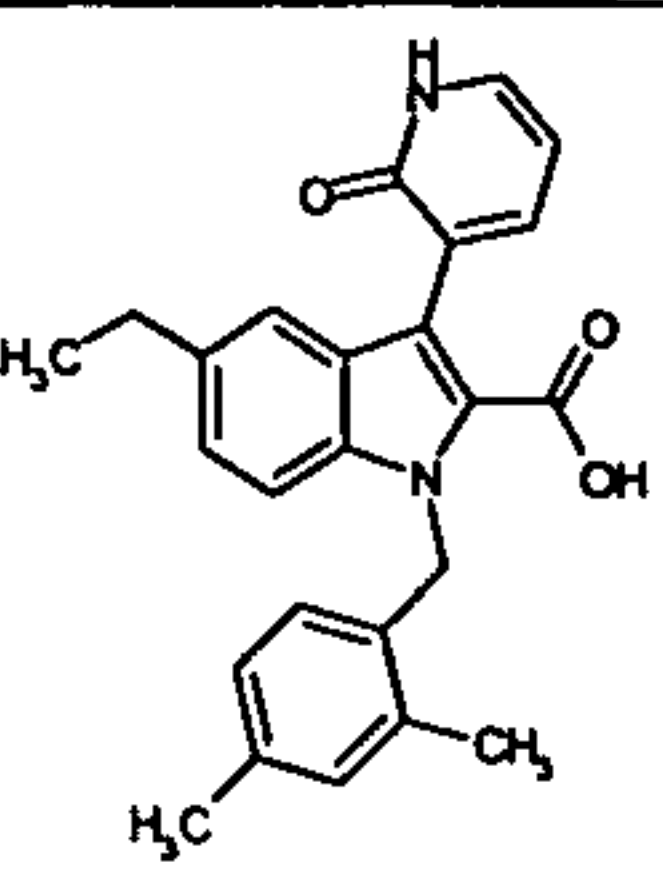
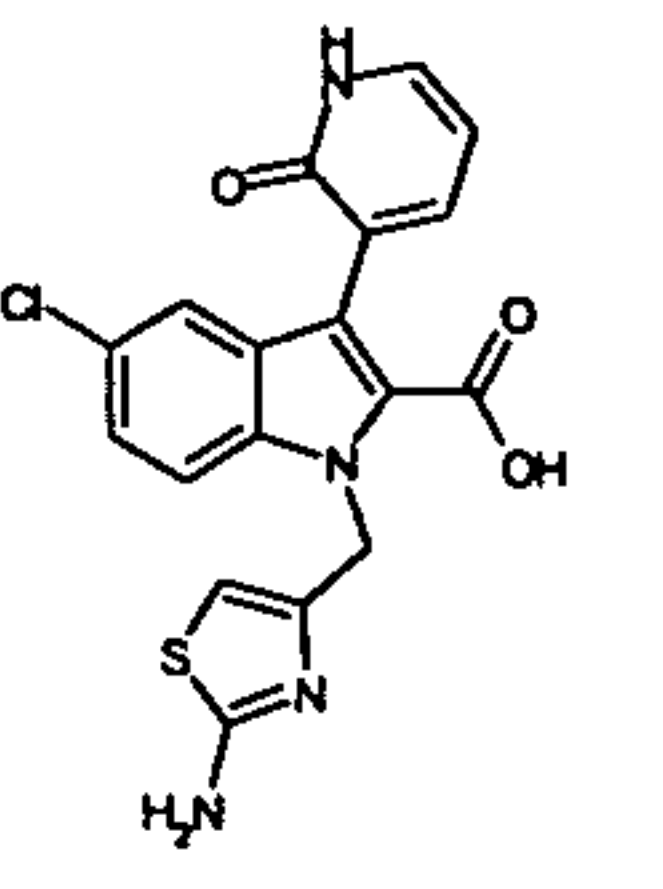
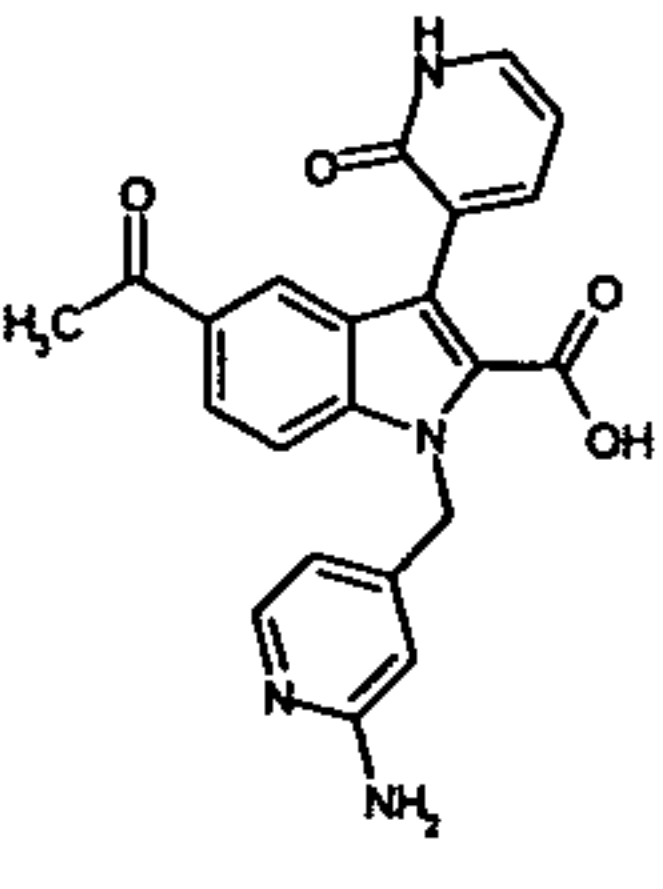
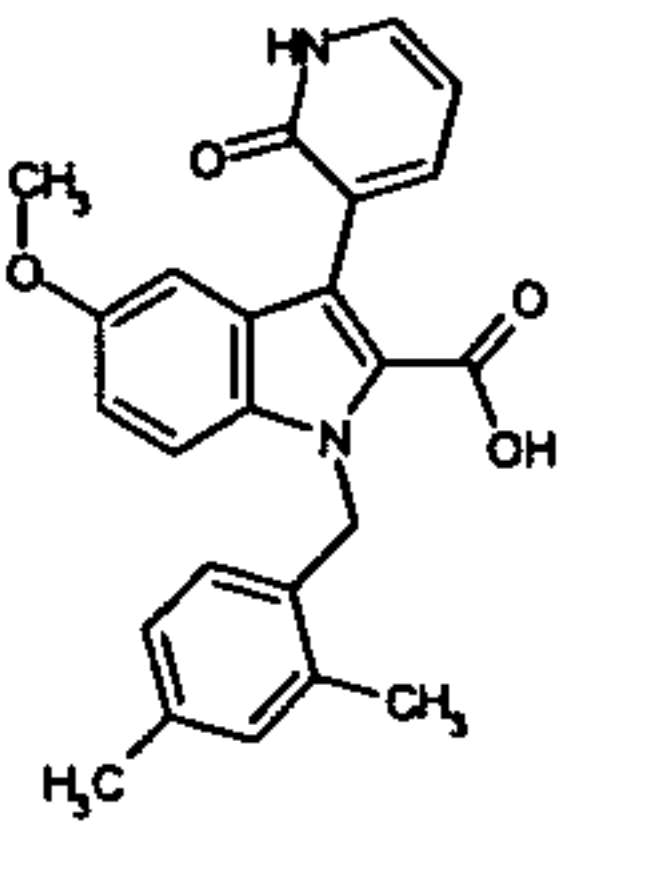
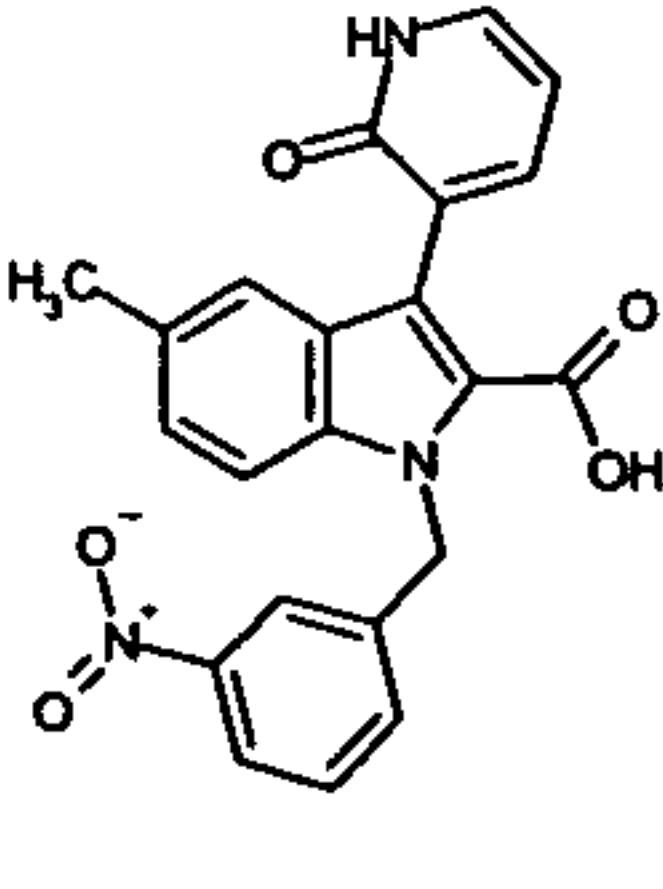
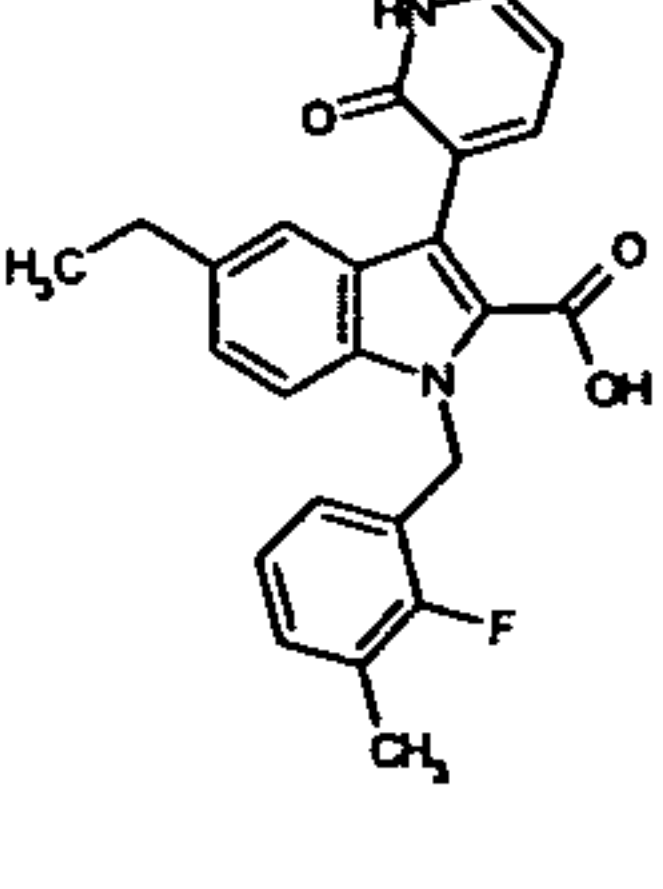
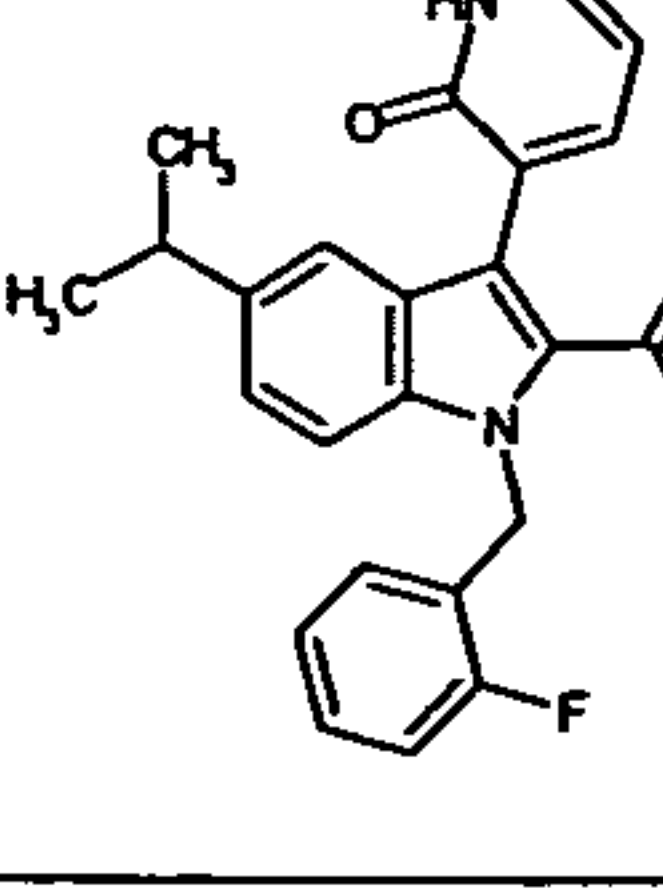
96

13		393.4
14		394.9
15		395.4
16		395.4
17		395.4
18		395.8
19		395.8

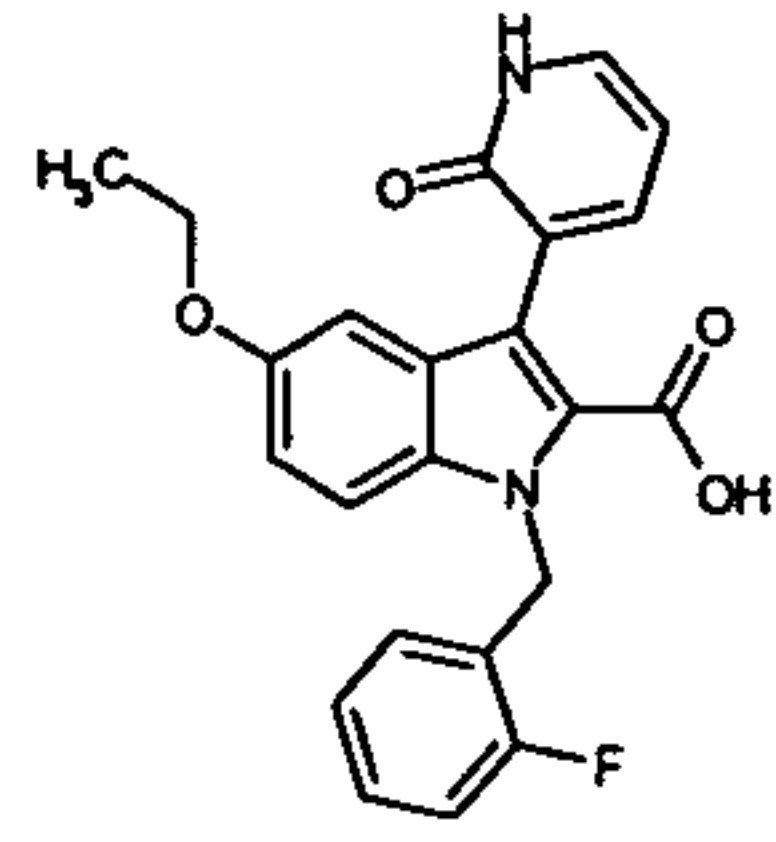
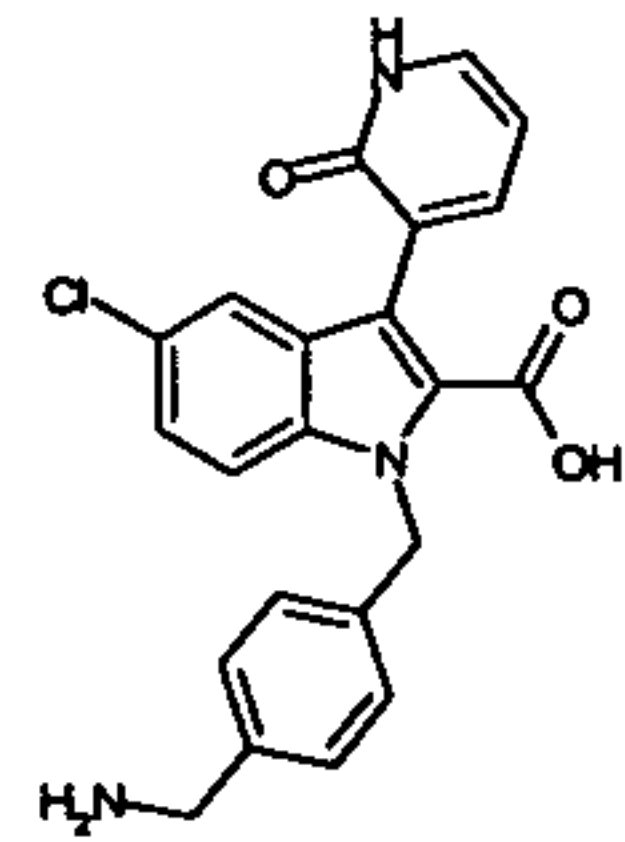
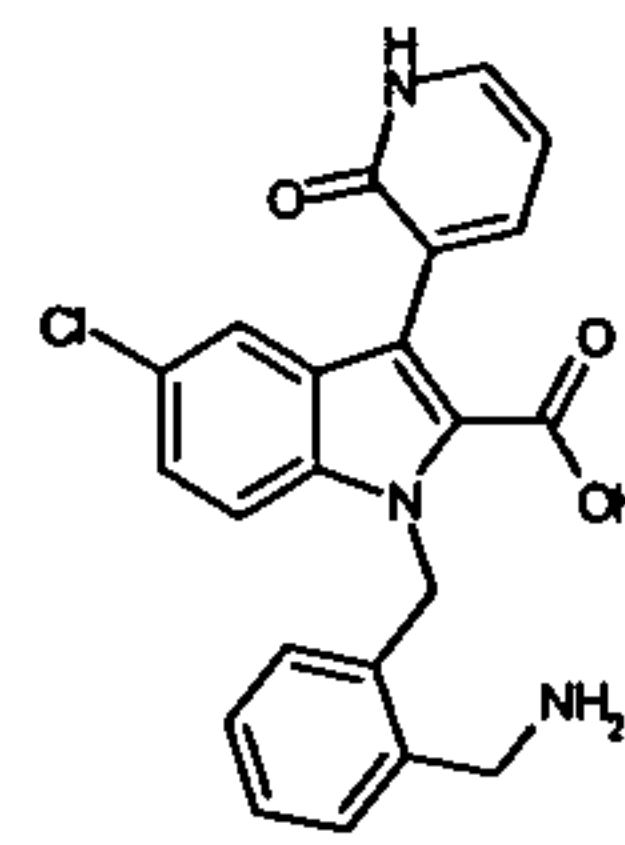
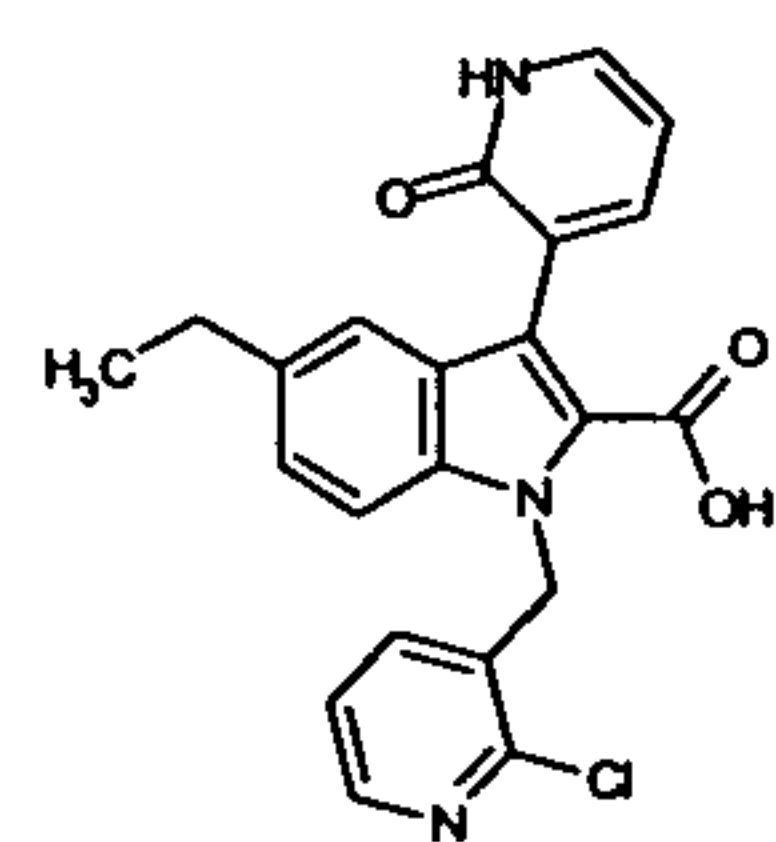
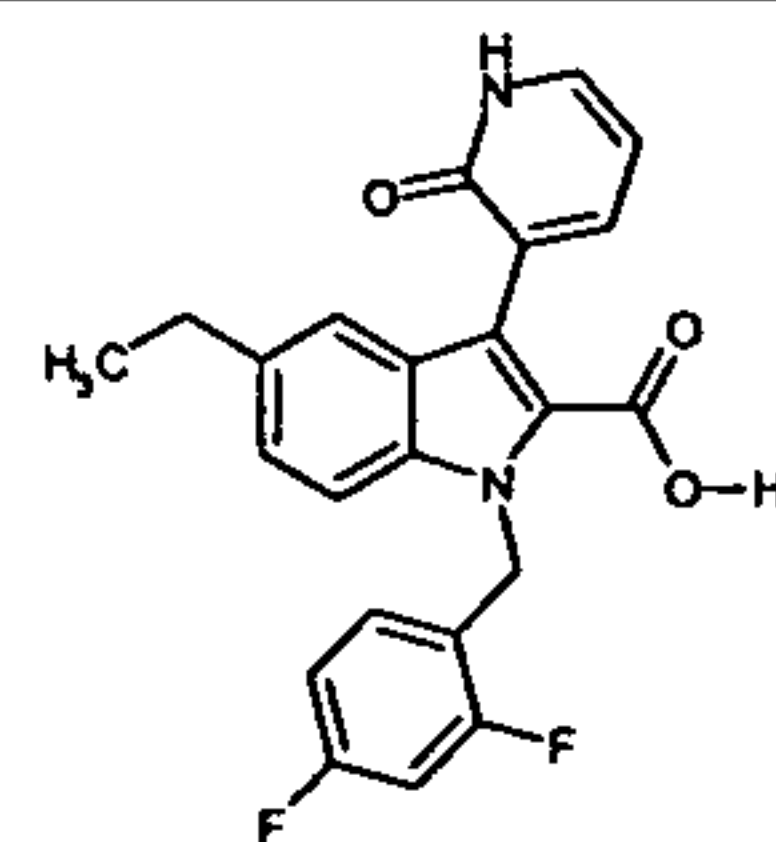
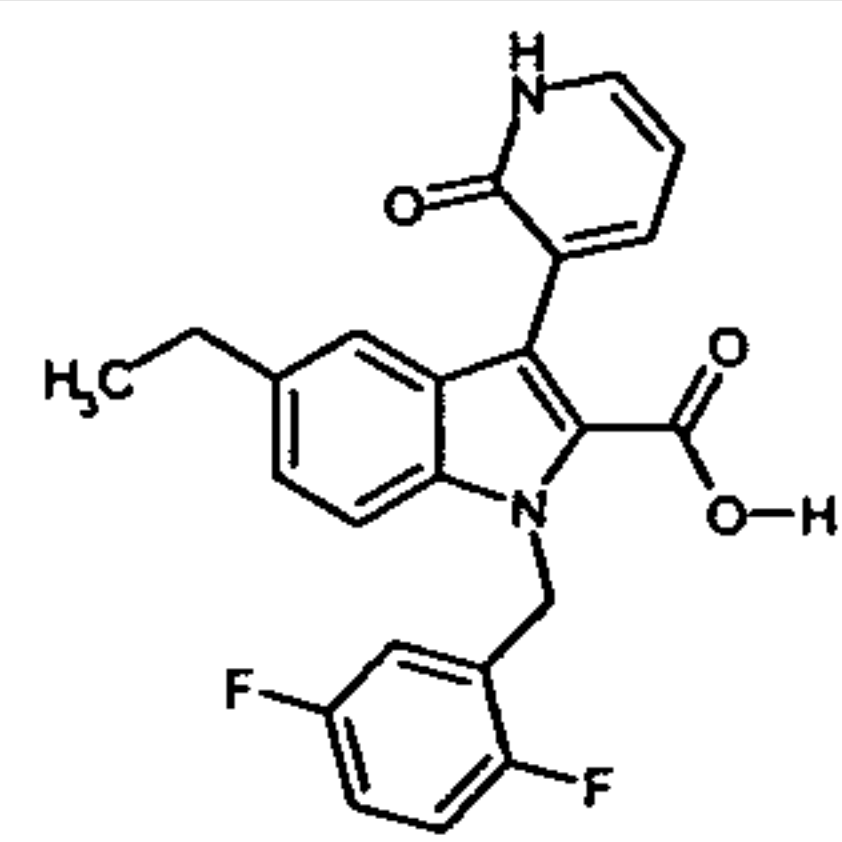
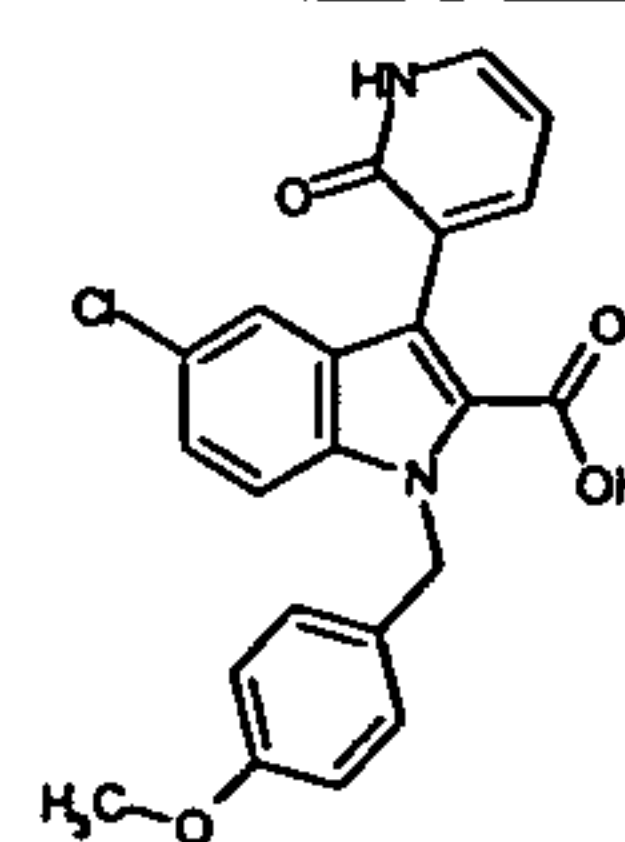
97

20		395.8
21		396.8
22		396.8
23		397.8
24		398.8
25		399.3
26		401.4

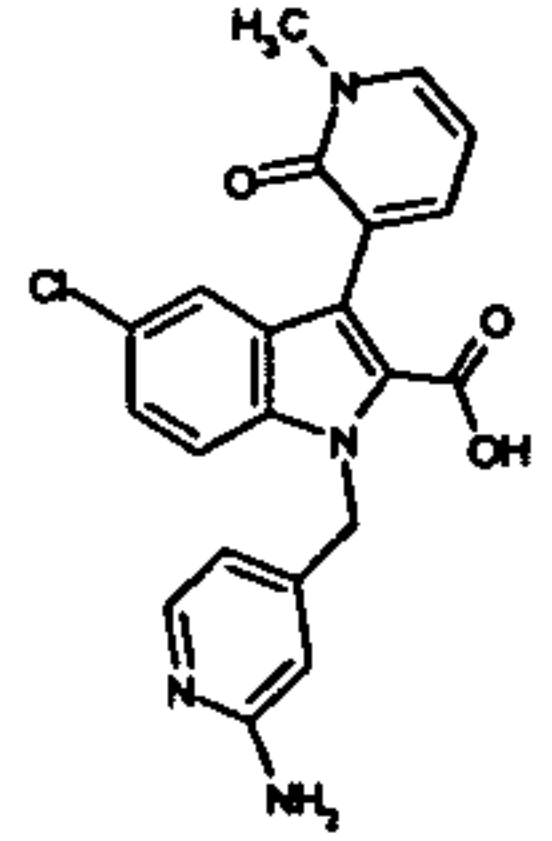
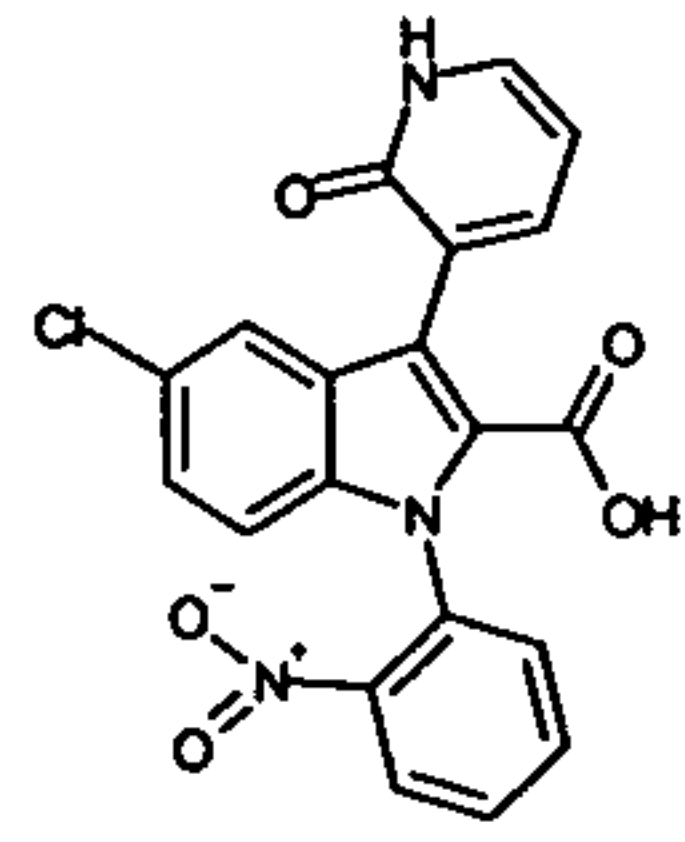
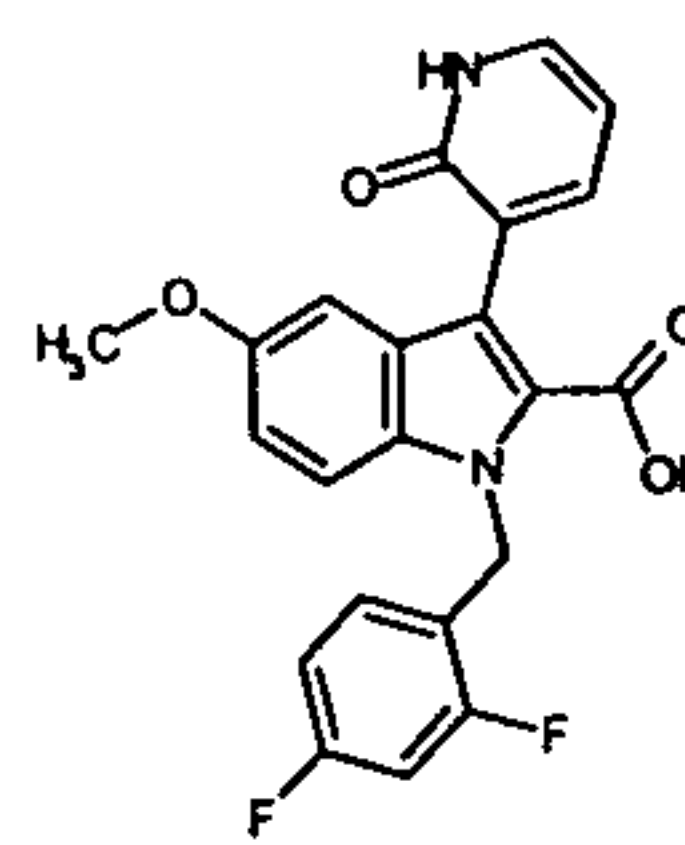
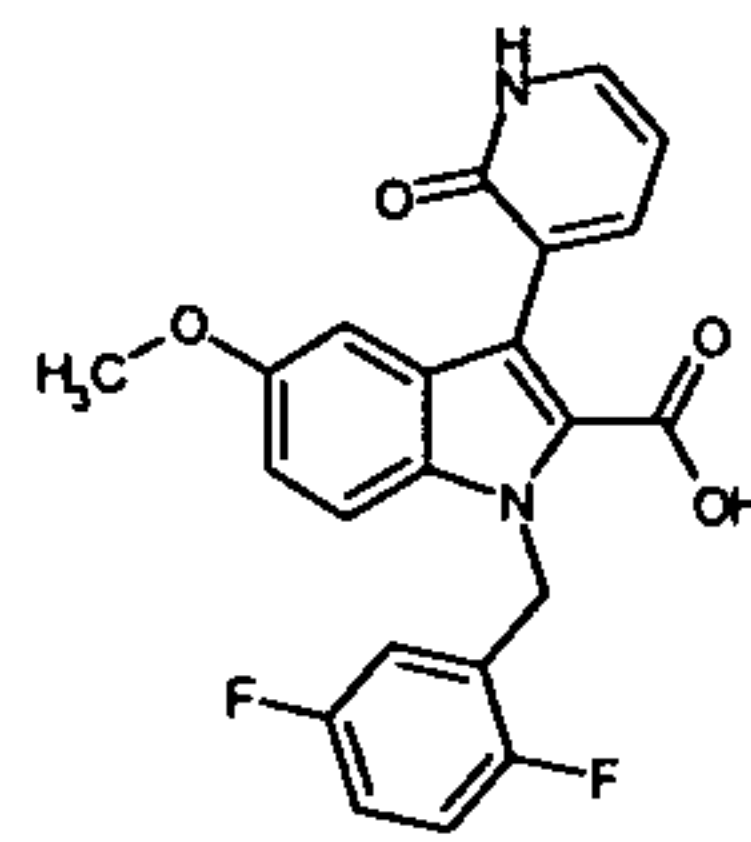
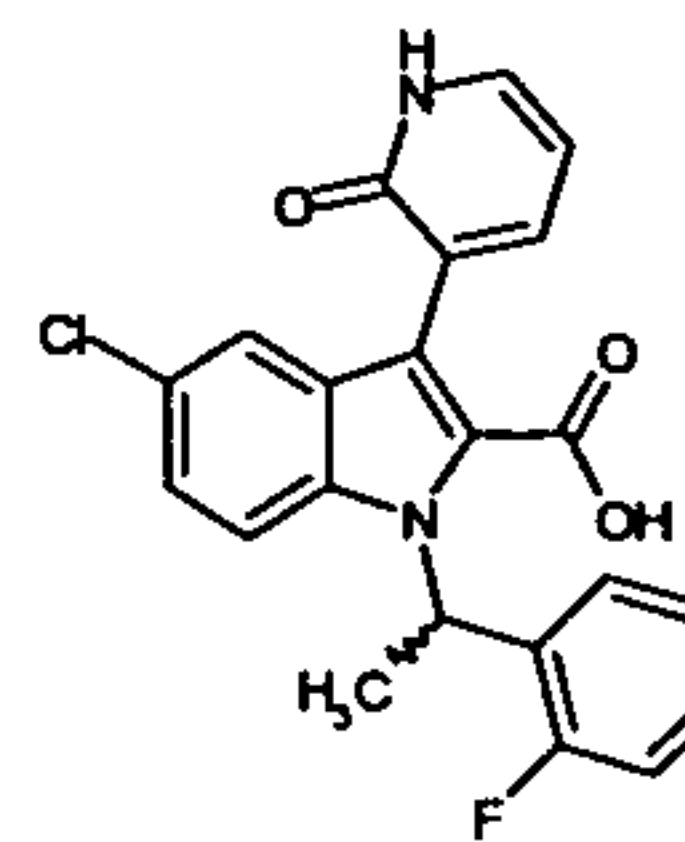
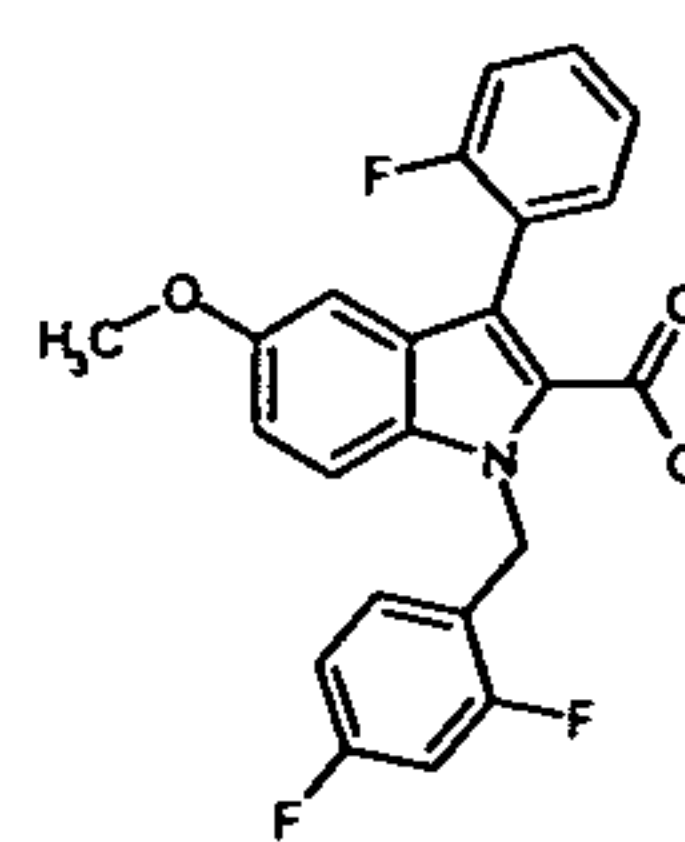
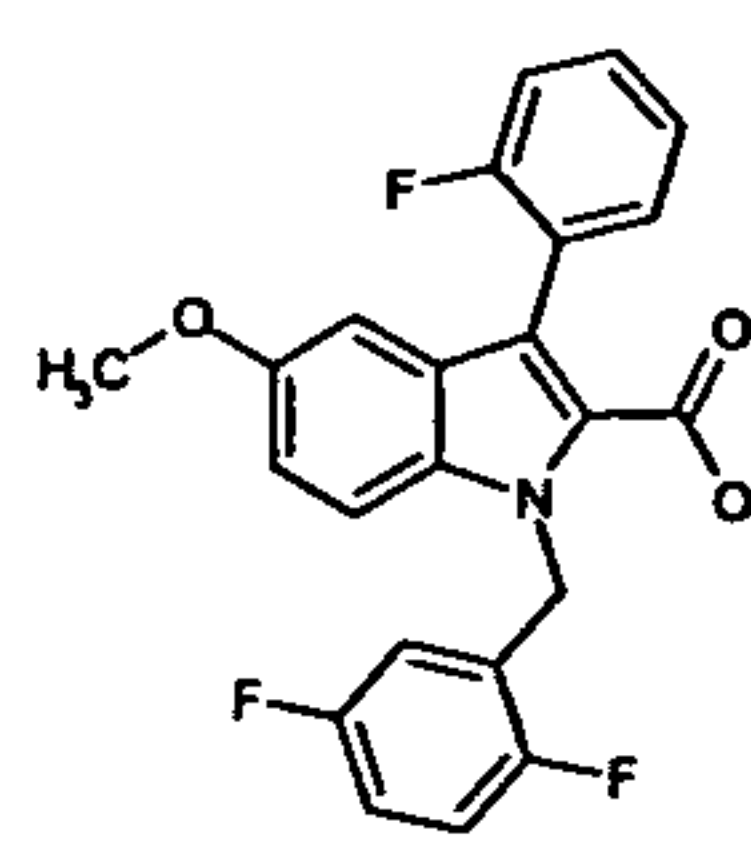
98

27		401.5
28		401.8
29		403.4
30		403.5
31		404.4
32		405.4
33		405.4

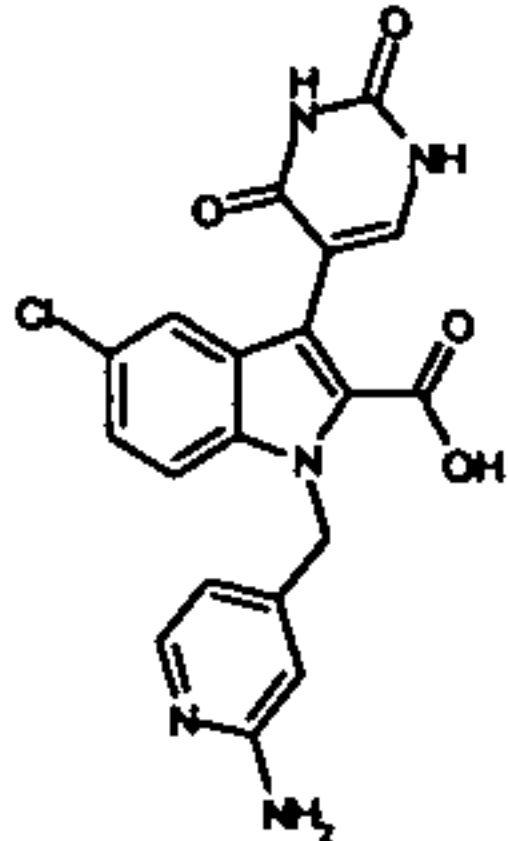
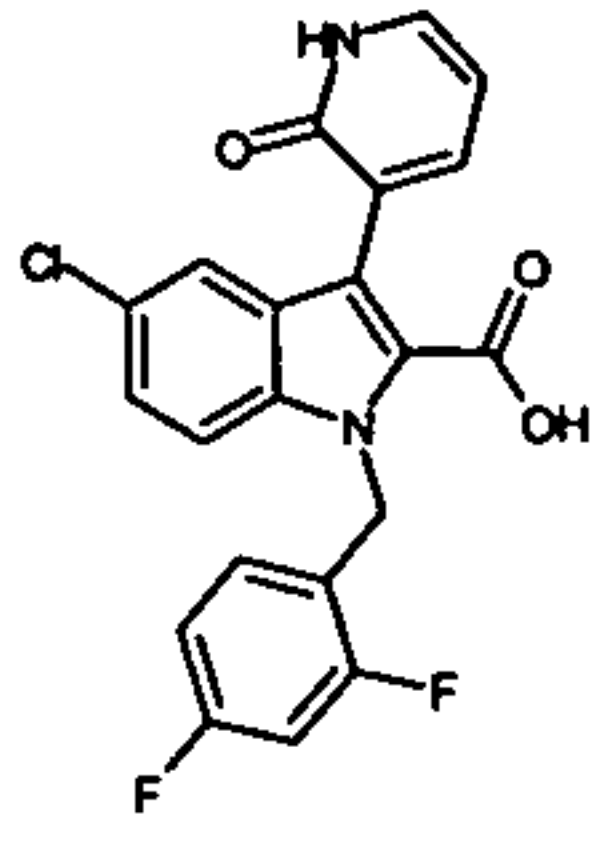
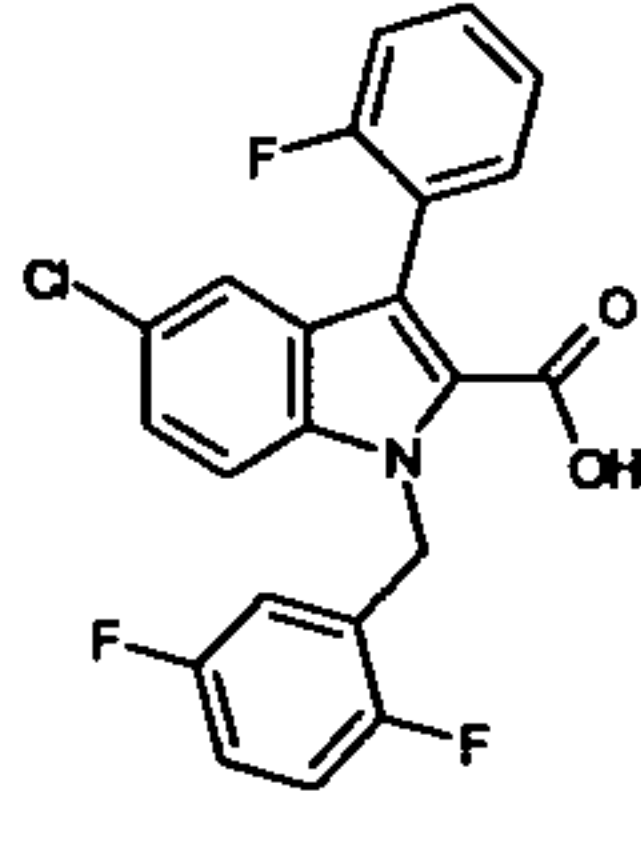
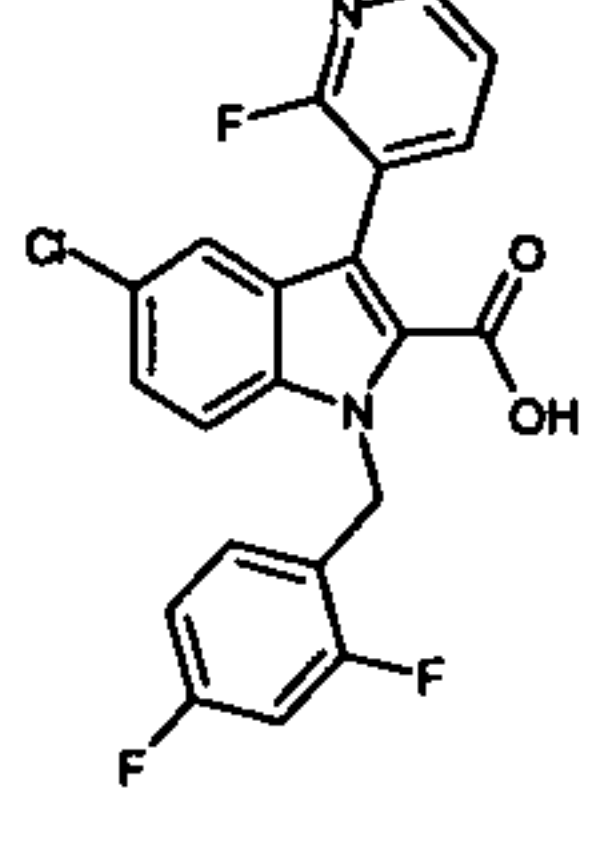
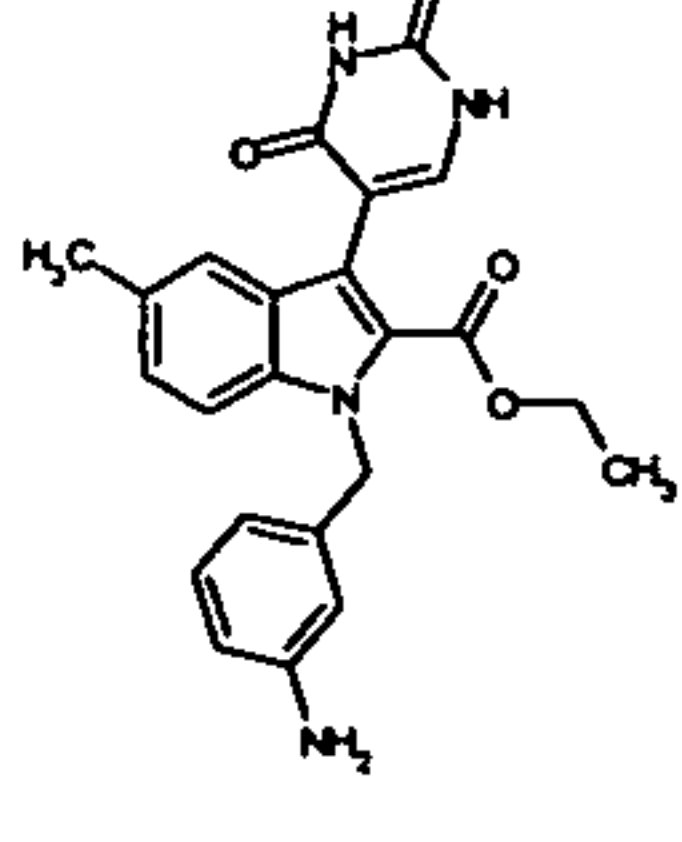
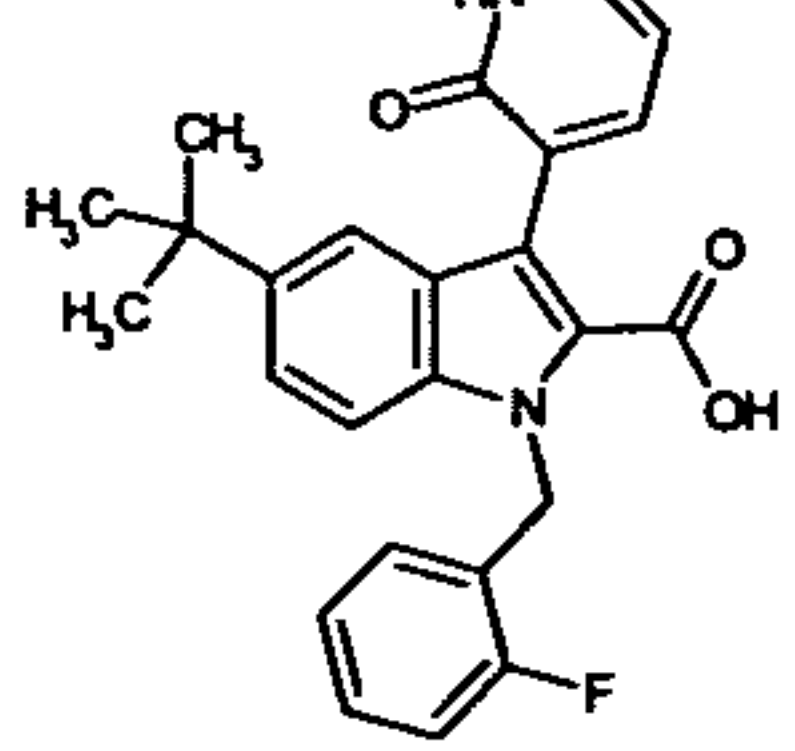
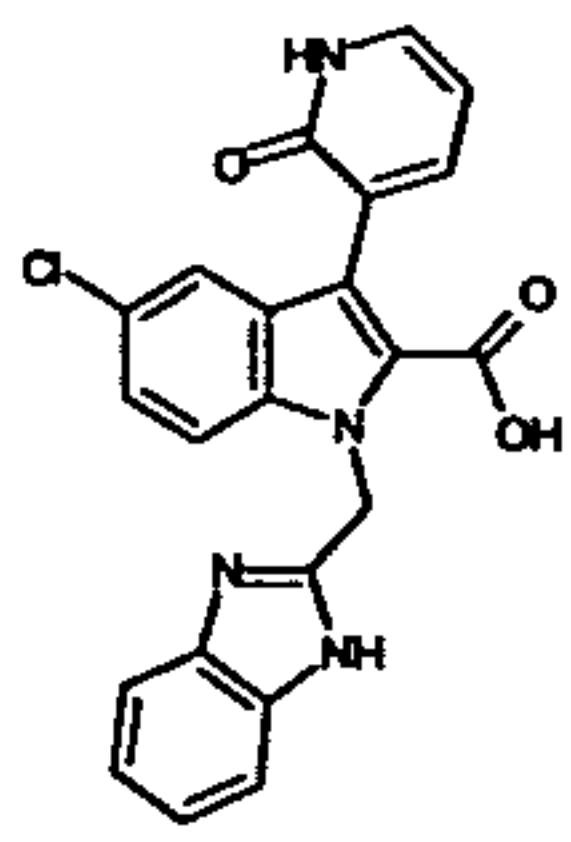
99

34		407.4
35		408.9
36		408.9
37		408.9
38		409.4
39		409.4
40		409.8

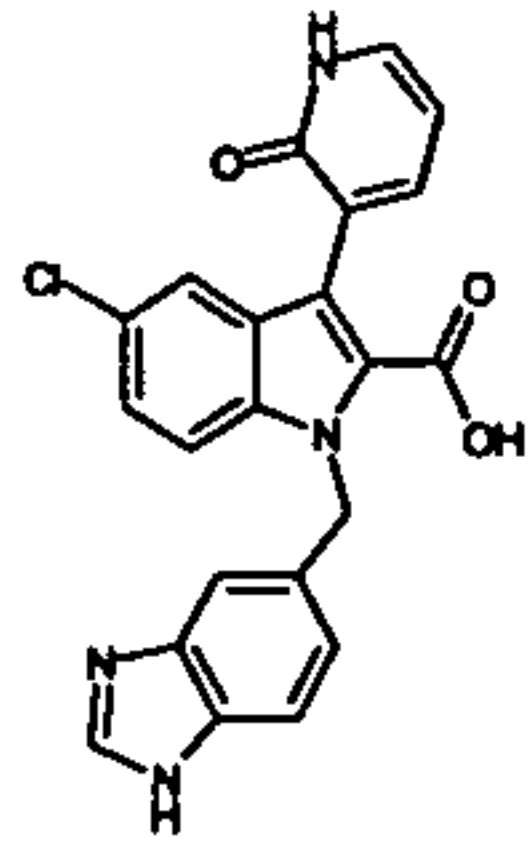
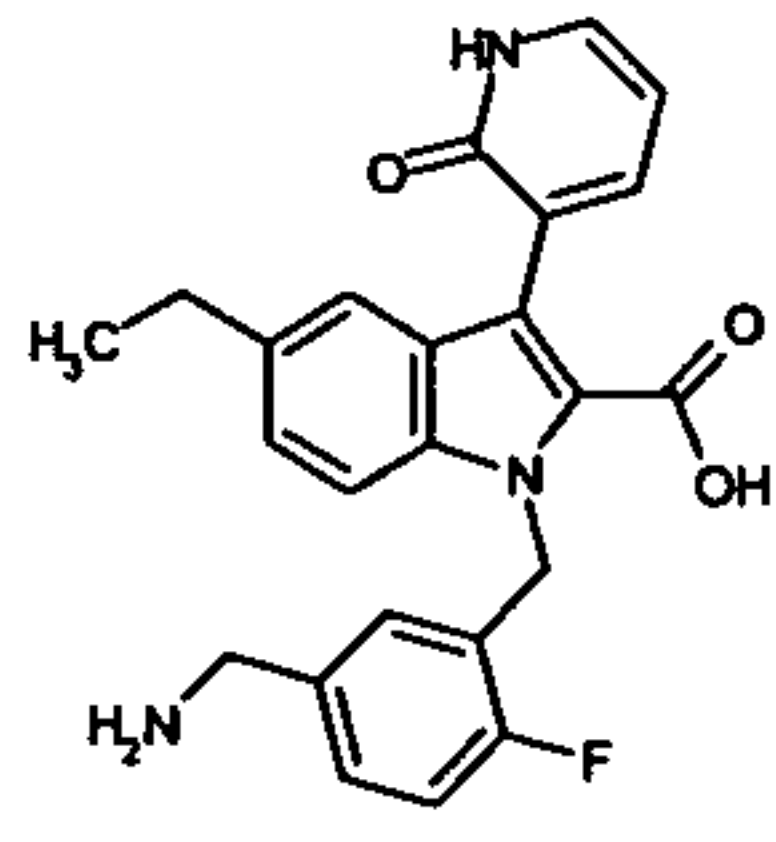
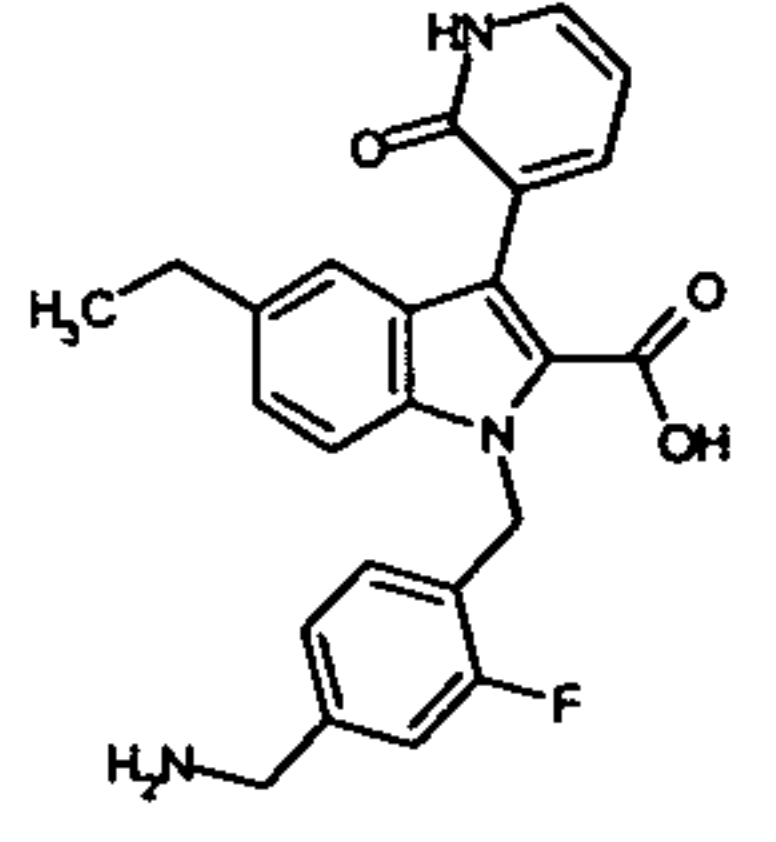
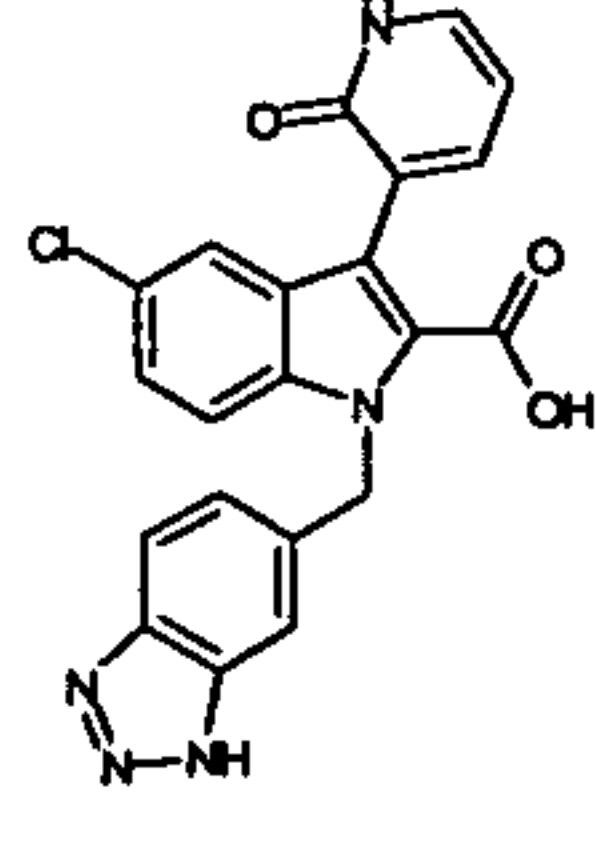
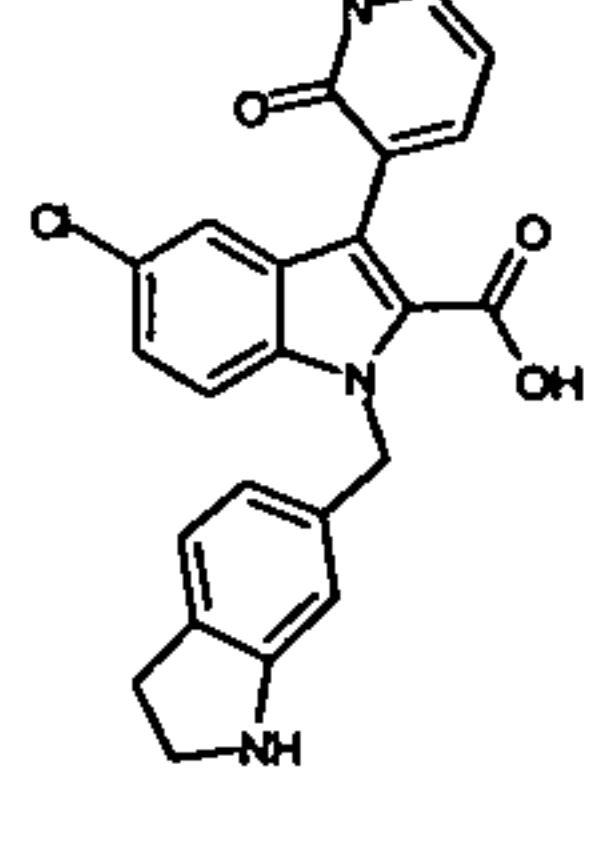
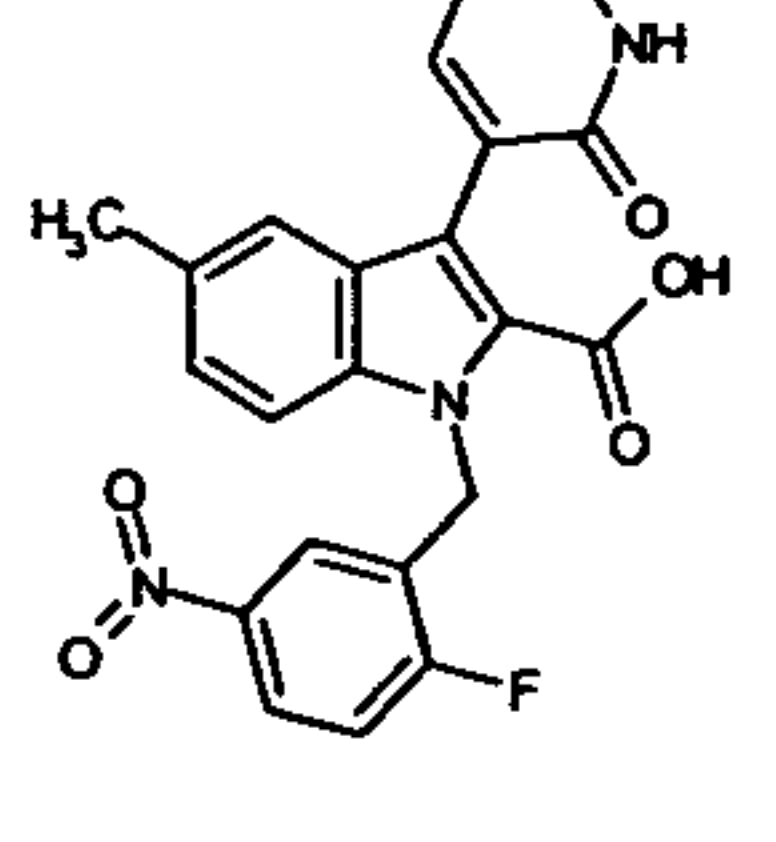
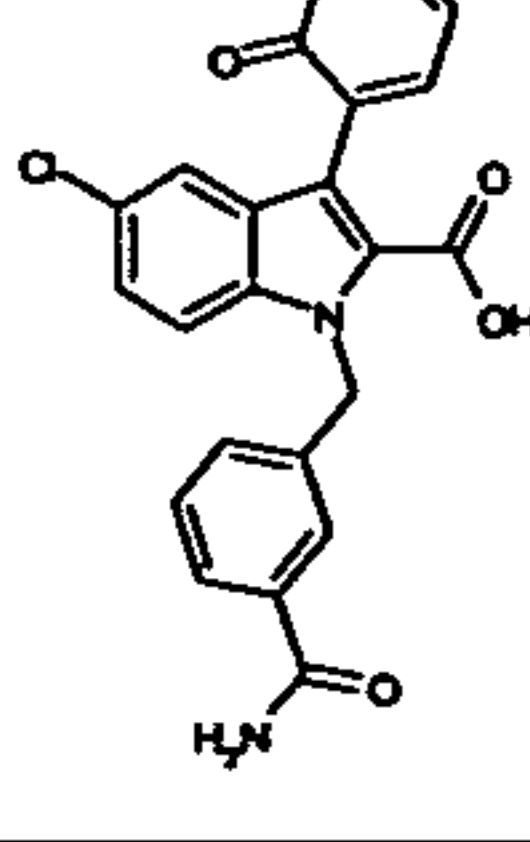
100

41		409.8
42		410.8
43		411.4
44		411.4
45		411.8
46		412.4
47		412.4

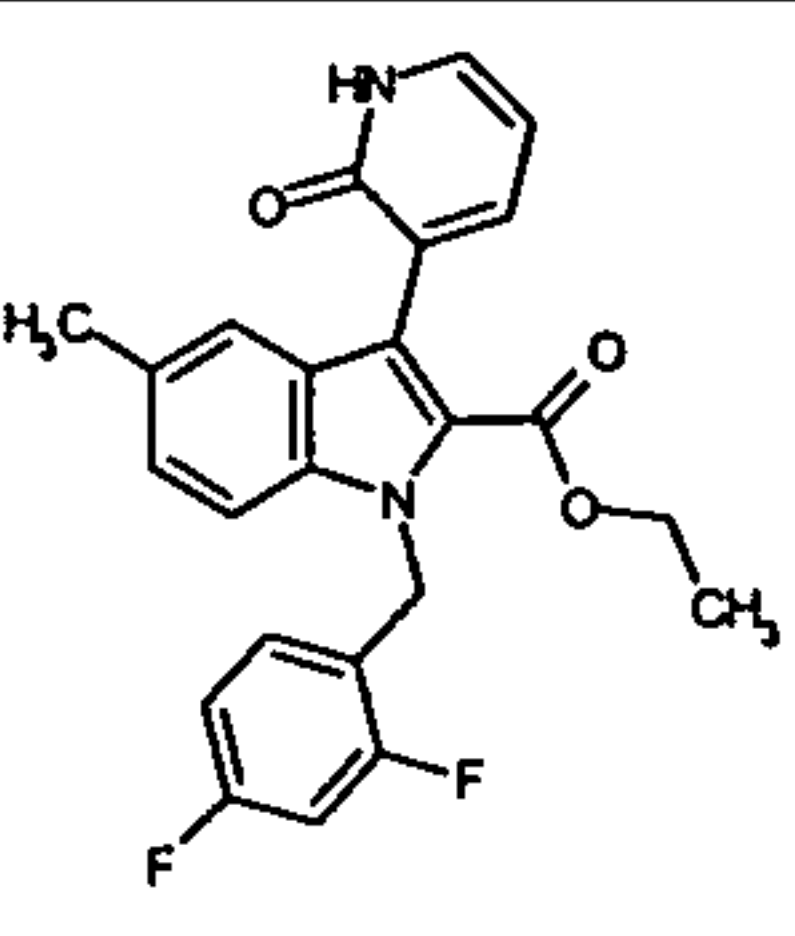
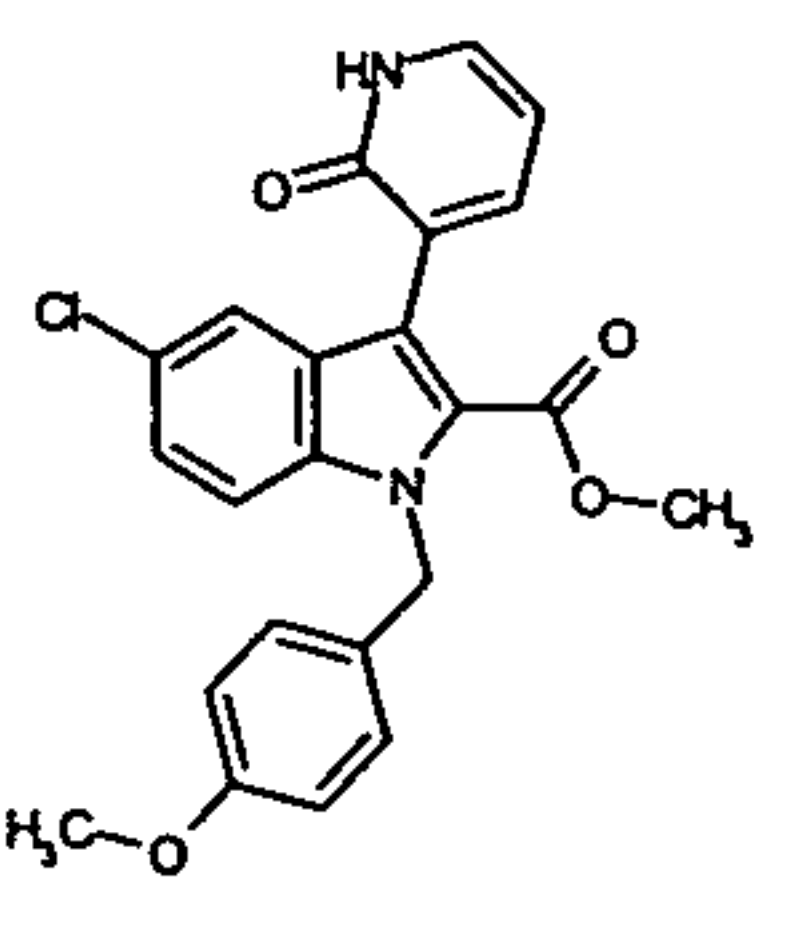
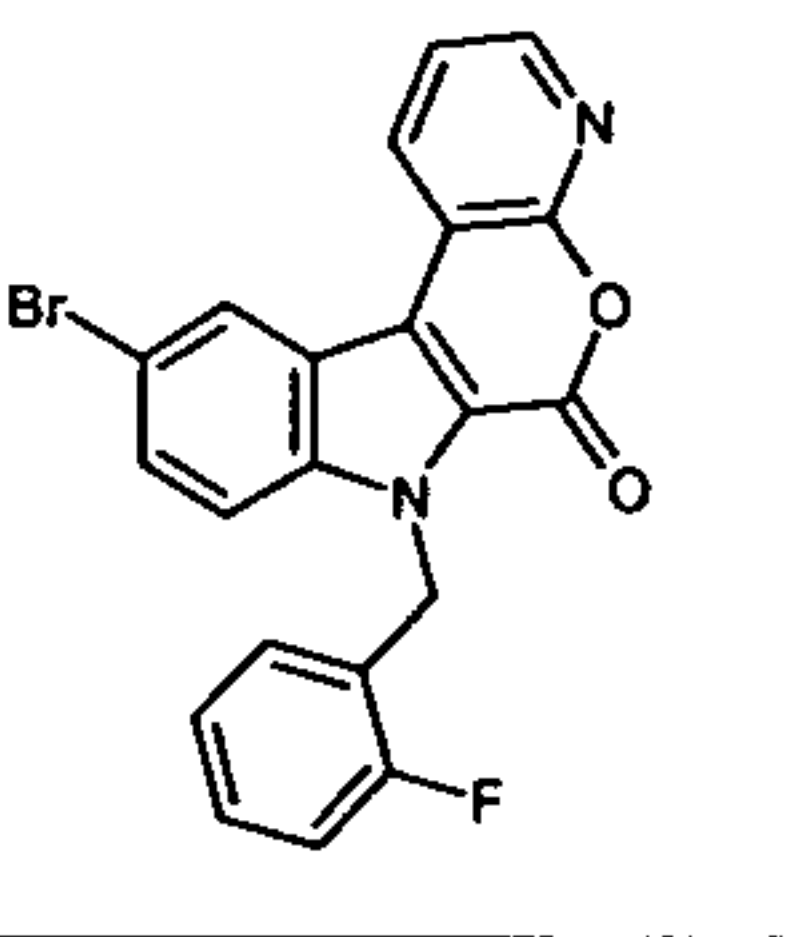
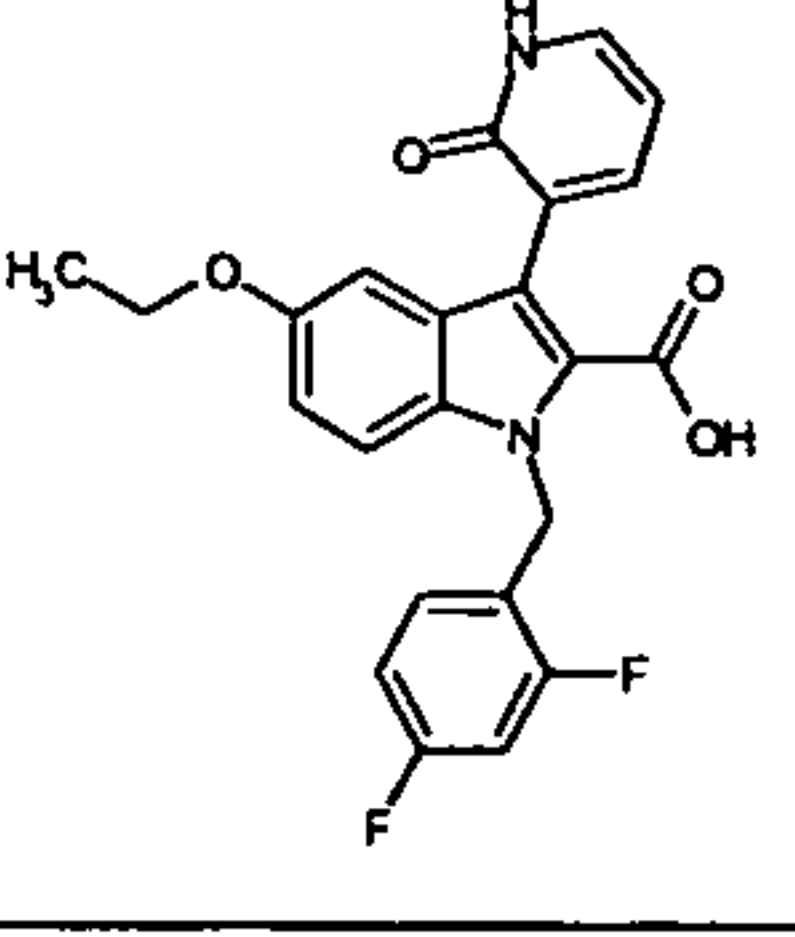
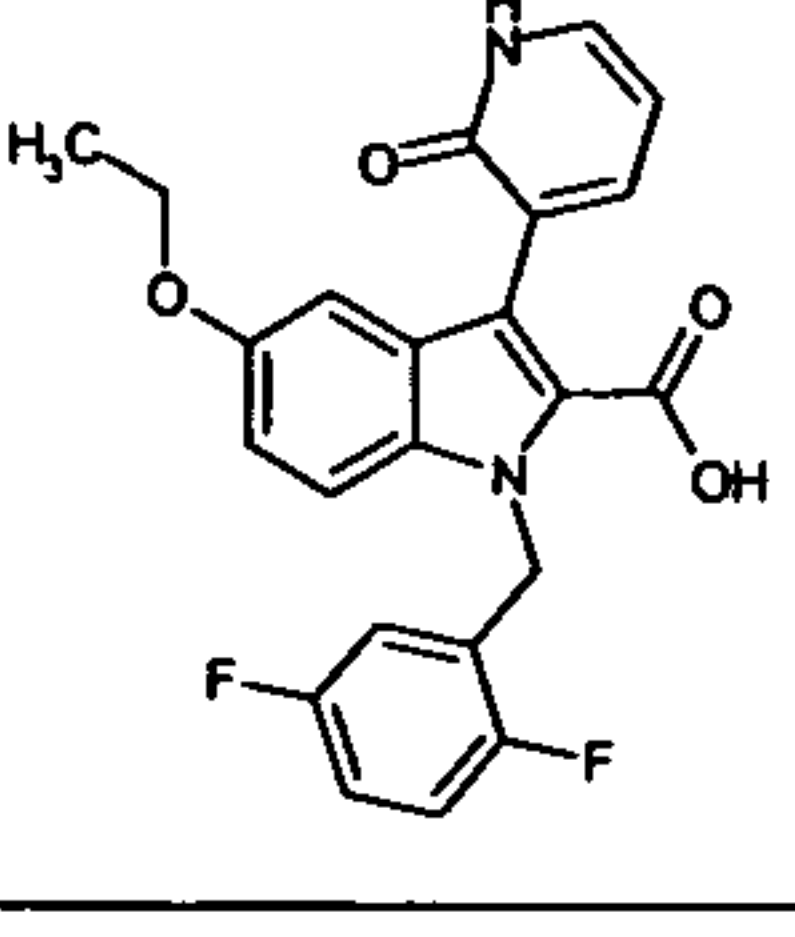
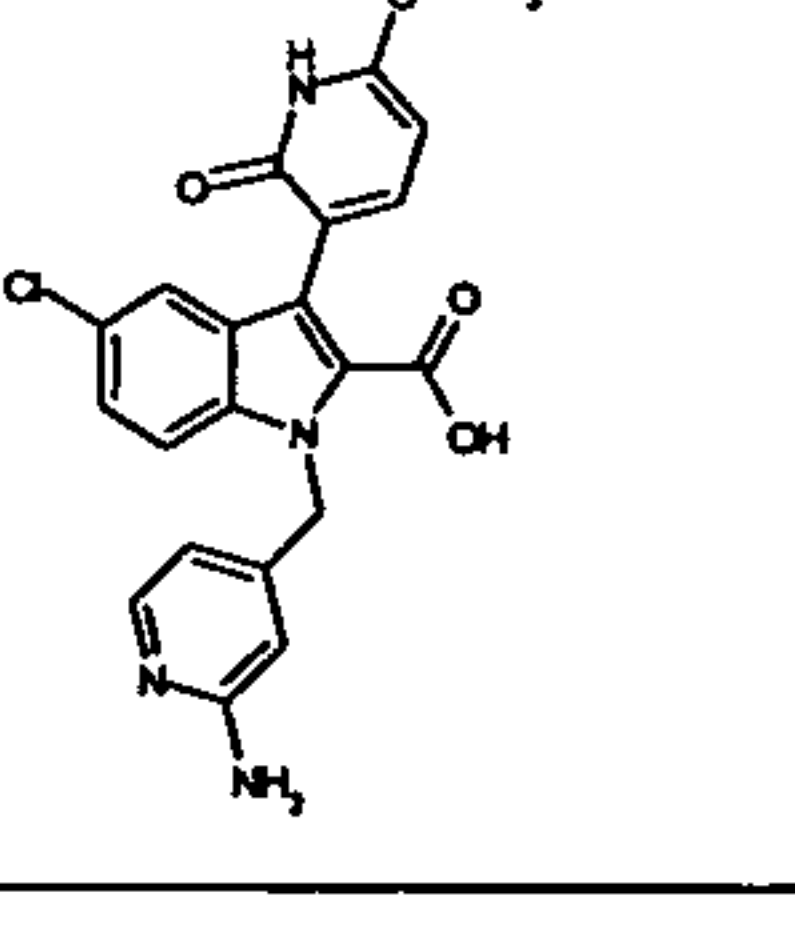
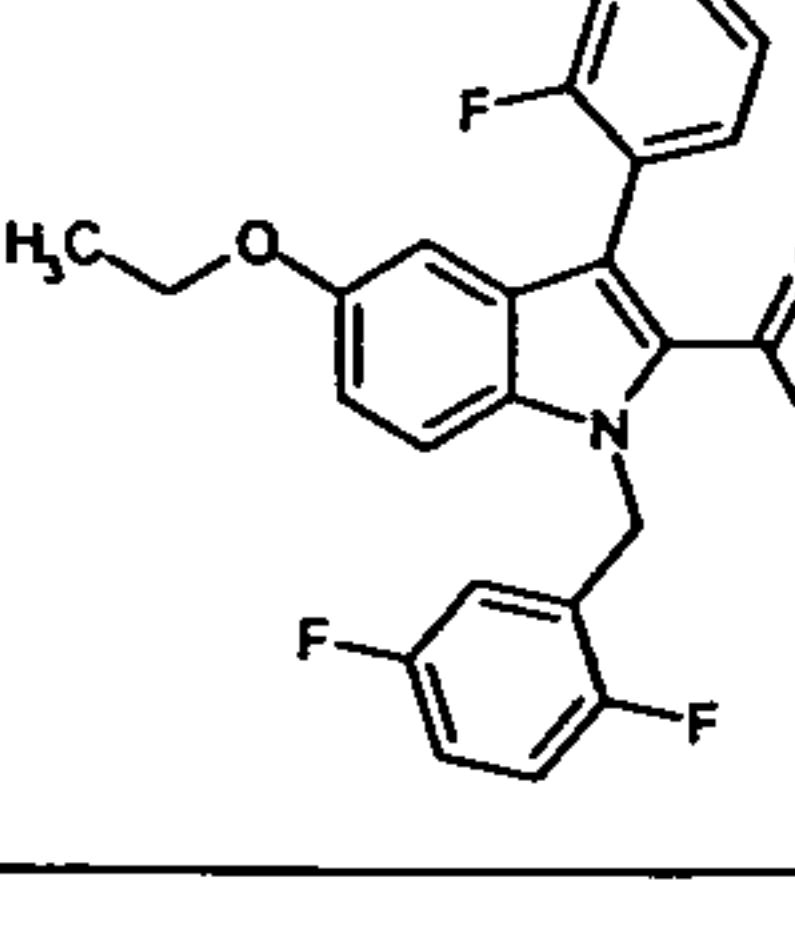
101

48		412.8
49		415.8
50		416.8
51		417.8
52		419.5
53		419.5
54		419.8

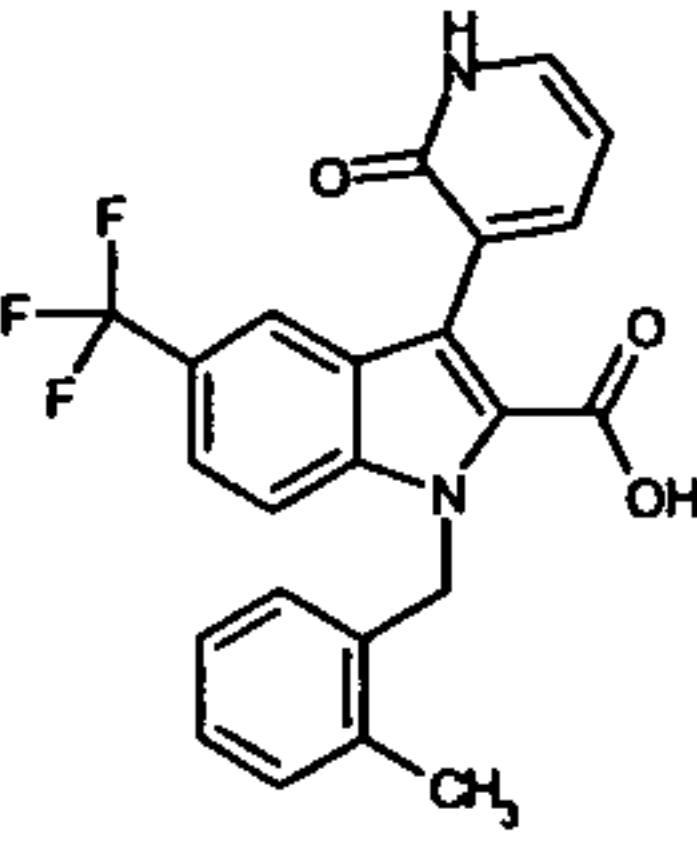
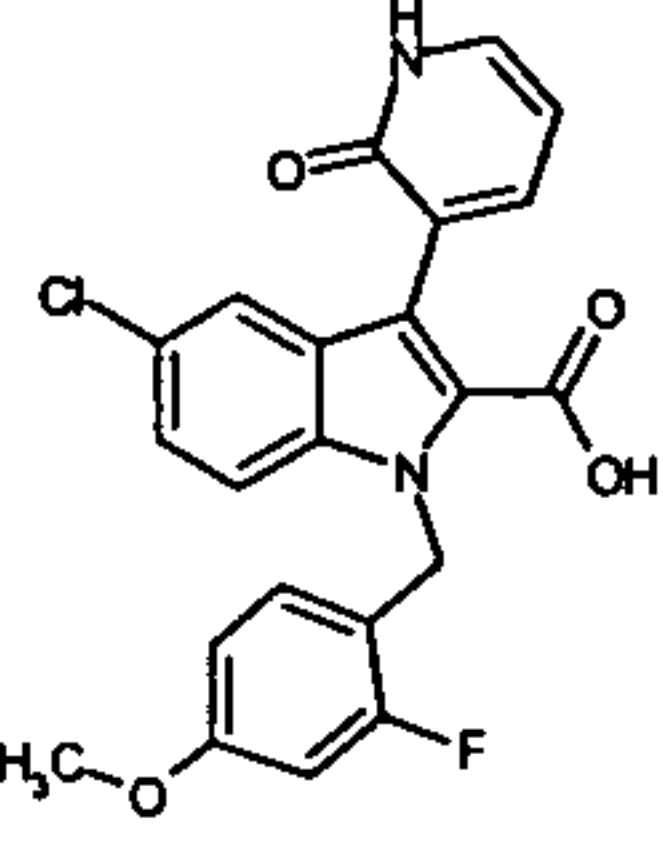
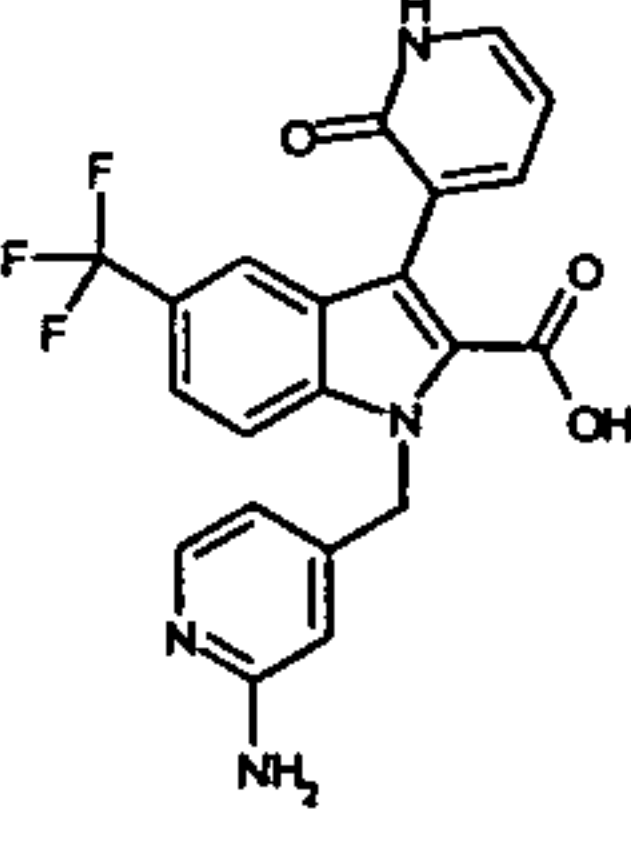
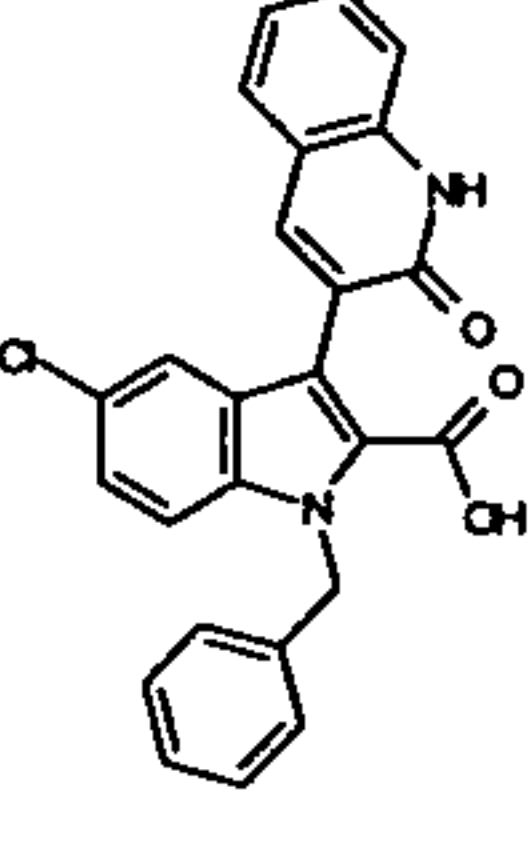
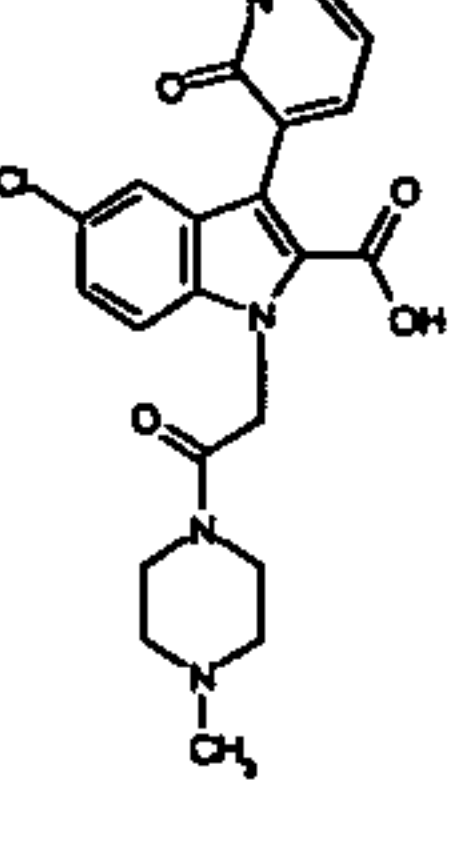
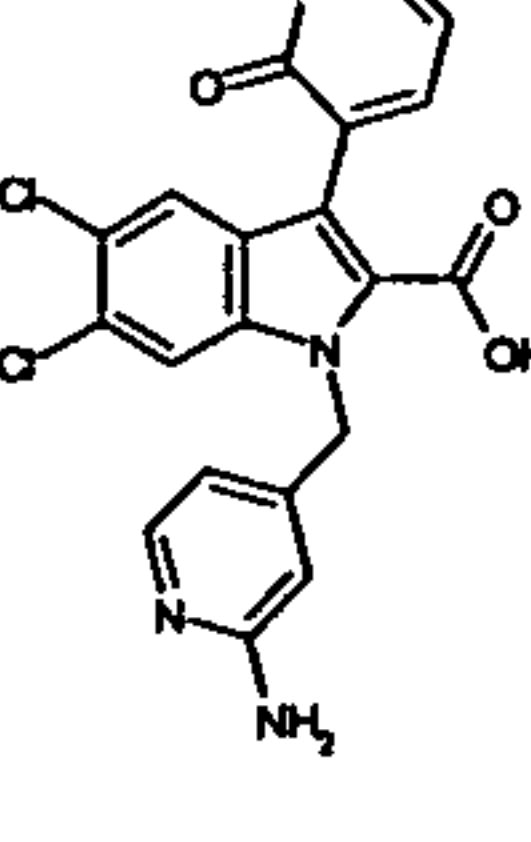
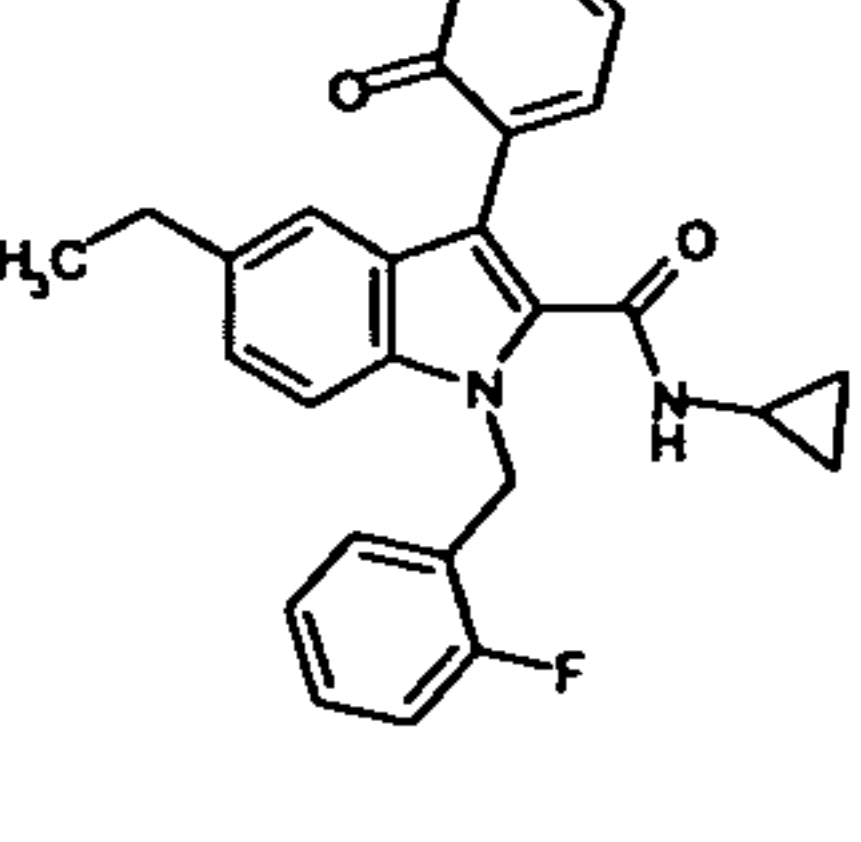
102

55		419.8
56		420.5
57		420.5
58		420.8
59		420.9
60		422.4
61		422.8

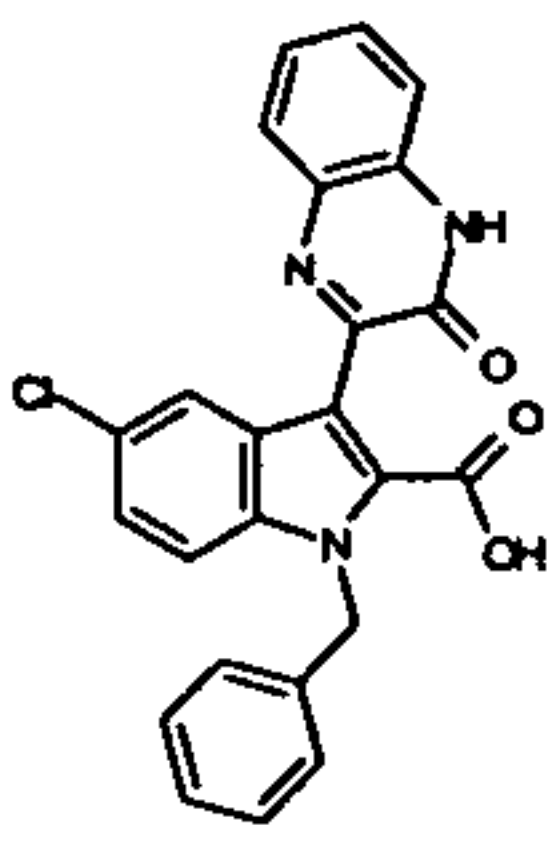
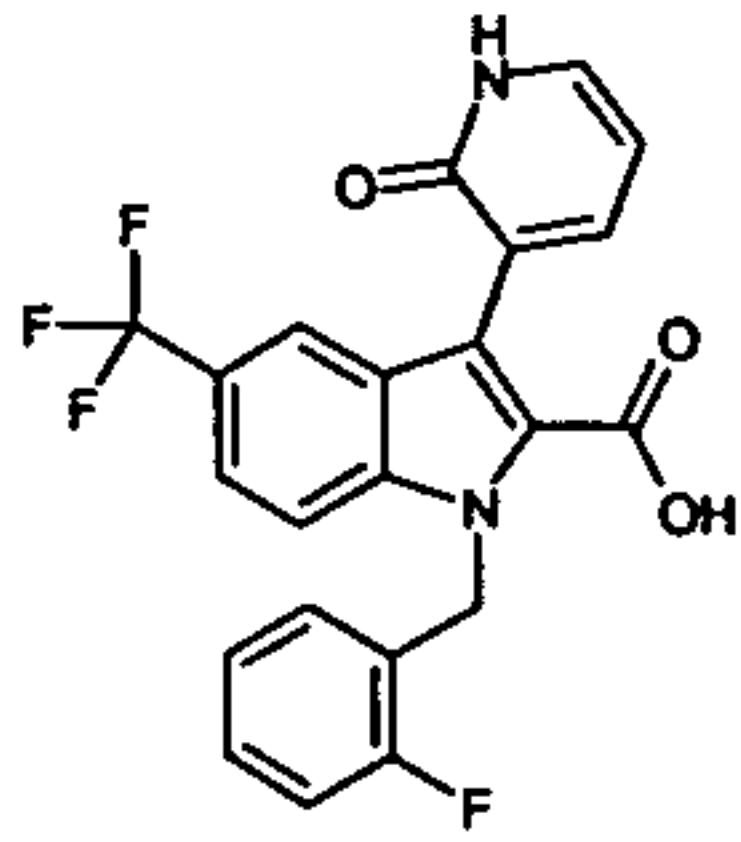
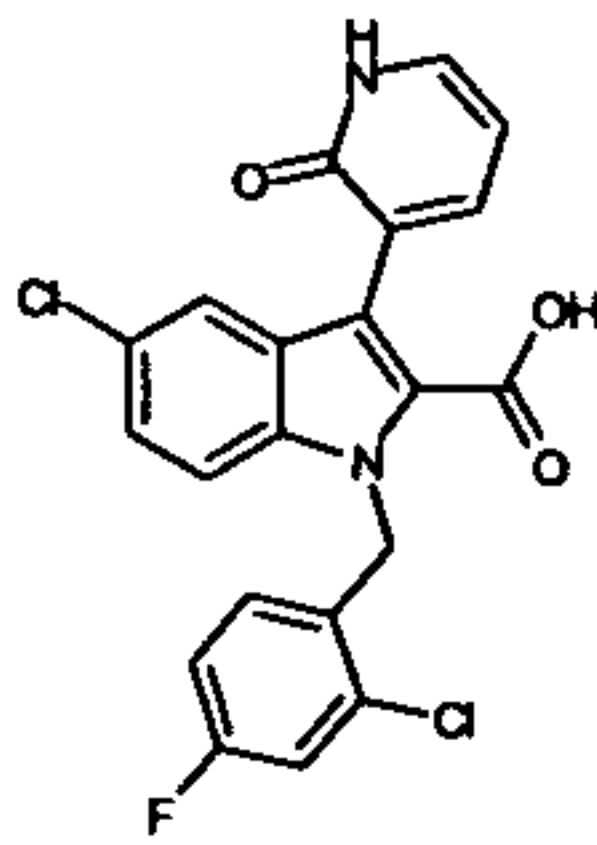
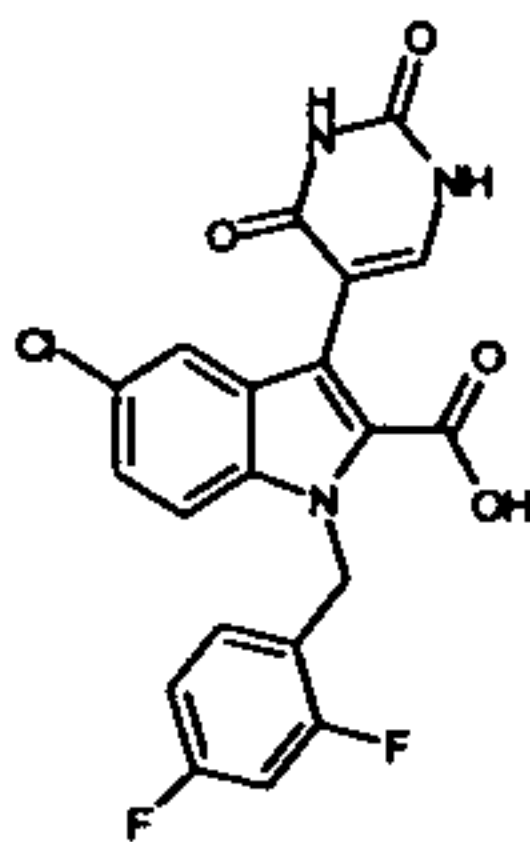
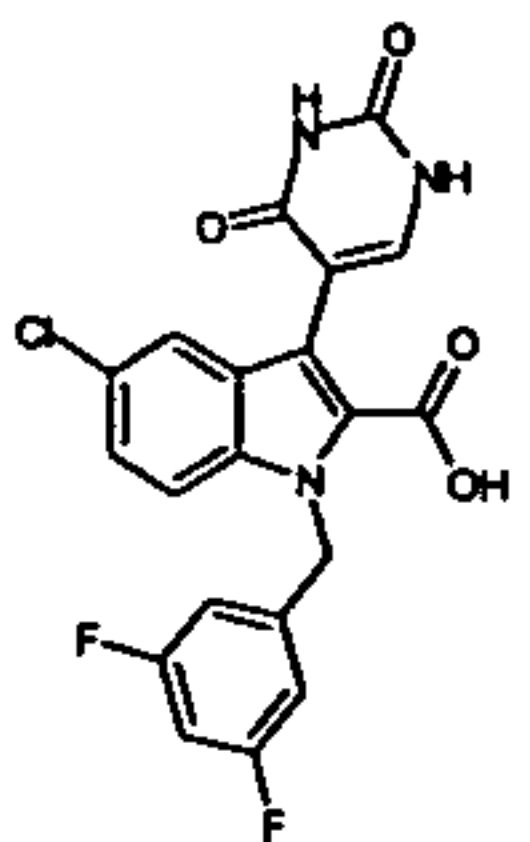
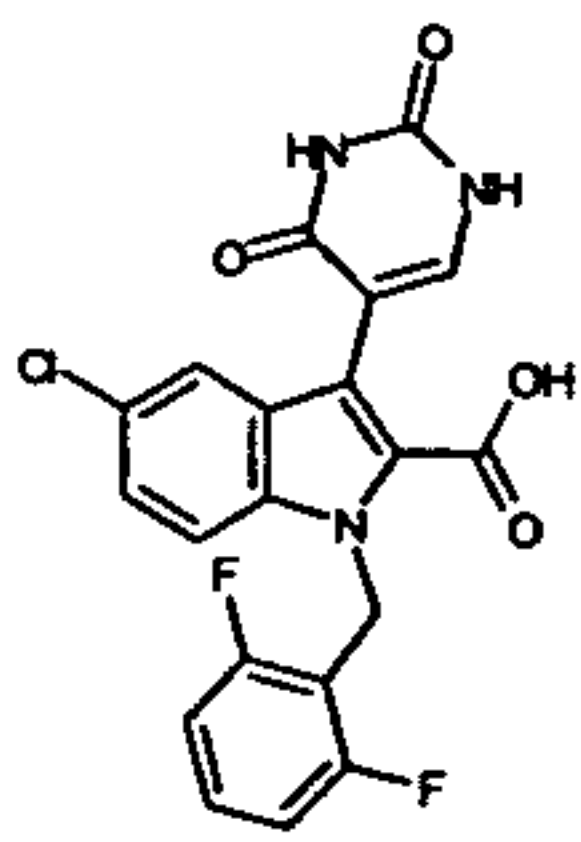
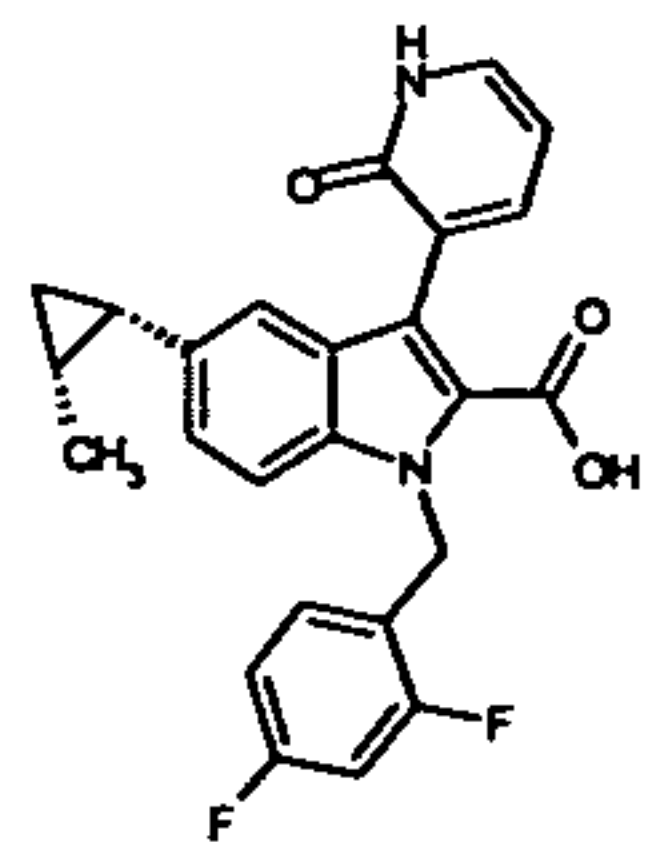
103

62		423.4
63		423.9
64		424.2
65		425.4
66		425.4
67		425.8
68		426.4

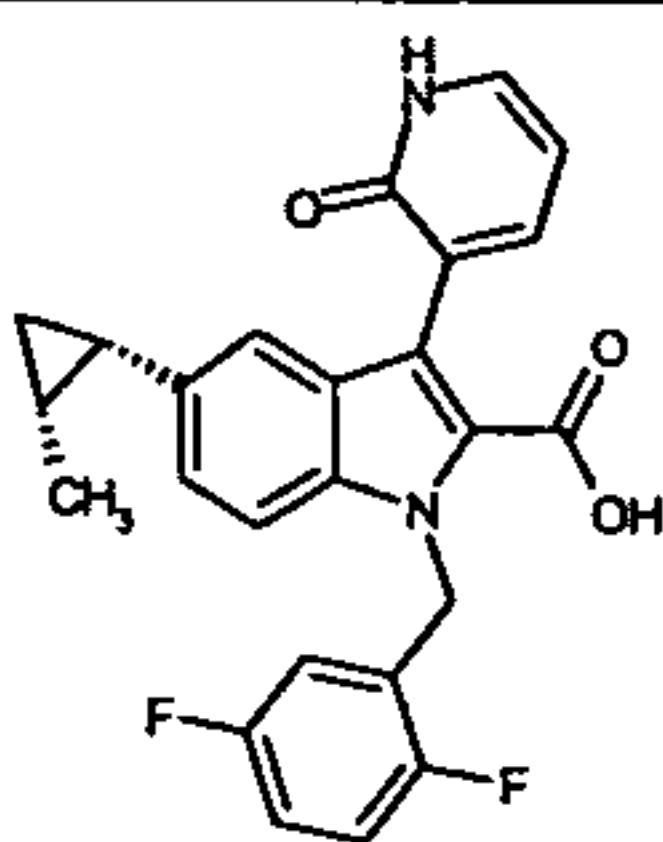
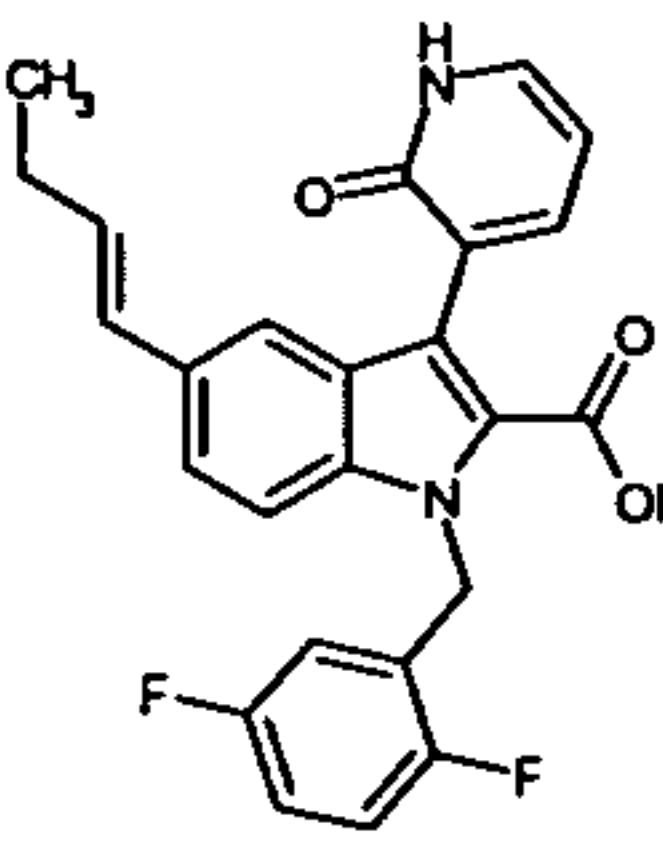
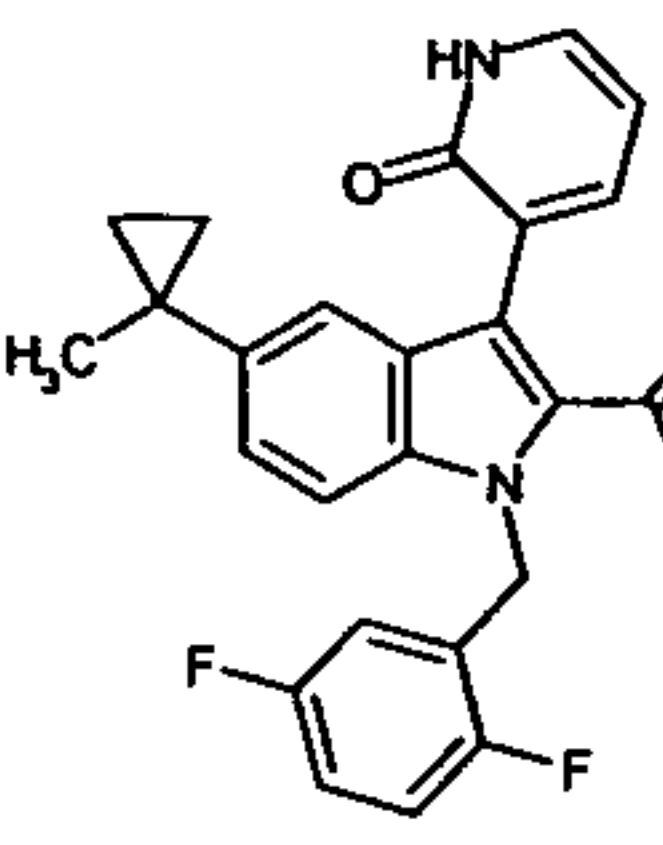
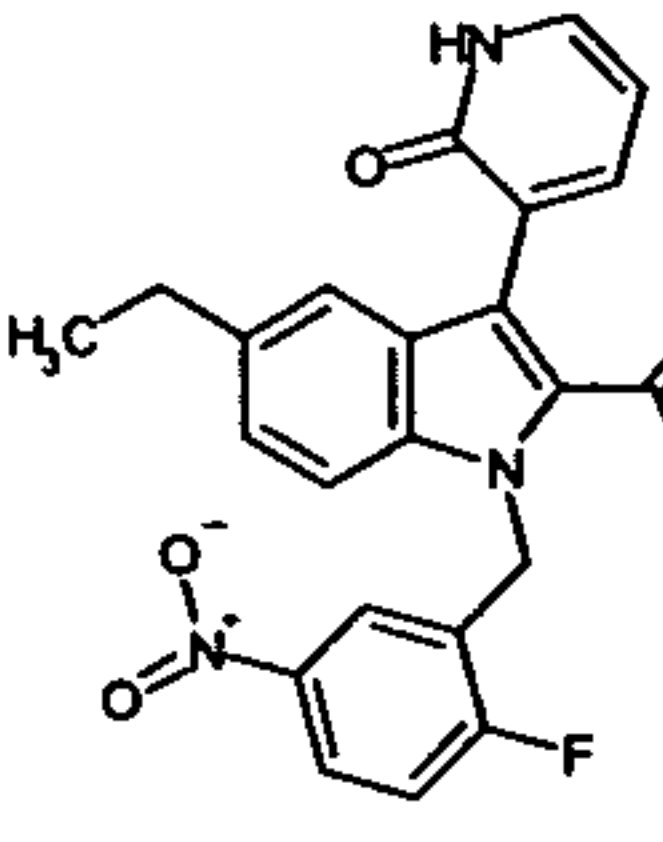
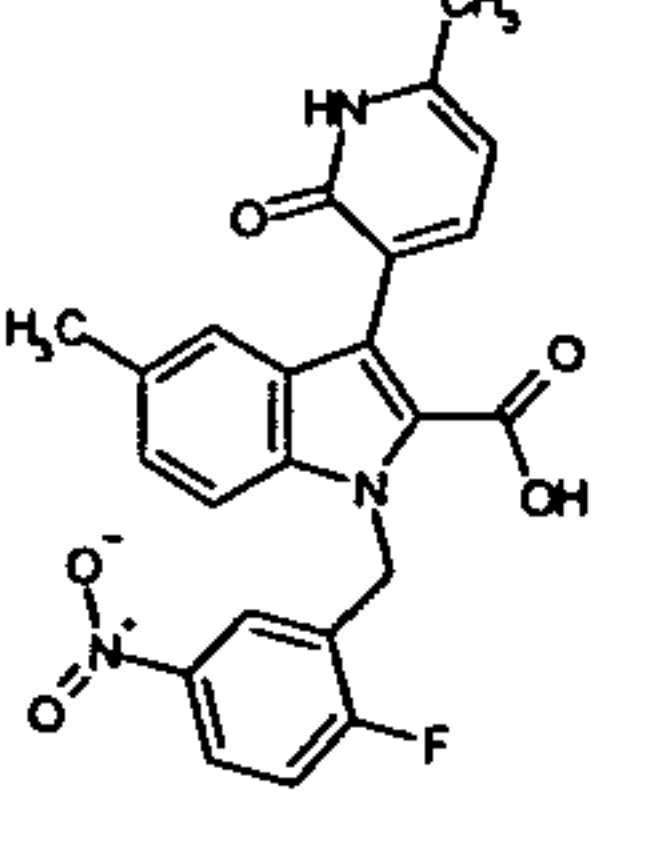
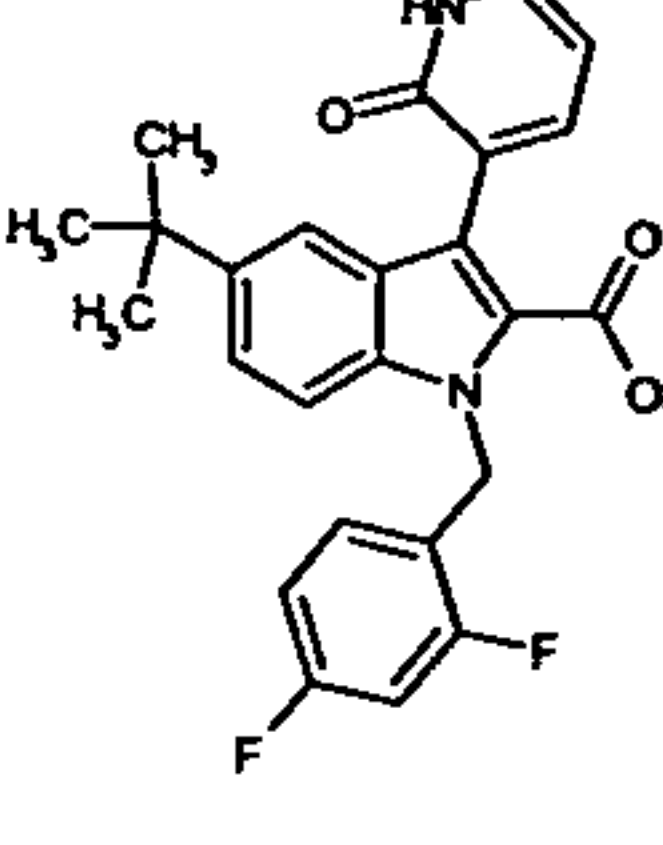
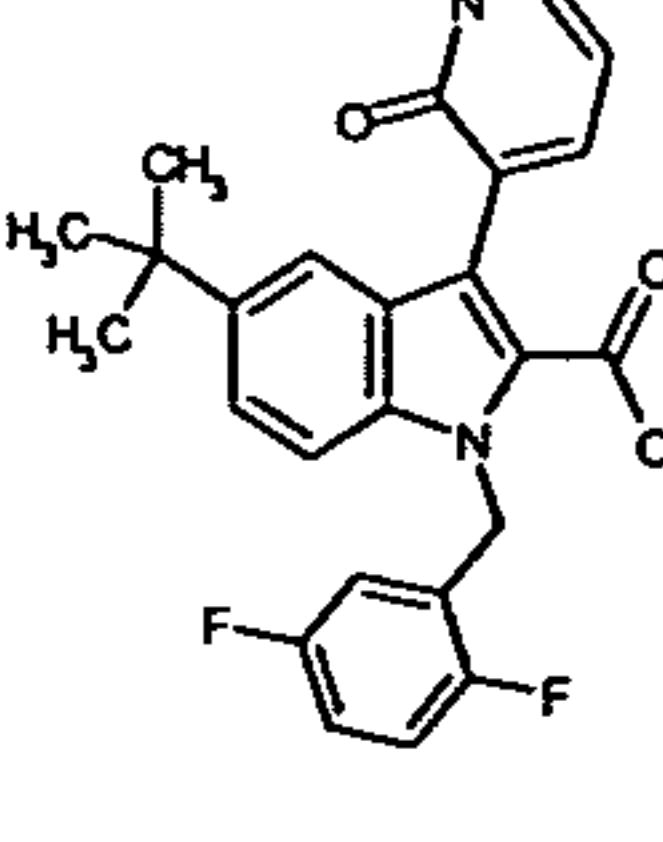
104

69		427.4
70		427.8
71		429.4
72		429.9
73		429.9
74		430.3
75		430.5

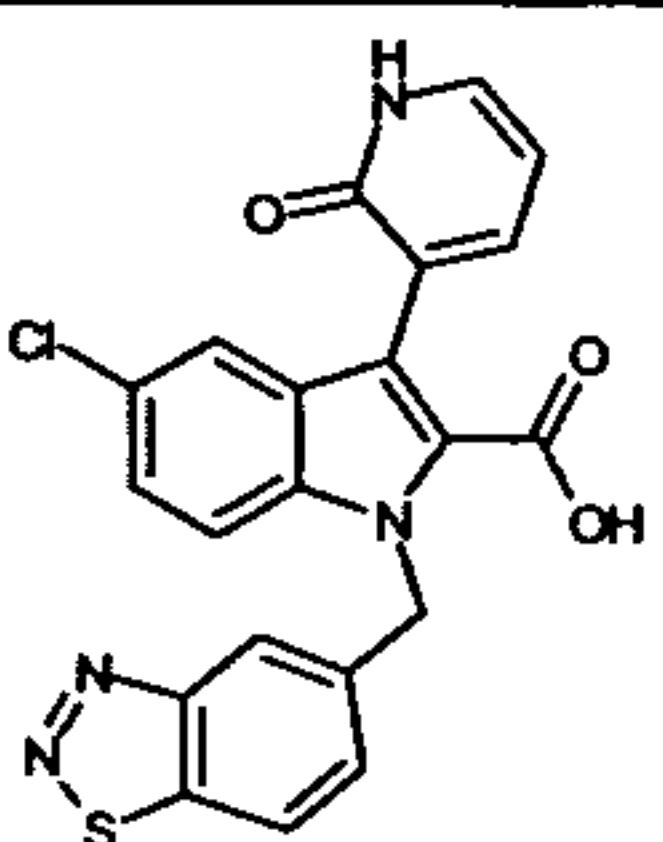
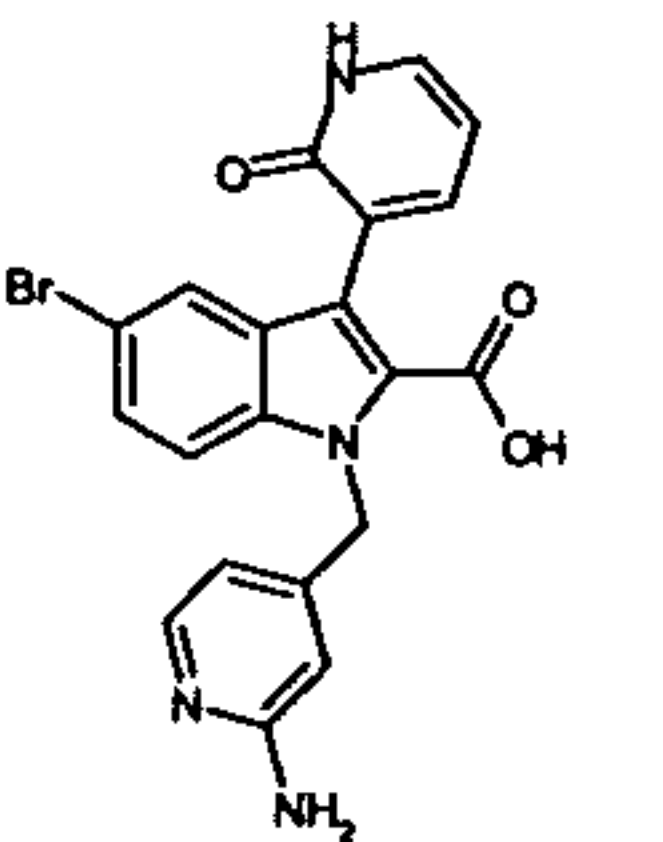
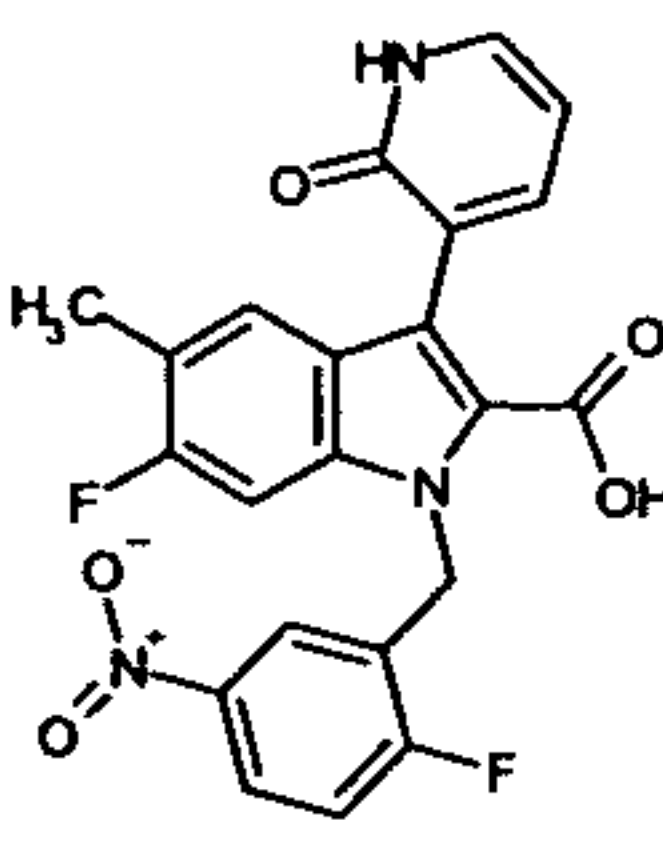
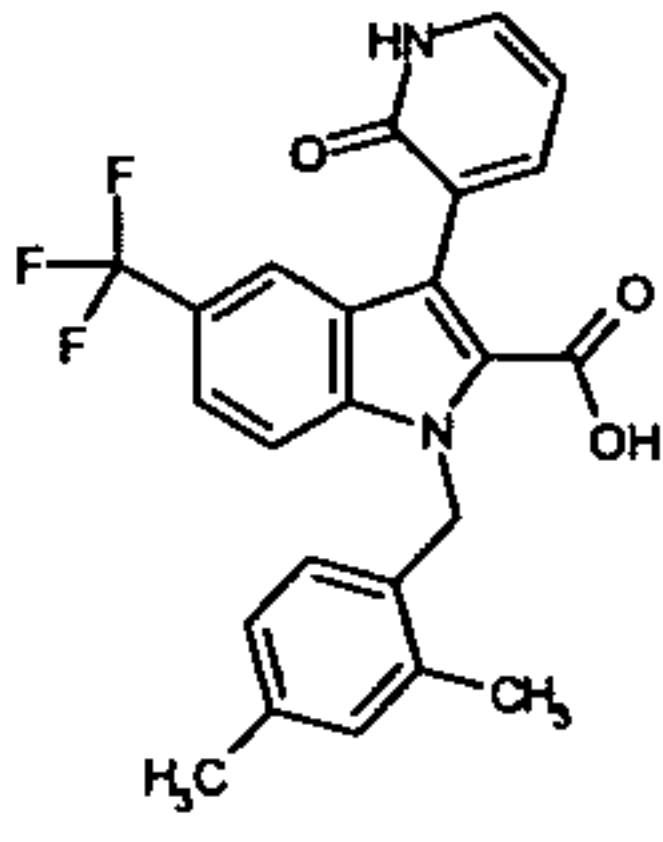
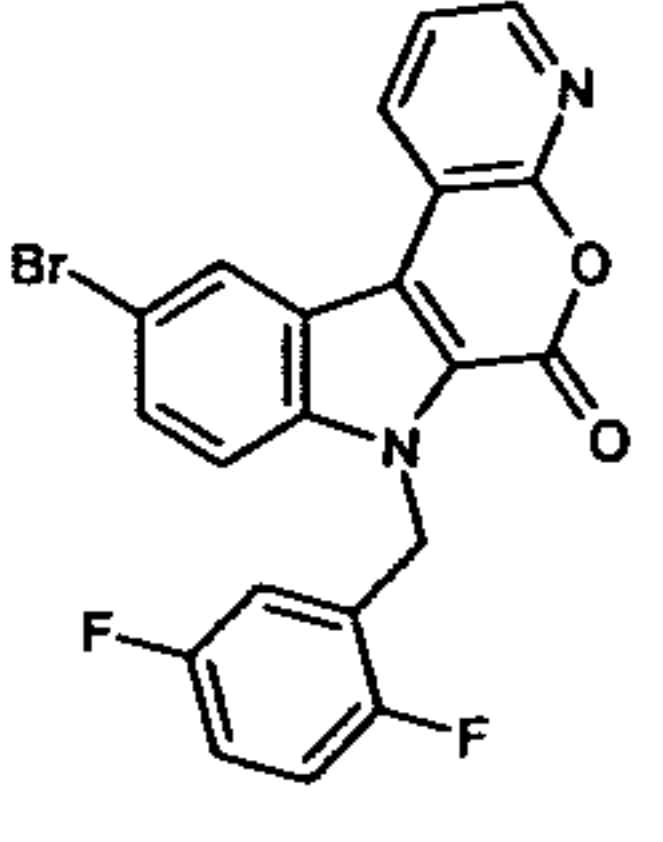
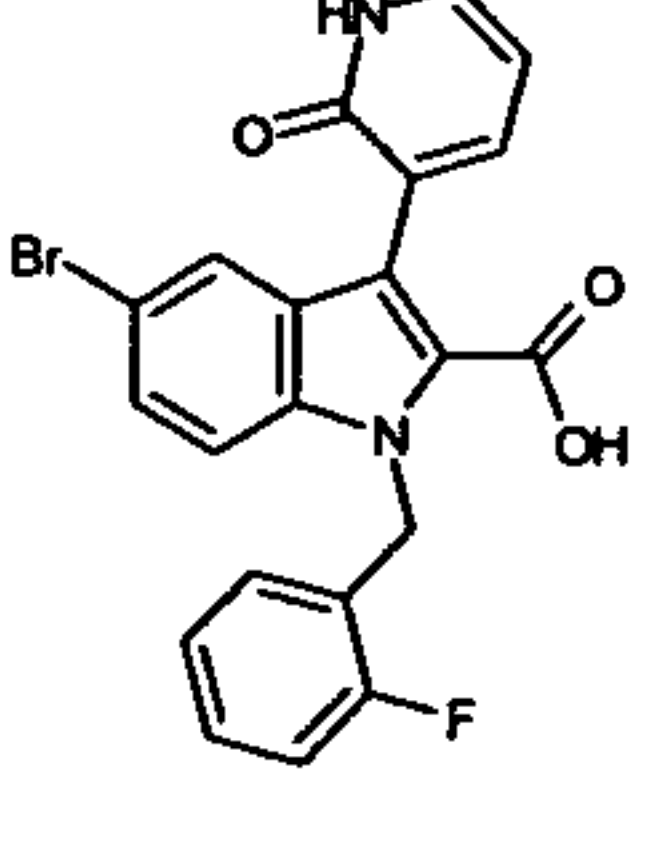
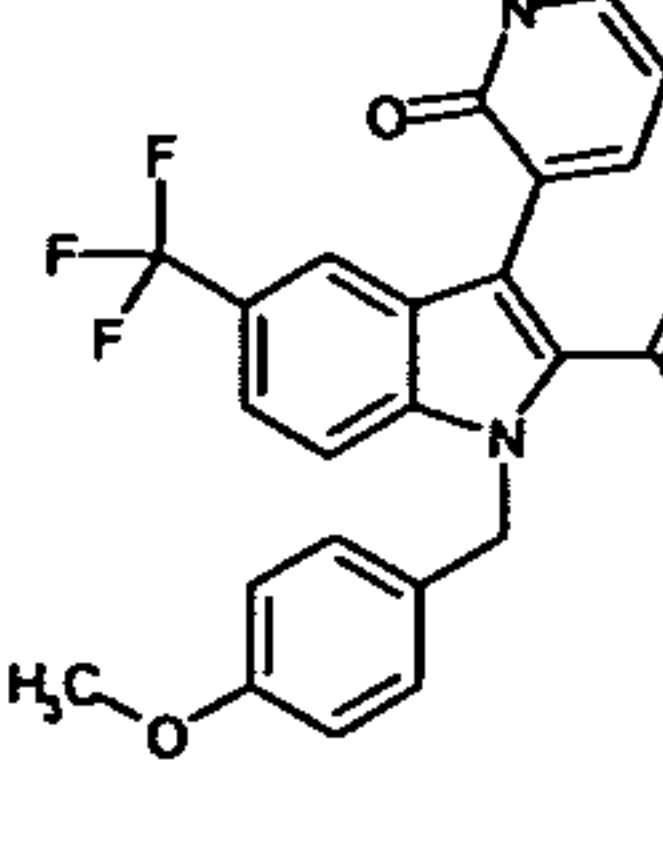
105

76		430.9
77		431.4
78		432.3
79		432.8
80		432.8
81		432.8
82		435.4

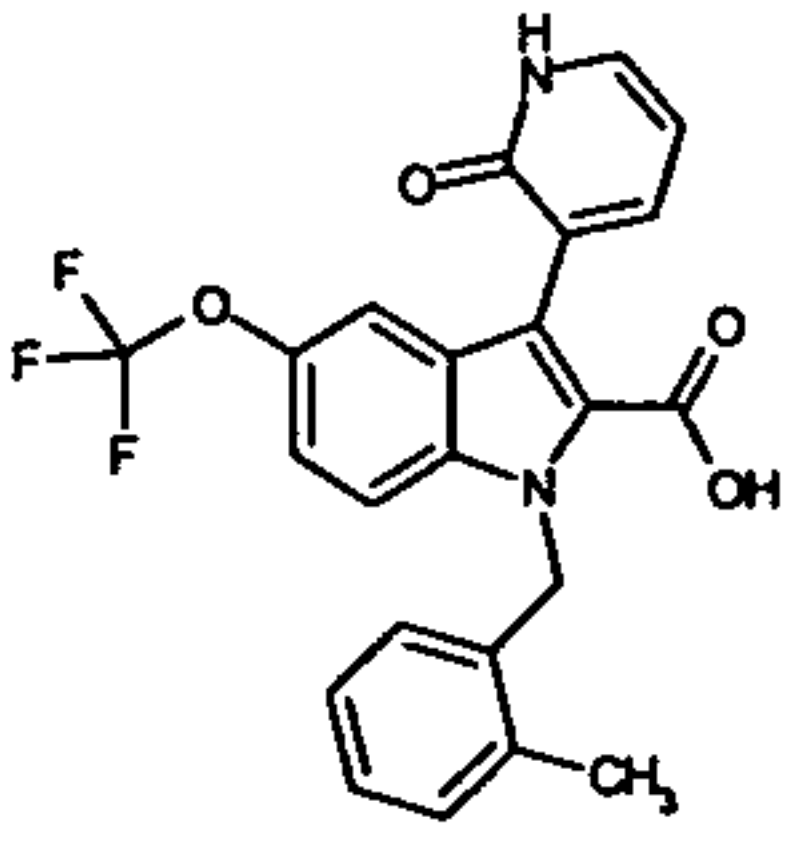
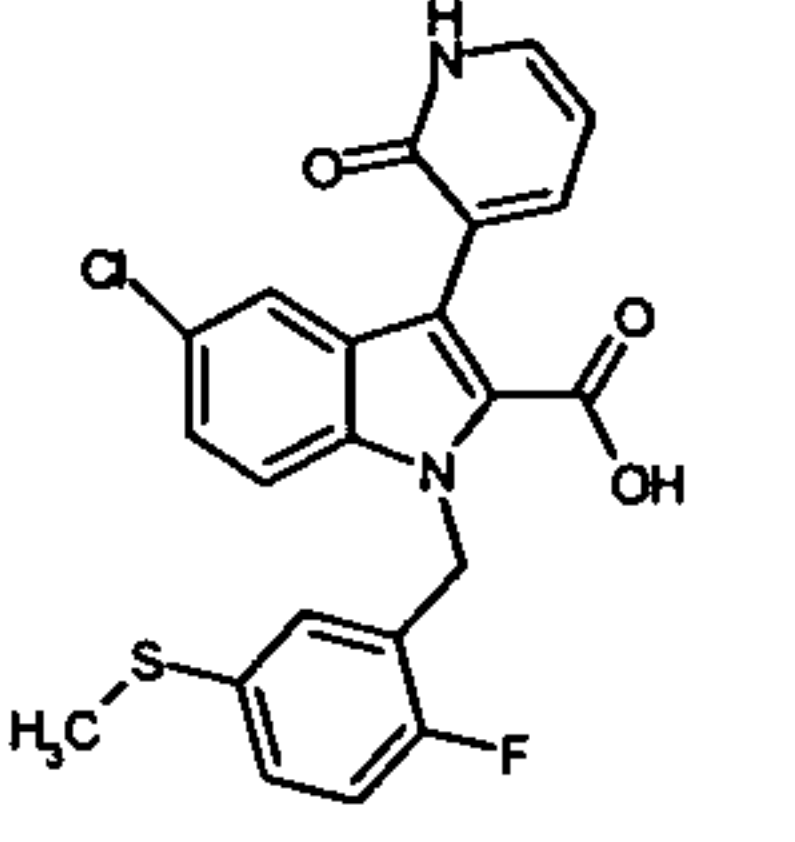
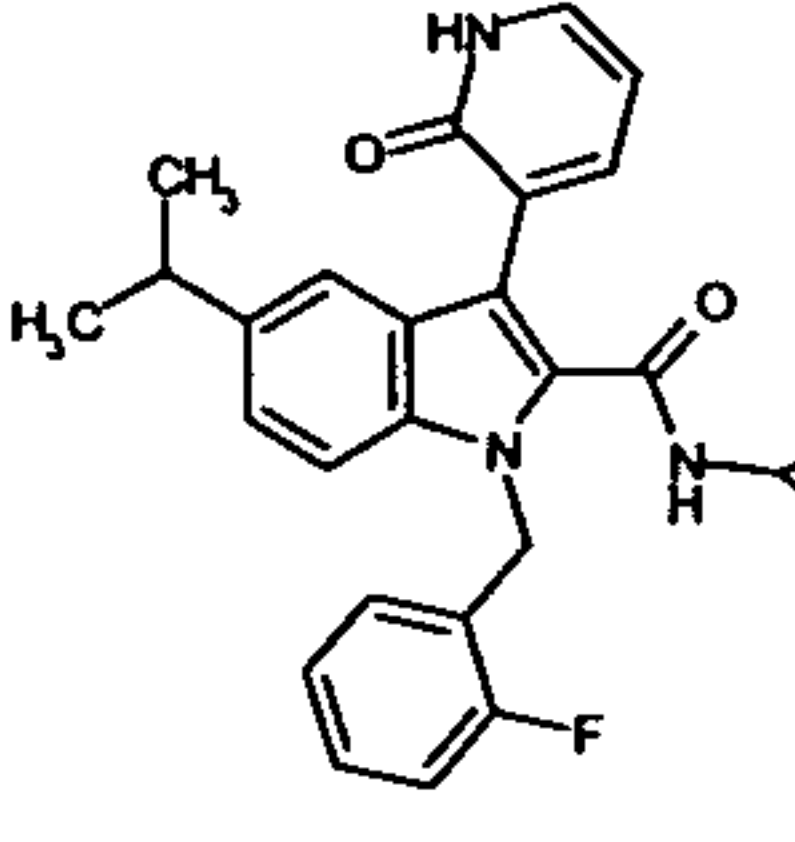
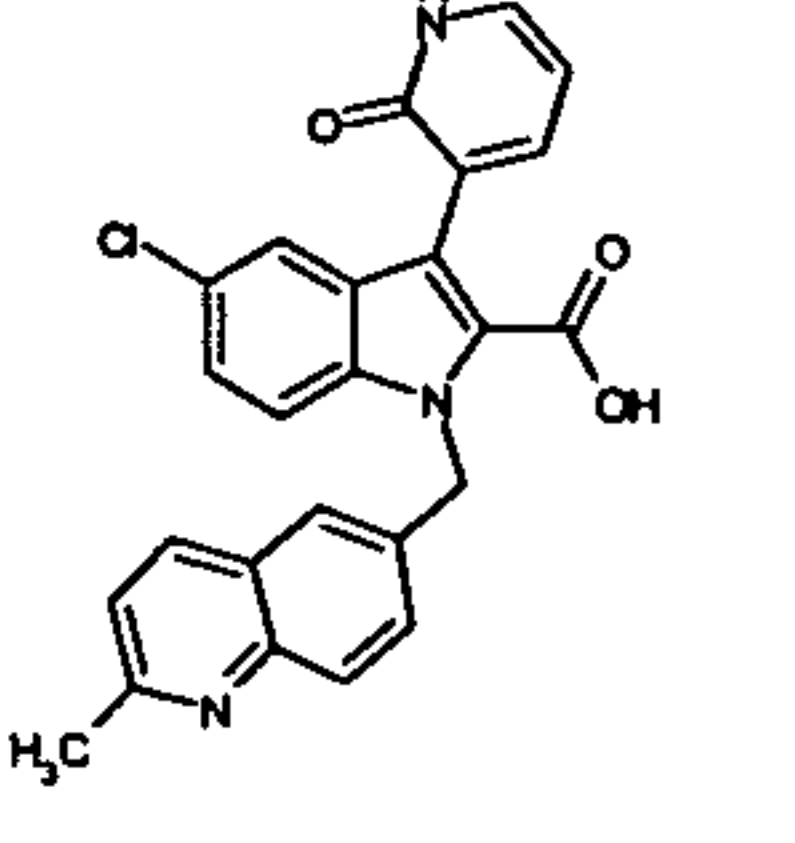
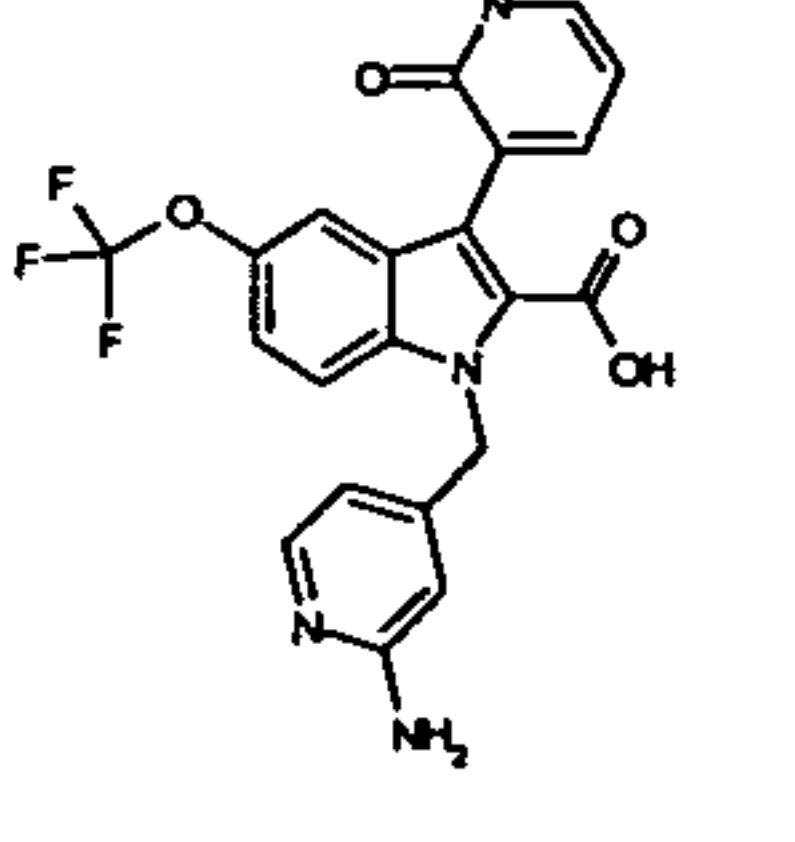
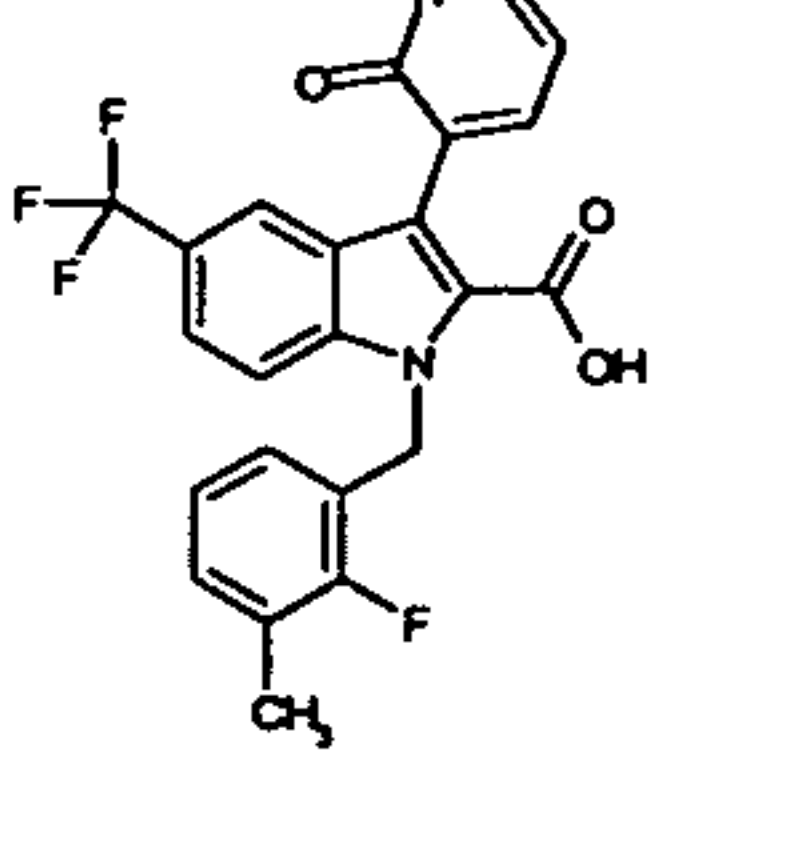
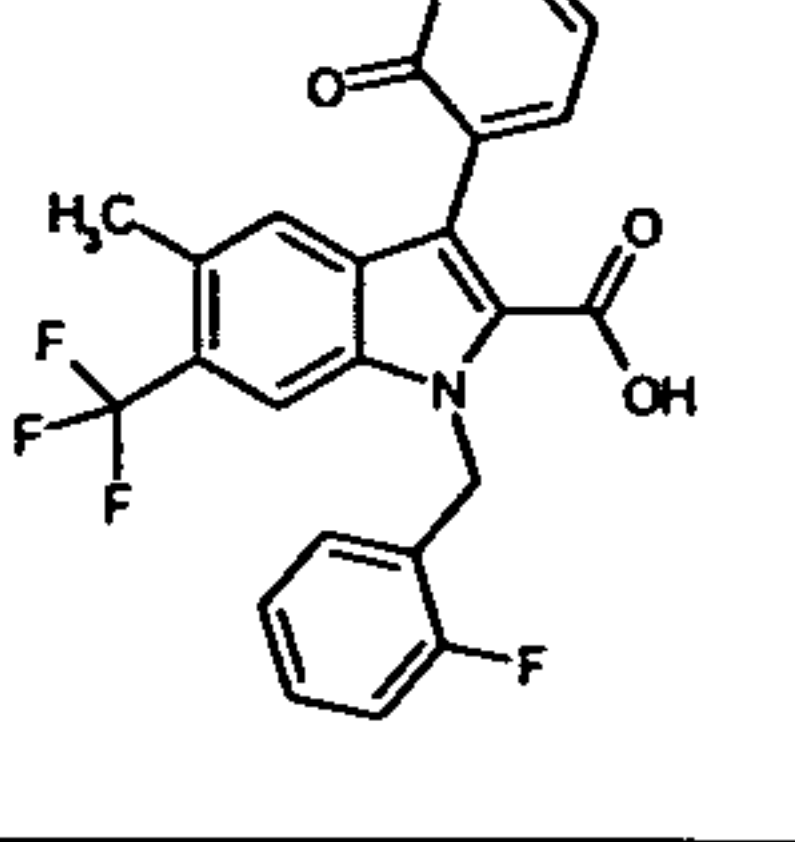
106

83		435.4
84		435.4
85		435.4
86		436.4
87		436.4
88		437.5
89		437.5

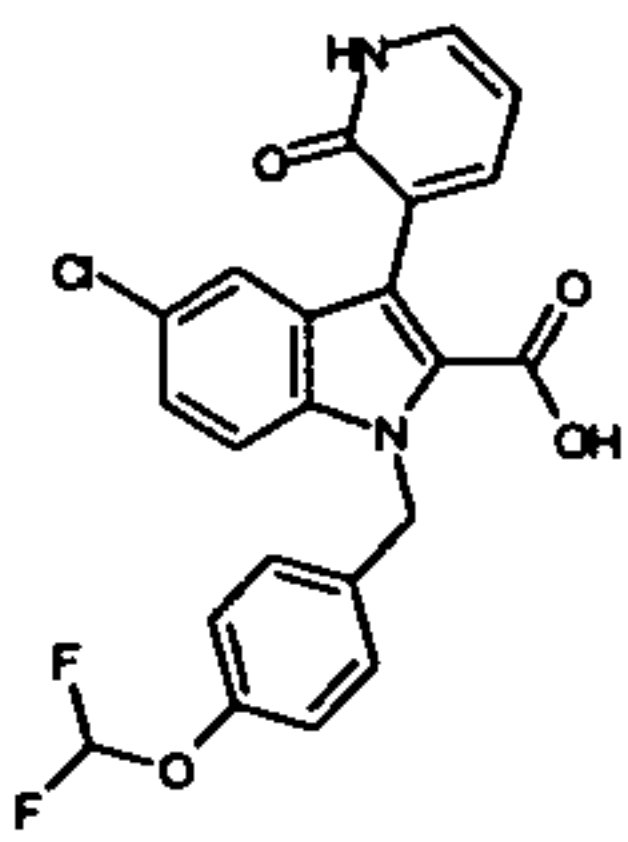
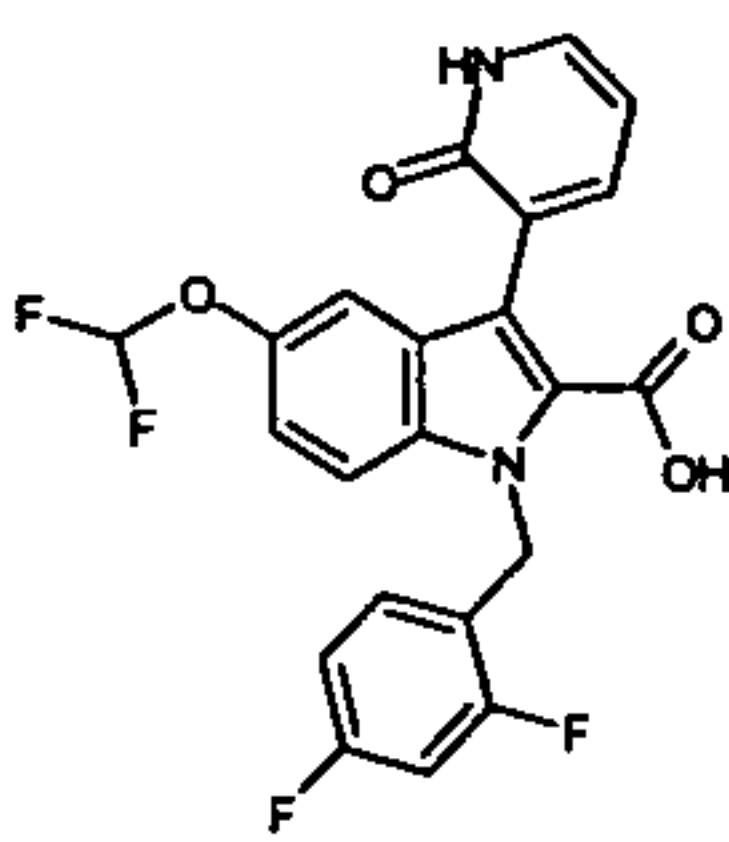
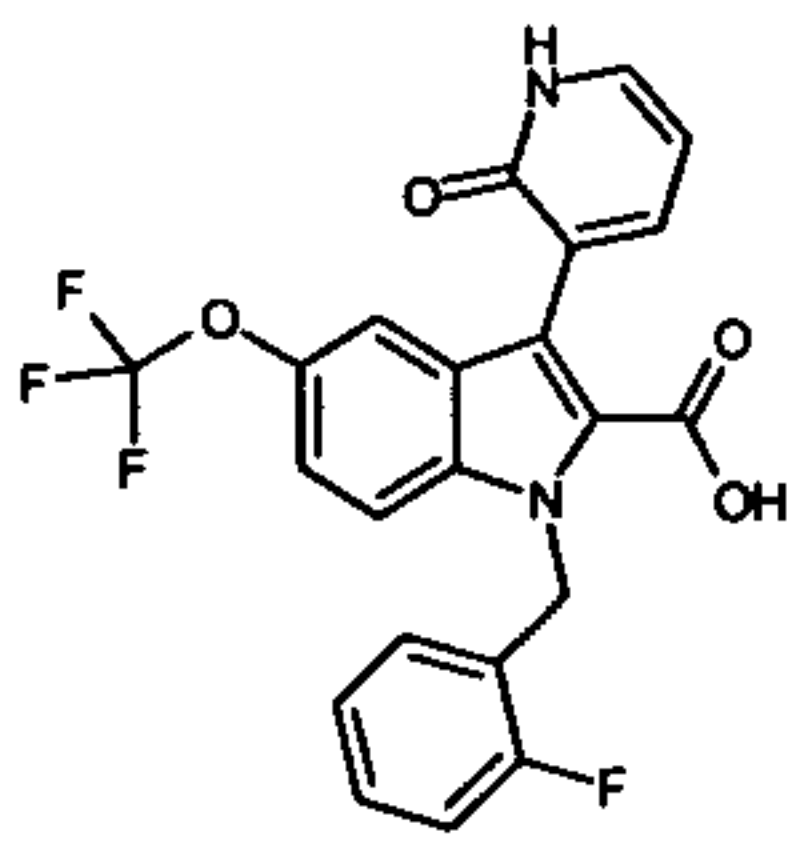
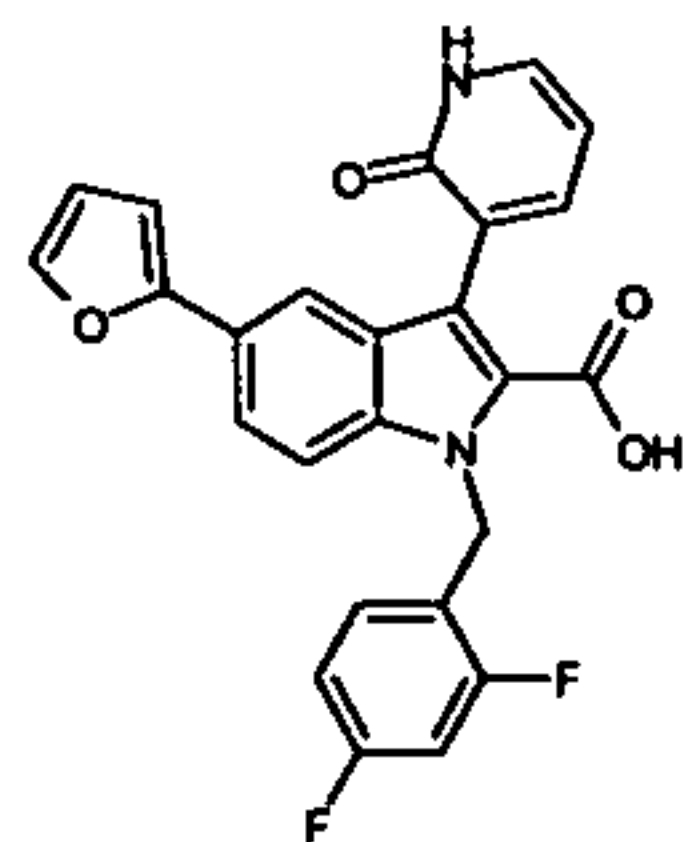
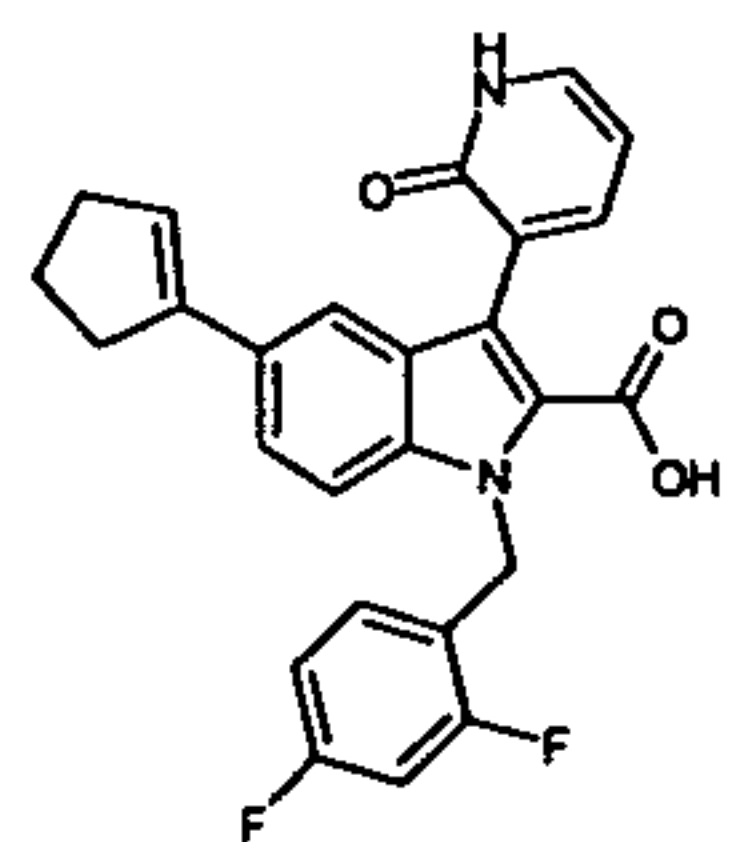
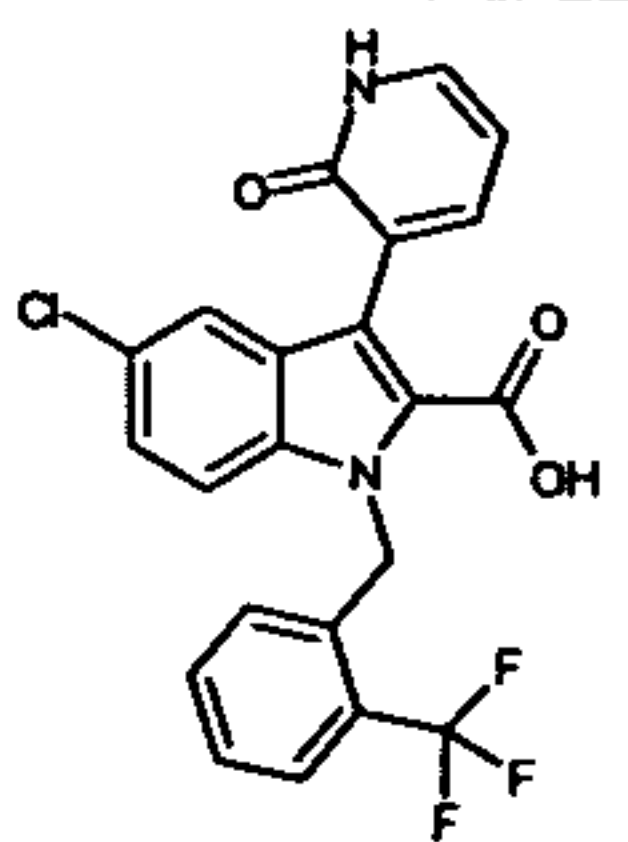
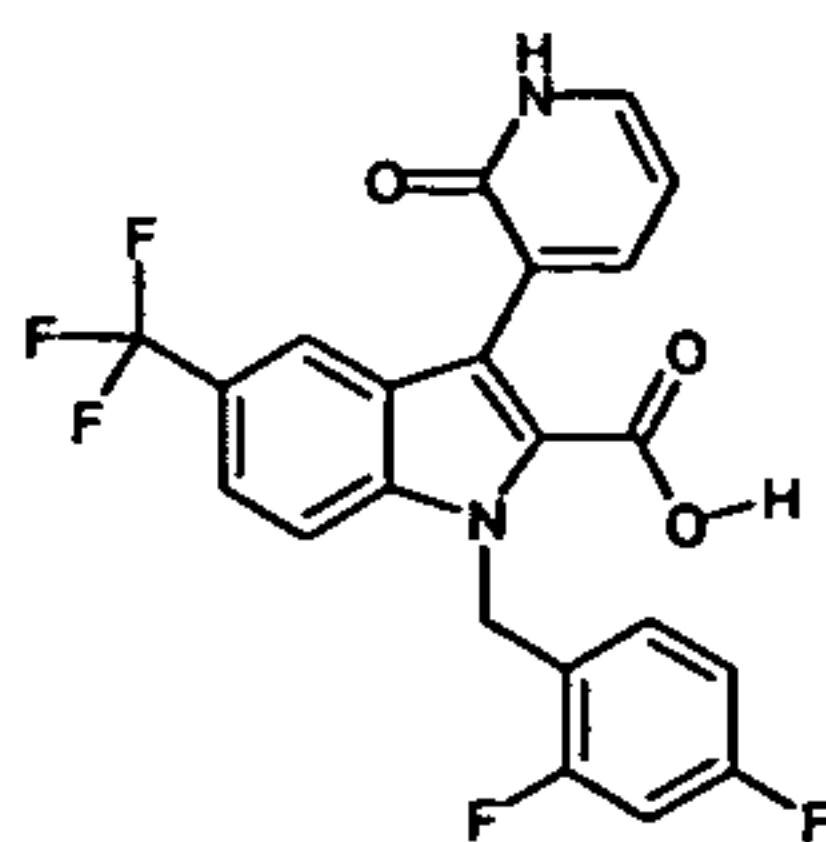
107

90		437.9
91		440.3
92		440.4
93		441.4
94		442.2
95		442.3
96		443.4

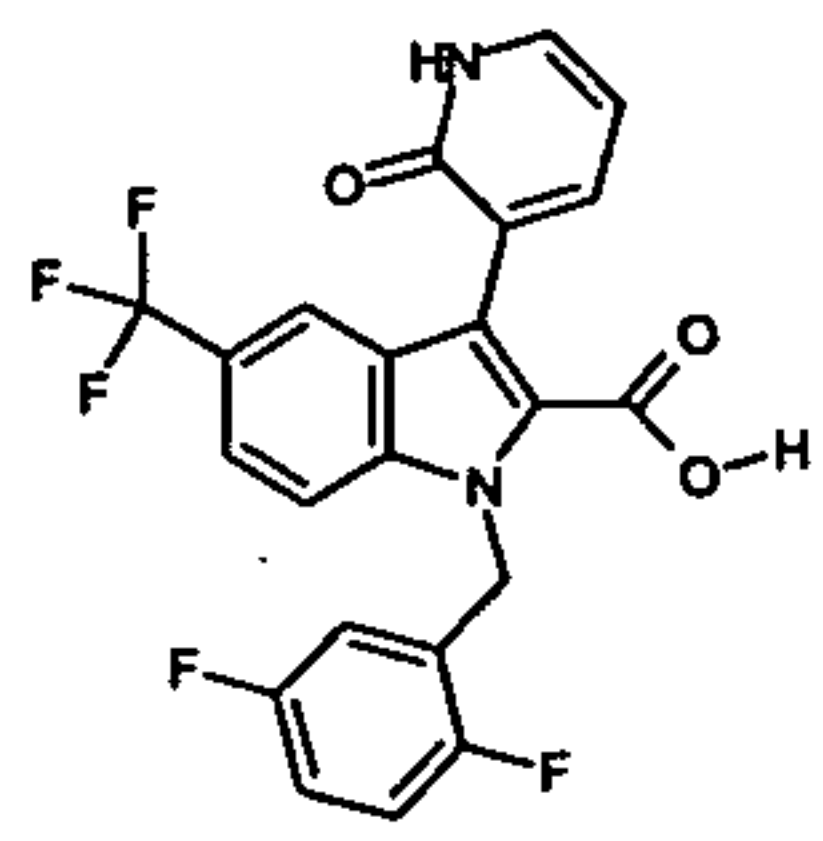
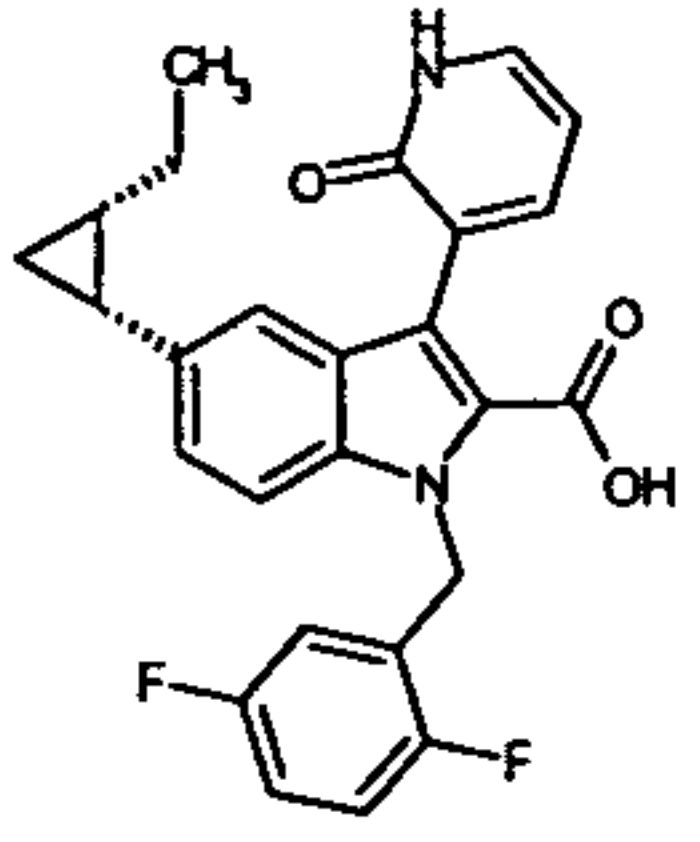
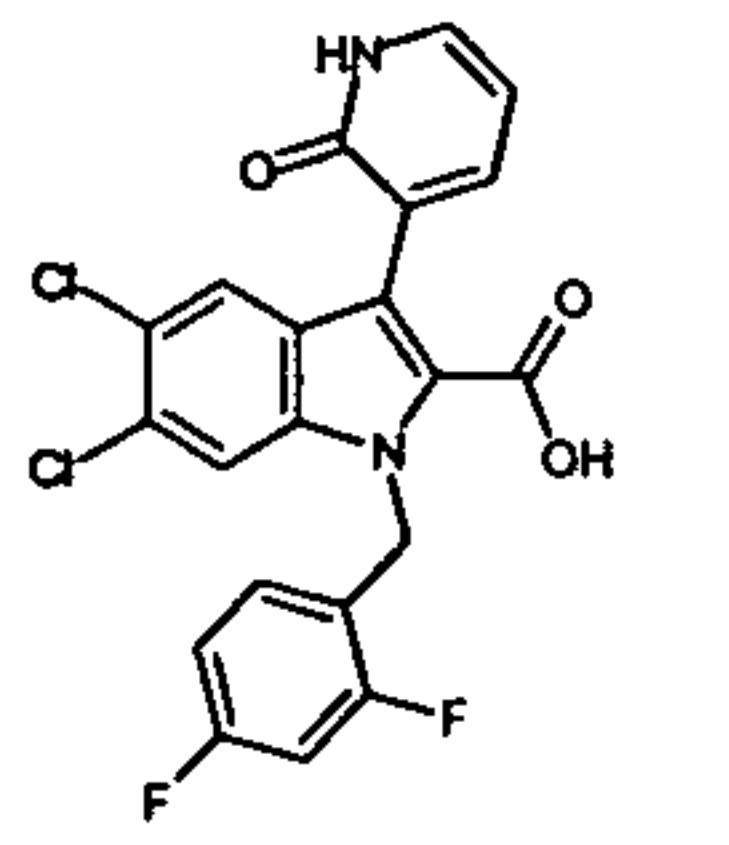
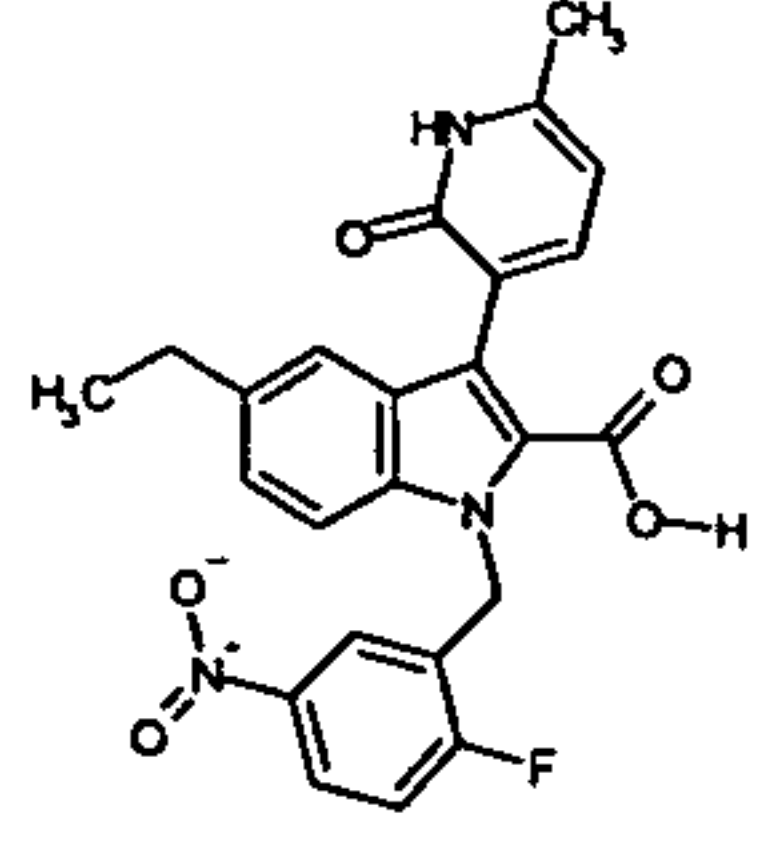
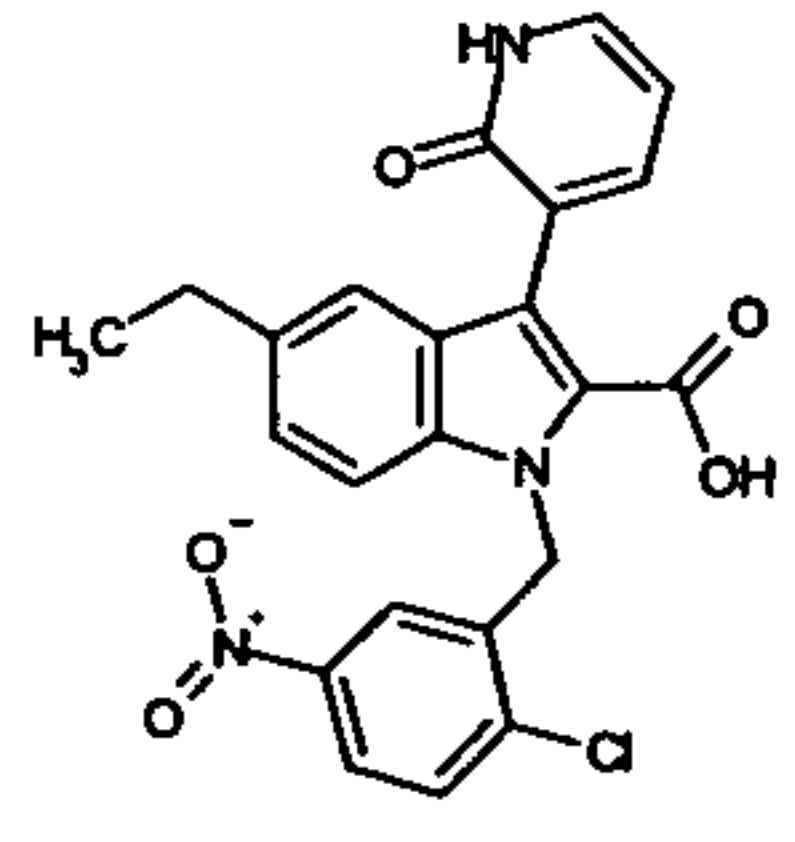
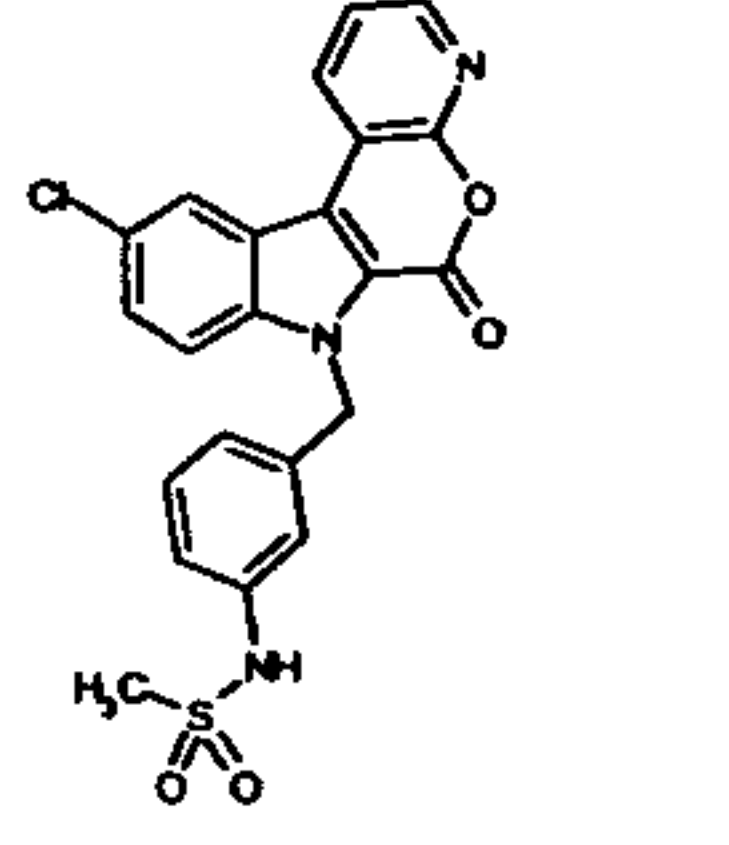
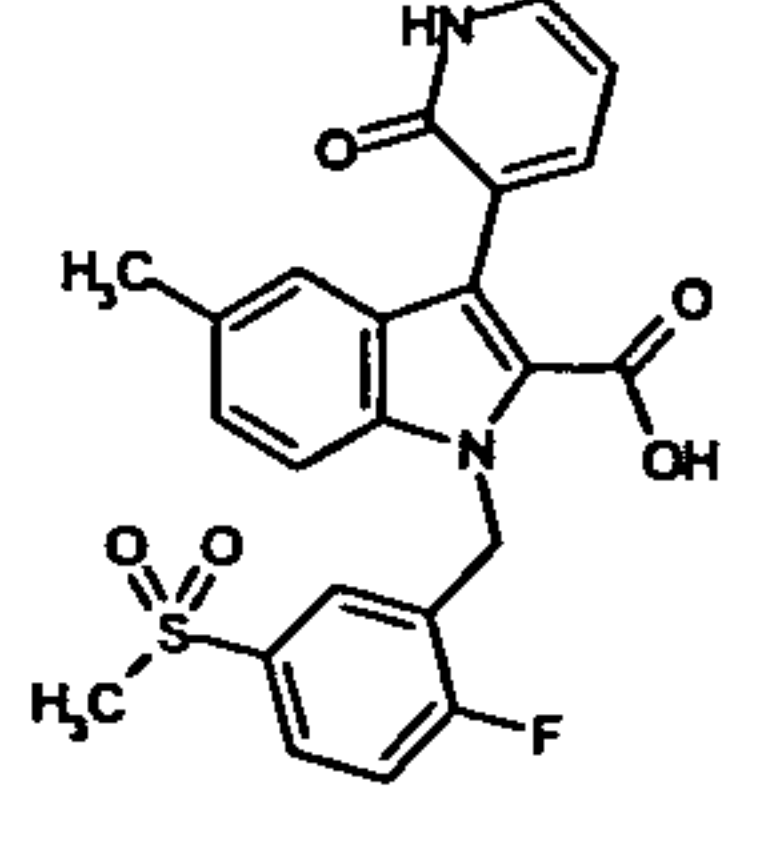
108

97		443.4
98		443.9
99		444.5
100		444.9
101		445.4
102		445.4
103		445.4

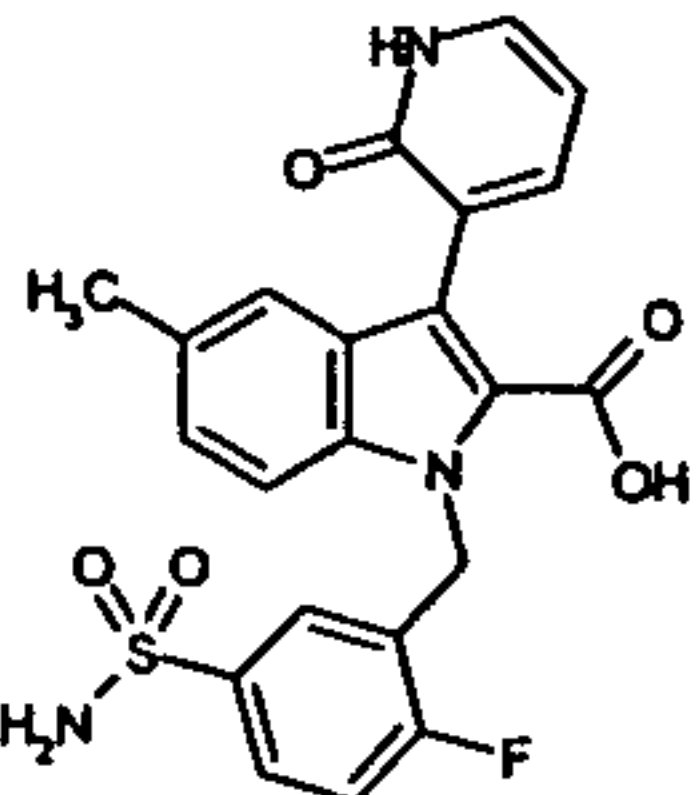
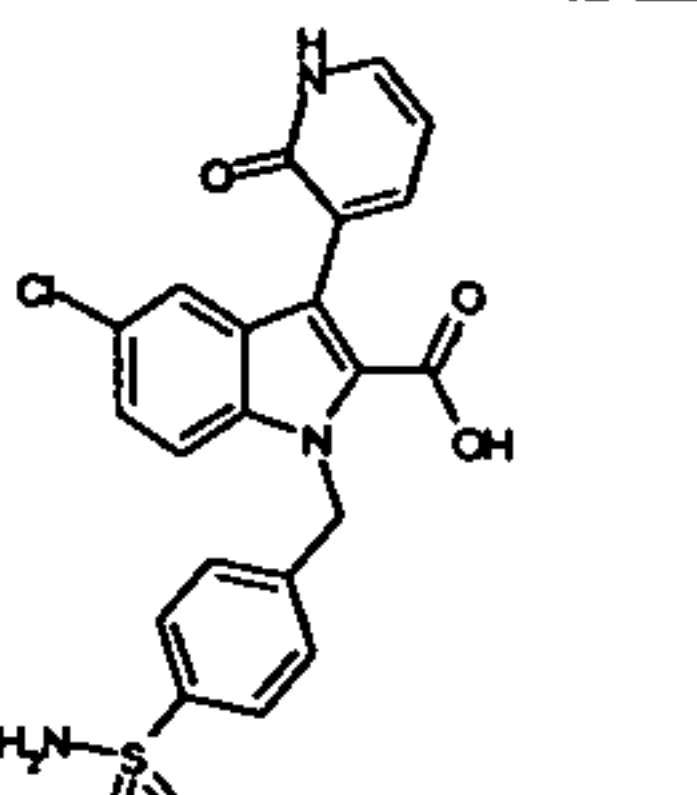
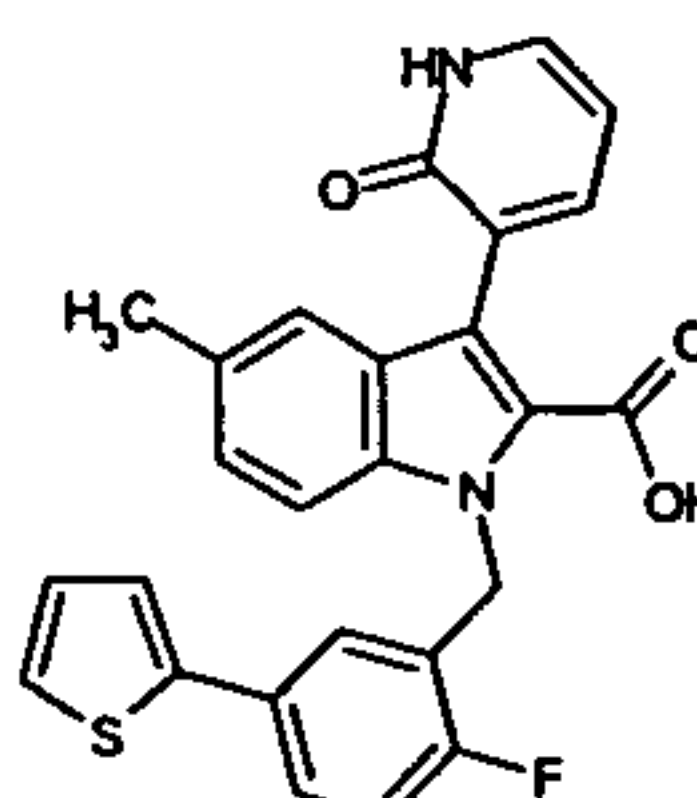
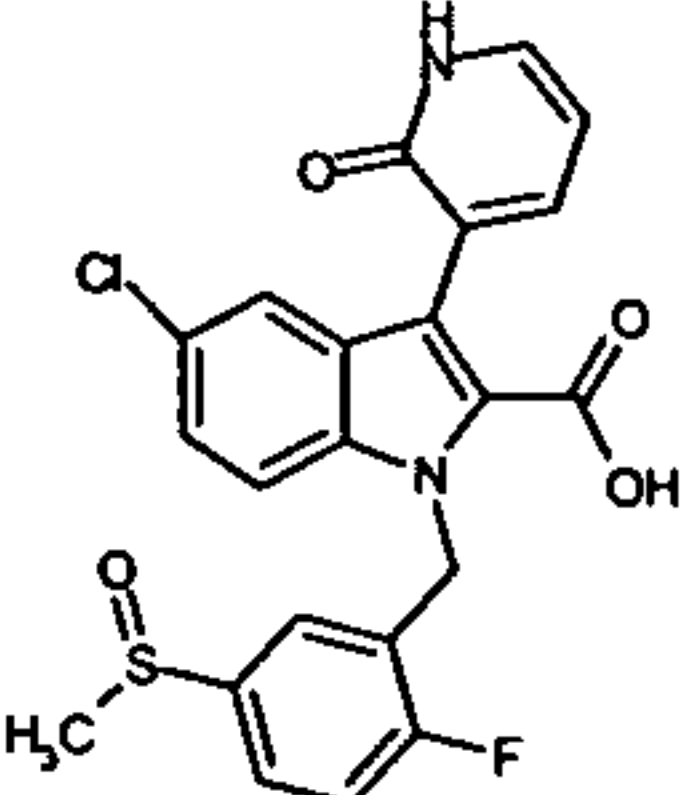
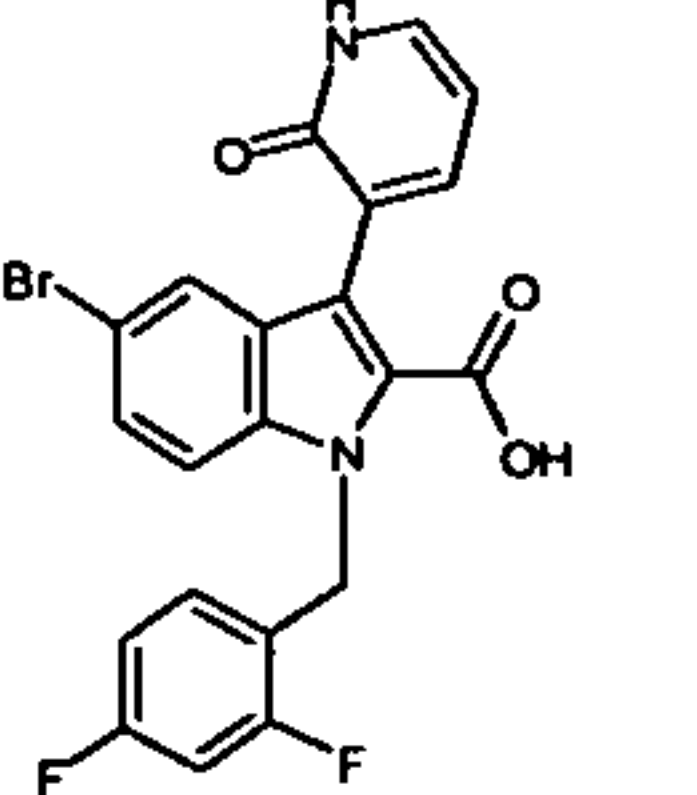
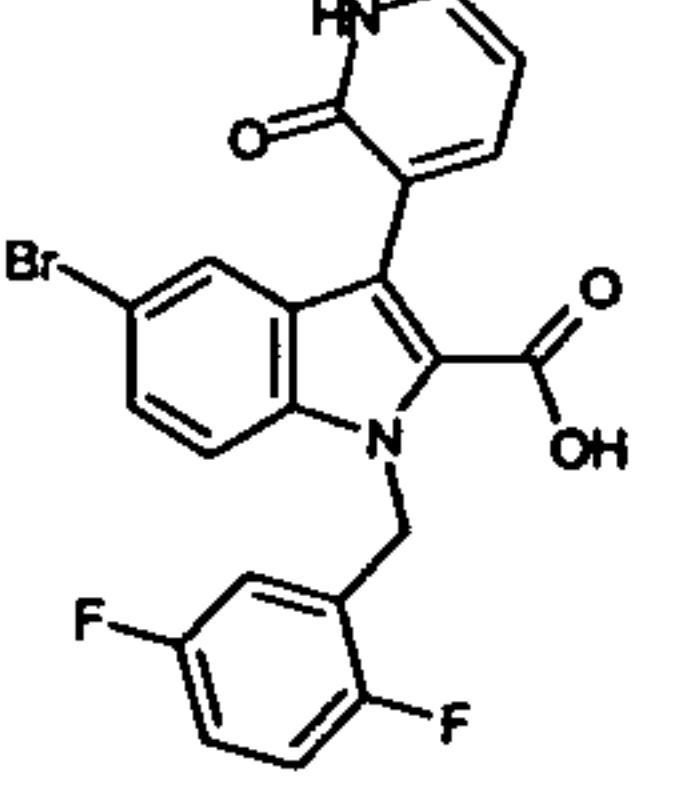
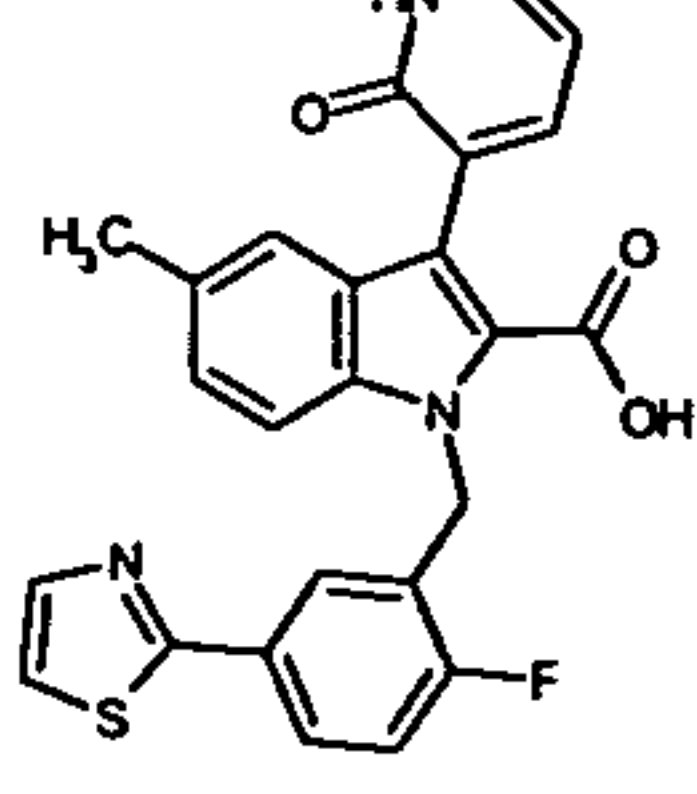
109

104		445.8
105		447.4
106		447.4
107		447.4
108		447.5
109		447.8
110		449.4

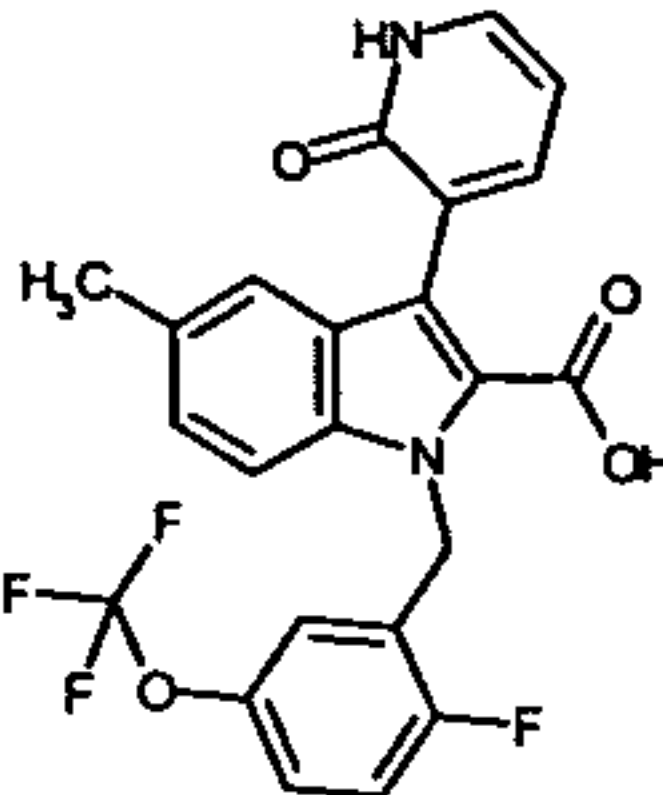
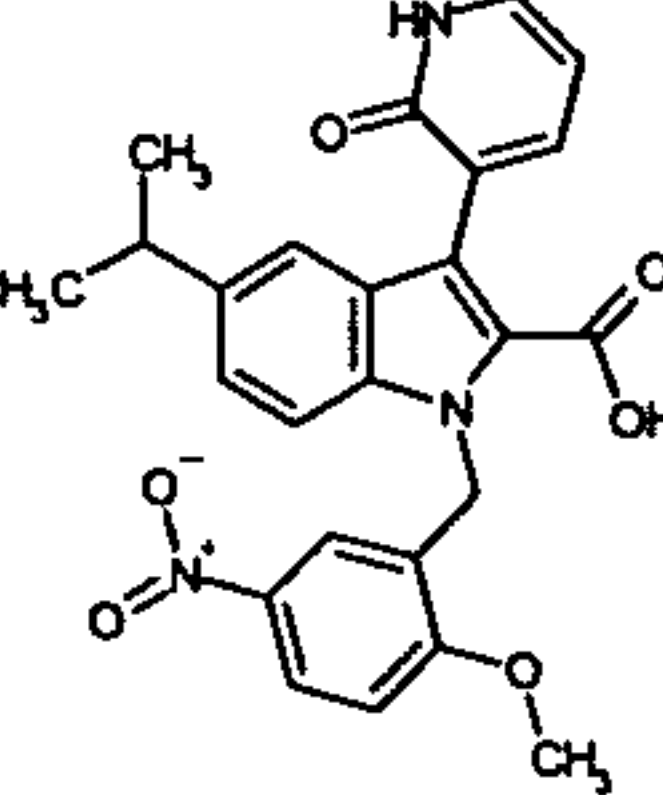
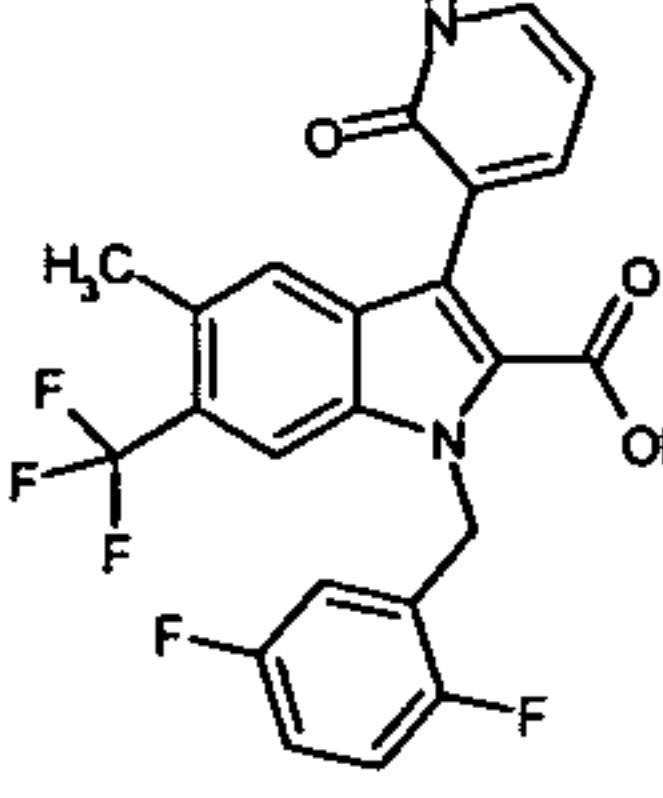
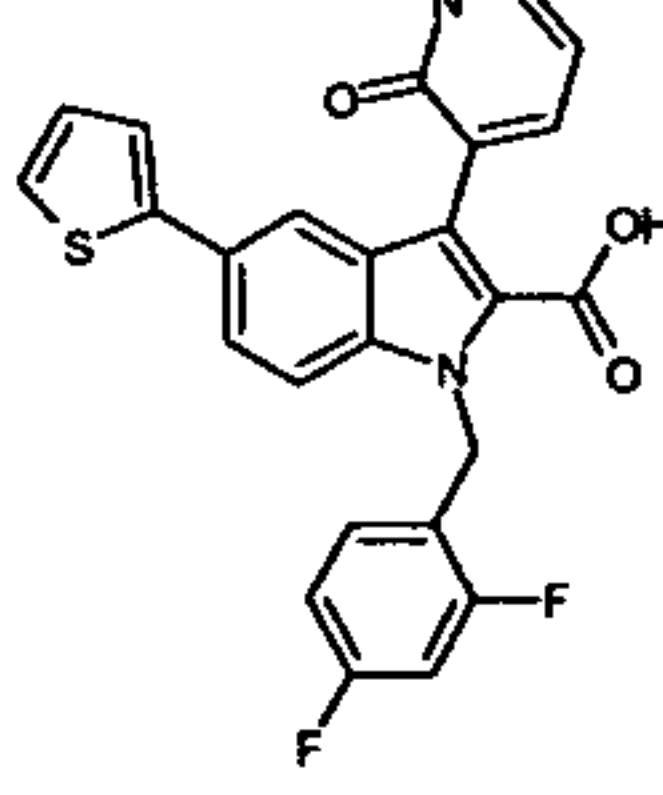
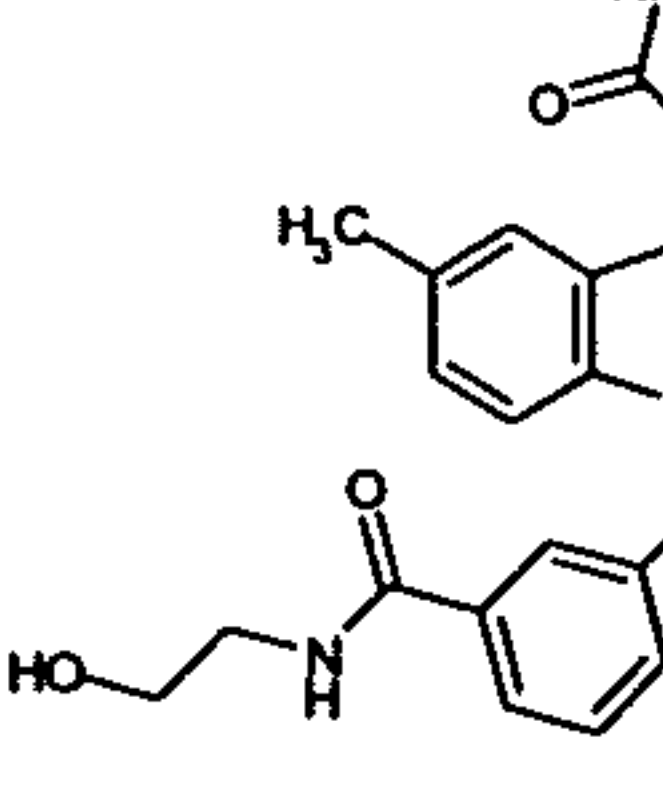
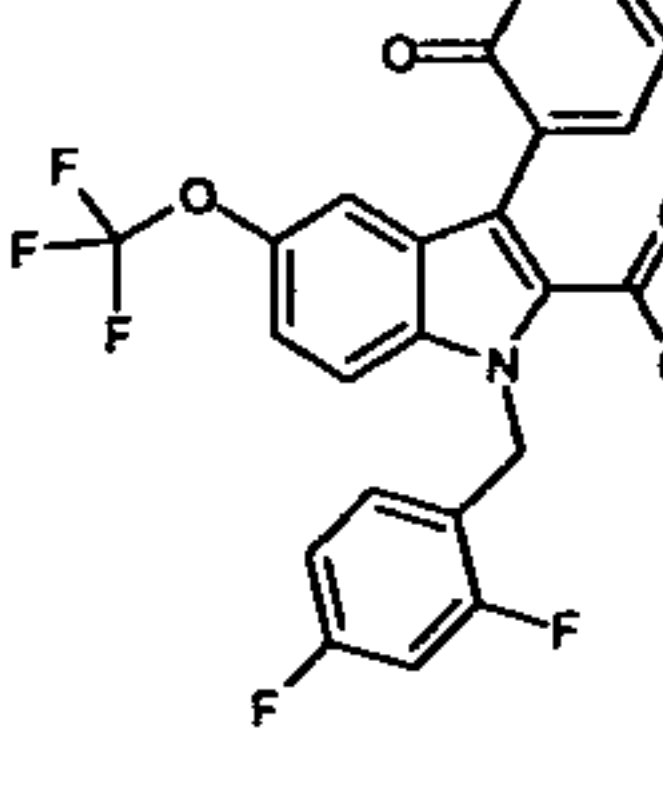
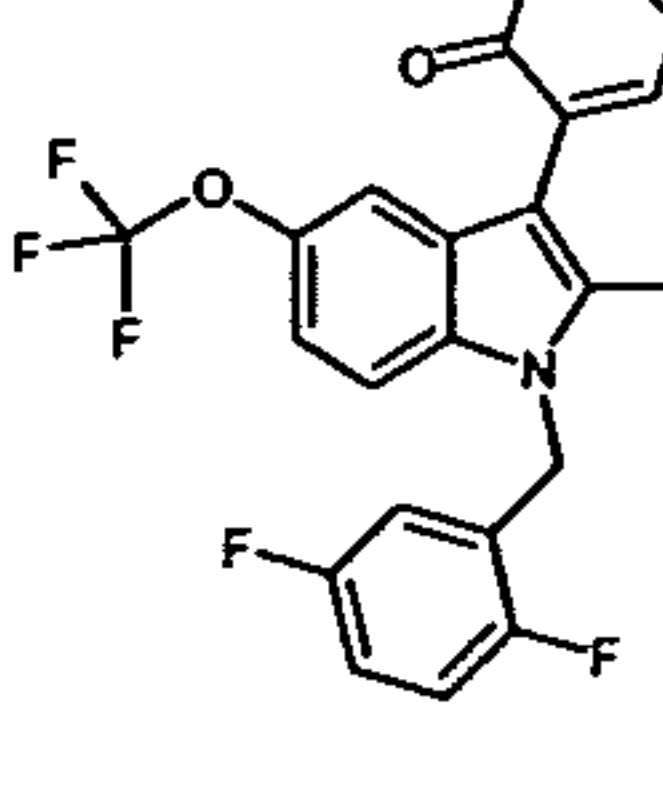
110

111		449.4
112		449.5
113		450.2
114		450.4
115		452.9
116		454.9
117		455.5

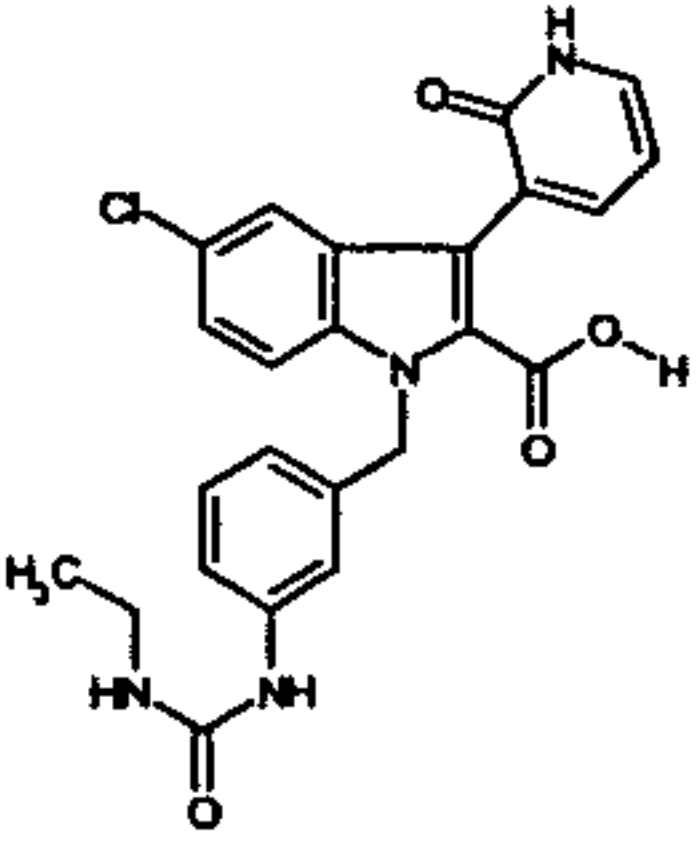
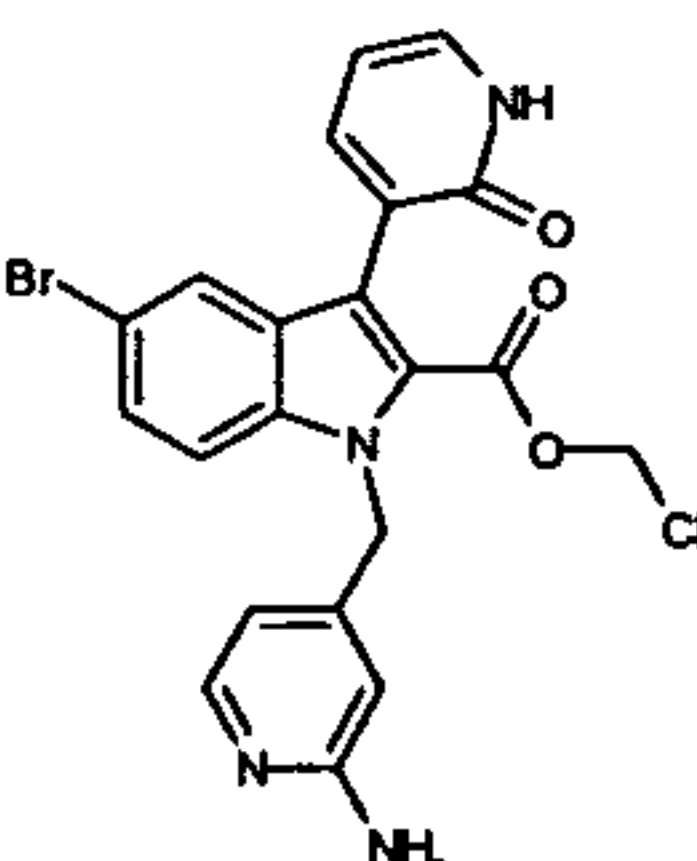
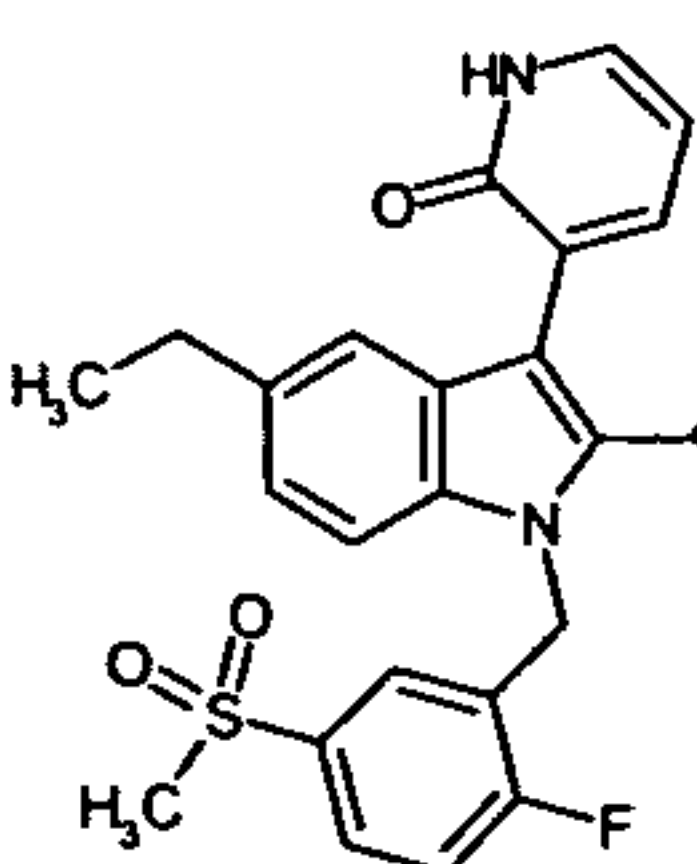
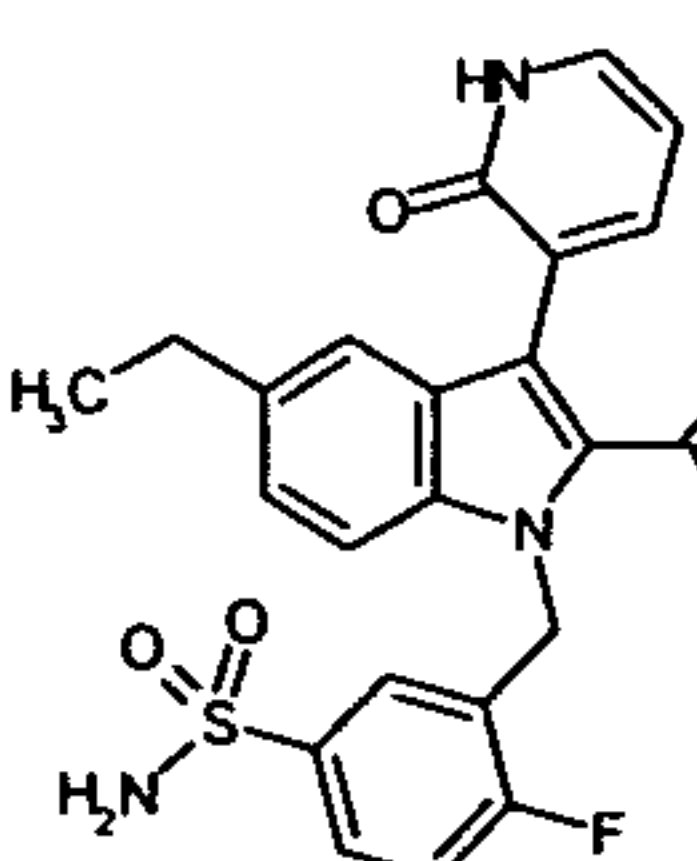
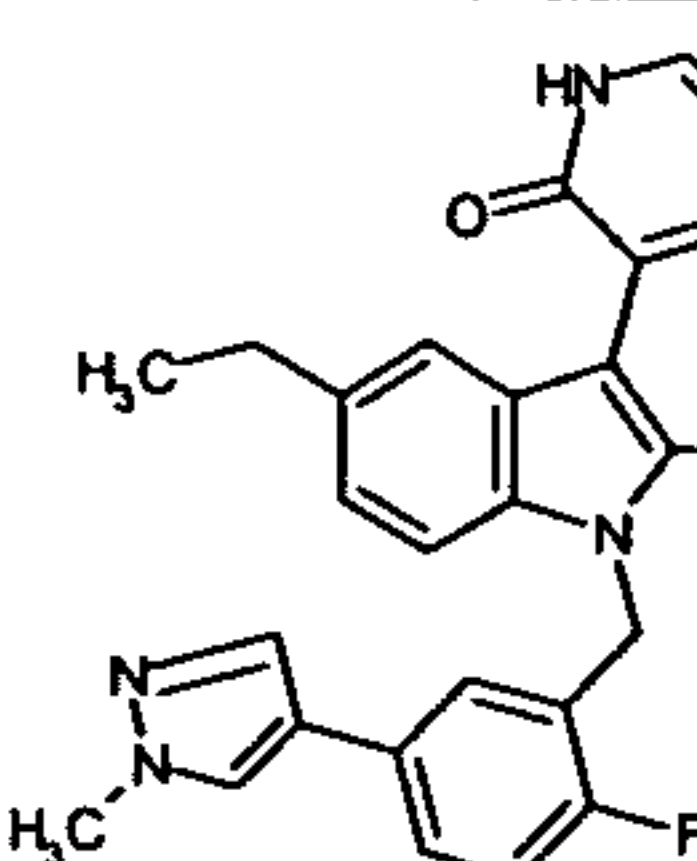
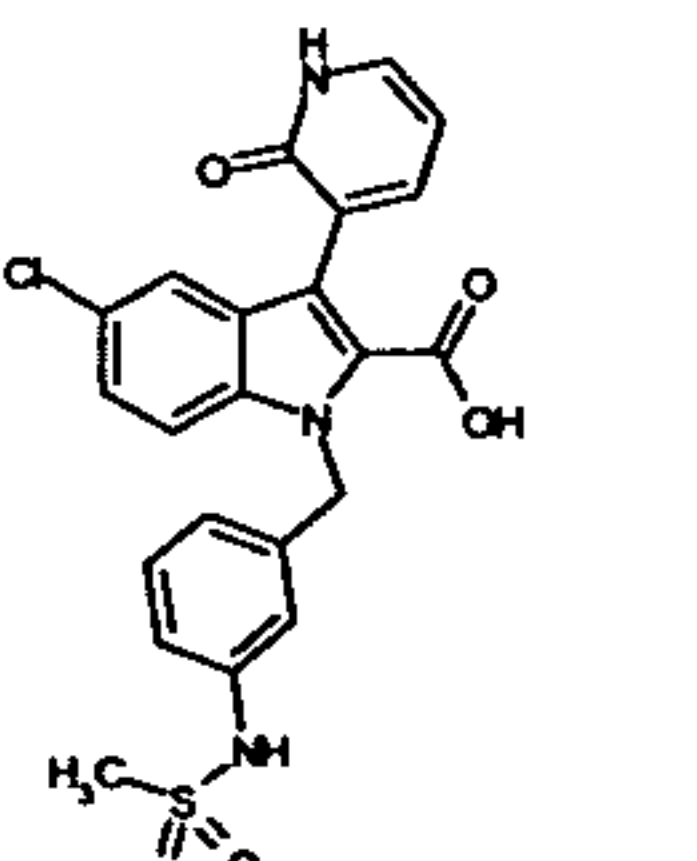
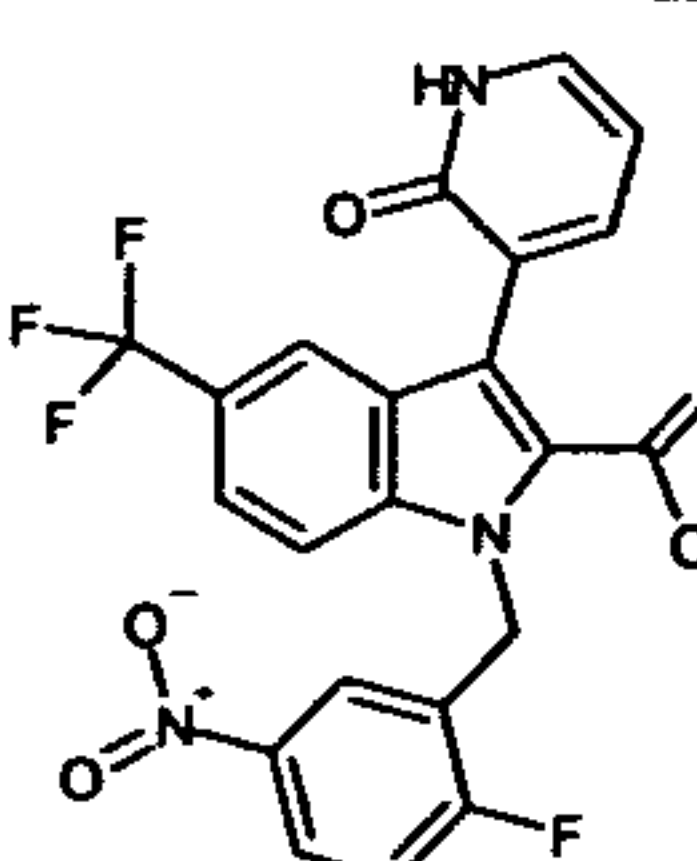
111

118		456.5
119		458.9
120		459.5
121		459.9
122		460.3
123		460.3
124		460.5

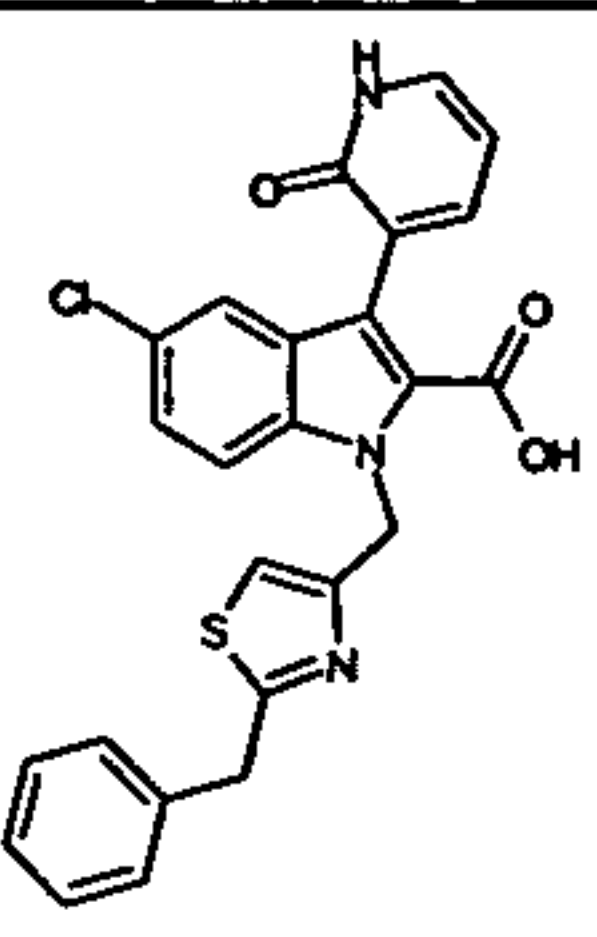
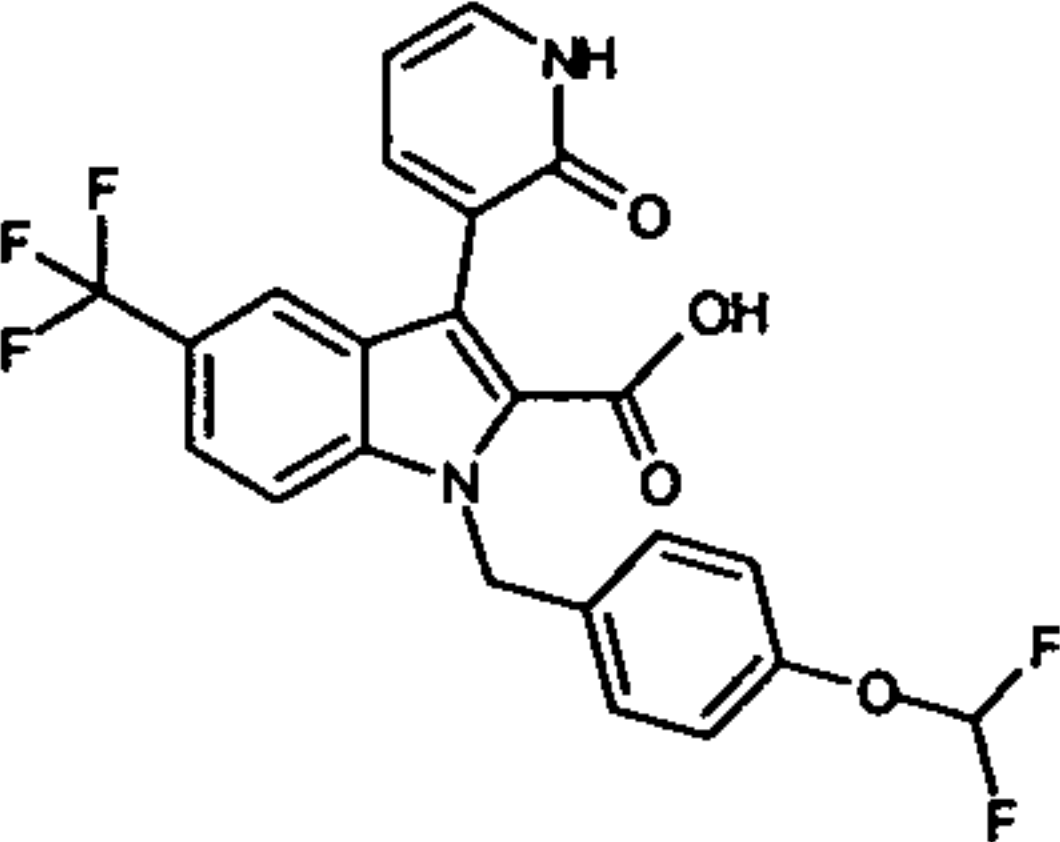
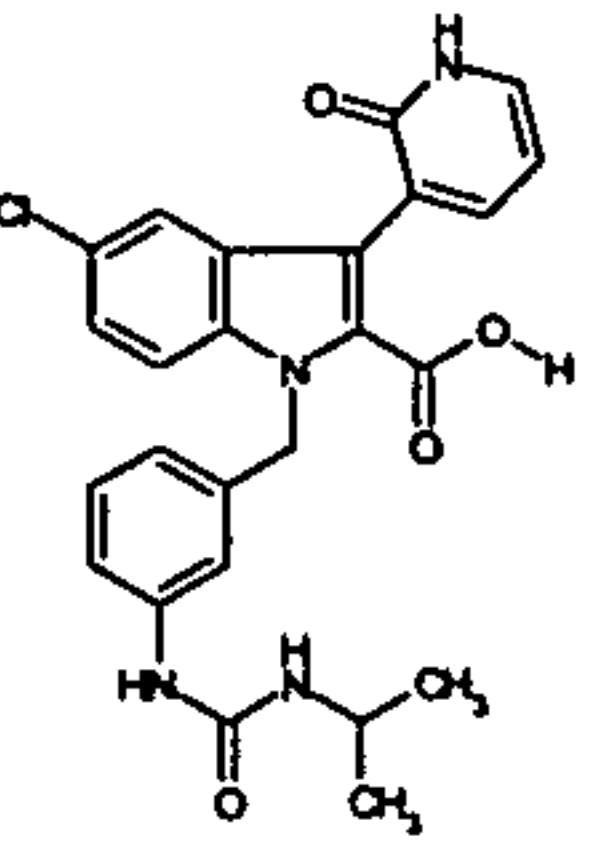
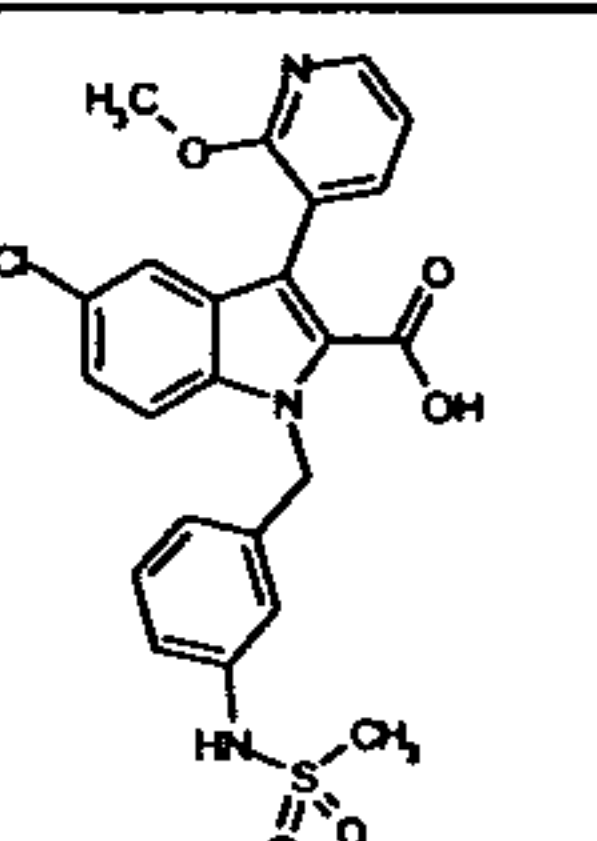
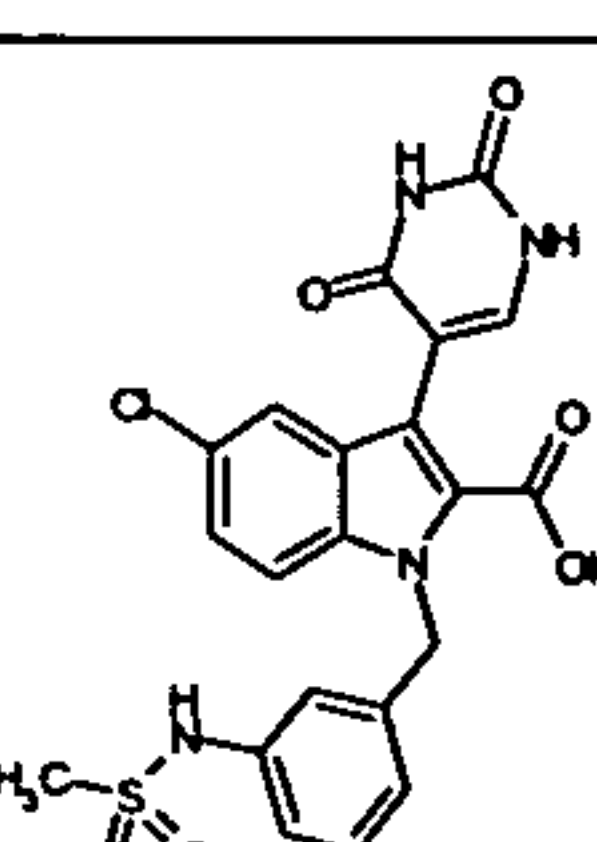
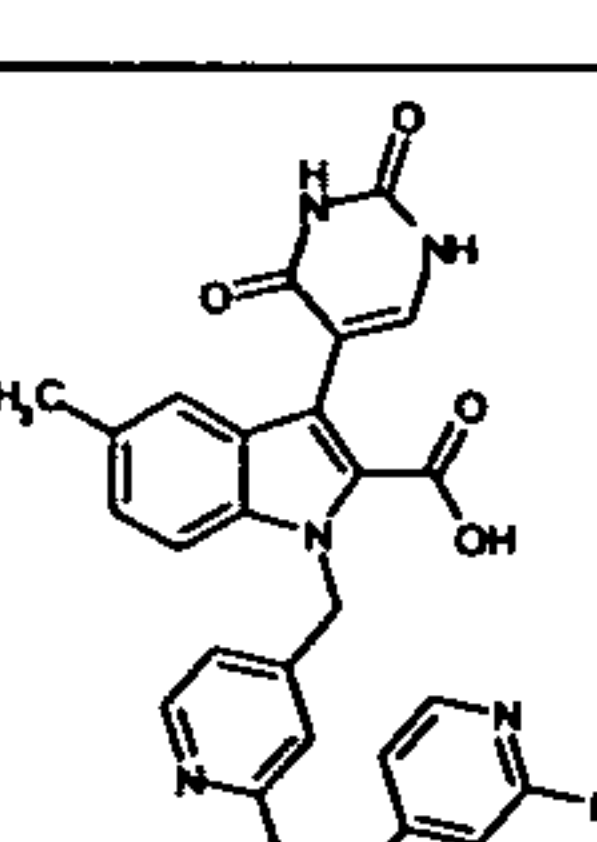
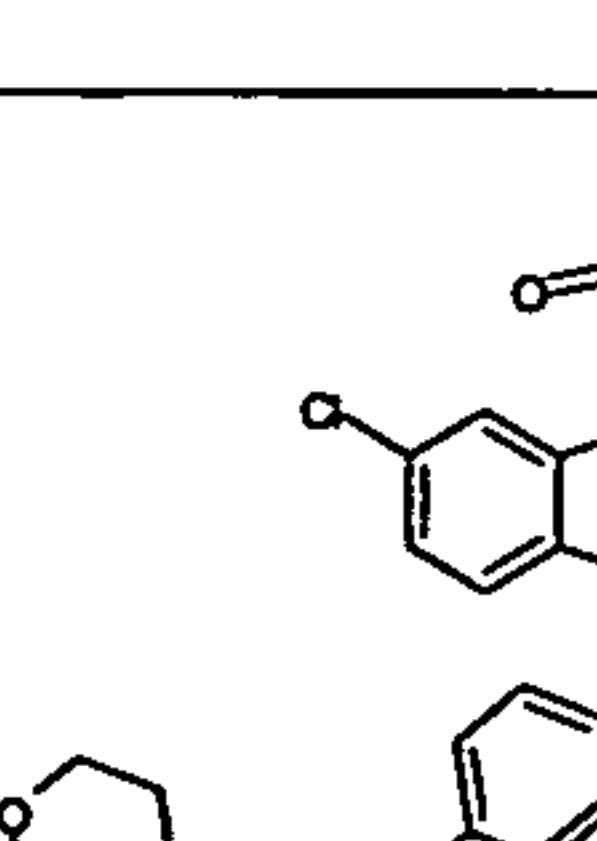
112

125		461.4
126		462.5
127		463.4
128		463.5
129		464.5
130		465.4
131		465.4

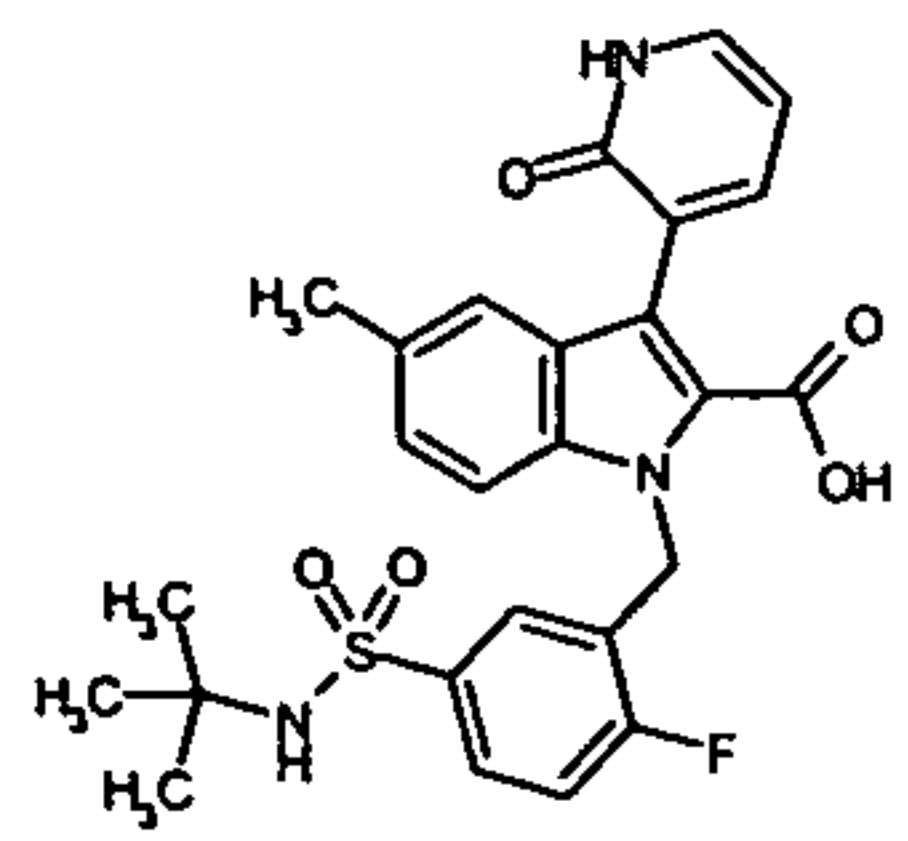
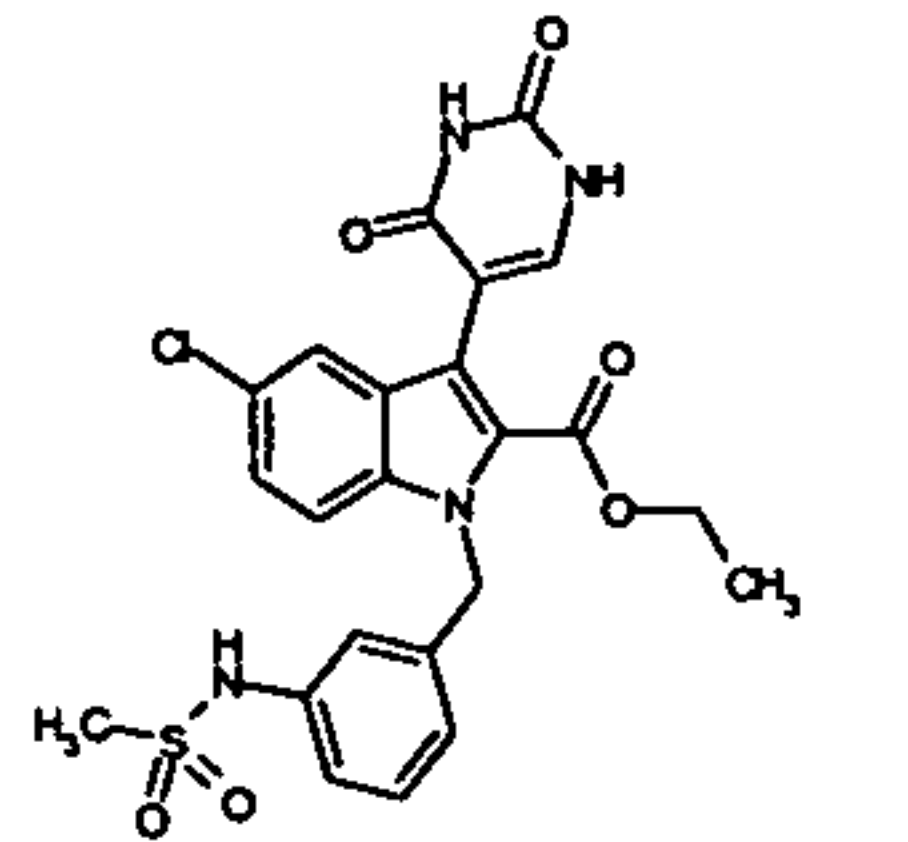
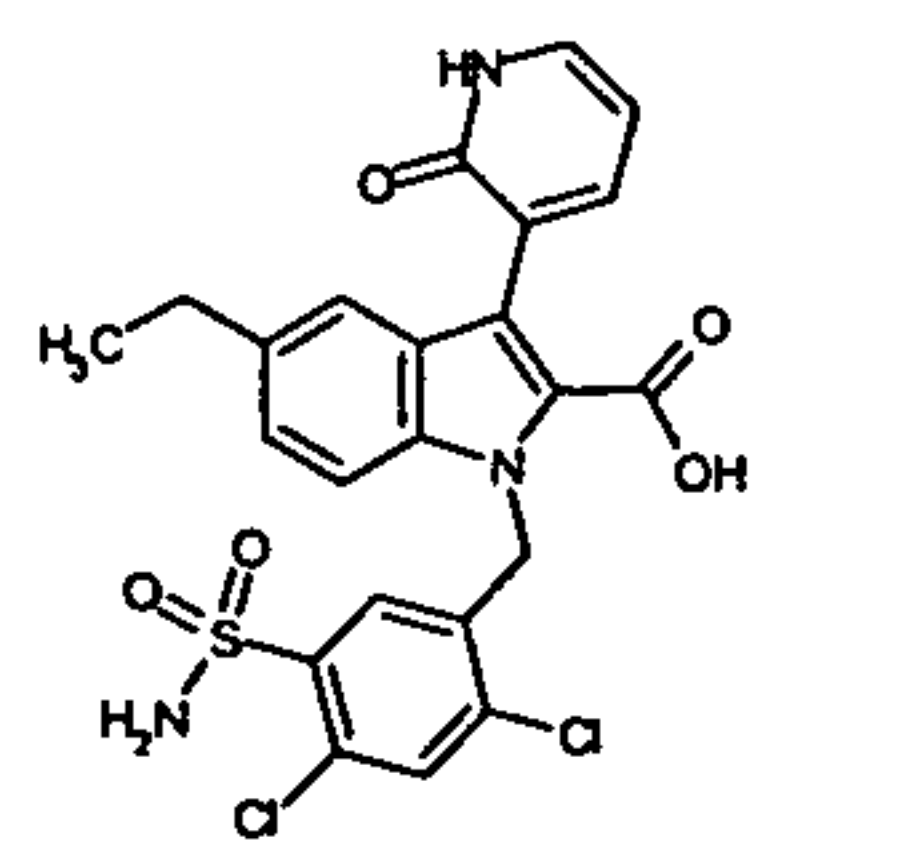
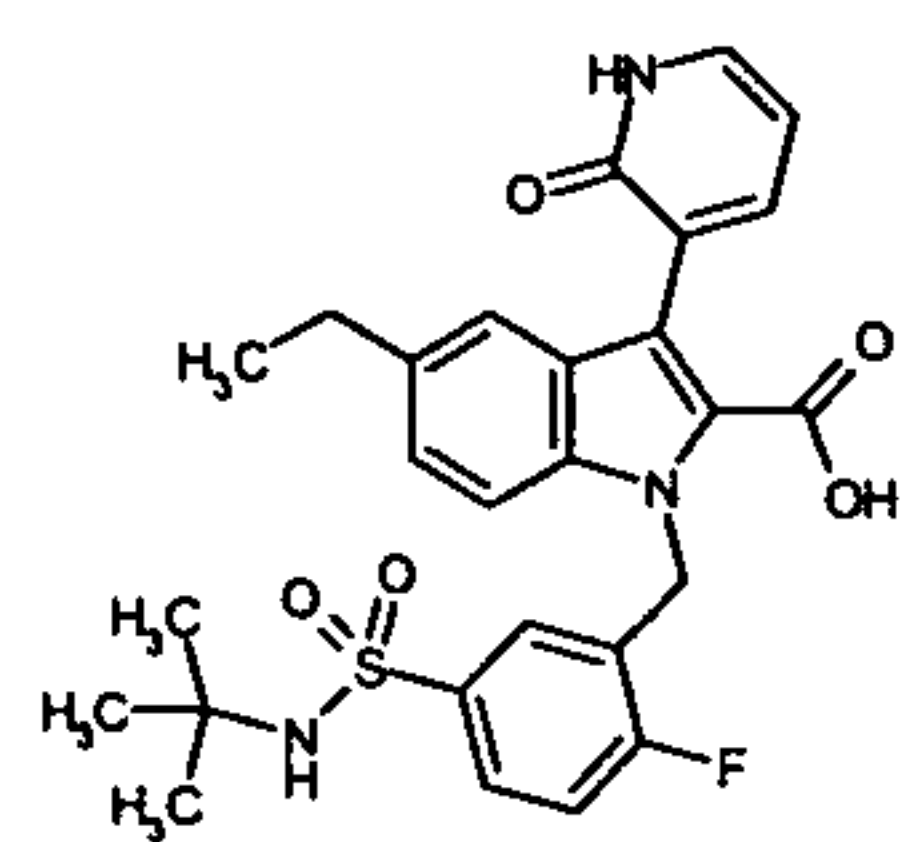
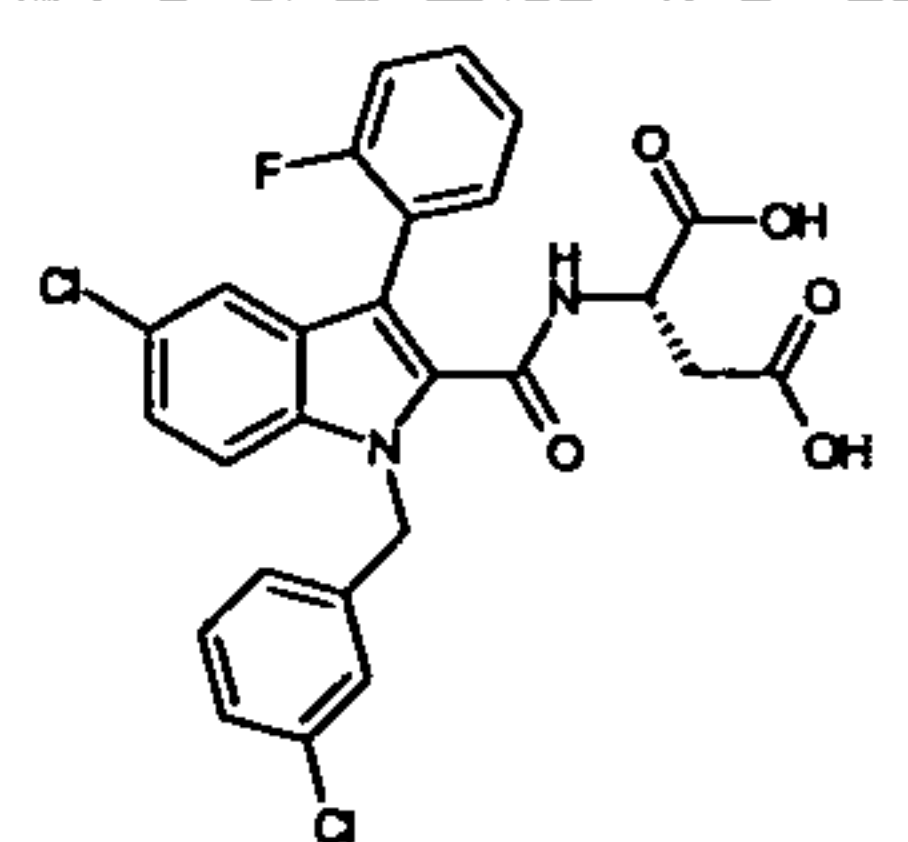
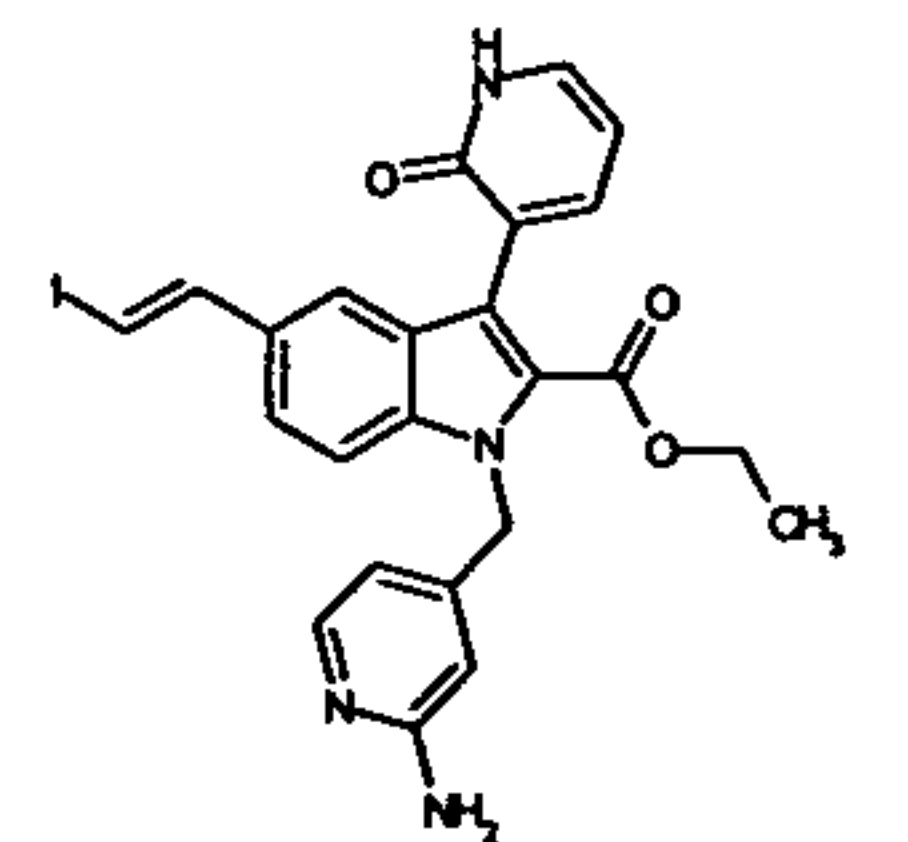
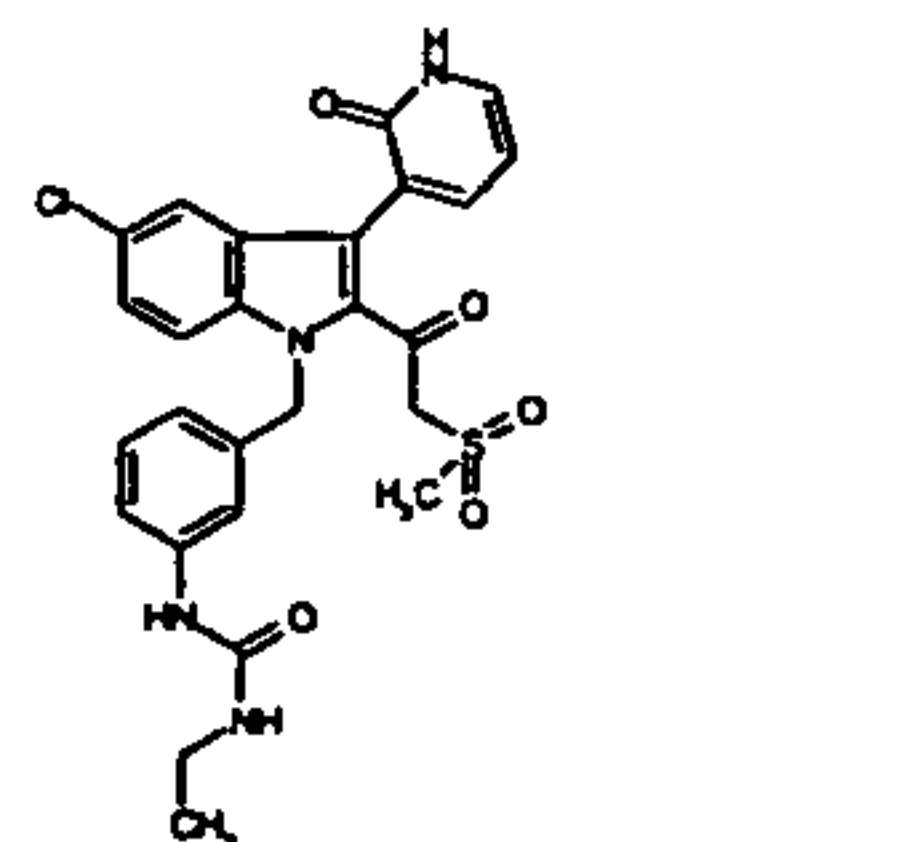
113

132		465.9
133		468.3
134		469.5
135		470.5
136		471.5
137		472.9
138		476.4

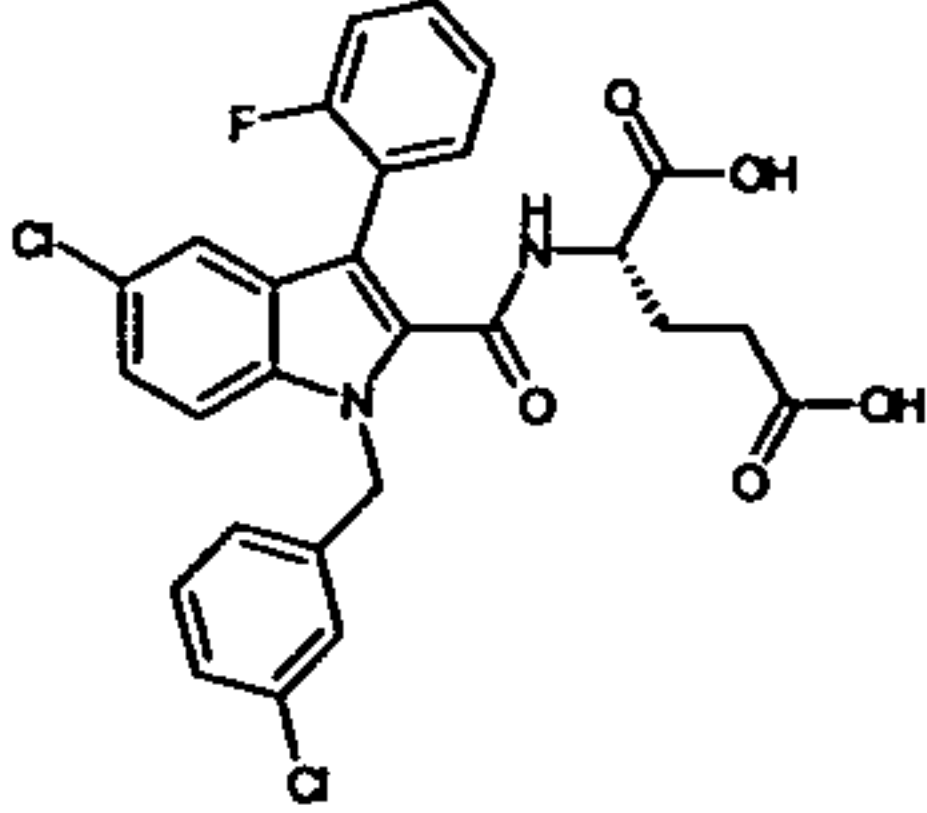
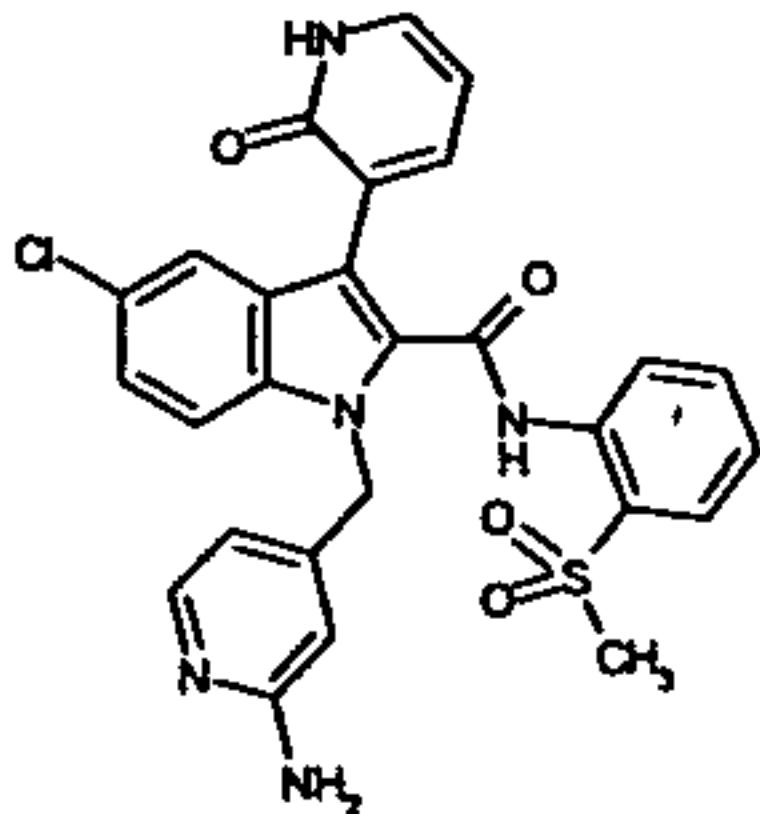
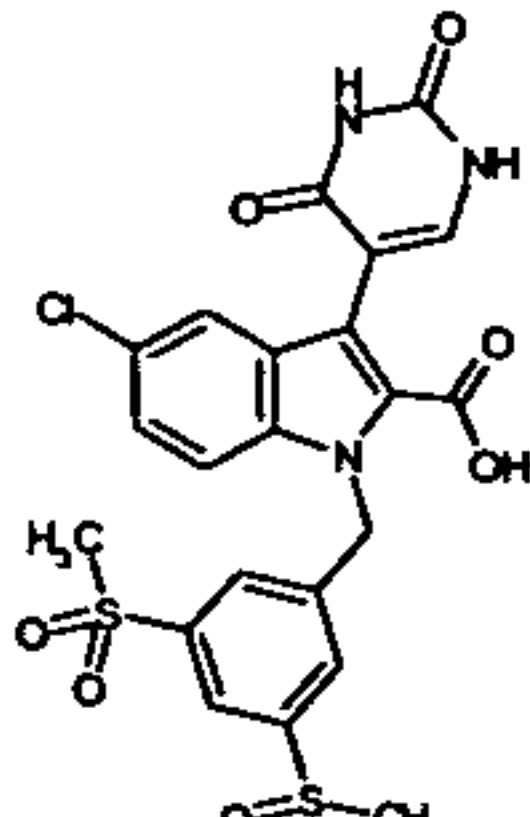
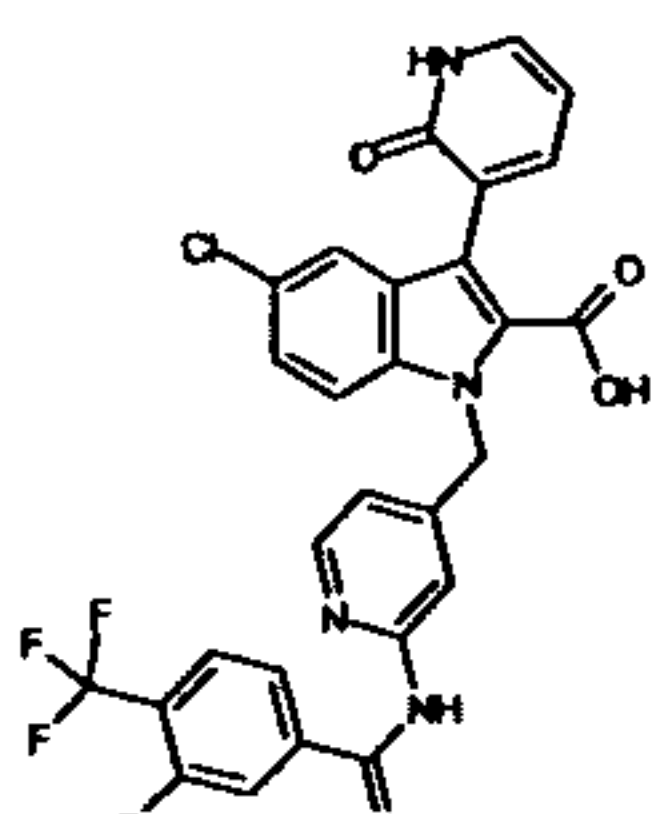
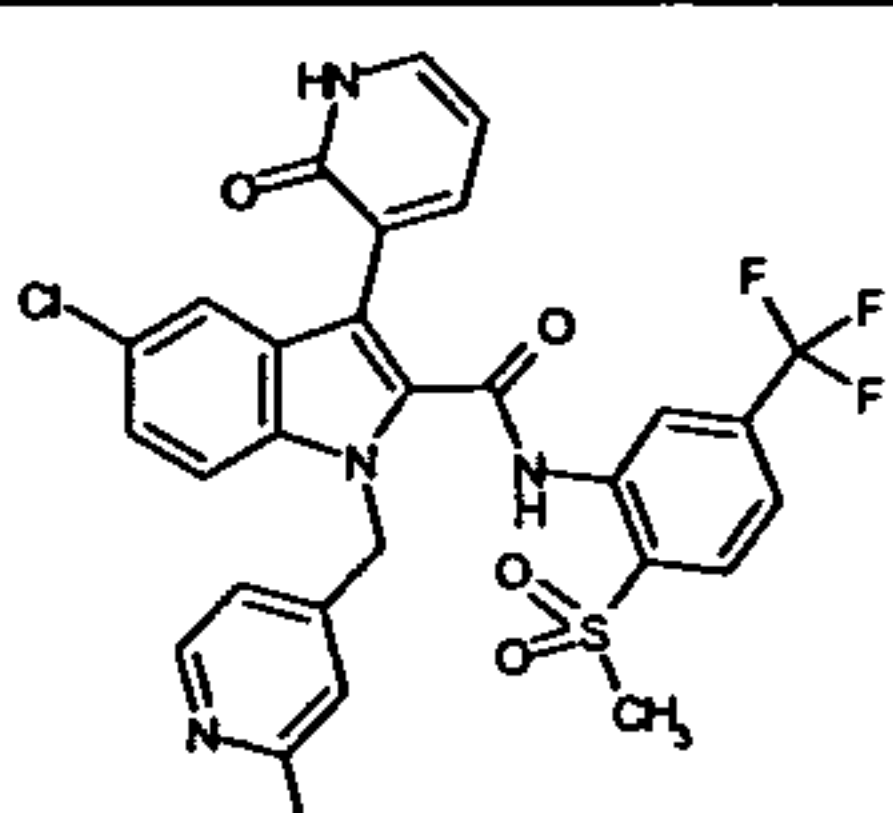
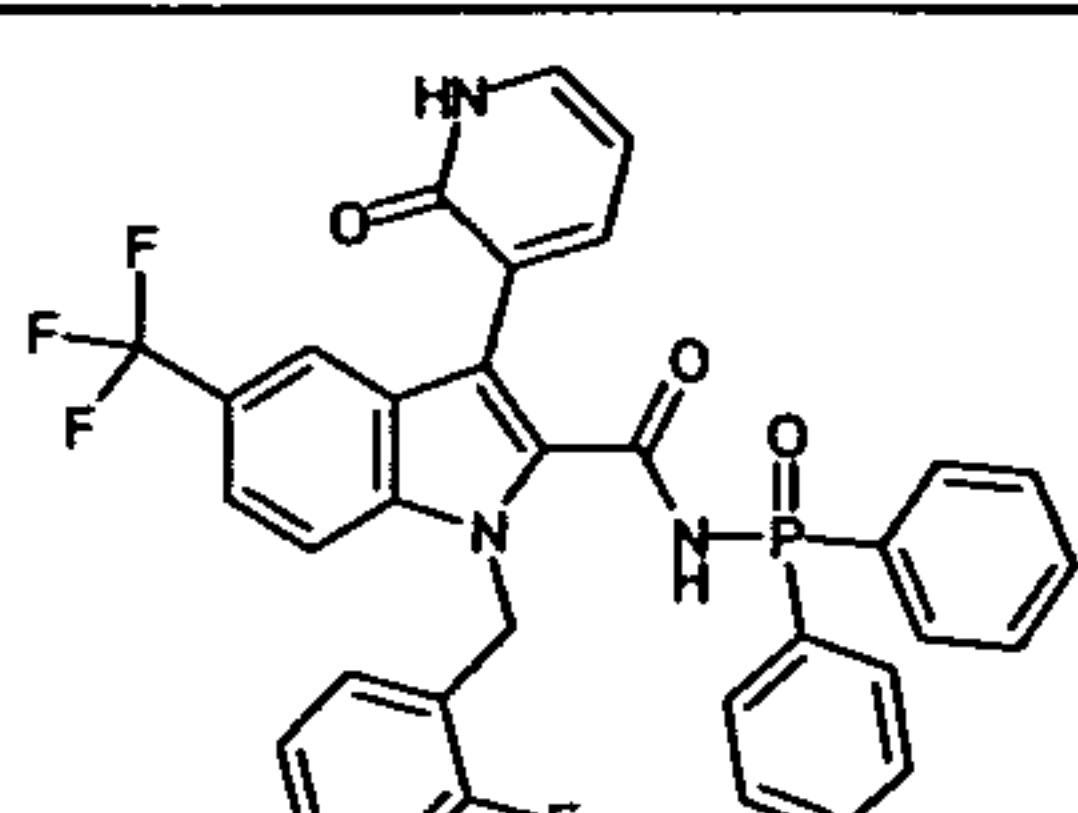
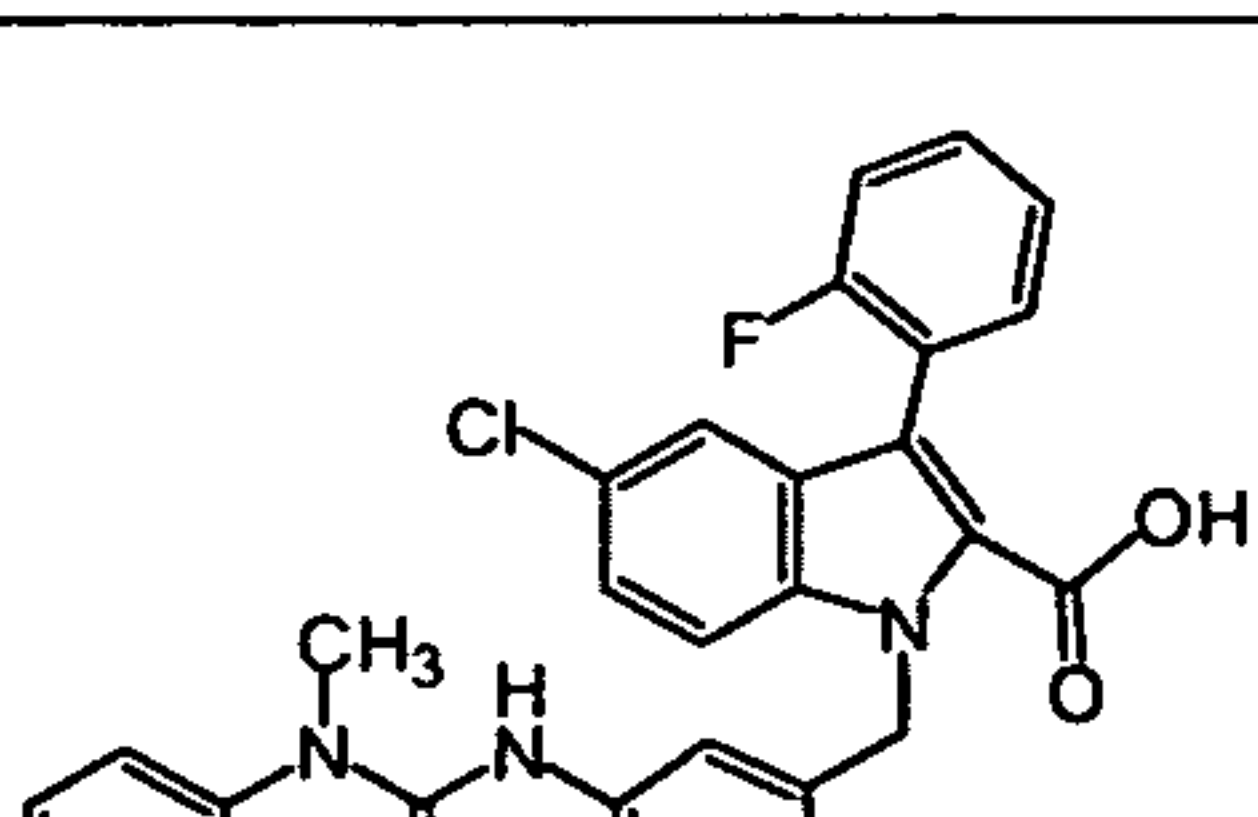
114

139		477.0
140		479.4
141		479.9
142		486.9
143		489.9
144		498.5
145		509.0

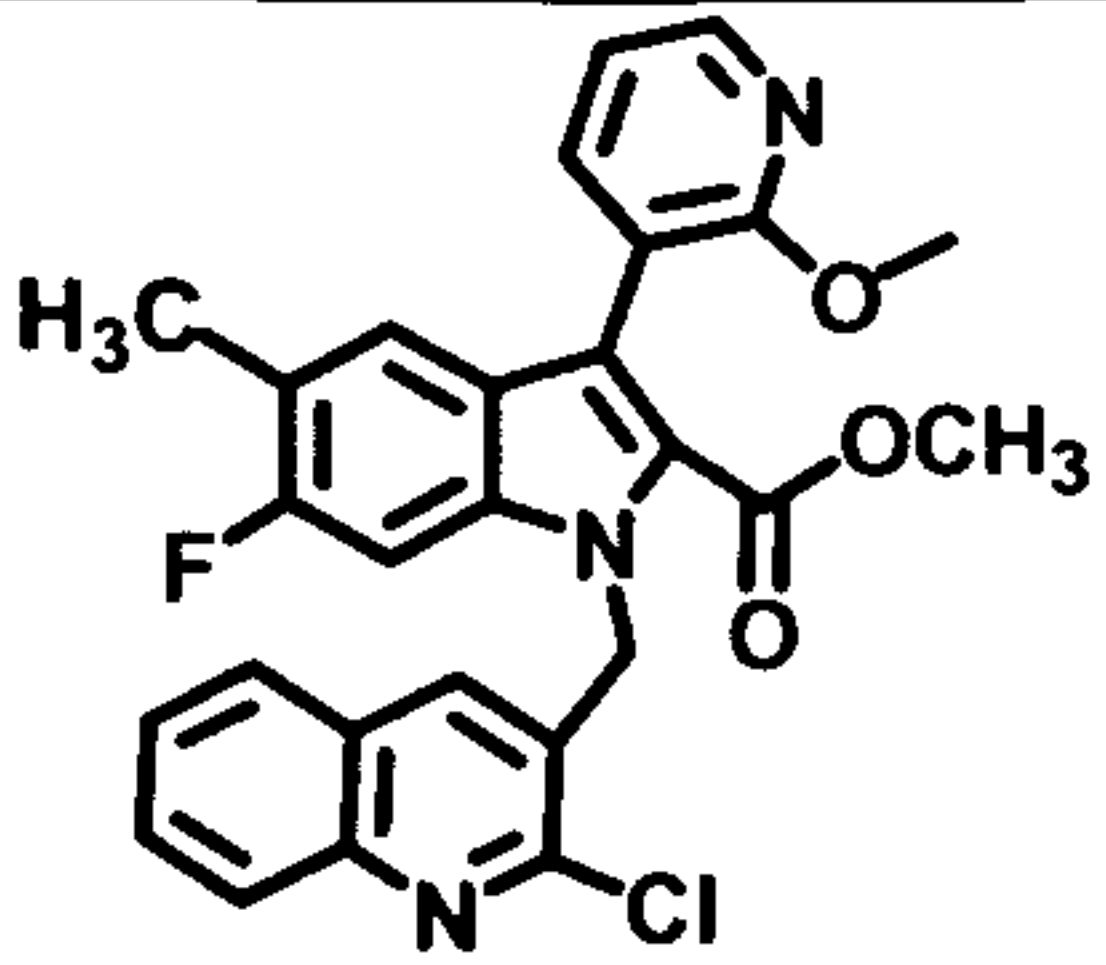
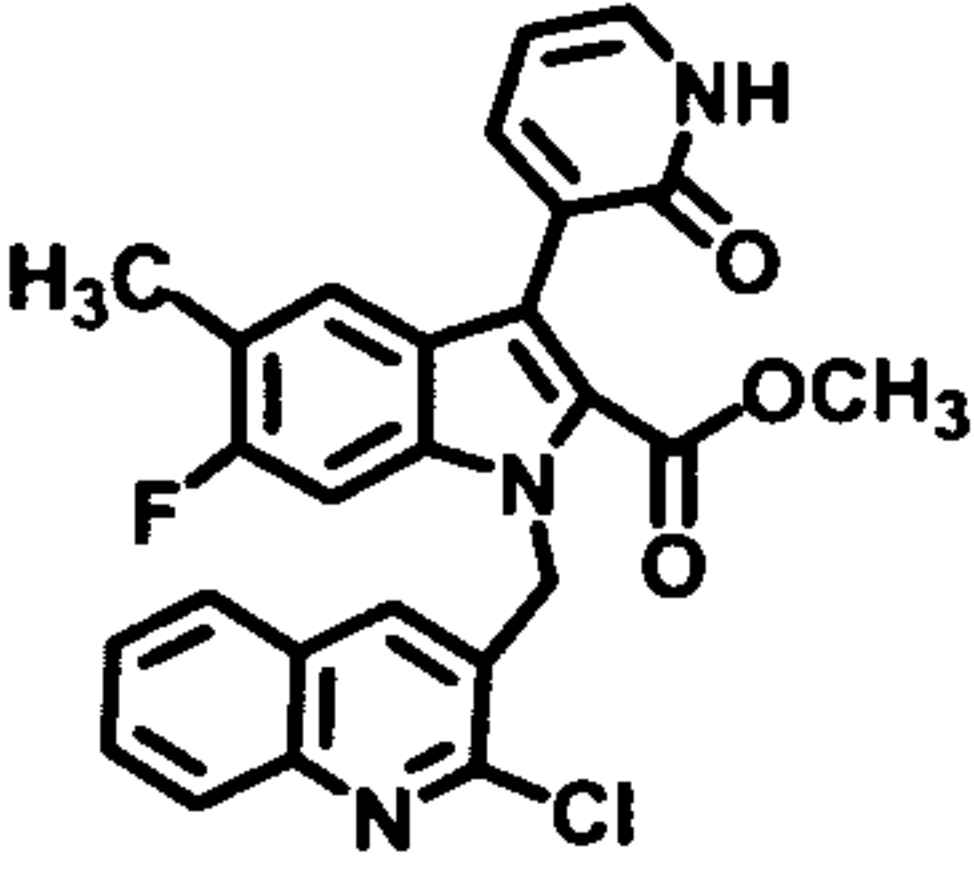
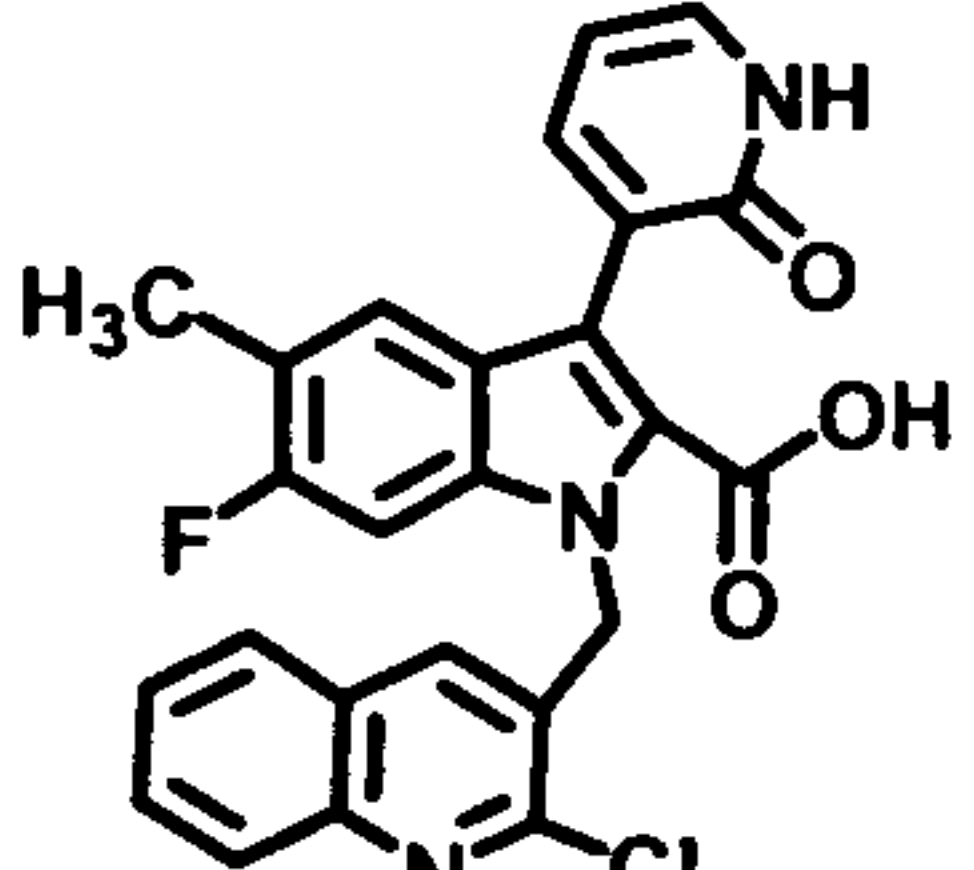
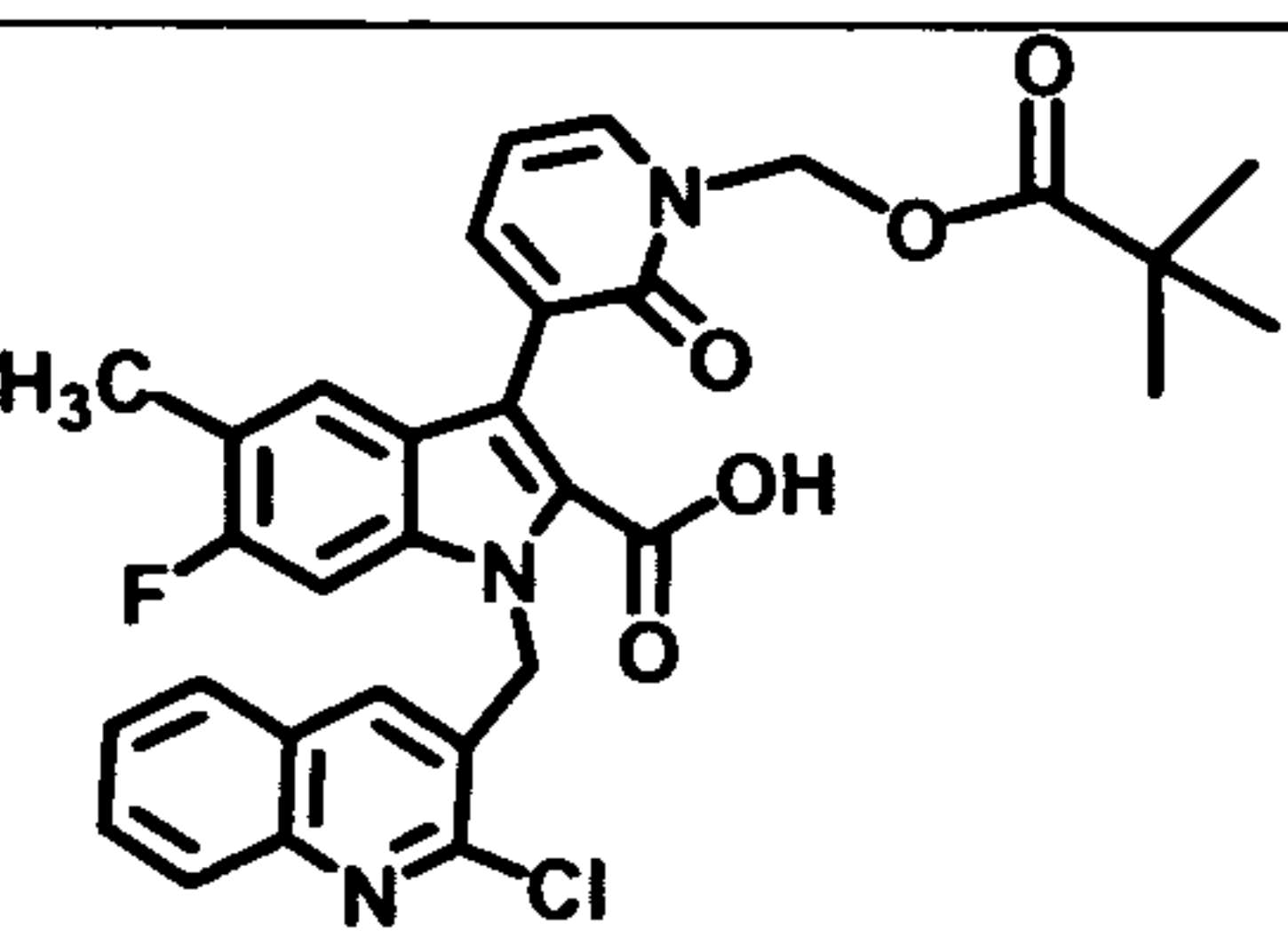
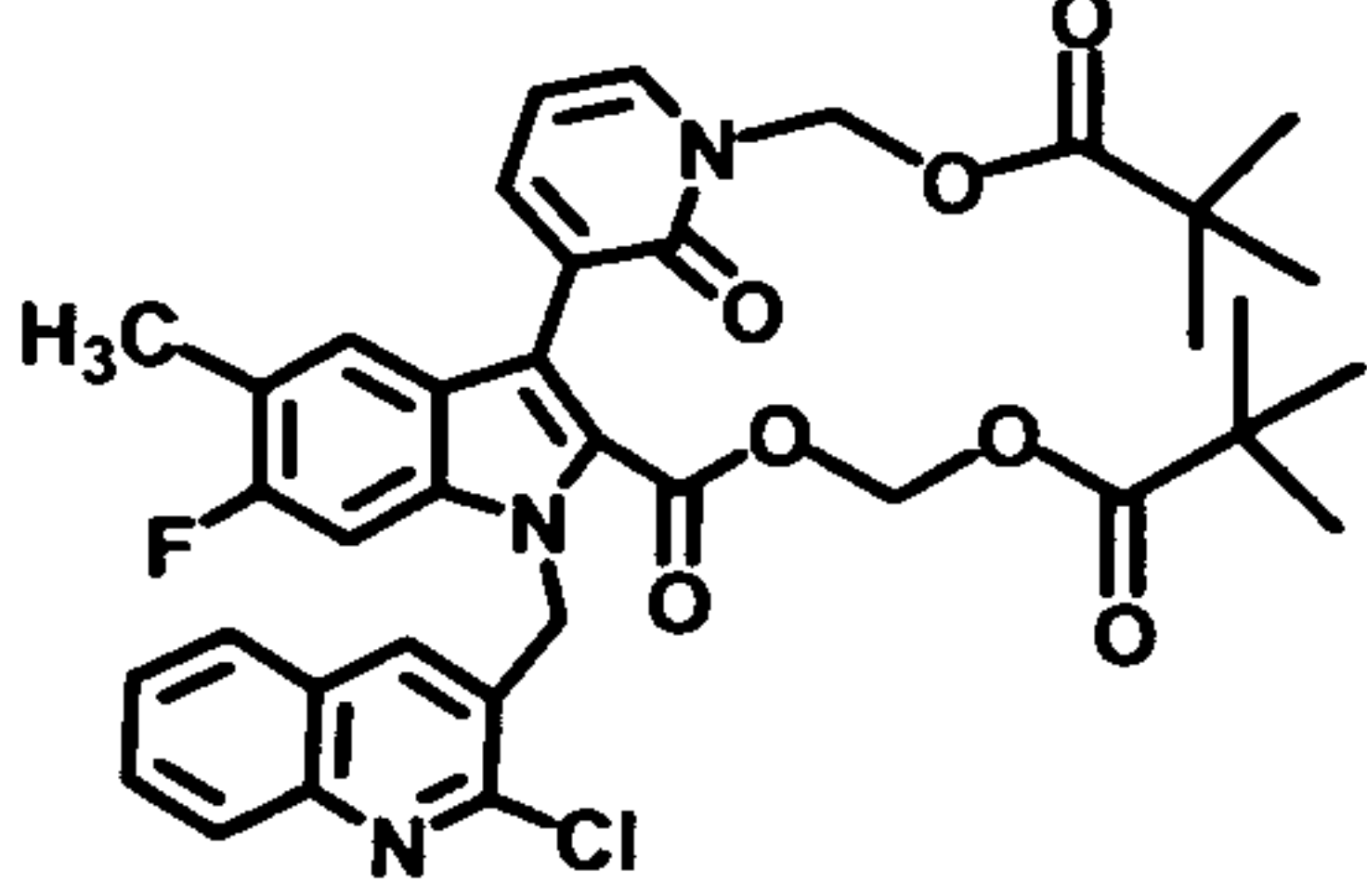
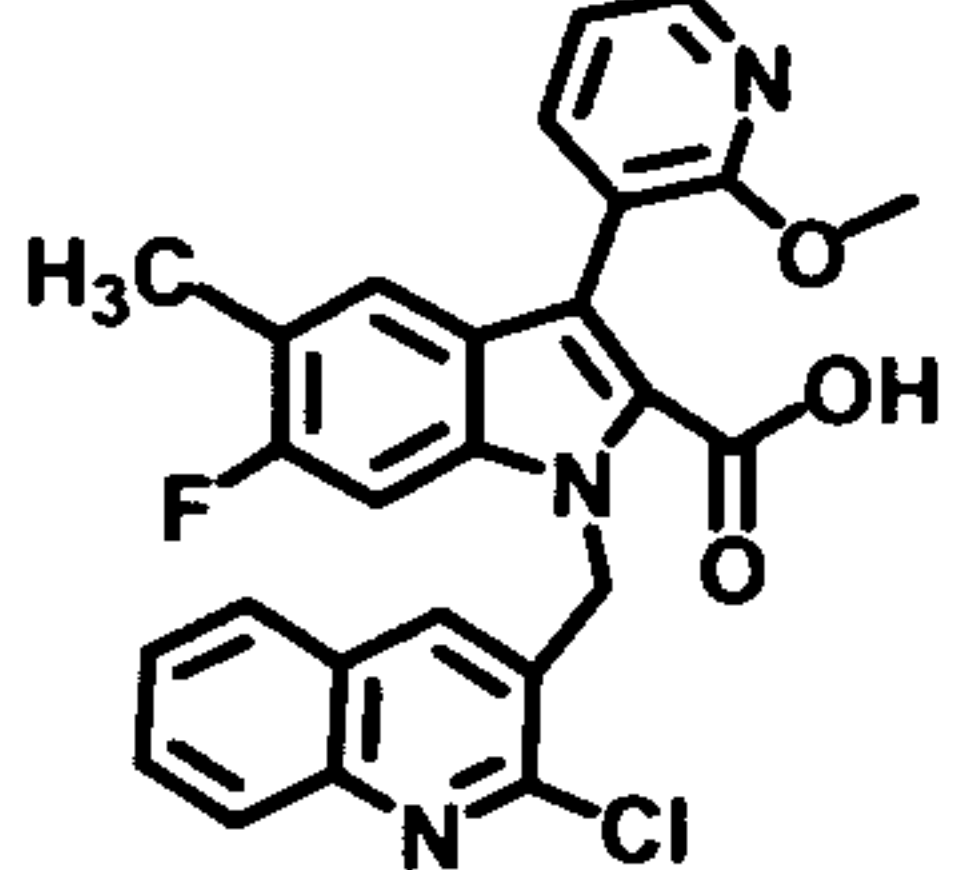
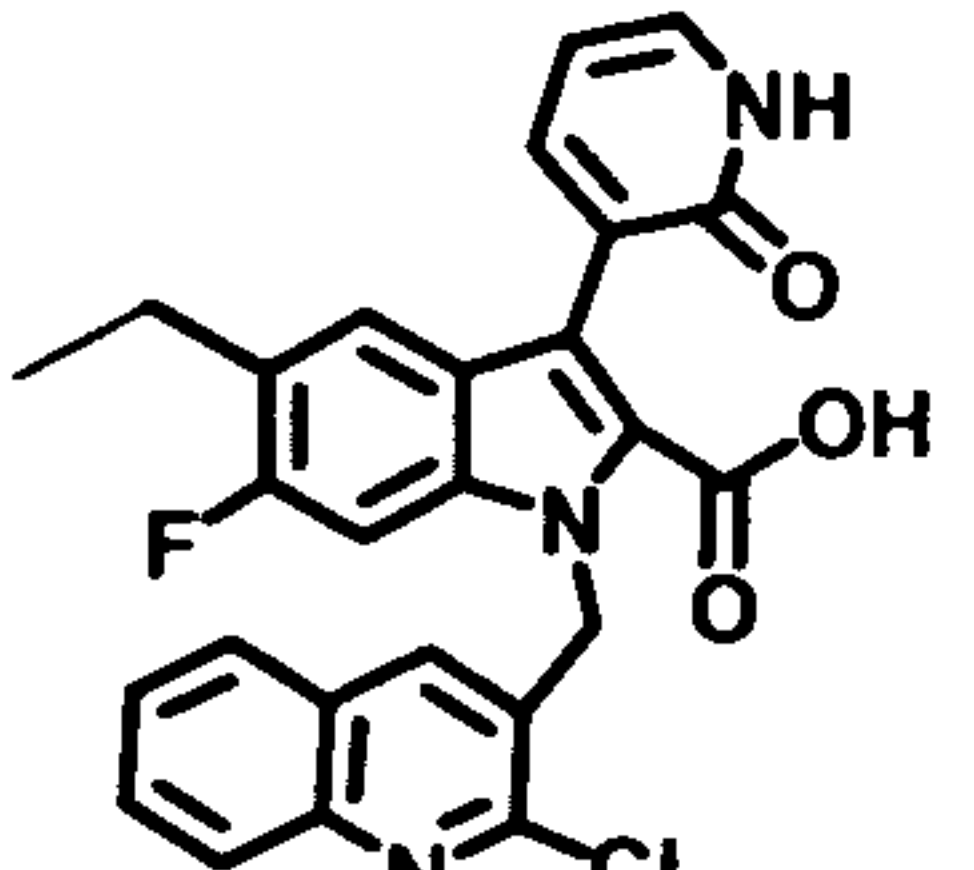
115

146		512.6
147		518.0
148		521.4
149		526.6
150		530.4
151		541.4
152		542.0

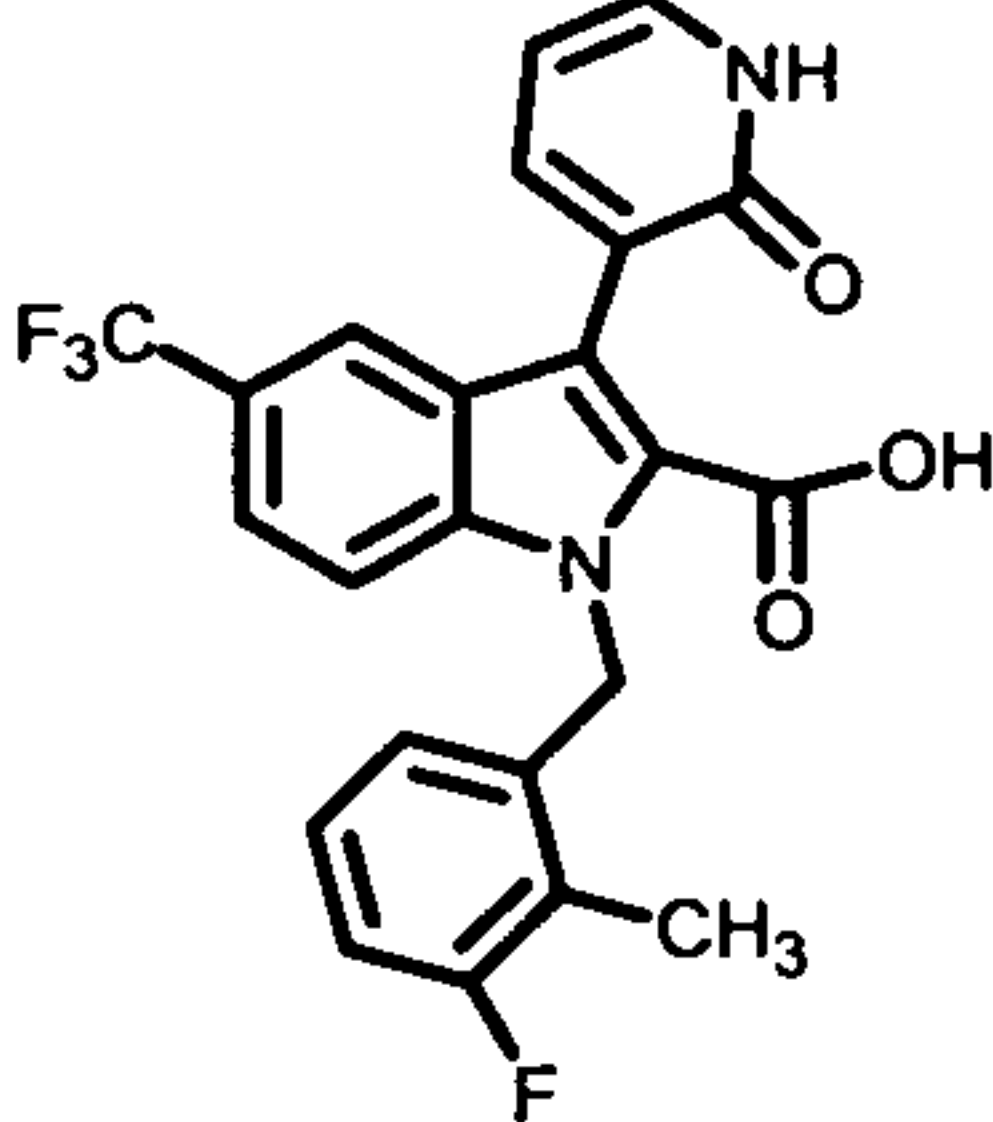
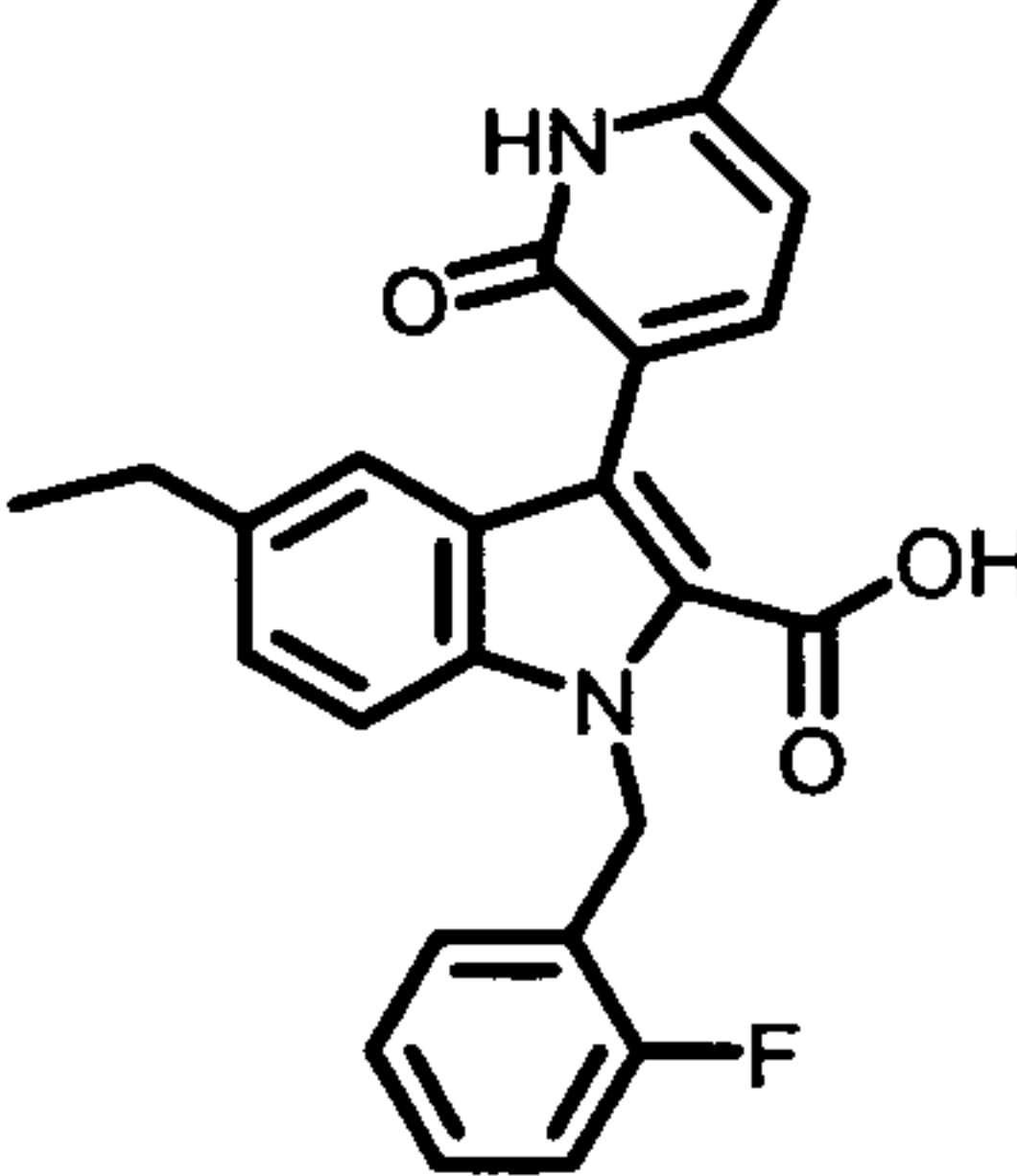
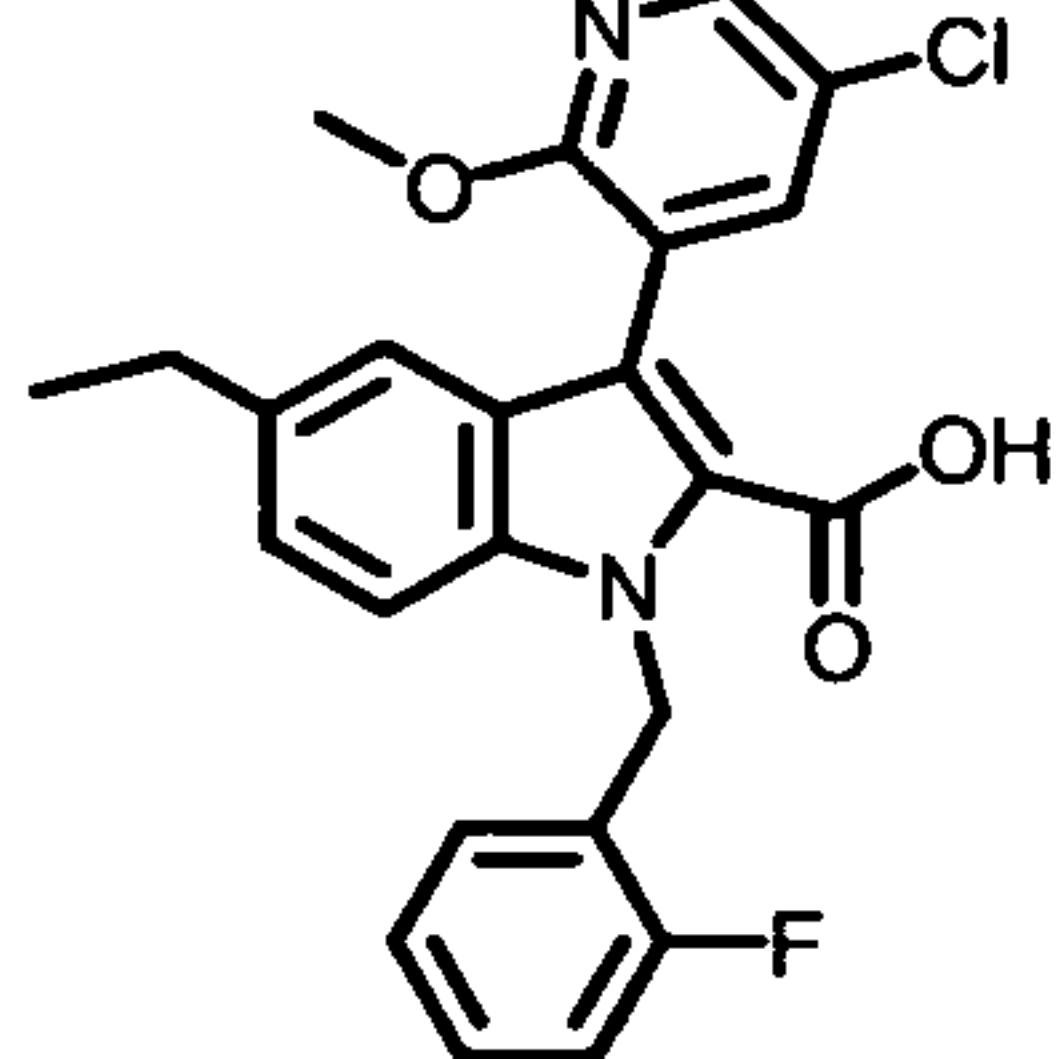
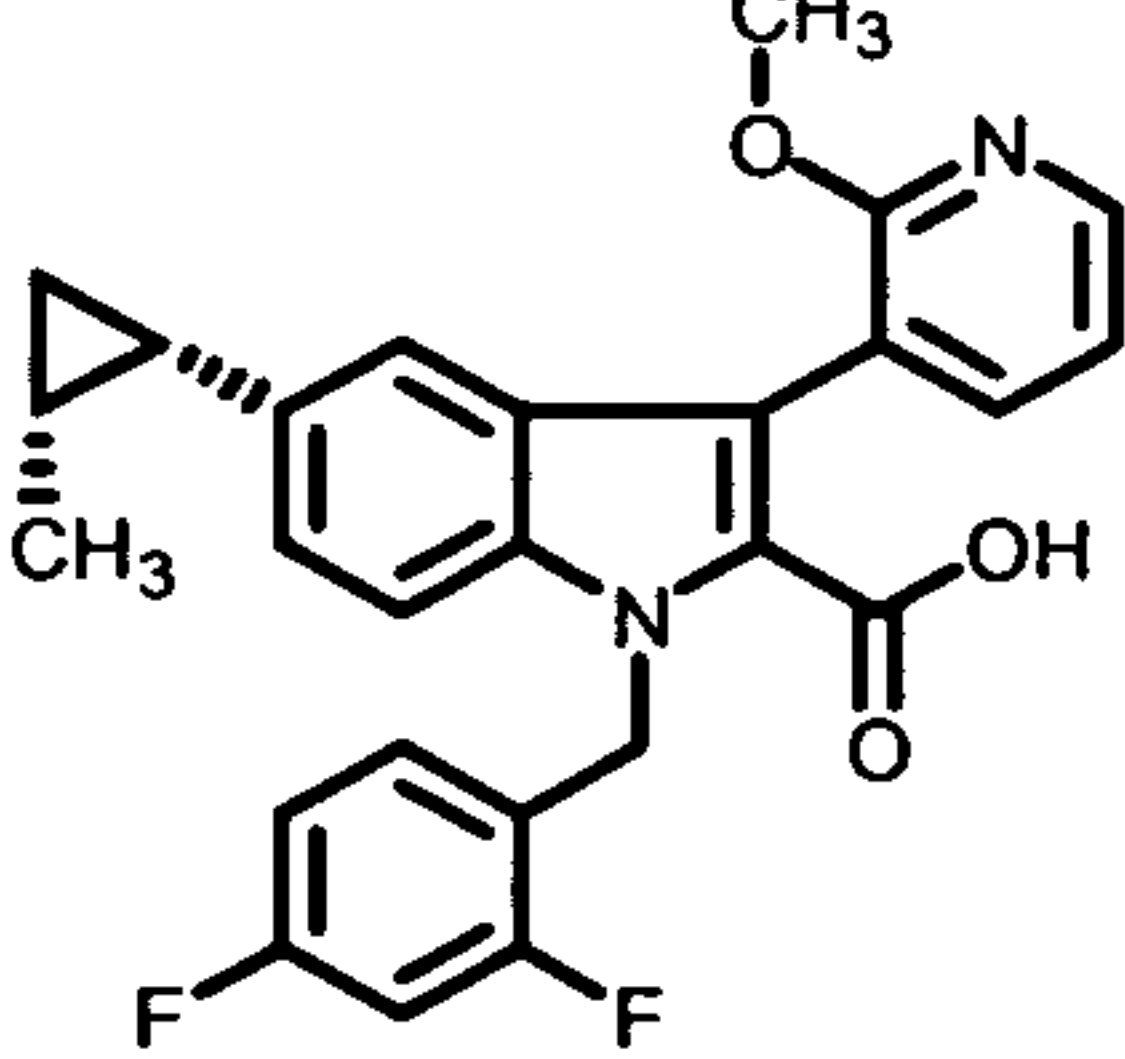
116

153		544.4
154		549.0
155		553.0
156		585.9
157		617.0
158		630.6
159		529

117

160		491
161		477
162		462
163		577
164		690
165		477
166		477

118

167		639
168		405
169		440
170		NA

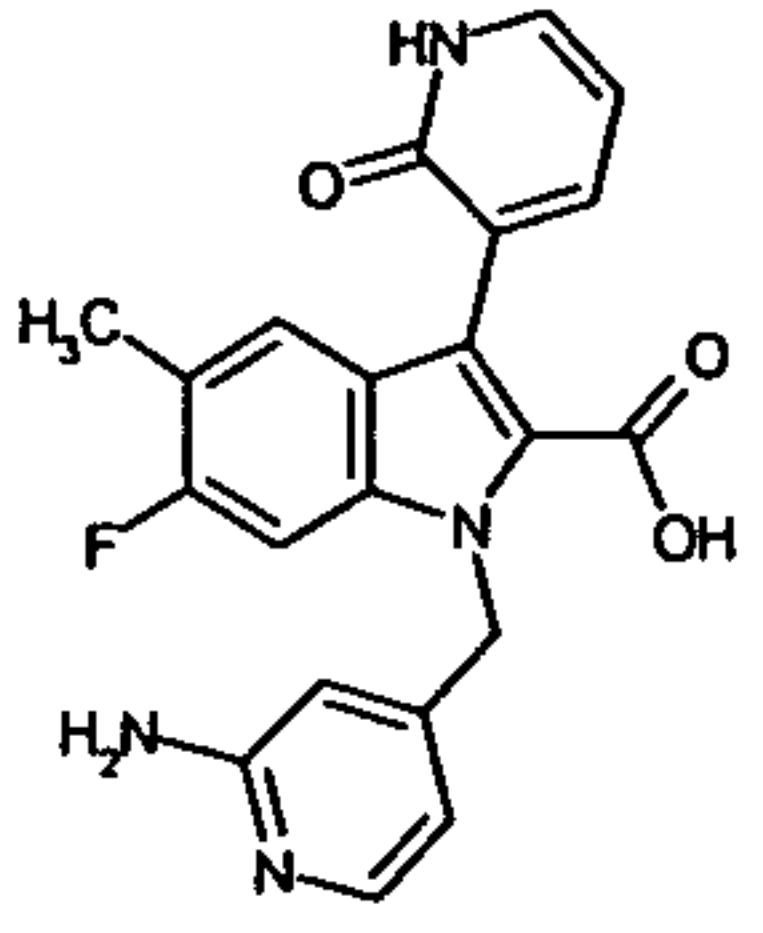
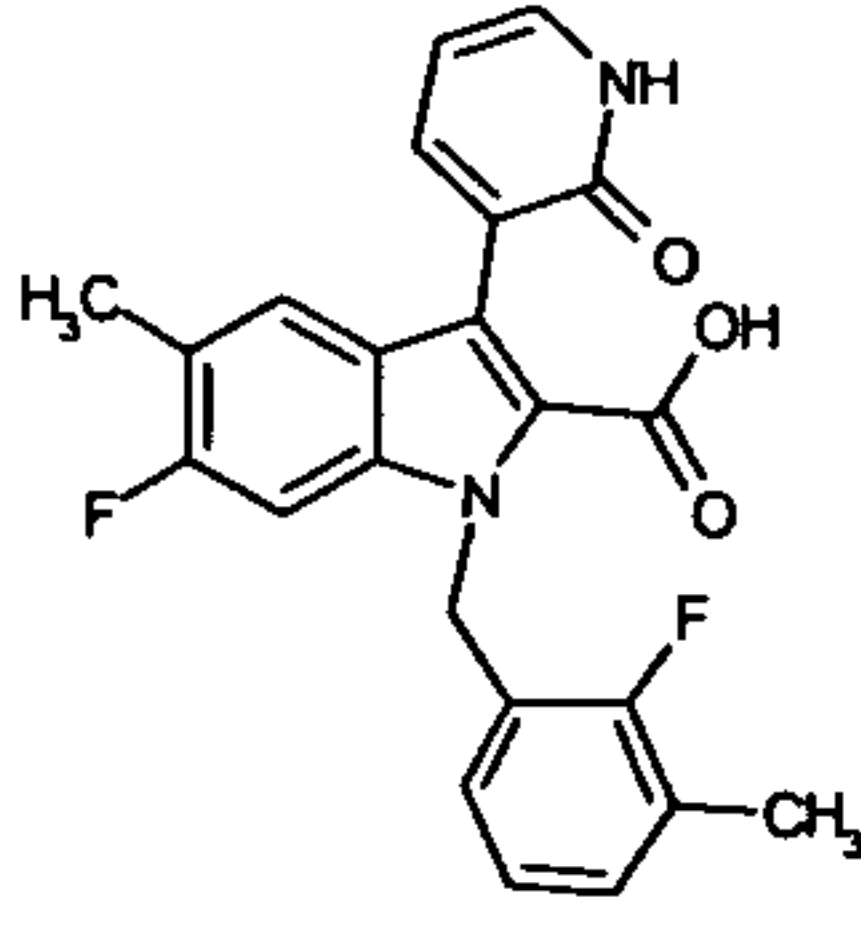
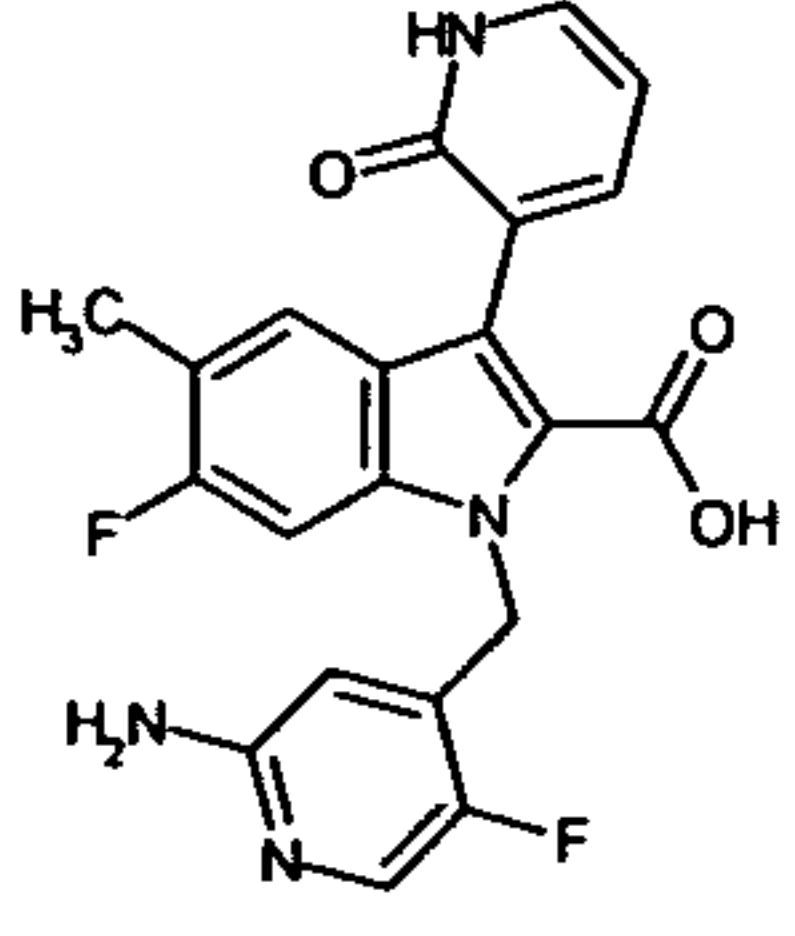
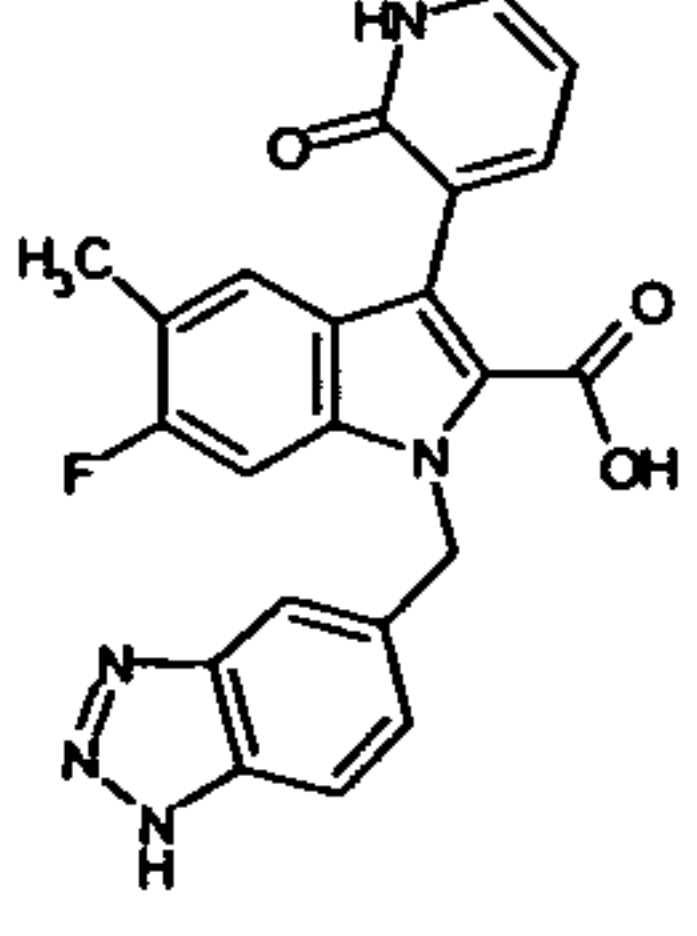
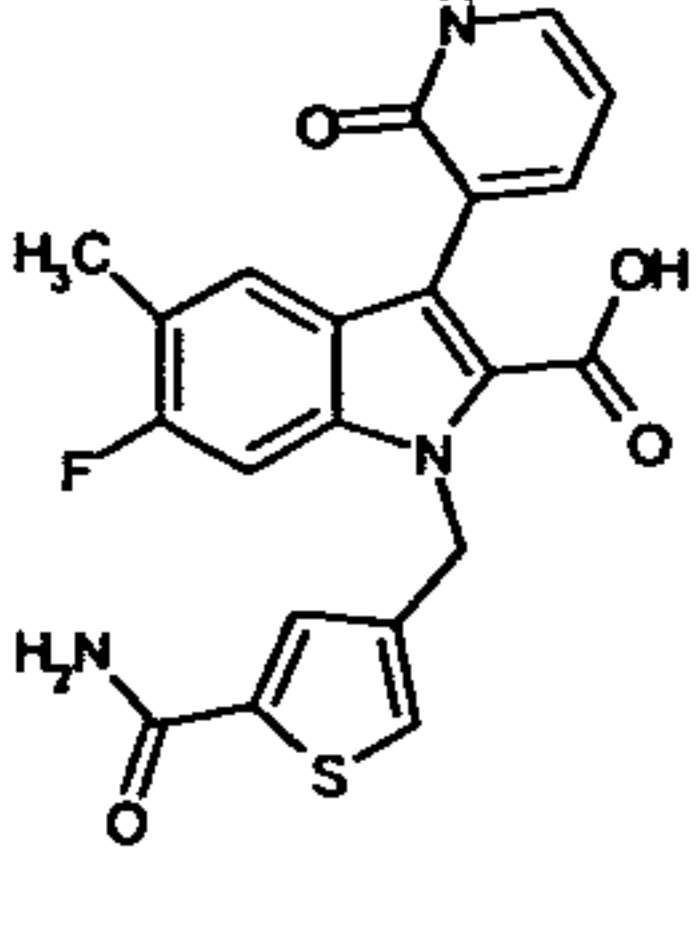
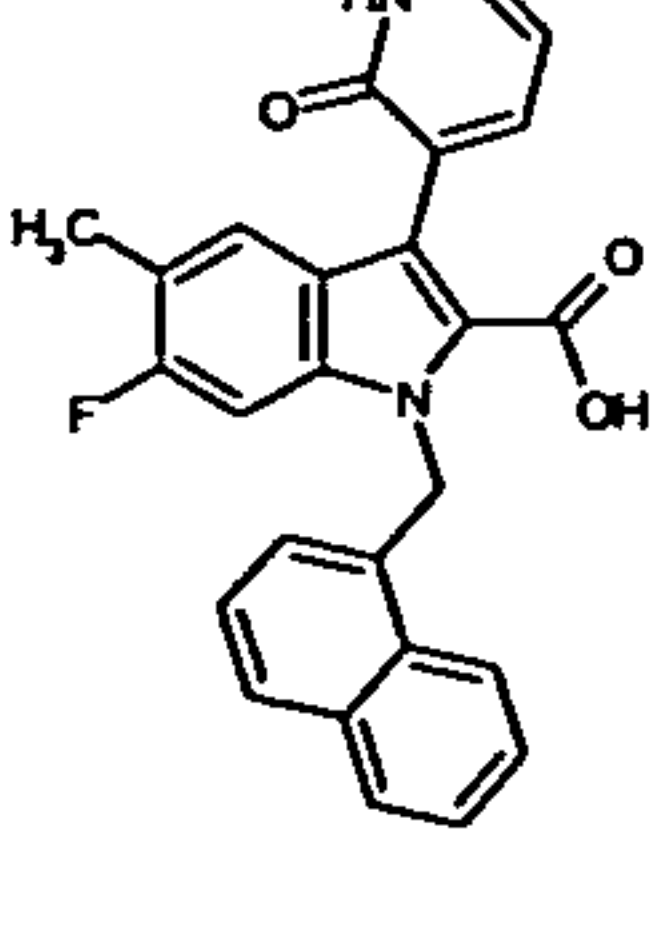
NA = not available

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, esters and prodrugs thereof.

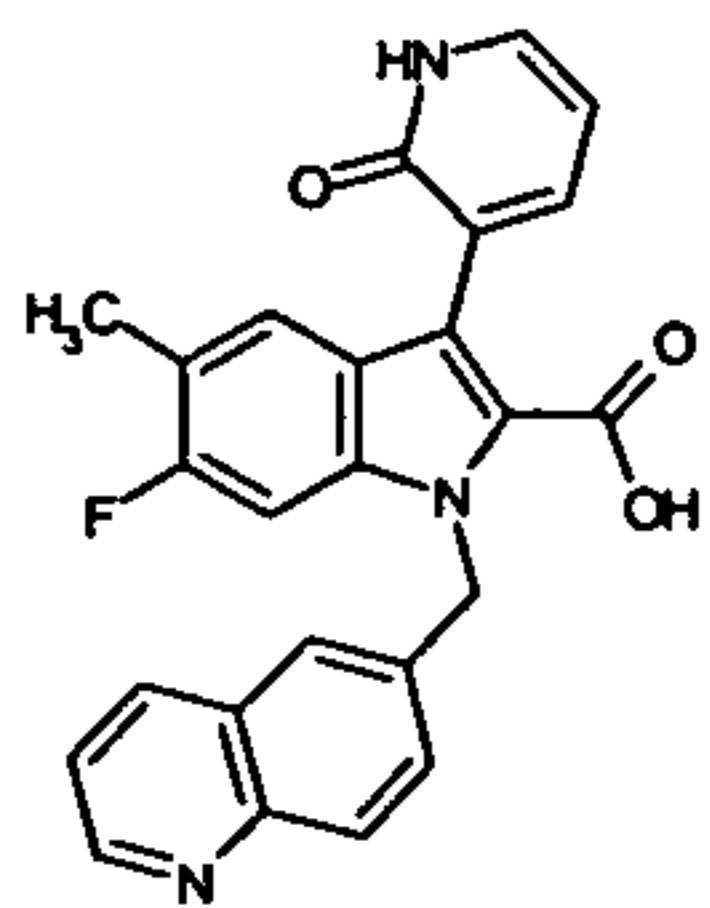
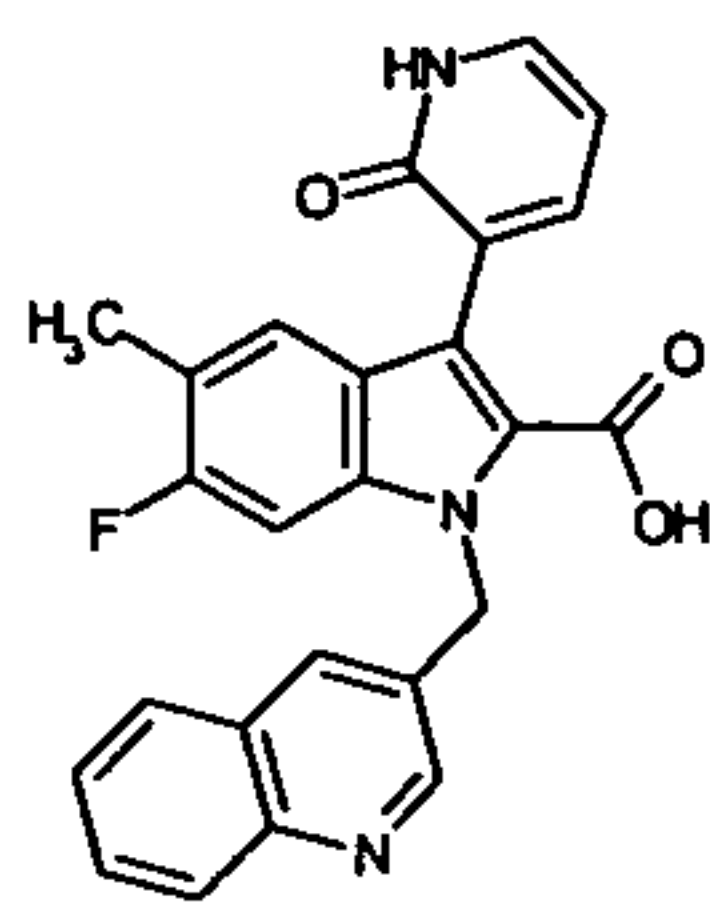
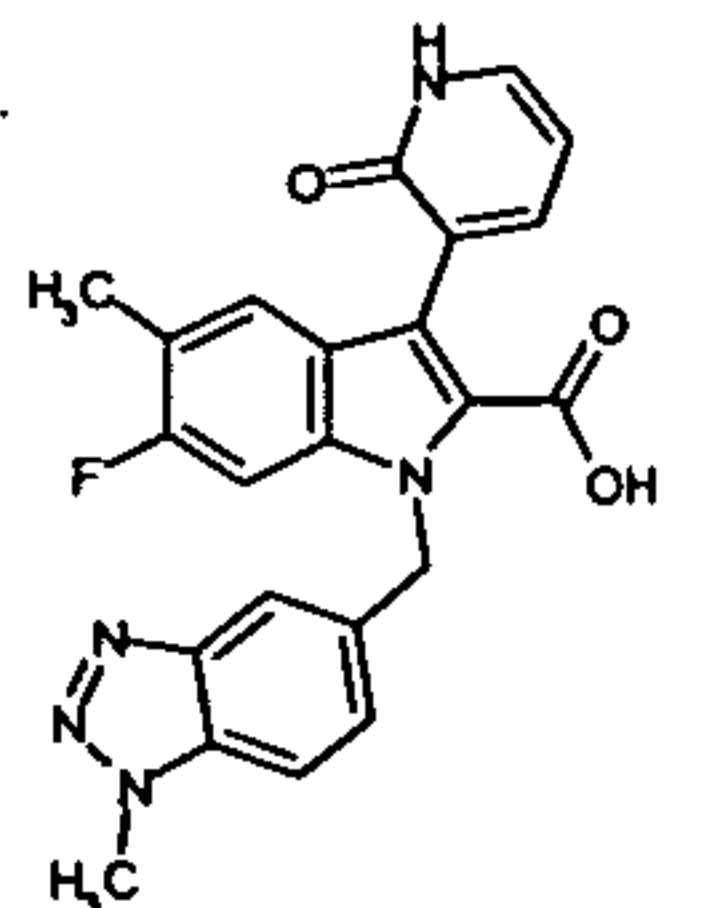
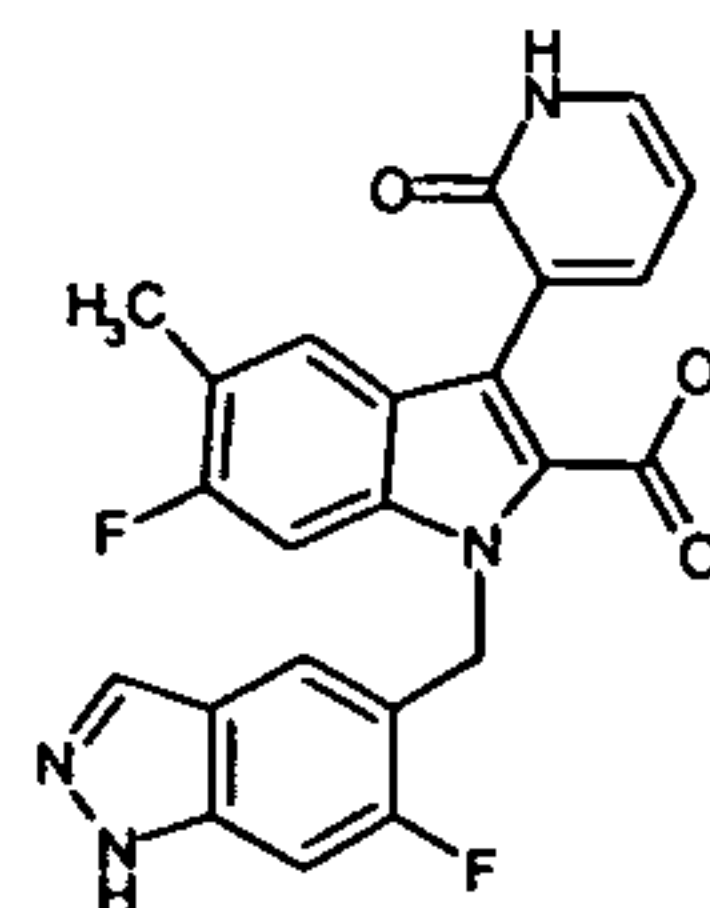
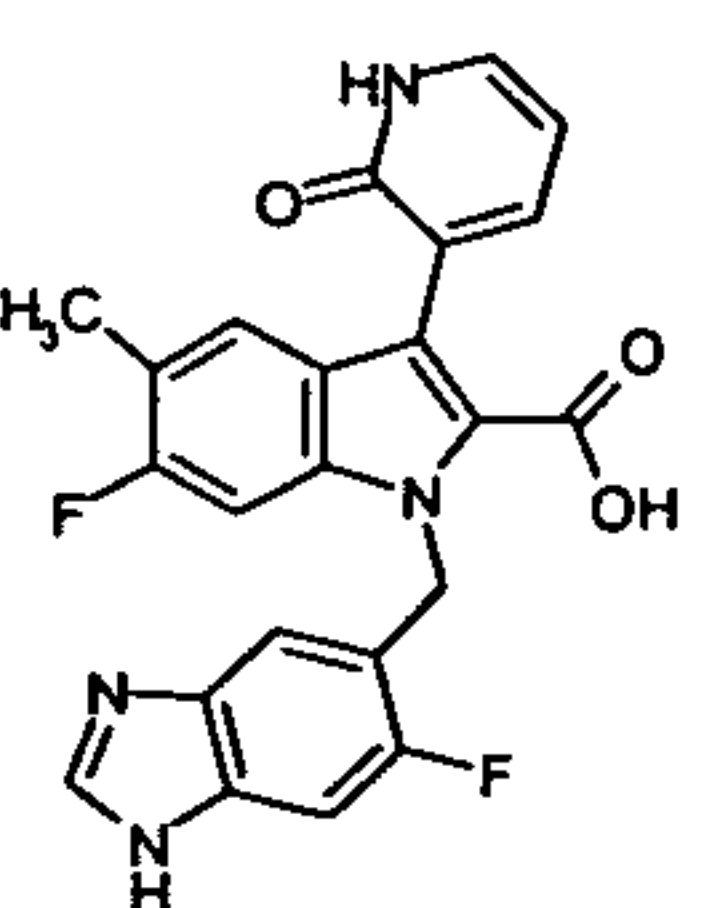
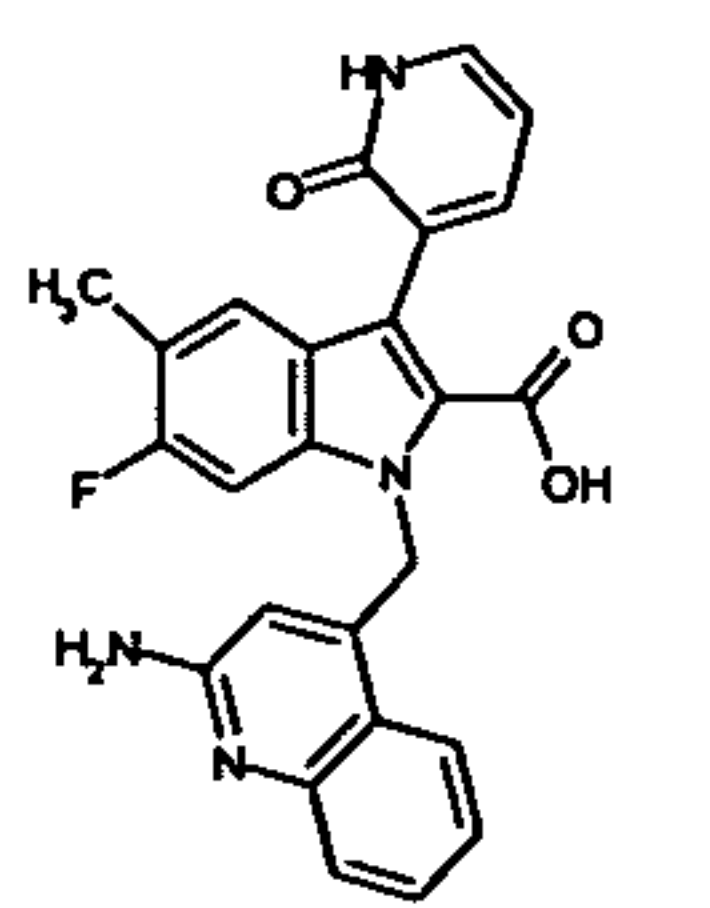
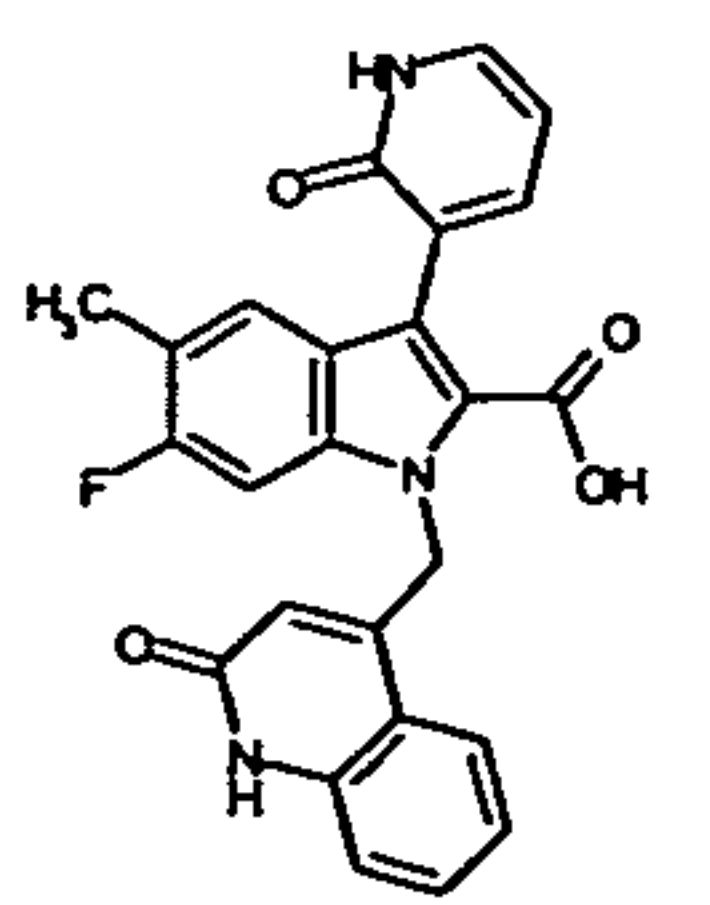
5 Additional illustrative examples of the compounds of the present invention, include but are not limited to, the compounds set forth below in Table 2.

Table 2

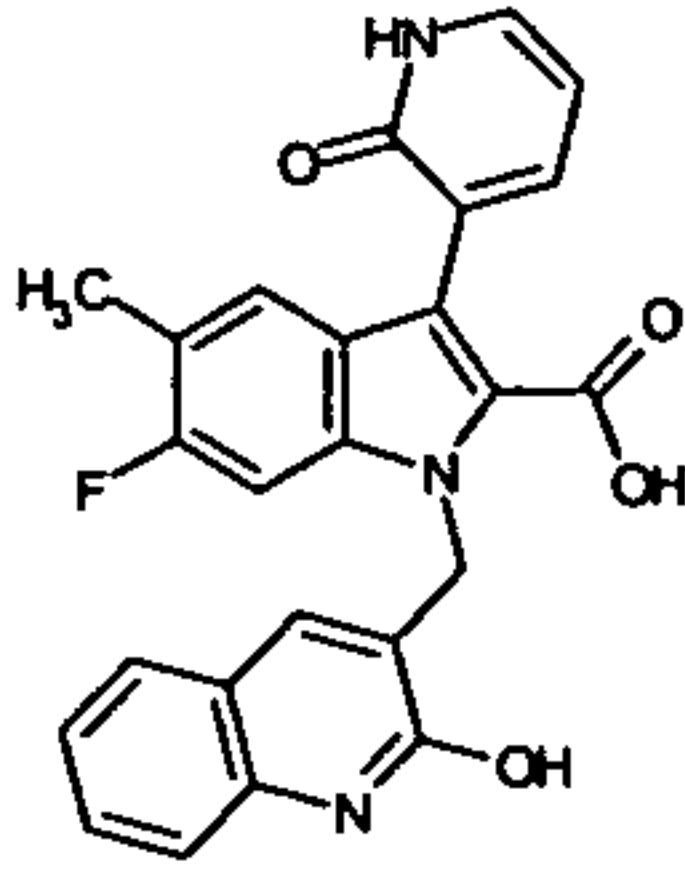
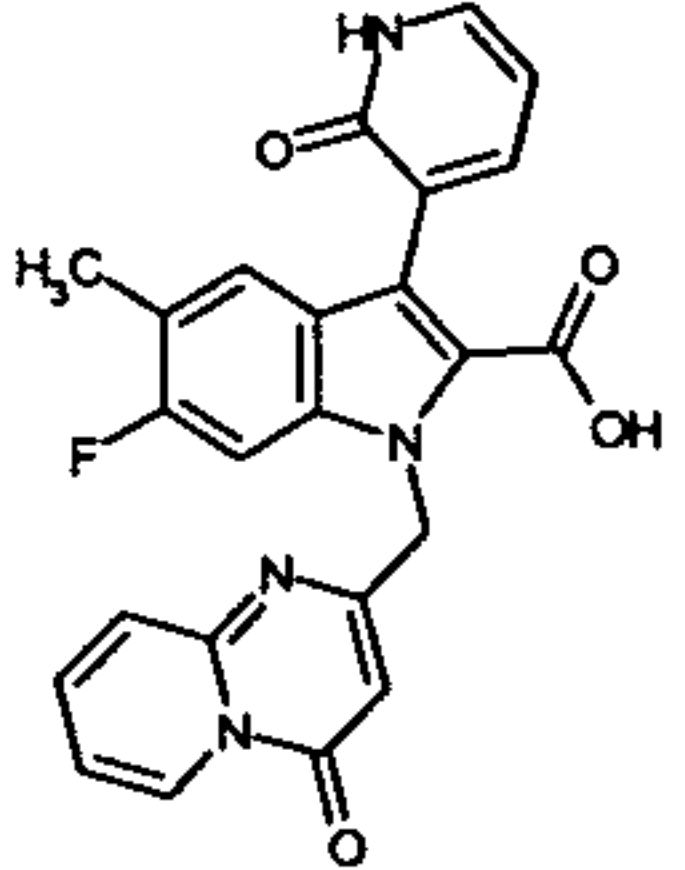
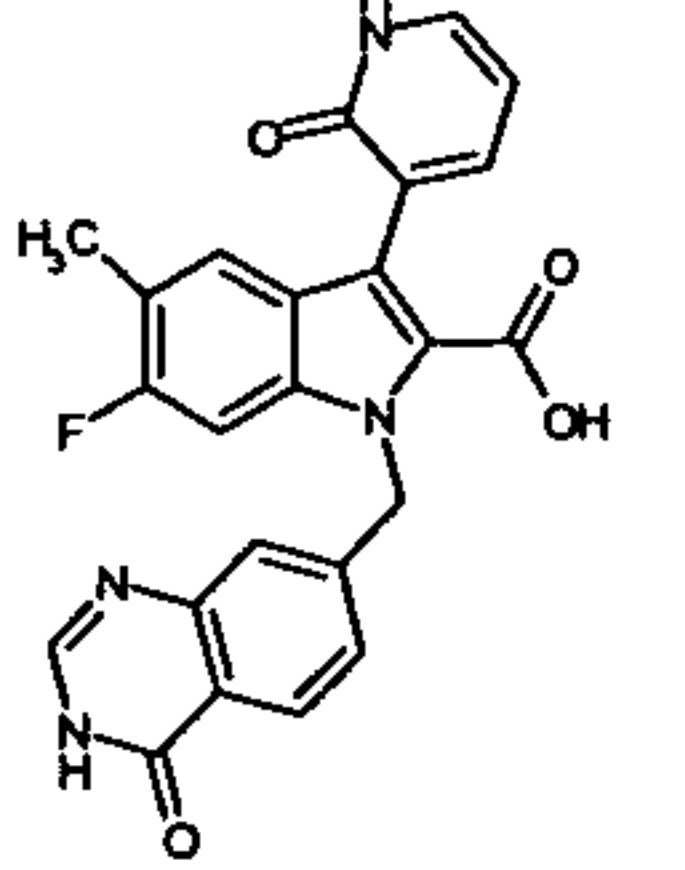
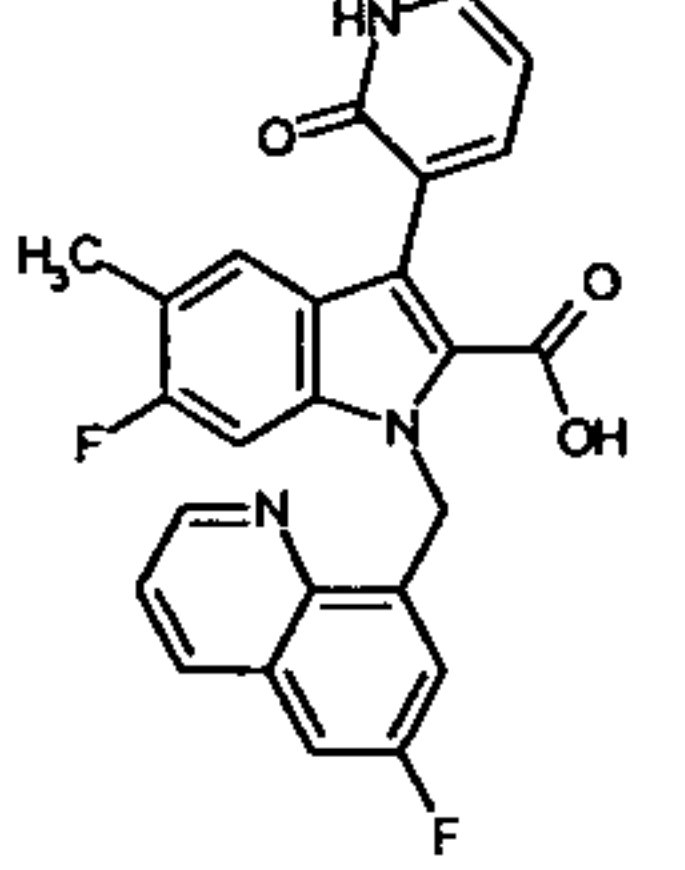
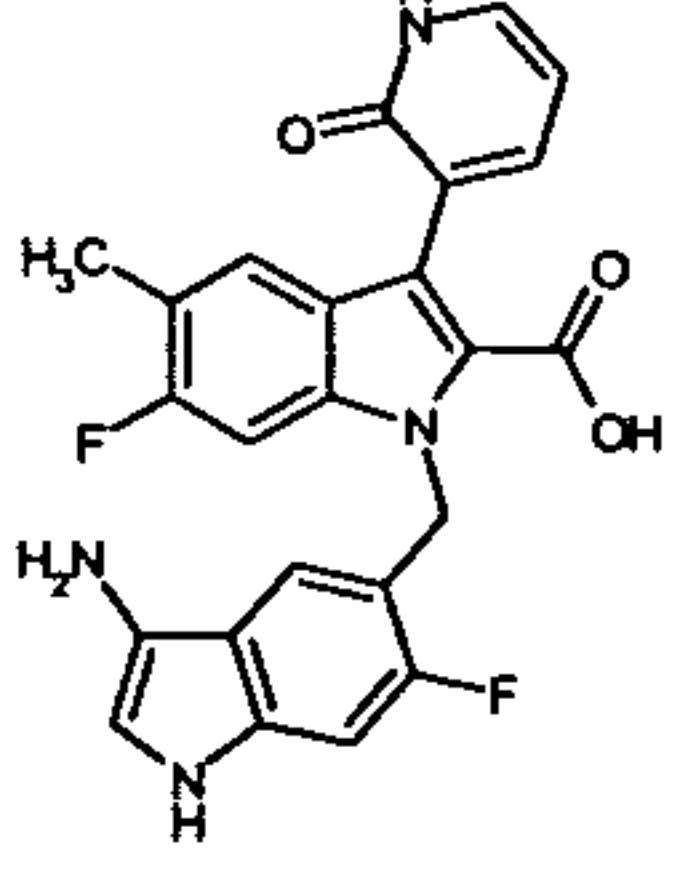
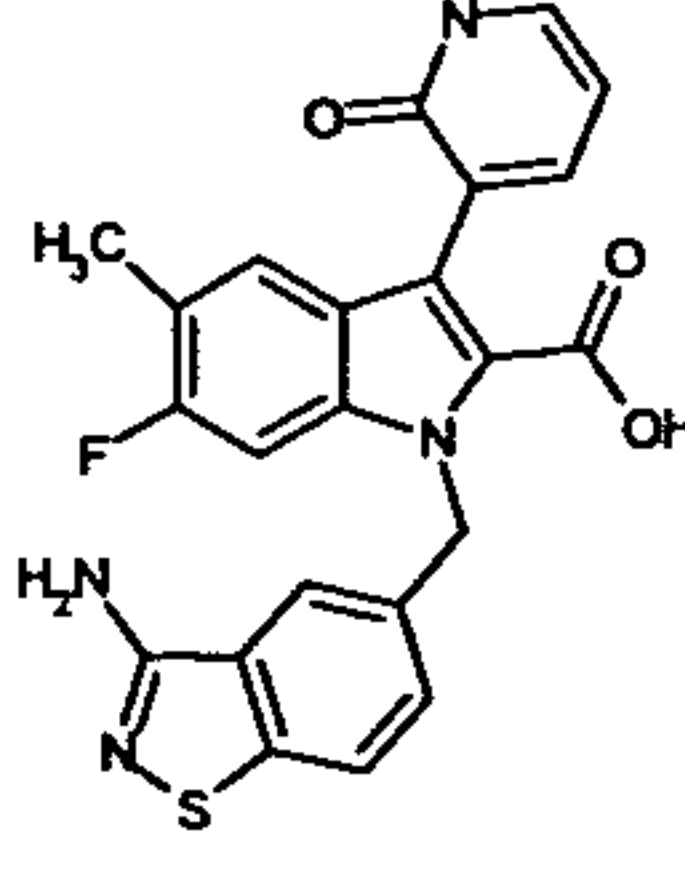
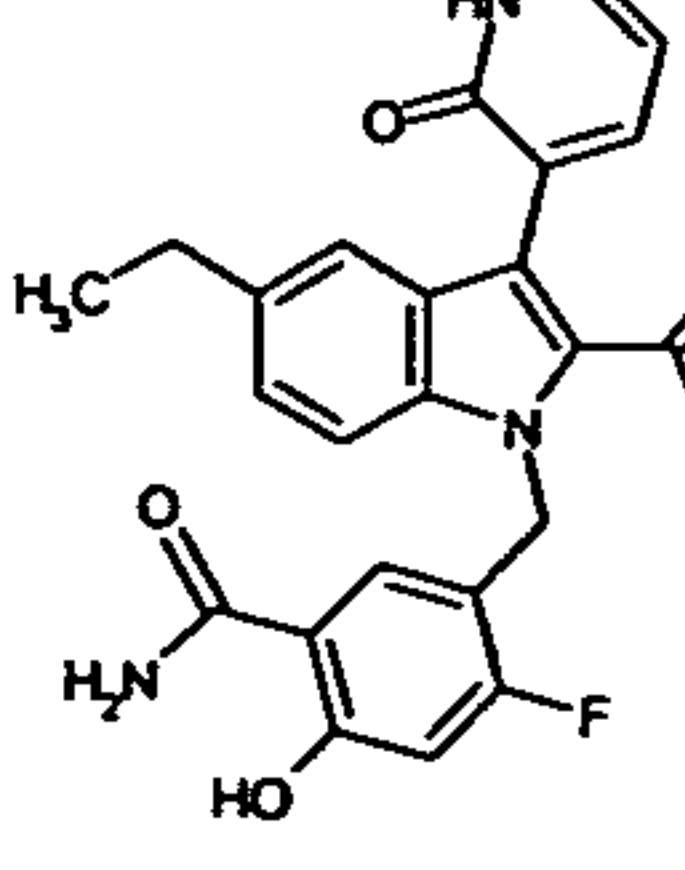
119

No.	STRUCTURE	M+1
171		393.4
172		409.4
173		411.4
174		418.4
175		426.4
176		427.5

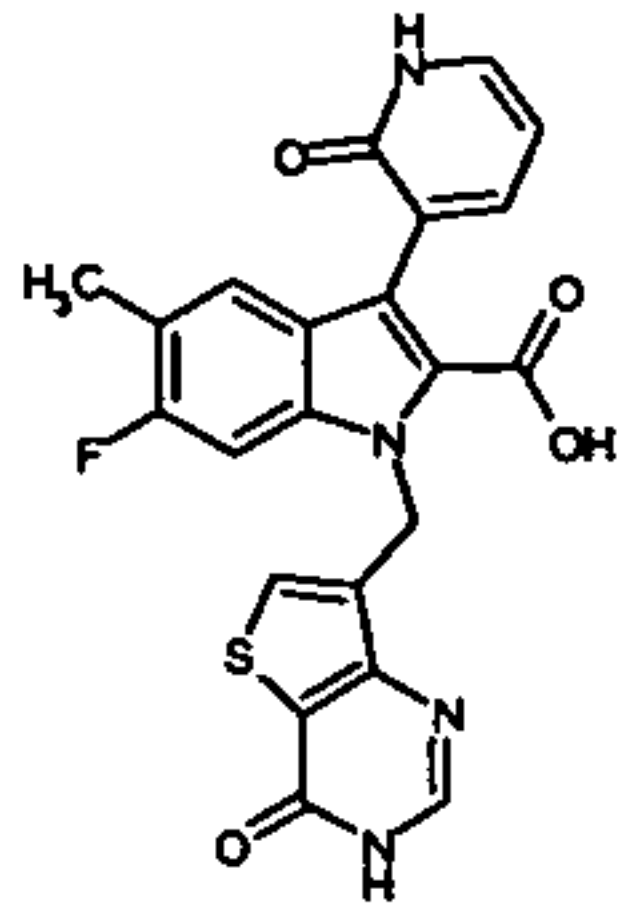
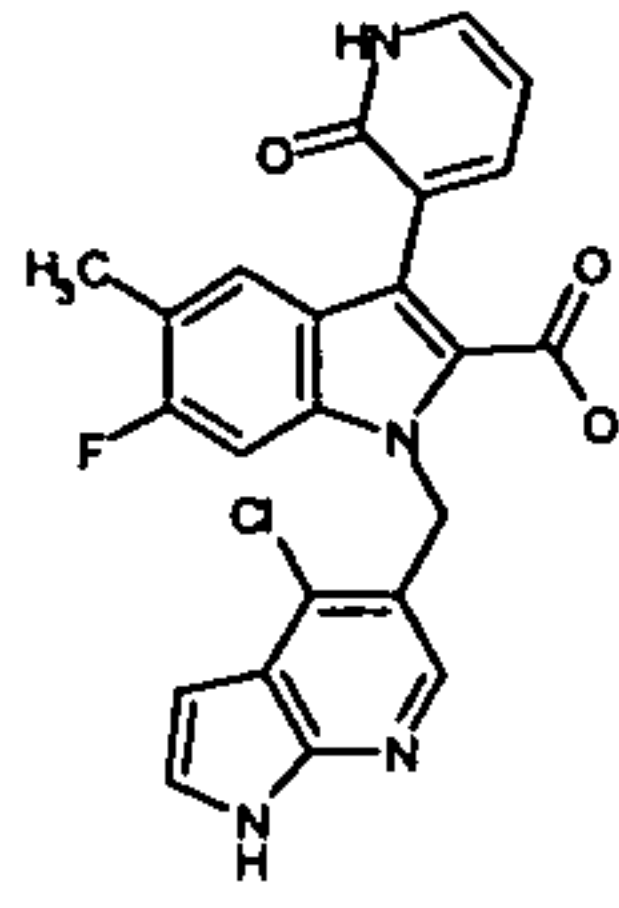
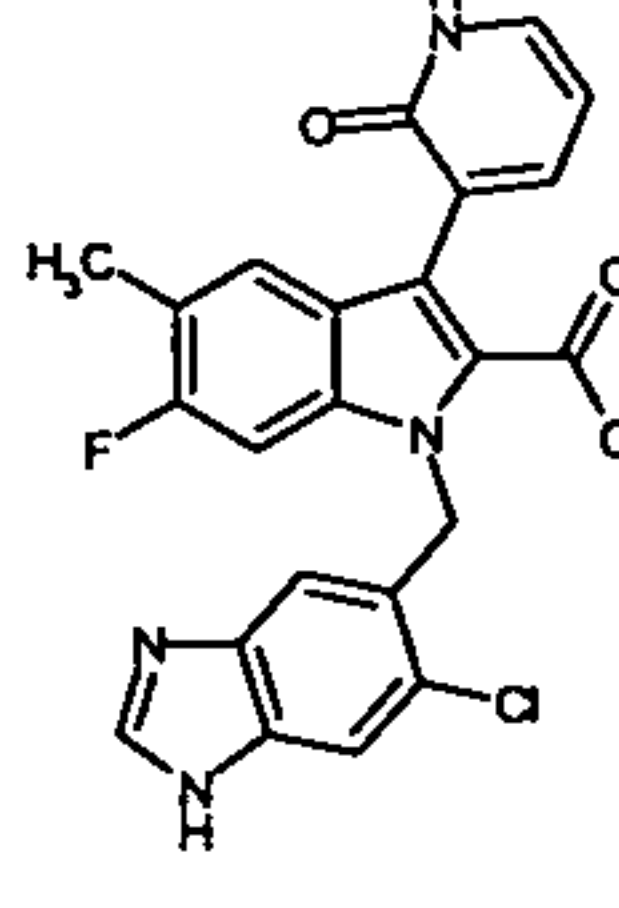
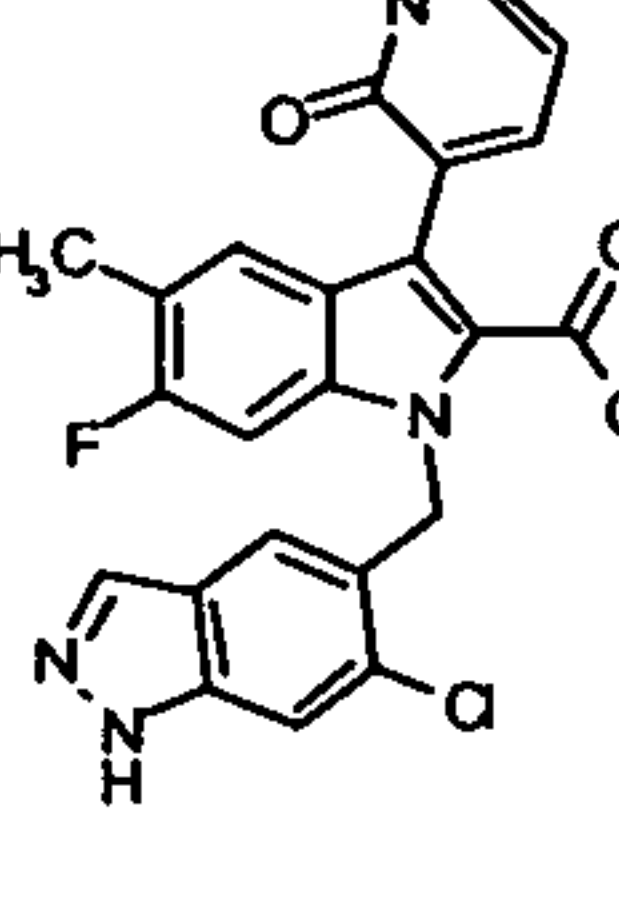
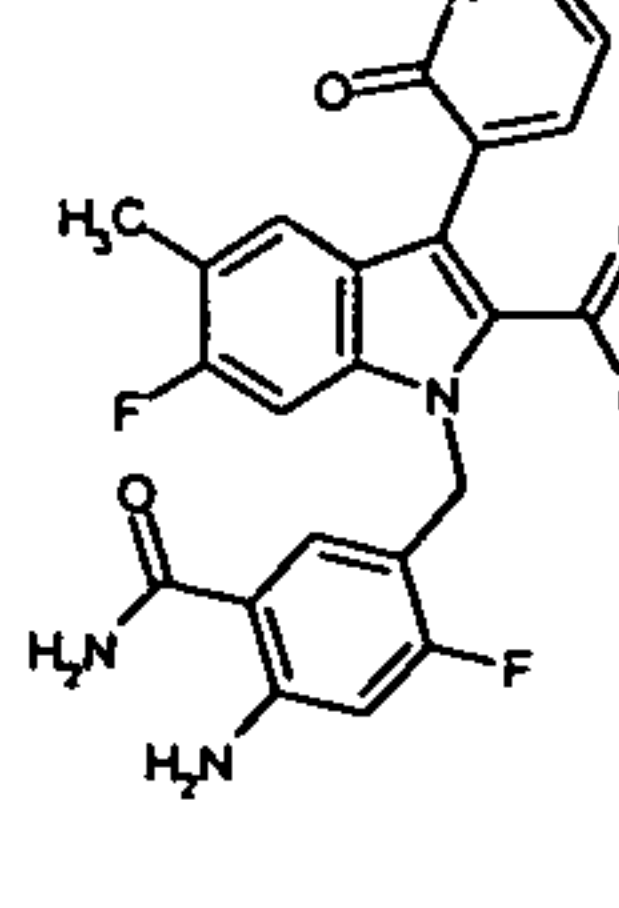
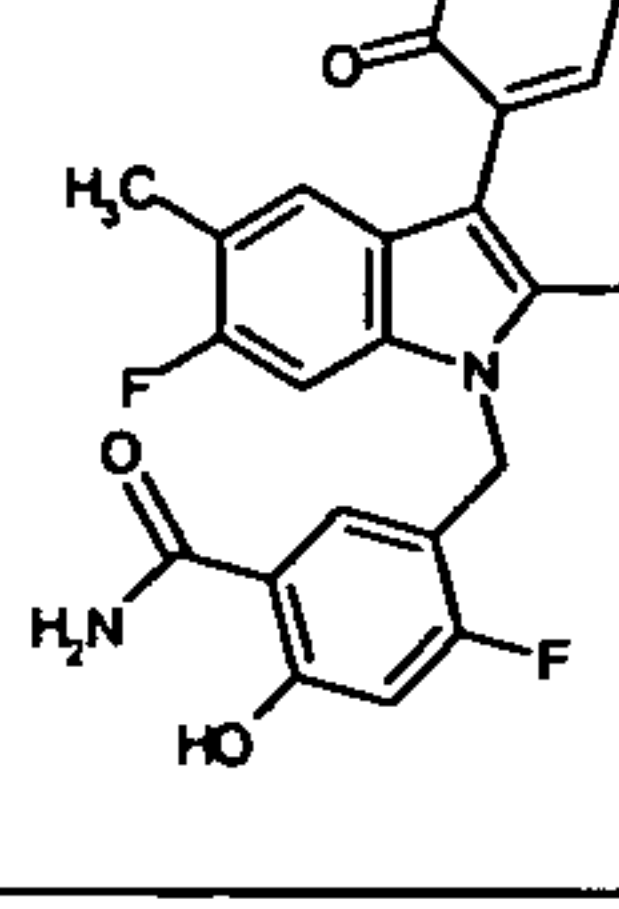
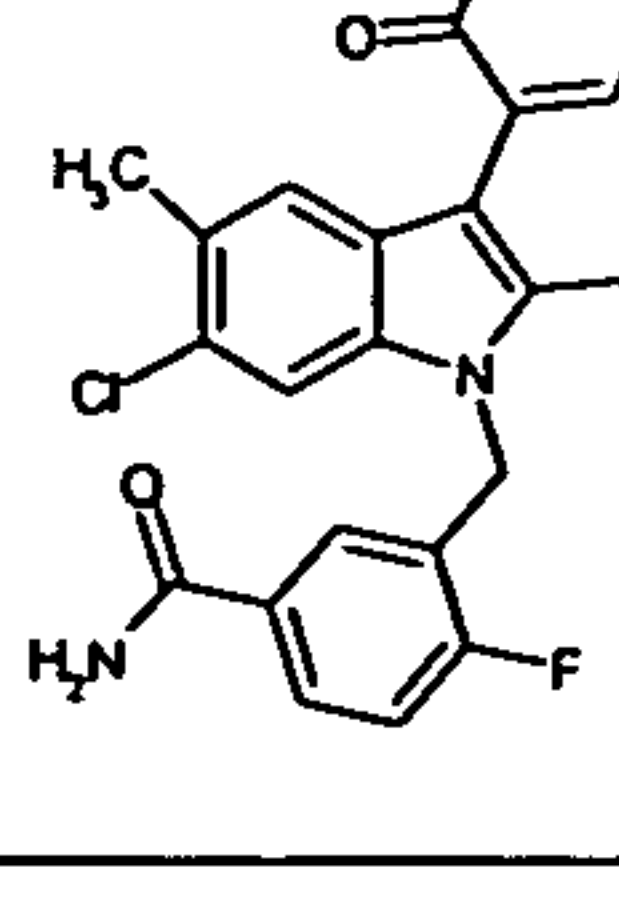
120

177		428.4
178		428.4
179		432.4
180		435.4
181		NA
182		443.5
183		444.4

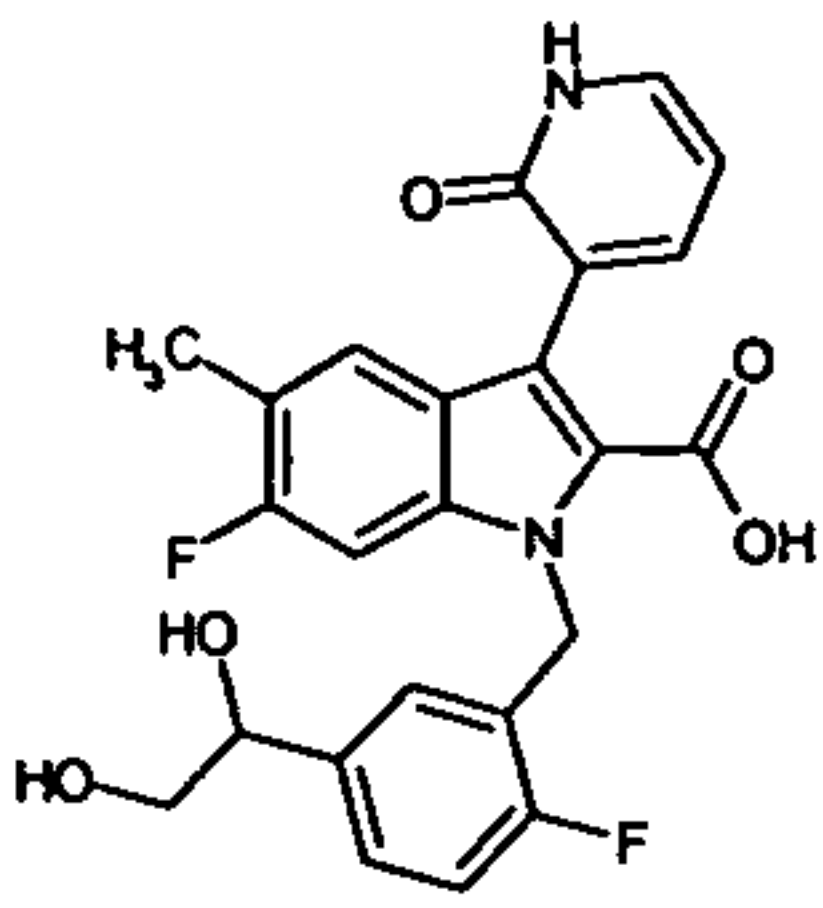
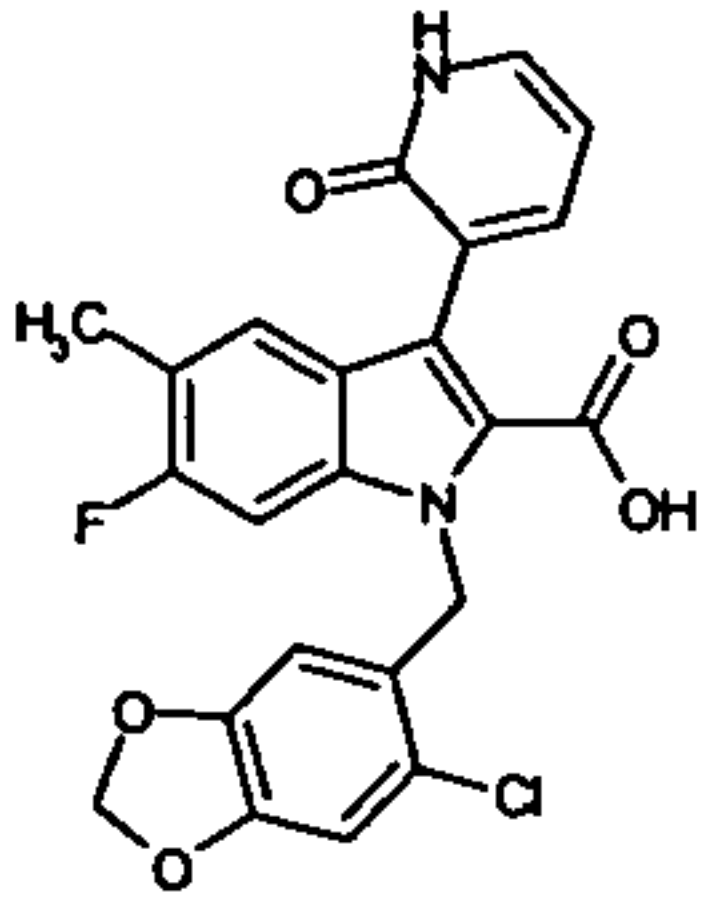
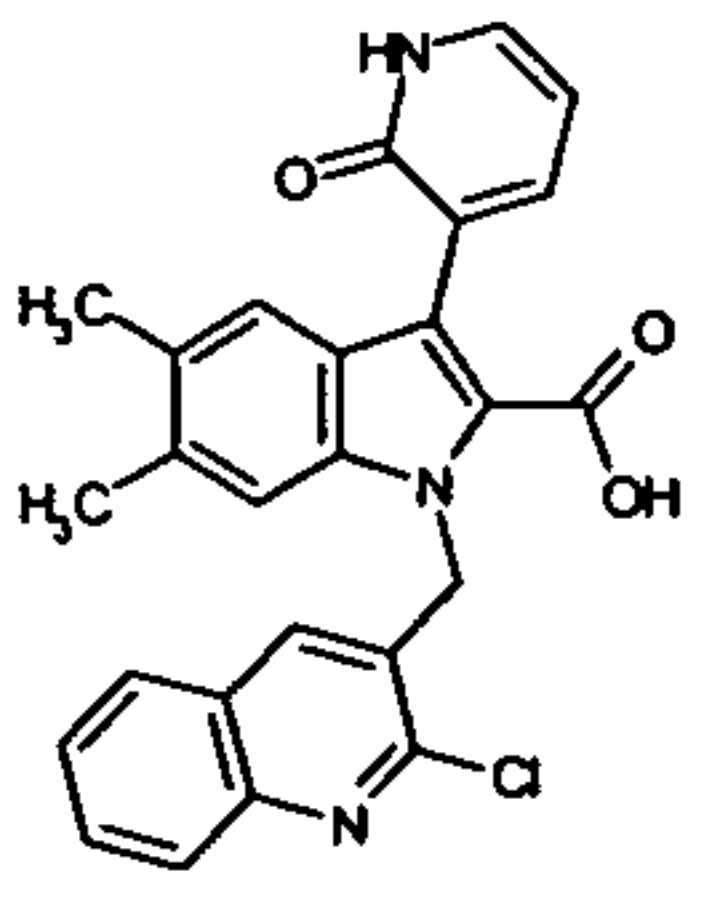
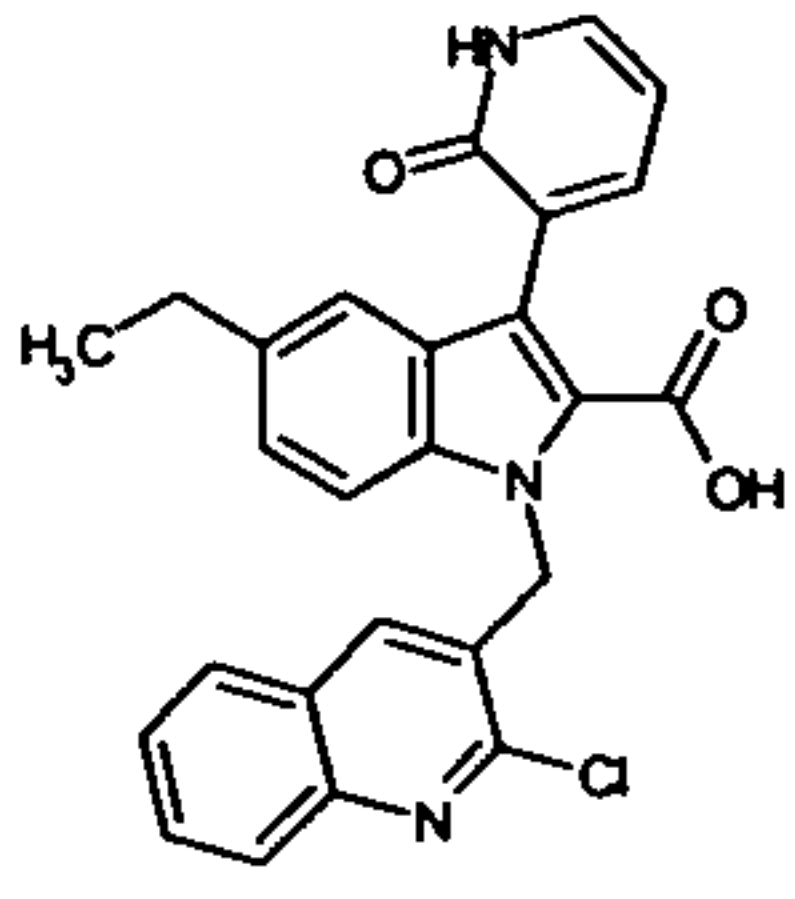
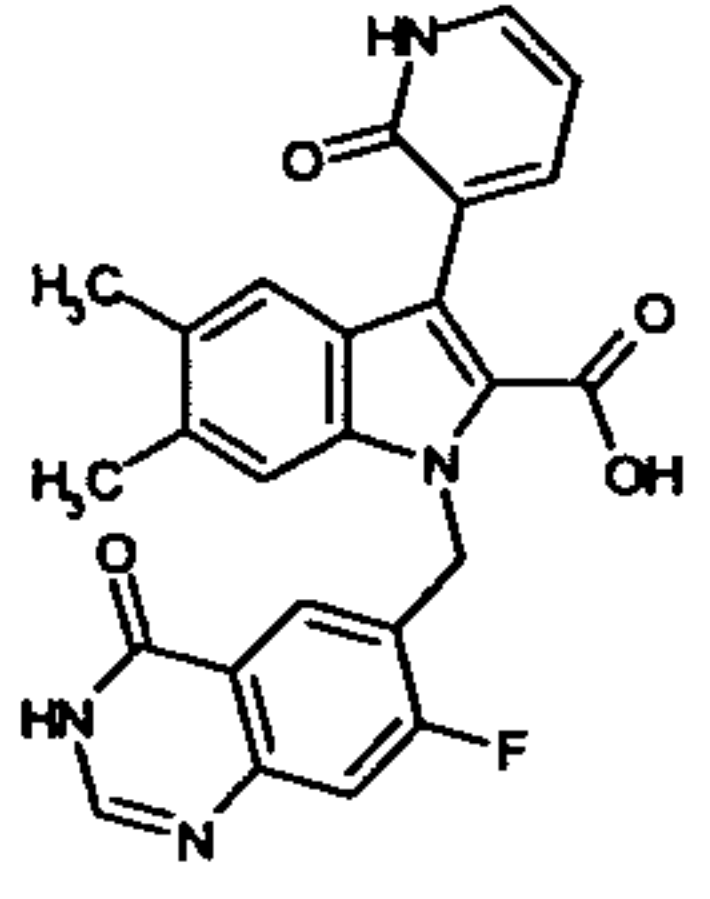
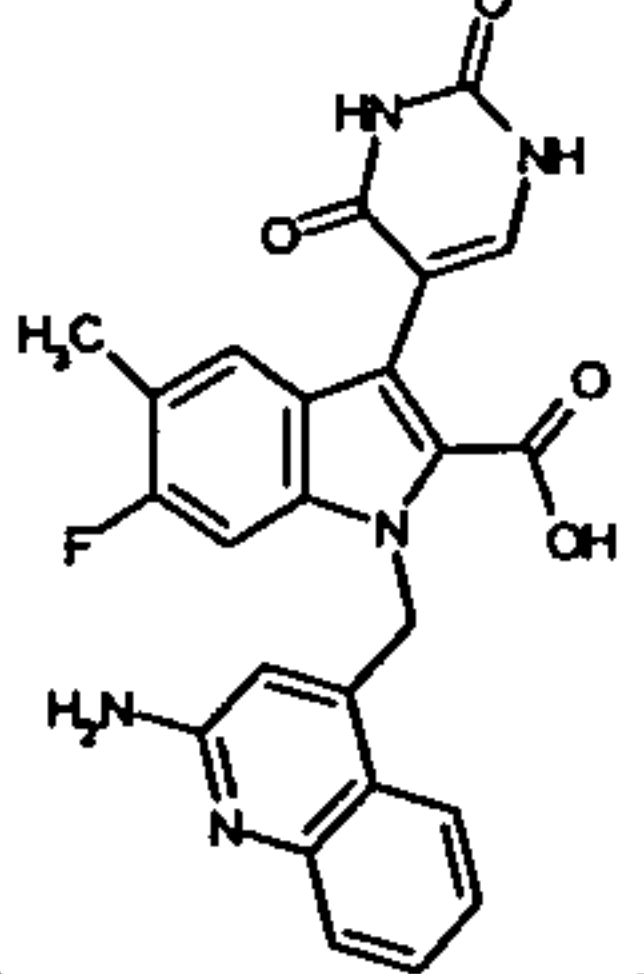
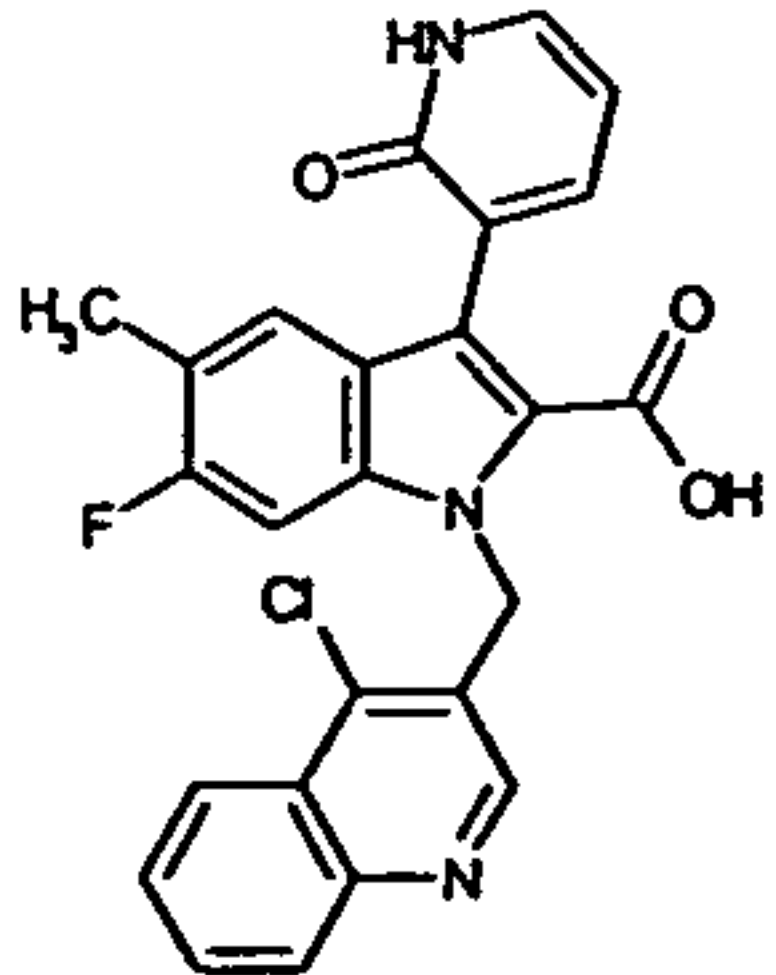
121

184		444.4
185		445.4
186		445.4
187		446.4
188		449.4
189		449.5
190		450.4

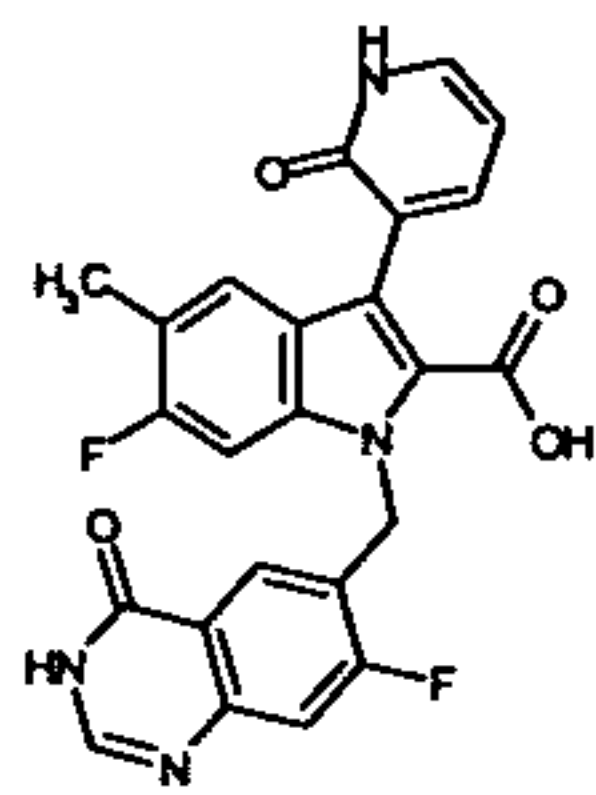
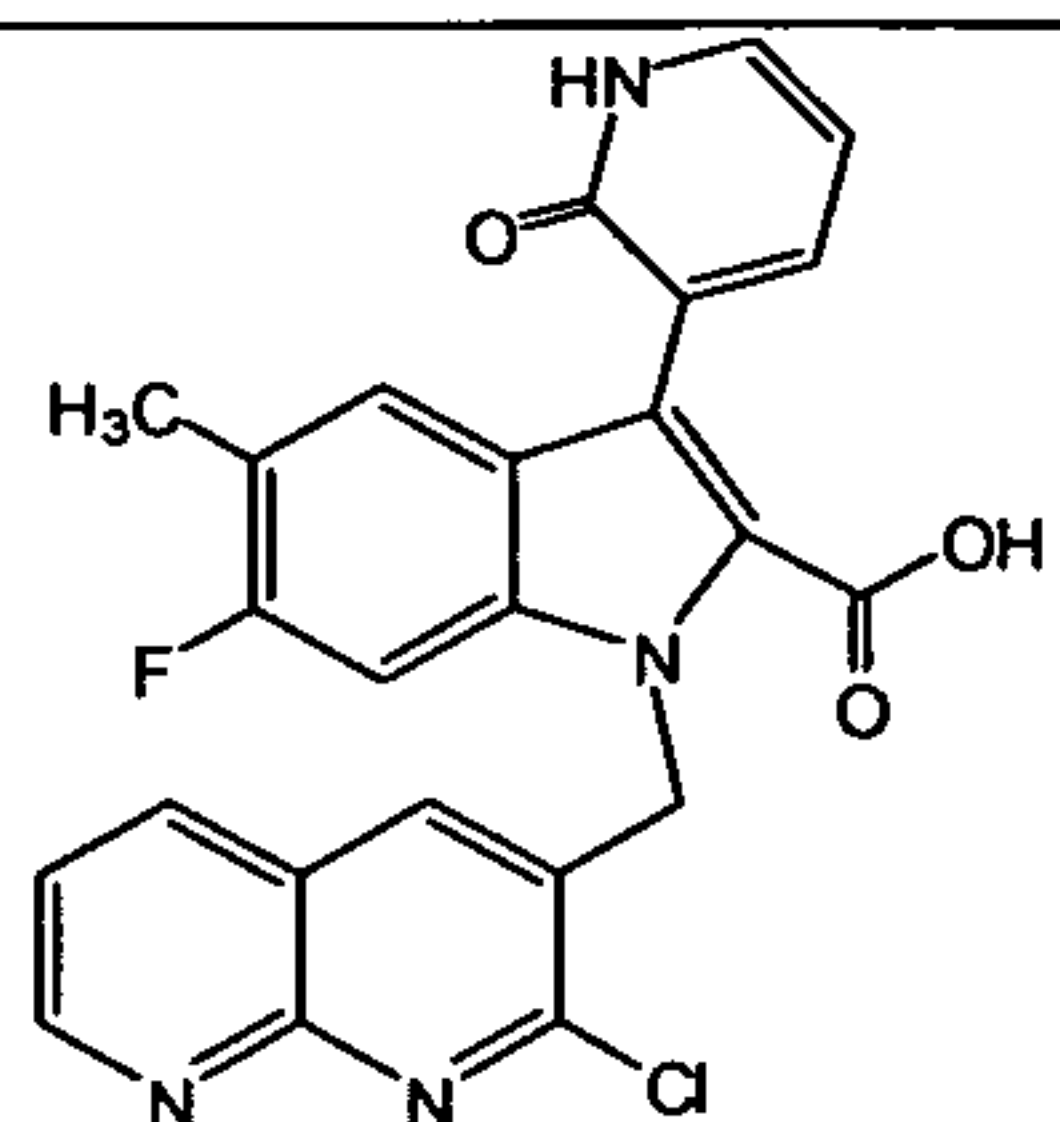
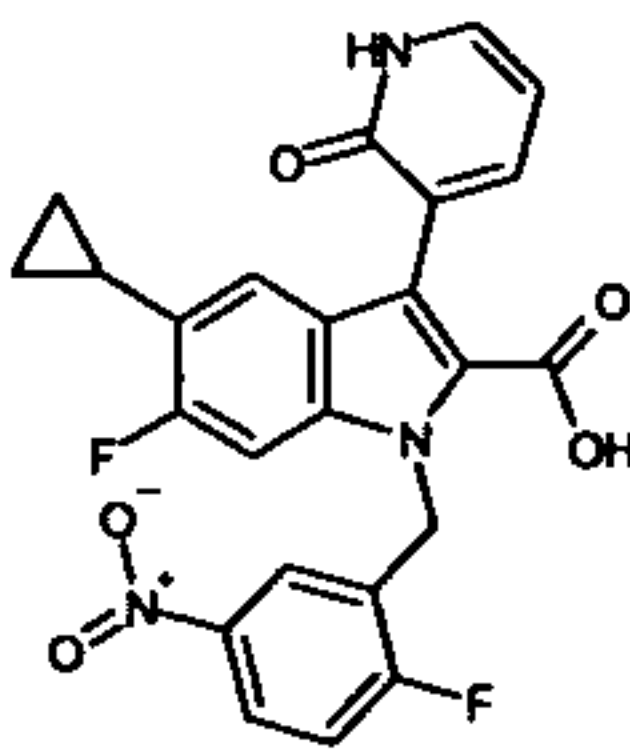
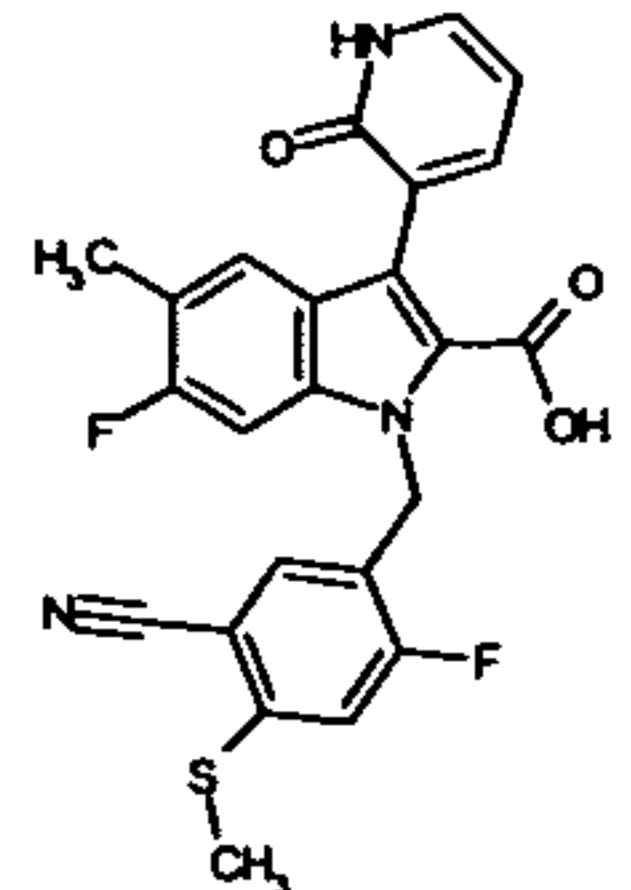
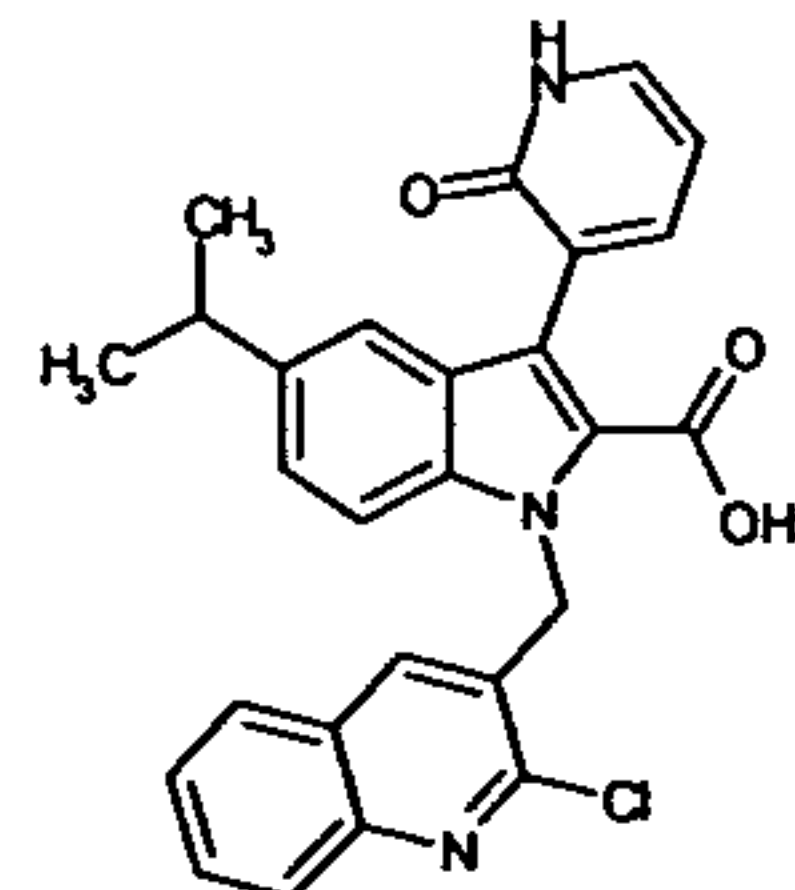
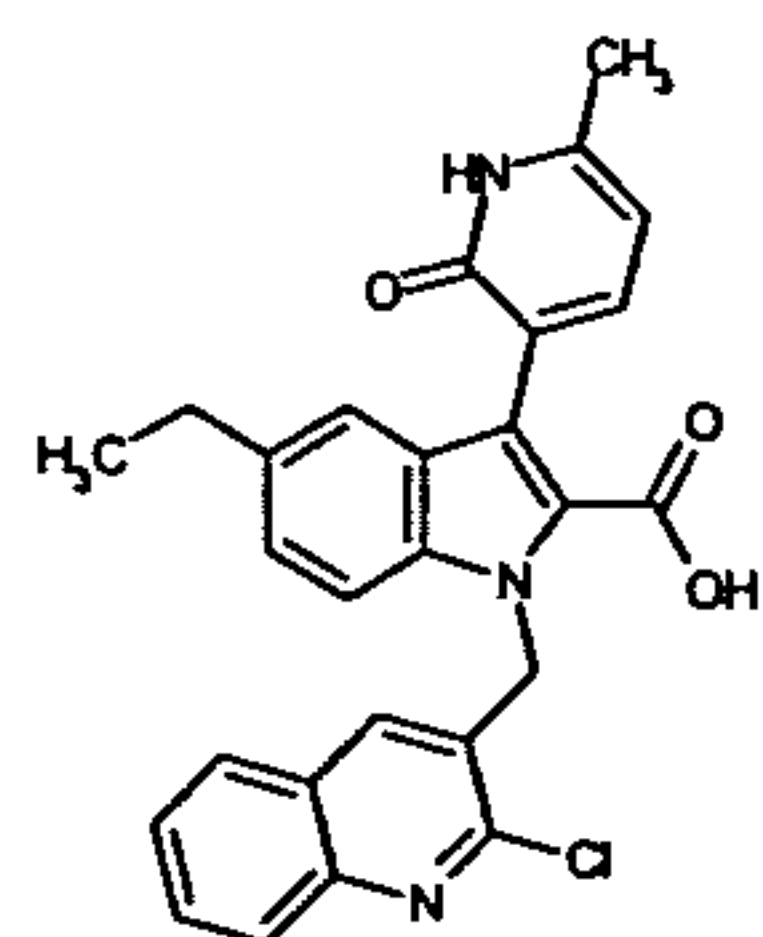
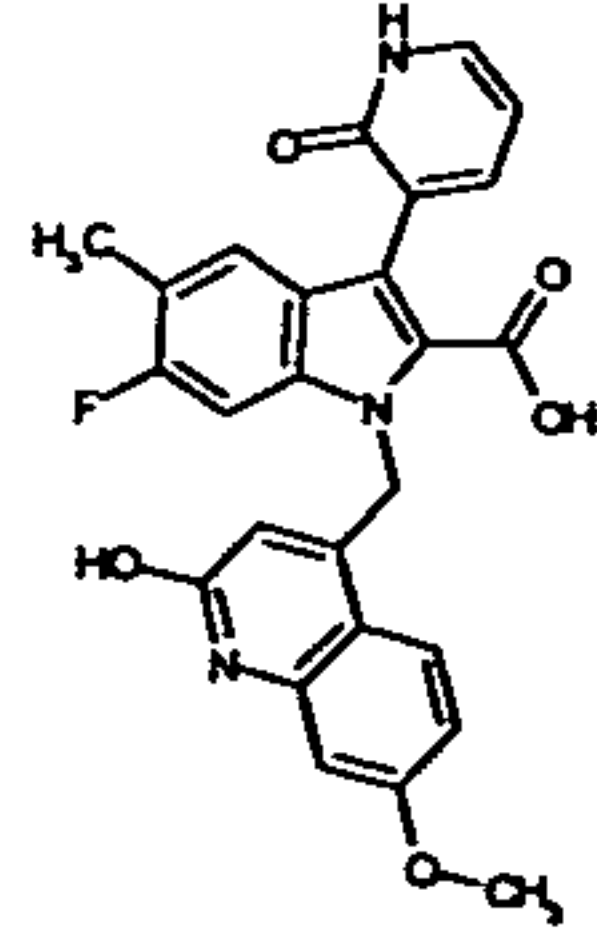
122

191		451.5
192		451.9
193		451.9
194		NA
195		453.4
196		454.4
197		454.9

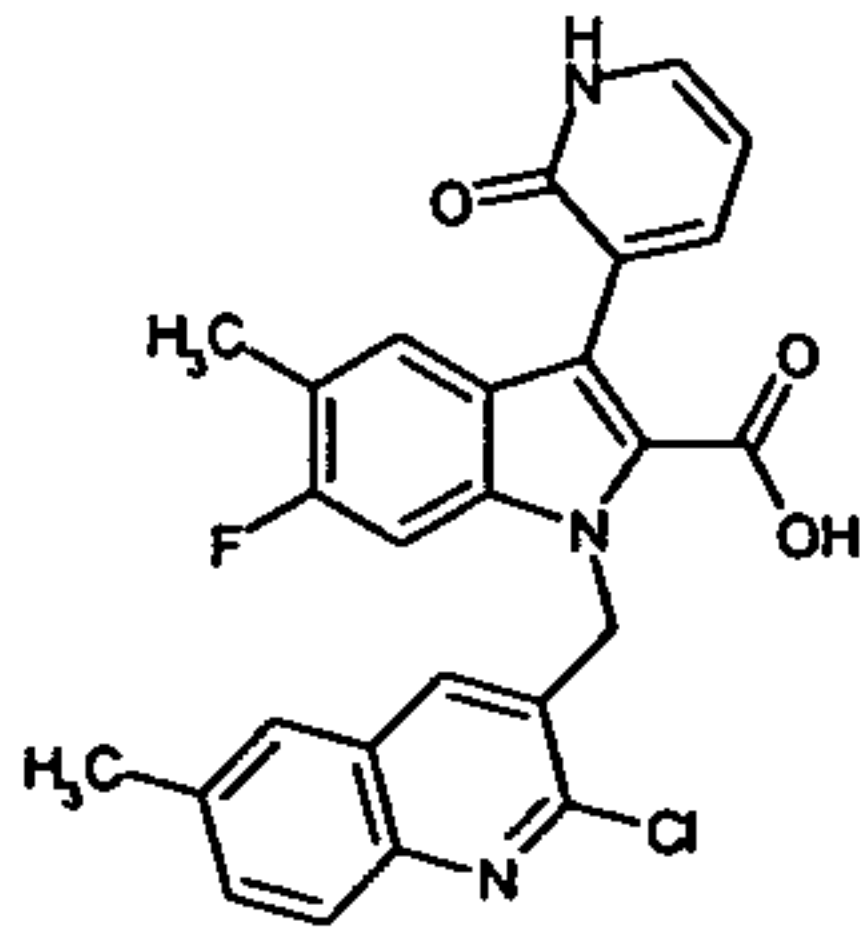
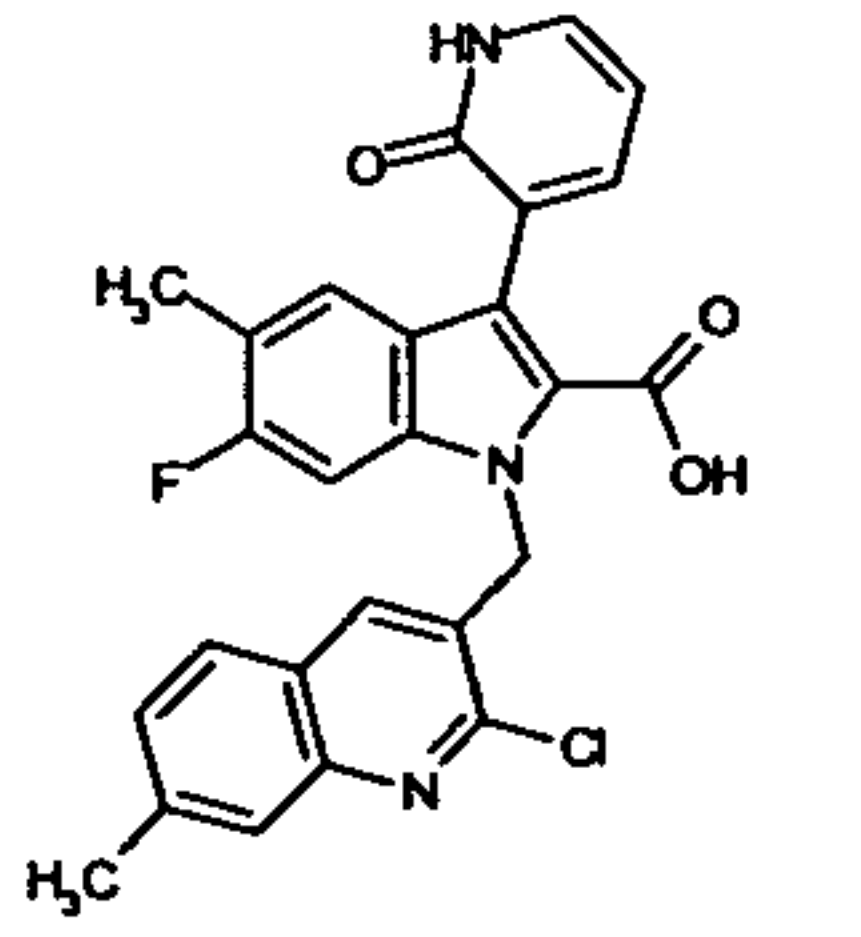
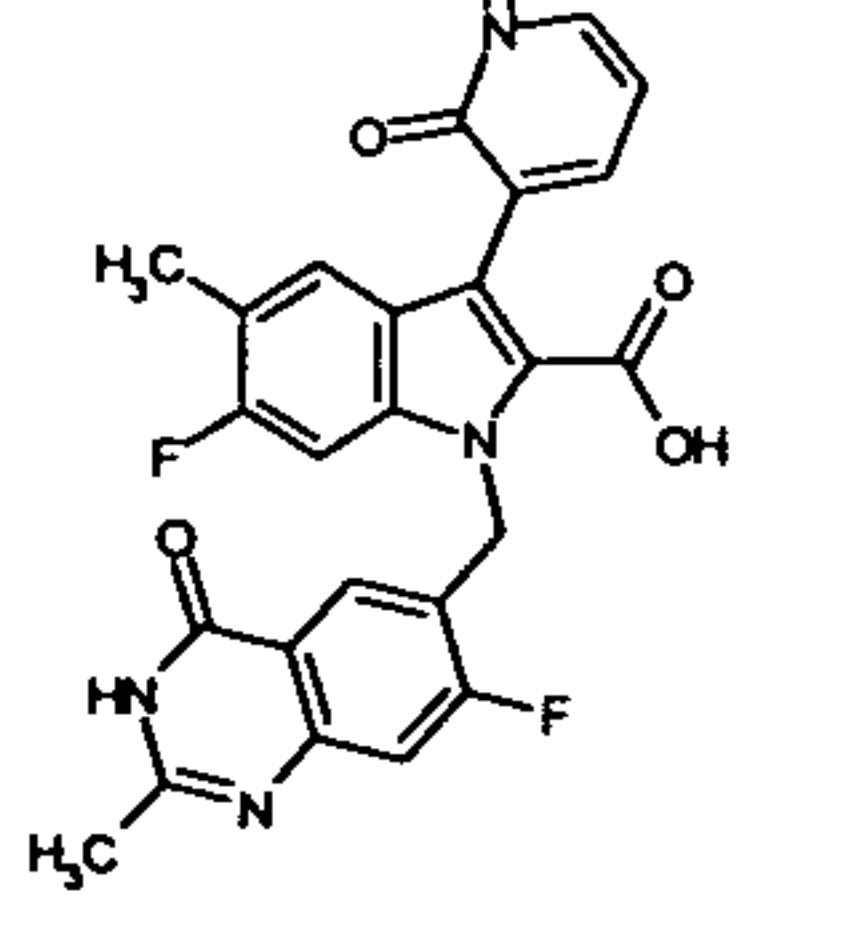
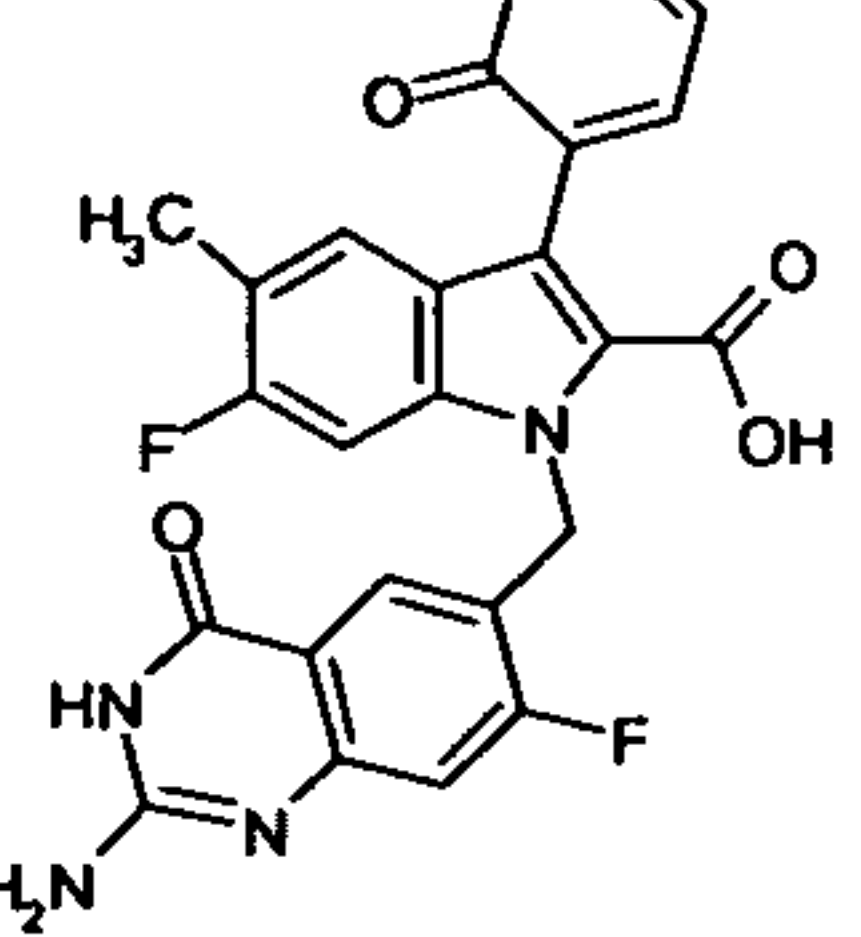
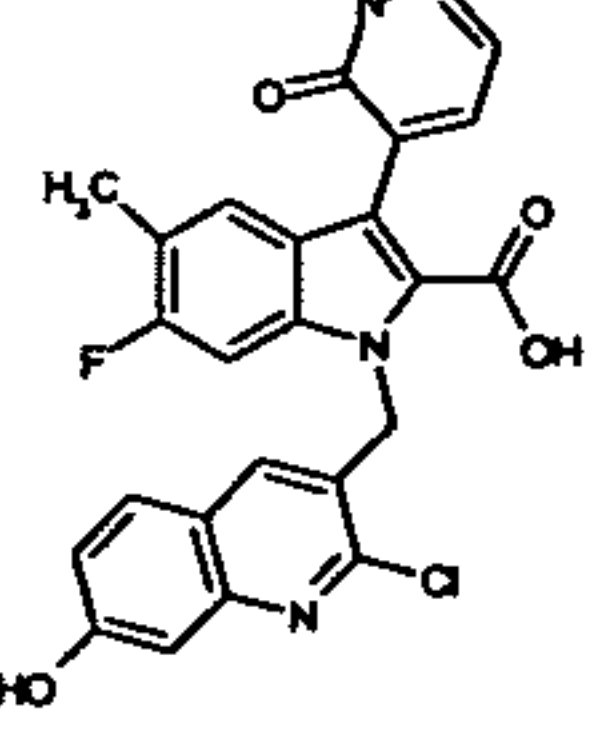
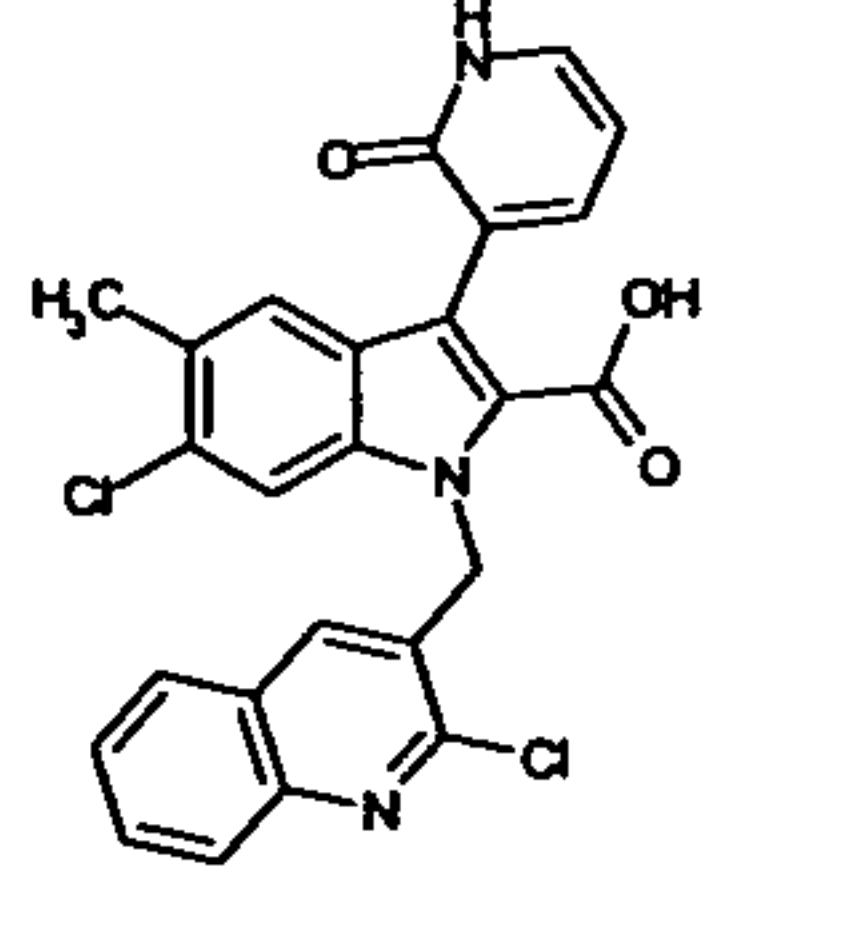
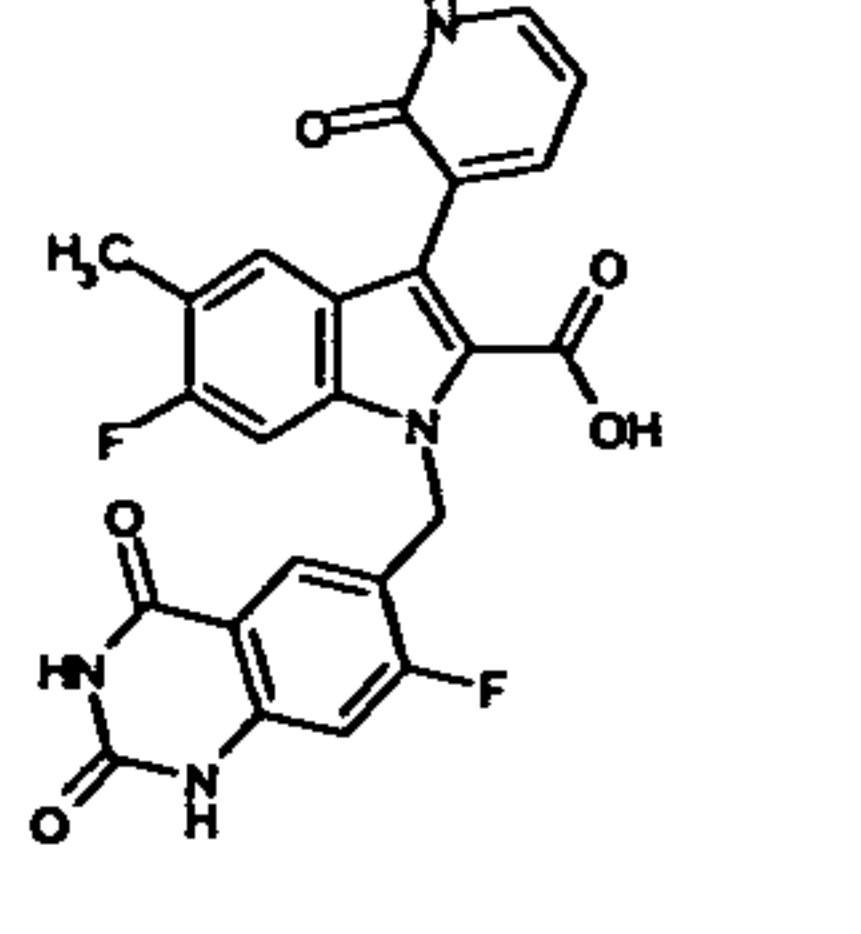
123

198		455.4
199		455.8
200		458.9
201		458.9
202		459.5
203		460.4
204		462.9

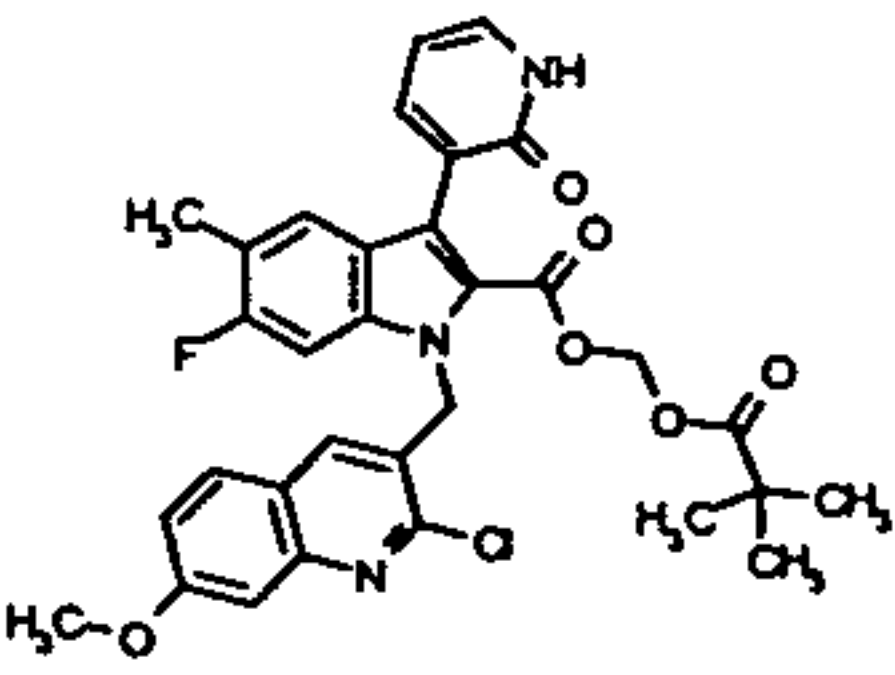
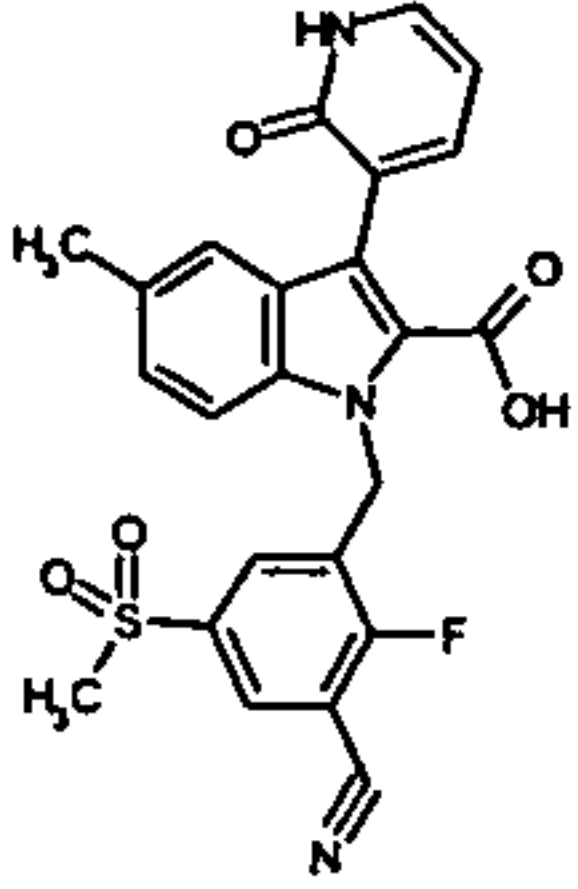
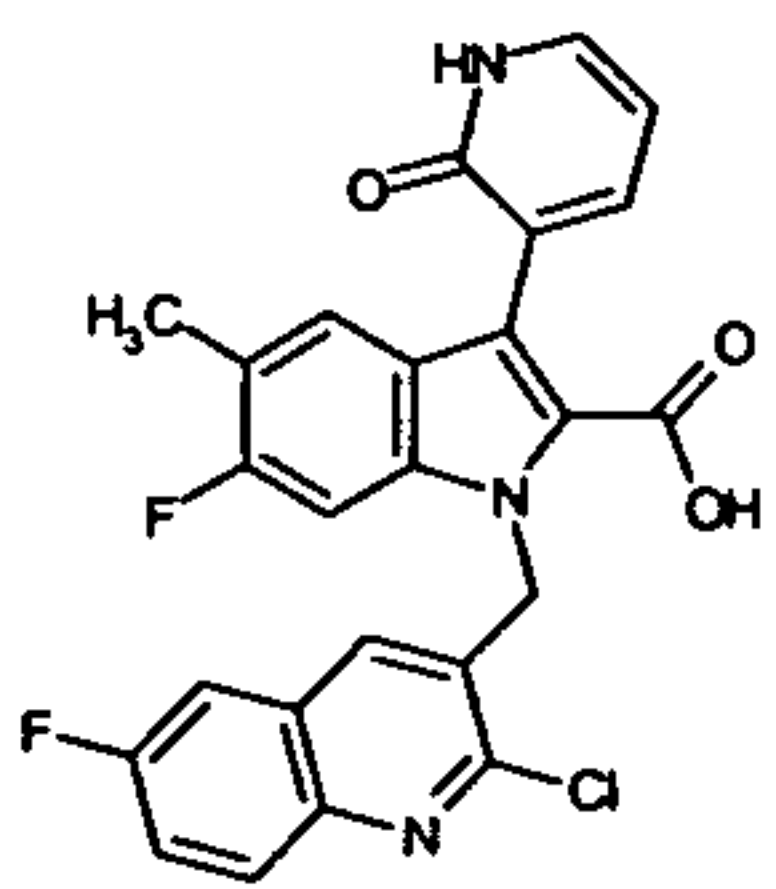
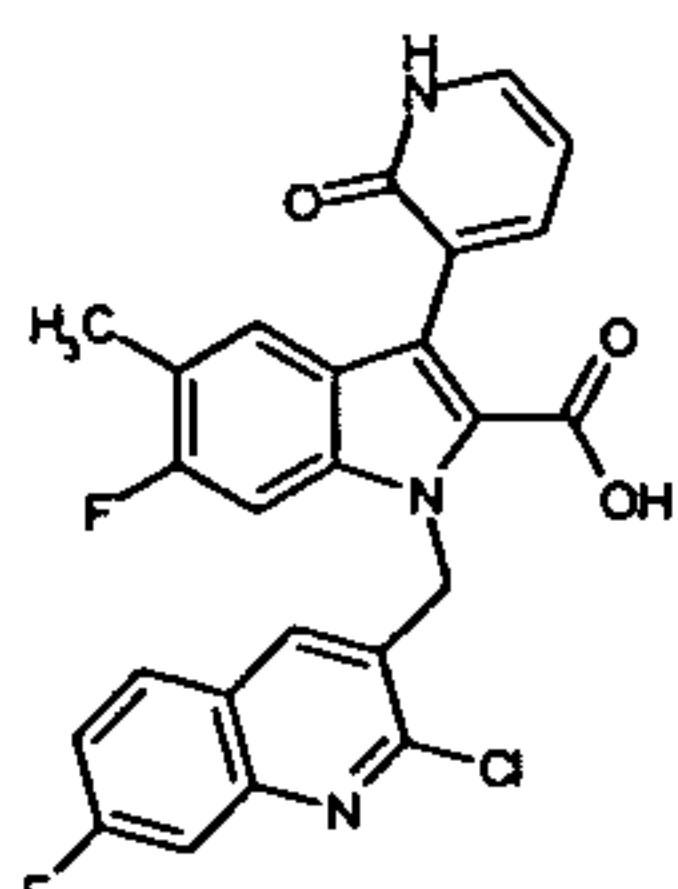
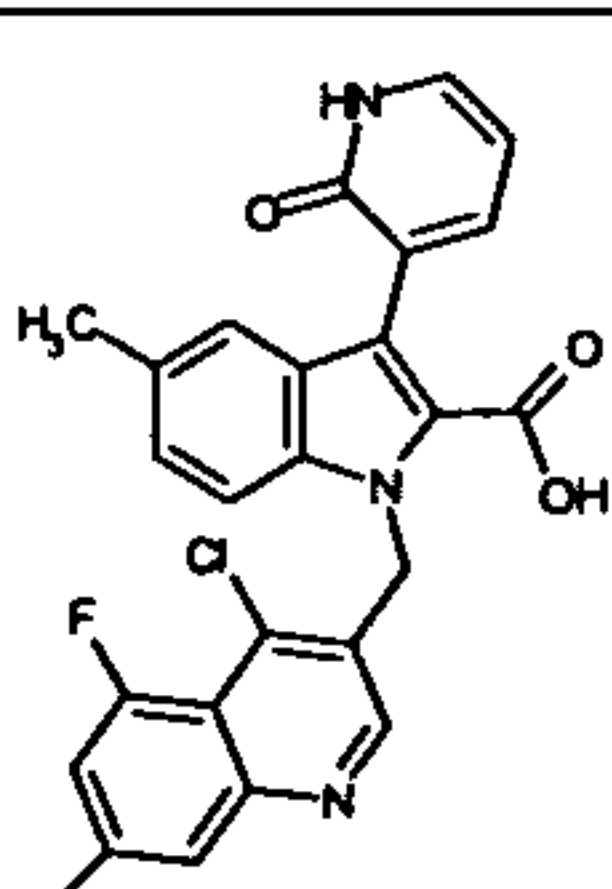
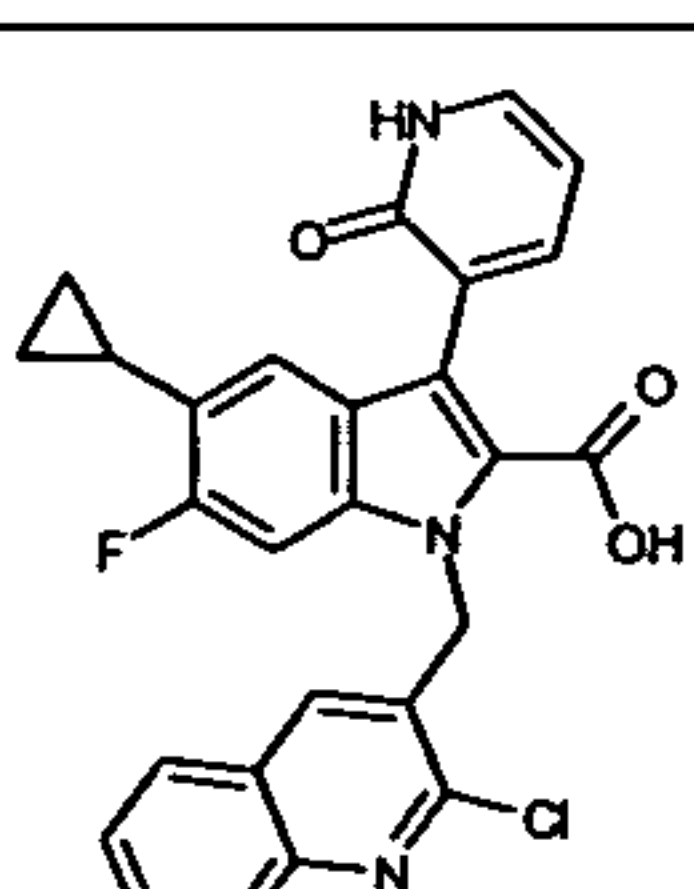
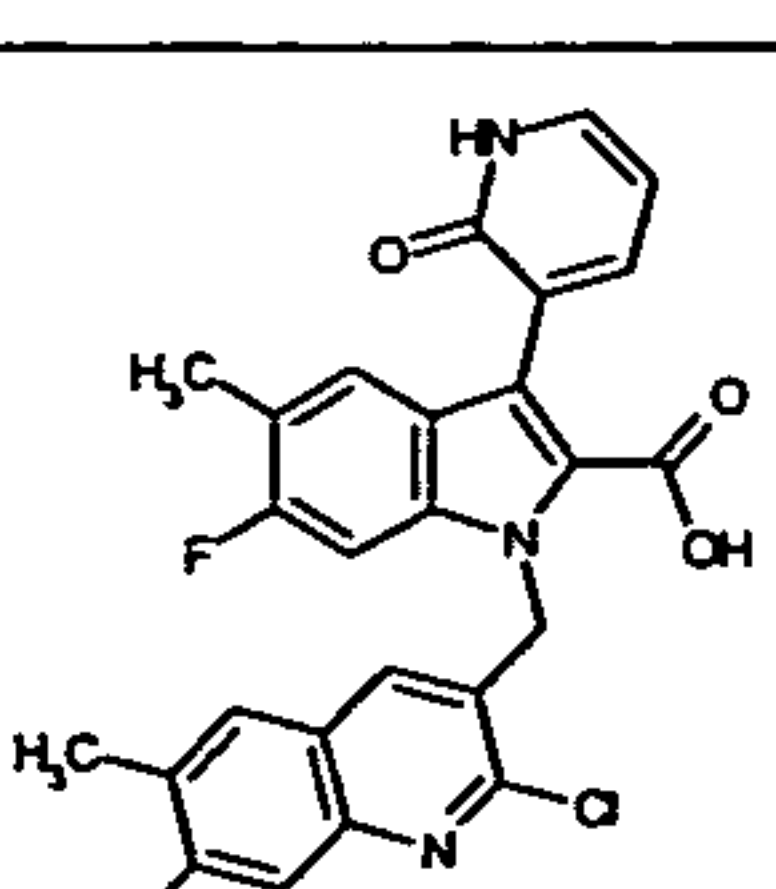
124

205		463.4
206		NA
207		466.4
208		466.5
209		472.9
210		472.9
211		474.5

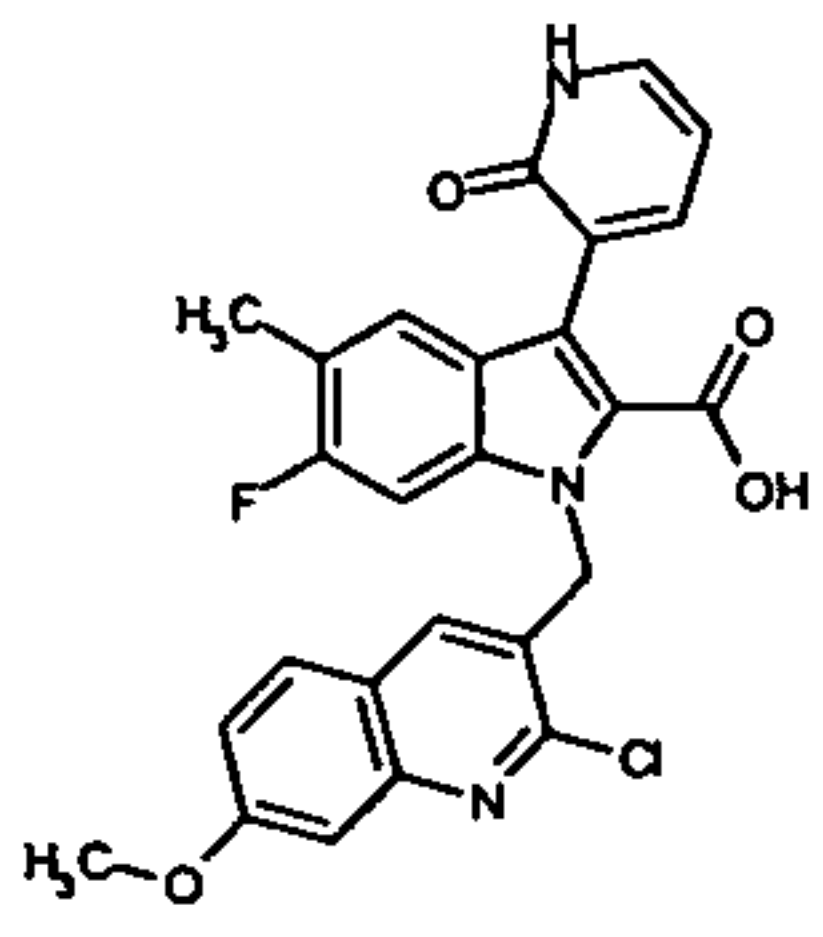
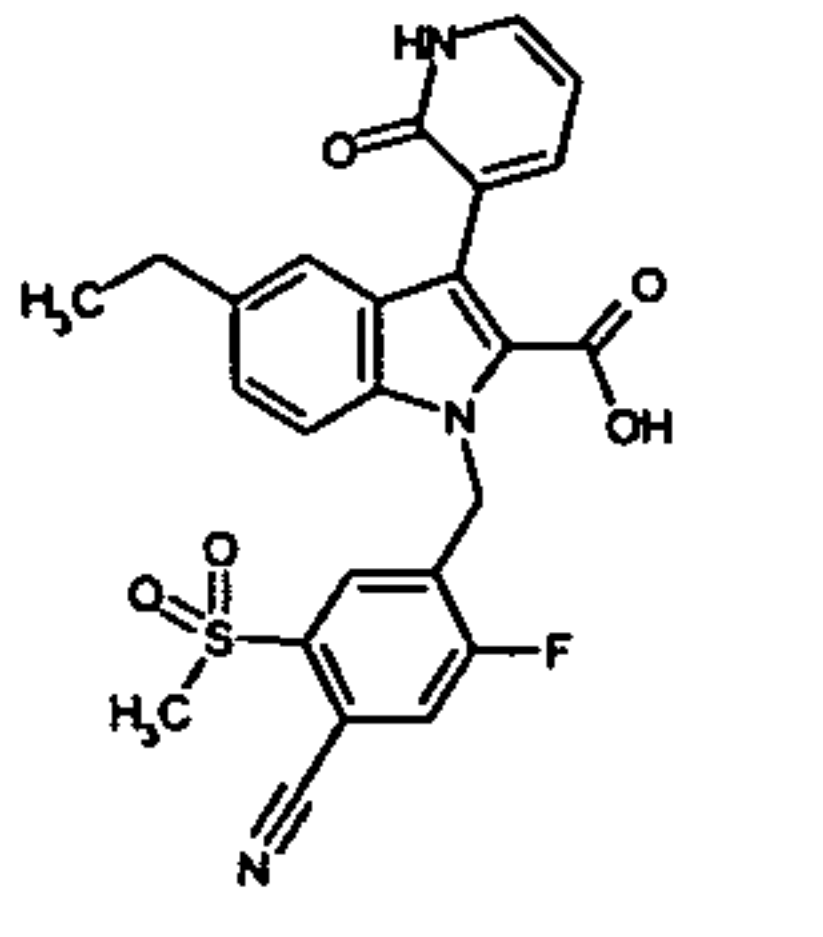
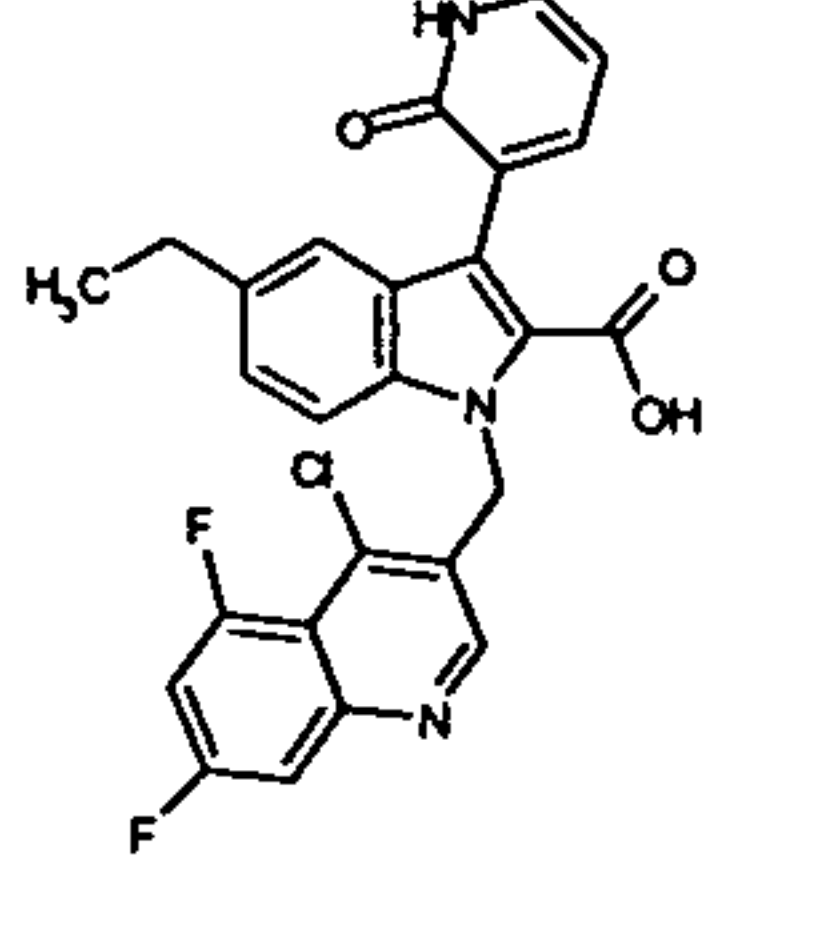
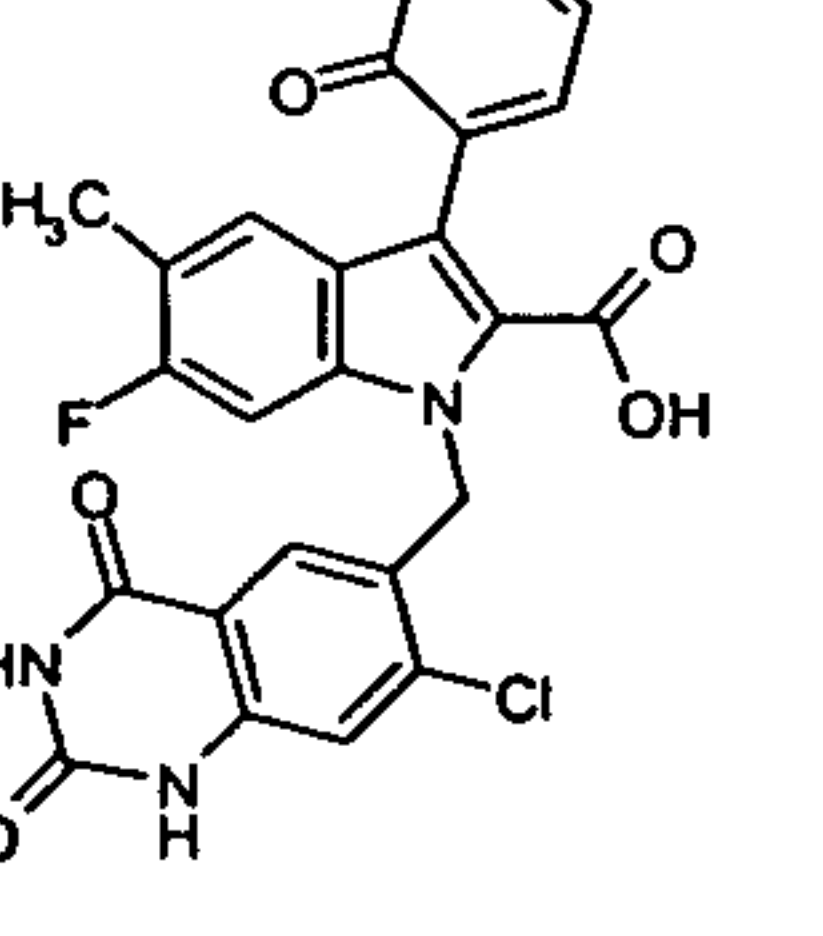
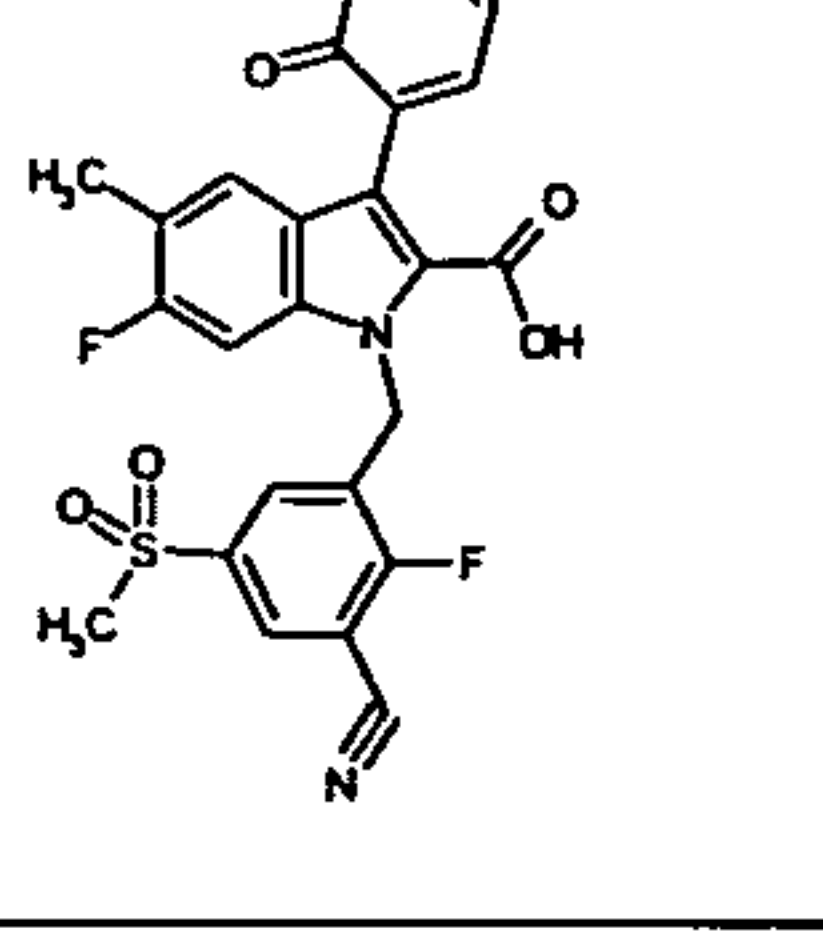
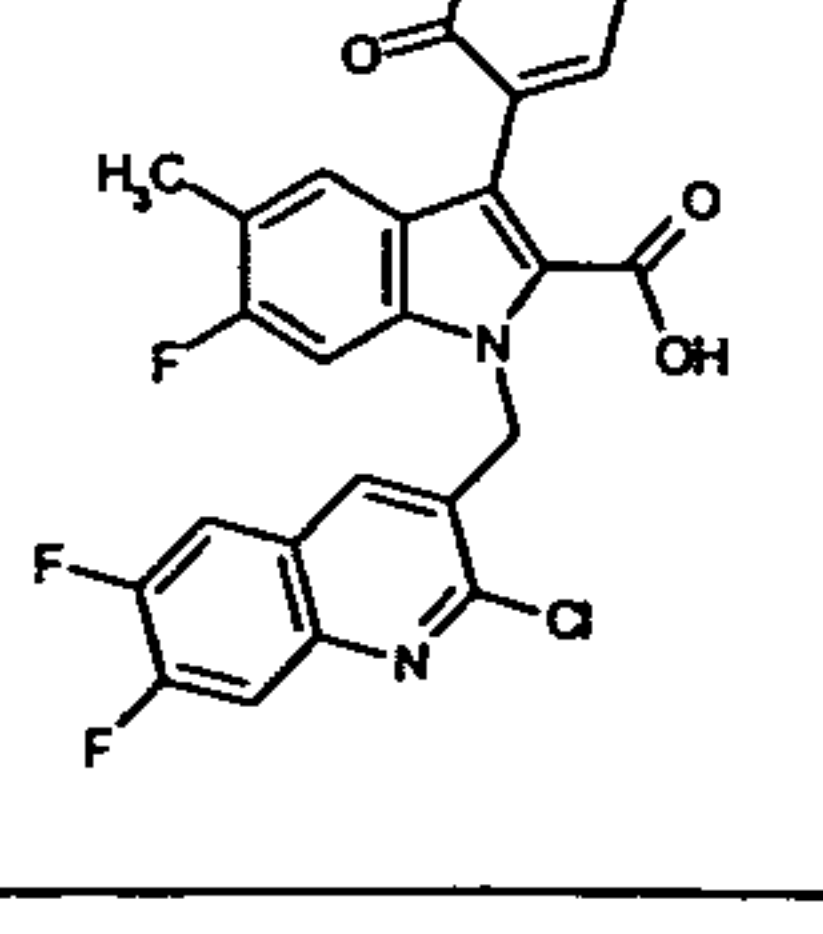
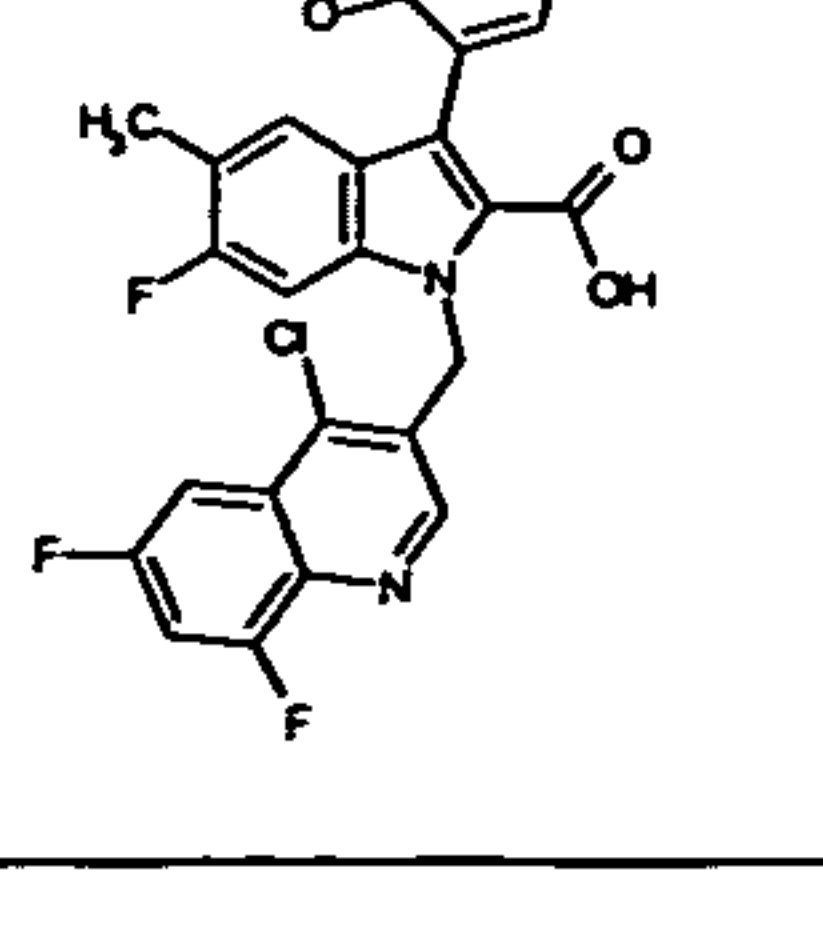
125

212		476.9
213		476.9
214		477.4
215		NA
216		478.9
217		479.3
218		479.4

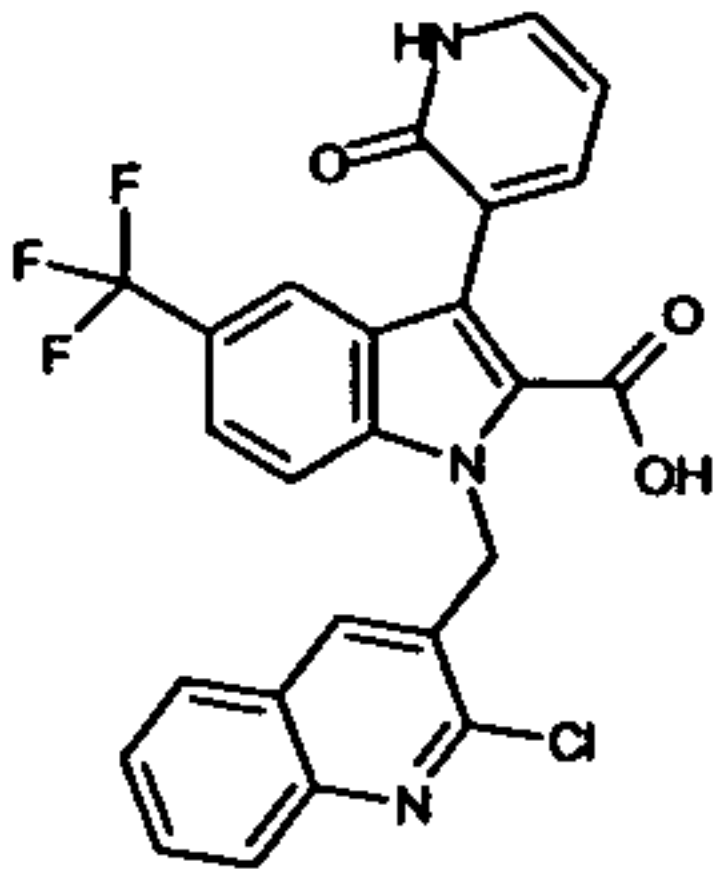
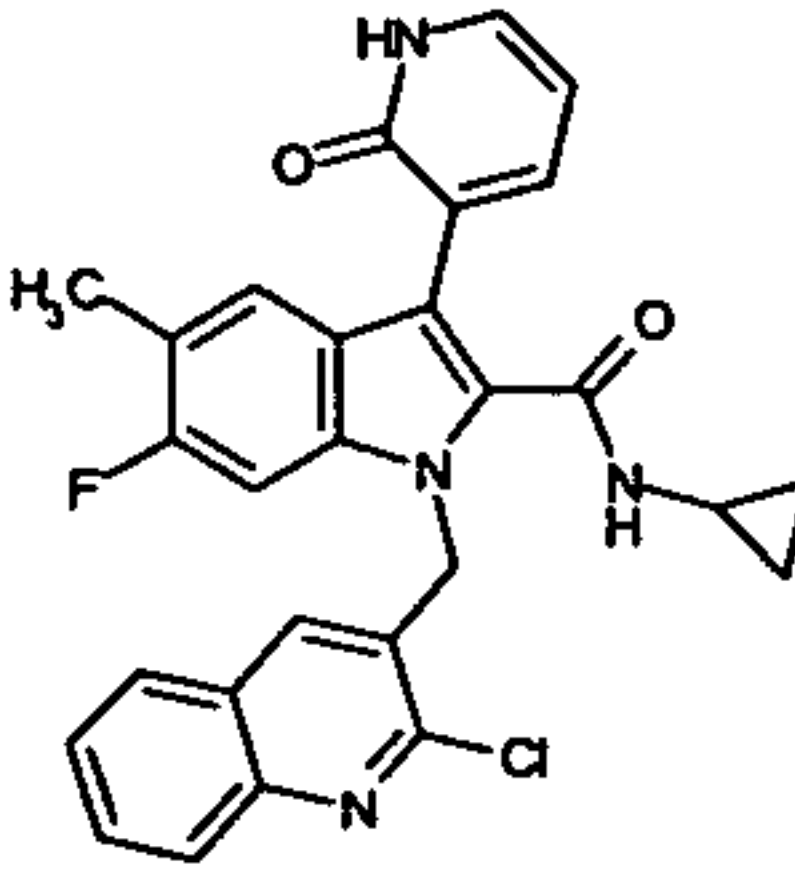
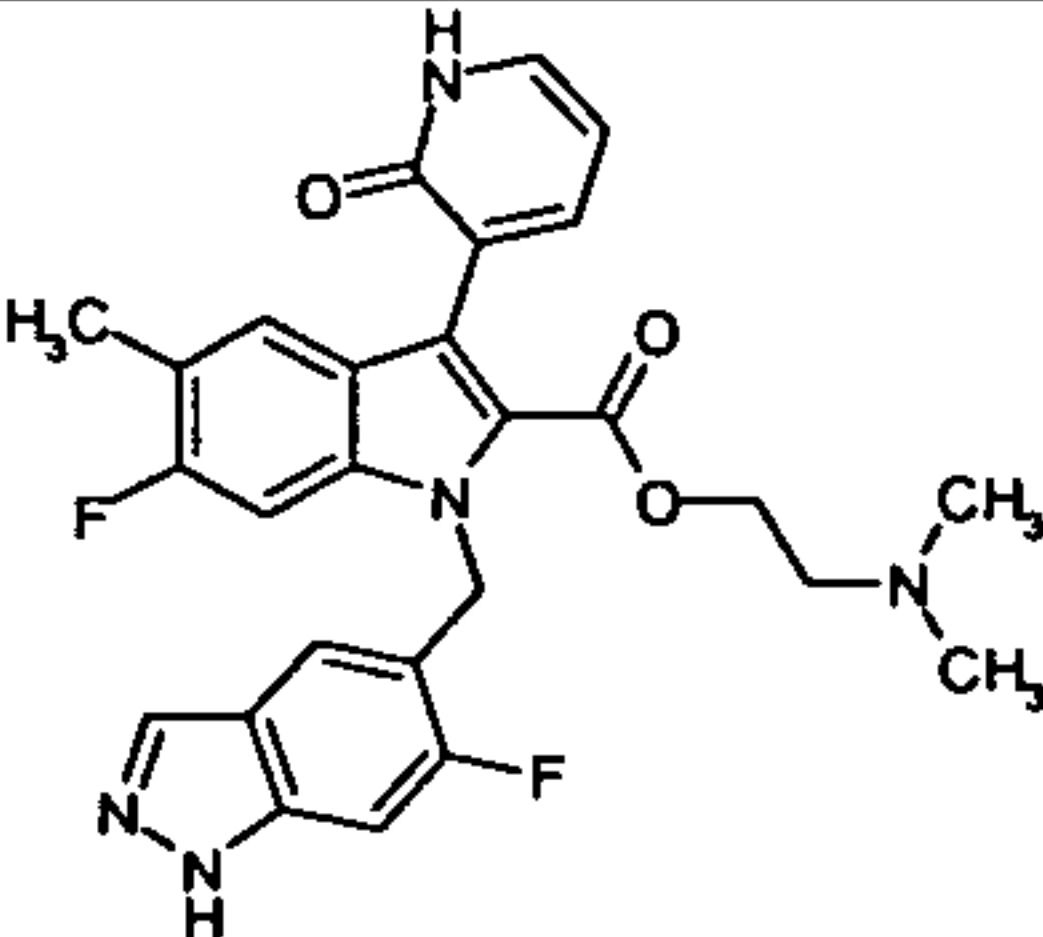
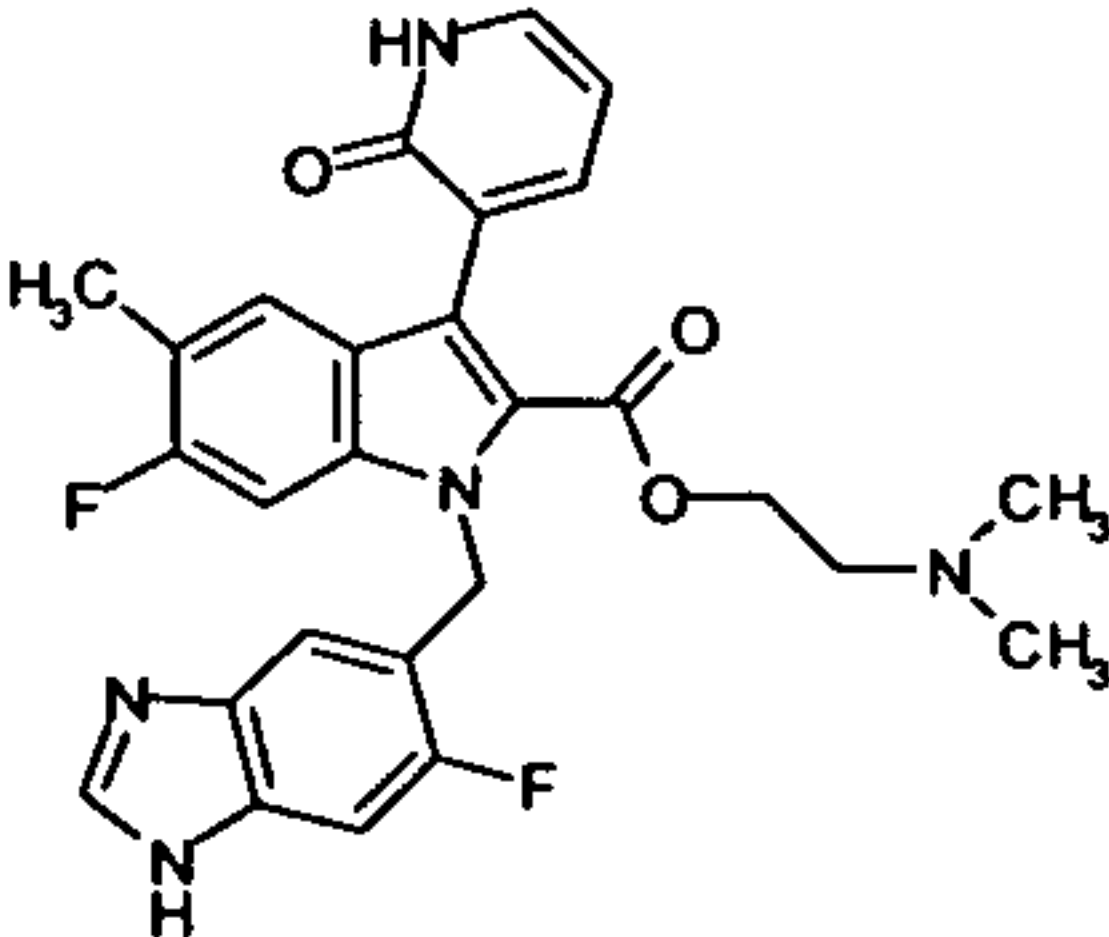
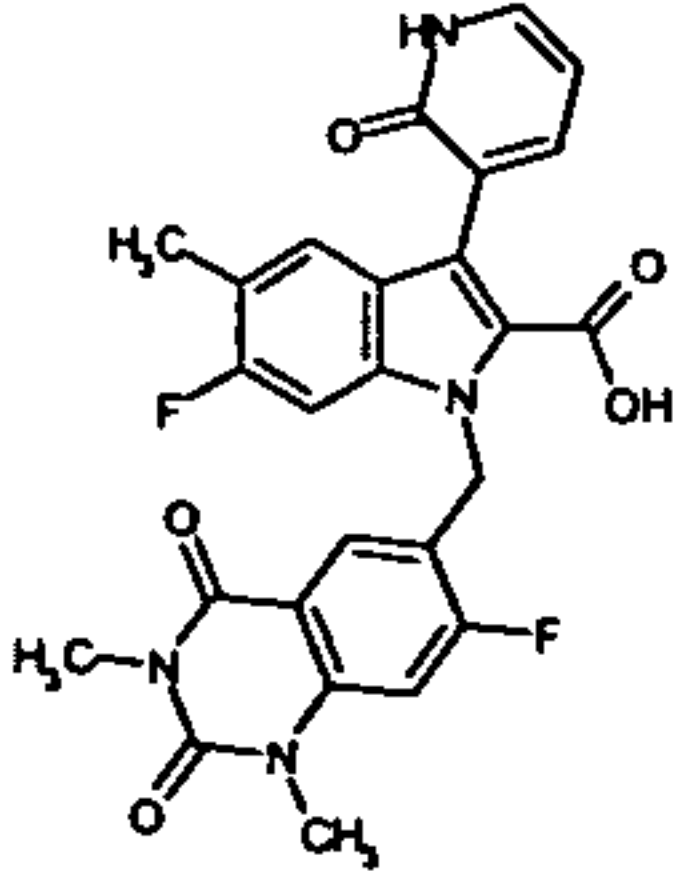
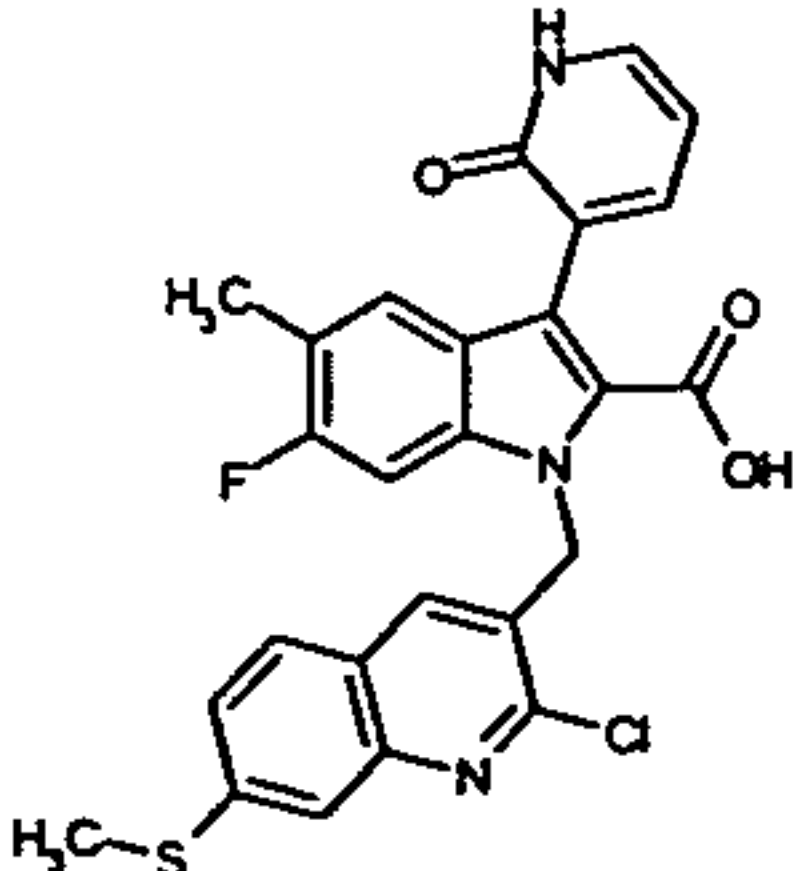
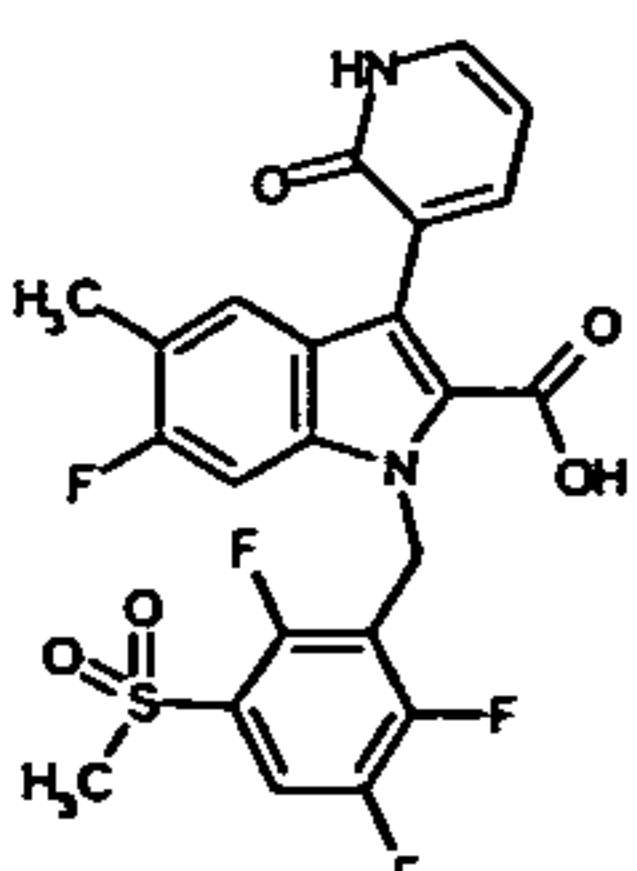
126

219		NA
220		480.5
221		480.9
222		480.9
223		480.9
224		488.9
225		490.9

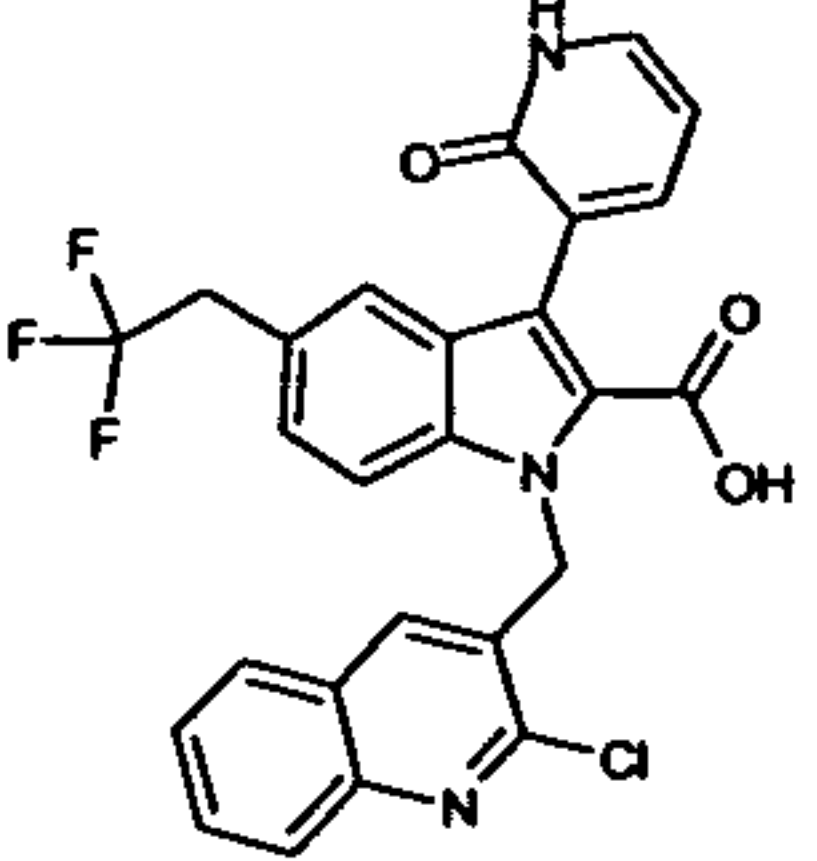
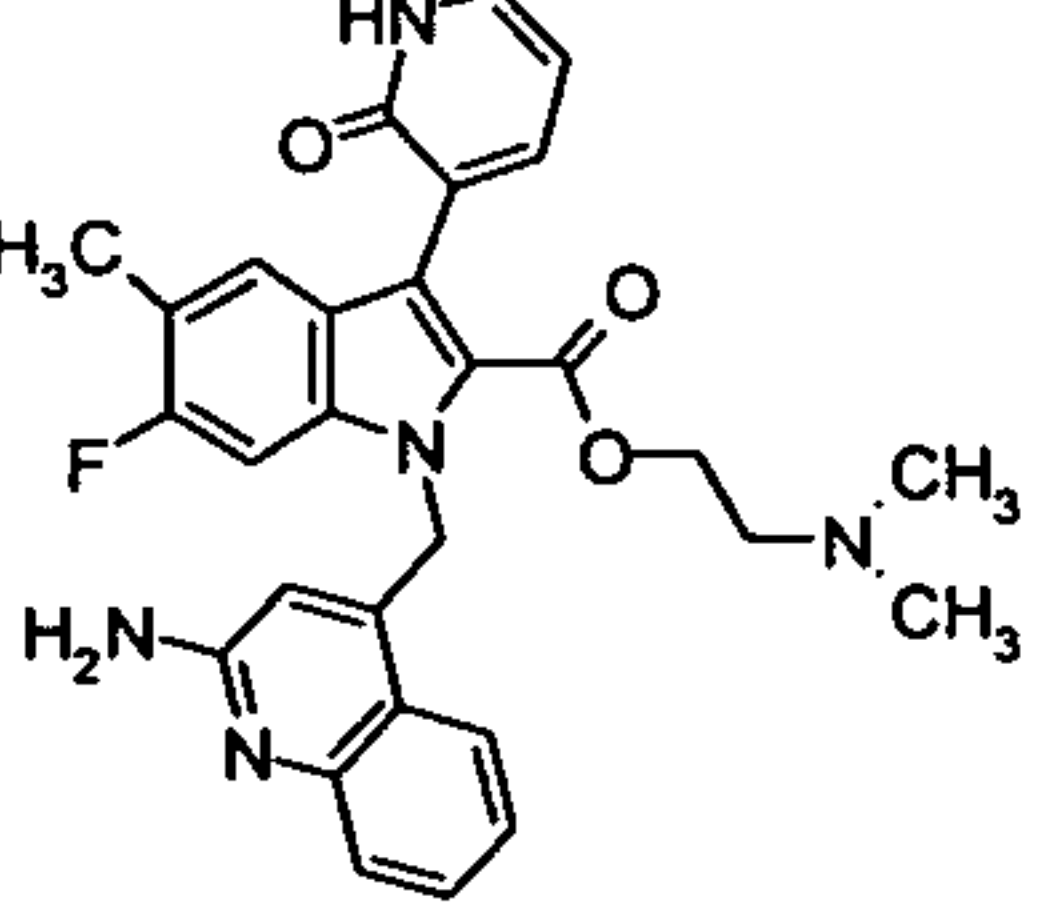
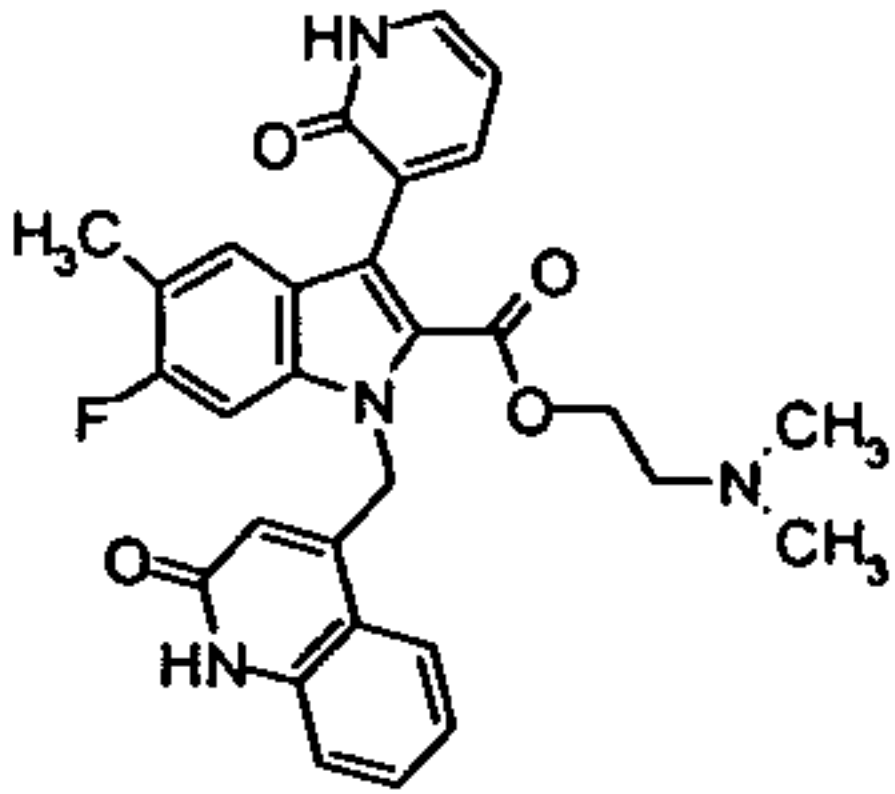
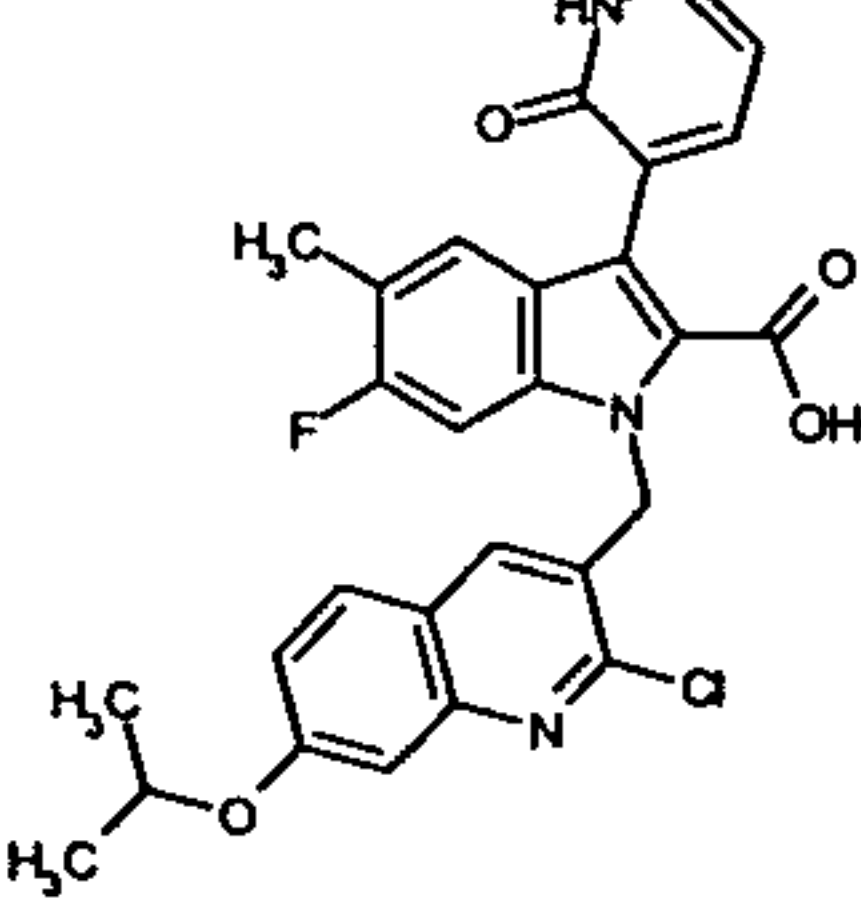
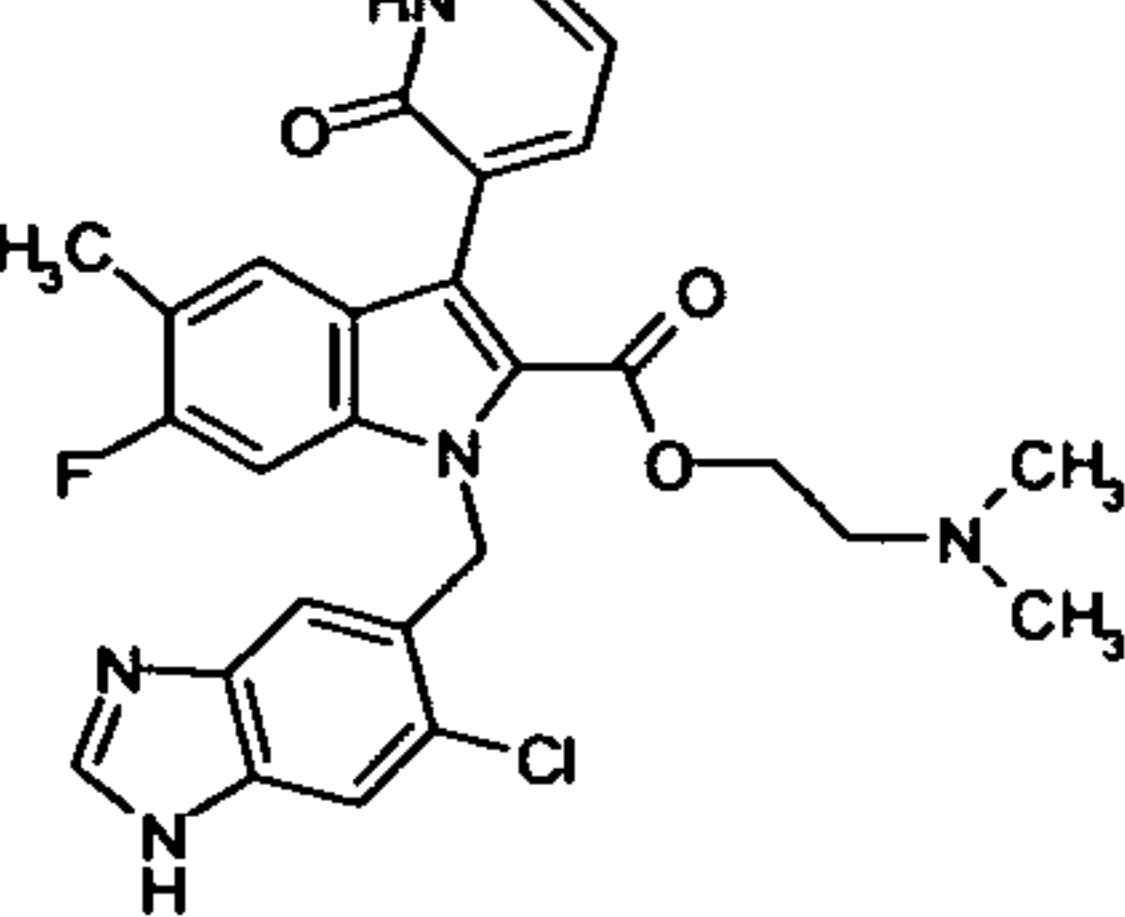
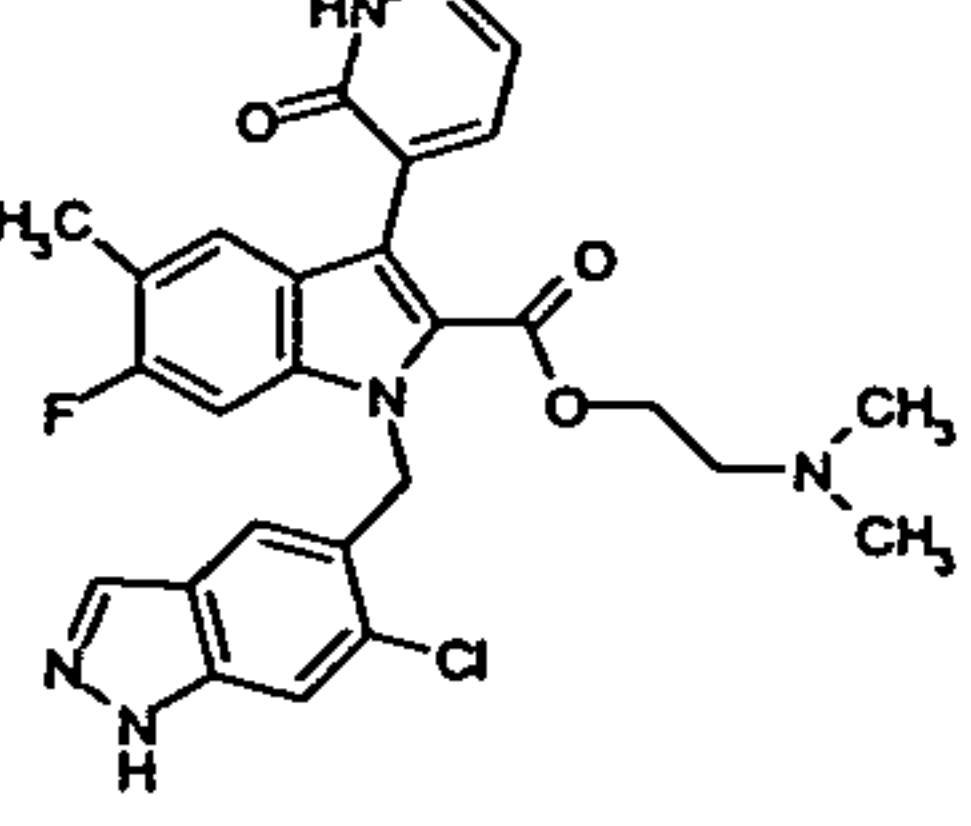
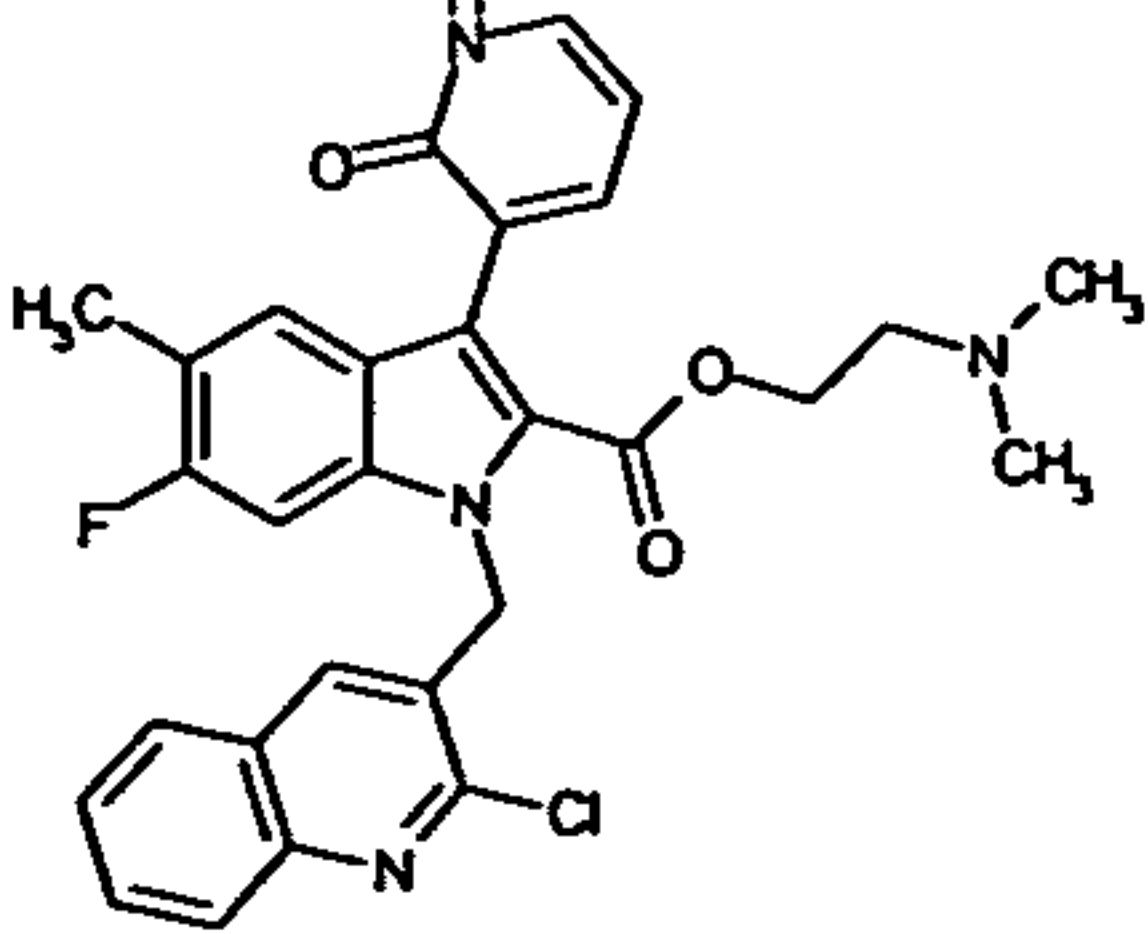
127

226		492.9
227		494.5
228		494.9
229		495.0
230		498.5
231		498.9
232		498.9

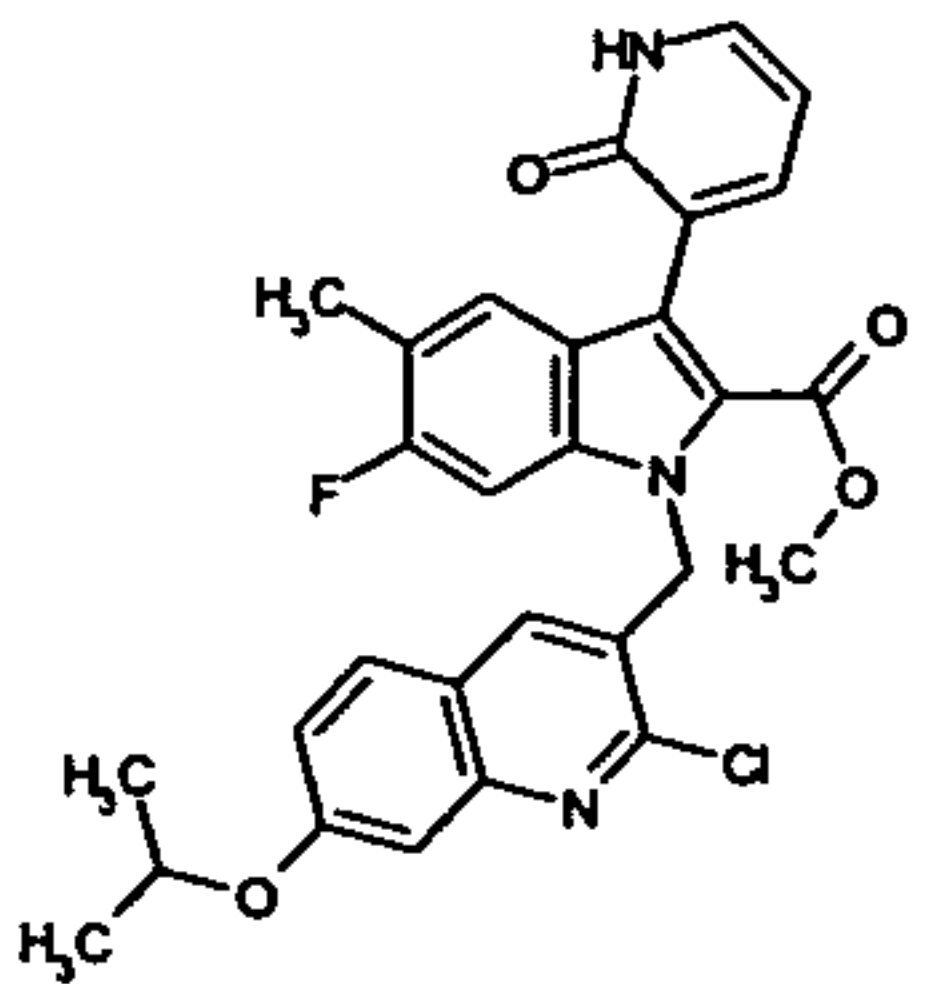
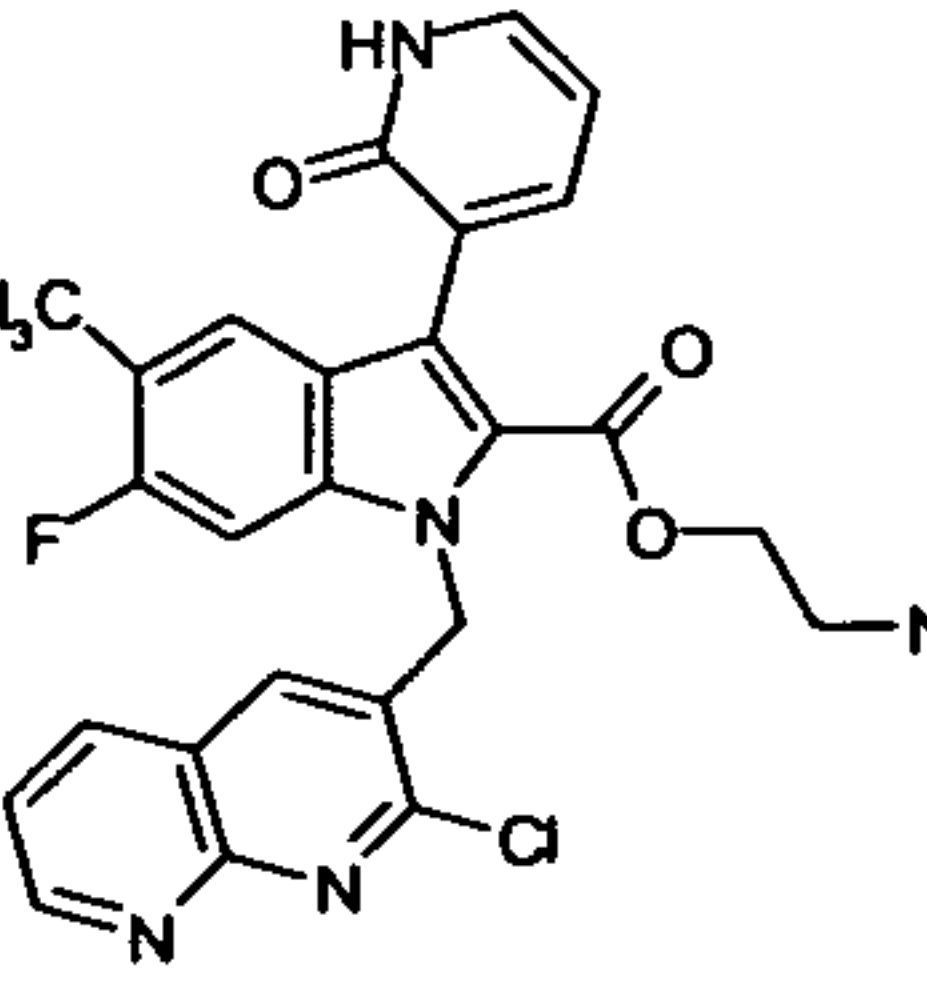
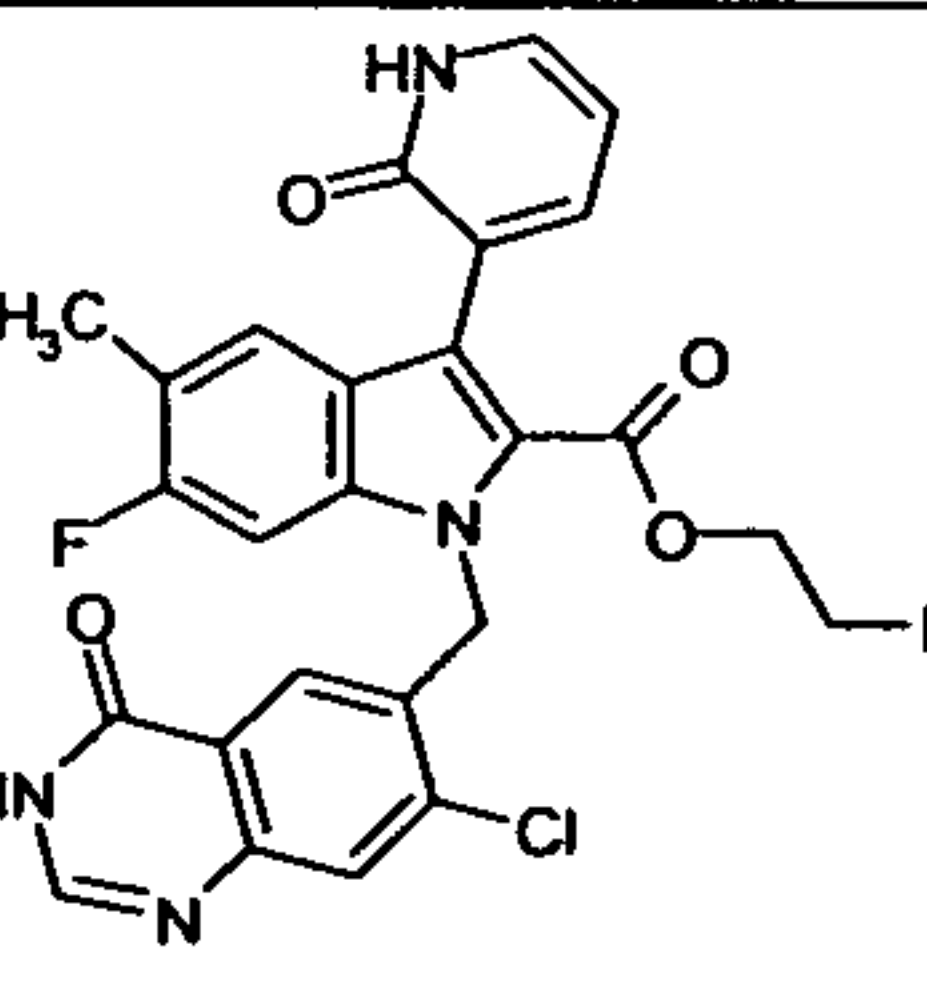
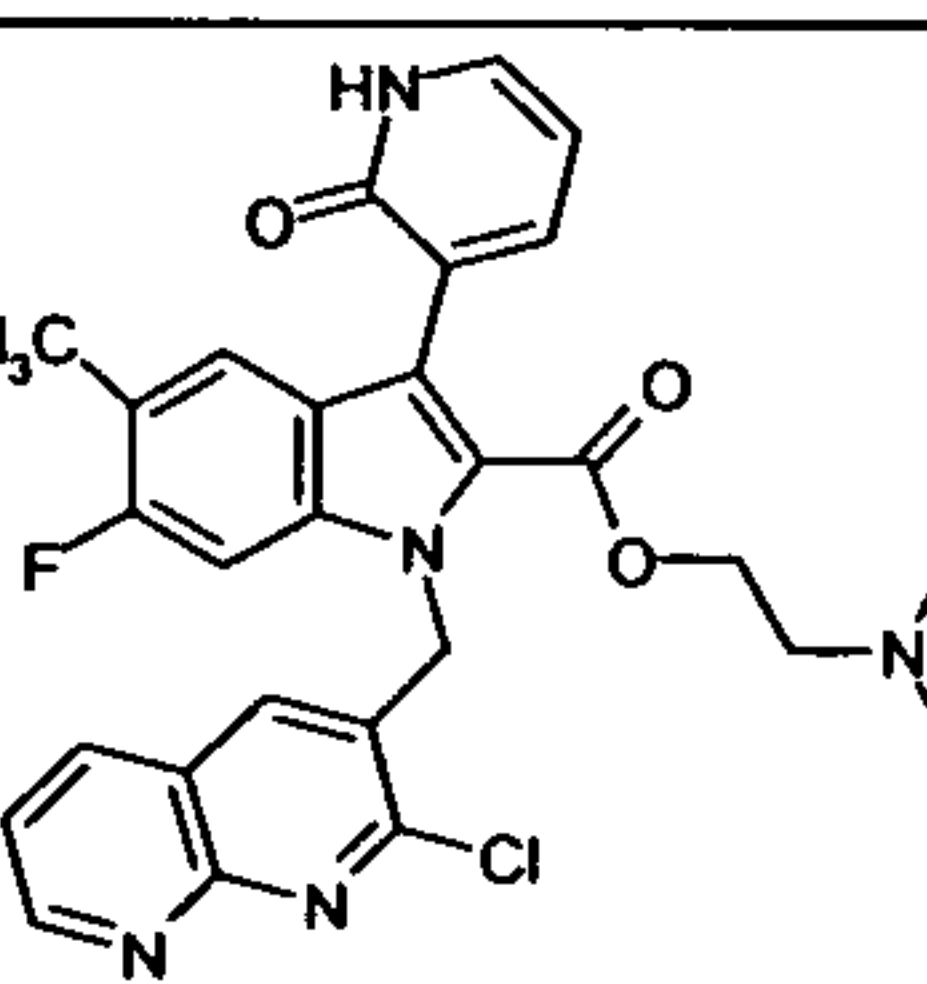
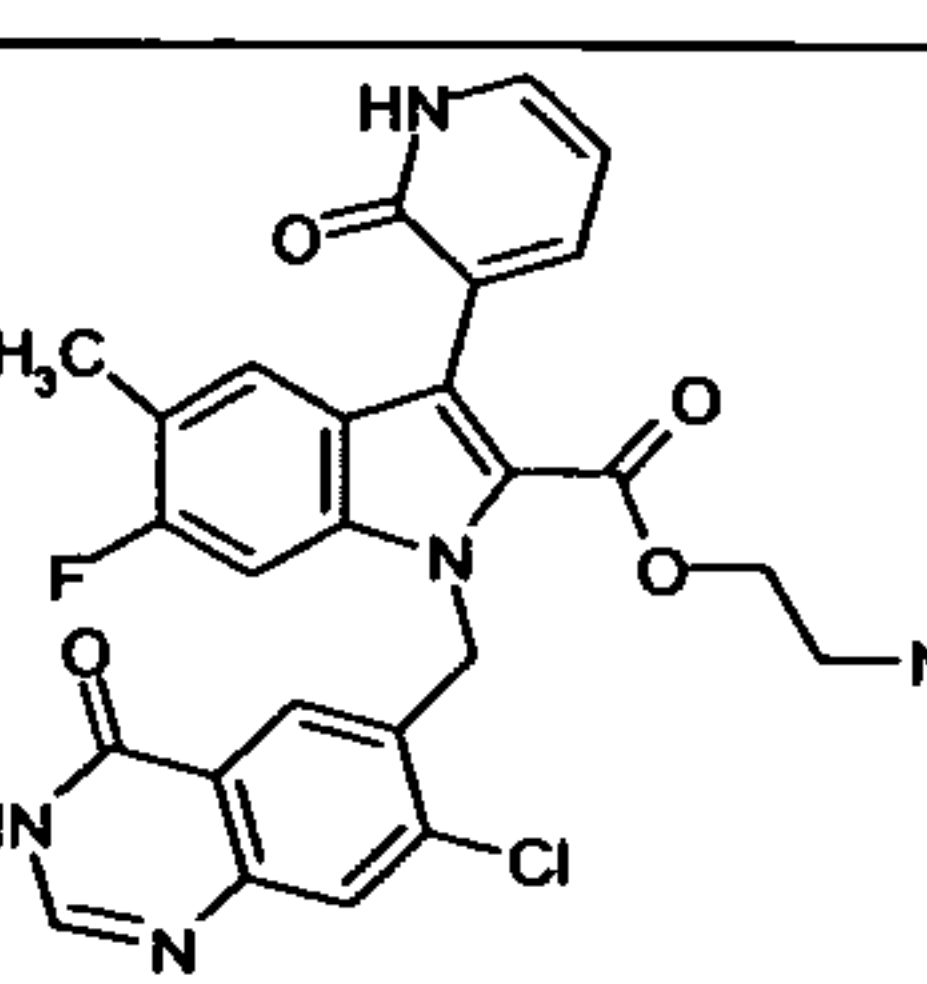
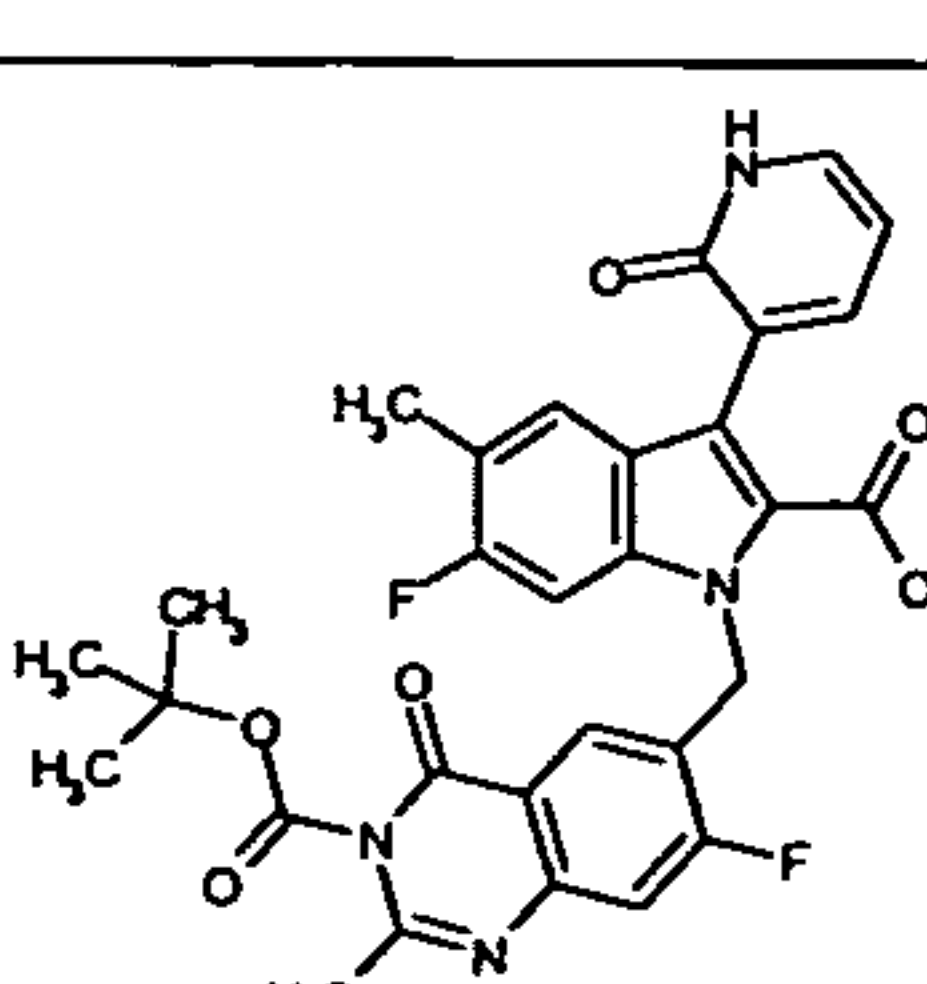
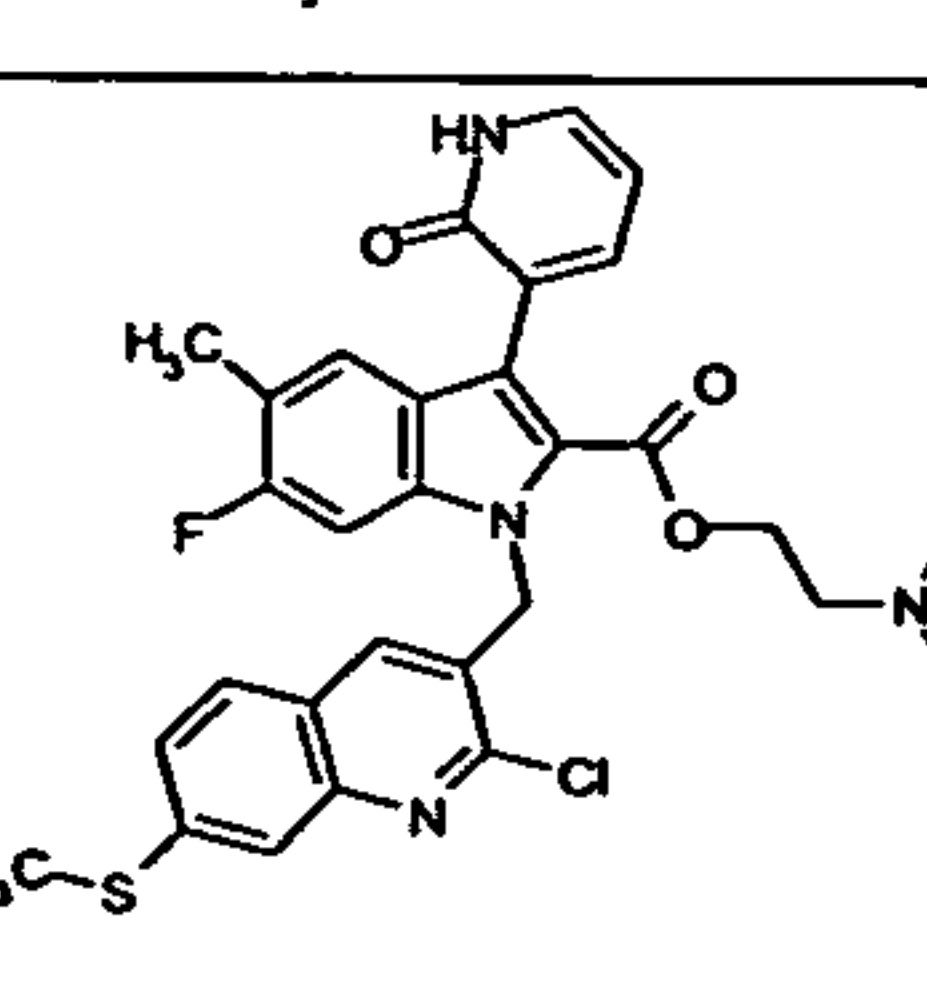
128

233		498.9
234		502.0
235		NA
236		NA
237		507.5
238		509.0
239		509.5

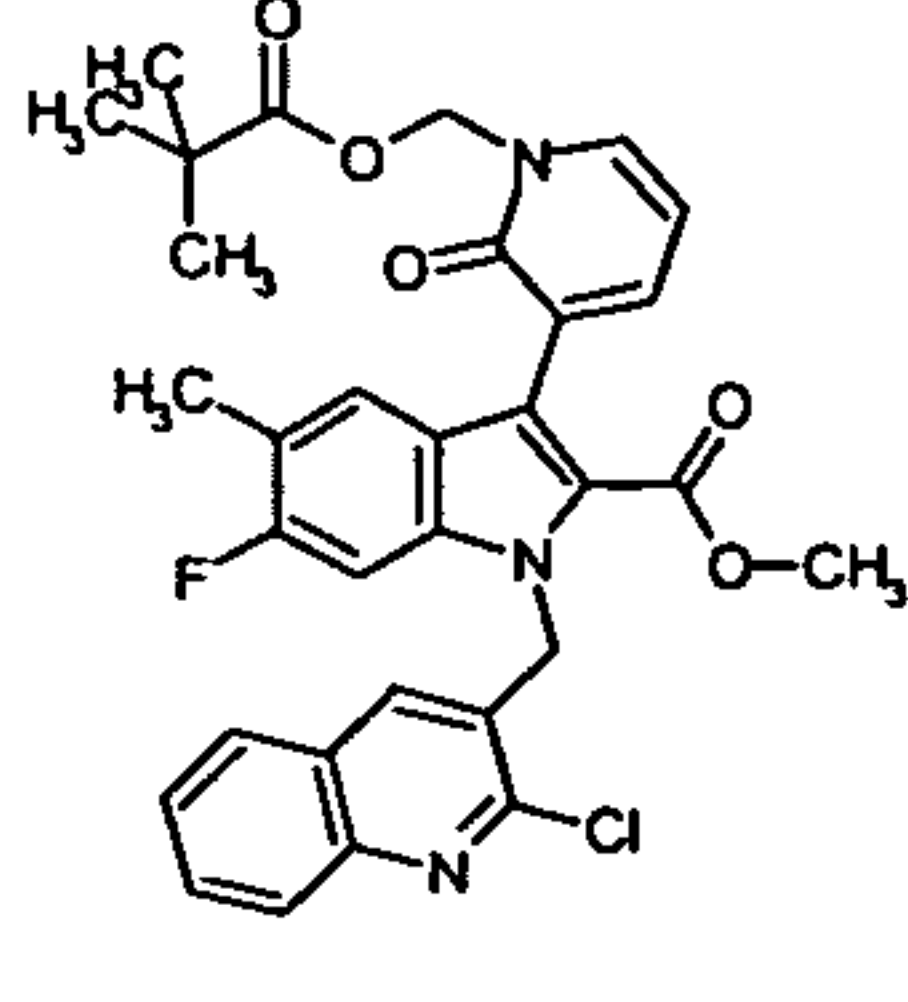
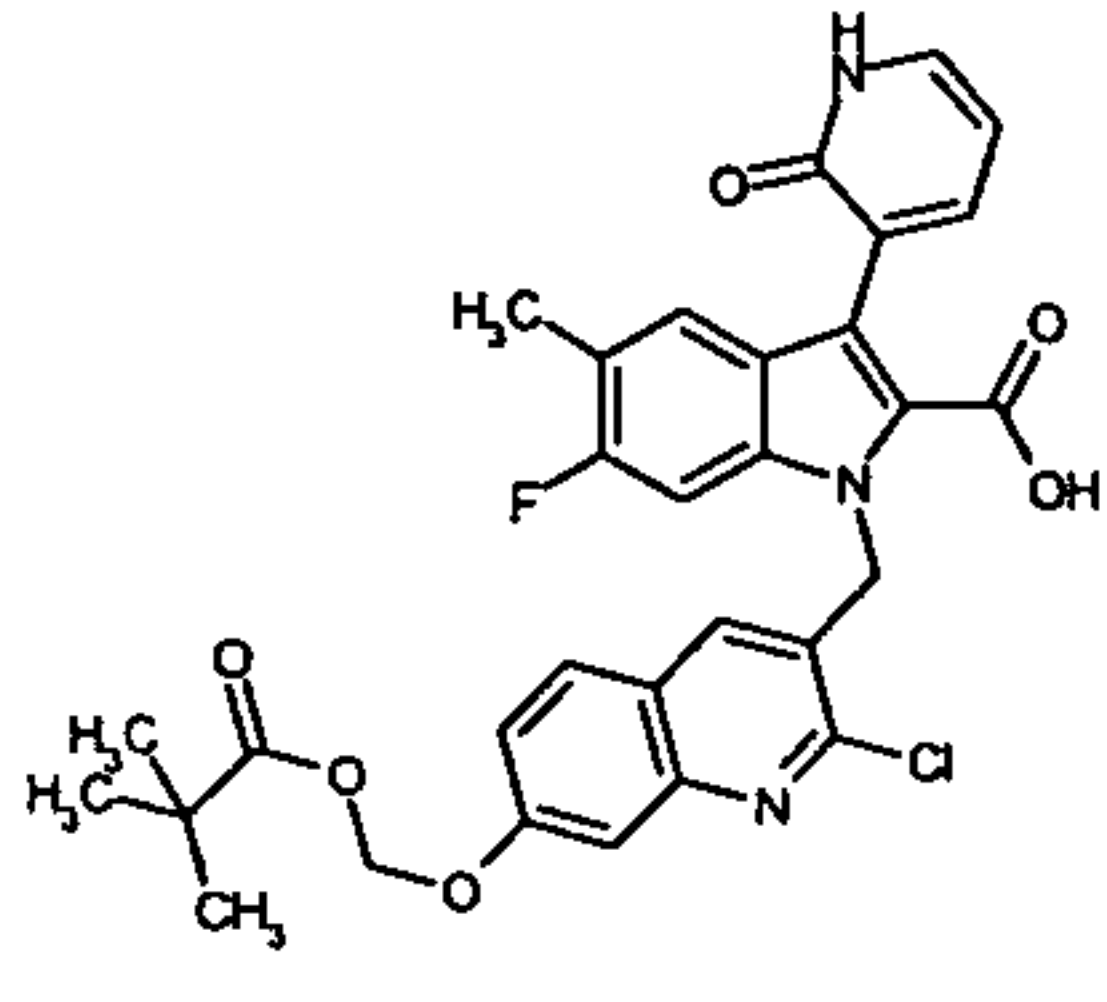
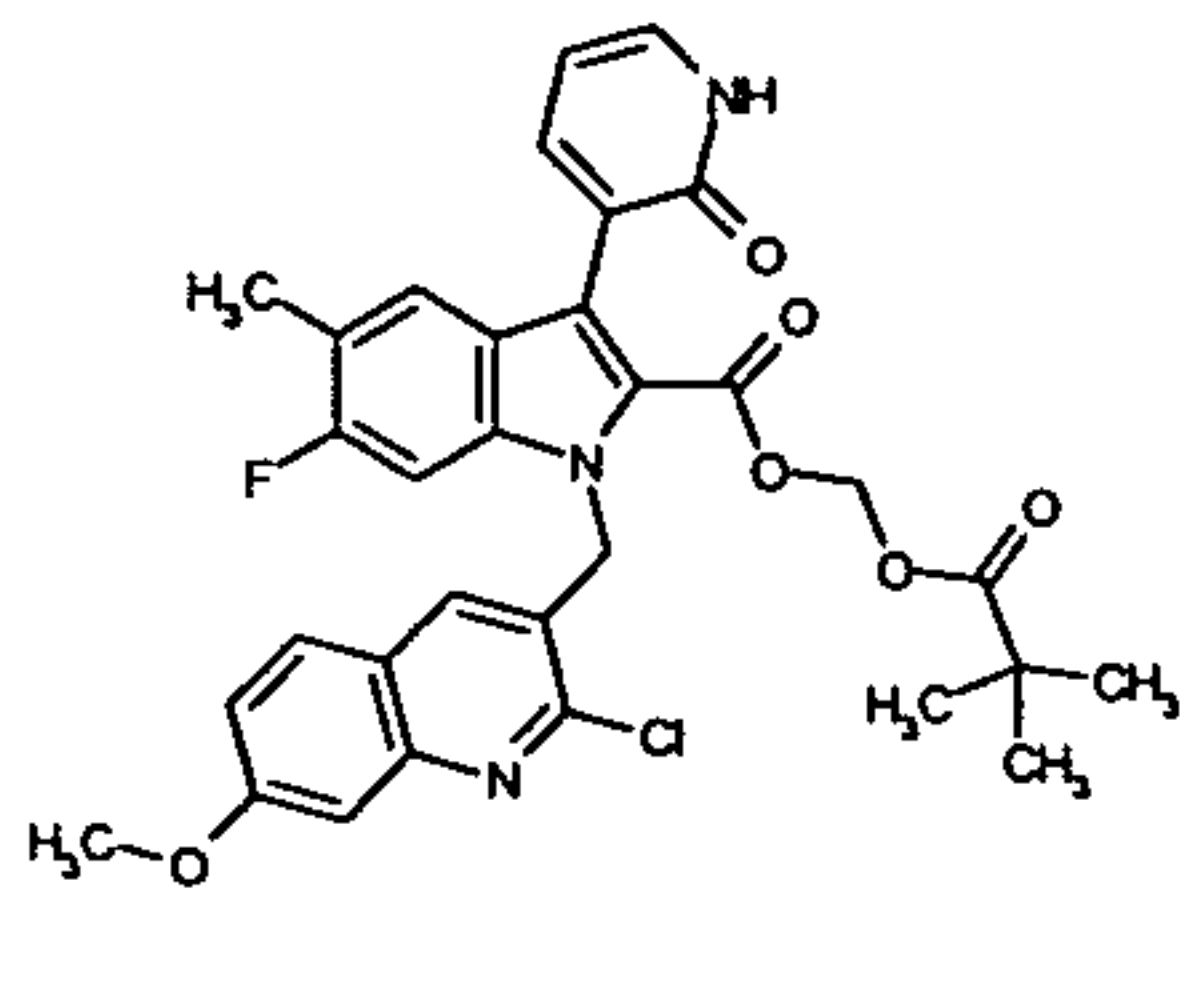
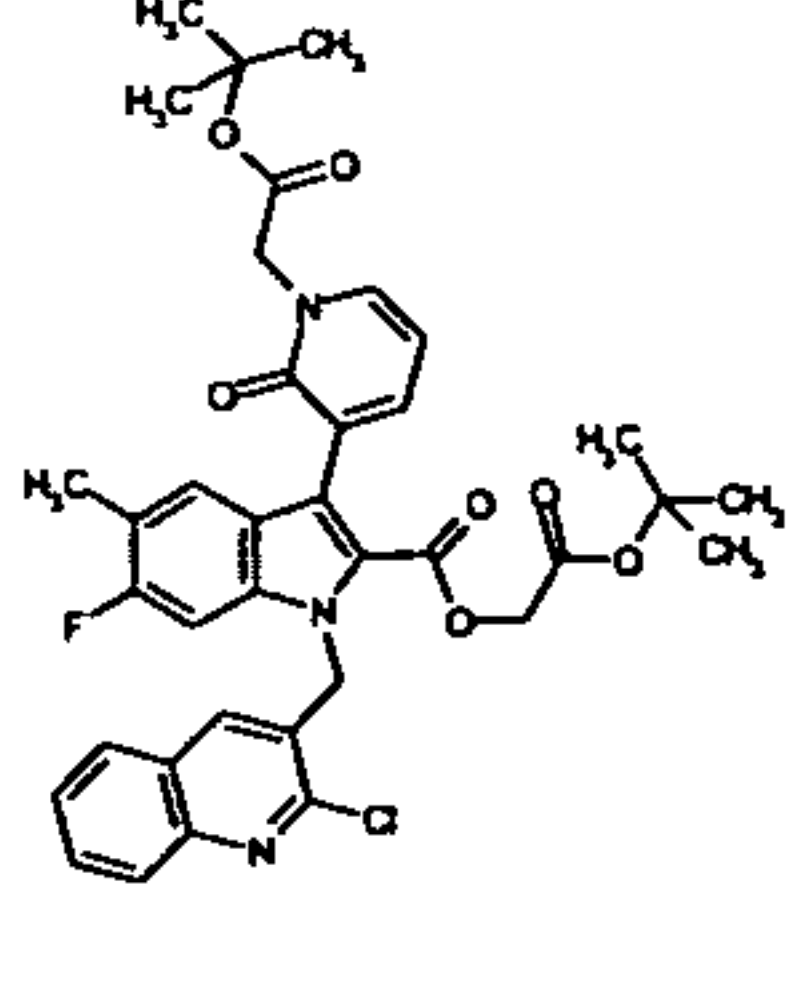
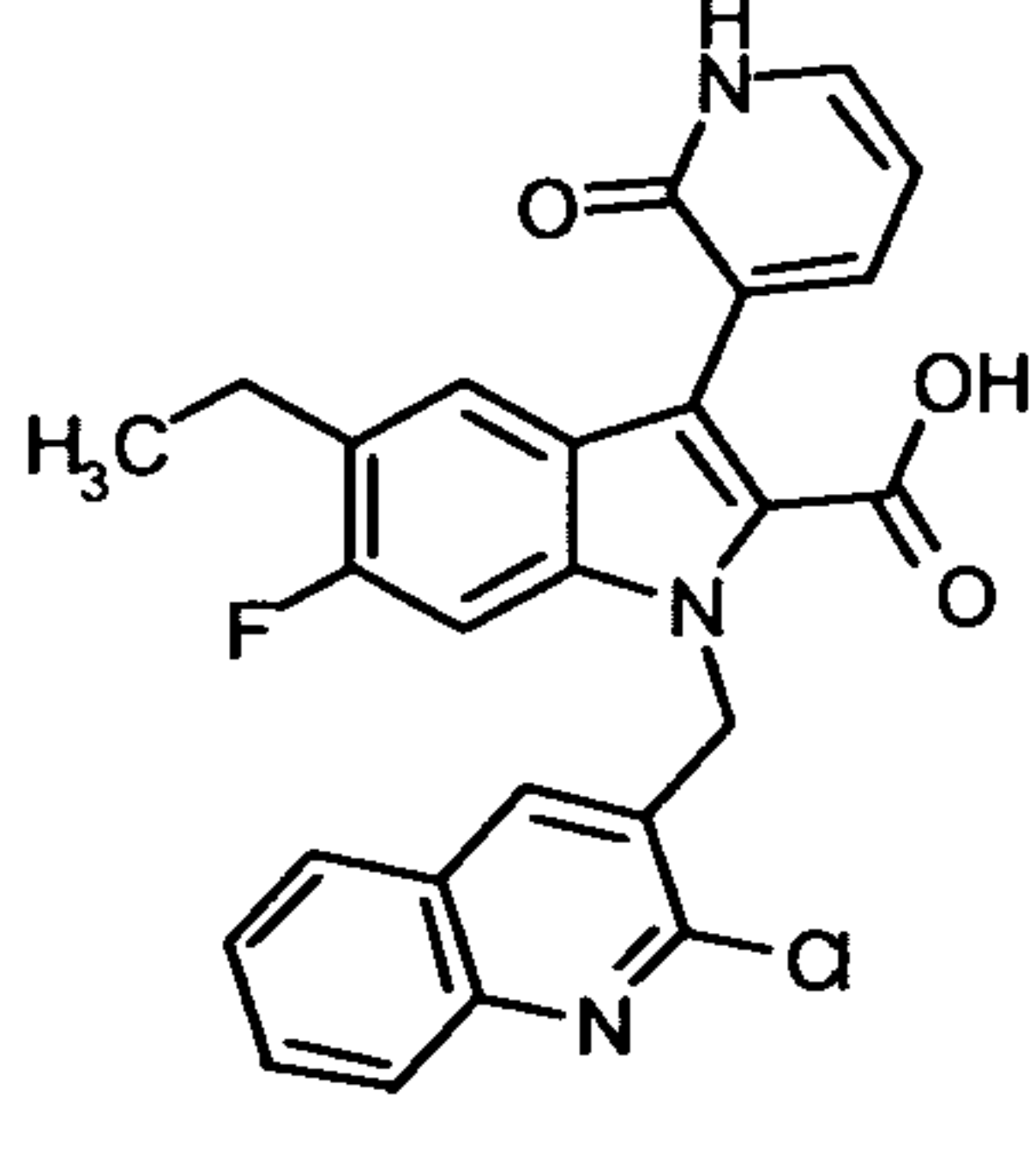
129

240		512.9
241		NA
242		NA
243		521.0
244		NA
245		NA
246		534.0

130

247		535.0
248		NA
249		NA
250		NA
251		NA
252		577.6
253		NA

131

254		591.1
255		593.0
256		607.1
257		691.2
258		476.0

NA = not available

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, esters and prodrugs thereof.

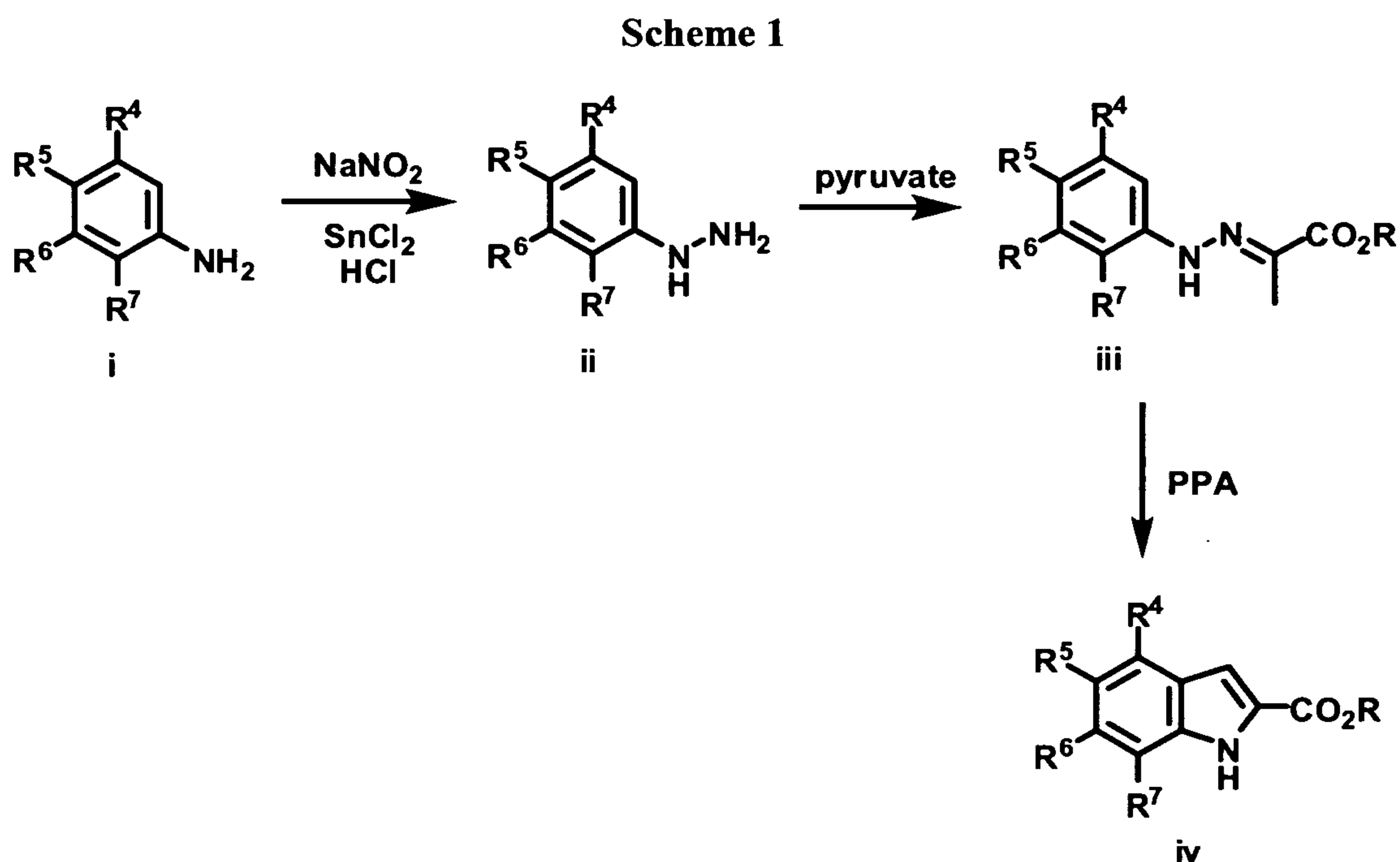
5

Methods For Making the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives

Methods useful for making the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are set forth in the Examples below and generalized in Schemes 1-5. Examples of commonly known

methodologies useful for the synthesis of indoles are set forth, for example, in G. R. Humphrey and J. T. Kuethe, *Chemical Reviews* 106:2875-2911, 2006.

Scheme 1 shows a method useful for making compounds of formula **iv**, which are useful intermediates for making the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives.



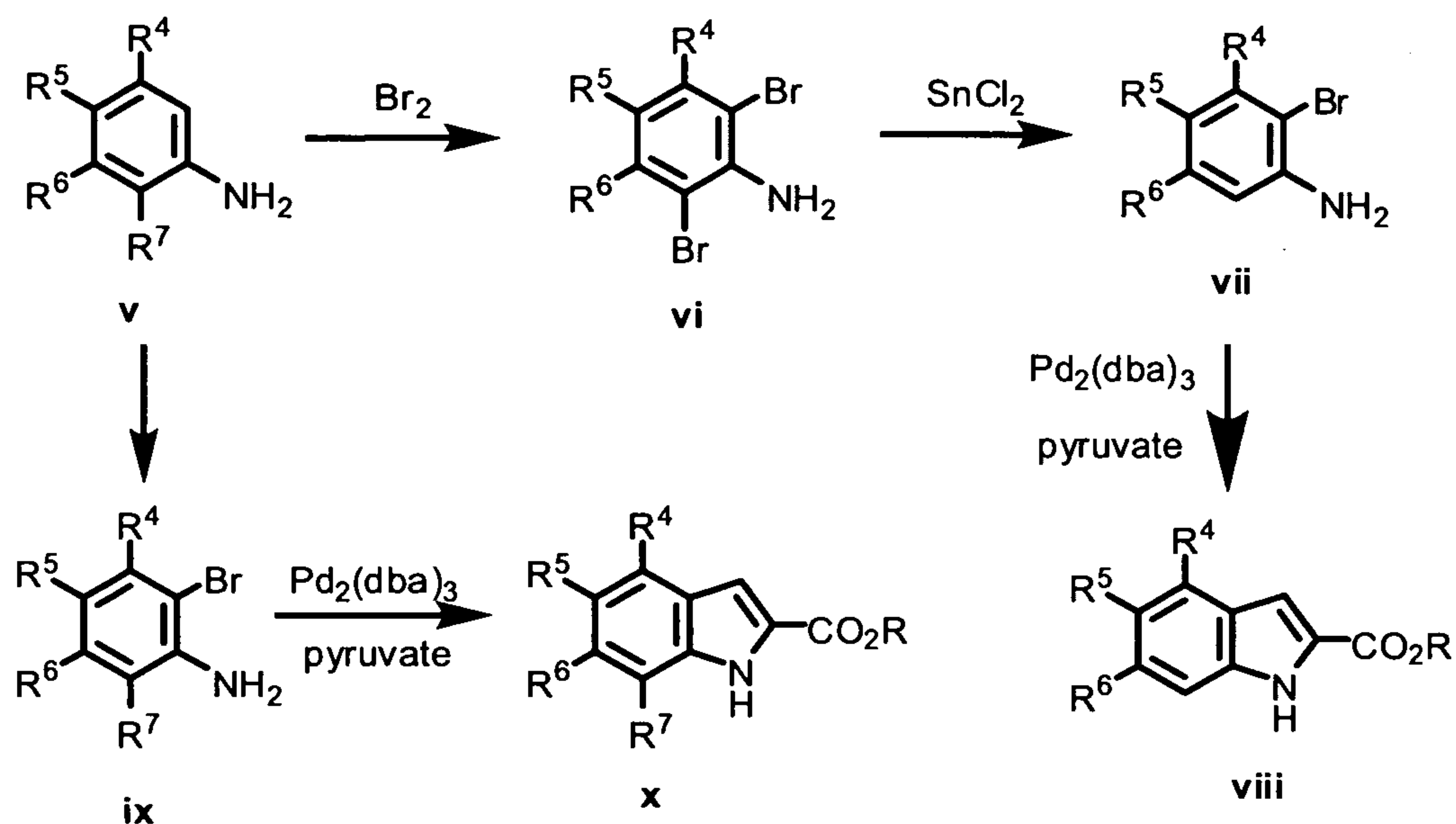
wherein R^4 - R^7 are defined above for the compounds of formula (I) and R is H, alkyl or aryl.

An aniline compound of formula **i** can be converted to an indole compound of formula **iv** using various indole syntheses that are well-known to those skilled in the art of organic synthesis, including but not limited to, a Fischer indole synthesis through intermediates of type **ii** and **iii**, the method set forth in Nazare *et al.*, *Angew. Chem.*, 116:4626-4629 (2004).

Scheme 2 shows methods useful for making compounds **viii** and **x**, which are useful intermediates for making of the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives.

Scheme 2

133



wherein R^4 - R^7 are defined above for the compounds of formula (I) and R is H, alkyl or aryl.

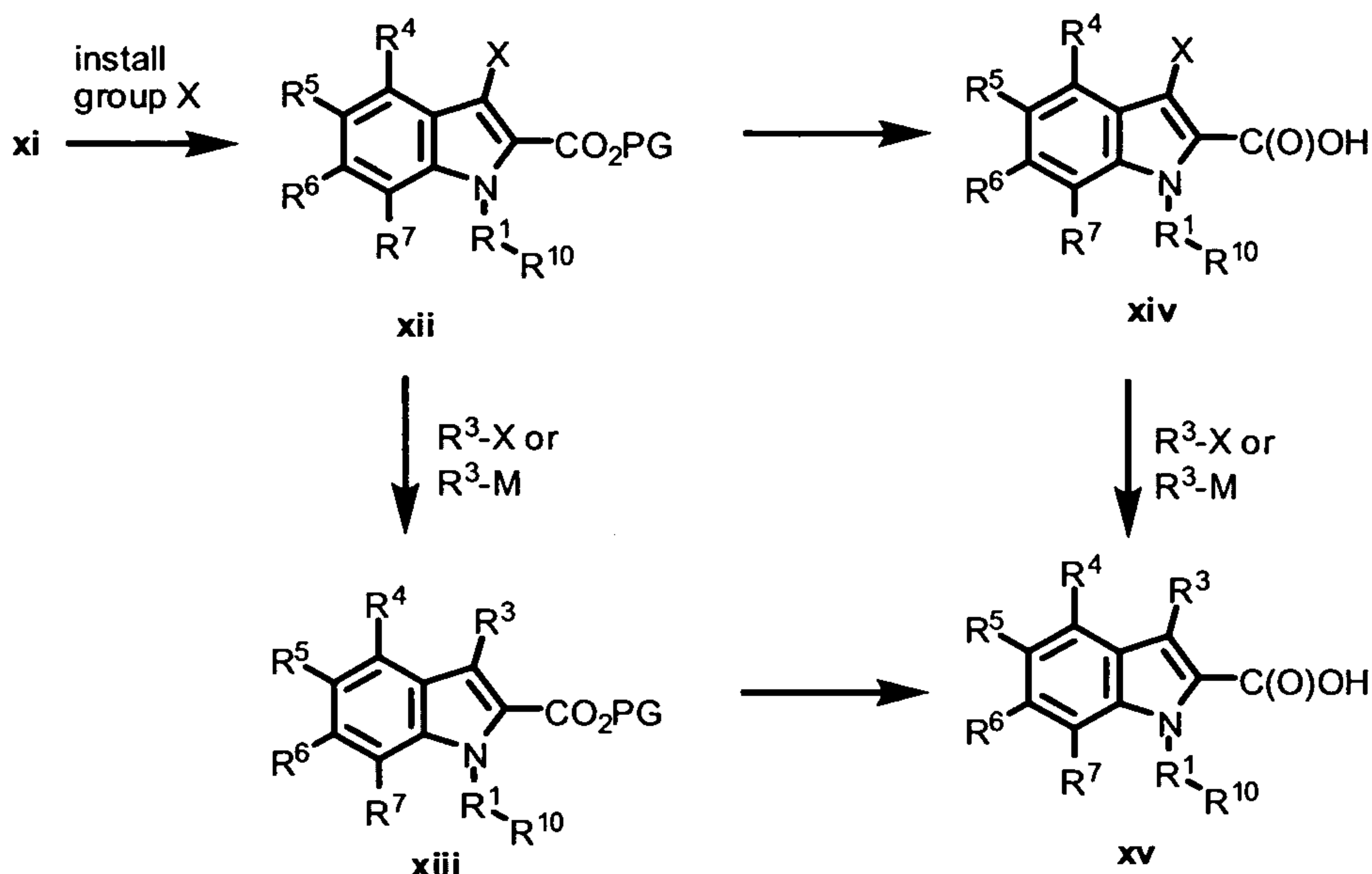
A benzene derivative of formula **v**, wherein R^7 is H, can be di-brominated to provide compound **vi**. Selective de-bromination provides the corresponding monobromo analog **vii**,

5 which under palladium catalyzed cyclization conditions provides the desired intermediate **viii**, wherein R^7 is H. Alternatively a compound of formula **v**, wherein R^7 is other than H, can be monobrominated to provide compound **ix**. A compound of formula **ix** can then undergo under palladium catalyzed cyclization conditions provides the desired intermediate **x**, wherein R^7 is other than H.

10 Scheme 3 illustrates methods by which intermediate compounds of formula **xi** can be further derivatized to provide the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives, which are intermediates to the title 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives.

Scheme 3

134



wherein R^1 , R^3 , R^4 - R^7 and R^{10} are defined above for the compounds of formula (I); **PG** is a carboxy protecting group; and **X** is halo, -O-triflate, -B(OH)₂, -Si(alkyl)₂OH, -Sn(alkyl)₃, -MgBr, -MgCl, -ZnBr, or -ZnCl; and **M** is any metal which can participate in an organometallic cross-coupling reaction.

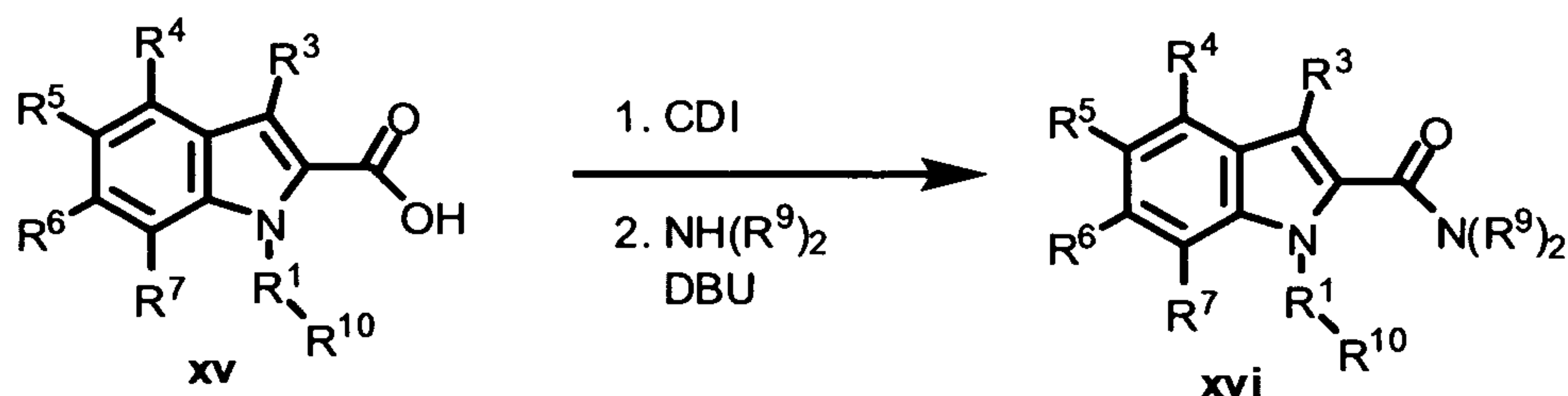
An intermediate compound of formula **xi** can be converted to a 3-substituted indole of formula **xii** using methods well-known to one skilled in the art of organic synthesis. A compound of formula **xii**, wherein **X** is halo or -O-triflate can then be coupled with an appropriate compound of formula R^3-M (wherein **M** is -B(OH)₂, -Si(alkyl)₂OH, -Sn(alkyl)₃, -MgBr, -MgCl, -ZnBr, -ZnCl, or any metal which can participate in an organometallic cross-coupling reaction) using an organometallic cross-coupling method. Alternatively, a compound of formula **xii**, wherein **X** is -B(OH)₂, -Si(alkyl)₂OH, -Sn(alkyl)₃, -MgBr, -MgCl, -ZnBr, -ZnCl, or any metal which can participate in an organometallic cross-coupling reaction, can then be coupled with an appropriate compound of formula R^3-M (wherein **M** is halo or -O-triflate) using an organometallic cross-coupling method. Suitable cross-coupling methods include, but not limited to, a Stille coupling (see Choshi *et al.*, *J. Org. Chem.*, 62:2535-2543 (1997), and Scott *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 106:4630 (1984)), a Suzuki coupling (see Miyaura *et al.*, *Chem. Rev.*, 95:2457 (1995)), a Negishi coupling (see Zhou *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 127:12537-12530 (2003)), a silanoate-based coupling (see Denmark *et al.*, *Chem. Eur. J.*, 12:4954-4963 (2006)) and a Kumada coupling (see Kumada, *Pure Appl. Chem.*, 52:669 (1980) and Fu *et al.*, *Angew. Chem.*, 114:4363 (2002)) to provide a compound of formula **F**. The carboxy protecting group, **PG**, can then be removed from the compound of formula **xiv** and the

135

resulting carboxylic acid can be derivatized using the methods described below in order to make the appropriate R^2 groups and make the compounds of formula xv, which correspond to the compounds of formula (I), wherein R^2 is $-C(O)OH$. Alternatively, a compound of formula xii can first be deprotected and the R^2 group attached using the above methods to provide a compound of formula xiii. A compound of formula xiii can then be cross-coupled with a compound of R^3-X or R^3-M as described above to provide make the compounds of formula xv.

Scheme 4 shows a method useful for making the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives, wherein R^2 is $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$.

Scheme 4



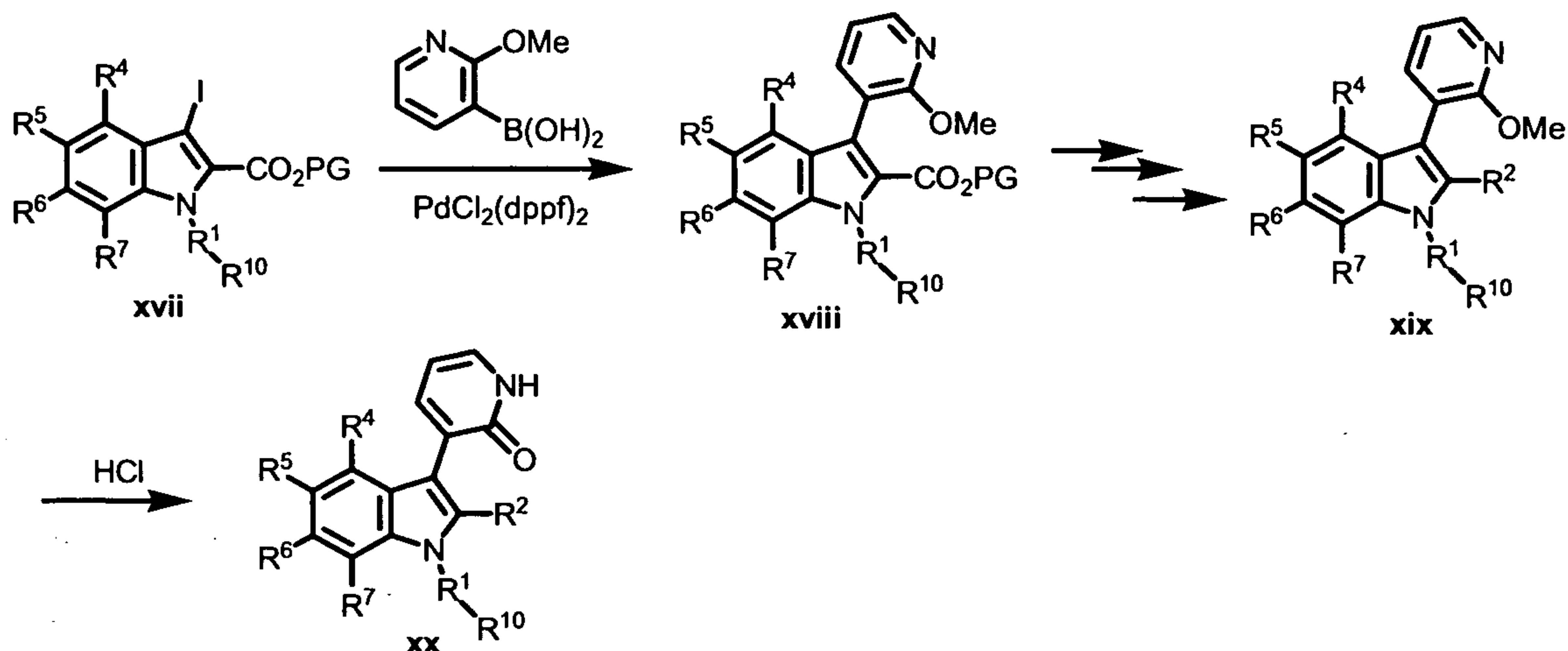
wherein R^1 , R^3 , R^4 - R^7 , R^9 and R^{10} are defined above for the compounds of formula (I).

A 2-carboxy indole compound of formula xv can be coupled with an amine of formula $\text{NH}(\text{R}^9)_2$ in the presence of carbonyldiimidazole (CDI) and 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU) to provide the compounds of formula xvi, which correspond to the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives wherein R^2 is $-C(O)N(\text{R}^9)_2$.

Scheme 5 shows a method useful for making the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives, wherein R^3 is 1H-pyridin-2-one-3-yl.

Scheme 5

136



wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^4 - R^7 , R^9 and R^{10} are defined above for the compounds of formula (I) and PG is a carboxy protecting group.

A 3-iodoindole compound of formula **xvii** can be coupled with 2-hydroxypyridine-3-boronic acid using a Suzuki coupling reaction to provide the R^3 -substituted indole compounds of formula **xviii**. A compound of formula **xviii** can be further elaborated using methods set forth above to provide the compounds of formula **xix**. The 2-hydroxypyridyl moiety of a compound of formula **xix** can then be reacted with strong acid, such as hydrochloric acid to provide the compounds of formula **xx**, which correspond to the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives, wherein R^3 is 1H-pyridin-2-one-3-yl.

The starting material and reagents depicted in Schemes 1-5 are either available from commercial suppliers such as Sigma-Aldrich (St. Louis, MO) and Acros Organics Co. (Fair Lawn, NJ), or can be prepared using methods well-known to those of skill in the art of organic synthesis.

One skilled in the art will recognize that the synthesis of 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives may require the need for the protection of certain functional groups (*i.e.*, derivatization for the purpose of chemical compatibility with a particular reaction condition). Suitable protecting groups for the various functional groups of the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives and methods for their installation and removal may be found in Greene *et al.*, *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, Wiley-Interscience, New York, (1999).

One skilled in the art will recognize that one route will be optimal depending on the choice of appendage substituents. Additionally, one skilled in the art will recognize that in some cases the order of steps has to be controlled to avoid functional group incompatibilities. One skilled in the art will recognize that a more convergent route (*i.e.* non-linear or

137

preassembly of certain portions of the molecule) is a more efficient method of assembly of the target compounds. Methods suitable for the preparation of 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are set forth above in Schemes 1-5.

The starting materials and the intermediates prepared using the methods set forth in Schemes 1-5 may be isolated and purified if desired using conventional techniques, including but not limited to filtration, distillation, crystallization, chromatography and the like. Such materials can be characterized using conventional means, including physical constants and spectral data.

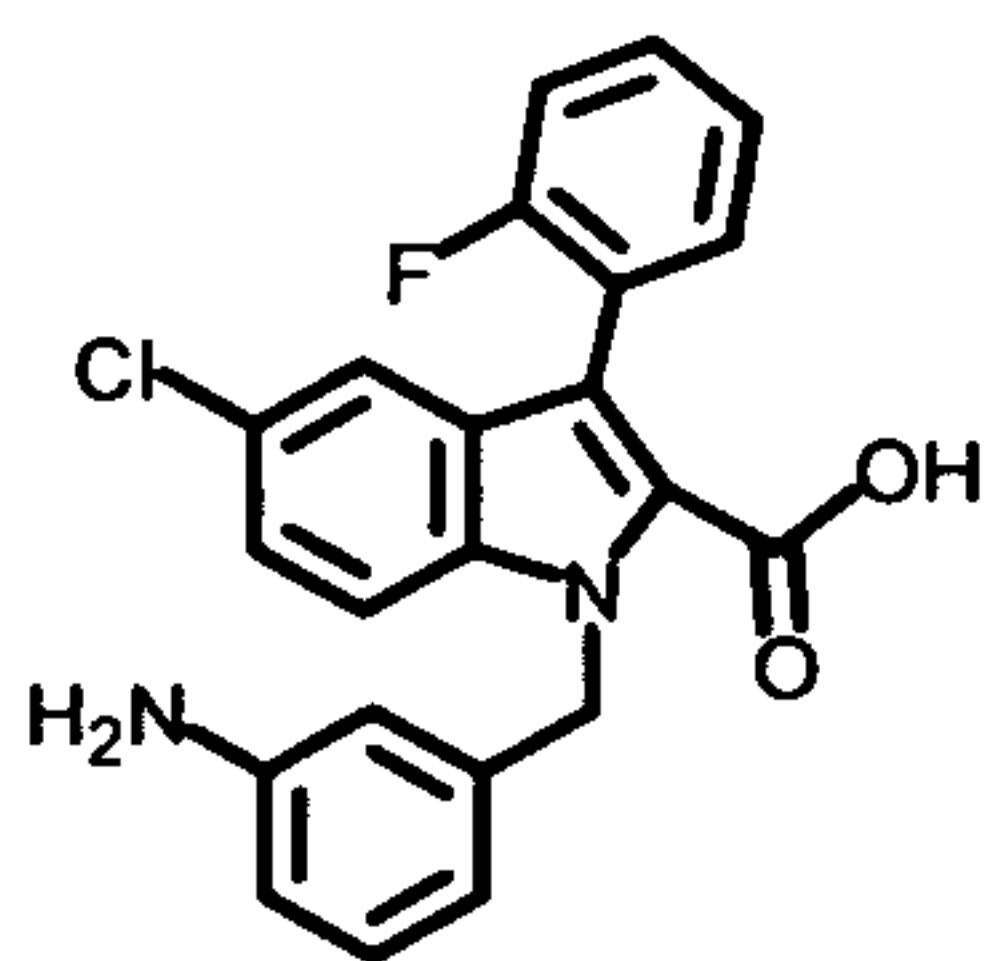
EXAMPLES

General Methods

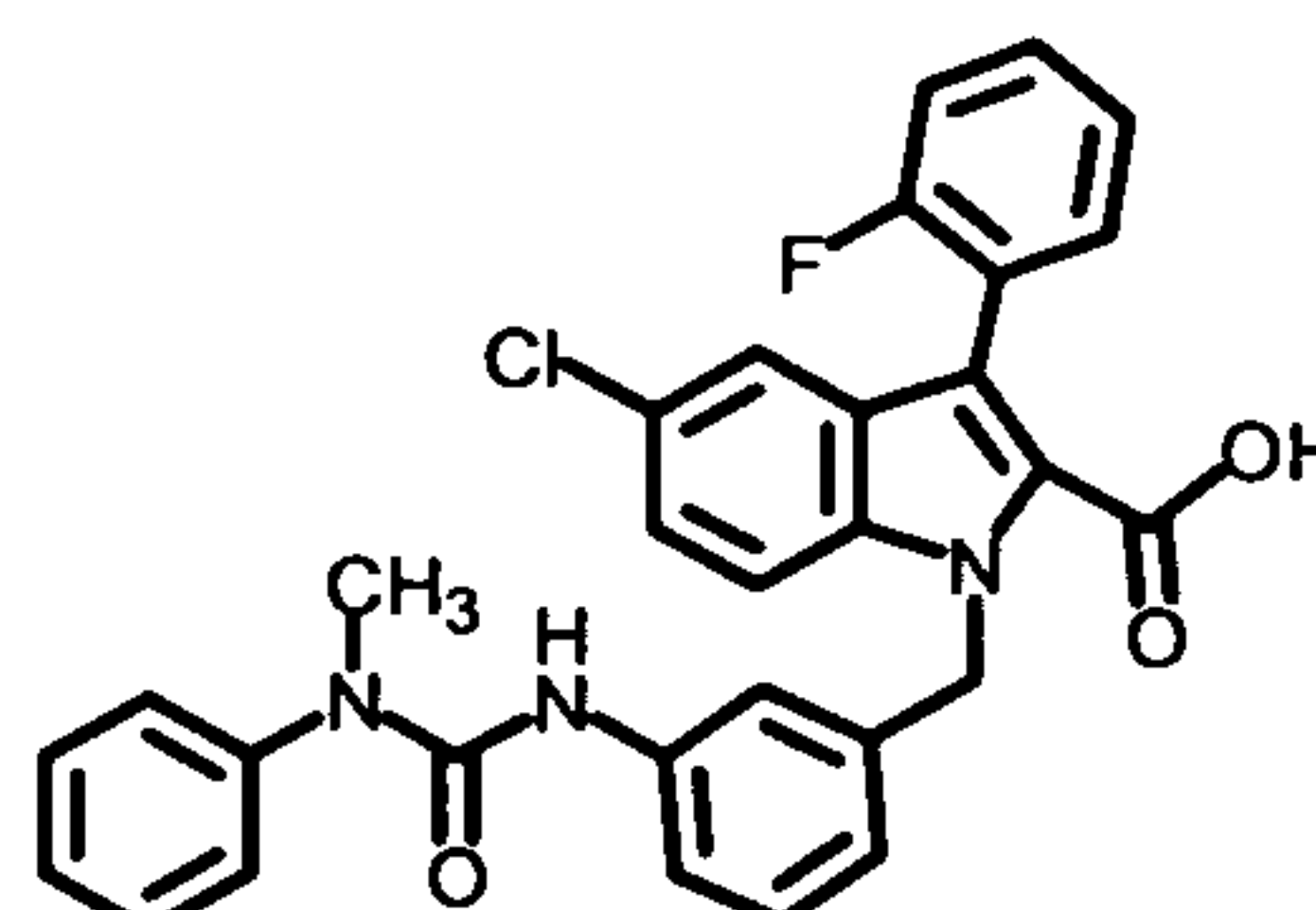
Solvents, reagents, and intermediates that are commercially available were used as received. Reagents and intermediates that are not commercially available were prepared in the manner as described below. ¹H NMR spectra were obtained on a Bruker Avance 500 (500 MHz) and are reported as ppm down field from Me₄Si with number of protons, multiplicities, and coupling constants in Hertz indicated parenthetically. Where LC/MS data are presented, analyses was performed using an Applied Biosystems API-100 mass spectrometer and Shimadzu SCL-10A LC column: Altech platinum C18, 3 micron, 33 mm x 7mm ID; gradient flow: 0 minute – 10% CH₃CN, 5 minutes – 95% CH₃CN, 5-7 minutes – 95% CH₃CN, 7 minutes – stop. The retention time and observed parent ion are given. Flash column chromatography was performed using pre-packed normal phase silica from Biotage, Inc. or bulk silica from Fisher Scientific.

Example 1

Preparation of Compounds 14 and 159



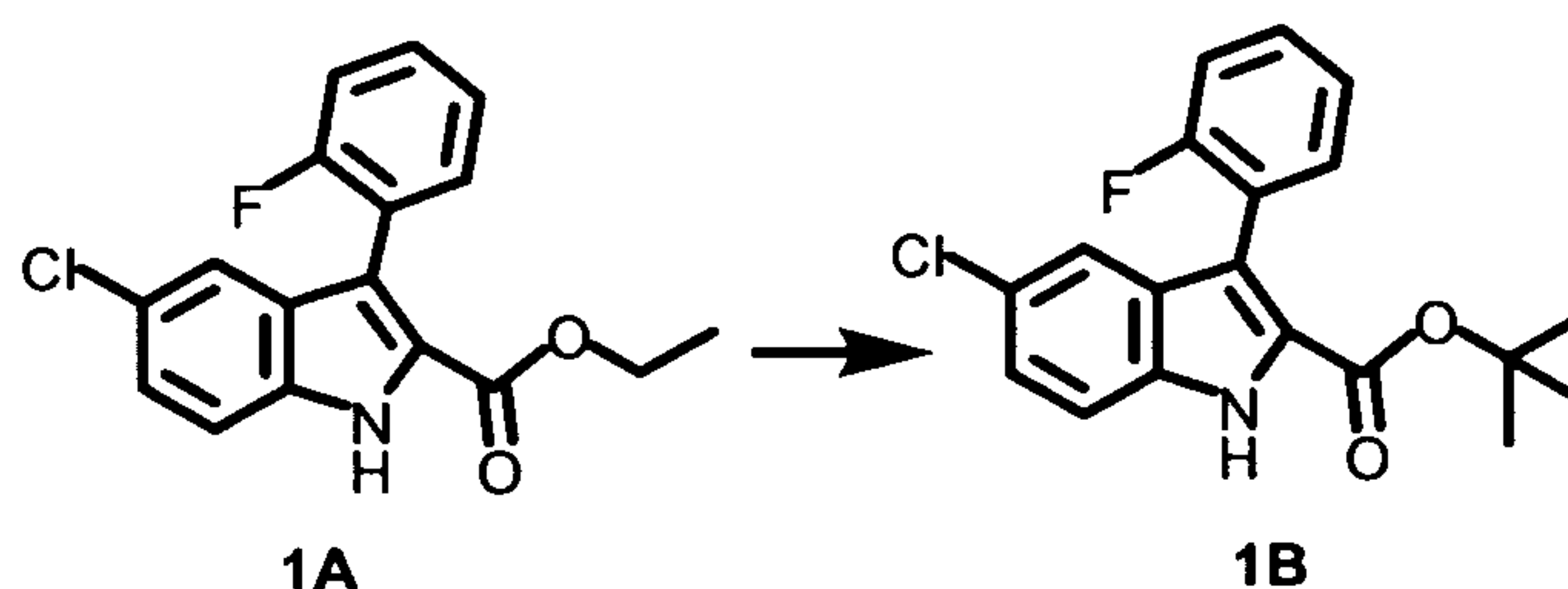
14



159

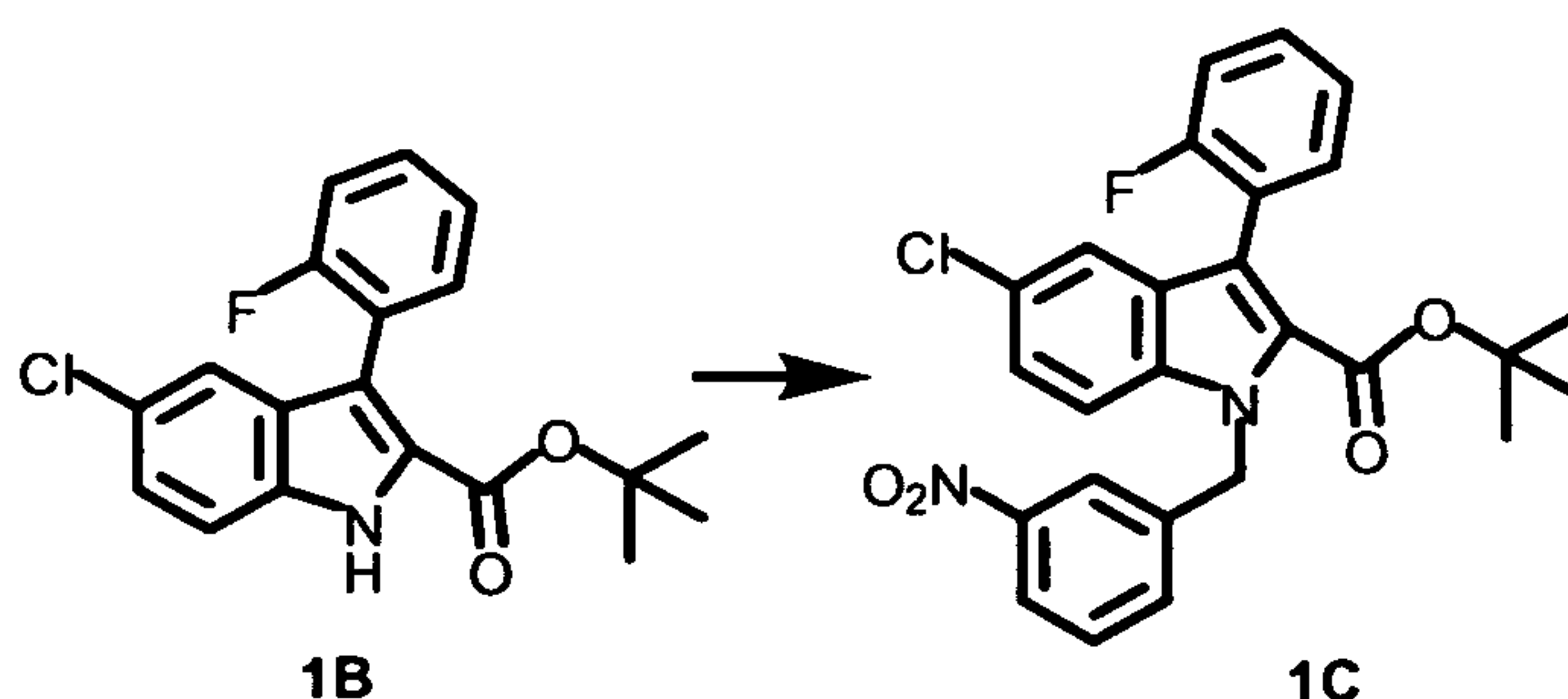
Step 1:

138



A solution of ethyl-5-chloro-3-ortho-fluorophenylindole-2-carboxylate, (**1A**, 10 g, 31.5 mmol) in 0.5 M LiOH in MeOH (125 mL) was allowed to stir at reflux for 4 hours. The mixture was cooled down to room temperature and then concentrated *in vacuo*. Water was added to the residue and the resulting suspension acidified with aqueous 1N HCl solution. The solids were collected by filtration, and then were dissolved into EtOAc. The organic solution was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to a solid residue. The resulting residue was resuspended in anhydrous toluene (150 mL) at 80 °C and Me₂N-[O-(tBu)]₂ (20 mL, 84.0 mmol) was added to the heated suspension dropwise.. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 80 °C for 3 h and then cooled to room temperature. The mixture was diluted with toluene, washed with aqueous saturate sodium bicarbonate solution (x 2) and brine respectively. The organic layer was dried and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a residue. The resulting residue was triturated from hexanes to provide compound **1B** (9.3 g, 85% yield) as a white powder. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 9.08 (s, 1H), 7.46-7.33 (m, 4H), 7.30 & 7.28 (dd, J= 1.47 Hz & 8.79 Hz, 1H), 7.25-7.21 (m, 1H), 7.17 (t, J= 9.15 Hz, 1H), 1.40 (s, 9H).

Step 2:

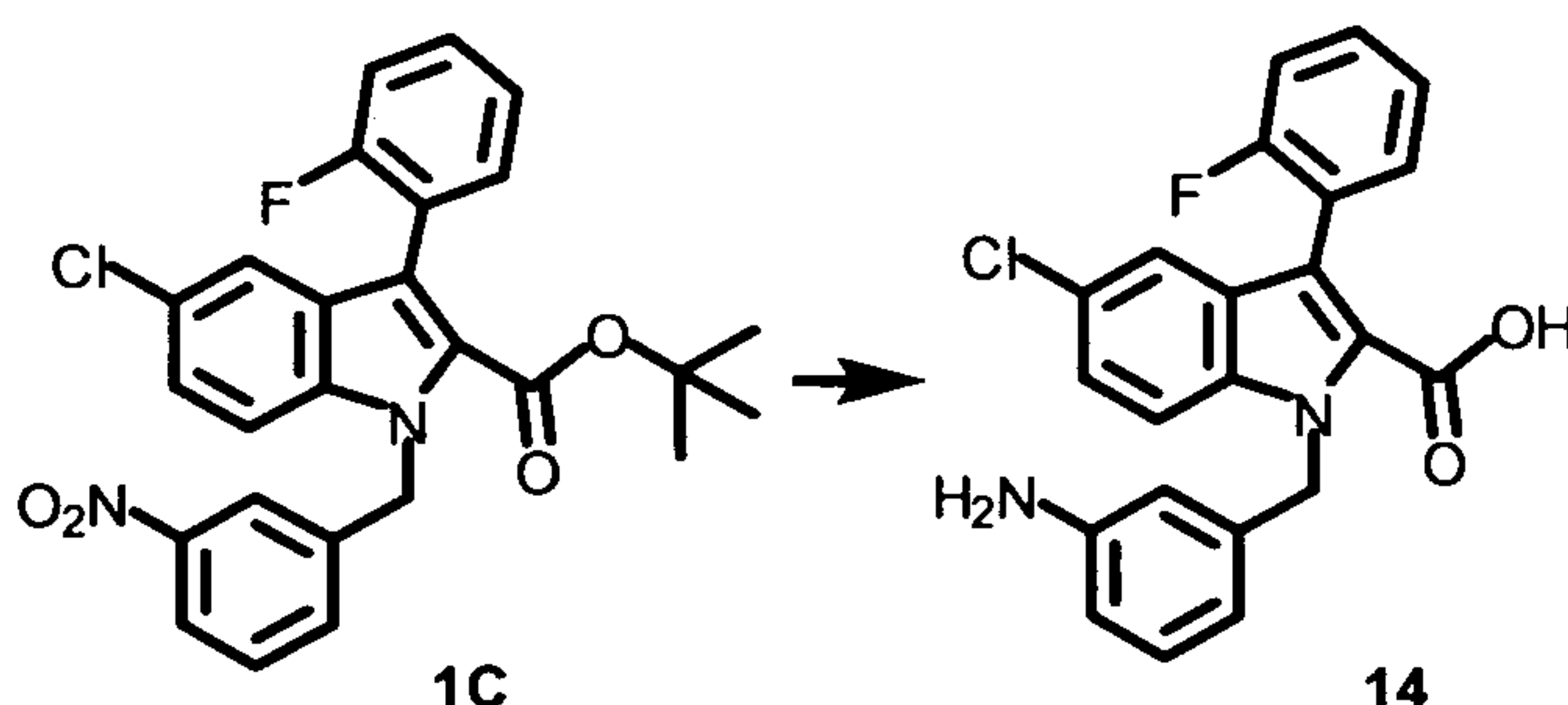


To a solution of 5-chloro-3-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester, **1B** (3 g, 8.68 mmol) in DMF at 0 °C was added potassium tert-butoxide (10.4 mL). The mixture was allowed to stir at 0 °C for 10 minutes and then 3-nitrobenzylbromide (2.15 g, 9.95 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was then allowed to warm slowly over 6-8 h to room temperature, and stir an additional 12 hours. DMF was removed *in vacuo*, and the resulting

139

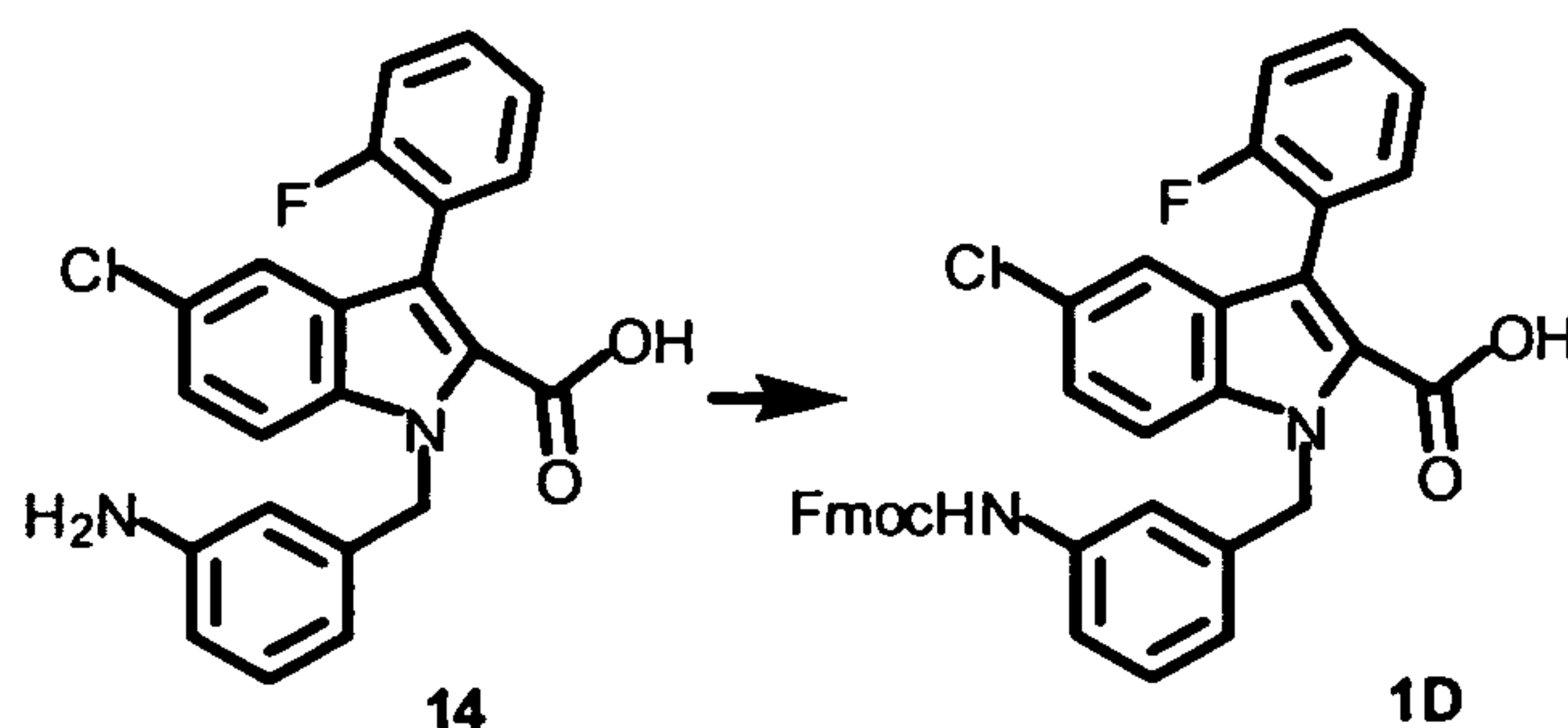
residue was re-dissolved into ethyl acetate. The solution was washed twice with aqueous 5% sodium bicarbonate solution. The separated organic layer was dried, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using flash chromatography to provide compound **1C** (4 g, 96% yield).

5

Step 3:

A mixture of 5-chloro-3-(2-fluorophenyl)-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester, **1C** (4.0 g, 8.32 mmol) and $\text{SnCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (11.28 g, 50.0 mmol) in ethanol (40 mL) was allowed to stir at 85 °C for 2 hours. The mixture was cooled to room temperature, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was re-dissolved into ethyl acetate, aqueous 1N sodium hydroxide solution was added until the pH value of the aqueous layer reaches 7 ~8. The resulting suspension was filtered through a pad of celite. The filtrate was treated again with an aqueous 1N sodium hydroxide solution and filtered. The filtrate was washed with brine, dried, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was purified through column chromatography to provide compound **14** (2.0 g, 60% yield). ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl_3): δ 7.45-7.34 (m, 3H), 7.29 (d, J = 8.79 Hz, 1H), 7.24 & 7.22 (dd, J = 2.20 Hz & 8.79 Hz, 2H), 7.19-7.14 (m, 1H), 7.06 (t, J = 8.06 Hz, 1H), 6.55-6.52 (m, 2H), 6.38 (s, 1H), 5.72 (s, 2H), 2.05 (s, 2H), 1.25 (s, 9H).

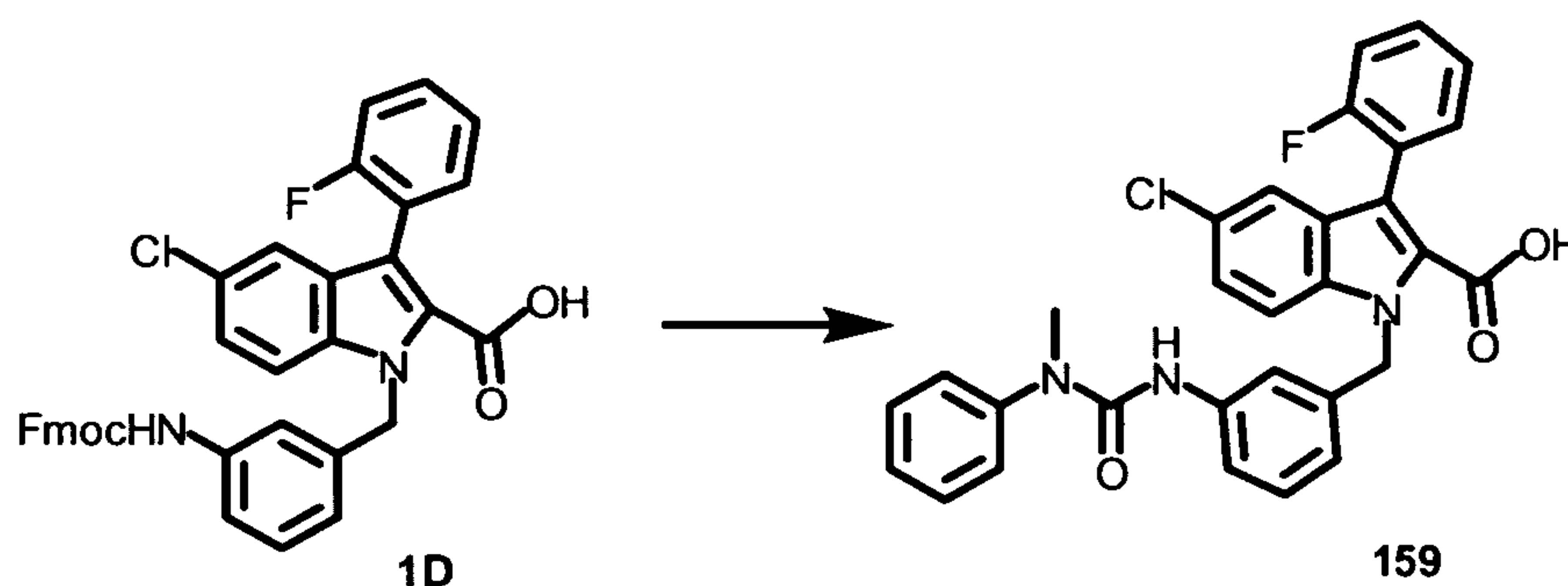
20

Step 4:

140

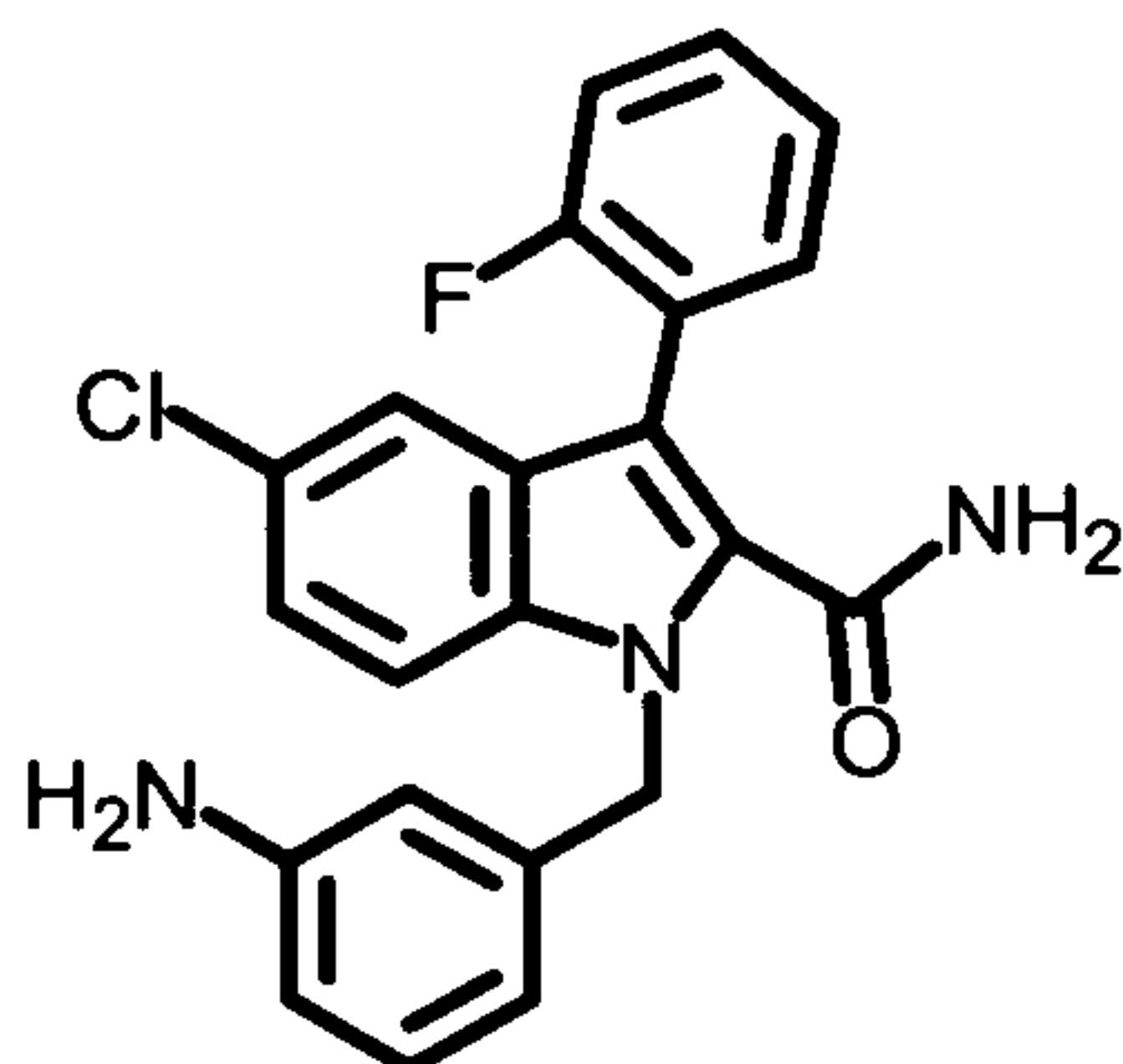
To a solution of compound **14** (2.9 g, 7.35 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (40 mL) was added N-(9-Fluorenylmethoxycarbonyloxy) succinimide (4.95 g, 14.69 mmol). The resulting reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 50 °C for 18 hours. The mixture was then cooled to room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue obtained was dissolved into

5 dichloromethane, washed with aqueous 5% sodium bicarbonate solution. The separated organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue obtained was purified using flash chromatography to provide compound **1D** (2.2 g, 49% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 7.75 (d, J= 7.32 Hz, 2H), 7.56 (d, J= 5.86 Hz, 2H), 7.45-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.33-7.27 (m, 6H), 7.19-7.14 (m, 3H), 6.70 (d, J= 7.32 Hz, 1H), 5.78 (s, 2H), 4.49 (d, 10 J= 6.59 Hz, 2H), 4.21 (t, J= 5.49 Hz, 1H).

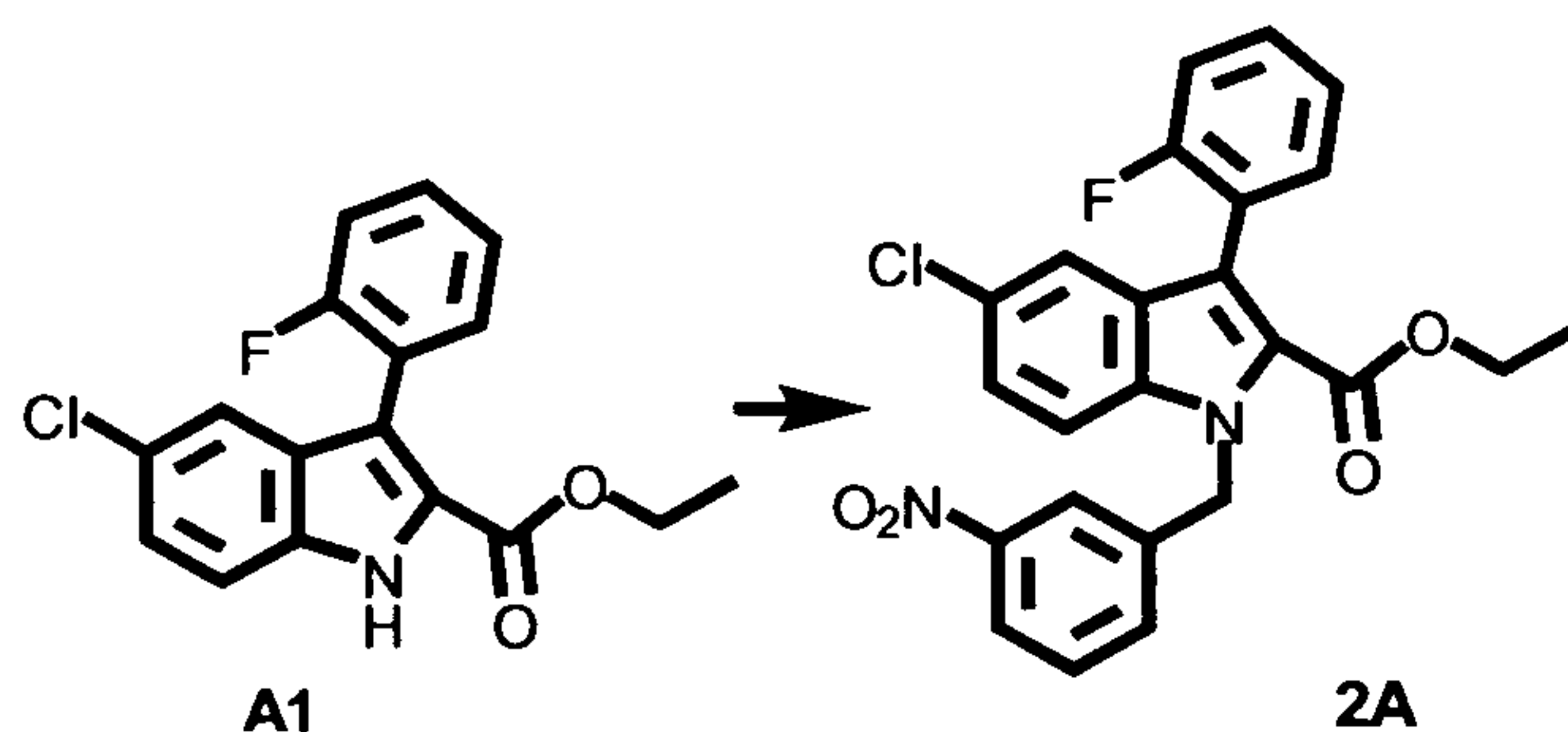
Step 5:

The mixture of 5-chloro-1-[3-(9H-fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-benzyl]-3-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid, **1D** (2.0 g, 3.24 mmol) and DIEA (5.0 mL, 12.96 mmol) in dichloromethane (35 mL) was added dropwise to trityl chloride polystyrene resin (7.05 g, 6.49 mmol) in dichloromethane (35 mL). The resulting mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 hours. The mixture was quenched with DIEA/ MeOH, and washed with DMF (4 x) to provide a resin-attached Fmoc- intermediate. This Fmoc-intermediate was 20 treated with 20% piperidine in DMF. The mixture was allowed to stir for 1 h and then washed with DMF (4 x) to provide the corresponding resin-attached free amine-intermediate. This free amine-intermediate was treated with N-methyl-N-phenylcarbonyl chloride (32.4 mmol) and DIPEA (64.8 mmol)). The mixture was stirred in DMF for 48 h before washed with DMF (2 x), THF (2 x), methanol (2 x) and dichloromethane (2 x) respectively to provide the 25 corresponding resin-attached urea-intermediate. This urea intermediate was then cleared off of the resin by treatment with 2% trifluoroacetic acid in dichloromethane to provide Compound **159**. MS = 528 (M+H)

141

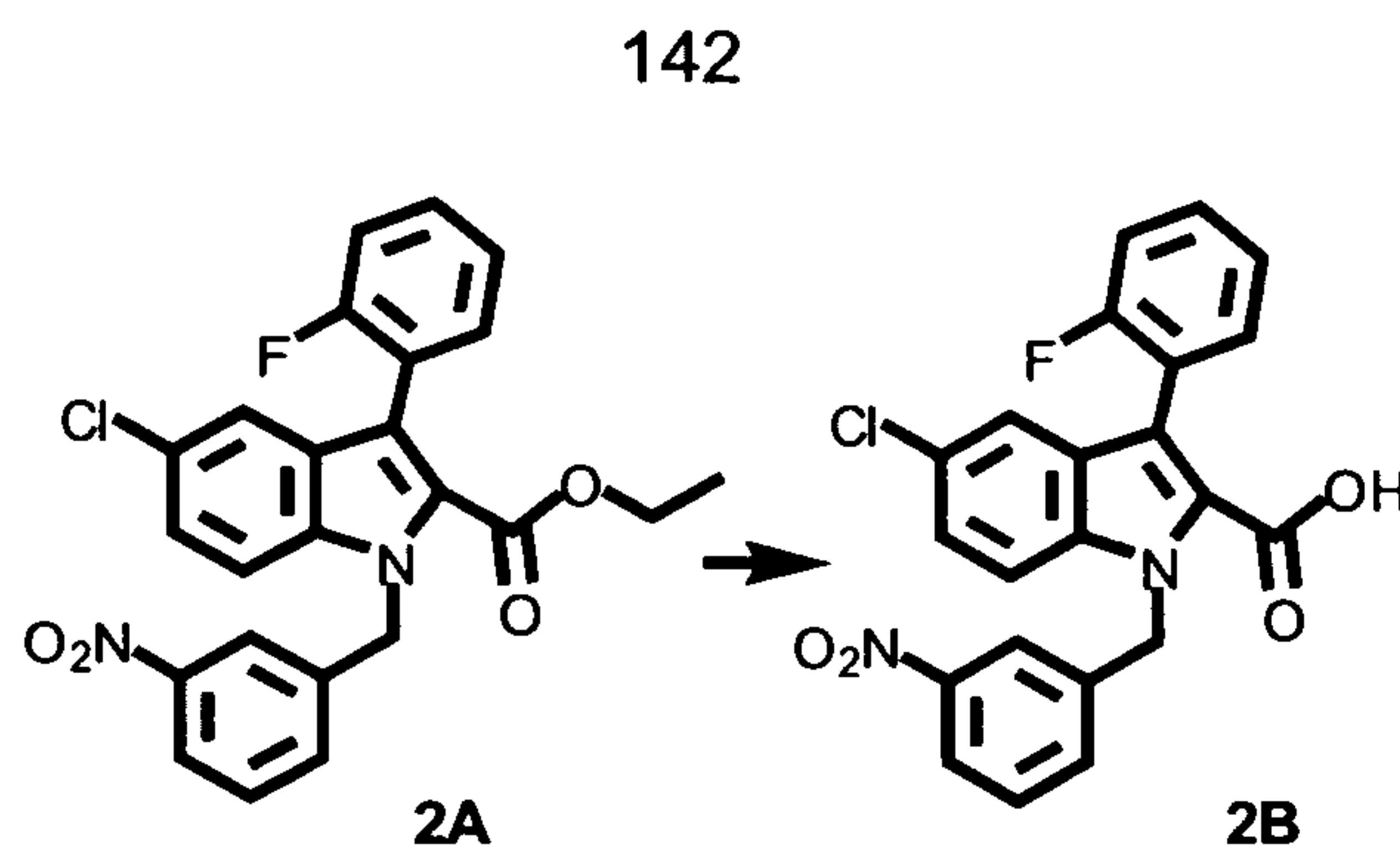
Example 2**Preparation of Compound 14****14**

5

Step 1:**A1****2A**

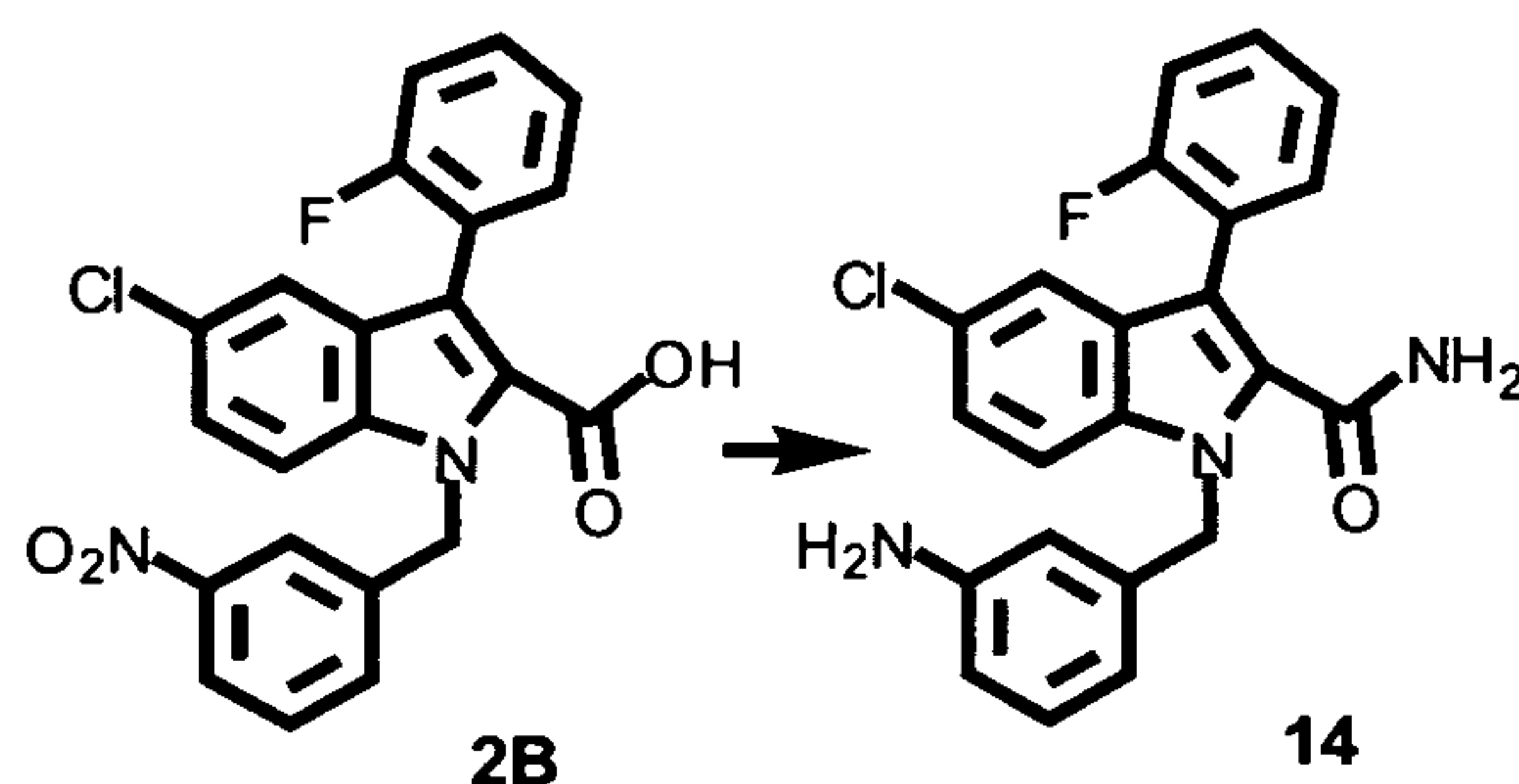
To a solution of compound 1A, 1.0 g, 3.15 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) in an ice-bath was added potassium t-butyl oxide (446 mg, 3.97 mmol). The mixture was stirred in the ice-bath for 10 minutes before 3-nitrobenzyl bromide (801 mg, 3.71 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 48 hours. The reaction was then quenched, and DMF was removed from the mixture. The resulting residue was dissolved into ethyl acetate, and washed with aqueous 5% sodium bicarbonate solution (3 x). The separated organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using column chromatography to provide compound 2A. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃); δ 8.13 (d, J= 8.79 Hz, 1H), 8.06 (s, 1H), 7.52 (d, J= 2.20 Hz, 1H), 7.49-7.45 (m, 2H), 7.43-7.36 (m, 3H), 7.31 (d, J= 1.47 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (s, 1H), 7.18 (t, J= 9.15 Hz, 1H), 5.92 (s, 2H), 4.14 (q, J= 6.59 Hz & 7.32 Hz, 2H), 0.98 (t, J= 7.32 Hz, 3H).

20 Step 2:



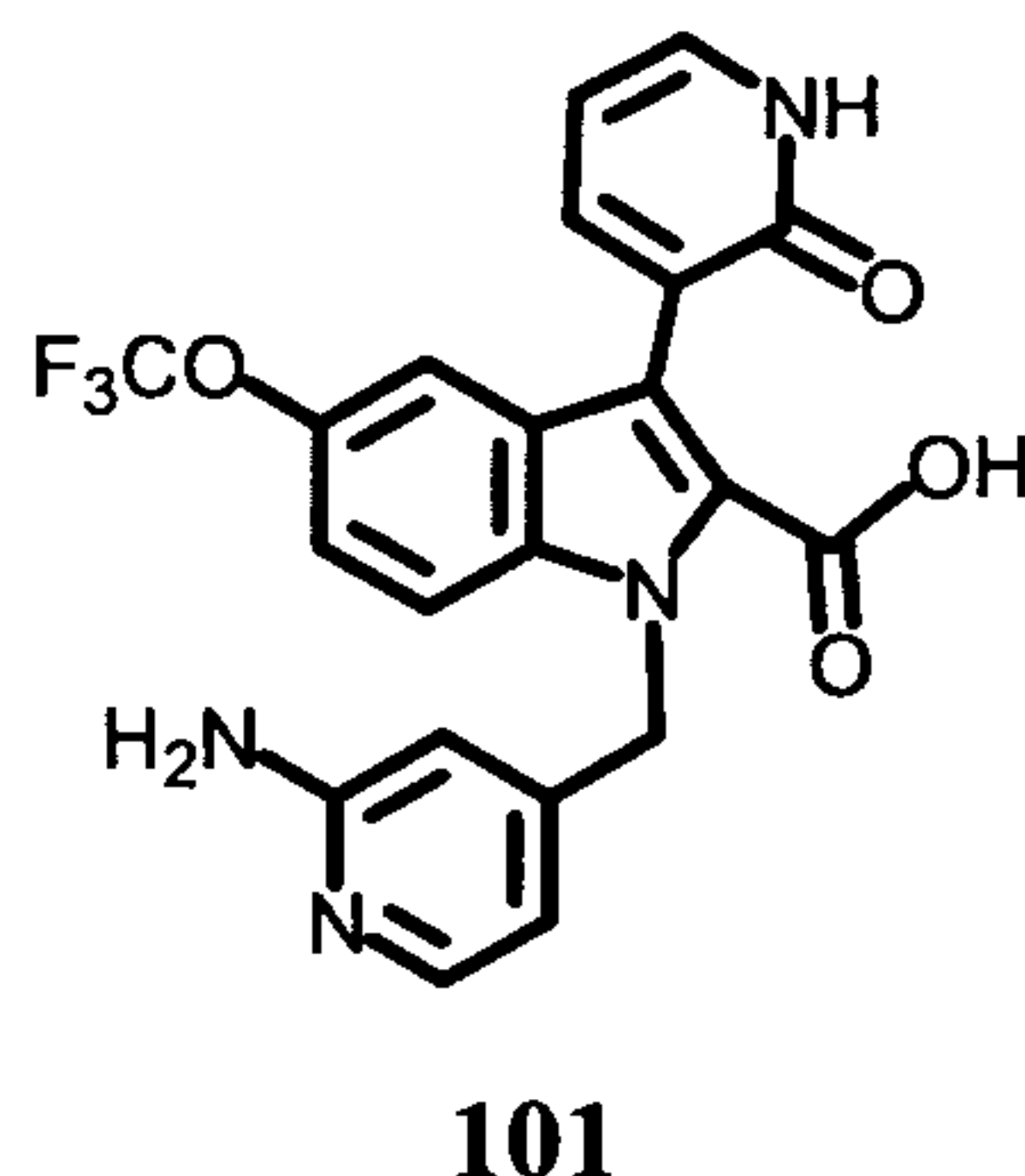
A solution comprising compound **2A** (0.93 g, 2.05 mmol) in LiOH (0.5 M solution in methanol, 30 mL) was placed in microwave reactor for 10 minutes (150 watts). To the mixture
 5 was added aqueous 1N HCl solution to precipitate out the products. The filtered solid was washed with aqueous 1N HCl solution (2 x), and was then dissolved into ethyl acetate. The resulting solution was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide compound **2B** (0.87 g, 100% yield).

10 Step 3:

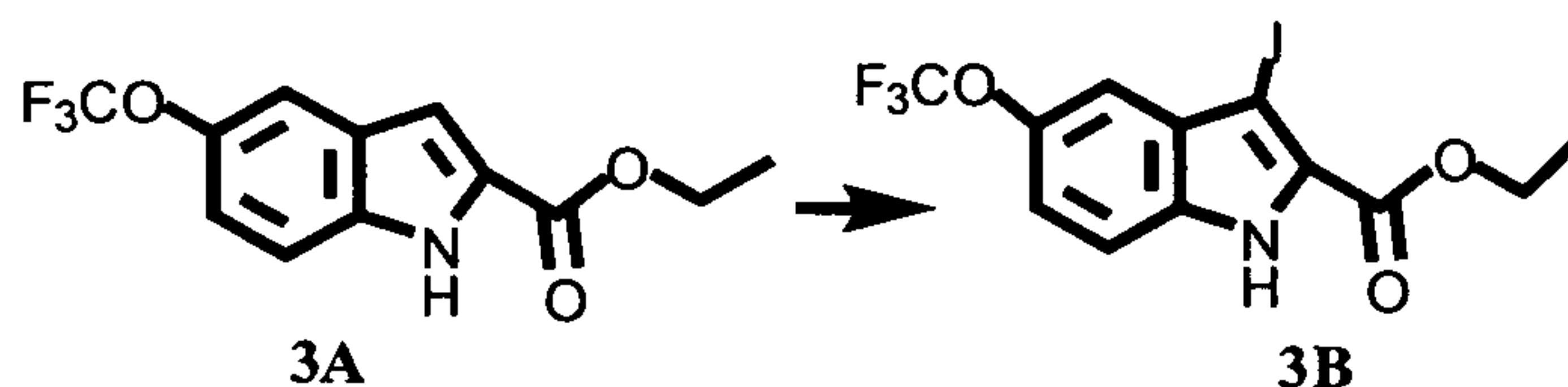


To the sieber amide resin (64.5 mg, 0.04 mmol) was added 20% piperidine in DMF (10 mL). The resulting mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 40 minutes before
 15 being washed with DMF (3 x) to get a de-protected resin. To the de-protected resin in DMF (2 mL) were added 5-chloro-3-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-1-(3-nitro-benzyl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid, **2B** (16 mg, 0.038 mmol), HATU and DIPEA. The mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 h before treated with 2 M SnCl₂ in DMF. The mixture was then washed
 20 with DMF (3x), THF (3 x), and dichloromethane (3 x) respectively to get the resin-attached intermediate. The resin is cleaved by the treatment with 4% trifluoroacetic acid in dichloromethane to provide compound **14**. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 10.32 (s, 2H), 7.47 (s, 2H), 7.36 (s, 2H), 7.18-7.10 (m, 3H), 7.06-6.98 (m, 2H), 6.79 (s, 1H), 5.98 (s, 1H), 5.39 (s, 2H), 3.65 (s, 1H), 3.07 (s, 1H).

143

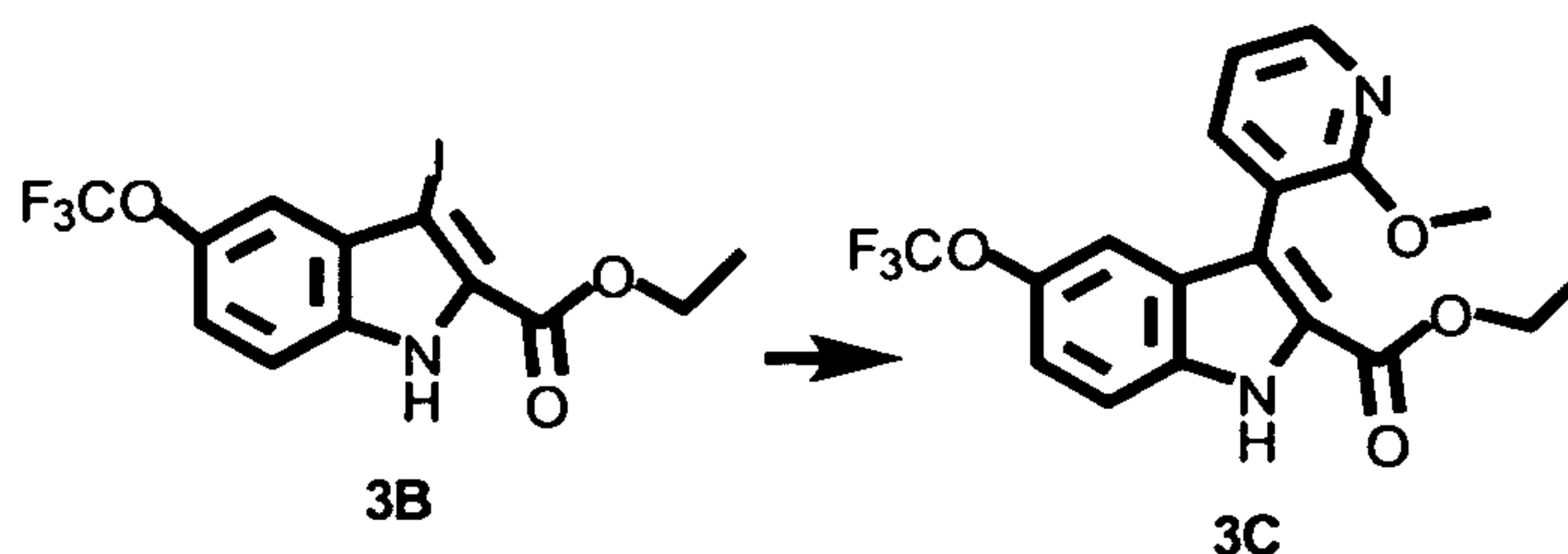
Example 3**Preparation of Compound 101**

5

Step 1:

To a solution of ethyl 5-(trifluoromethoxy)-1H-indole-2-carboxylate, **3A** (1.95 g, 7.14 mmol) in acetone (40 mL) was added N-iodosuccinimide (1.61 g, 7.14 mmol). The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 3.75 hours. The reaction was quenched with aqueous sodium thiosulfate solution (50 mL). The volatiles were evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was dissolved into ethyl acetate (500 mL) and water (100 mL). The mixture was washed with aqueous saturated sodium thiosulfate solution (100 mL). The layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 X 100 mL). The combined organic layer was washed with aqueous 1N sodium bicarbonate solution (100 mL) and brine (50 mL). The organic layer was then dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product **3B** (2.8 g, 98% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.28 (s, 1H), 7.44 (s, 1H), 7.40 (d, J= 8.79 Hz, 1H), 7.24 (s, 1H), 4.48 (q, J= 6.59 Hz & 7.32 Hz, 2H), 1.48 (t, J= 7.32 Hz, 3H).

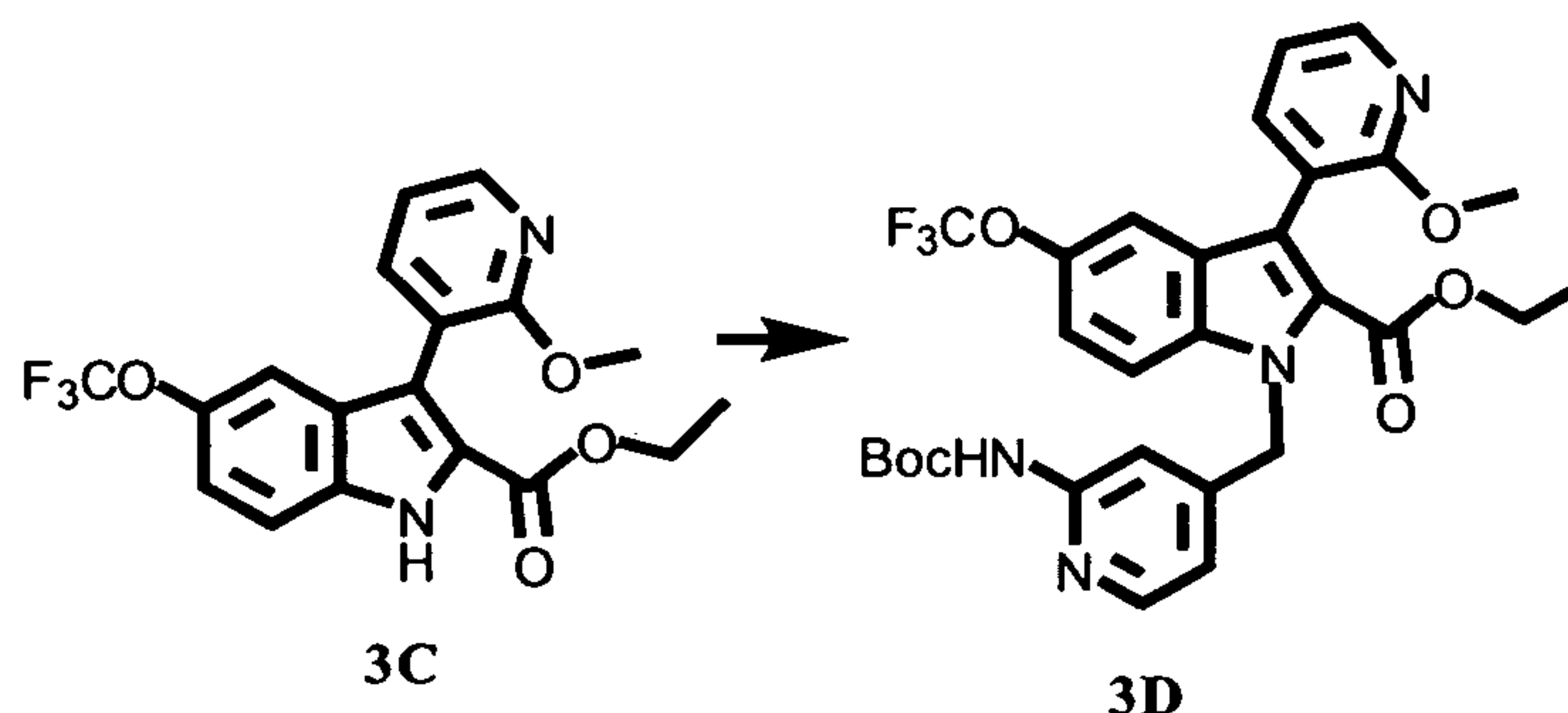
20

Step 2:

144

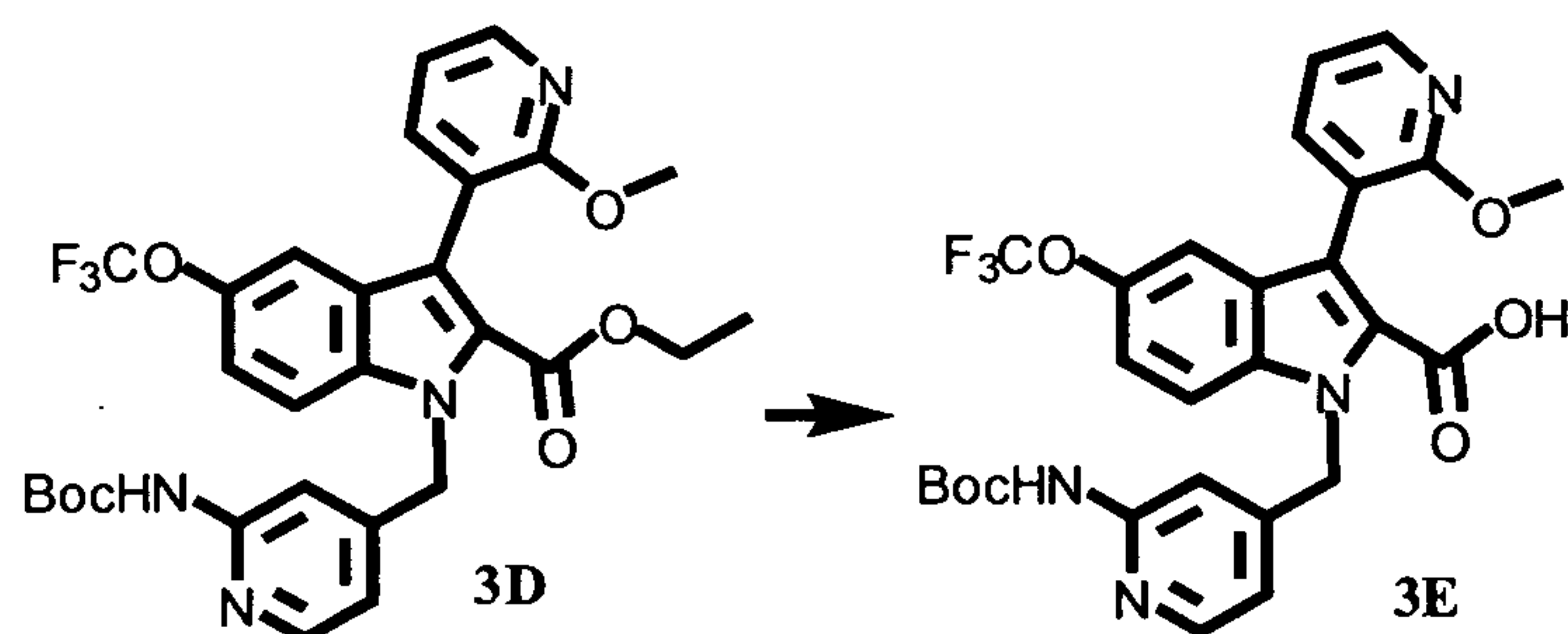
To a solution of 3-iodo-5-trifluoromethoxy-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **3B** (2.80 g, 7.02 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (90 mL) was added $\text{PdCl}_2(\text{dppf})_2$ (573 mg, 0.70 mmol). The resulting mixture was de-gassed with nitrogen bubbling for 10 minutes. In a second flask, the mixture of 2-methoxy-3-pyridine boronic acid (1.29 g, 8.42 mmol) and potassium carbonate (4.85 g, 35.1 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (30 mL) and water (30 mL) was de-gassed with nitrogen bubbling for 5 minutes. The mixture was then transferred slowly to the first flask. The resulting biphasic mixture was vigorously stirred at 90 °C for 4.25 h before it was cooled to room temperature. The reaction was quenched by the addition of a solution of sodium sulfite (5 g) in water (100 mL) at room temperature. Ethyl acetate (100 mL) was added, and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product **3C** (1.44 g, 54% yield). M.S. found for $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{15}\text{F}_3\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$: 381.04 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺.

15 Step 3:

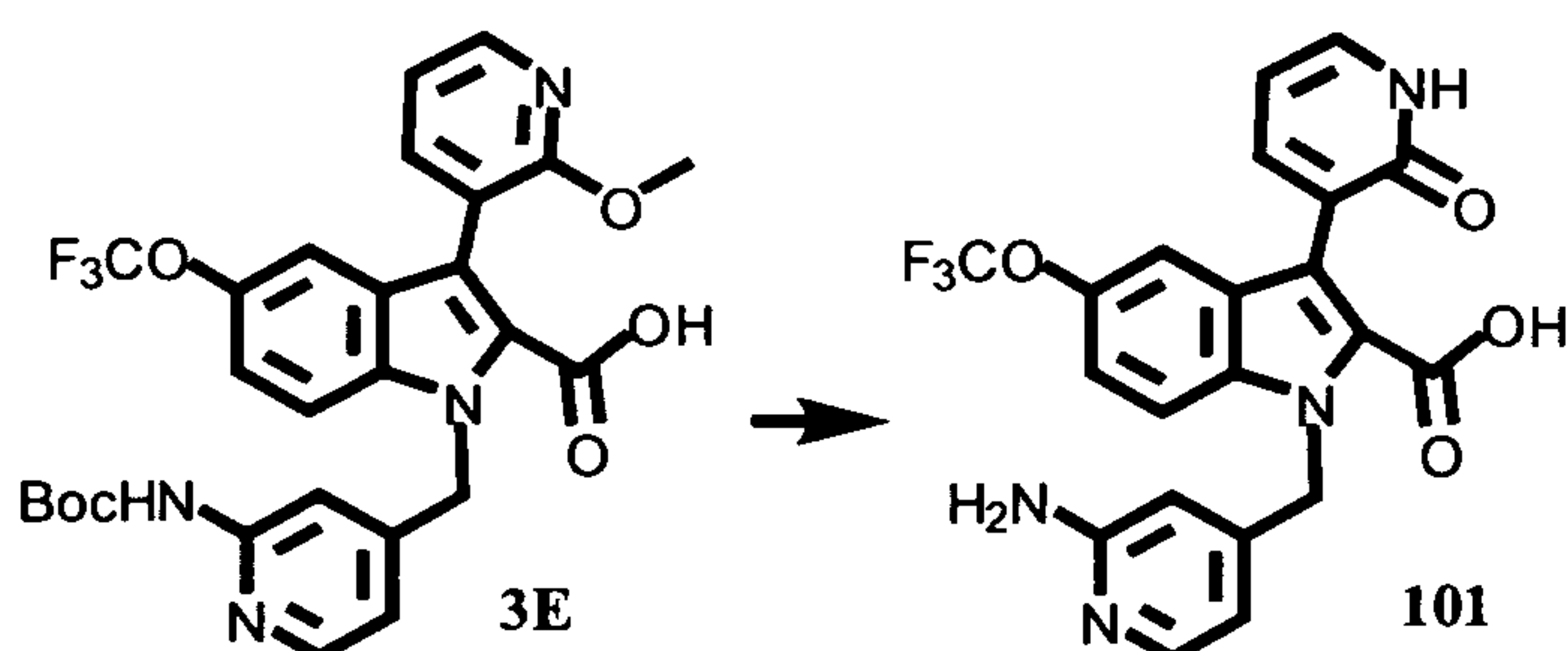


3-(2-Methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-5-trifluoromethoxy-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **3C** (1.0 g, 2.63 mmol) was dissolved into DMF (100 mL) at room temperature. To the mixture were added (4-bromomethyl-pyridin-2-yl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (0.83 g, 2.89 mmol) and cesium carbonate (1.29 g, 3.95 mmol). The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (500 mL), and was washed with water (3 x 80 mL), aqueous saturate sodium bicarbonate (2 X 50 mL) and brine respectively. The separated organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product obtained was purified using flash chromatography to provide compound **3D** (1.44 g, 93% yield). M.S. found for $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{29}\text{F}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_6$: 587.51 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺.

145

Step 4:

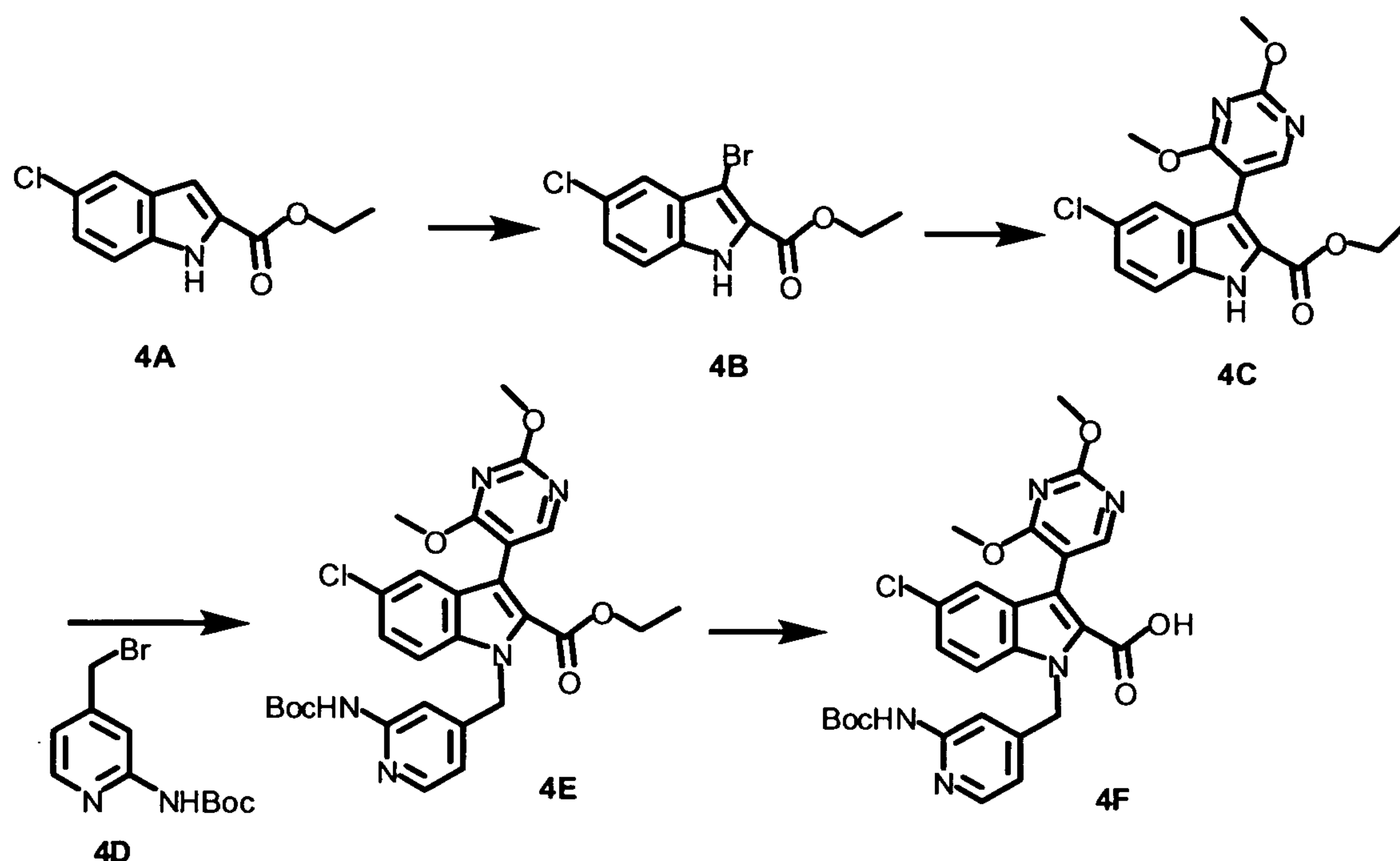
To a solution of 1-(2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-pyridin-4-ylmethyl)-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-5-trifluoromethoxy-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **3D** (1.42 g, 2.42 mmol) in THF (15 mL) and water (3 mL) was added aqueous 1N lithium hydroxide solution (12.1 mL, 12.10 mmol). The resulting suspension was refluxed at 70 °C for 22 hours. The mixture was cooled down to room temperature, and the aqueous layer was acidified to pH=2 with addition of aqueous 1N HCl solution. The mixture was extracted twice with 100 mL of THF/ethyl acetate (1:1). The combined organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to yield the crude product **3E** (100% yield). M.S. found for C₂₇H₂₅F₃N₄O₆: 559.21 (M+H)⁺.

Step 5:

1-(2-tert-Butoxycarbonylamino-pyridin-4-ylmethyl)-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-5-trifluoromethoxy-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid, **3E** (24 mg, 0.04 mmol) was dissolved into 4N HCl in 1,4-dioxane (2 mL) in a tube. Water (1 drop) was added afterwards. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 90 °C in the sealed tube for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled down to room temperature before being concentrated *in vacuo* to provide compound **101** (100% yield). M.S. found for C₂₁H₁₅F₃N₄O₄: 445.2 (M+H)⁺.

Example 4**Preparation of Intermediate Compound 4F**

146

**Step 1:**

To a solution of ethyl 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylate, **4A** (20 g, 89.6 mmol) in THF (200 mL) in a cooled water bath was added NBS (16.0 g, 89.9 mmol) slowly. The resulting reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 h before water (700 mL) was added. The mixture was continued to stir at room temperature for 20 minutes and then filtered. The solids were washed with water (2 x 100 mL), and dried to afford the crude product **4B** (25.8 g, 90% yield). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.06 (s, 1H), 7.66-7.65 (m, 1H), 7.35-7.31 (m, 2H), 4.47 (q, J= 7.25 Hz, 2H), 1.46 (t, J= 7.09 Hz, 3H).

Step 2:

To a mixture of 3-bromo-5-chloro-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **4B** (1.00 g, 3.31 mmol), 2,4-dimethoxypyrimidine-5-boronic acid (0.73 g, 3.97 mmol), [1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium(II) with dichloromethane complex (1:1) (0.26 g, 0.32 mmol) in DME (15 mL) was added a solution of sodium carbonate (4.5 mL of 1.5 M, 6.75 mmol) via a syringe. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at reflux for 6 h before cooled down to room temperature. The mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (50 mL), and was filtered through a pad of celite. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was purified using flash chromatography on silica gel (20 % ethyl acetate in hexanes)

147

to provide the product **4C** as a white solid (0.47 g, 39% yield). M.S. found for $C_{17}H_{16}ClN_3O_4$: 362.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 3:

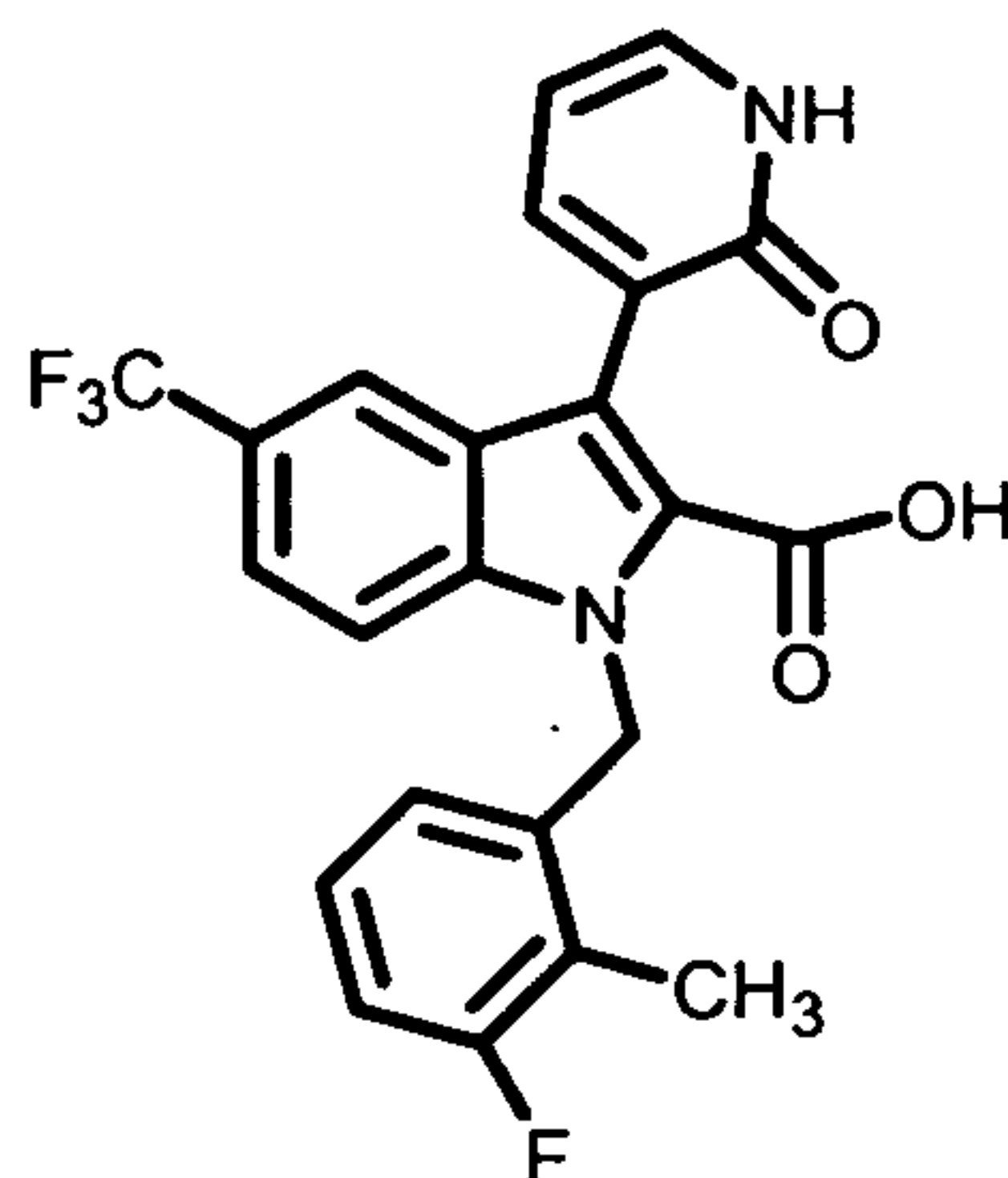
5 To a solution of 5-chloro-3-(2,4-dimethoxy-pyrimidin-5-yl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **4C** (620 mg, 1.71 mmol) in DMF were added (4-bromomethyl-pyridin-2-yl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester, **4D** (490 mg, 1.71 mmol) and cesium carbonate (1100 mg, 3.39 mmol). The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 17 hours. The mixture was then diluted with ethyl acetate (80 mL), and washed with water (3 x 50 mL). The
10 organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was purified using chromatography on silica gel using 30% ethyl acetate in hexanes to deliver the product **4E** (705 mg, 73% yield).
M.S. found for $C_{28}H_{30}ClN_5O_6$: 568.3 (M+H)⁺.

15 **Step 4:**

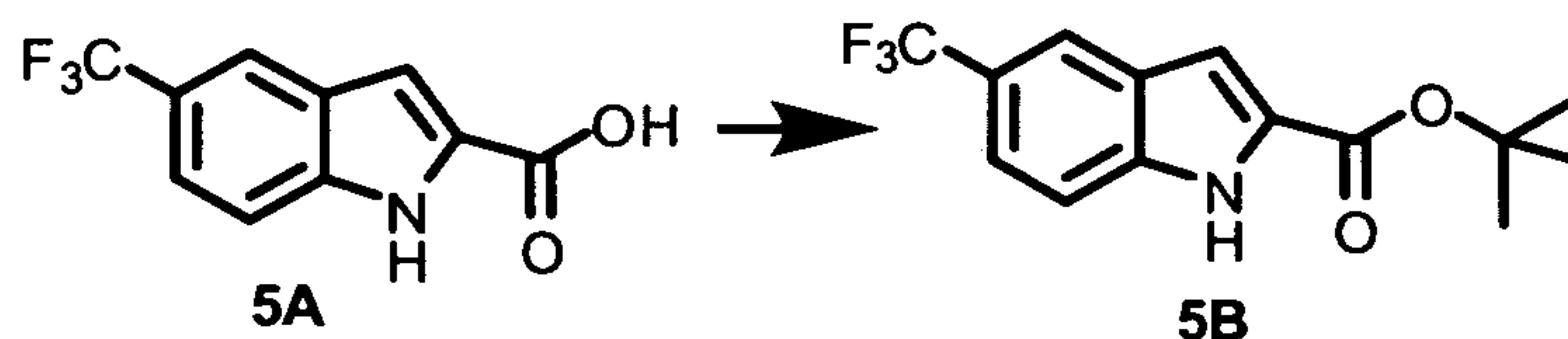
To a solution of 1-(2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-pyridin-4-ylmethyl)-5-chloro-3-(2,4-dimethoxy-pyrimidin-5-yl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **4E** (500 mg, 0.88 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added an aqueous solution of lithium hydroxide (2.0 ml of 1 M, 2.9 mmol). The resulting reaction mixture was allowed to stir at reflux for 16 hours. The Reaction
20 was then cooled and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was dissolved in methanol (80 mL), neutralized with 1.0 M HCl aqueous solution (2.5 mL, 2.5 mmol) and then concentrated again under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo*, and dried on house vacuum to provide compound **4F** (440 mg, 92%). M.S. found for
25 $C_{26}H_{26}ClN_5O_6$: 540.3 (M+H)⁺.

Example 5**Preparation of Compound 167**

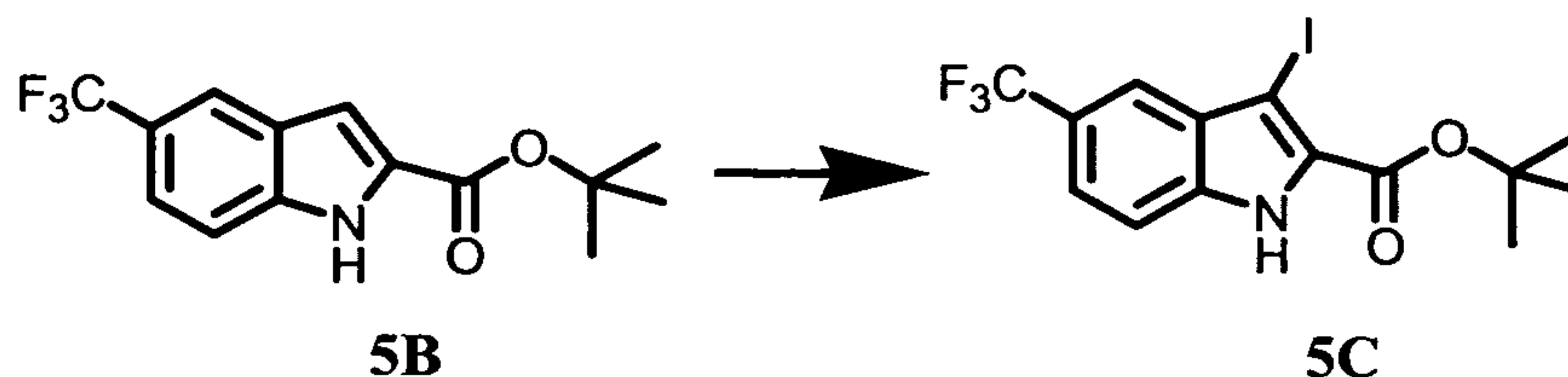
148



167

Step 1:

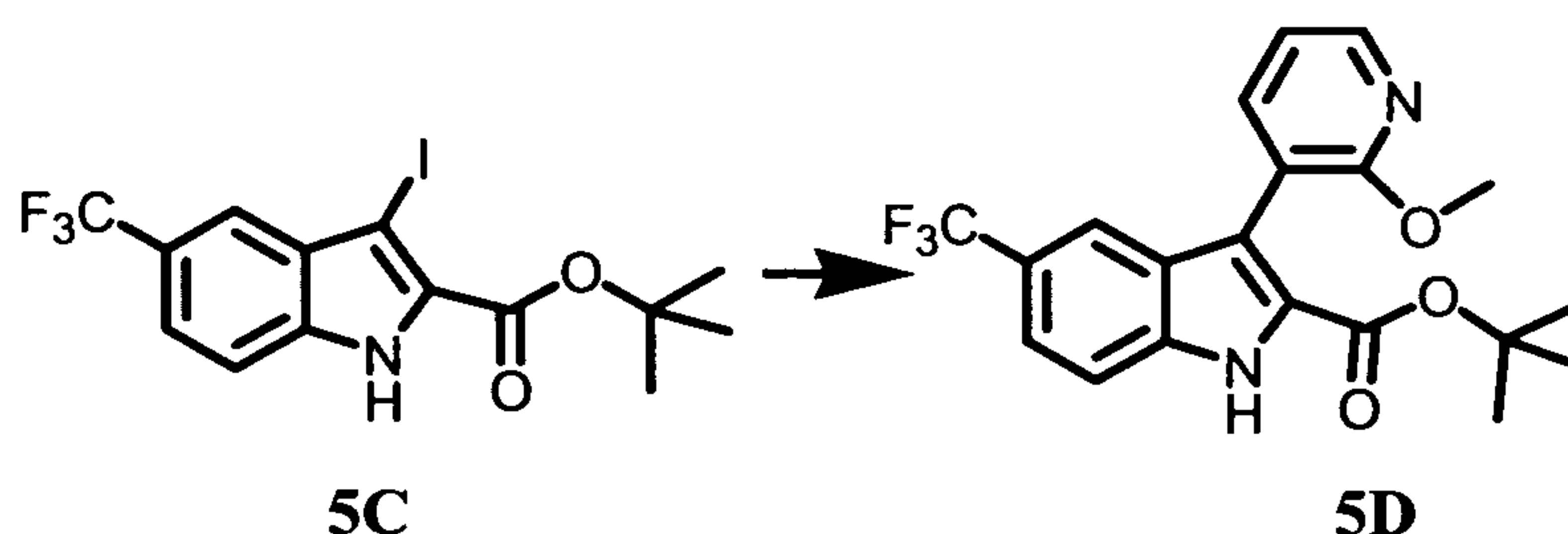
To a solution of the indole **5A** (1.6 g, 6.9 mmol) in toluene (5.0 mL) was added *N,N*-dimethylformamide di-tert butyl acetal (5 mL), and heated to 90 °C for 12h, cooled to room temperature, another aliquot of *N,N*-dimethylformamide di-tert butyl acetal (5 mL) was added and the reaction mixture was heated to 90 °C for 12h, cooled to room temperature, diluted with ethyl acetate (10.0 mL), washed with water (2 X 10.0 mL), brine, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to yield compound **5B** (1.2 g, 60%) as a white solid. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 9.17 (s, 1H), 7.97 (s, 1H), 7.51 (s, 2H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 1.63 (s, 9H).

Step 2:

To a solution of **5B** (1.2 g, 4.2 mmol) in CHCl₃ (25 mL) was added *N*-iodosuccinimide (946 mg, 4.2 mmol) and the reaction allowed to stir at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction mixture concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with water and extracted in EtOAc (200 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The brown resulting residue was taken in minimum amount of CH₂Cl₂ and triturated with hexanes. Compound **5C** was separated out as a brown solid which was filtered, and dried *in vacuo*. (1.23

149

g, 72% yield). ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl_3): δ 9.34 (s, 1H), 7.87 (s, 1H), 7.57 (d, J = 8.06 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (d, J = 8.79 Hz, 1H), 1.68 (s, 9H).

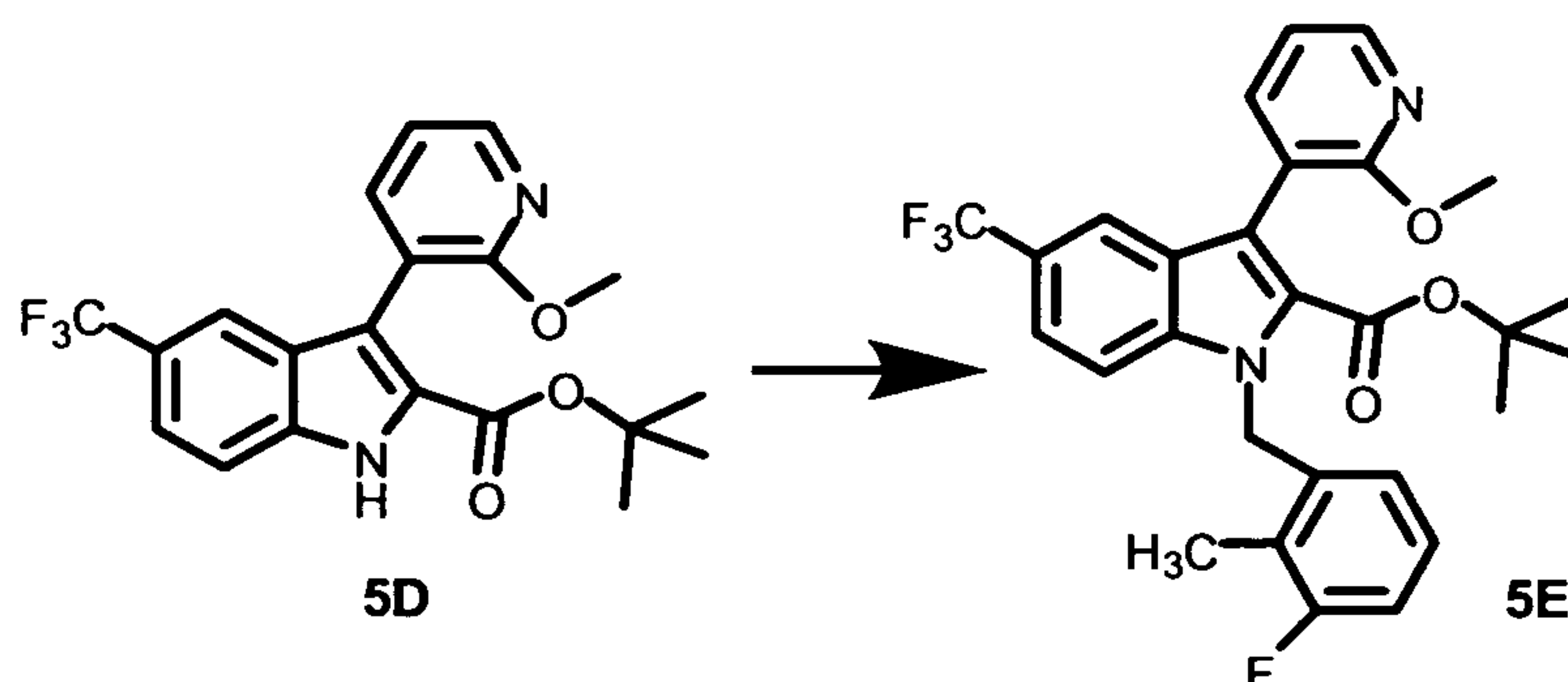
Step 3:

5

10

15

To a solution of compound **5C** (1.23 g, 3.0 mmol) in DME (30 mL) under nitrogen atmosphere was added with 2-methoxy-3-pyridyl boronic acid (0.482 g, 3.15 mmol) and Pd (dppf) $_2\text{Cl}_2$ (245 mg, 0.3 mmol) and the resulting reaction was allowed to stir at room temperature under nitrogen for 0.5 hours. The reaction mixture was then treated with a solution of potassium carbonate (1.6 g, 12 mmol) in water (12 mL) and the resulting solution was heated to 90 °C and allowed to stir at this temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was then diluted with EtOAc (200 mL) and the resulting solution was concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a crude residue which was purified using flash column chromatography (EtOAc/Hexanes, 0 to 30% EtOAc) to provide the product **5D** as a solid (820.0 mg). M.S. found for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{19}\text{F}_3\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$: 393.2 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Step 4:

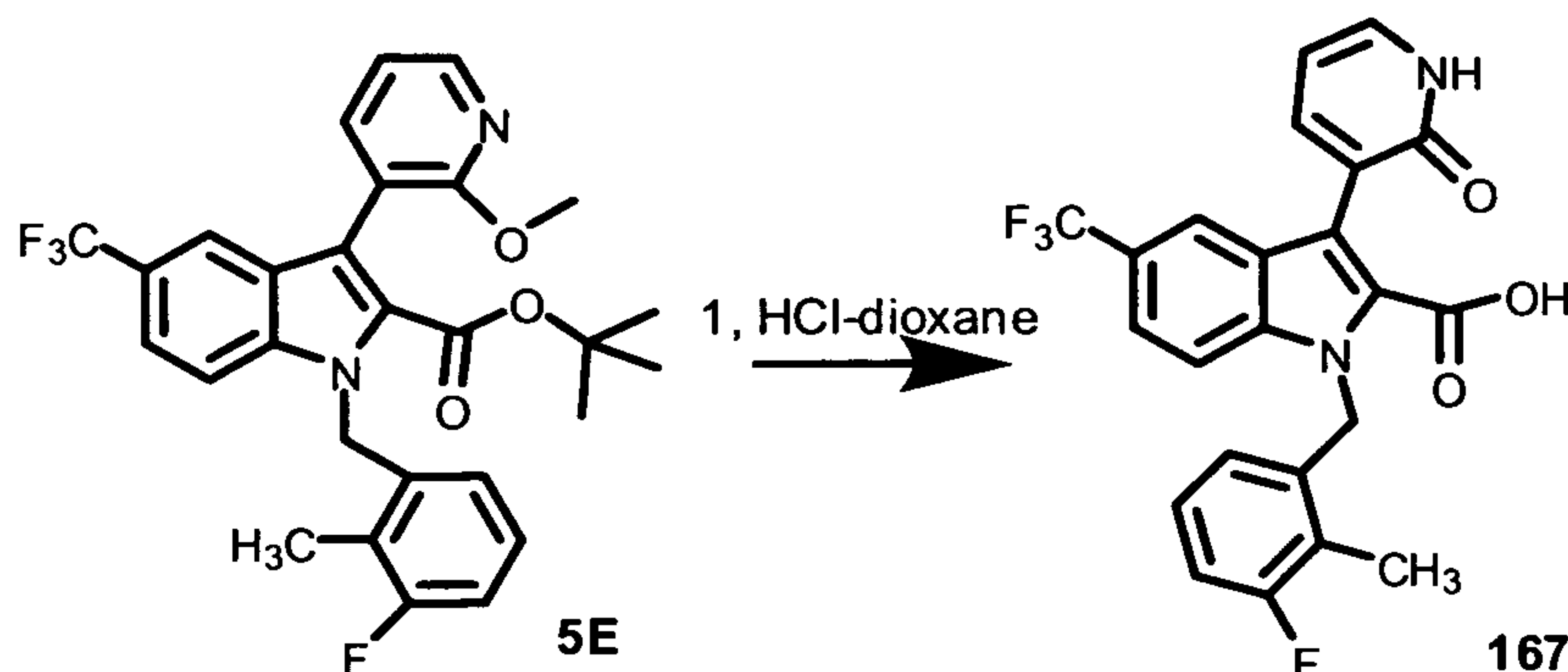
20

To a solution of indole **5D** (10.0 g, 25.4 mmol) in DMF (100 mL) was added cesium carbonate (9.93g, 30.5 mmol) and 3-fluoro-3-methylbenzyl bromide (3.57 mL, 30.5 mmol) and allowed to stir at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc

150

(500 mL), washed with water (3x100 mL) and with brine (2x100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* and purified using flash column chromatography on silica gel to provide the product **5E** as a colorless solid.

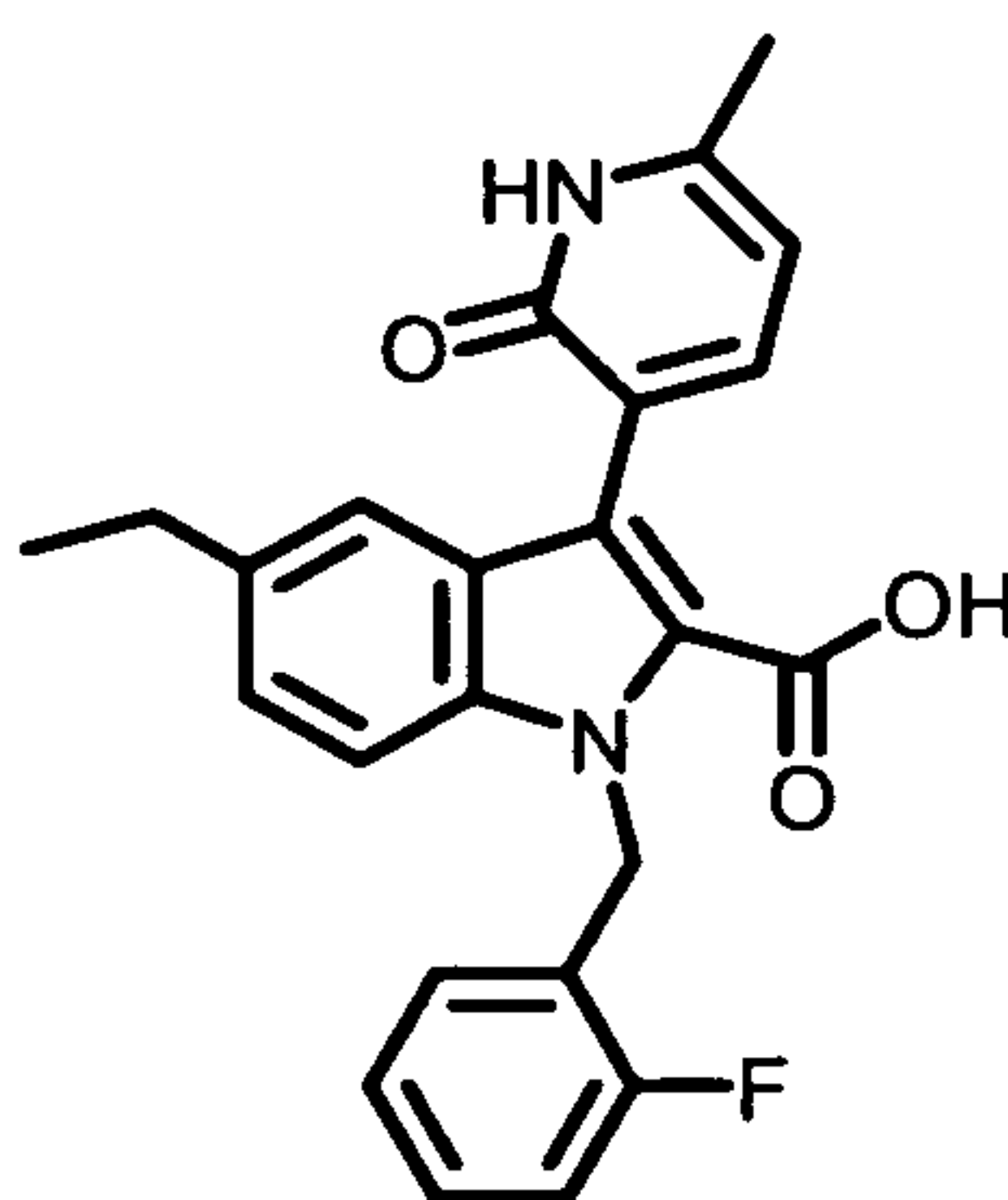
5 Step 5:



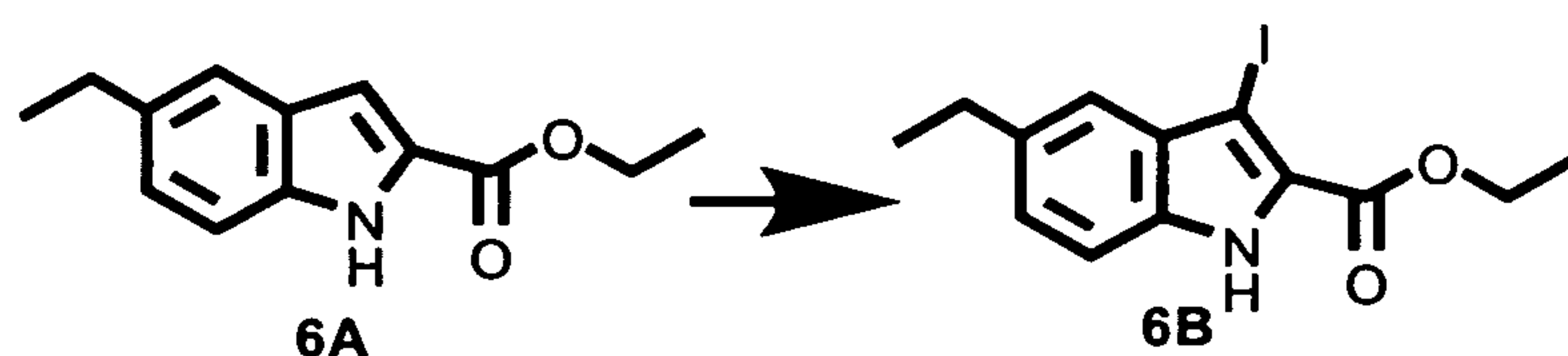
A solution of compound **5E** (1.0 g, 1.94 mmol) was dissolved in 4N HCl in dioxane (20 mL) and heated at 80 °C overnight. After cooling the volatiles were removed under reduced pressure to provide compound **167** as a white solid.

Example 6

Preparation of Compound 168



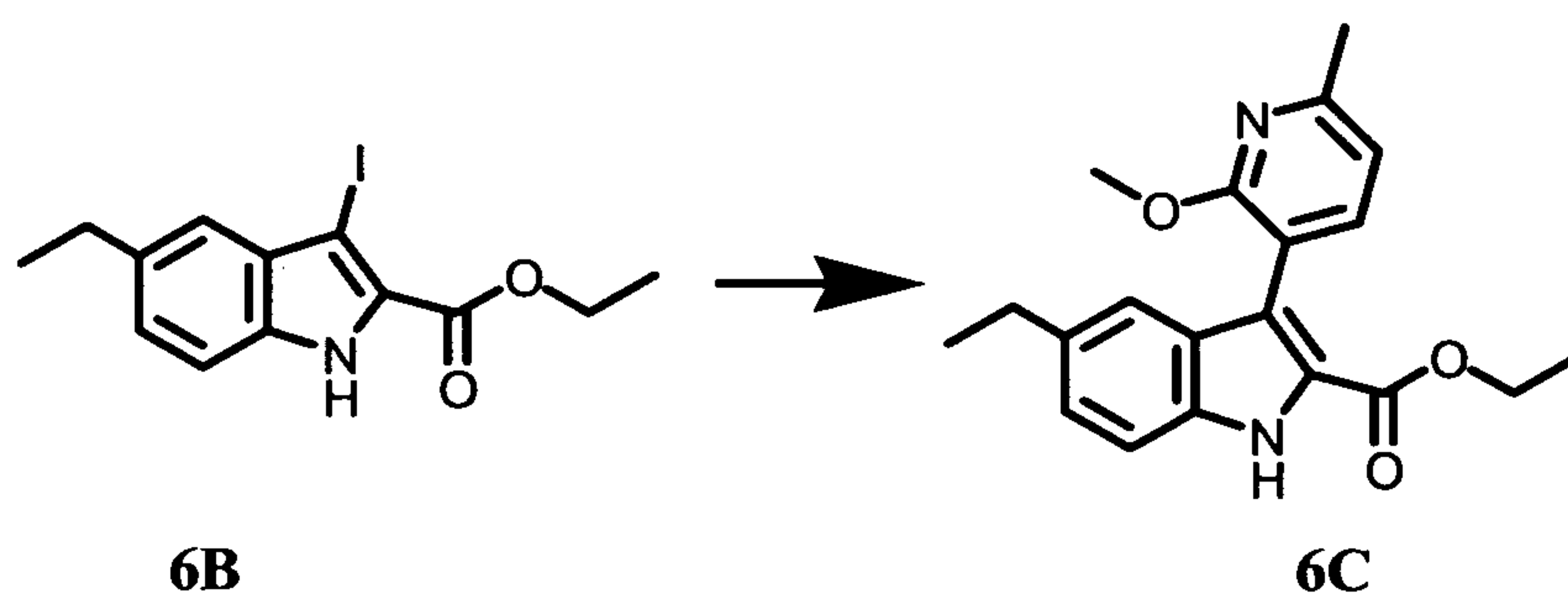
15 Step 1:



151

The starting materials **6A** (15.0 g, 69.04 mmol) and THF (100 mL) were added to a 1000 ml round-bottomed flask. The resulting solution was cooled with a water bath. To this stirring solution, NIS (15.30 g, 68.80 mmol) was added slowly. The resulting solution was allowed to stir at room temperature for 5 hours before 700 ml of water was added. The resulting mixture was continued to stir at room temperature for 30 minutes and then filtered. The cake was washed with water (2X40 mL), dried by air and then on house vacuum to provide compound **6B** as an off-white solid (23.0 g, 97%). M.S. found for C₁₃H₁₄INO₂: 344.2 (M+H)⁺.

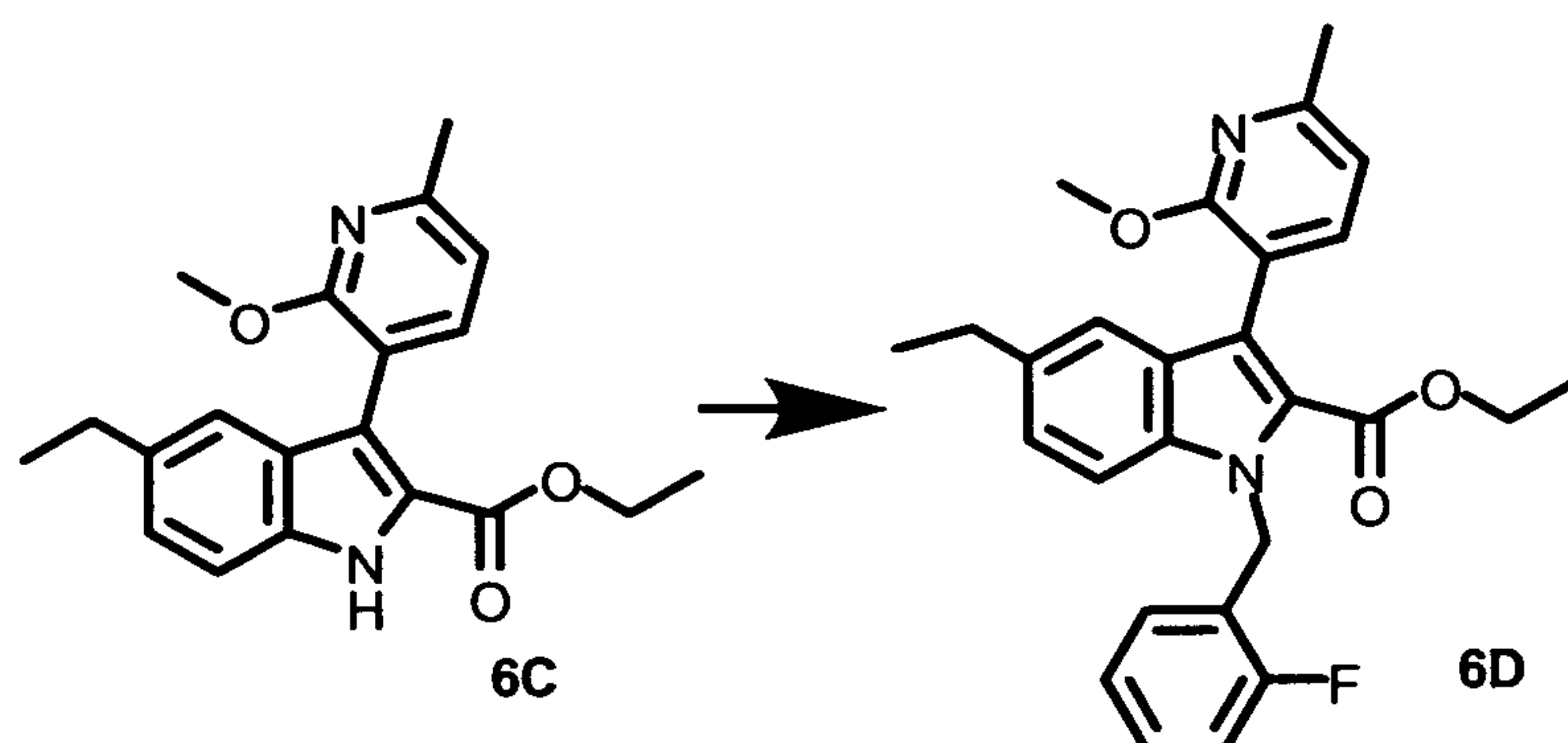
10 Step 2:



A 200 ml round-bottomed flask was charged with **6B** (2.45 g, 7.14 mmol), 6-methyl-2-methoxypyridine-3-boronic acid (0.98 g, 5.87 mmol), [1,1' bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium(II) complex with dichloromethane (1:1) (0.58 g, 0.71 mmol), and DME (50 mL). To the stirring solution, a solution of sodium carbonate (10 ml of 1.5 M, 15.0 mmol) was added via a syringe. The reaction mixture was maintained reflux for 4 hours before cooled to room temperature. After concentration, the resulting residue was taken up with ethyl acetate (200 mL), washed with water (3x100 mL), and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified using Combiflash chromatography on silica gel using 0-10 % ethyl acetate in hexanes as the solvent to provide the product **6C** as a white solid (1.51 g, 76%). M.S. found for C₂₀H₂₂N₂O₃: 339.2 (M+H)⁺.

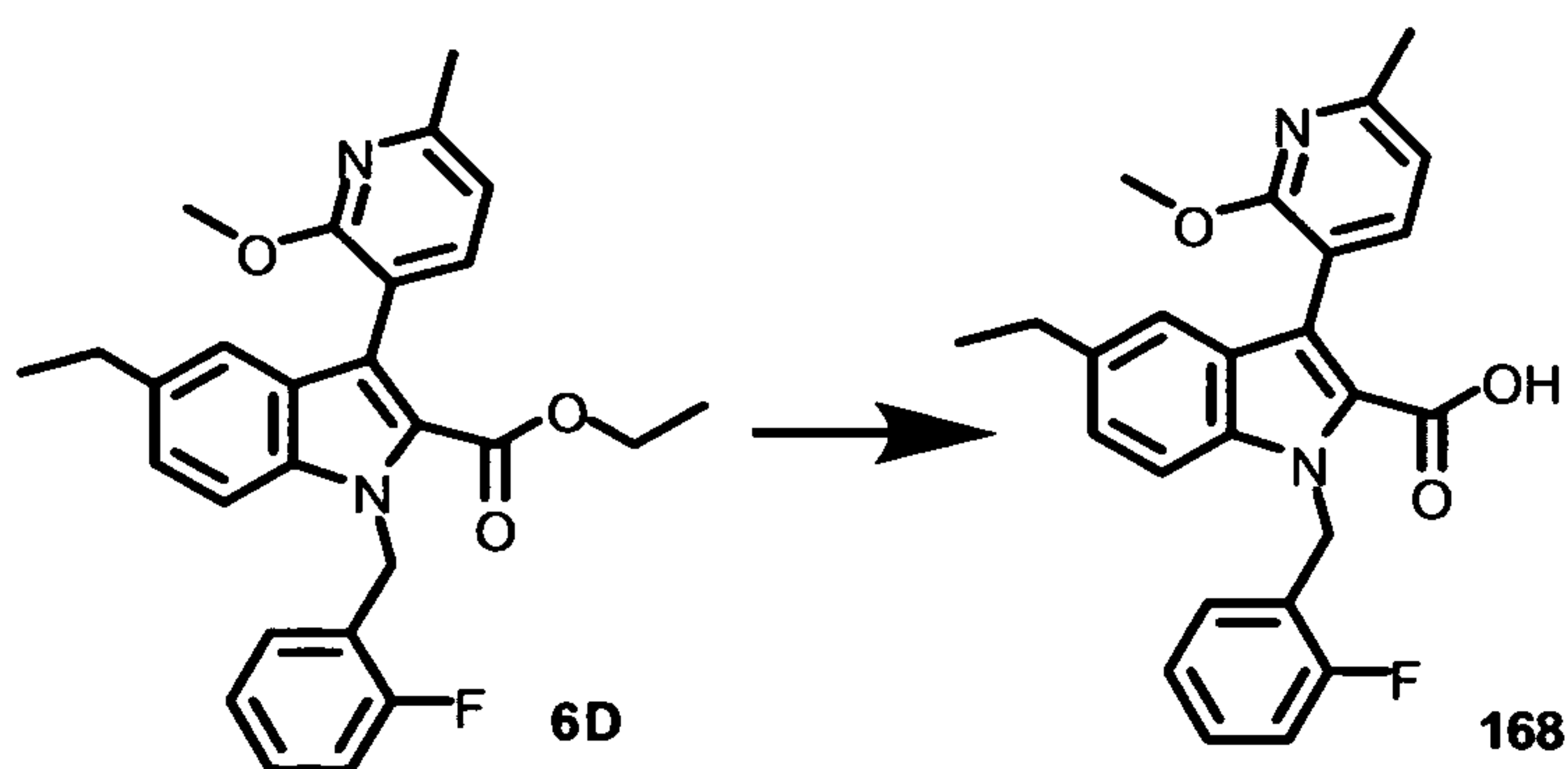
25 Step 3:

152



The reaction materials **6C** (200 mg, 0.59 mmol), 2-fluorobenzylchloride (170 mg, 1.76 mmol), cesium carbonate (700 mg, 2.16 mmol), and DMF (3 mL) were added to a 100 ml round-bottomed flask. The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 16 hours, diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), and washed with water (3X40 mL). The organic solution was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified using Combiflash chromatography on silica gel using 0-10% ethyl acetate in hexanes as the eluent to deliver the product **6D** as a gel (205 mg, 78%).

10 Step 4:

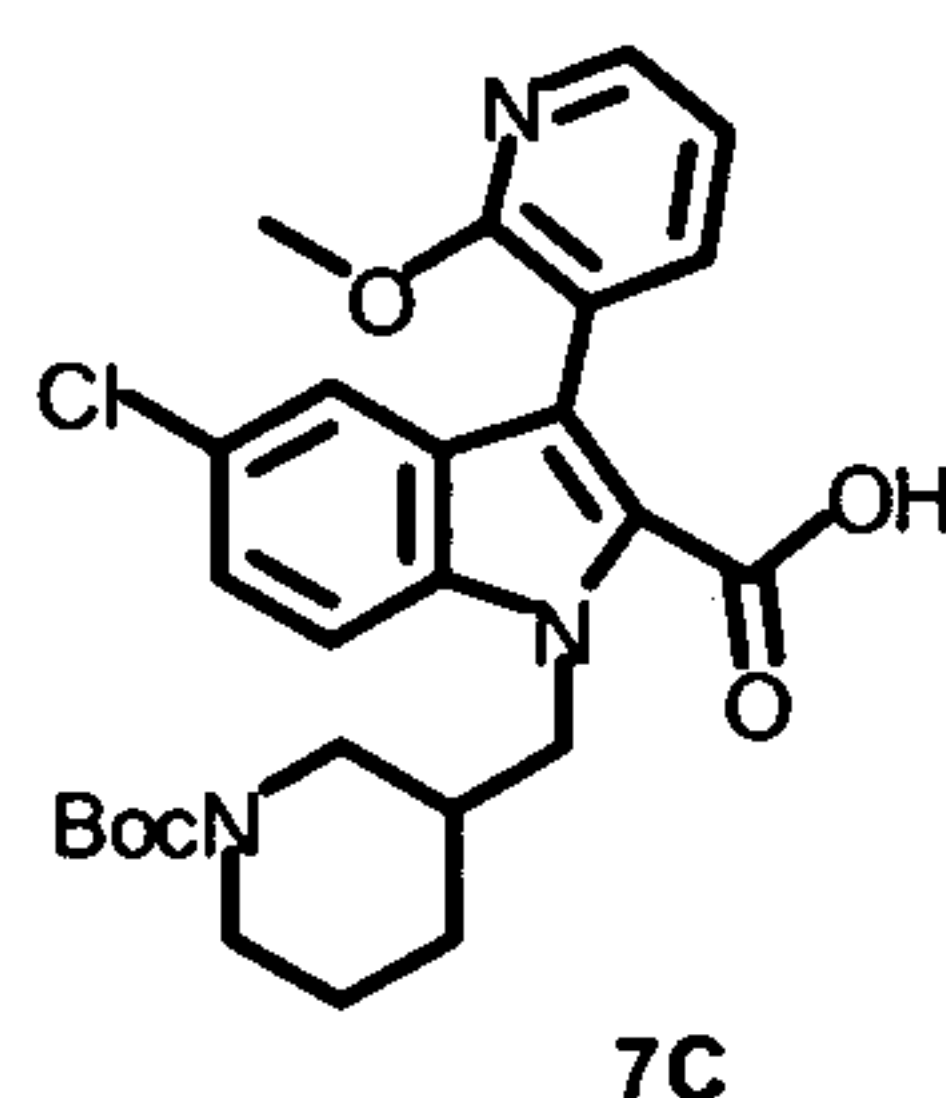


To the stirring mixture of **6D** (200 mg, 0.45 mmol) in THF (5 mL) in a 100 ml round-bottomed flask was added with a solution of lithium hydroxide (2.5 ml of 1 M, 2.5 mmol). The resulting solution was maintained at reflux for 4 days before cooled to room temperature. After concentration *in vacuo*, the resulting residue was dissolved in methanol (5 mL), neutralized with 1.0 M HCl aqueous solution (2.5 mL, 2.5 mmol) and then concentrated again. The resulting residue was extracted with ethyl acetate (3x40 mL). The combined organic solutions were concentrated and dried on house vacuum to provide compound **168** as a white wax (190 mg, ~100%). M.S. found for $C_{27}H_{25}ClFN_2O_3S$: 542.3 (M+H)⁺.

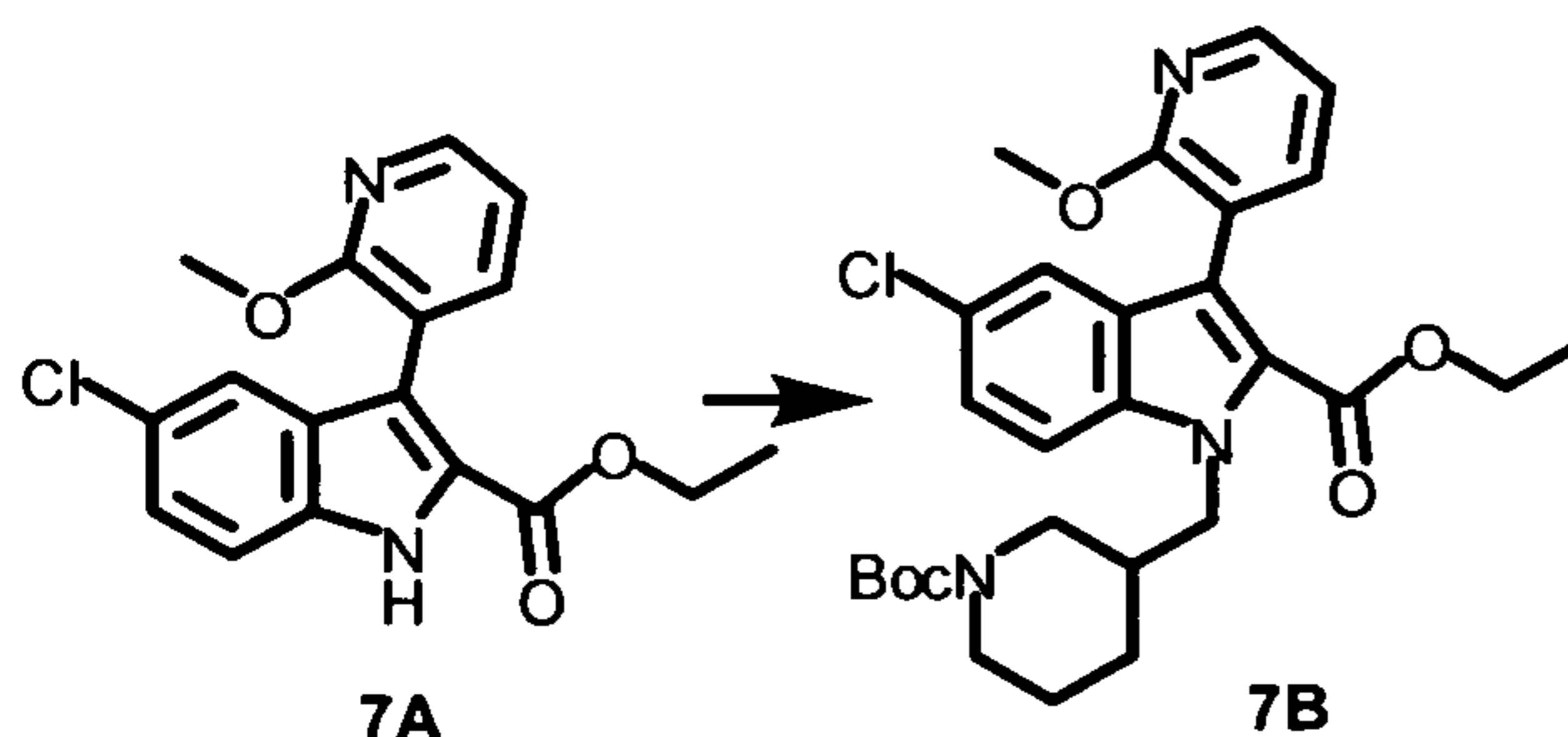
Example 7

153

Preparation of Compound 7C



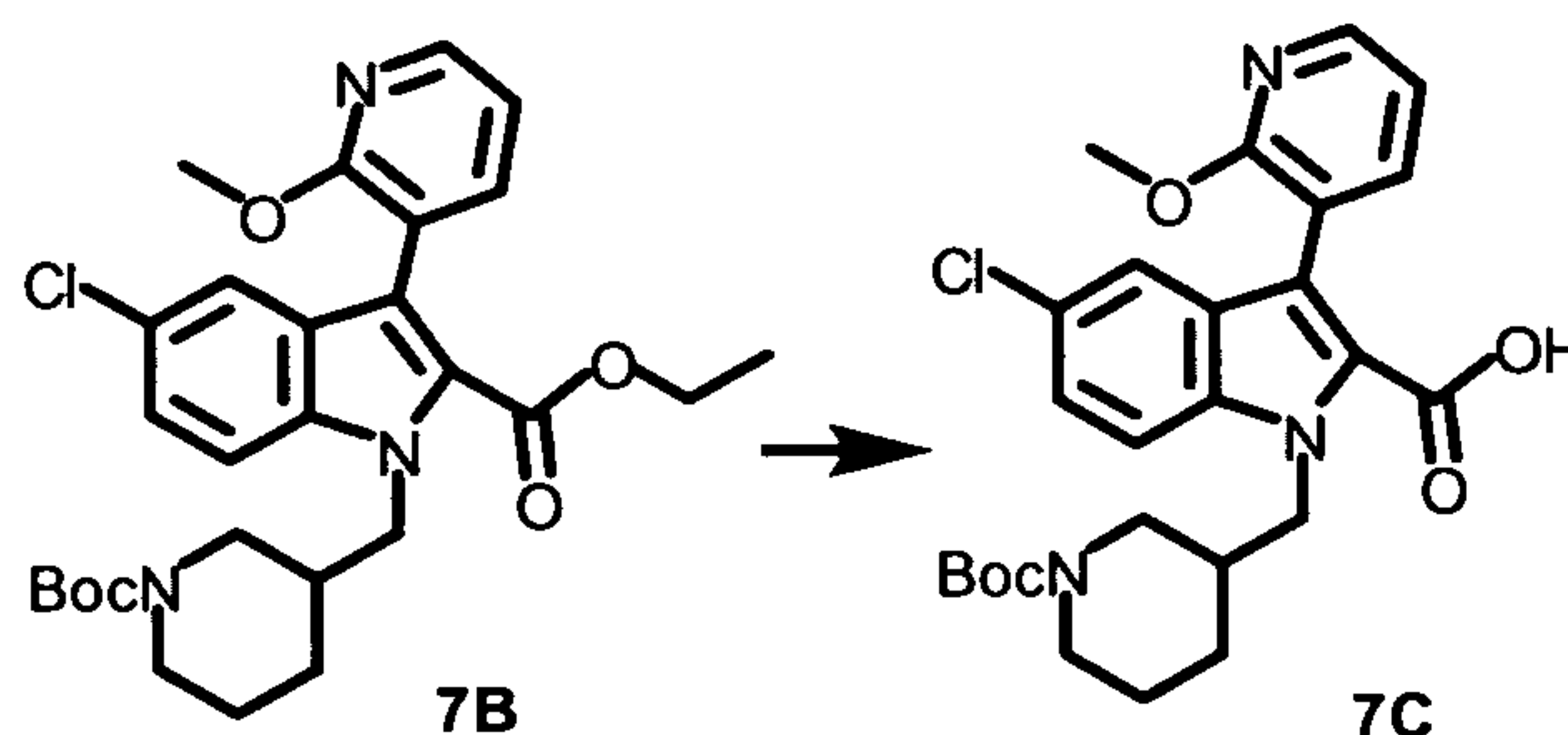
Step 1:



- 5 To a solution of 5-chloro-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **7A** (500 mg, 1.51 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) were added 1-N-boc-3-bromomethylpiperidine, (500 mg, 1.78 mmol) and cesium carbonate. The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at 50 °C for 20 hours. The mixture was cooled down to room temperature, diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), and washed with water (3 x 20 mL). The organic layer
- 10 was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was purified using Combiflash chromatography on silica gel using 0-10% ethyl acetate in hexanes to provide compound **7B** (780 mg, 97% yield). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.21 & 8.20 (dd, J= 1.89 Hz & 5.04 Hz, 1H), 7.61 & 7.60 (dd, J= 1.58 Hz & 7.25 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (d, J= 1.58 Hz, 1H), 7.33 (d, J= 8.51 Hz, 1H), 7.31 & 7.29 (dd, J= 1.89 Hz & 8.83 Hz, 1H), 7.01 (q, J=
- 15 5.04 Hz & 2.21 Hz, 1H), 4.48 (s, 2H), 4.14 (q, J= 6.94 Hz & 7.25 Hz, 2H), 3.94 (d, J= 13.24 Hz, 1H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 2.78-2.72 (m, 1H), 2.63 (t, J= 11.67 Hz, 1H), 1.58 (s, 6H), 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.00 (t, J= 7.09 Hz, 3H).

Step 2:

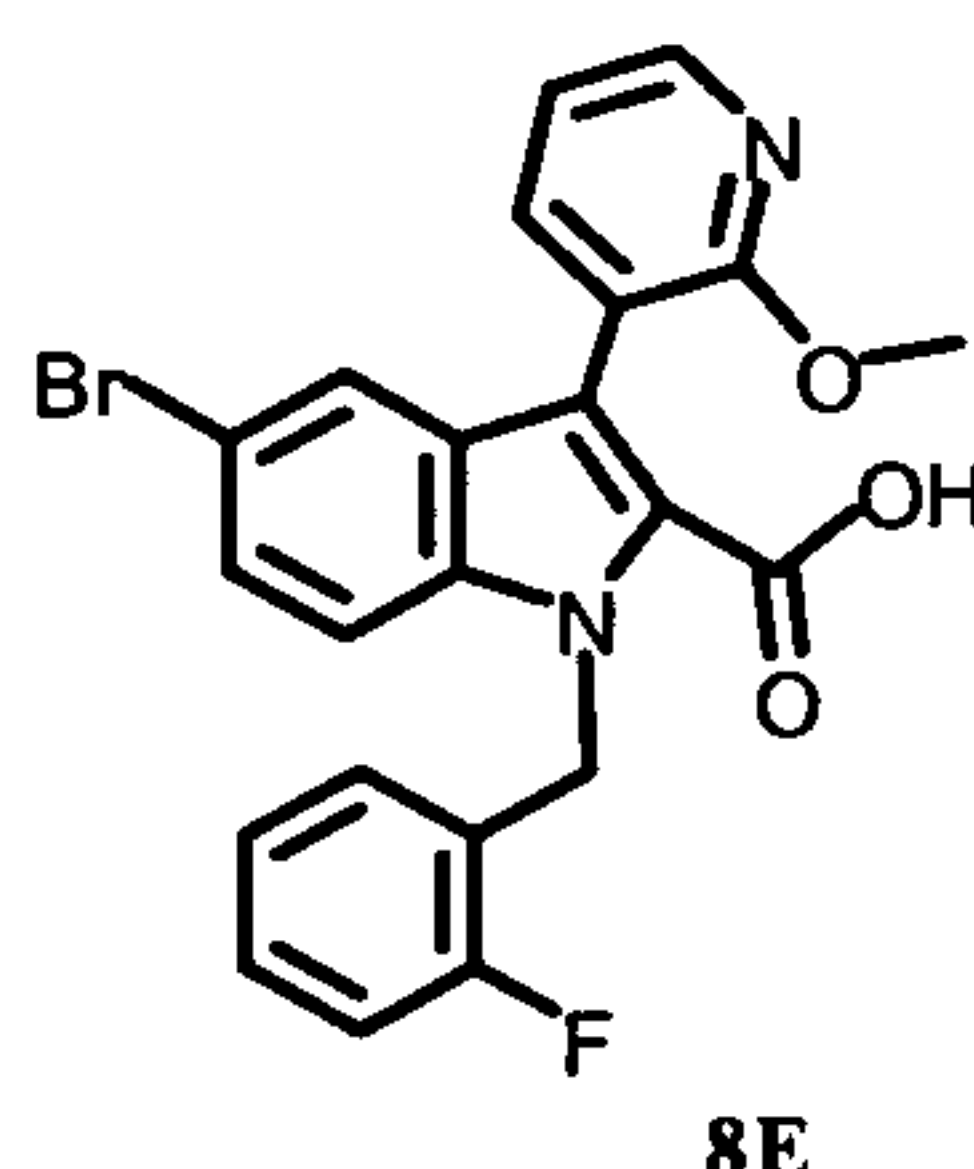
154



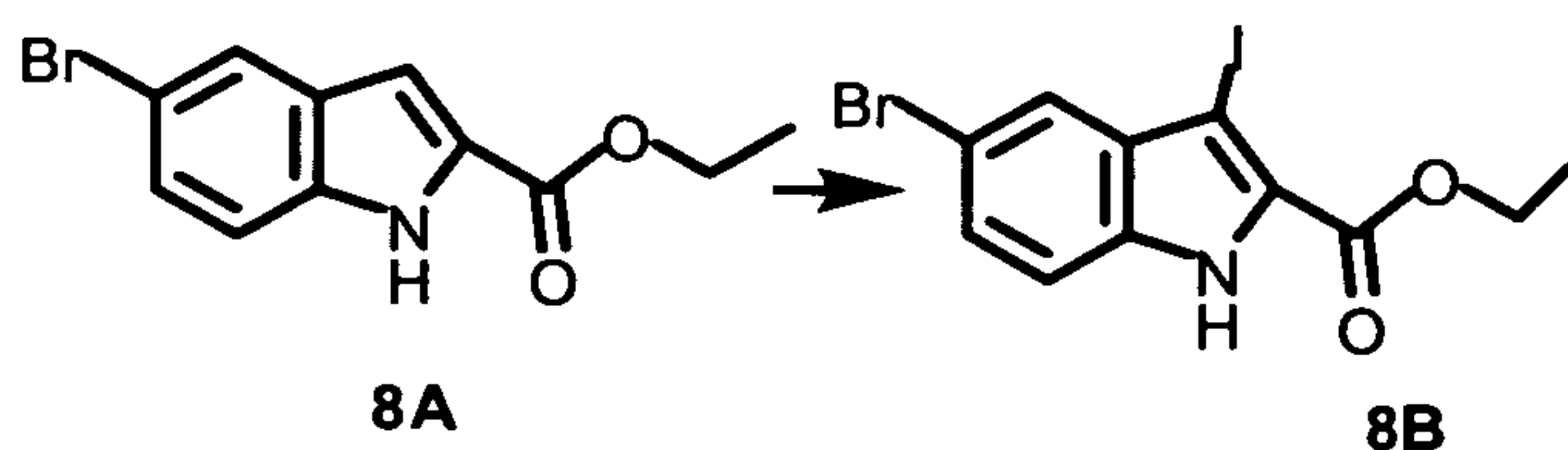
To a solution of 1-(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-piperidin-3-ylmethyl)-5-chloro-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **7B** (370 mg, 0.70 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was added an aqueous solution of lithium hydroxide (2.0 mL of 1 M, 2.0 mmol). The resulting mixture was allowed to stir at reflux for 2 days before cooled down to room temperature. The mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was dissolved into methanol (5 mL), neutralized with aqueous 1.0 M HCl solution (2.0 mL, 2.0 mmol) and then concentrated again under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was triturated with ethyl acetate (3 x 30 mL), and the combined organic layer was concentrated and dried on house vacuum to provide compound **7C** (290 mg, 83% yield).

Example 8

Preparation of Compound **8E**



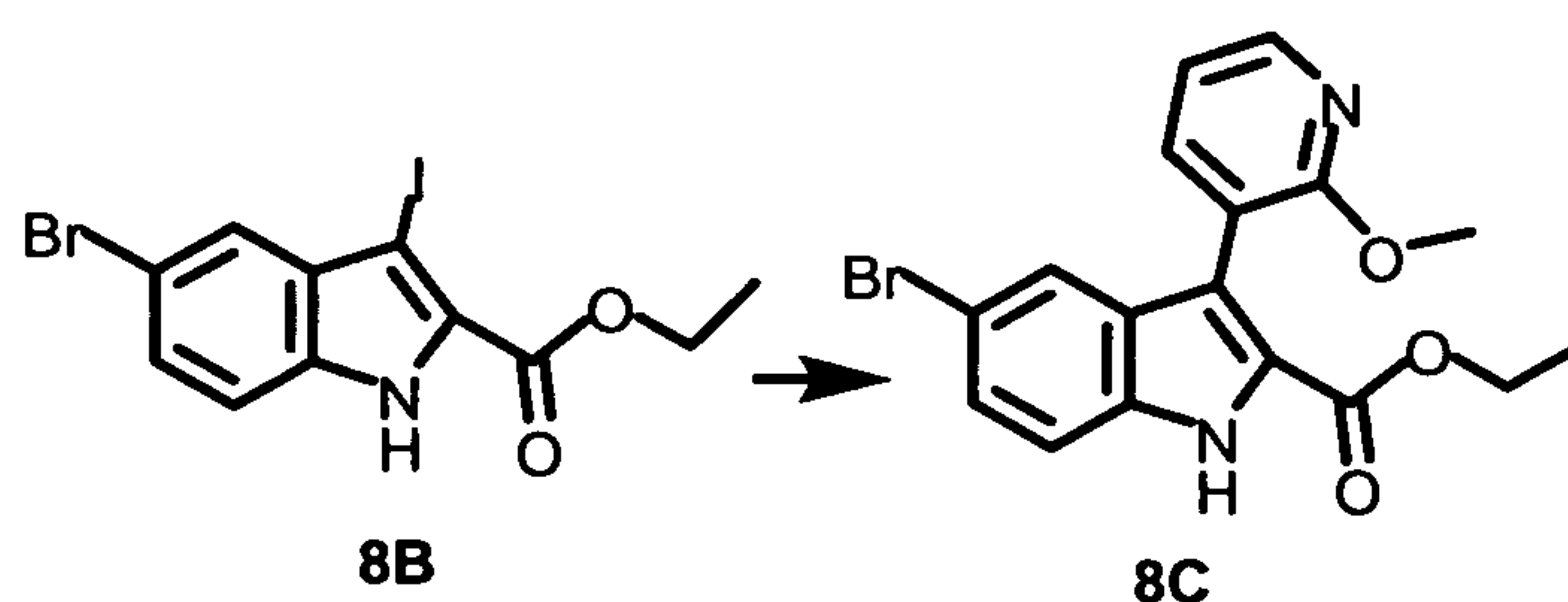
15 Step 1:



Ethyl 5-bromo 2-indole carboxylate, **8A** (4.0 g, 14.9 mmol) was dissolved into acetone (200 mL) at room temperature. To the mixture was added N-iodosuccinimide (3.65 g, 15.4 mmol). The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 3 hours. The mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, and the resulting residue was dissolved into ethyl acetate

155

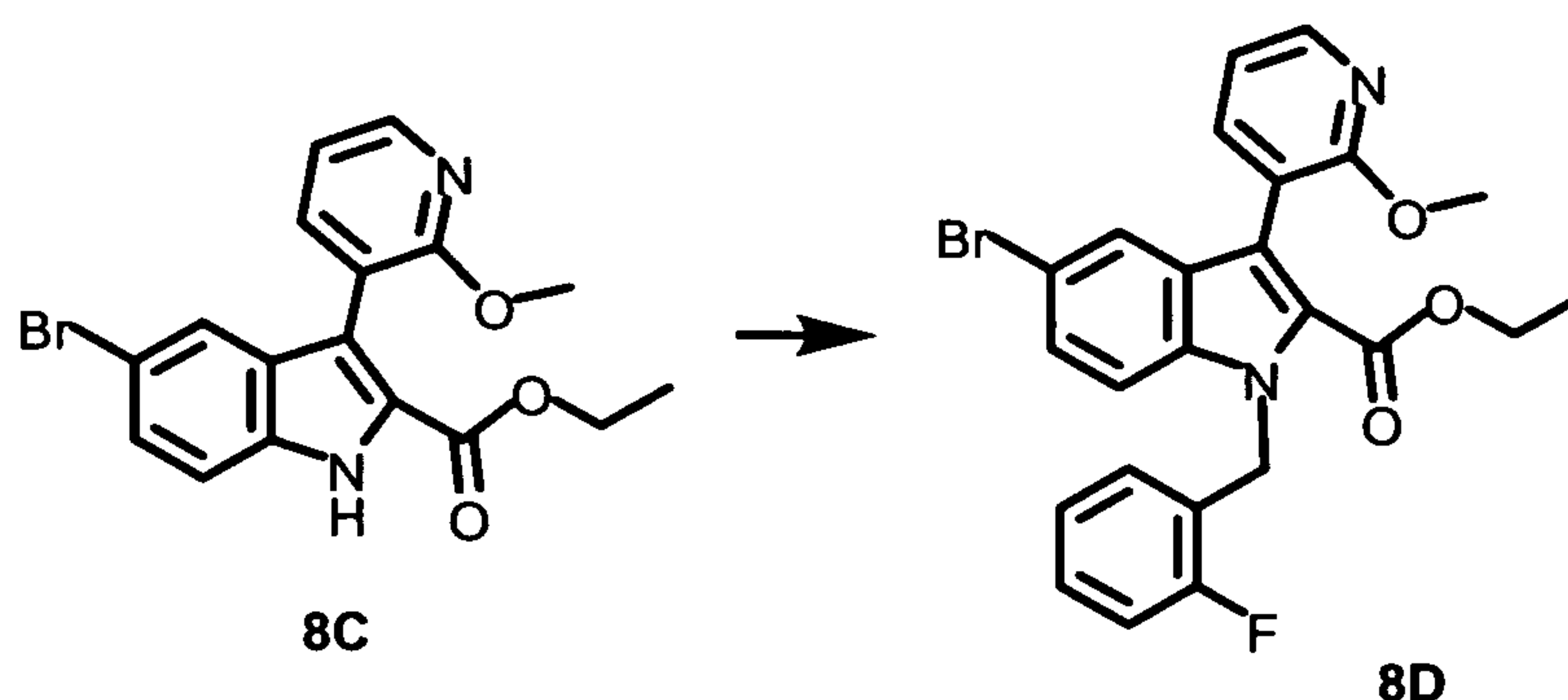
(150 mL). The mixture was washed with saturated aqueous sodium thiosulfate solution (50 mL). The layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 X 100 mL). The combined organic layer was dried (magnesium sulfate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product **8B** (100% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, d₆-DMSO): δ 12.48 (s, 1H), 7.55 (s, 1H), 7.45-7.44 (m, 2H), 4.39 (q, J= 6.59 Hz & 7.32 Hz, 2H), 1.38 (t, J= 7.32 Hz, 3H).

Step 2:

5-Bromo-3-iodo-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **8B** (8.66 g, 21.9 mmol) was dissolved into 1,2-dimethoxyethane (400 mL). And PdCl₂(dppf)₂ (1.80 g, 2.20 mmol) was added. The resulting mixture was de-gassed with nitrogen bubbling for 5 minutes before it was heated to 90 °C and stirred for 15 minutes. In a second flask, the mixture of 2-methoxy-3-pyridine boronic acid (3.72 g, 24.3 mmol) and potassium carbonate (15.2 g, 110 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (100 mL) and water (100 mL) was de-gassed with nitrogen bubbling for 5 minutes. The mixture was then transferred in three portions to the first flask. The resulting bi-phasic mixture was vigorously stirred at 90 °C for 3.5 h before it was cooled to room temperature. The reaction was quenched by addition of a solution of sodium sulfite (15 g) in water (200 mL) at room temperature. Ethyl acetate (200 mL) was added, and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 300 mL). The combined organic layer was dried (magnesium sulfate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product **8C** (100% yield). M.S. calc'd for C₁₇H₁₅BrN₂O₃: 375.22. Found: 377.00.

Step 3:

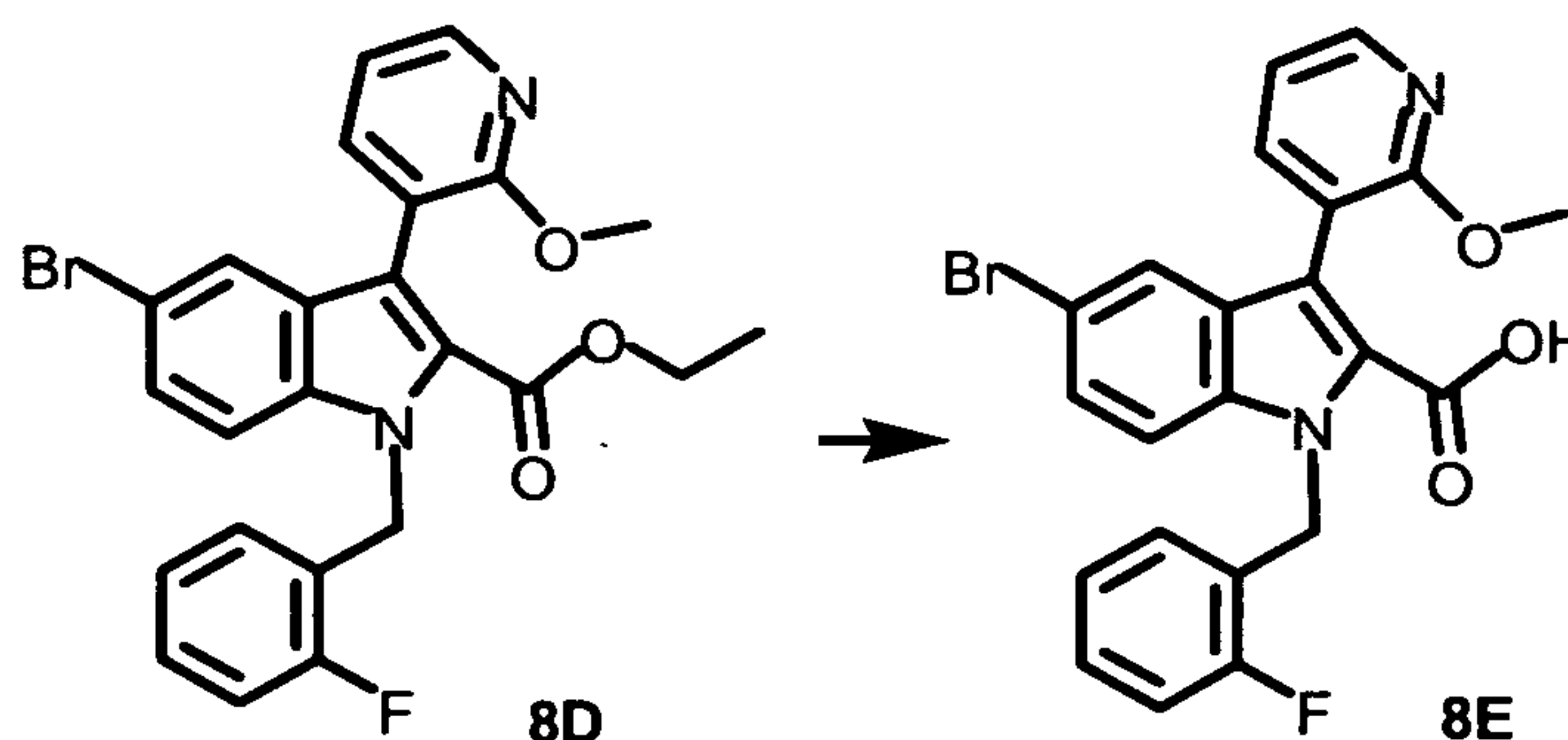
156



5-Bromo-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **8C** (0.66 g, 1.59 mmol) was dissolved into DMF(50 mL) at room temperature. To the mixture were added 2-fluorobenzyl bromide (0.42 g, 2.23 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.84 g, 2.40 mmol).

5 The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 hours. Ethyl acetate (200 mL) and water (100 mL) were added to the reaction mixture, and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 X 100 mL). The combined organic layer was washed with water (2 X 100 mL). The separated organic layer was dried (magnesium sulfate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product. The
 10 crude product was purified using flash chromatography to provide product **8D** (0.32 g, 42 % yield). M.S. calc'd for C₂₄H₂₀N₂O₃BrF: 483.33. Found: 485.3.

Step 4:



15 To a solution of 5-bromo-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester, **8D**(0.32 g, 0.66 mmol) in methanol (5 mL) was added lithium hydroxide monohydrate (110 mg, 2.64 mmol). And water (0.2 mL) was added to improve the solubility. The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 5 minutes before being placed in microwave reactor for 20 minutes (120 °C, high power). The mixture
 20 was concentrated *in vacuo*. Ethyl acetate (50 mL) and water (50 mL) were added to the residue. The aqueous layer was acidified to pH=2 by adding aqueous 1N HCl solution, and was

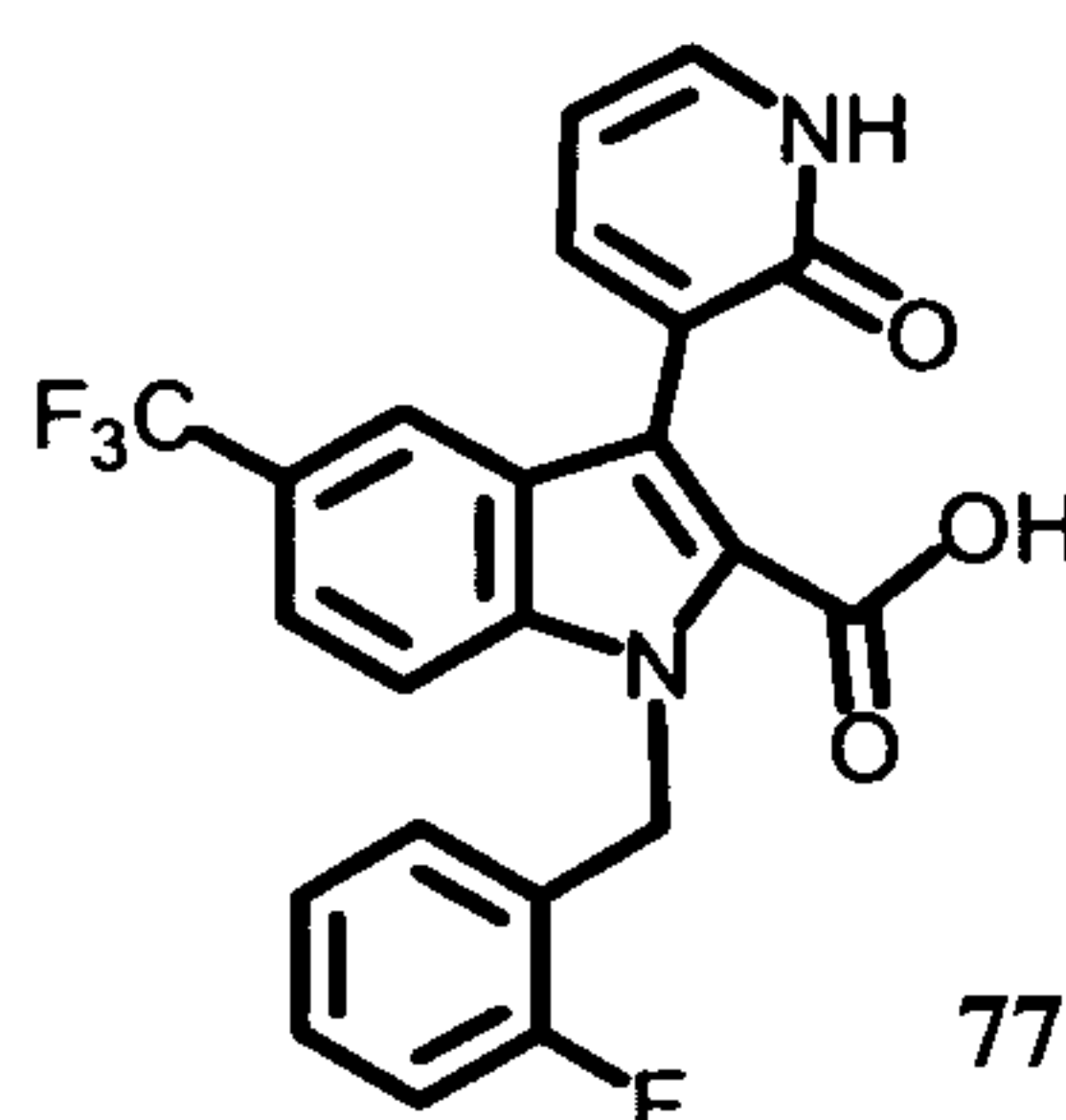
157

saturated with NaCl salts. The layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was further extracted with ethyl acetate (2 X 50 mL). The combined organic layer was dried (magnesium sulfate) and filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide compound **8E** (93 % yield) which was used without further purification. M.S. calc'd for C₂₂H₁₆N₂O₃BrF: 455.28. Found:

5 456.01 (M+H)⁺.

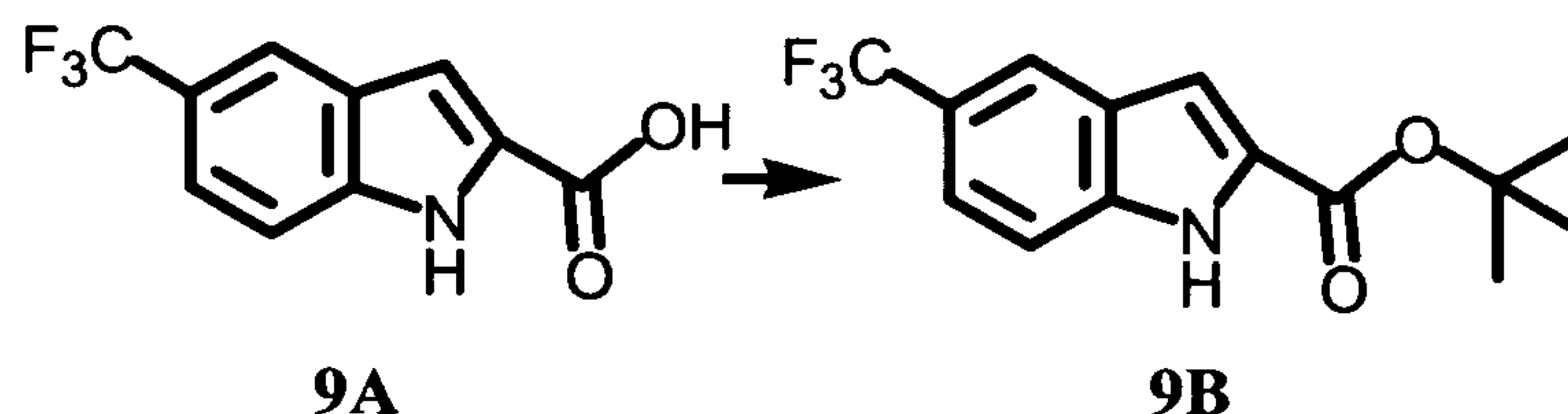
Example 9

Preparation of Compound 77



10

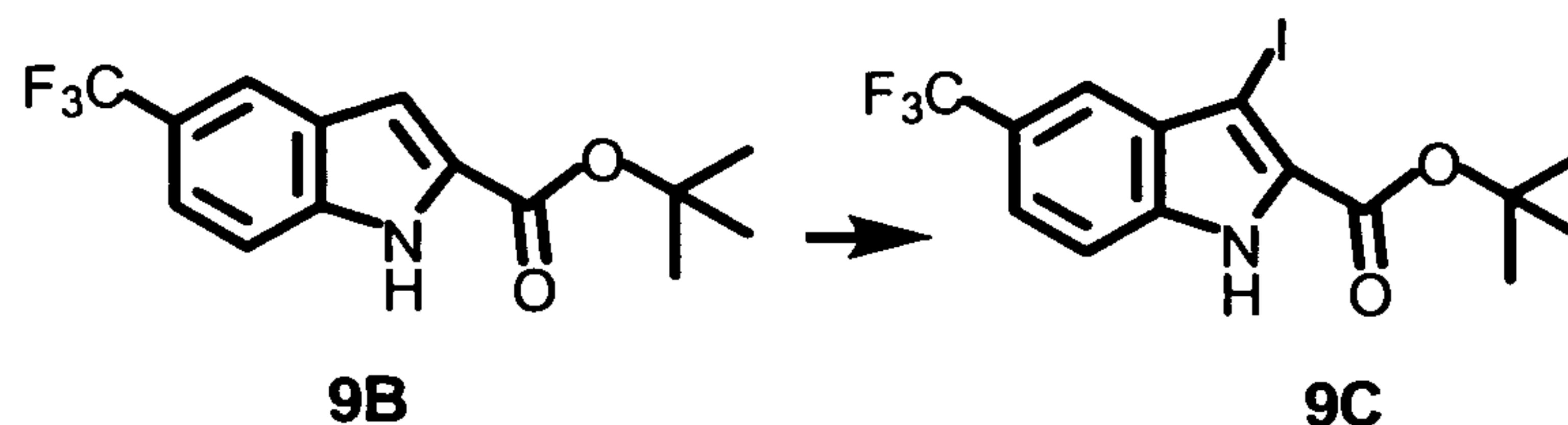
Step 1:



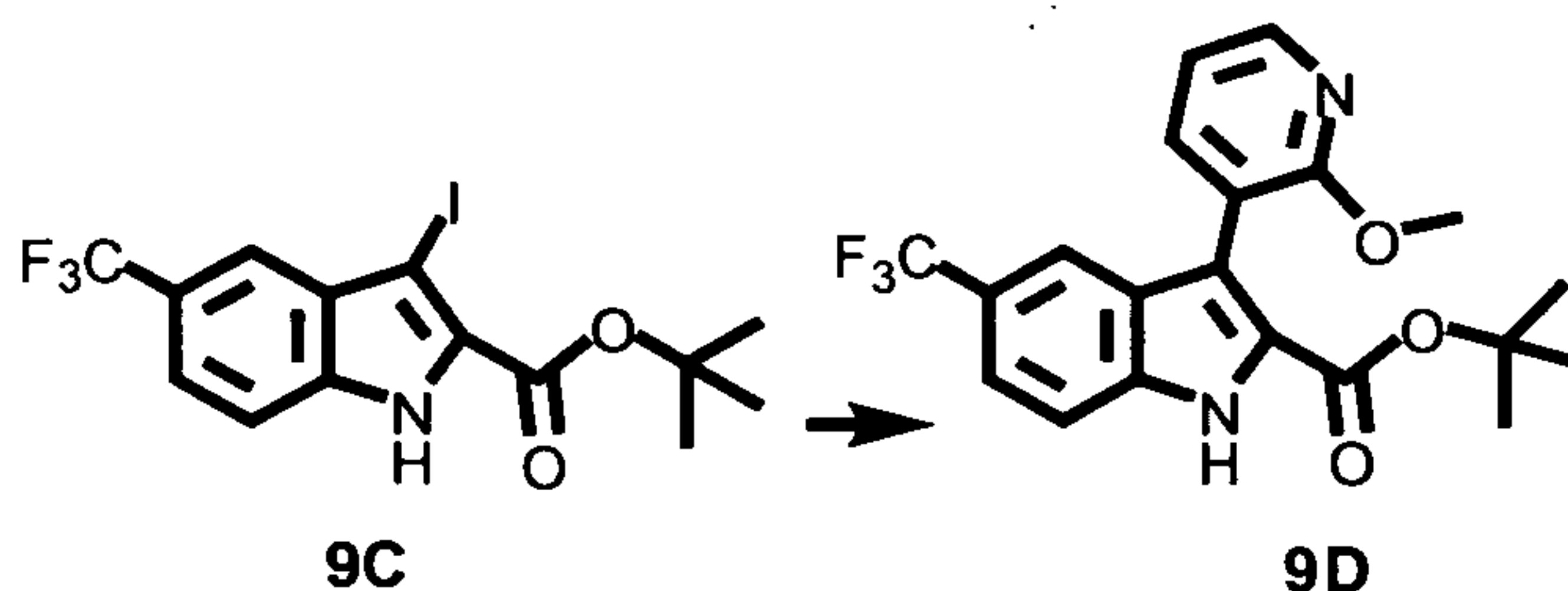
To a solution of 5-(trifluoromethyl)indole-2-carboxylic acid, **9A** (1.6 g, 6.9 mmol) in toluene (5.0 mL) at room temperature was added *N,N*-dimethylformamide di-*tert*-butyl acetal (5.0 mL). The mixture was allowed to stir at 90 °C for 12 hours, and then was cooled to room temperature. Another aliquot of *N,N*-dimethylformamide di-*tert* butyl acetal (5 mL) was added. The reaction mixture was heated to 90 °C for another 12 hours, cooled to room temperature, and was diluted with ethyl acetate (10 mL). The mixture was washed with water (2 X 10 mL), and brine respectively. The separated organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to yield the product **9B** (1.2 g, 60% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃); δ9.17 (s, 1H), 7.97 (s, 1H), 7.51 (s, 2H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 1.63 (s, 9H).

Step 2:

158



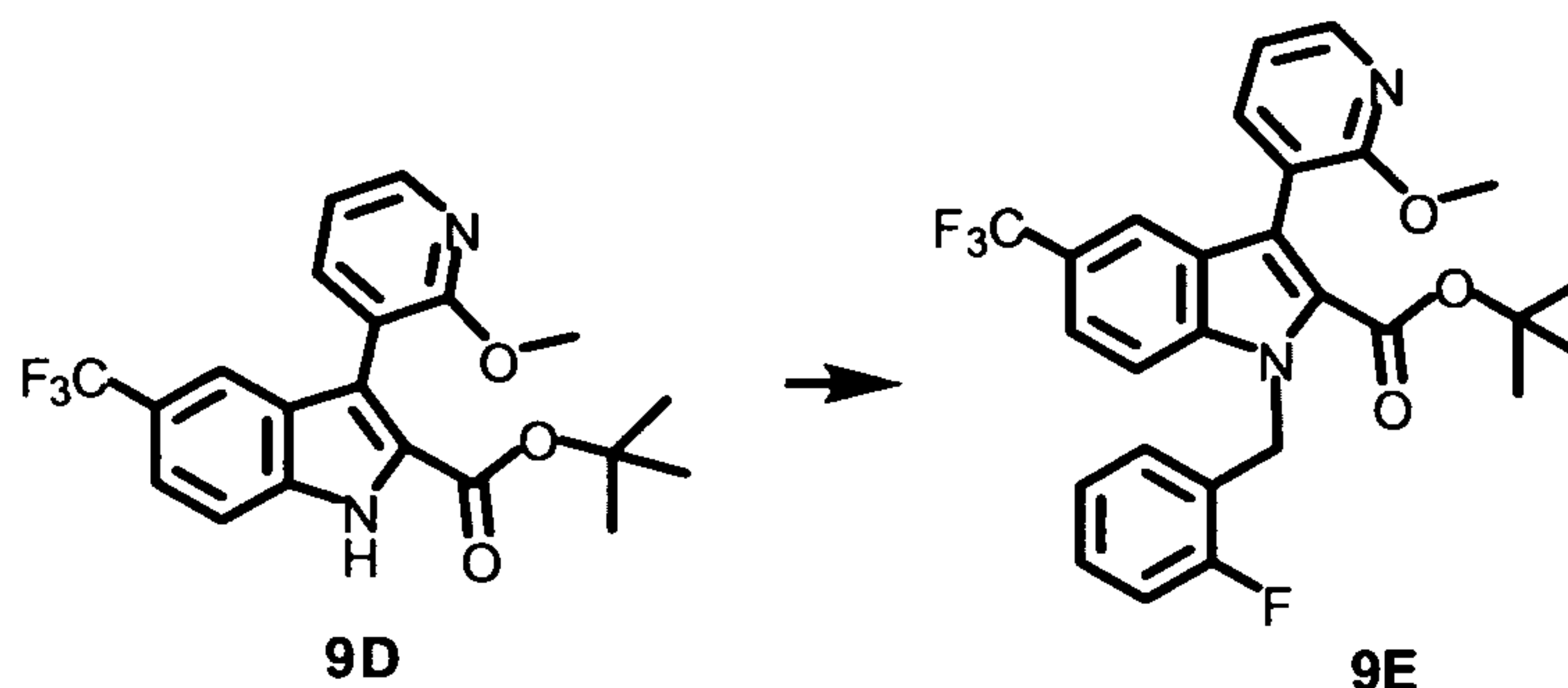
To a solution of 5-trifluoromethyl-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester, **9B** (1.2 g, 4.2 mmol) in CHCl_3 (25 mL) was added *N*-iodosuccinimide (946 mg, 4.2 mmol). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 12 hours, before it was concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was diluted into water (100 mL), and was extracted with EtOAc (200 mL). The separated organic layer was dried over MgSO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The brown resulting residue was taken in minimum amount of CH_2Cl_2 and triturated with hexanes. The product **9C** was separated out as a brown solid after filtration, and dried *in vacuo* (1.23 g, 72% yield). ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl_3): δ 9.34 (s, 1H), 7.87 (s, 1H), 7.57 (d, $J = 8.06$ Hz, 1H), 7.49 (d, $J = 8.79$ Hz, 1H), 1.68 (s, 9H).

Step 3::

To a solution of 3-iodo-5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester, **9C** (1.23 g, 3.0 mmol) in DME (30 mL) under nitrogen atmosphere was added 2-methoxy-3-pyridyl boronic acid (0.48 g, 3.15 mmol) and $\text{Pd}(\text{dppf})_2\text{Cl}_2$ (245 mg, 0.3 mmol). The resulting reaction was allowed to stir at room temperature under nitrogen for 0.5 hours. The reaction mixture was then treated with a solution of potassium carbonate (1.6 g, 12 mmol) in water (12 mL), and the resulting solution was allowed to stir at 90 °C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was then diluted with EtOAc (200 mL), and the resulting solution was concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was purified using flash column chromatography to provide the product **9D** (820 mg, 70% yield). M.S. found for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{19}\text{F}_3\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$: 393.2 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

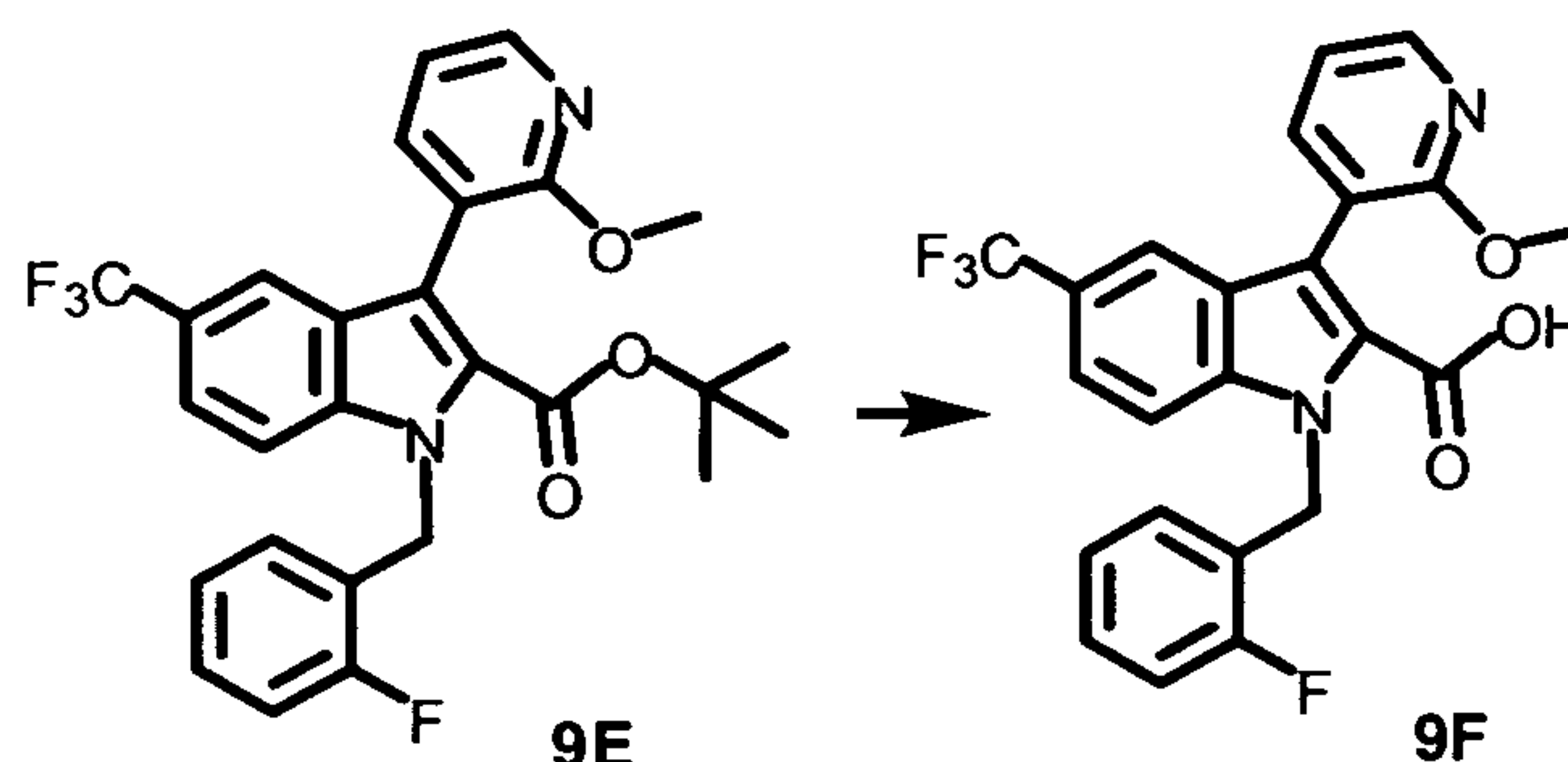
Step 4:

159



To a solution of 3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-5-trifluoromethyl-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester, **9D** (400 mg, 1.02 mmol) in DMF (8 mL) were added 2-fluorobenzyl bromide (0.14 mL, 1.12 mmol) and cesium carbonate (365 mg, 1.12 mmol). The resulting mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 hours. Ethyl acetate (200 mL) and water (100 mL) were added to the reaction mixture, and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with water (2 x 100 mL) and brine (50 mL). The separated organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crystallized product **9E** (100% yield). M.S. found for C₂₇H₂₄F₄N₂O₃: 501.11 (M+H)⁺.

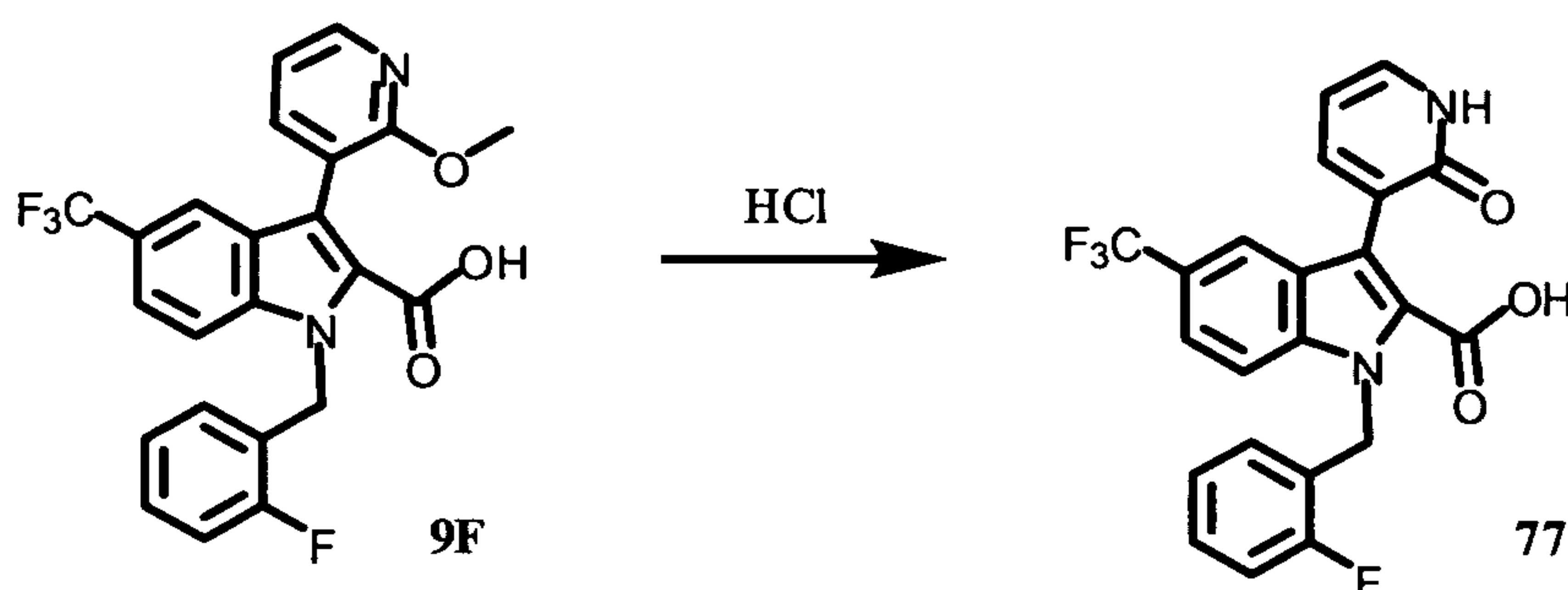
Step 5:



To a solution of 1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-5-trifluoromethyl-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester, **9E** (510 mg, 1.02 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ was added trifluoroacetic acid (3 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was dissolved into ethyl acetate (200 mL). The ethyl acetate solution was washed with water (4 x 50 mL) and brine. The separated organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide compound **9F** (100% yield). M.S. found for C₂₃H₁₆F₄N₂O₃: 445.06 (M+H)⁺.

Step 6:

160



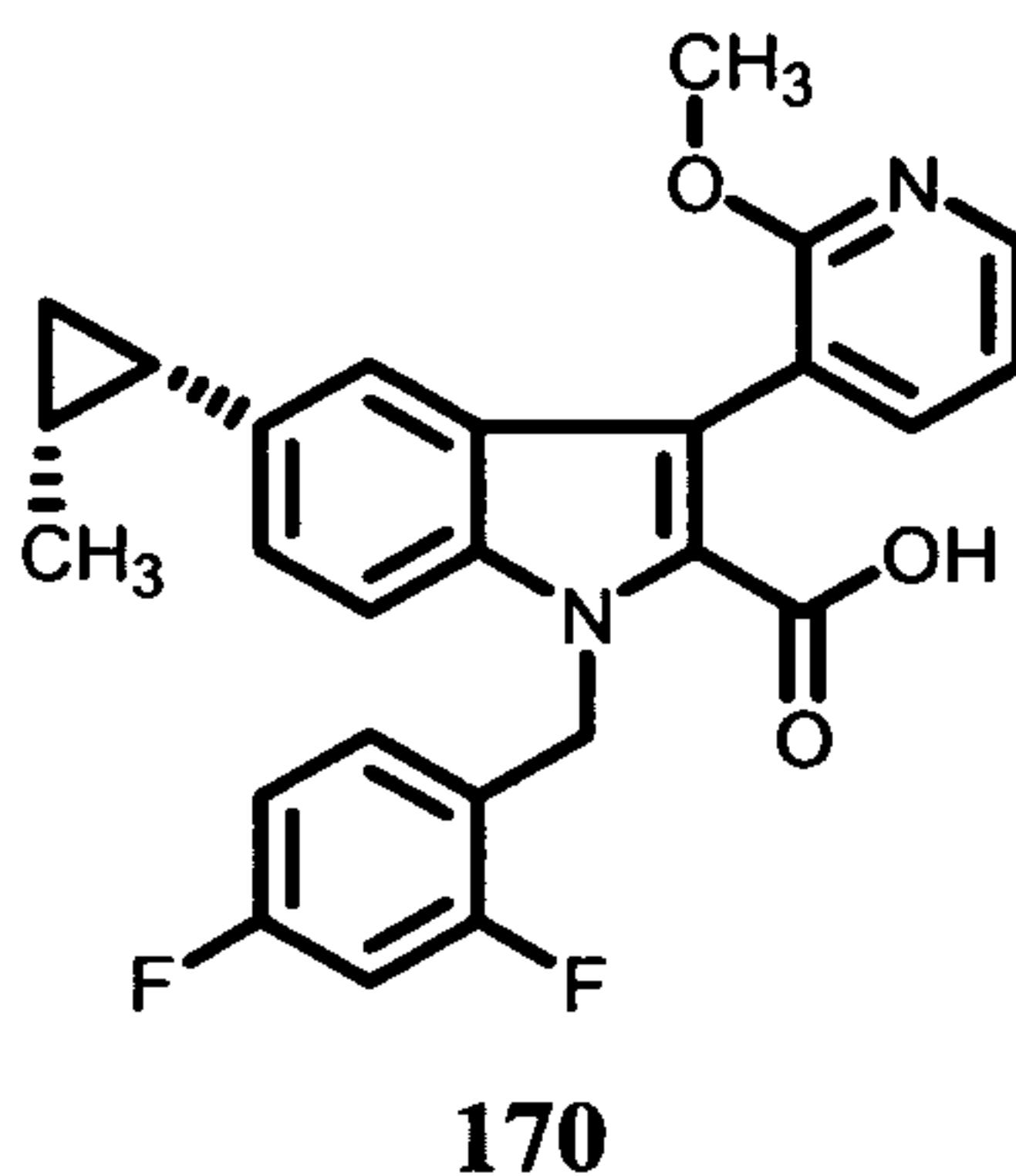
Compound **J5** was stirred with 1 N HCl overnight to afford compound **77**.

MS = 431 (M+H).

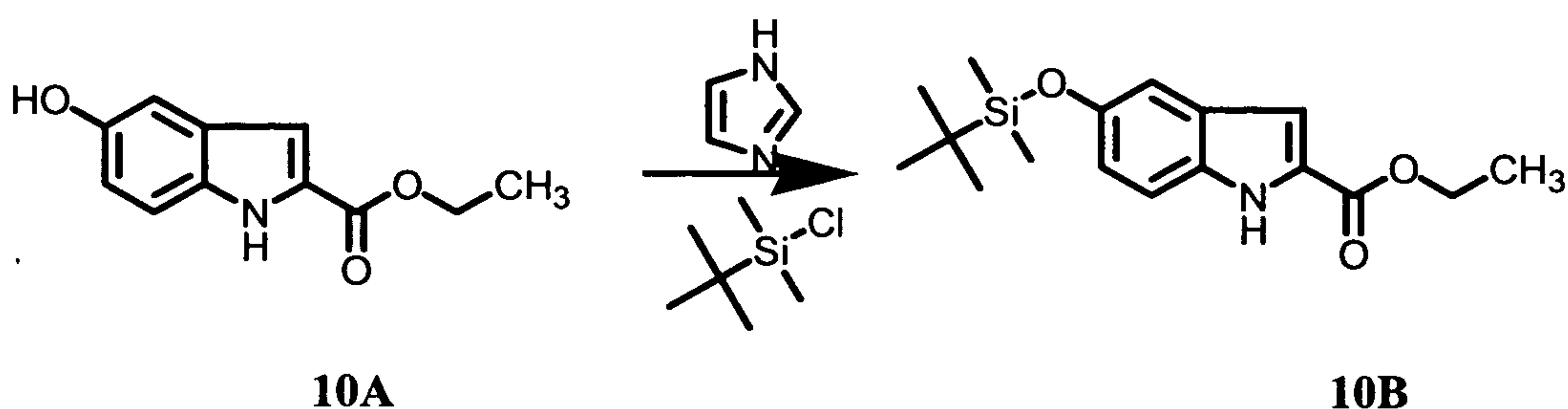
5

Example 10

Preparation of Compound 170



10 **Step 1:**



A solution of ethyl 5-hydroxy-1H-indole-2-carboxylate (**10A**, 6.0 g; 29.24 mmol) in 300 mL of dichloromethane was treated with imidazole (4.0 eq, 7.96 g) and tert-butyltrimethylsilyl chloride (2.0 eq, 8.82 g). The reaction was allowed to stir at room temp for 3 hours. A small sample (1 mL) was taken from reaction mixture, diluted with dichloromethane (10 mL) and washed with water. Evaporation of the solvent and NMR analysis showed all starting material had been consumed. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (300 mL) and washed with water (2 x 100 mL) and brine (100 mL). The

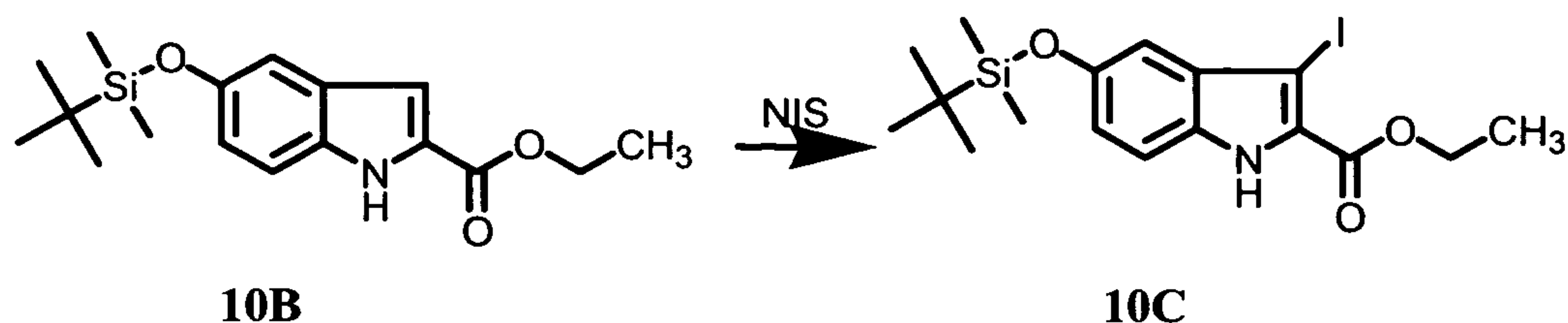
15

161

organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to provide compound **10B** (9.20 g; 98 %) as a white solid.

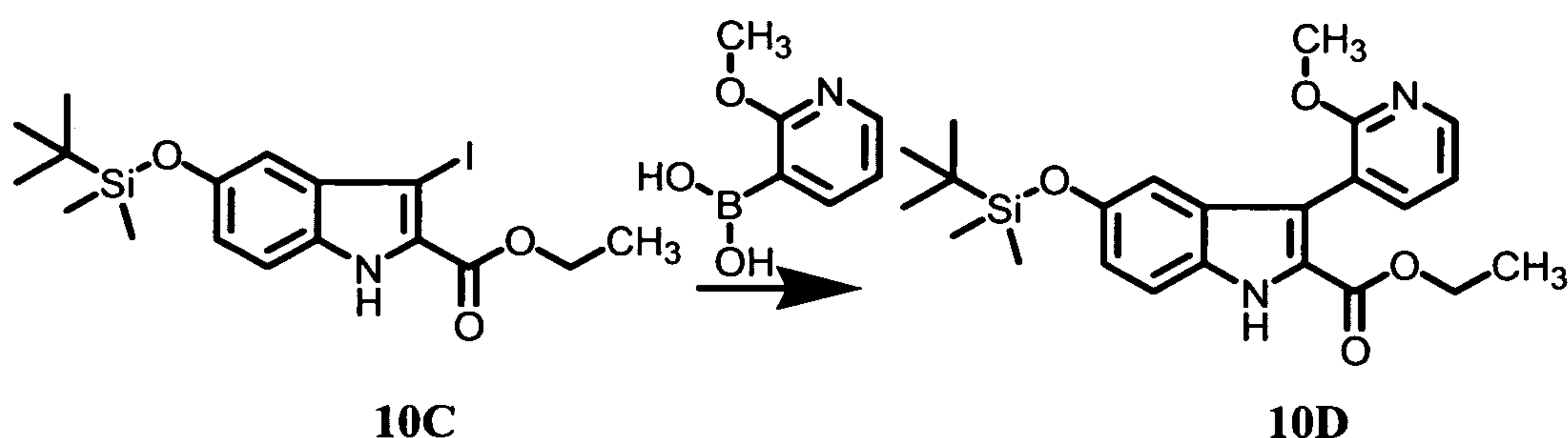
Step 2:

5



A solution of ethyl 5-tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyloxy-1H-indole-2-carboxylate **10B** (9.0 g) in 300 mL of chloroform was ice-cooled and treated with N-iodosuccinimide (1.1 eq, 6.97 g). The mixture was allowed to stir at 0 °C for 10 minutes and then at room temp for 2 hours. NMR analysis of a small aliquot showed complete conversion of starting material. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (300 mL) and washed with aq saturated sodium thiosulfate (150 mL), aq saturated sodium bicarbonate (150 mL) and brine (100 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to provide compound **10C** (11.58 g; 92 %) as a white solid. M.S. found for C₁₇H₂₄INO₃Si: 446.36 (M+H)⁺.

Step 3:



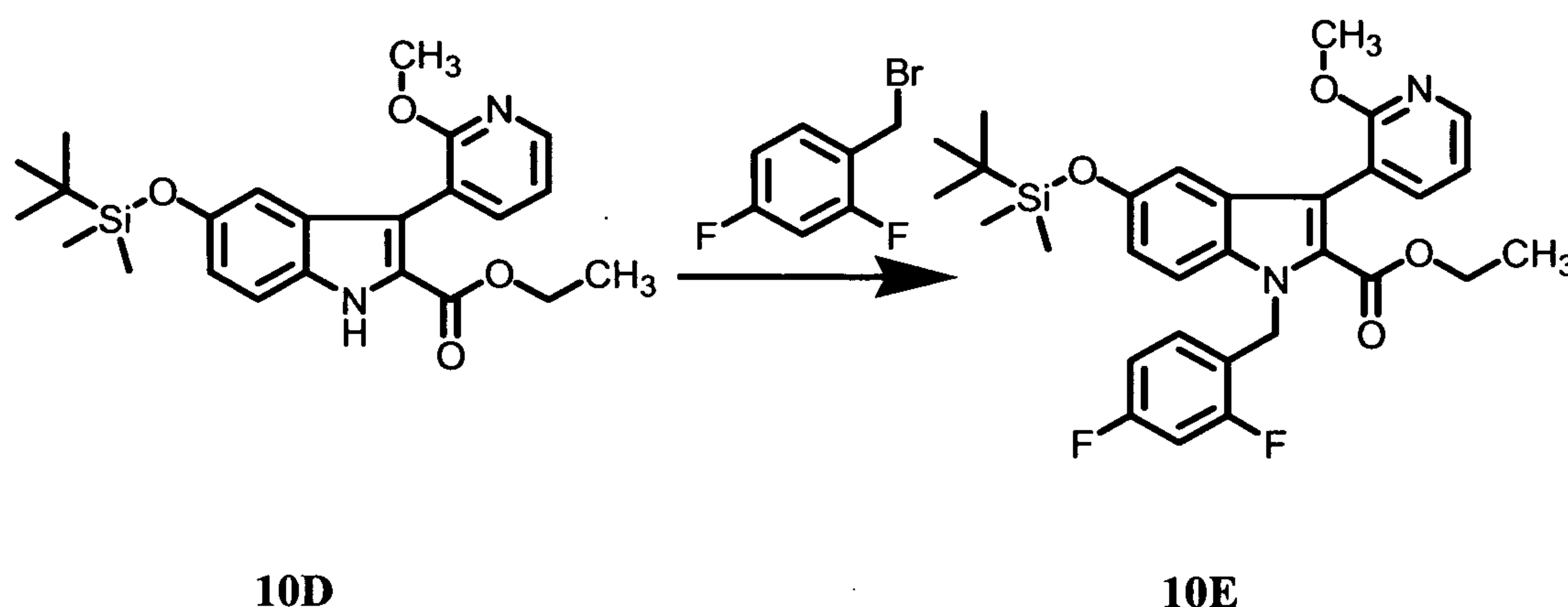
20

The 2-methoxy-3-pyridineboronic acid (1.05 eq, 3.27 g) was added to a solution of **10C** (9.06 g; 20.345 mmol) in 100 mL of 1,2-dimethoxyethane. The mixture was degassed (vacuum/argon flush) and PdCl₂(dppf)₂ (10 mol%, 1.66 g) was added and the resulting orange solution was allowed to stir for 30 minutes at room temp. A solution of potassium carbonate (4.0 eq, 81 mL of aq 1M soln) was added and the resulting brown solution was allowed to stir at 90 °C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and concentrated. The resulting residue was diluted with ethyl acetate (600 mL) and washed with aq saturated

25

162

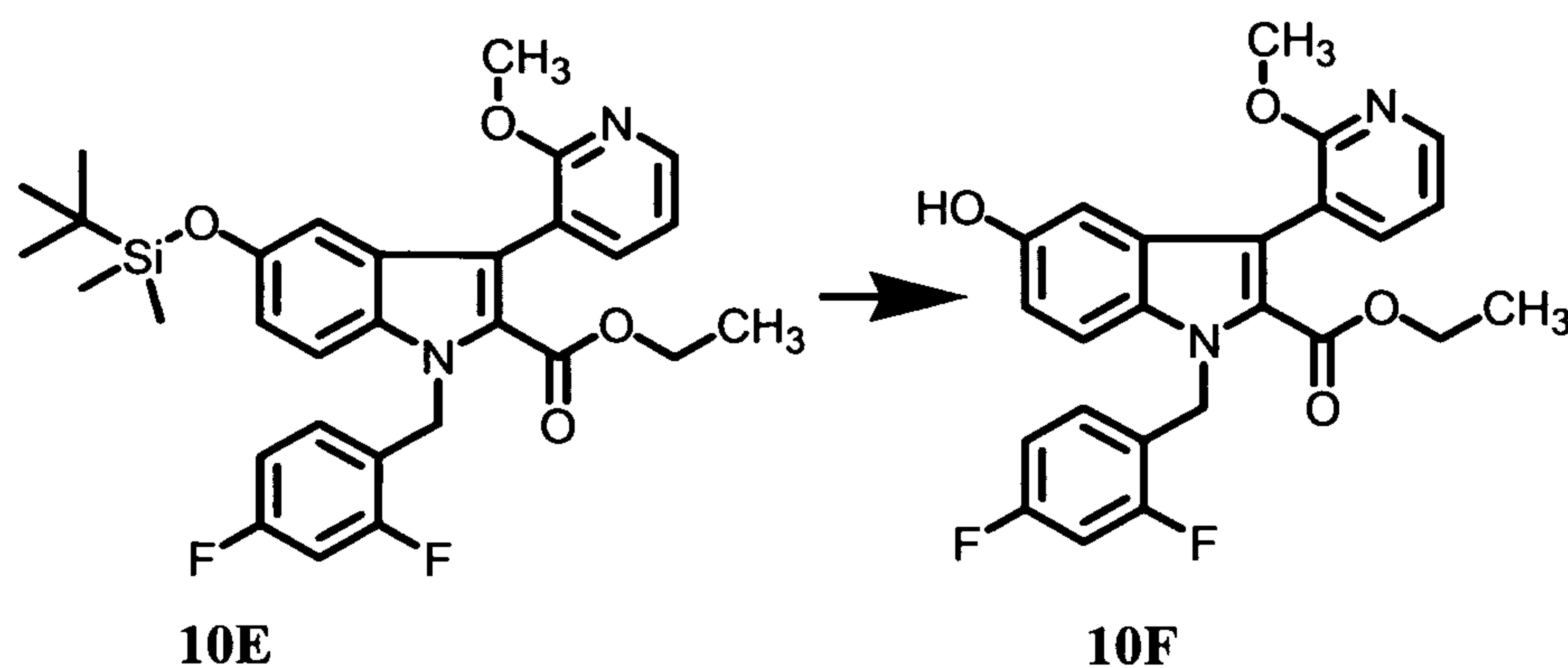
sodium bicarbonate (100 mL) and brine (100 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was divided into two equal portions and each was purified using silica gel chromatography (Biotage 75-M column; gradient: 0 to 30 % ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide compound **10D** as a white solid (6.76 g; 65 %). M.S. found for C₂₃H₃₀N₂O₄Si: 427.56 (M+H)⁺.

Step 4:

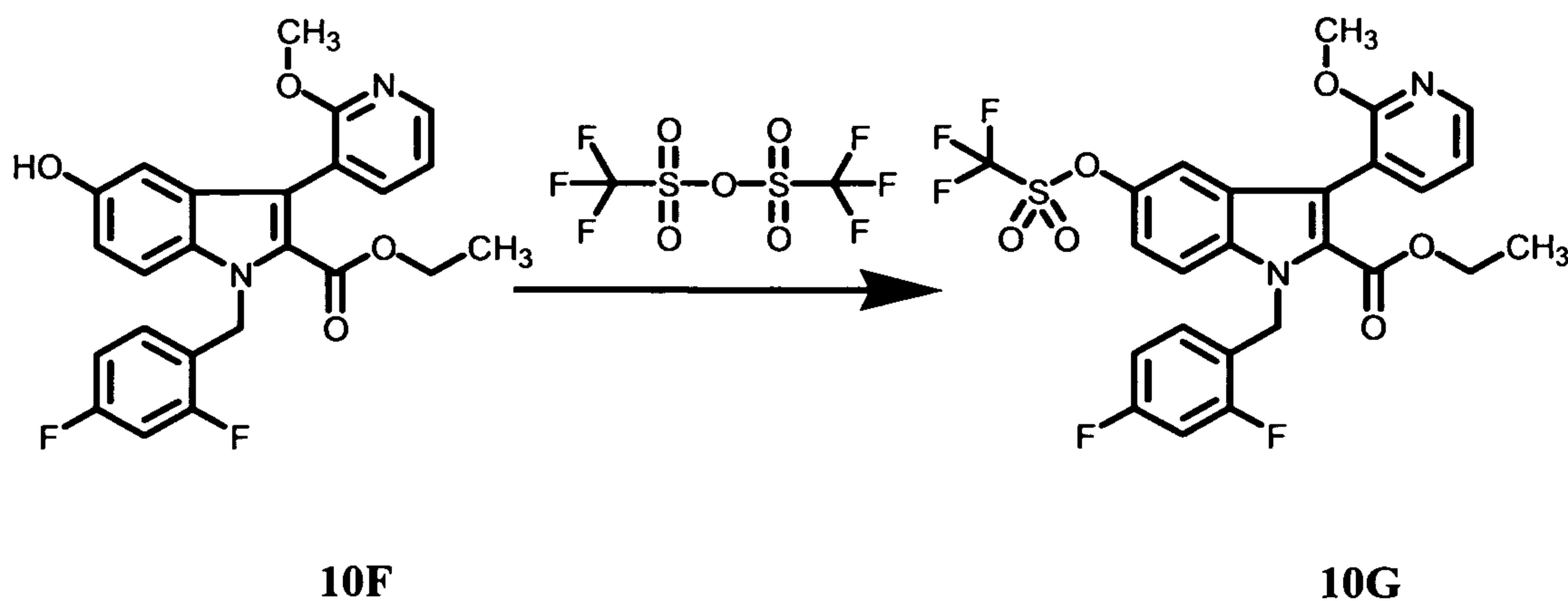
A solution of indole derivative **10D** (6.5 g, 15.237 mmol) in 50 mL of dry THF was added to an ice-cooled suspension of sodium hydride (1.3 eq, 792 mg of 60% susp in mineral oil) in 50 mL of dry THF. The resulting solution was allowed to stir for 10 minutes followed by addition of 2,4-difluorobenzyl bromide (1.3 eq, 2.54 mL, d 1.613). A catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium iodide (0.2 eq, 1.12 g) was added to the reaction mixture and stirring was continued for 18 h (temperature from 0 to 25 °C). The reaction was quenched by addition of water (10 mL) and the mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (500 mL). The organic layer was washed with water (2 x 100 mL) and brine (80 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford the crude product **10E** as a colorless foam contaminated with undesired bis-N,O-difluorobenzyl product. The crude mixture was used for next reaction without further any further purification. M.S. found for C₃₀H₃₄N₂O₄Si: 553.65 (M+H)⁺.

Step 5:

163

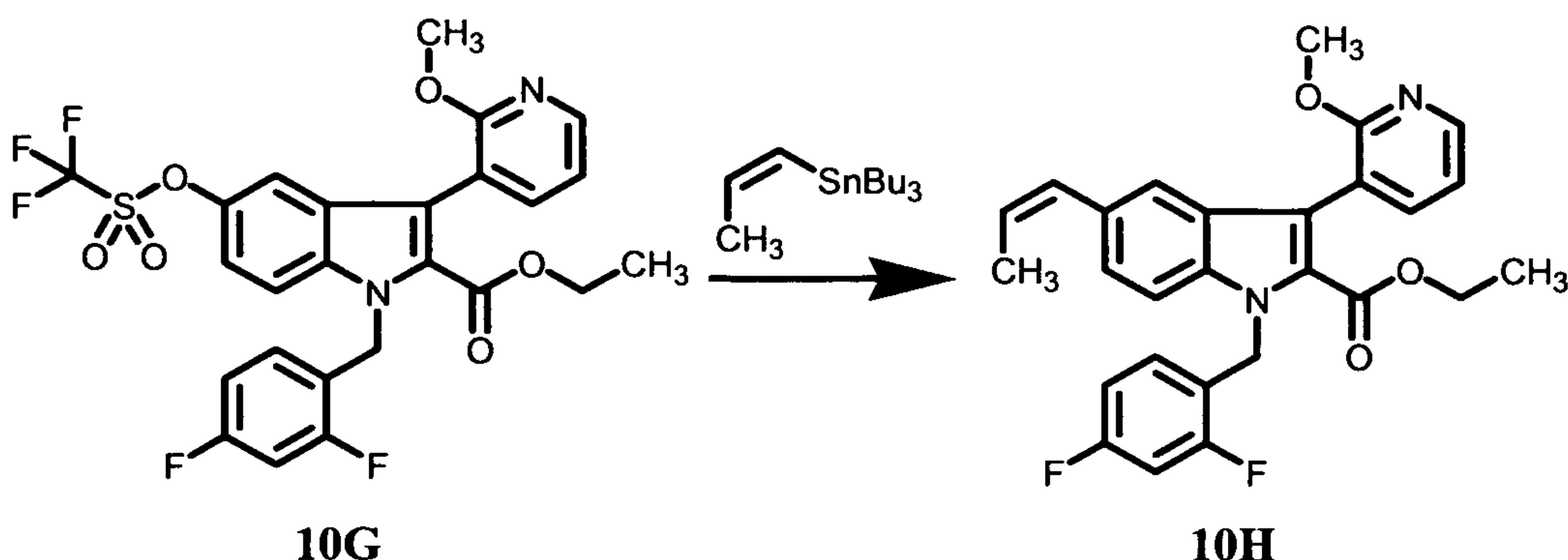


A solution of crude silylether **10E** (15.237 mmol; 8.4 g) in 100 mL of THF (NOTE: **10E** contains an impurity identified as the bis-N,O-difluorobenzyl compound) was ice-cooled and treated with ca 1.0 eq of TBAF (15 mL of 1.0M soln in THF). The mixture immediately turned yellow-green in color and TLC after 5 minutes (30% ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed no more starting material left. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (500 mL) and washed with water (100 mL), aq saturated sodium bicarbonate (100 mL) and brine (100 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified using silica gel chromatography (Biotage 75-M column; gradient: 10 to 50 % ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide compound **10F** as a white solid (5.8 g; 88% for two steps). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, d₆-DMSO): δ 9.09 (s, 1H), 8.17 & 8.16 (dd, J = 2.20 & 5.13 Hz, 1H), 7.71 & 7.69 (dd, J = 1.46 & 7.32 Hz, 1H), 7.45 (d, J = 8.79 Hz, 1H), 7.26 (t, J = 10.98 Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.06 (m, 1H), 6.97 (dt, J = 8.79 & 2.20 Hz, 1H), 6.88 & 6.86 (dd, J = 8.79 & 2.20 Hz, 1H), 6.76-6.71 (m, 1H), 6.67 (d, J = 2.20 Hz, 1H), 5.77 (s, 2H), 3.99 (q, J = 7.32 Hz, 2H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 0.85 (t, J = 7.32 Hz, 3H).

Step 6:

164

A solution of 1-(2,4-Difluoro-benzyl)-5-hydroxy-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester **10F** (2.0 g; 4.56 mmol) in 20 mL of dry dichloromethane was ice cooled and treated with pyridine (4 mL) and triflic anhydride (2.1 eq, 1.61 mL, d 1.677). The mixture was allowed to stir for 10 minutes and treated with a catalytic amount of 4-dimethylamino pyridine. The cooling bath was removed and the reaction was allowed to stir for 2 hours. TLC (10% ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed no more starting material left and the mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (200 mL) and washed with water (50 mL) and brine (50 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified using silica gel chromatography (Biotage 40-M column; gradient: 0 to 20% ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide compound **10G** (2.50 g; 96 %) as a colorless oil. MS found for C₂₅H₁₉F₅N₂O₆S: 571.12 (M+H)⁺.

Step 7:

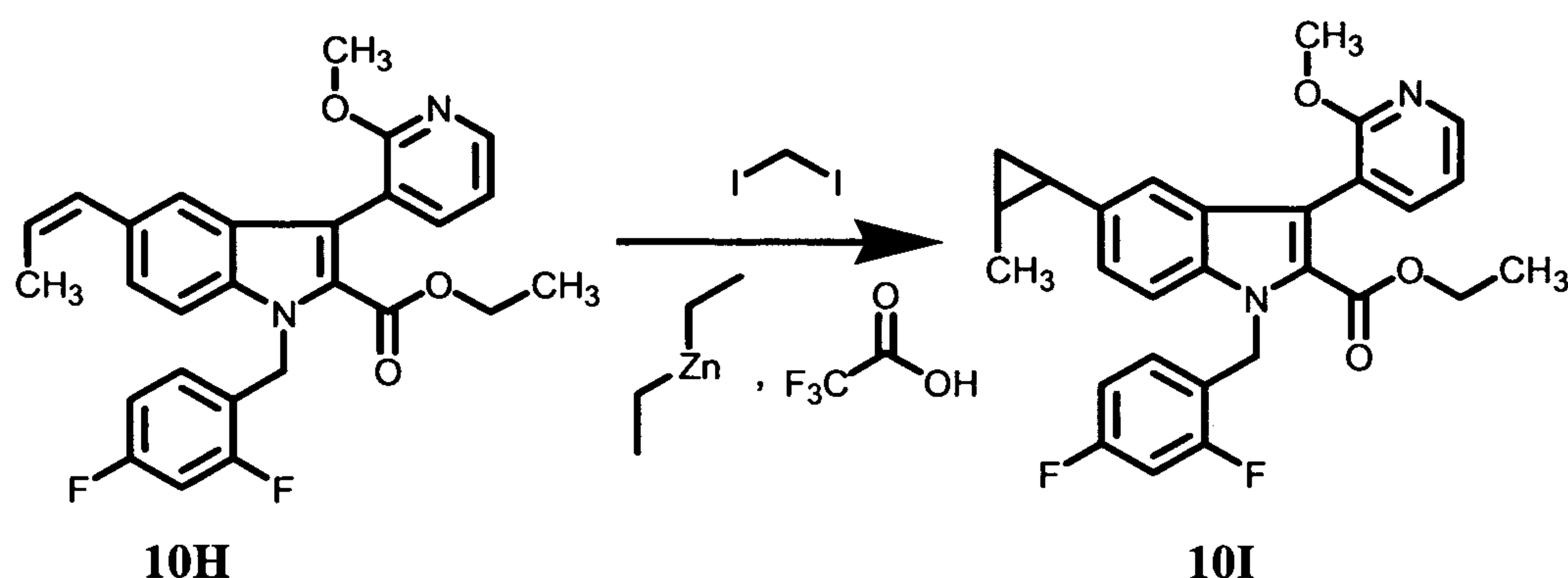
15

A solution of 1-(2,4-difluoro-benzyl)-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-5-trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester **10G** (650 mg; 1.13 mmol) in 10 mL of THF was treated with lithium chloride (7.0 eq, 336 mg) and (Z)-1-propenyltributyl stannane (1.5 eq, 0.51 mL, d 1.1). The mixture was degassed (vacuum/nitrogen flush) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium was added (10 mol%, 130 mg). The reaction mixture was heated to 70 °C and stirred overnight. TLC (10% ethyl acetate in hexanes) and MS analyses showed complete conversion of starting material. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (80 mL) and washed successively with water (10 mL), 10% aq ammonium hydroxide (10 mL), water (10 mL), and brine (10 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in rotavap. The resulting residue was purified using silica gel chromatography (Biotage 25-M column; gradient: 80 mL of hexanes

25

165

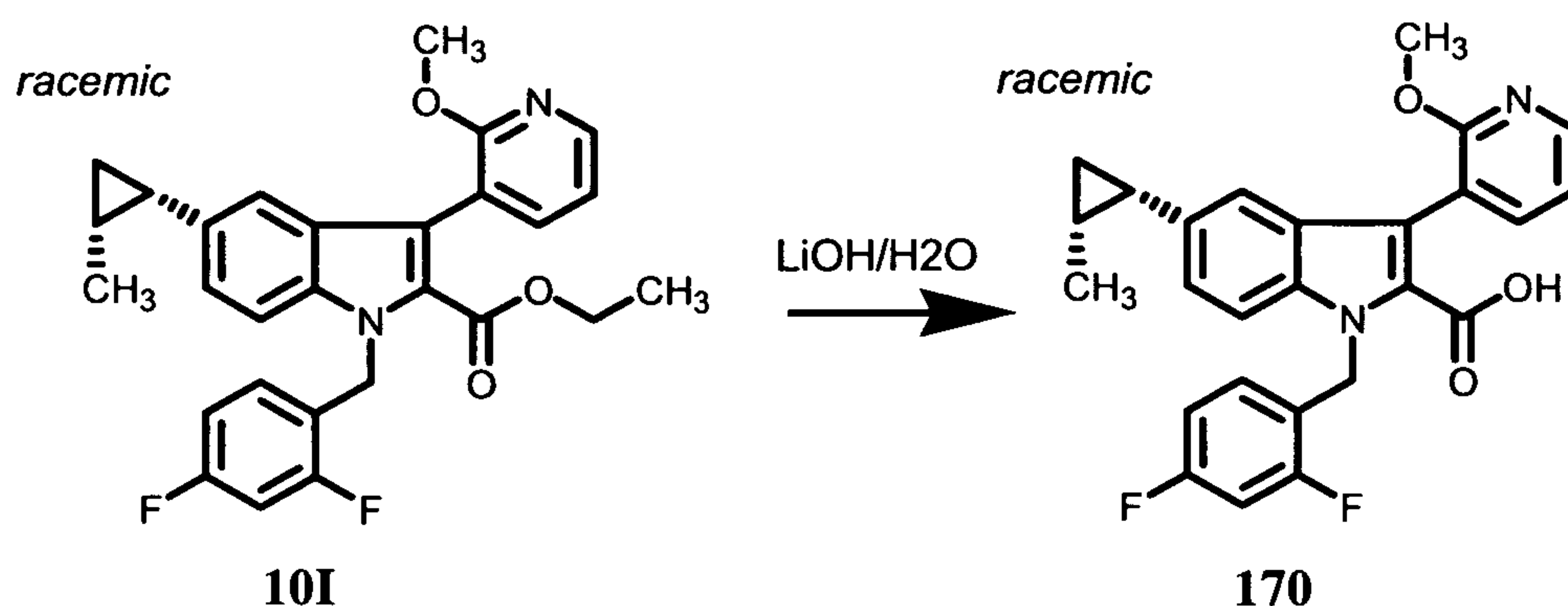
then 0 to 25% ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide compound **10H** (400 mg; 77 %) as a colorless oil. MS found for C₂₇H₂₄F₂N₂O₃: 463.30 (M+H)⁺.

Step 8:

To a vigorously stirred solution of diethylzinc (10.0 eq, 3.9 mL of 1M soln in heptane) in 2 mL of dry dichloromethane at 0 °C (ice-water bath) was added dropwise a solution of trifluoroacetic acid (10.0 eq, 0.299 mL, d 1.480) in 0.5 mL of dichloromethane. The resulting mixture was allowed to stir for 10 minutes after which a solution of diiodomethane (10.0 eq, 0.31 mL, d 3.325) in 0.5 mL of dichloromethane was added dropwise. The mixture was allowed to stir for 10 minutes followed by addition of a solution of 1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl)-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-5-prop-2-enyl-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester **10H** (180 mg; 0.389 mmol) in 1 mL of dry dichloromethane. The reaction was allowed to stir at 0 °C and monitored by TLC and MS analyses (NOTE: R_f of starting material and product is the same in different solvent systems). After 4 h the reaction was quenched by addition of aq saturated sodium bicarbonate (10 mL). The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (50 mL). The organic layer was washed with aq 1M HCl (10 mL), aq saturated sodium bicarbonate (10 mL), and brine (10 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified using silica gel chromatography (Biotage 12-S column, gradient: 0 to 20% ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide compound **10I** as a colorless oil. M.S. found for C₂₈H₂₆F₂N₂O₃: 477.26 (M+H)⁺.

Step 9:

166

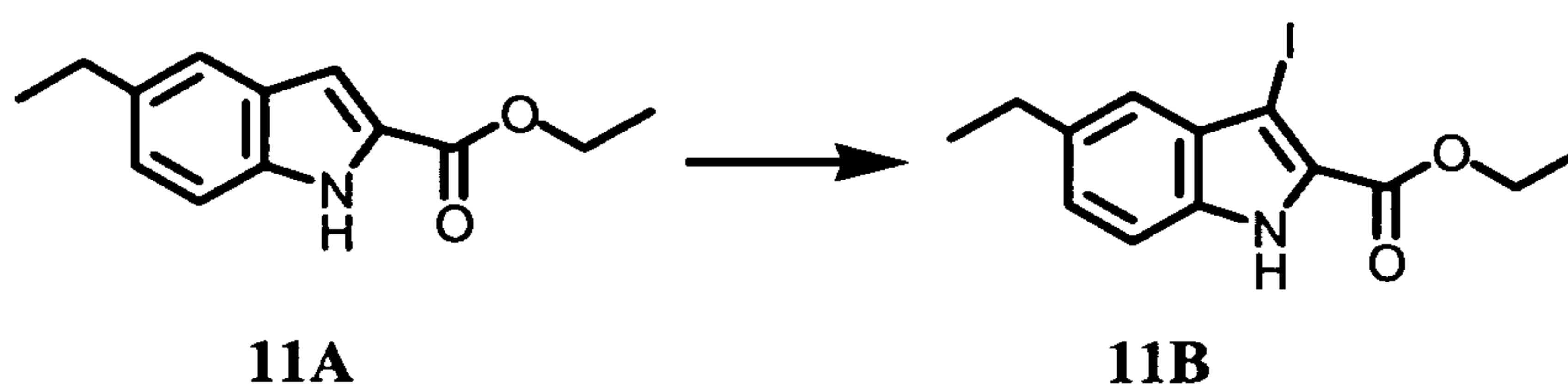


A solution of 1-(2,4-difluoro-benzyl)-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-5-(2-cis-methyl-cyclopropyl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester **10I** (230 mg; 0.482 mmol) in 10 mL of a 5:1:1 THF/water/methanol mixture was treated with lithium hydroxide monohydrate (5.0 eq, 101 mg). The mixture was heated to 50 °C for 5 hours. TLC (20% ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed complete consumption of the starting material. The mixture was diluted with aq 1M HCl (40 mL) and the product was taken into dichloromethane (3 x 25 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to provide compound **170** (205 mg; 95 % yield) as a white solid.

Example 11

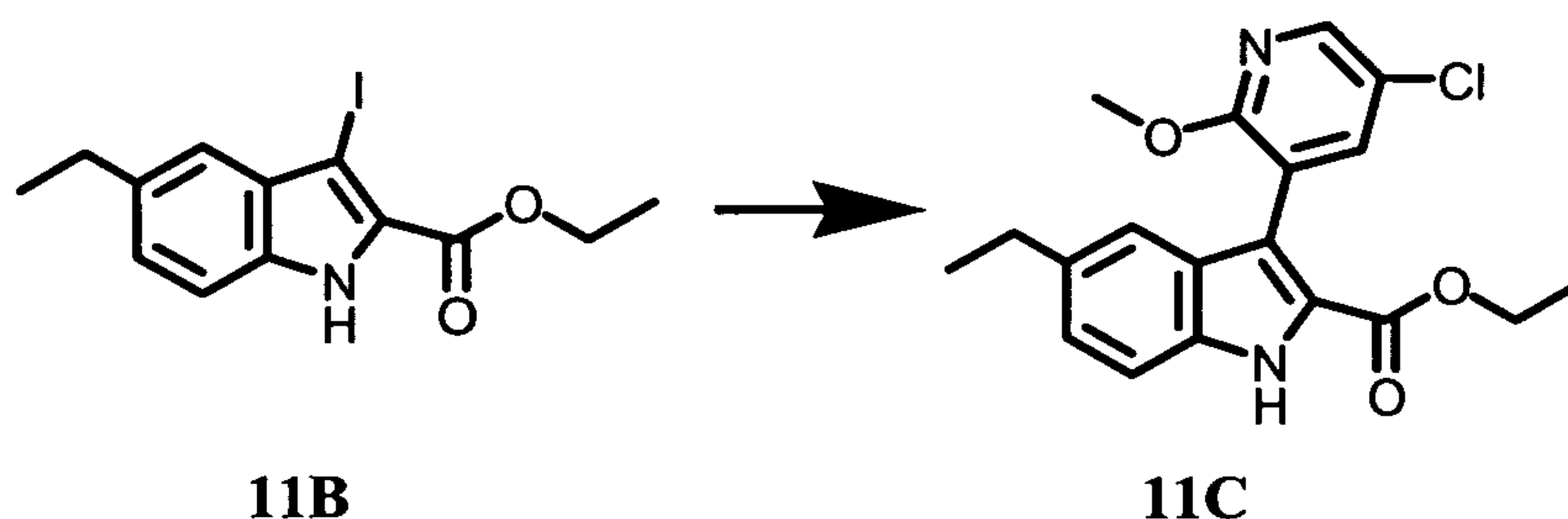
Preparation of Compound **169**

Step 1:



The starting materials **11A** (15.0 g, 69.04 mmol) and THF (100 mL) were added to a 1000 ml round-bottomed flask. The resulting solution was cooled with a water bath. To this stirring solution, NIS (15.30 g, 68.80 mmol) was added slowly. The resulting solution was allowed to stir at room temperature for 5 hours before 700 ml of water was added. The resulting mixture was continued to stir at room temperature for 30 minutes and then filtered. The cake was washed with water (2 X 40 mL), dried by air and then on house vacuum to provide compound **11B** as an off-white solid (23.0 g, 97%). MS found 344.2 for $C_{13}H_{14}INO_2 + H^+$.

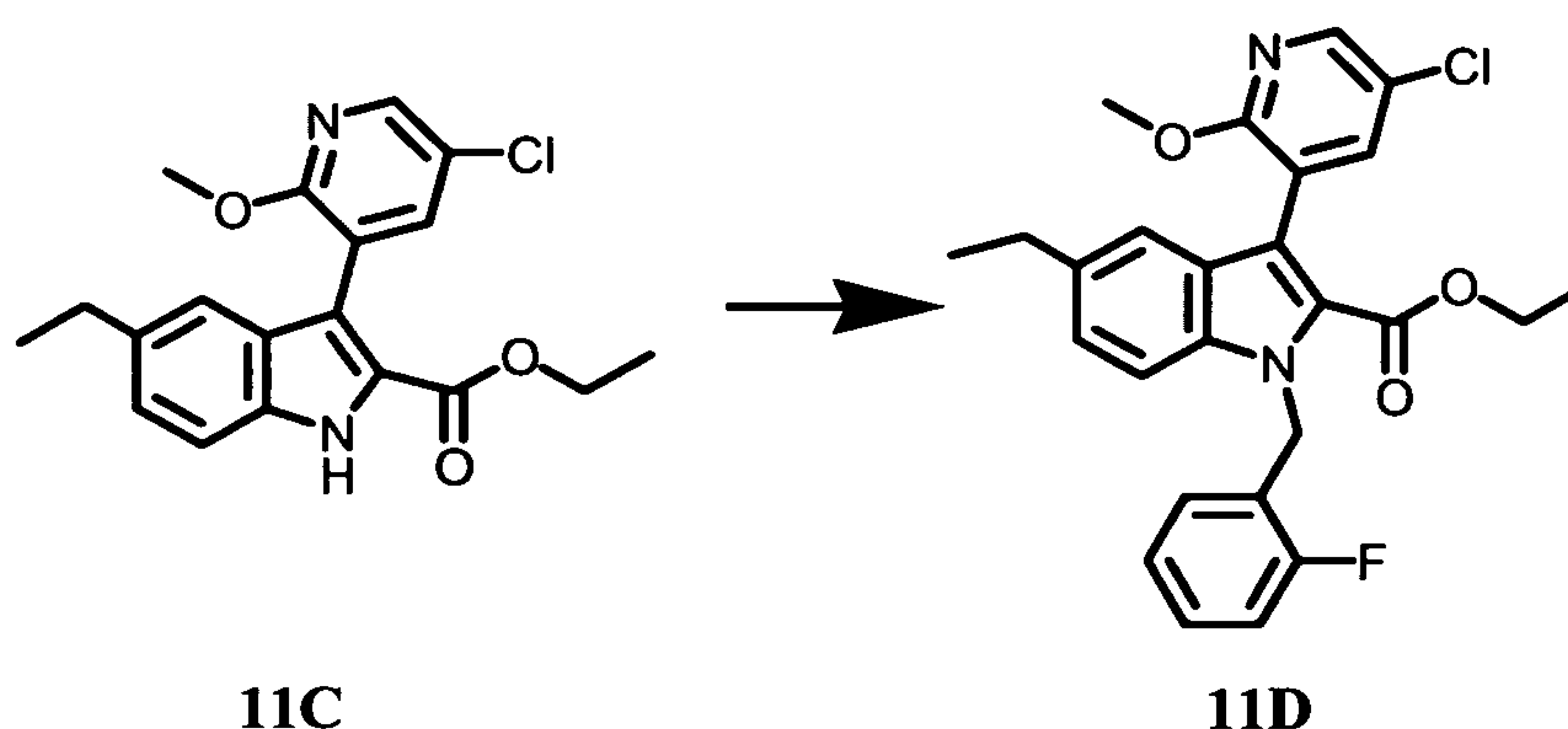
167

Step 2:

5 A 250 ml round-bottomed flask was charged with **11B** (3.60 g, 10.49 mmol), 5-chloro-2-methoxypyridine-3-boronic acid (2.0 g, 10.67 mmol), [1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium(II) complex with dichloromethane (1:1) (0.87 g, 1.06 mmol), and DME (50 mL). To the stirring solution, a solution of sodium carbonate (10 ml of 1.5 M, 15.0 mmol) was added via a syringe. The reaction mixture was

10 maintained at reflux for 6 hours before cooled to room temperature. After concentration, the resulting residue was taken up with ethyl acetate (200 mL), washed with water (100 mL), and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified using Combiflash chromatography on silica gel using 0-10 % ethyl acetate in hexanes as the solvent to provide the product **11C** as a white solid (2.4 g,

15 64%). M.S. found for $C_{19}H_{19}ClN_2O_3$: 359.2 (M+H)⁺.

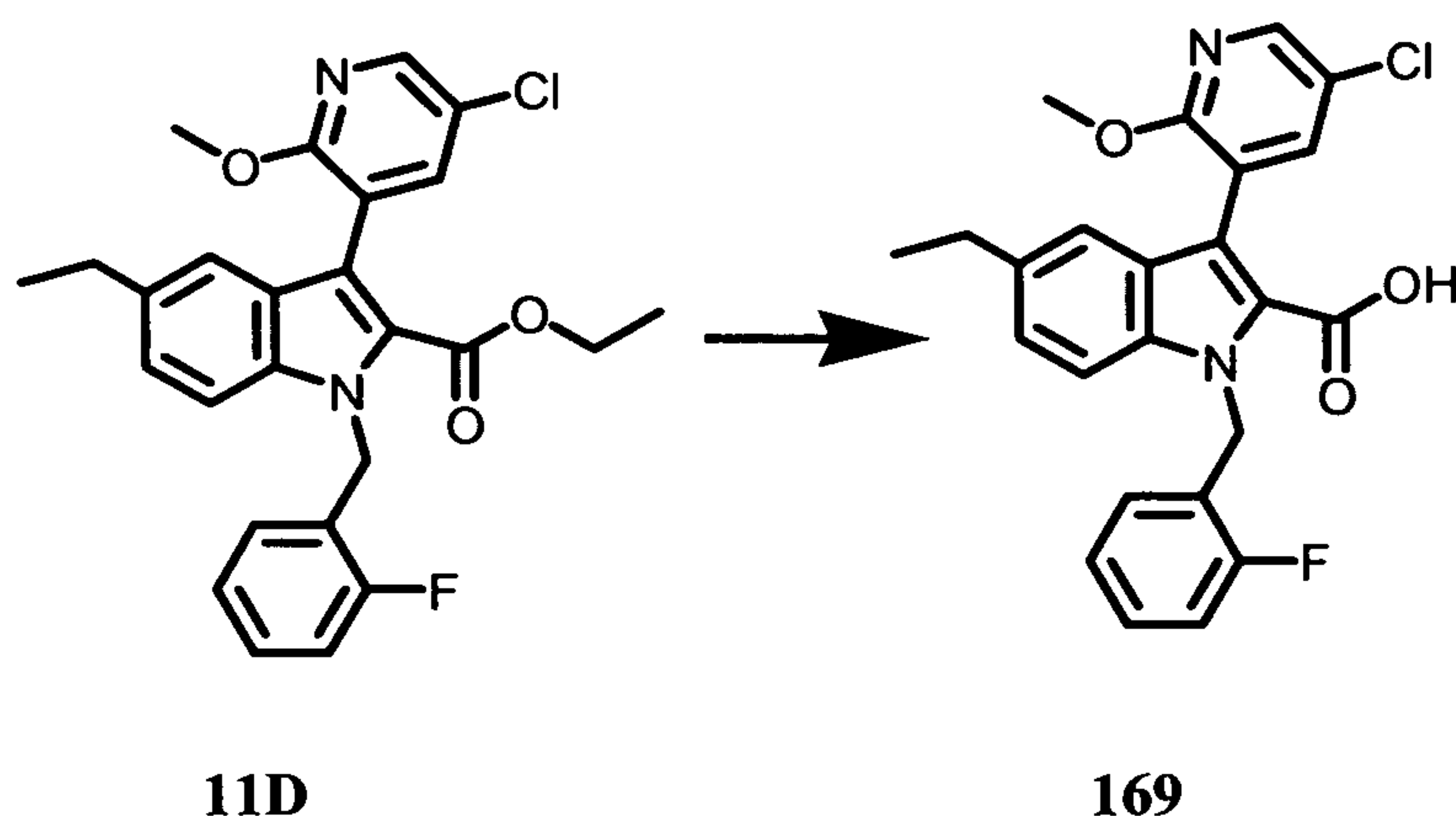
Step 3:

20

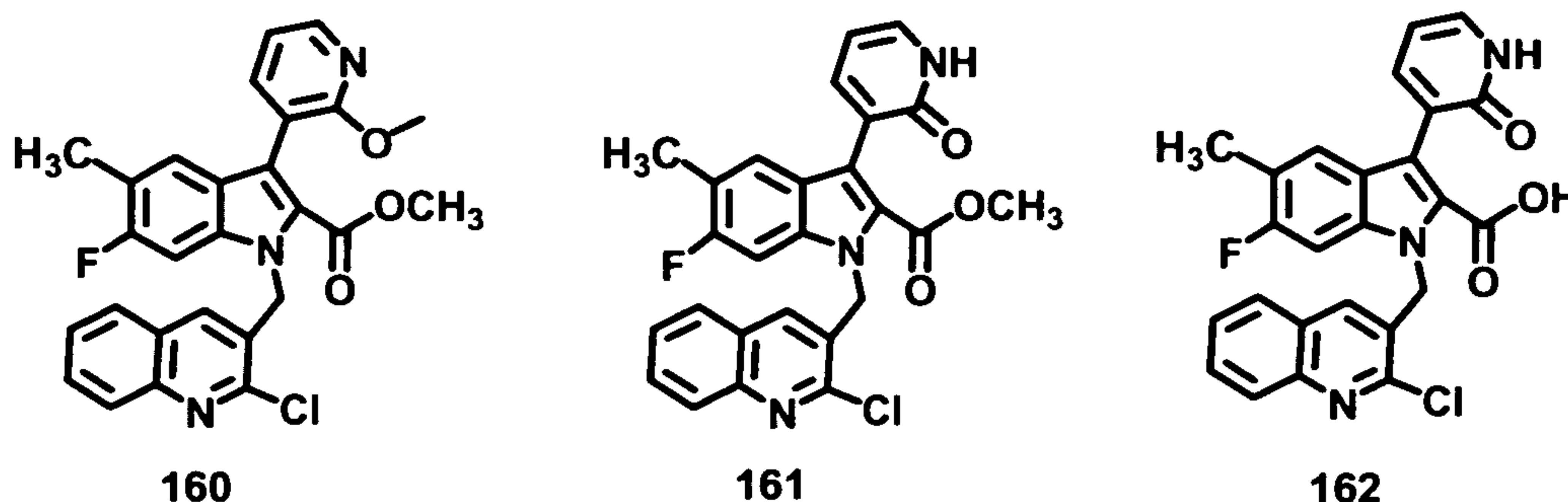
A suspension of **11C** (280 mg, 0.78 mmol), 2-fluorobenzylchloride (300 mg, 2.07 mmol), cesium carbonate (400 mg, 1.23 mmol) and DMF (3 mL) was allowed to stir at room temperature for 19 hours, diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), and washed with water (3X50 mL). The organic solution was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The resulting

168

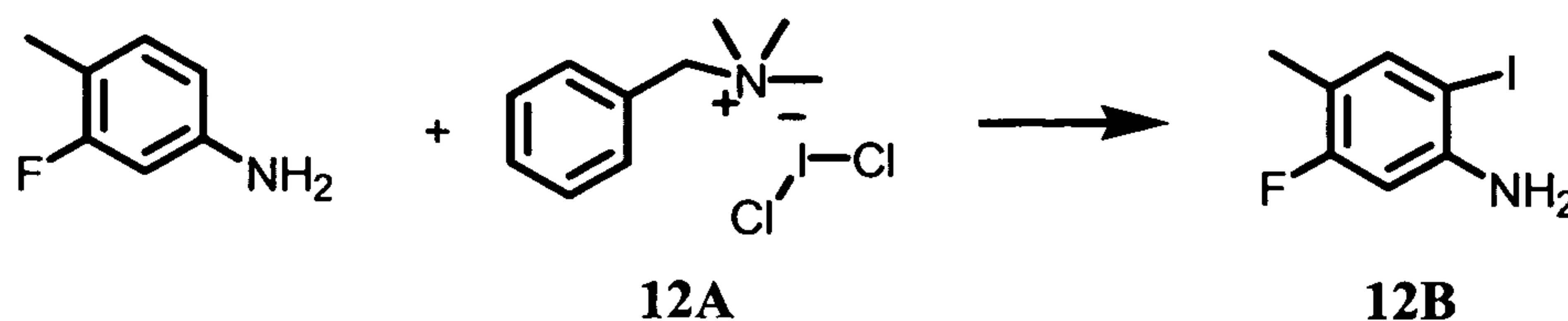
residue was purified using Combiflas chromatography on silica gel using 0-5% ethyl acetate in hexanes as the eluent to provide compound **11D** as a gel (318 mg, 87%).

Step 4:

To the stirring mixture of **11D** (318 mg, 0.68 mmol) in THF (10 mL) in a 100 mL round-bottomed flask was added with a solution of lithium hydroxide (2.0 mL of 1 M, 2.0 mmol). The resulting solution was maintained at reflux for 5 days before cooled to room temperature. After concentration *in vacuo*, the resulting residue was dissolved in methanol (5 mL), neutralized with 1.0 M HCl aqueous solution (2.0 mL, 2.0 mmol) and then concentrated again. The resulting residue was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 40 mL). The combined organic solutions were concentrated and dried on house vacuum to provide compound **169** as a white solid (280 mg, 94%). M.S. found for $C_{24}H_{20}ClFN_2O_3$: 439.2 (M+H)⁺.

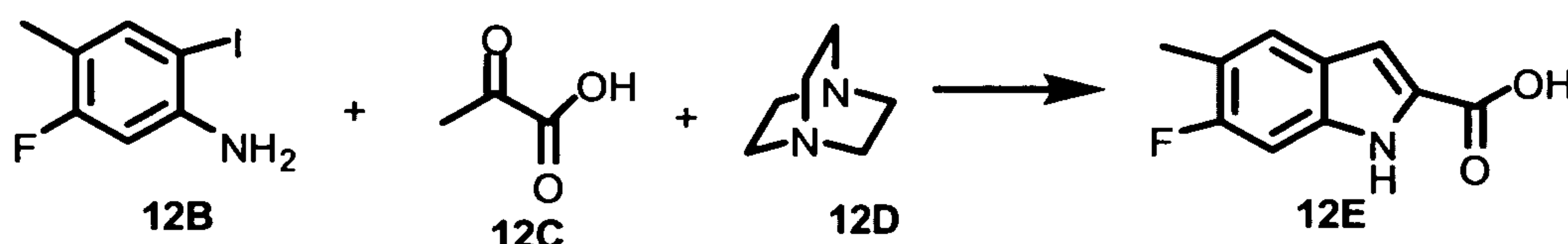
Example 12**Preparation of Compound 160, 161 and 162****Step 1 – Synthesis of Compound 12B**

169



3-Fluoro-4-methylaniline (94.5 g, 755 mmol), dichloromethane (3 L), and methanol (1 L) were charged into a 5000 ml three-necked flask equipped with mechanic stirrer. The resulting solution was cooled to 0 °C using an ice-water bath and to the cooled solution was added calcium carbonate powder (151 g, 1509 mmol) followed by iodate salt **12A** (275 g, 790 mmol). The resulting suspension was maintained at ~ 0 °C for 2 hours then the cool bath was removed and the reaction mixture warmed to room temperature while stirring for an additional 15 hours. The reaction mixture was then filtered and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (1 L), washed sequentially with water (500 mL), saturated sodium carbonate solution (500 mL) and water (500 mL), then dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting brown oil residue was dried under house vacuum to provide compound **12B** (179 g, 95% yield, >90% purity by NMR) which was used without further purification.

Step 2 – Synthesis of Compound 12E

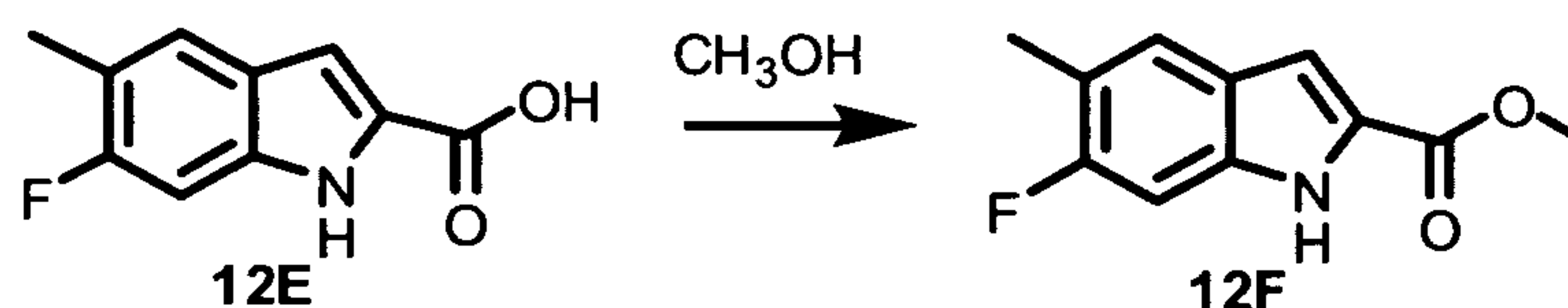


Compound **12B** (74.66 g, 279 mmol) and diamine compound **12D** (101.32 g, 903 mmol) were DMF (300 mL) were charged into a 1000 ml three-necked flask. The resulting solution was placed in a room temperature water bath and pyruvic acid (**12C**, 62.7 mL, 902 mmol) was added to the stirred solution. The resulting solution was degassed, then palladium diacetate (3.5 g, 15.6 mmol) was added and the resulting reaction mixture was degassed again, then heated to ~ 105 °C and allowed to stir at this temperature for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature, then was partitioned between ethyl acetate (1000 mL) and water (600 mL). The aqueous phase was set aside and the organic phase was

170

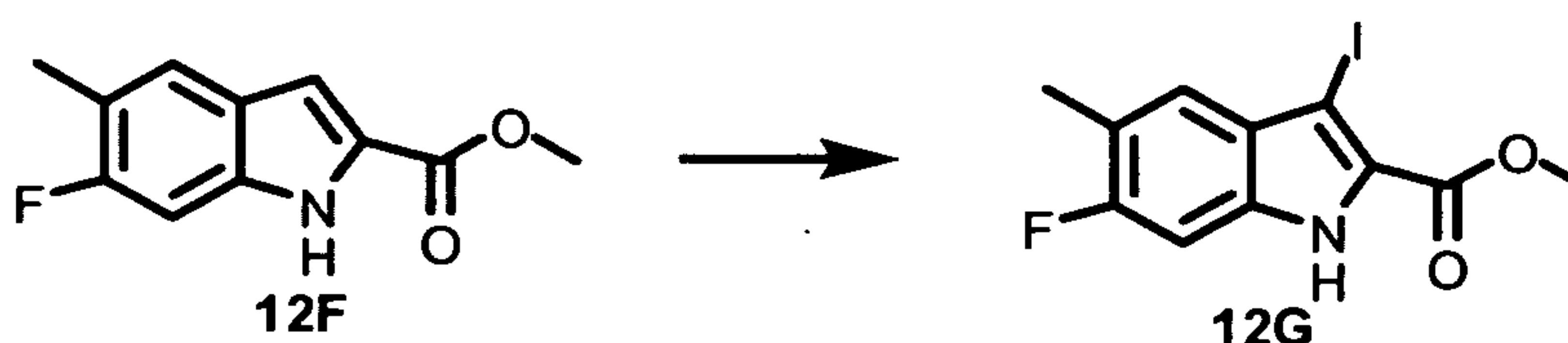
washed with brine (2 x 200 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide compound **12E** as a brown solid (28.2 g). The aqueous phase was acidified to pH = 3 using conc. HCl and the resulting acidic solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 300 mL). The combined organic
5 extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*, and the resulting residue was triturated using ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide an additional amount of compound **12E** as a brown solid (18.0 g). The combined crude yield was 80% (> 80% purity) .

10 *Step 3 – Synthesis of Compound 12F*



A solution of compound **12E** (26.52 g, 137 mmol) in methanol (400 mL) was placed in
15 a room temperature water bath. To the solution was slowly added thionyl chloride (30 mL) and the resulting reaction was allowed to stir maintained at room temperature for two days, then was concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (300 mL), washed sequentially with brine (200 mL), saturated sodium carbonate solution (100 mL) and water (200 mL), then dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The
20 resulting residue was dried under house vacuum to provide compound **12F** as a brown solid (18.6 g, 65%).

Step 4 – Synthesis of Compound 12G



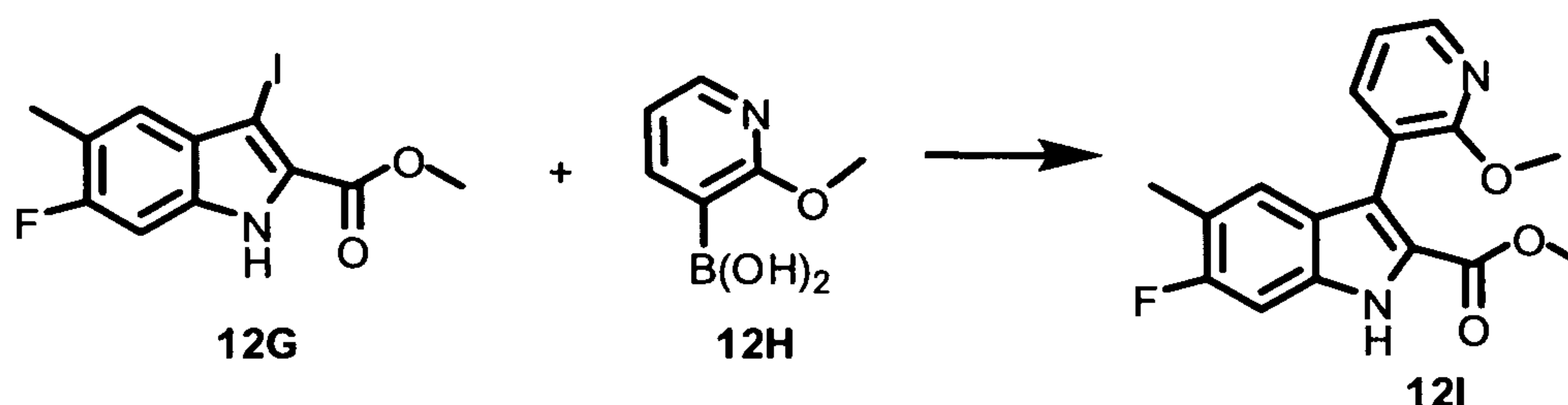
25 A solution of compound **12F** (35.0 g, 169 mmol) in THF (200 mL) was placed in a room temperature water bath. To the solution was slowly added N-iodosuccinimide (38.0 g, 169 mmol) and the resulting reaction was allowed to stir at room temperature for 3.5 hours.

171

Water (1500 mL) was then added to the reaction mixture and the resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 2 hours, then filtered. The collected solid was washed with water (2 x 200 mL) and dried under house vacuum to provide compound **12G** as a grey solid (51.5 g, 91%). MS = 334 (M + H).

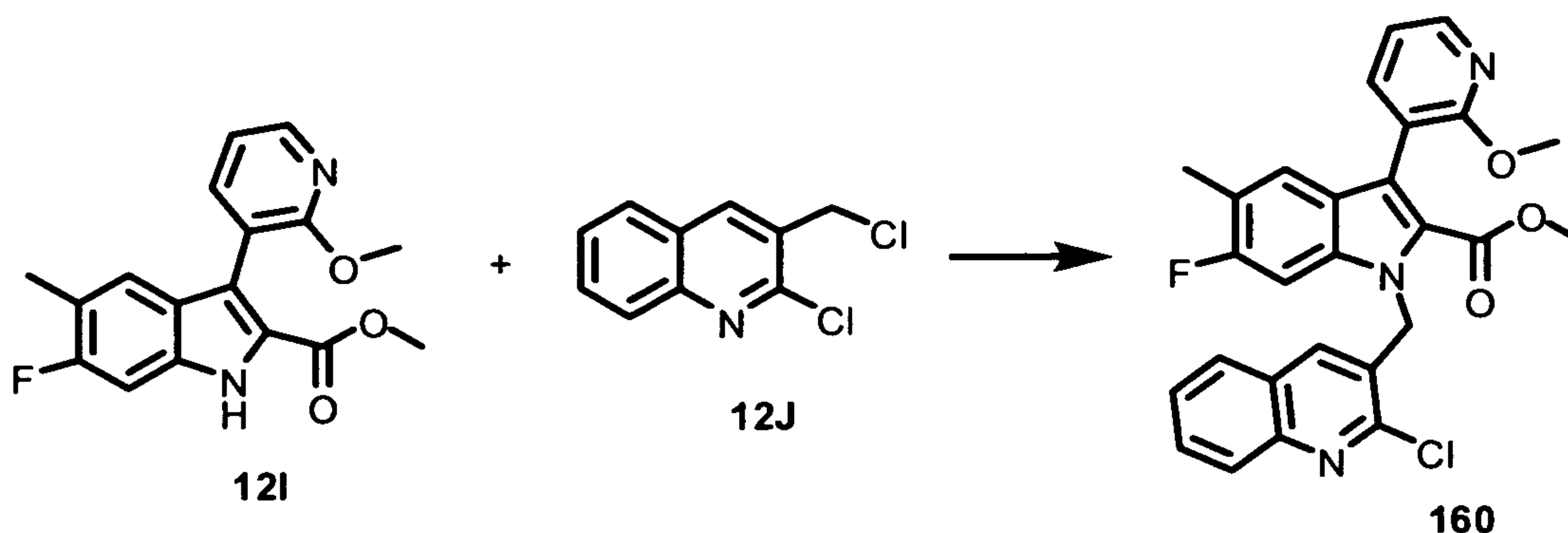
5

Step 5 – Synthesis of Compound 12I



A suspension of compound **12G** (25.0 g, 75 mmol), compound **12H** (16.0 g, 104.6 mmol), and [1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium (II) complex with dichloromethane (6.0 g, 7.34 mmol) in THF was heated to reflux and allowed to stir at this temperature for 4 hours. The reaction mixtures was then cooled to room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was diluted with ethyl acetate (500 mL) and the resulting solution was washed with water (2 X 200 mL). The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue obtained was crystallized from ethyl acetate to provide compound **12I** (14.76 g, 63%) as a light brown solid. MS = 315 (M + H).

Step 6 – Synthesis of Compound 160



A suspension of compound **12I** (3.0 g, 9.54 mmol), compound **12J** (Maybridge, 2.6 g, 12.26 mmol) and cesium carbonate (7.0 g, 21.58 mmol) in DMF was allowed to stir at room temperature for about 15 hours. Ethyl acetate (300 mL) was then added to the reaction mixture

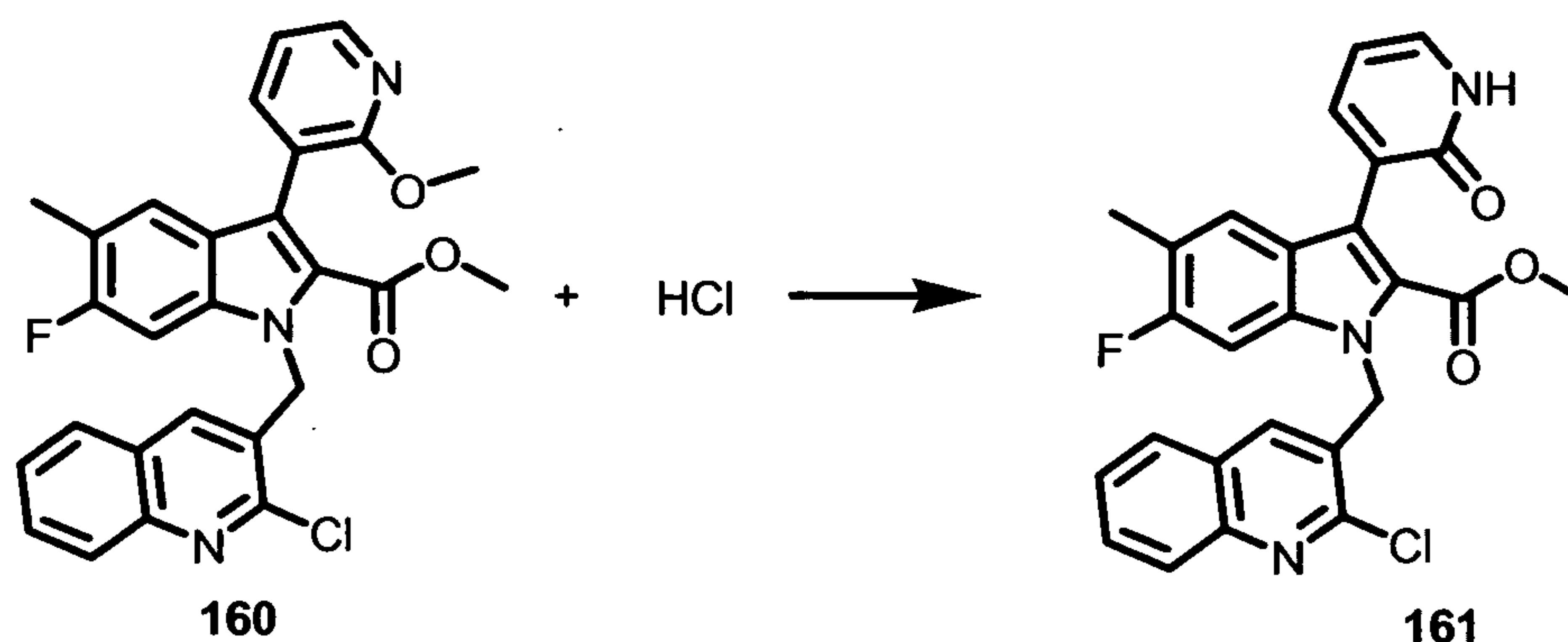
20

172

and the resulting solution was washed with water (3 X 200 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was purified using Combi-flash chromatography with 0-30% ethyl acetate in hexanes as the eluent to provide compound **160** as a white solid (3.6 g, 77%). MS = 490 (M + H).

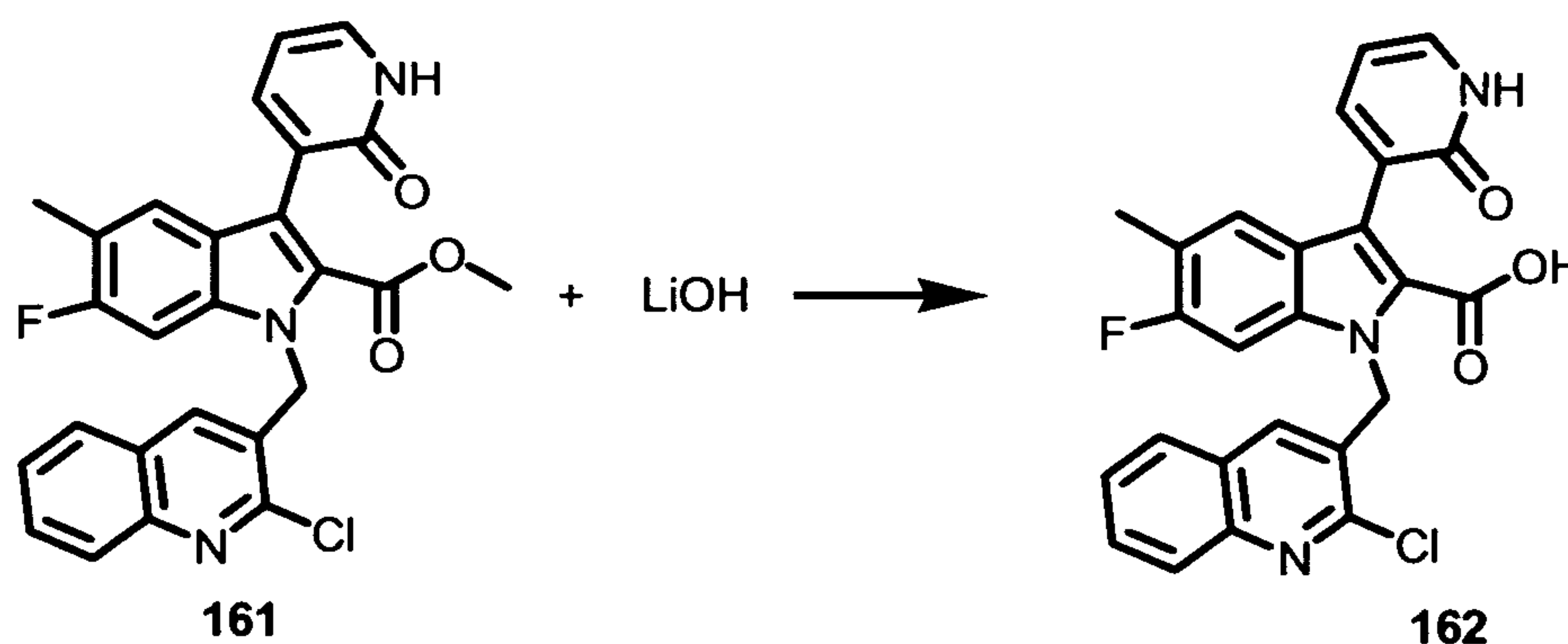
5

Step 7 – Synthesis of Compound 161



A 350 mL pressure vessel was charged with a solution of compound **160** (940 mg, 1.92 mmol) in HCl in dioxane (4.0 M, 50 mL, 200 mmol) and the resulting reaction was heated to 90 °C and allowed to stir at this temperature for 6 hours. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was crystallized from methanol to provide compound **161** as a white solid (510 mg, 56%). MS = 476 (M + H).

Step 8 – Synthesis of Compound 162



A solution of compound **161** (510 mg, 1.07 mmol), aqueous lithium hydroxide (4.0 mL, 1.0 M, 4.0 mmol), and THF (10 mL) was heated to reflux and allowed to stir at this temperature for about 15 hours. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature, and the resulting suspension was concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was diluted with

173

methanol (10 mL) and the resulting solution was neutralized using 1.0 M HCl (4.0 mL, 4.0 mmol), then concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting solid residue was washed sequentially with water (3 X 10 mL), methanol (20 mL) and ethyl acetate (30 mL), then vacuum dried to provide compound **162** as a white powder (450 mg, 91%). MS = 462 (M + H).

5

Step 9 - Preparation of the Sodium Salt of Compound 162

Compound **162** (1.055 g, 2.28 mmol) was diluted with methanol (150 mL), and to the resulting suspension was slowly added aqueous sodium hydroxide (0.5 M, 4.7 mL, 2.35 mmole) with stirring. The resulting reaction was allowed to stir for 10 minutes and was then concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the sodium salt of compound **162**. MS = 485 (M+Na)

10

Step 10 - Preparation of the Choline Salt of Compound 162

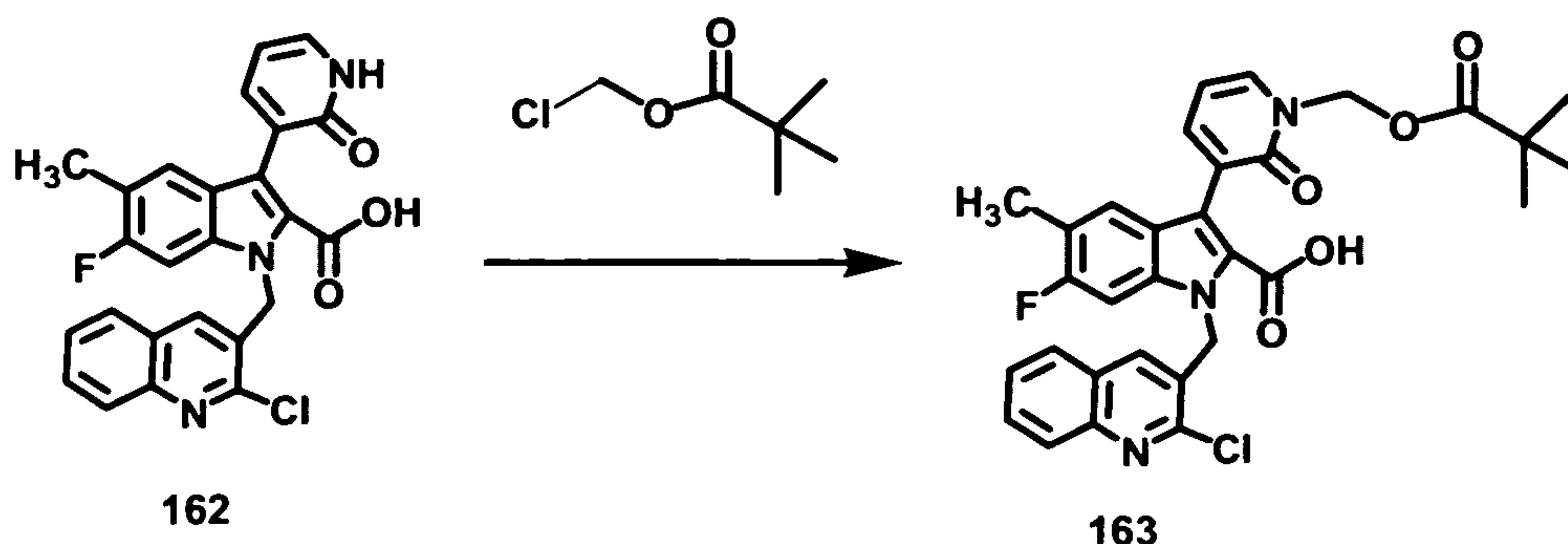
Compound **162** (0.5 g, 1.08 mmol) was dissolved in isopropanol (10 mL) and to the resulting solution was added choline hydroxide (20 wt % in water, 0.7 mL). The reaction mixture was heated slowly to about 65 °C, then water (0.5 mL) was added. The reaction mixture was then filtered hot and the collected solids were washed with isopropanol. The filtrate was allowed to cool to room temperature on its own over a one hour period (during which time most of the solvent evaporated), and was then cooled in an ice bath for about 2 hours. The resulting cooled solution was then filtered and the collected solid was dried overnight in a vacuum oven to provide the choline salt of compound **162** (0.53 g, 88% yield).

20

Example 13

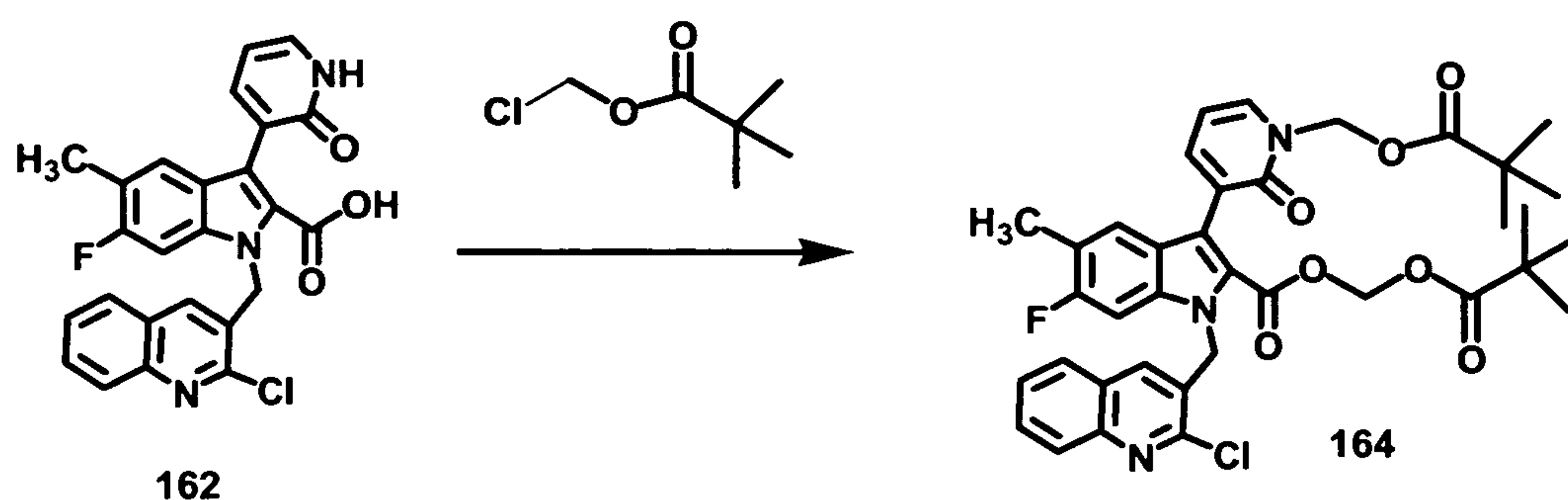
Preparation of Compound 163

25

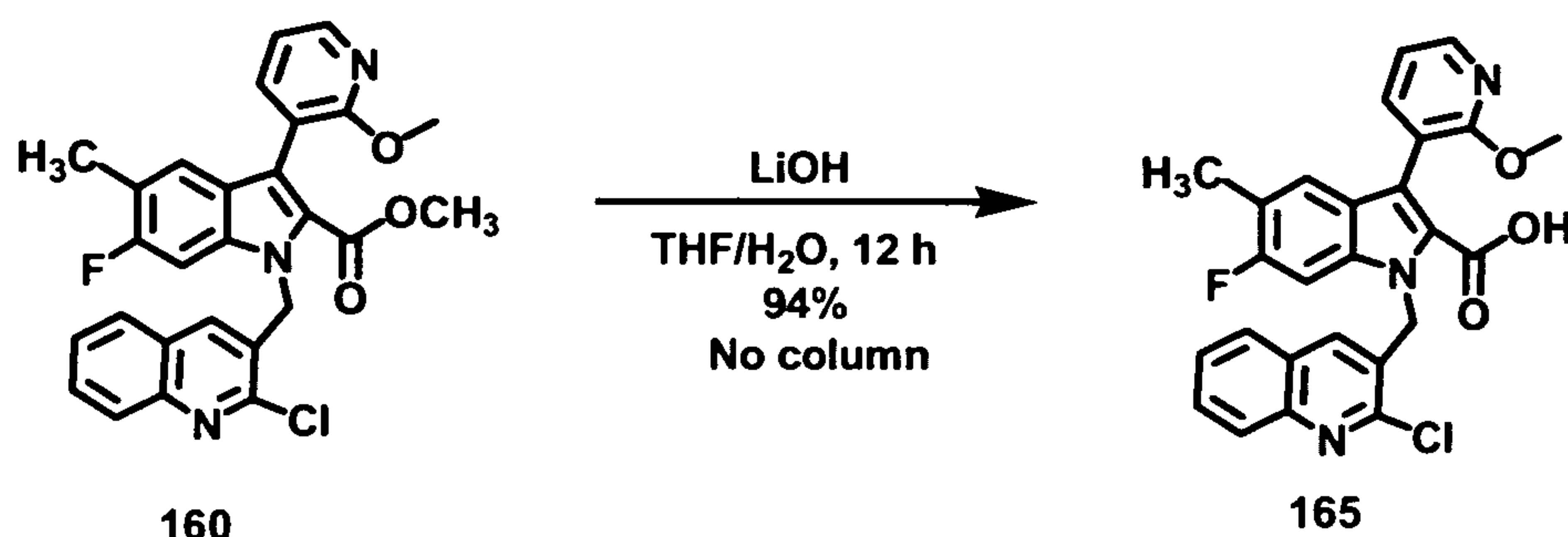


174

The mixture of compound **162** (100 mg, 0.217 mmol), chloromethyl pivalate (30 mg, 0.199 mmol), cesium carbonate (100 mg, 0.308 mmol), and DMF (3 mL) was allowed to stir at room temperature. After for 6 h ethyl acetate (100 mL) was added and the mixture was washed with water (3X40 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified using Combi-Flash chromatography using 0-5% methanol in dichloromethane as the eluent to afford compound **163** as a white gel (33 mg, 29%). MS = 576 (M + H).

Example 14Preparation of Compound **164**

The mixture of **162** (70 mg, 0.152 mmol), chloromethyl pivalate (70 mg, 0.465 mmol), cesium carbonate (150 mg, 0.462 mmol), and DMF (3 mL) was allowed to stir at room temperature for 6 hours. Ethyl acetate (100 mL) was then added and the mixture was washed with water (3X40 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified using Combi-Flash chromatography using 30% ethyl acetate in hexanes as the eluent to afford **164** as a white solid (26 mg, 25%). MS = 690 (M + H).

Example 15Preparation of Compound **165**

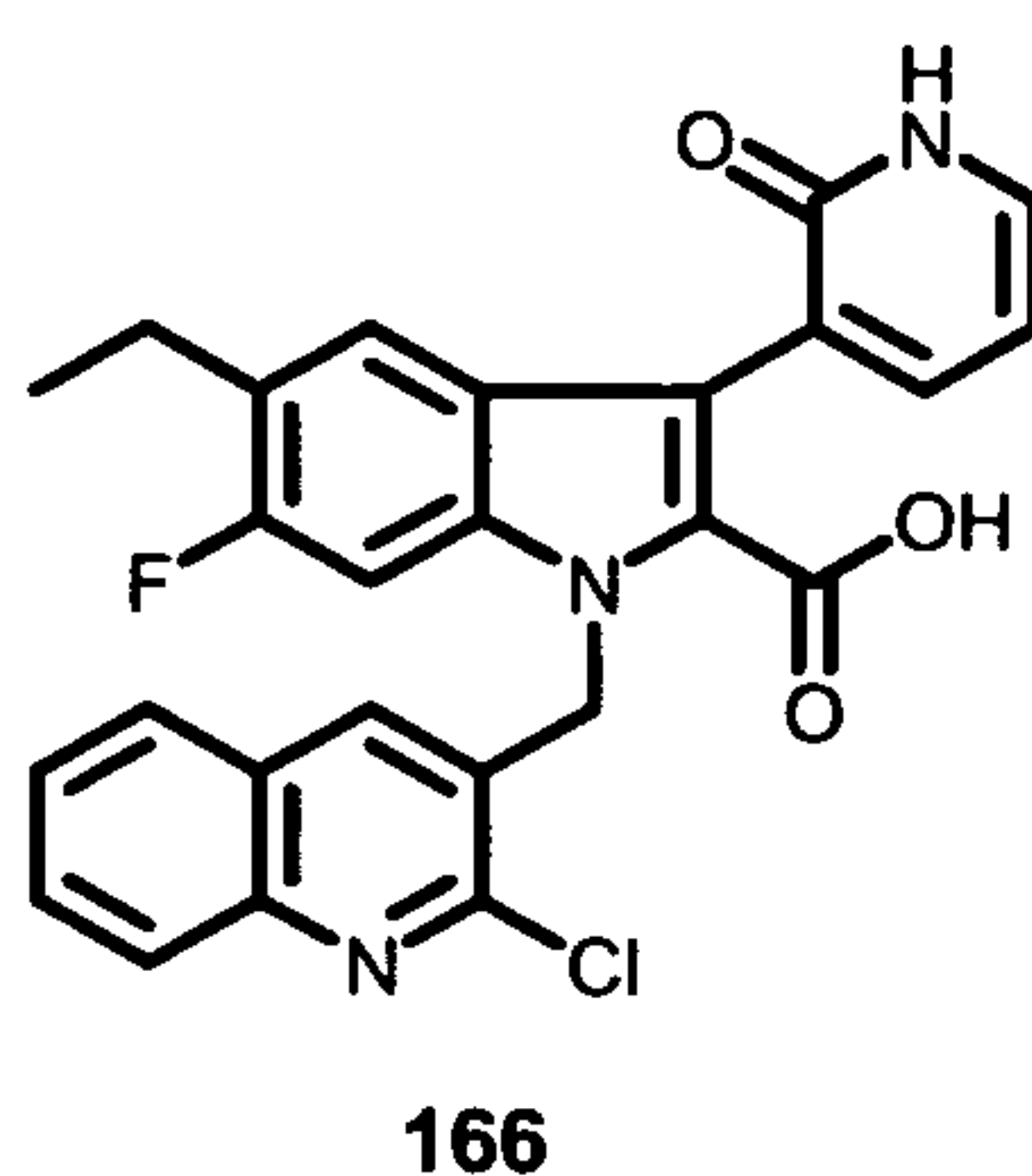
A mixture of **160** (275 mg, 0.56 mmol), aqueous lithium hydroxide (3.0 mL, 1.0 M, 3.0 mmol), and THF (4 mL) was refluxed overnight. After cooling to room temperature, the

175

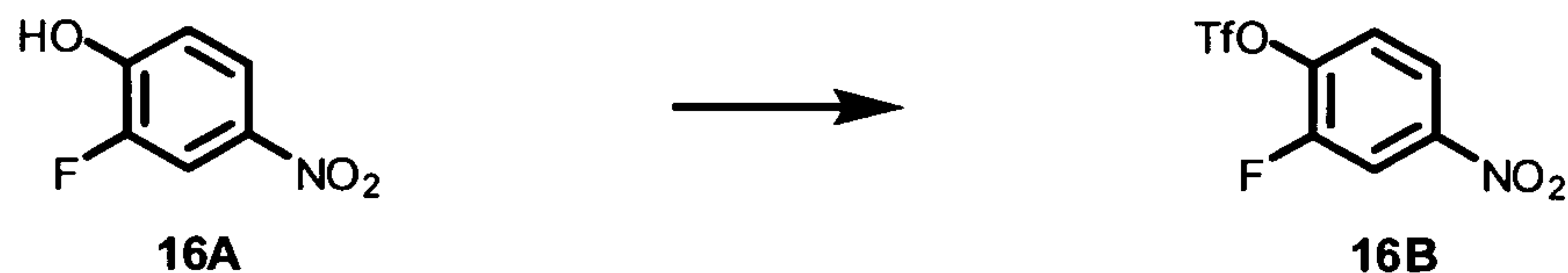
suspension was concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was mixed with methanol (5 mL), neutralized with 1.0 M HCl (3.0 mL, 3.0 mmol) and concentrated again. The resulting solid was extracted with ethyl acetate (3X40 mL). The combined organic solutions were concentrated and dried under vacuum to afford 165 as an orange solid (250 mg, 94%). MS = 476 (M + H).

Example 16

Preparation of Compound 166

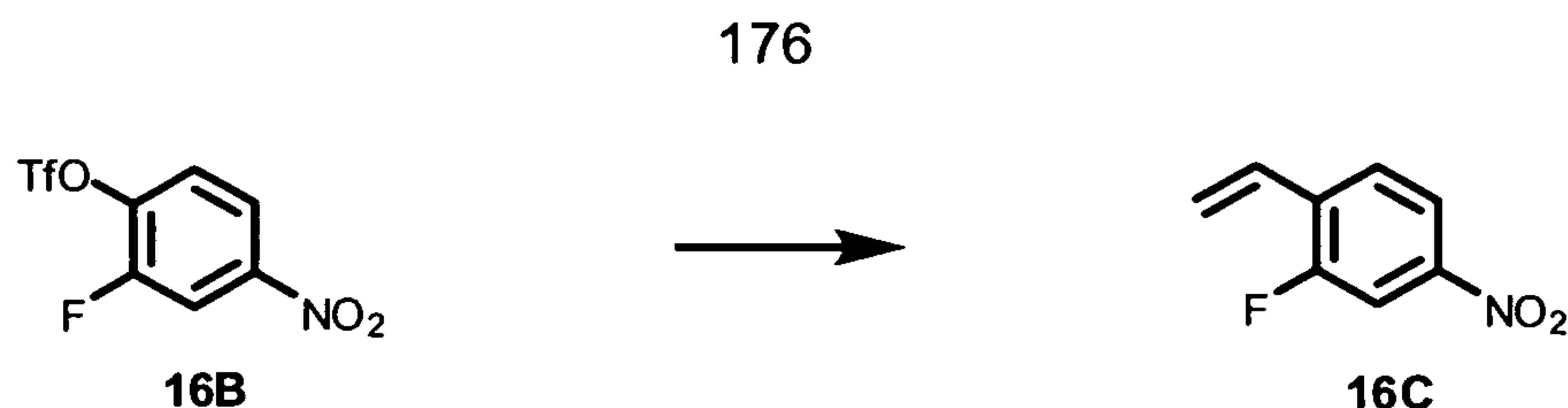


10 Step 1:



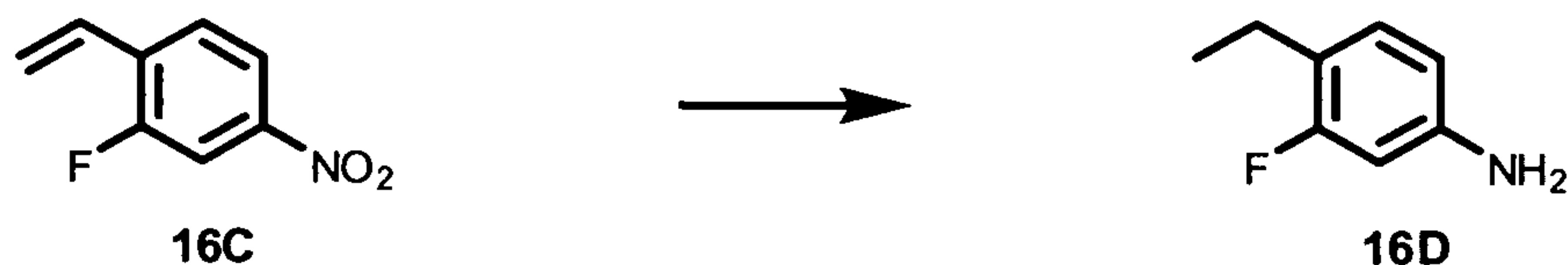
A solution of 2-fluoro-4-nitro-phenol (16A) (2.53 g; 16.1 mmol) in 60 mL of dry dichloromethane and 5 mL of dry THF was ice cooled and treated with pyridine (10 mL) and triflic anhydride (1.1 eq, 5.0 g, d 1.677). The mixture was allowed to stir for 10 minutes and treated with a catalytic amount of 4-dimethylamino pyridine (tip of spatula). The cooling bath was removed and the reaction was allowed to stir for 1 hour. TLC (10% ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed no more starting material left and the mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (300 mL) and washed with aq saturated sodium bicarbonate (80 mL) and brine (80 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was purified on silica gel (Biotage 40-M column; gradient: 0 to 10% ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide compound 16B (4.0 g; 87 %) as a colorless oil.

Step 2:



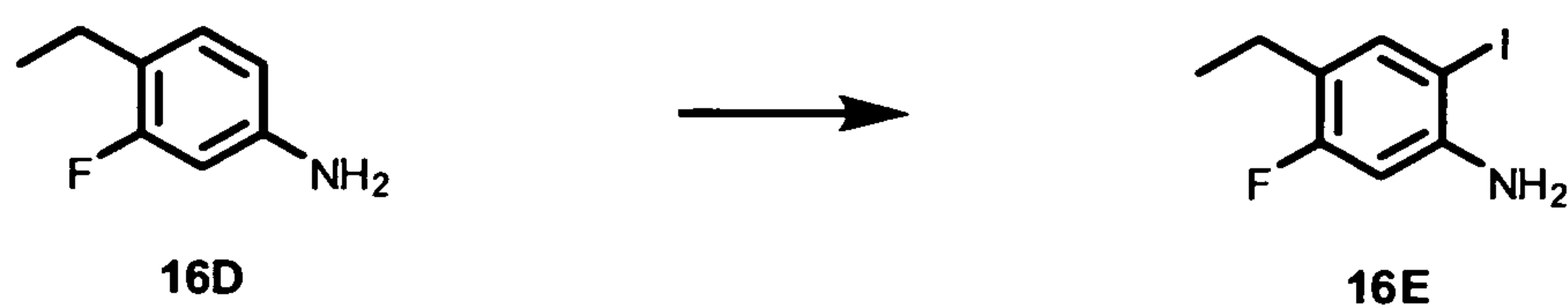
A solution of trifluoro-methanesulfonic acid 2-fluoro-4-nitro-phenyl ester (**16B**) (13.2 g; 45.64 mmol) in 225 mL of THF was treated with lithium chloride (7.0 eq, 13.5 g) and tributyl(vinyl)tin (2.0 eq, 26.6 mL, d 1.085). The mixture was degassed (vacuum/nitrogen flush) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium was added (10 mol%, 5.26 g). The reaction mixture was heated to 80 °C and stirred overnight. TLC (5% ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed complete consumption of starting material. The mixture was diluted with water (100 mL) and extracted with 1:1 ether/ethyl acetate (900 mL). The organic layer was washed with 10% aqueous ammonium hydroxide (100 mL), water (100 mL) and brine (100 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was adsorbed on silica gel and purified on a Biotage 40-S column (gradient: 0 to 4% ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide compound **16C** (7.6 g; 99 %) as a slightly yellow oil which contains some stannane impurities (ca. 1.4 g)

15 **Step 3:**



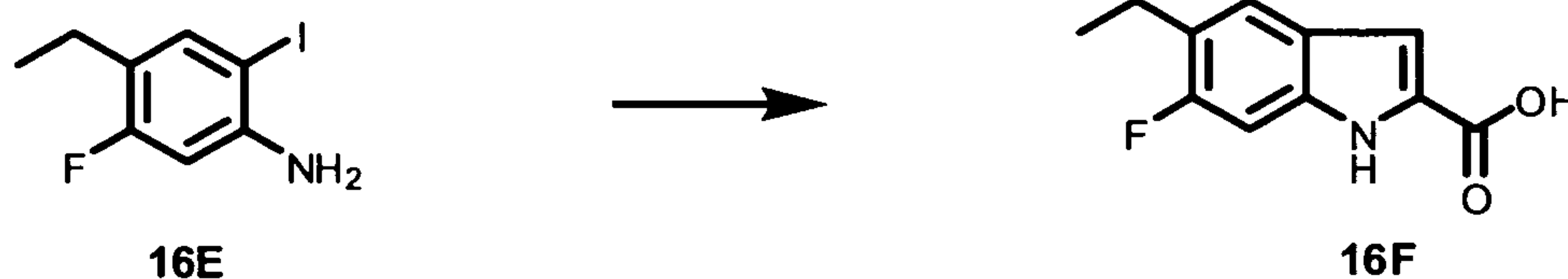
A solution of 2-fluoro-4-nitro-1-vinyl-benzene (**16C**) (42.65 mmol) in 140 mL of methanol was treated with a catalytic amount of 10% palladium on carbon (aprox 1.0 g). The mixture was hydrogenated at 35 psi for 2 hours. TLC (10% ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed complete consumption of starting material. The mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (100 mL) and filtered thru a short path of celite. The solids were washed with dichloromethane (100 mL). The filtrate, which contains the product **16D**, was used directly in the next step.

25 **Step 4:**

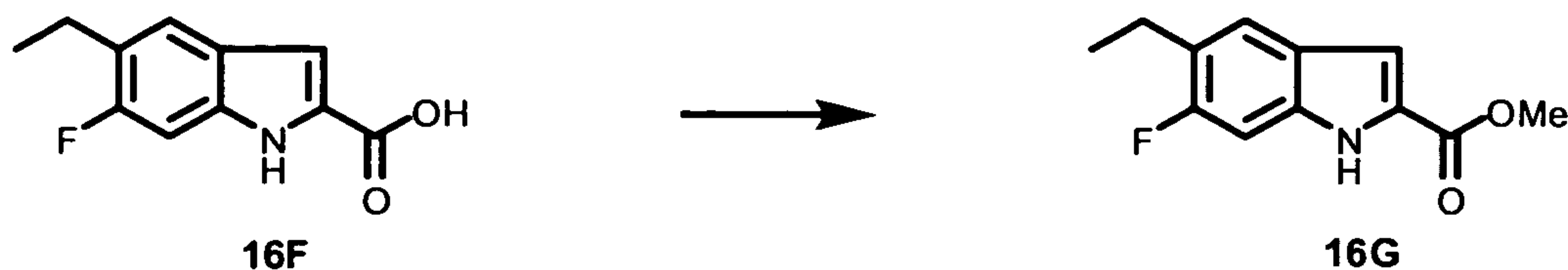


177

A solution of 4-ethyl-3-fluoro-phenylamine (**16D**) (the filtrate solution from previous step) was treated with benzyltrimethylammonium dichloroiodate (1.1 eq, 16.3 g) and calcium carbonate (2.0 eq, 8.53 g). The suspension was allowed to stir at room temp for 1 hour. TLC (10% ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed complete consumption of starting material. The solids were removed by filtration (whatman #1) and the filtrate was concentrated in rotavap. The resulting residue was partitioned between 800 mL of 1:1 ether/ethyl acetate and aqueous 5% sodium hydrogen sulfate (200 mL). The organic layer was washed with water (200 mL) and brine (200 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in rotavap. The resulting residue was adsorbed on silica gel and chromatographed on a Biotage 65-M column (gradient: 0 to 10% ether in hexanes) to provide compound **16E** (8.5 g; 76 %) as a yellow oil which contains some stannane impurities from a previous step.

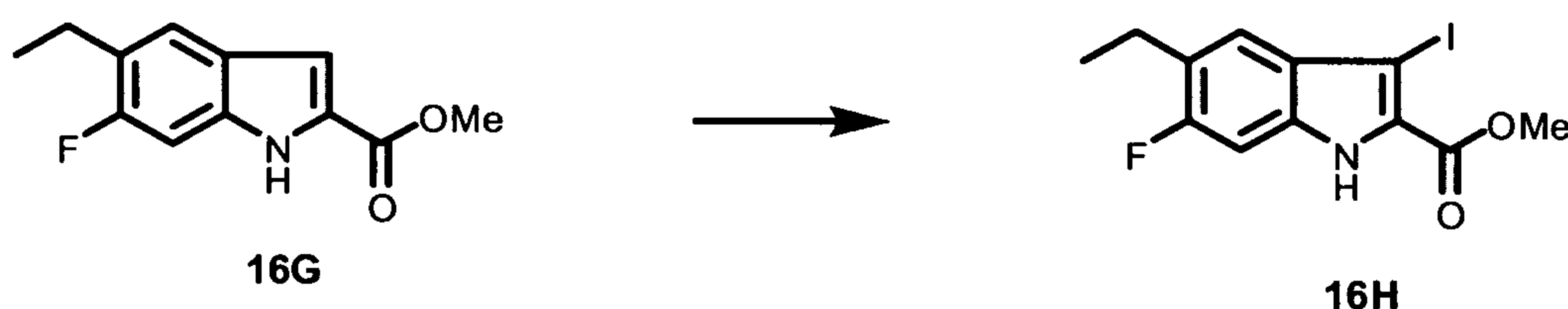
Step 5:

A solution of 4-ethyl-5-fluoro-2-iodo-phenylamine (**16E**) (7.29 g; 27.50 mmol) in 60 mL of dry DMF was treated with pyruvic acid (3.0 eq, 7.26 g, d 1.267) and DABCO (3.0 eq; 9.24 g). The mixture was degassed (vacuum/nitrogen flush) and palladium(II) acetate (0.05 eq, 308 mg) was added. The resulting solution was heated to 105 °C for 3 hours. The volatiles were removed in rotavap (high vacuum pump) and the resulting residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate (200 mL) and water (200 mL). The aqueous layer was back extracted with ethyl acetate (4 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in rotavap to provide the crude product **16F** as a dark brown oil. No further purification was carried out.

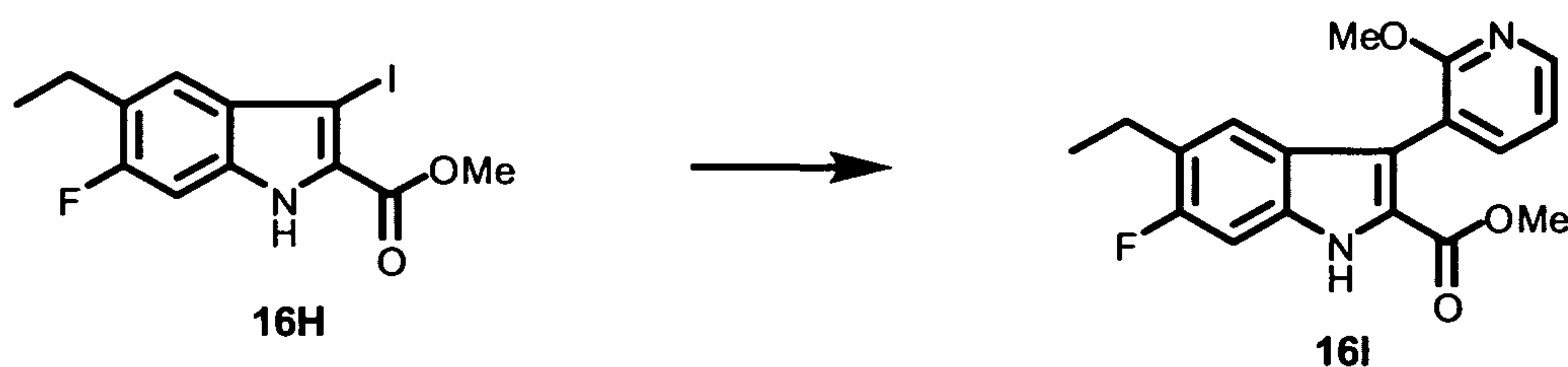
Step 6:

178

To an ice-cooled solution of 5-ethyl-6-fluoro-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid (**16F**) (27.5 mmol) in 300 mL of 2:1 toluene/methanol was slowly added a solution of TMS-diazomethane in ether (2.0 eq, 27.5 mL of 2.0M). After addition was completed the cooling bath was removed and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 1 hour. The mixture was concentrated in rotavap to provide the crude product as a brown solid. The mixture was adsorbed on silica gel and purified on a Biotage 65-M column (gradient: 10 to 50% dichloromethane in hexanes) to provide compound **16G** (3.0 g; 50 % for two steps) as a white solid.

Step 7:

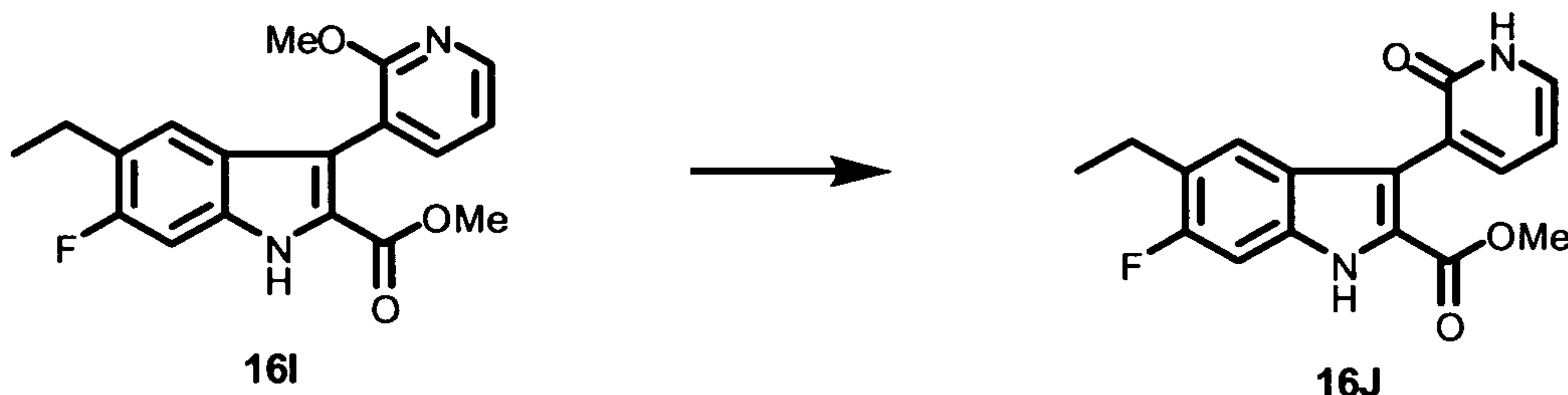
A solution of 5-ethyl-6-fluoro-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester (**16G**) (2.6 g; 11.75 mmol) in 60 mL of 1:1 THF-chloroform was ice-cooled and treated with N-iodosuccinimide (1.15 eq, 3.04 g). The cooling bath was removed and the mixture was allowed to stir for 2 hours. TLC (20% ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed almost complete consumption of starting material. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (300 mL) and washed with aq saturated sodium bicarbonate (2 x 60 mL) and brine (50 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product **16H** (4.0 g; 99 %) as a slightly yellow solid which was used without further purification.

Step 8:

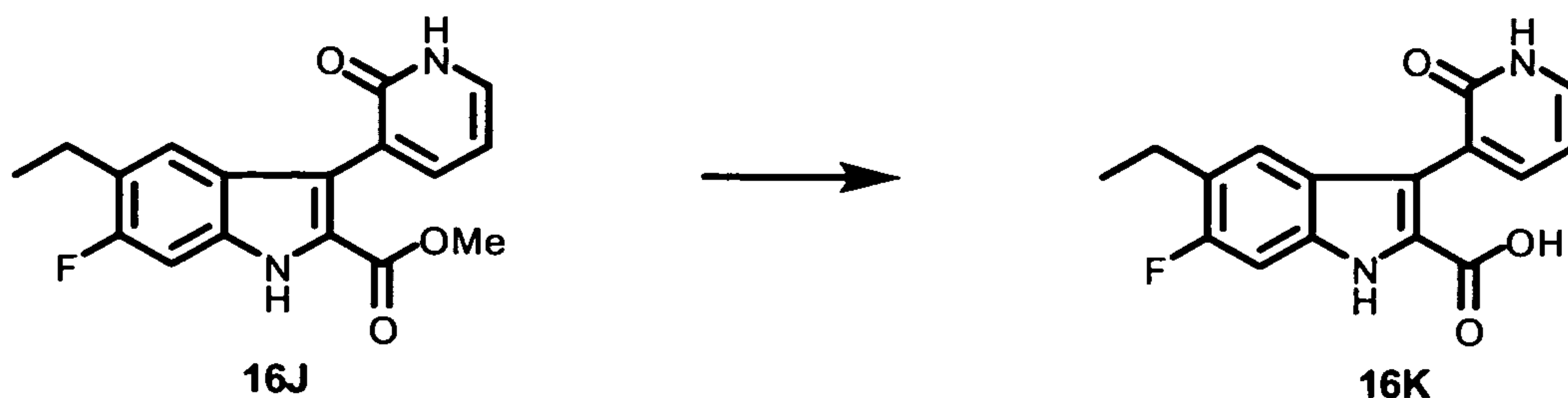
2-Methoxypyridine-3-boronic acid (1.5 eq, 2.69 g) was added to a solution of 5-ethyl-6-fluoro-3-iodo-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester (**16H**) (11.75 mmol) in 120 mL of 1,2-dimethoxyethane. The mixture was degassed (vacuum/argon flush) and palladium catalyst (10 mol%, 960 mg of PdCl₂(dppf)₂) was added and the resulting orange solution was allowed to stir for 10 minutes at room temp. A solution of potassium carbonate (4.0 eq, 23.5 mL of

179

aqueous 2M soln) was added and the resulting brown mixture was allowed to stir at 85 °C for 2 h at which point TLC (20% ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed almost complete consumption of starting material. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temp and diluted with ethyl acetate (300 mL), washed with aq saturated sodium bicarbonate (100 mL) and brine (100 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in rotavap. The crude product was adsorbed on silica gel and purified on a Biotage 65-M column (gradient: 0 to 15% ethyl acetate in 1:1 hexanes-dichloromethane) to provide compound **16I** (3.3 g; 86 %) as a white solid.

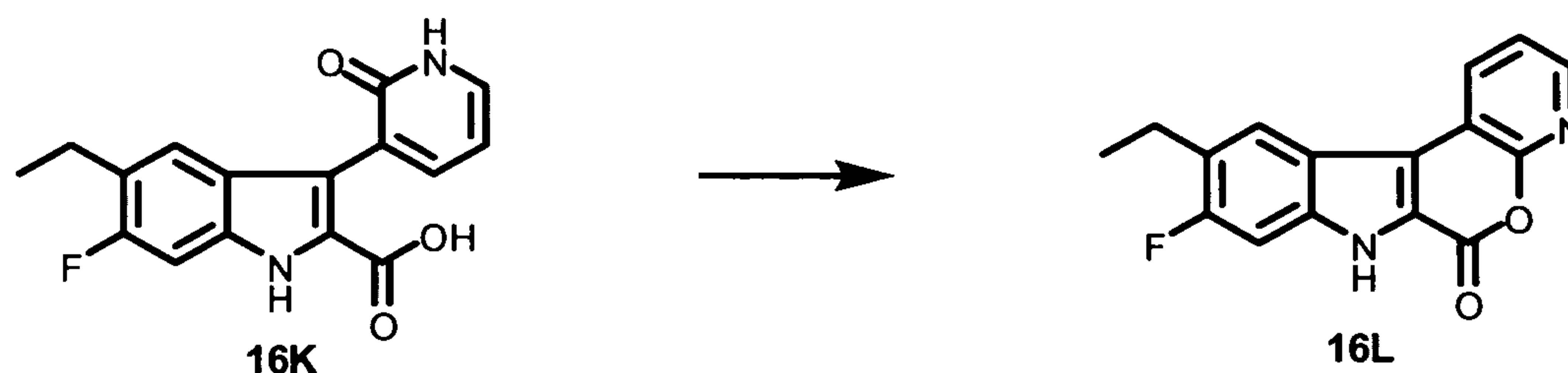
Step 9:

The 5-ethyl-6-fluoro-3-(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester (**16I**) (3.3 g; 10.05 mmol) was partially dissolved in 10 mL of methanol followed by addition of 40 mL of 4M HCl solution in dioxane. The resulting solution was heated in a sealed tube at 85 °C for 3 hours. TLC (40% acetone in 1:1 DCM-hexanes) showed approx 40% conversion. All the volatiles were removed *in vacuo* and the resulting residue was re-dissolved in 4M HCl soln in dioxane (40 mL). The mixture was heated in a sealed tube (90 °C) for 3 hours. TLC showed some starting material left. All the volatiles were again removed *in vacuo* and the resulting residue was adsorbed on silica gel. Purification on a Biotage 40-M column (gradient: 20 to 60% acetone in 1:1 DCM-hexanes) gave the product **16J** (2.0 g; 63 %) as a yellow solid.

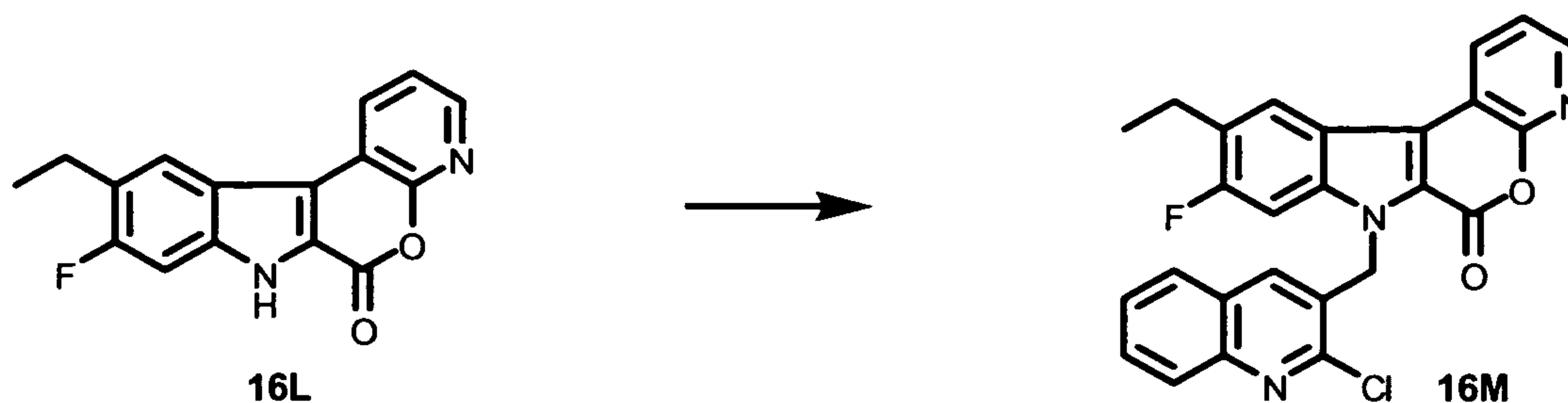
Step 10:

180

A solution of 5-ethyl-6-fluoro-3-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester (**16J**) (1.9 g; 6.04 mmol) in 100 mL of 6:1:1 THF/water/methanol was treated with lithium hydroxide monohydrate (2.5 eq, 634 mg). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 50 °C and monitored by TLC (50% acetone in 1:1 DCM-hexanes). All the starting material had been consumed after 3 h (the product precipitated in the reaction mixture). The mixture was treated with aqueous 1M HCl (100 mL) and the product **16K** (1.80 g; 99 %) was recovered by filtration (whatman #1) as a white solid.

Step 11:

The 5-ethyl-6-fluoro-3-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl)-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid (**16K**) (500 mg; 1.665 mmol) was suspended in dry DMF (40 mL) and treated with EDCI (2.0 eq, 638 mg) and triethylamine (10.0 eq, 2.33 mL, d 0.72). The mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The mixture was concentrated to dryness *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was treated with methanol (10 mL) to make a homogeneous suspension. The product was recovered by filtration (whatman #1) and washed with methanol (2 x 5 mL). The product **16L** (282 mg; 60 %) was thus obtained as a white solid.

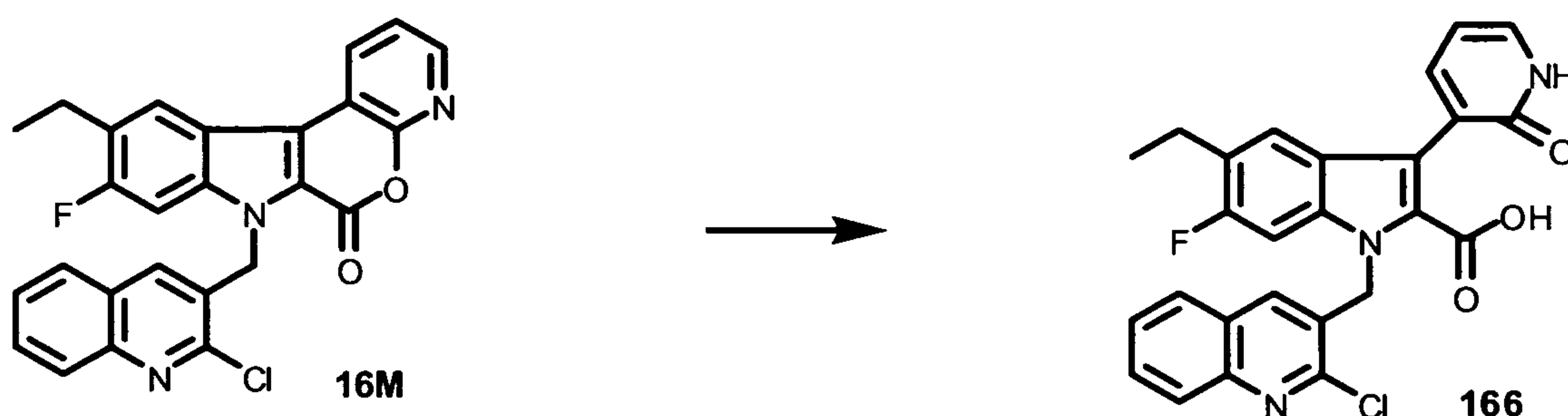
Step 12:

The lactone **16L** (40 mg, 0.141 mmol) was suspended in 2 mL of dry DMF and treated with 2-chloro-3-chloromethyl-quinoline (1.2 eq, 36 mg) and cesium carbonate (2.0 eq, 92 mg). A catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium iodide (tip of spatula) was added and the mixture was allowed to stir at room temp. TLC (30% ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed complete

181

consumption of starting material after 1 hour. The mixture was diluted with 50 mL of 4:1 DCM-THF and washed with water (10 mL). The organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product **16M** (65 mg, 99 %) which was used without further purification.

5 Step 13

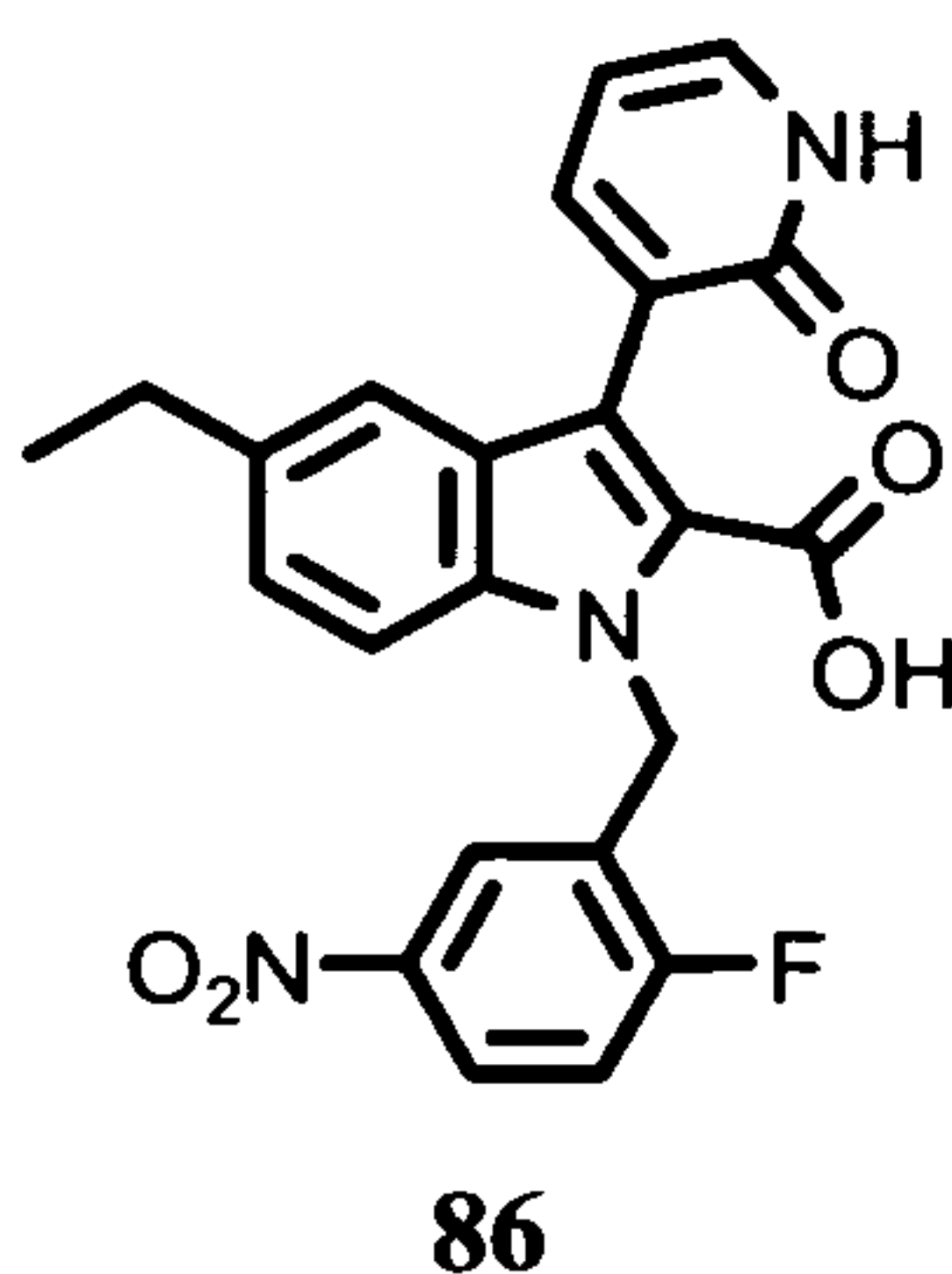


Lactone **16M** (100 mg) was dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (10 mL) and water (1 mL). Lithium hydroxide hydrate (10 mg) was added and the reaction mixture stirred for 12h.

10 The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness to afford the lithium salt of **166**.

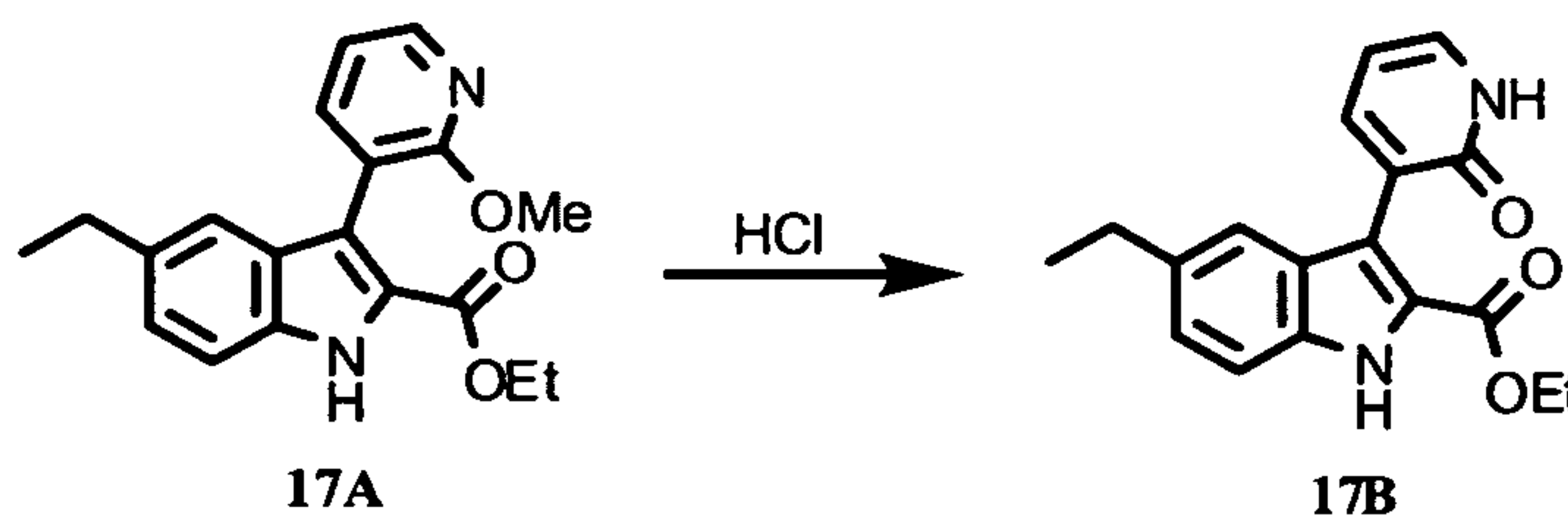
Example 17

Preparation of Compound **86**



15

Step 1:



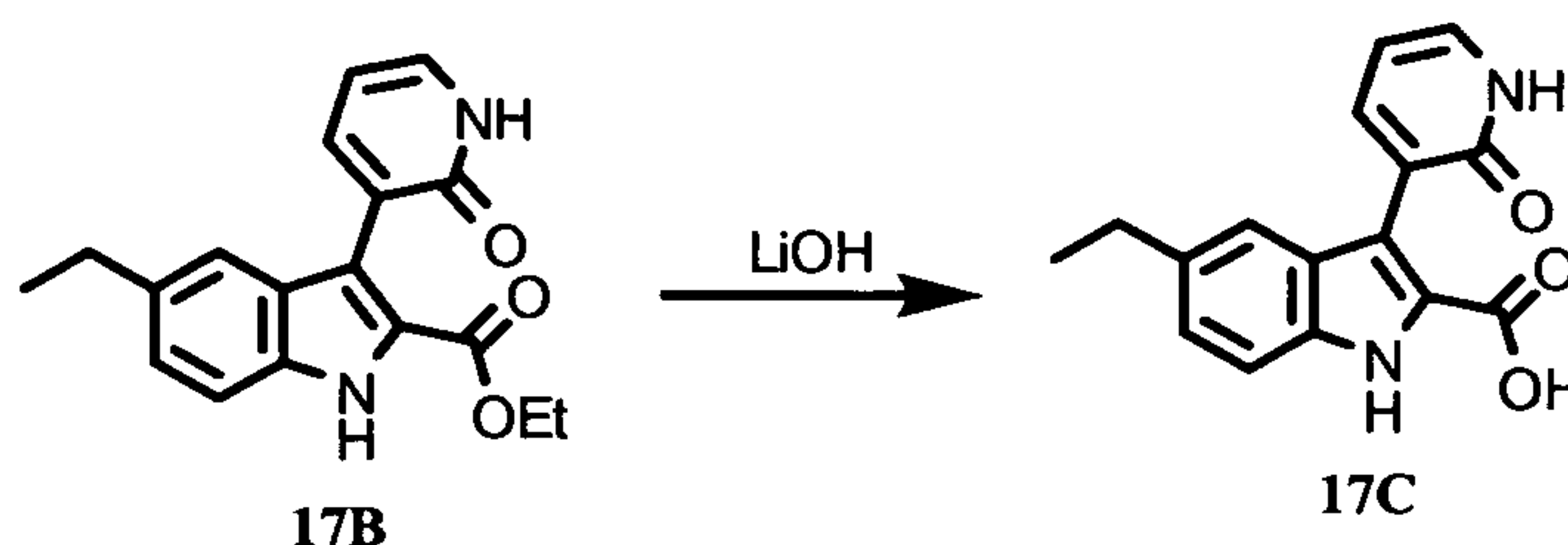
To compound **17A** (12.00 g, 24.7 mmol) in a thick-walled tube (ChemGlass) was added hydrogen chloride in *p*-dioxane (4 M, 150 mL). The tube was sealed with a Teflon stopcock and placed in a 90 °C oil bath for 3.5 hours. The reaction mixture was then cooled to

20

182

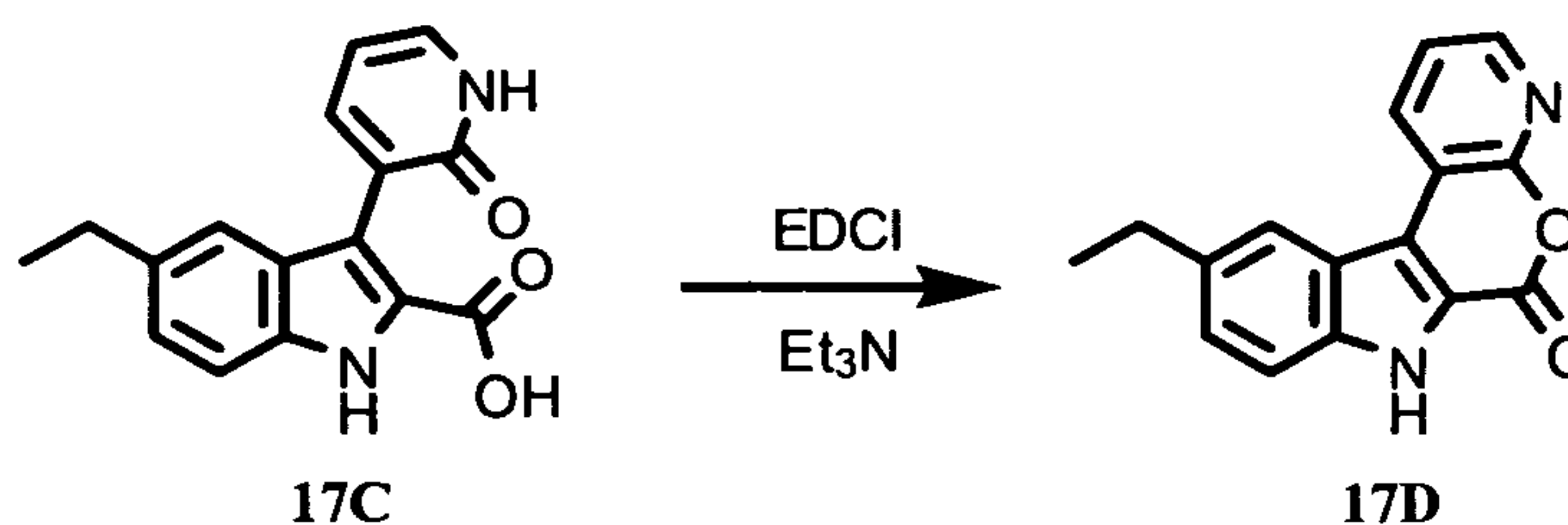
room temperature, transferred to a flask and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide compound **17B** (14.0 g, quant.), which was used without further purification. MS found for $C_{18}H_{18}N_2O_3$: 311.2 (M+H)⁺.

5 Step 2:



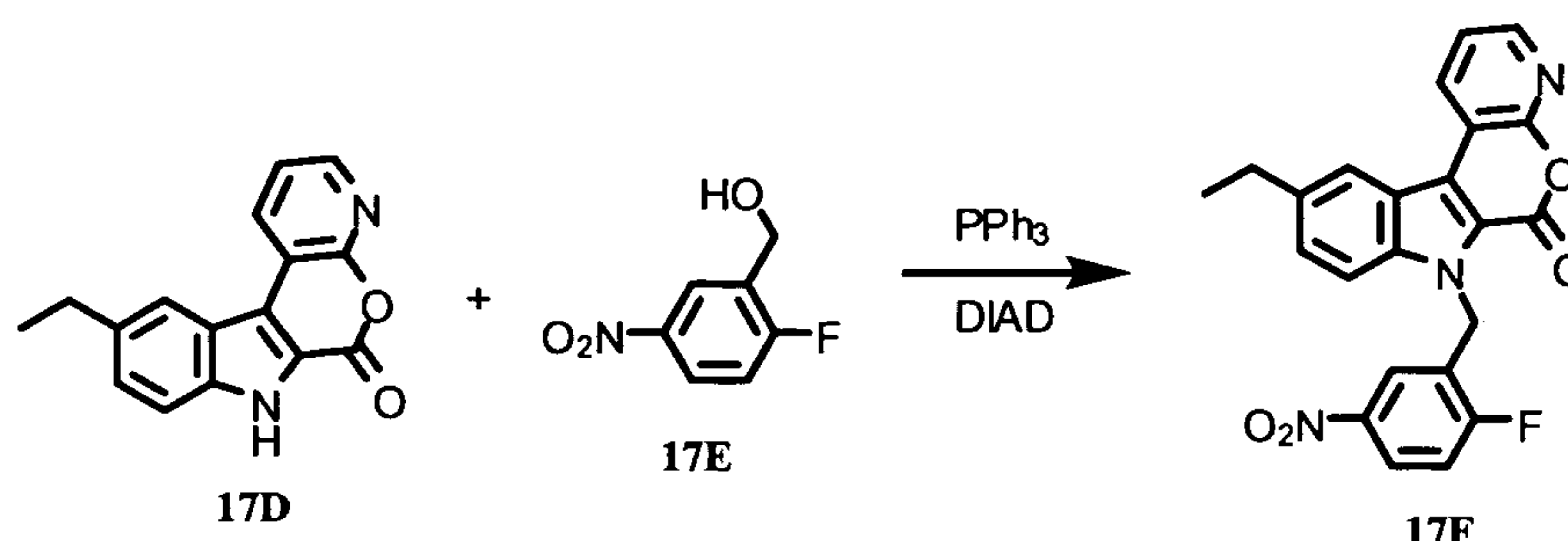
The crude product **17B** from Step 1 was dissolved in THF (200 mL) and to this solution was added an aqueous solution of lithium hydroxide (4.6 g, mmol in 200 mL water). The mixture was heated at 80 °C for 16 hours, cooled to room temperature, acidified to pH ~ 2 using 1 N aqueous HCl solution, and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 200 mL). The combined organic solution was washed with water (500 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product **17C** (11.1 g, quant.) was used without further purification. MS found for $C_{16}H_{14}N_2O_3$: 283.0 (M+H)⁺.

15 Step 3:

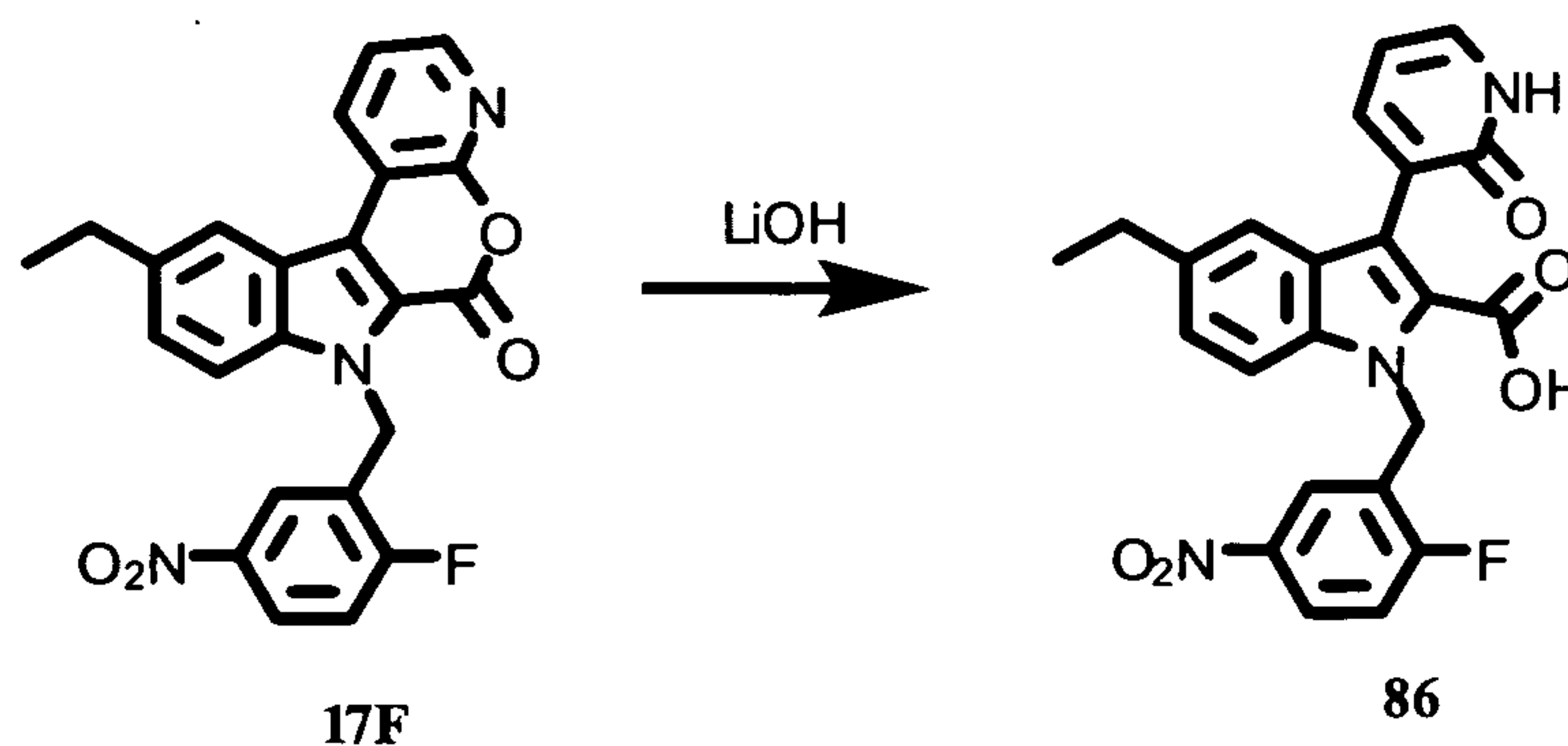


To a solution of **17C** (6.94 g, 24.6 mmol) in DMF (300 mL) at room temperature was added 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (EDCI) (10.0 g, 52.2 mmol) and Et₃N (10.5 mL, 75.4 mmol) and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 16 hours. The mixture was then diluted with ethyl acetate (600 mL) and was washed with water (600 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 500 mL). The combined organic solution was washed with water (2 x 1.5 L), dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated *in vacuo* to yield the crude product **17D** (6.10 g, 94 %). MS found for $C_{16}H_{12}N_2O_2$: 265.0 (M+H)⁺.

183

Step 4:

To a solution of compound **17D** (600 mg, 2.27 mmol), triphenylphosphine (1.19 g, 4.54 mmol) and 2-fluoro-5-nitrobenzyl alcohol (**17E**) in anhydrous THF (50 mL) at room temperature was added diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (DIAD) (0.88 mL, 4.54 mmol) and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 4 hours. The mixture was then concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using flash chromatography to provide compound **17F** (1.61 g, quant.), which contained some triphenylphosphine oxide. MS found for $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{16}\text{FN}_3\text{O}_4$: 418.0 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺.

Step 5:

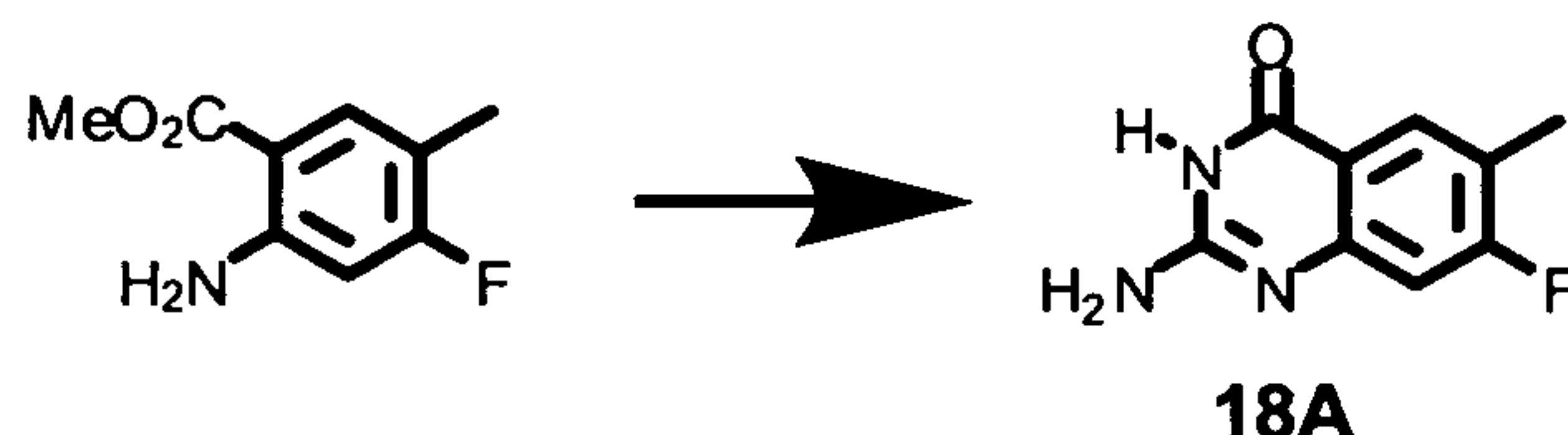
Compound **17F** (400 mg, 0.958 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) at room temperature and to this solution was added an aqueous solution of lithium hydroxide (50 mg, 1.19 mmol in 50 mL water). After stirred for 4 hours, the mixture was acidified to pH ~ 2 using 1 N aqueous HCl solution, and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 60 mL). The combined organic solution was washed with water (100 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using reverse-phase HPLC on a Waters Sunfire C₁₈ (10 μM, 50 x 250 mm) using 20-100 % acetonitrile/water as eluent to provide compound **86** (190 mg, 46 %). MS found for $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{18}\text{FN}_3\text{O}_5$: 436.0 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺.

Example 18

184

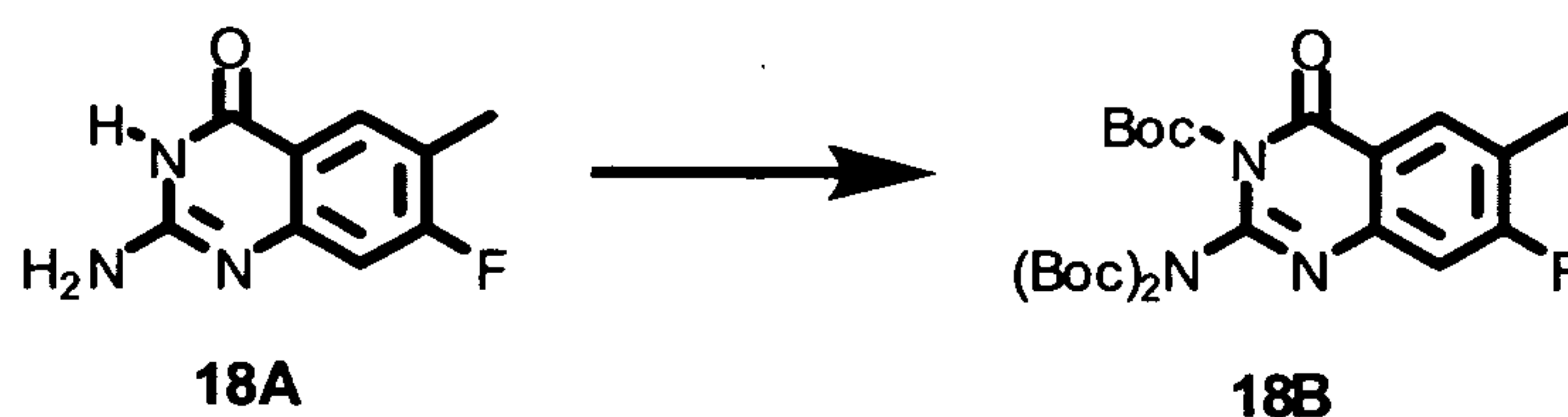
Preparation of Intermediate Compound 18C

Step A – Synthesis of Compound 18A



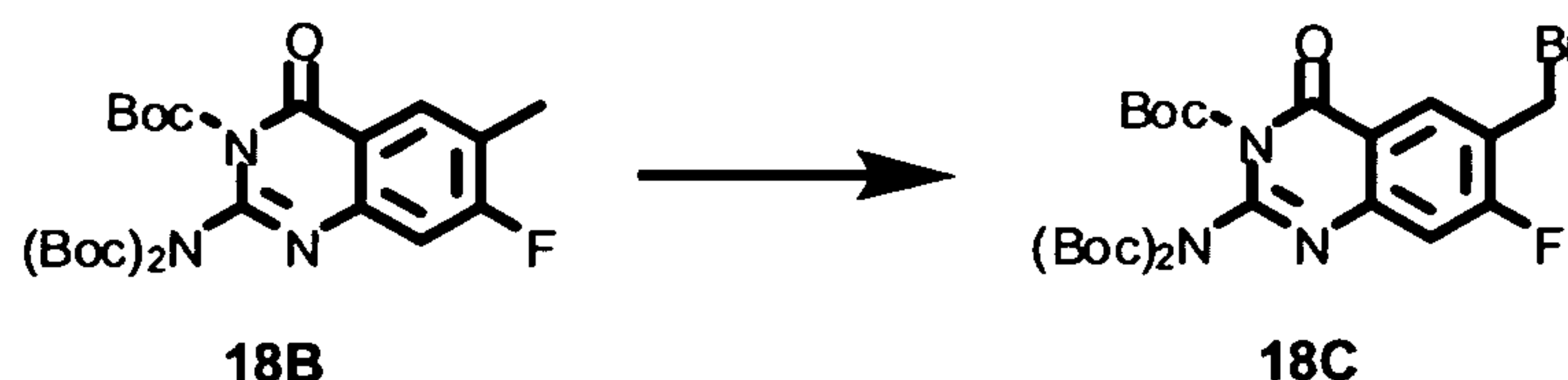
A solid mixture of methyl 2-amino-4-fluoro-5-methylbenzoate (2.66 g, 14.5 mmol),
 5 chloroformamidinium hydrochloride (2.6 g, 22.6 mmol) and methyl sulfone (8.5 g, 90.3 mmol)
 was heated to 150-160 °C in an oil bath with vigorous stirring. It became a clear solution after
 about 10 minutes. Heating was continued for a total of 2 hours. When cooled to room
 temperature, it became a solid. The material was taken up with water (200 mL), basified with
 commercial ammonium hydroxide. After stirred for 1 hour, the solid was collected through
 10 filtration. It was washed with water (20 mL) and dried under vacuum to provide crude product
18A (2.93 g, quant.). MS found for C₉H₈FN₃O: 194.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step B – Synthesis of Compound 18B



15 Compound **18B** was prepared from **18A** according the procedures described, and using
 4 equivalents of (Boc)₂O. MS found for C₂₄H₃₂FN₃O₇: 394.3 (M+H-100)⁺.

Step C – Synthesis of Compound 18C



20 A solution of compound **18B** (4.83 g, 9.8 mmol), N-bromosuccinimide (2.70 g, 15.2
 mmol) and benzoyl peroxide (600 mg, 2.48 mmol) in carbon tetrachloride (300 mL) was
 heated to reflux and allowed to stir at this temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was
 cooled to room temperature, concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue obtained was dissolved in
 EtOAc (300 mL). The resulting solution was washed with aqueous sodium thiosulfate (100

185

mL), brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO_4), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide intermediate compound **18C**, which was used without further purification. MS found for $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{31}\text{BrFN}_3\text{O}_7$: 472.3 ($\text{M}+\text{H}-100$)⁺.

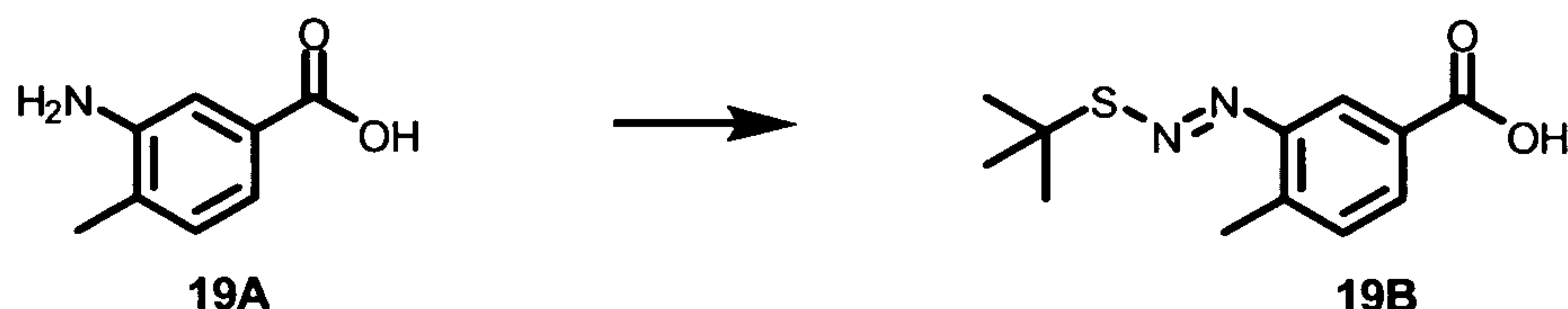
5

Example 19

Preparation of Intermediate Compound **19G**

Step A – Synthesis of Compound **19B**

10

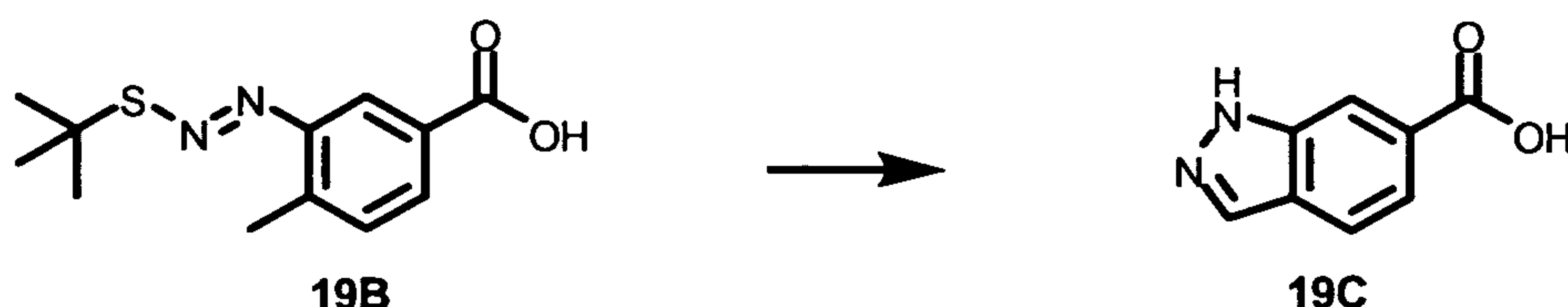


15

20

To a stirred solution of aqueous HCl (15 mL of conc HCl in 50 mL of water) was added 3-amino-4-methyl benzoic acid (**19A**, 5.0 g; 33.0 mmol). The mixture was cooled in an ice-water bath followed by slow addition of a solution of sodium nitrite (1.1 eq, 2.50 g) in water (12 mL). The mixture was allowed to stir for 30 minutes at which point the mixture was a homogeneous dark solution. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium acetate was added until pH 6 was attained. Sodium t-butylthiolate (0.5 eq, 1.85 g) was added in one portion. The reaction was allowed to stir for 2 h and the resulting precipitate was collected by filtration (whatman #1), washed with water (20 mL) and dried under vacuum to provide the product **19B** (2.7 g; 64 %) as a tan solid.

Step B – Synthesis of Compound **19C**



25

To a stirred solution of potassium tert-butoxide (10.0 eq, 12.0 g) in DMSO (50 mL) was added a solution of t-butylthio-4-methylbenzoic acid **19B** (2.7 g; 10.70 mmol) in DMSO (30 mL). The mixture was allowed to stir for 6 h and then diluted with ice and acidified with aqueous 1 M HCl until pH 5-6 was attained. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x

5

Chemical reaction scheme showing the conversion of compound **19C** to compound **19D**. Compound **19C** is 5-methyl-1H-indazole-3-carboxylic acid, which reacts to form compound **19D**, methyl 5-methyl-1H-indazole-3-carboxylate. The reaction is indicated by a right-pointing arrow.

10

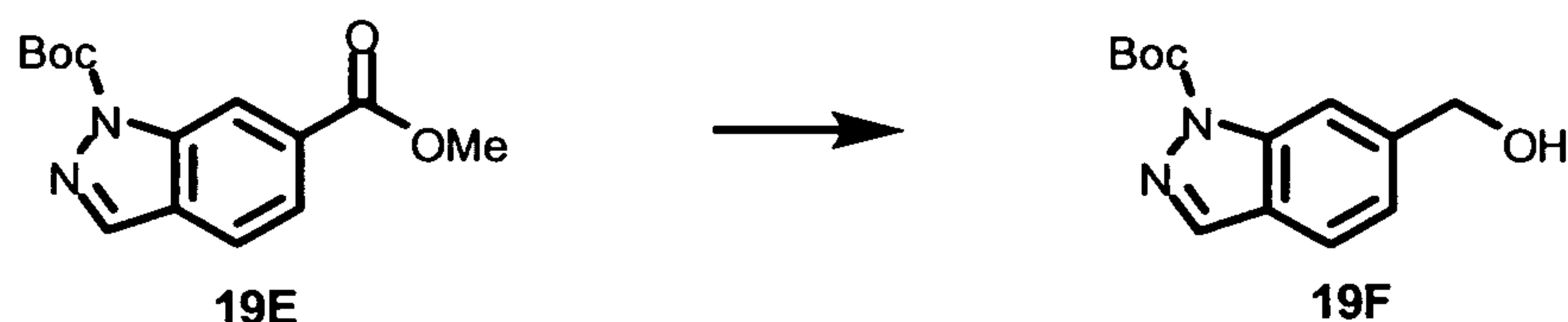
20

25

187

MHz): δ 8.91 (1H, s), 8.22 (1H, s), 7.99 (1H, dd, $J = 1.22, 8.54$ Hz), 7.78 (1H, d, $J = 8.54$ Hz), 3.97 (3H, s), 1.74 (9H, s).

Step E – Synthesis of Compound 19F

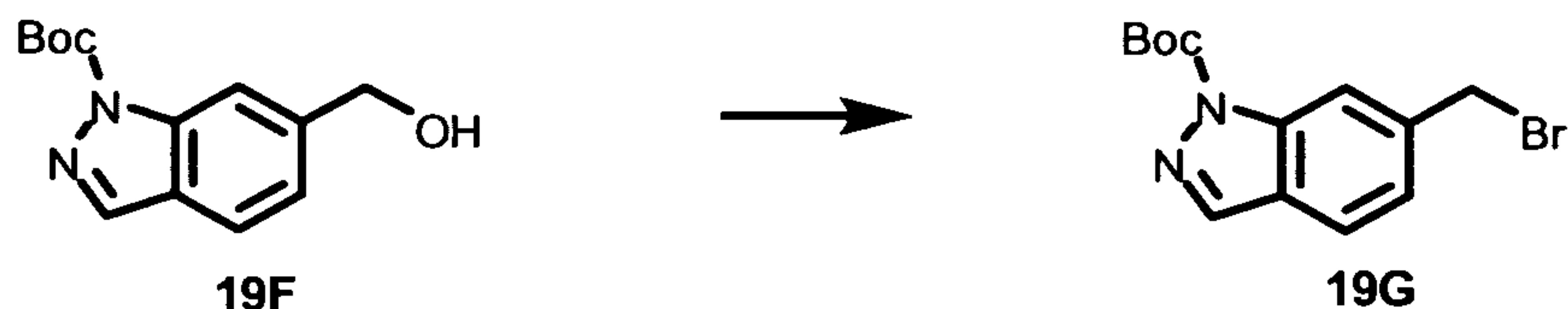


A solution of indazole **19E** (460 mg; 1.66 mmol) in 16 mL of dry THF was cooled to -78 °C and treated with lithium triethylborohydride (2.5 eq, 4.15 mL of a 1 M soln in THF). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at -78 °C and followed by TLC (25 % ethyl acetate in hexanes). The reaction was completed in about 1 h and quenched by addition of aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen sulfate (3 mL). The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (100 mL) and washed with water (20 mL) and brine (20 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in rotavap to provide the crude product as a colorless oil. The resulting residue was chromatographed on a Biotage 40-S silica gel column (0 to 40 % ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide the following: des-Boc starting material (70 mg); alcohol product **19F** (160 mg; 40 %). ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃; 400 MHz): δ 8.19 (1H, s), 8.13 (1H, s), 7.67 (1H, d, $J = 7.93$ Hz), 7.30 (1H, d, $J = 7.93$ Hz), 5.13 (2H, s), 1.71 (9H, s).

10

15

Step F – Synthesis of Compound 19G



A solution of alcohol **19F** (160 mg; 0.644 mmol) in dry chloroform (12 mL) was placed in an ice-water bath and treated with pyridine (4.0 eq, 0.208 mL, d 0.978) and a solution of thionyl bromide (1.2 eq, 0.060 mL, d 2.683) in 1 mL of chloroform. The ice-water bath was removed and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temp for 30 minutes. TLC (30 % ethyl acetate in hexanes) showed about 40 % conversion and more thionyl bromide was added (0.2 eq). The mixture was heated to 70 °C for 10 minutes. Upon cooling the mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (30 mL) and washed with aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate (5 mL), aqueous sodium hydrogen sulfate (5 mL) and brine (5 mL). The organic layer was dried

20

25

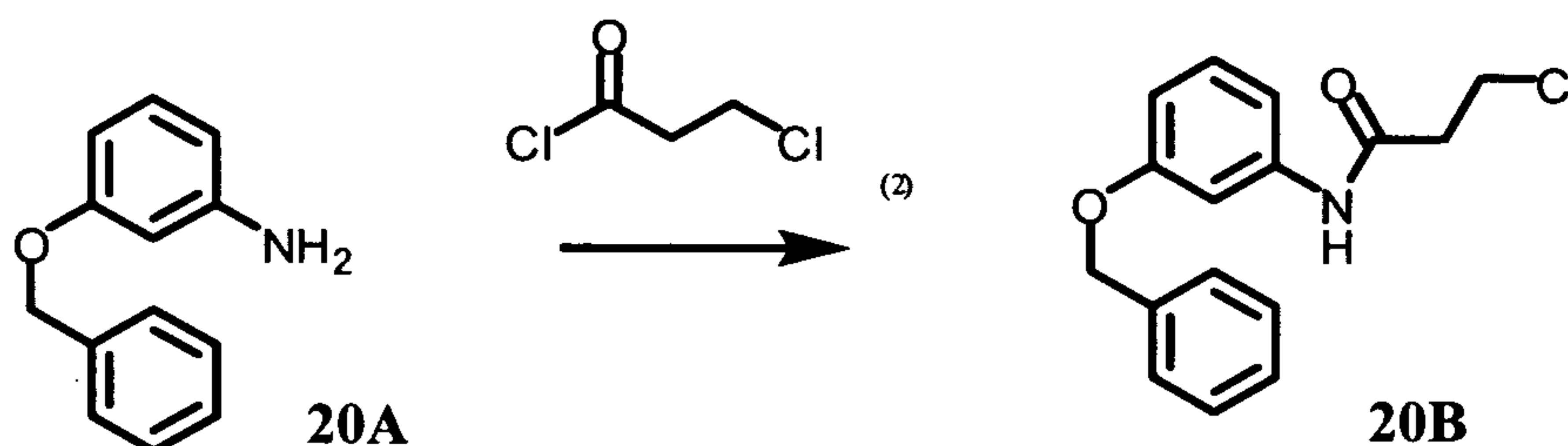
188

over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in rotavap. The resulting residue was purified on a Biotage 25-S silica gel column (gradient: 0 to 40 % ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide the product **19G** (76 mg; 38 %) as a colorless oil along with unreacted starting material (25 mg; 24 %). ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃; 400 MHz): δ 8.23 (1H, s), 8.14 (1H, s), 7.72 (1H, d, J = 8.54 Hz), 7.32 (1H, dd, J = 1.22, 8.54 Hz), 5.21 (1H, d, J = 12.20 Hz), 5.09 (1H, d, J = 12.20 Hz), 1.71 (9H, s).

Example 20

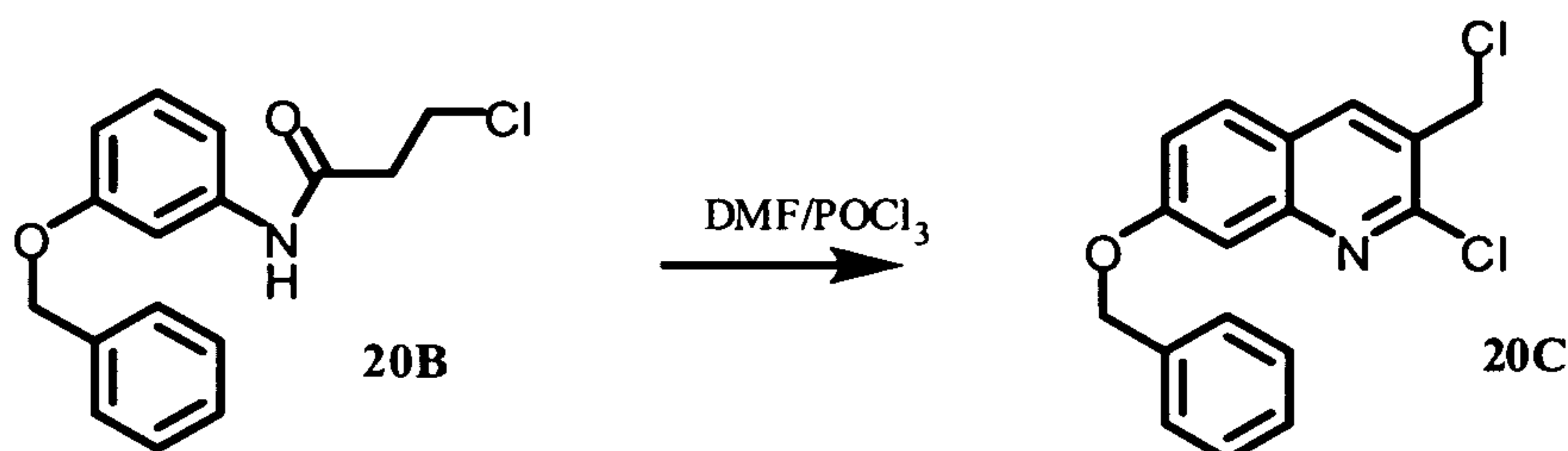
Preparation of Intermediate Compound **20C**

10 Step A – Synthesis of Compound **20B**



Compound **20A** (commercially available) (10.0 g, 50.25 mmol) was dissolved in water at room temperature and to resulting suspension K₂CO₃ (3.8 g, 27.64 mmol) was added. 3-Chloro propionylchloride (7.0 g, 55.28 mmol) was added dropwise for 30 minutes and stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. The precipitate was filtered and washed with water, 1 N HCl, dried at 50 °C under vacuum overnight to provide 7.2 g of the product **20B**.

Step B – Synthesis of Compound **20C**



To N,N-Dimethylformamide (3.6 g, 49.66 mmol) at 0 °C was added drop wise POCl₃ (26.6 g, 173.8 mmol) and stirred for 60 minutes, white precipitate was formed. The 7.2 g of the compound **20B** was added by portion in reaction mixture and stirred for 24 hours at room temperature. Reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and slowly added to a beaker with ice, after ice was melted, organic layer was separated and washed with 0.5 N NaOH and water, brine, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuum, purified using flash

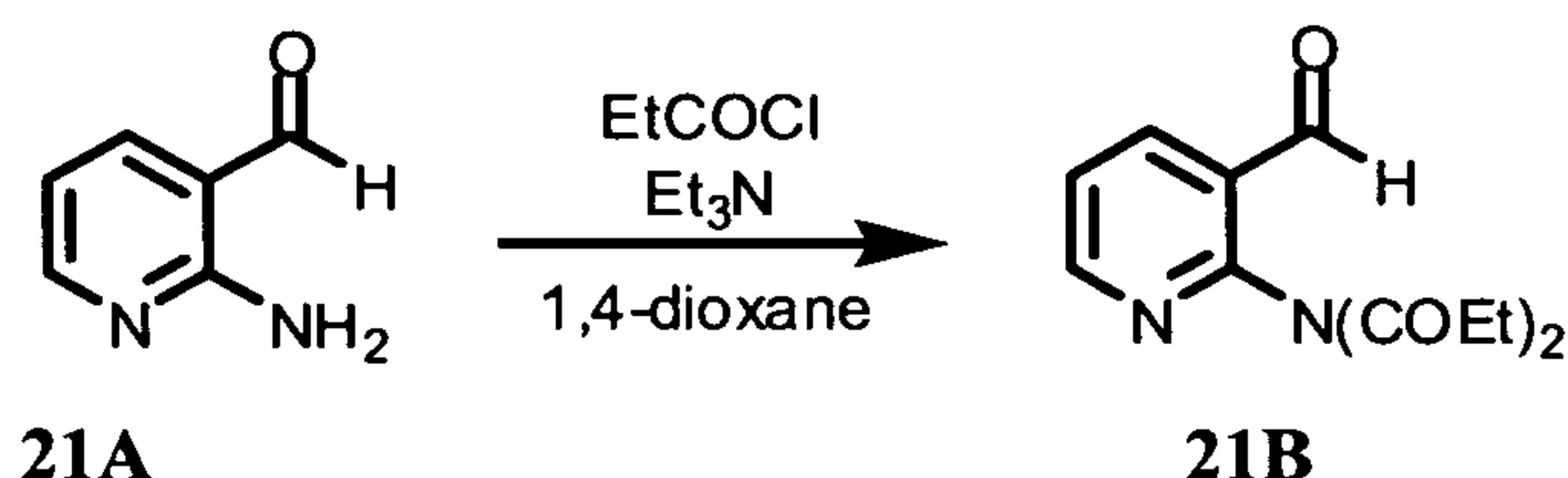
189

chromatography, to provide compound **20C** (5.5 g, 34 % after two steps). M.S. found: 318.04 (M+H)⁺.

Example 21

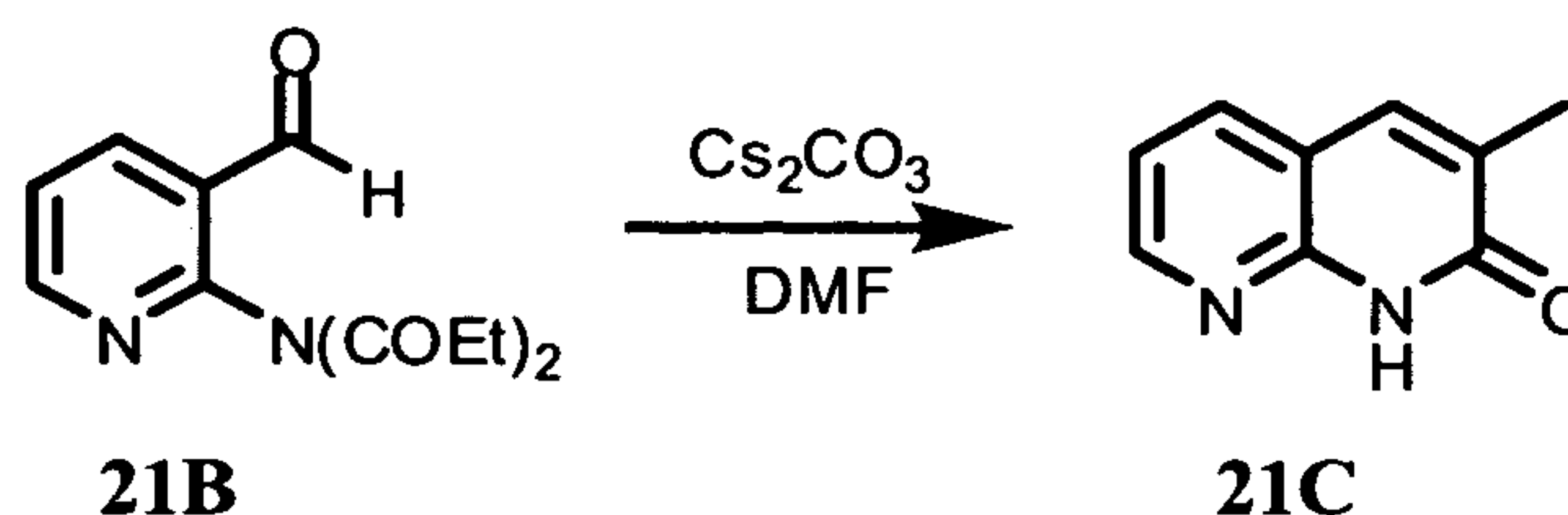
Preparation of Intermediate Compound **21E**

Step A – Synthesis of Compound **21B**



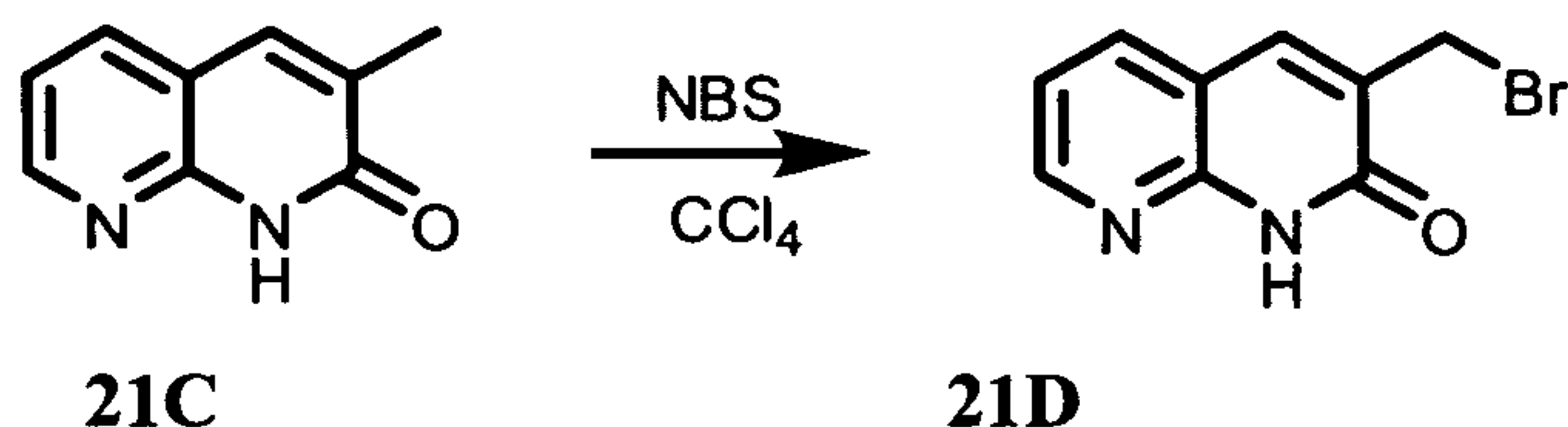
To a solution of **21A** (7.2 g, 58.8 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (39 mL) at 0°C was added propionyl chloride (37.8 mL, 176.5 mmol) and Et₃N (24.6 mL, 176.5 mmol) with stirring. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for overnight. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was taken up in EtOAc. The organic phase was washed with water, dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a crude residue of **21B**.

Step B– Synthesis of Compound **21C**



To a suspension of **21B** (crude residue from above) in DMF (60 mL) was added cesium carbonate (38 g, 117.6 mmol), and the resulting mixture was heated at 65°C for overnight. Reaction was cooled to room temperature, and the bulk of DMF was removed under reduced pressure. Water was then added to the crude residue and the mixture was filtered. The filter-cake was washed with water and EtOAc. 5.2 g of **21C** was collected as a pale yellow solid.

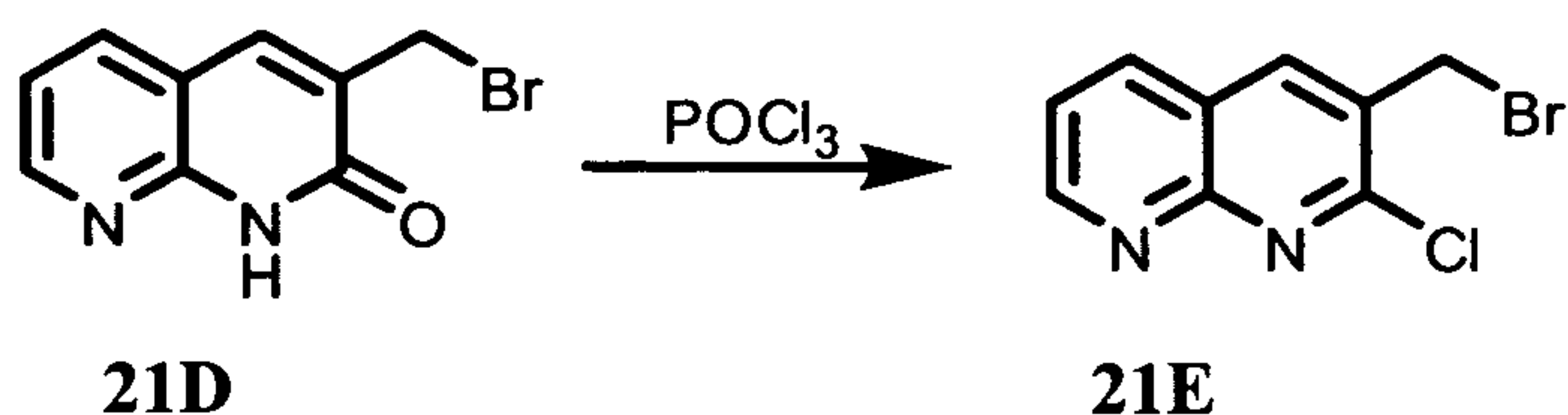
190

Step C – Synthesis of Compound 21D

5

To a suspension of **21C** (0.8 g, 5 mmol) in CCl_4 (25 mL) was added NBS (38 g, 117.6 mmol), and benzoyl peroxide (61 mg, 0.25 mmol), and the resulting mixture was then heated at 90°C for 4 hours. Cooled the reaction to room temperature, and 300 mL of CH_2Cl_2 was added. The mixture was filtered, and filtrate was dried over MgSO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide 2 g of crude residue of **21D**.

10

Step D – Synthesis of Compound 21E

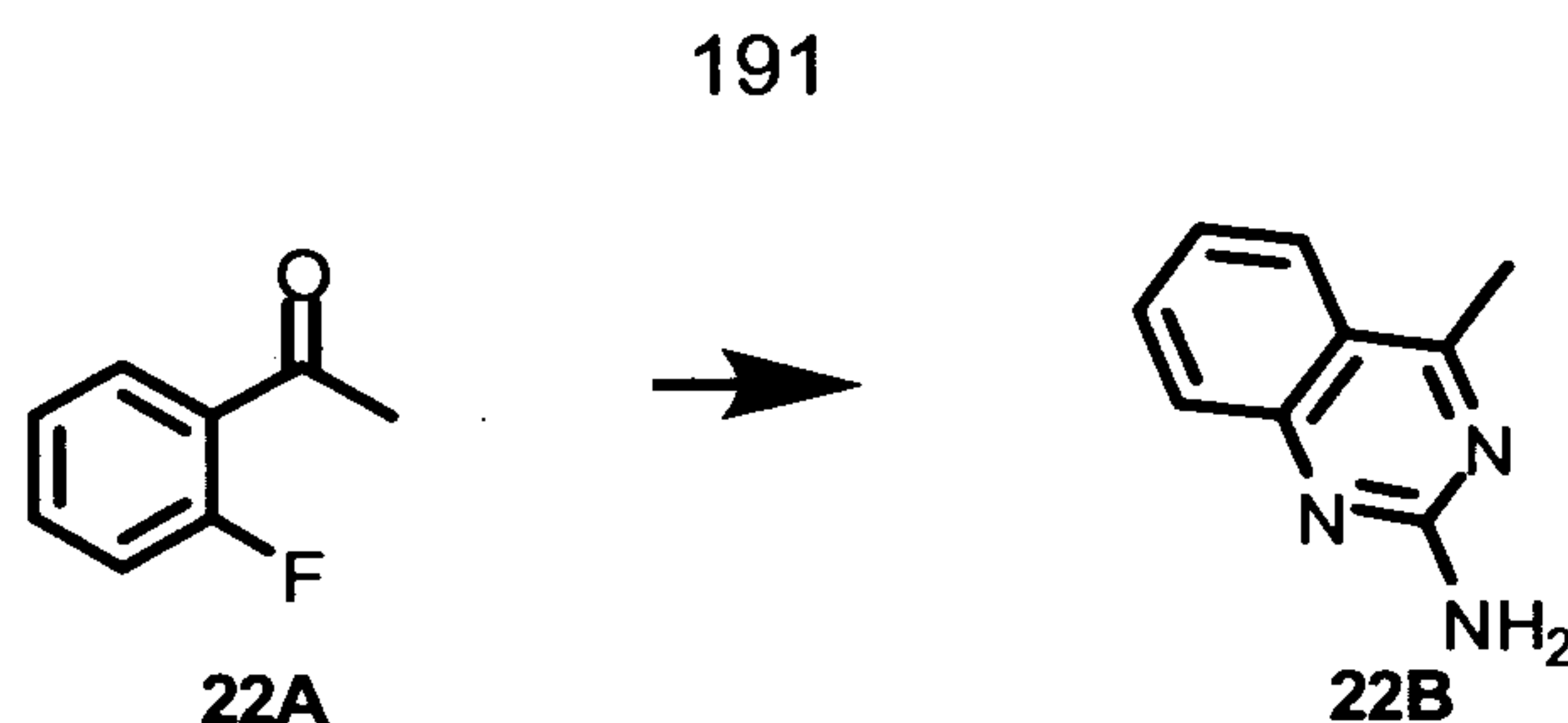
15

POCl_3 was added to a 100 mL round bottom flask containing crude **21D**. The resulting suspension was then heated at 88°C for 4 hours. Cooled the reaction to room temperature, and then poured into a 1 liter beaker containing ice. The resulting solution was neutralized to pH 8 using 6 N NaOH solution. Solid that precipitated from the solution was collected to provide 0.82 g of crude residue which was purified using column chromatography on silica gel (ISCO Combi-Flash Rf; gradient: 5 to 50 % ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide 330 mg of compound **21E**.

20

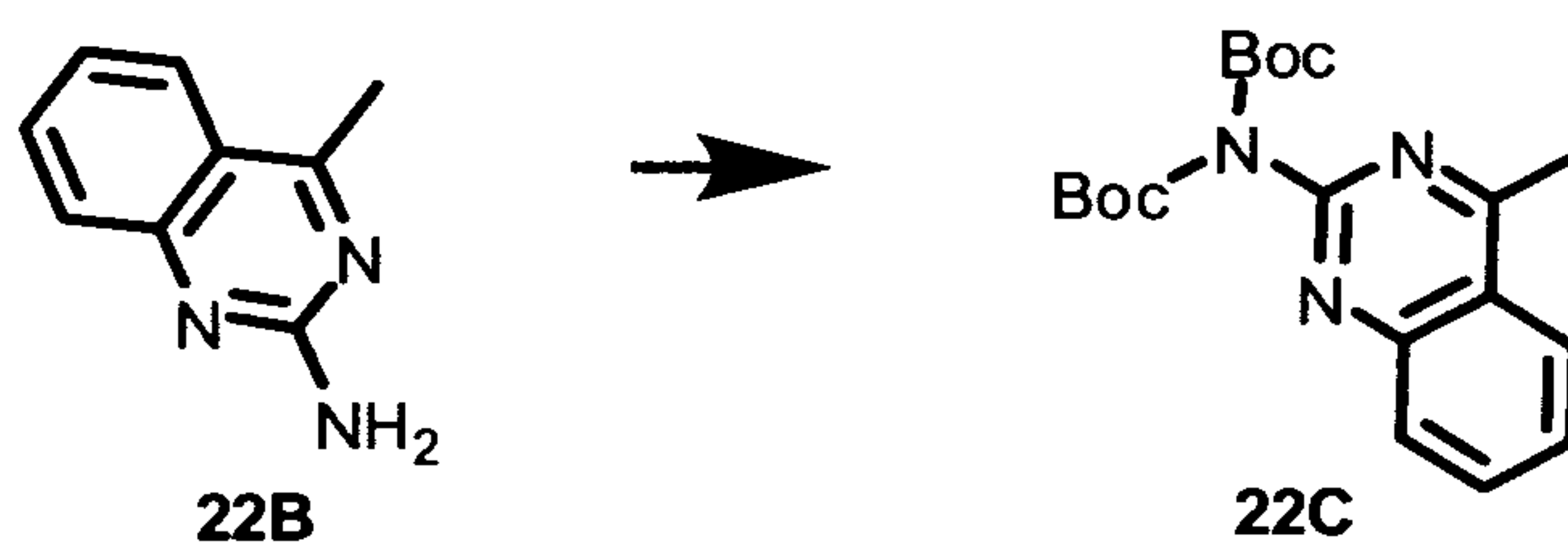
25

Example 22**Preparation of Intermediate Compound 22D***Step A – Synthesis of Compound 22B*



A mixture of ortho-fluoroacetophenone (**22A**, 3.45 g; 25 mmol) and guanidine carbonate (2 eq; 9.0 g) was prepared in 250 mL of N,N-dimethyl acetamide, set to stir, and heated at 135 °C under nitrogen purge overnight. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and diluted with ethyl acetate (600 mL). The solution was washed with water (2x100 mL) and brine (40 mL). The organic layer was separated, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The solid was dissolved in methylene dichloride, loaded on silica gel and dried under reduced pressure. The material was purified on ISCO (80 g column; 0-70% THF in Hexanes). Fractions containing product were collected and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford product **22B** as a crème colored solid (880 mg; 22%)

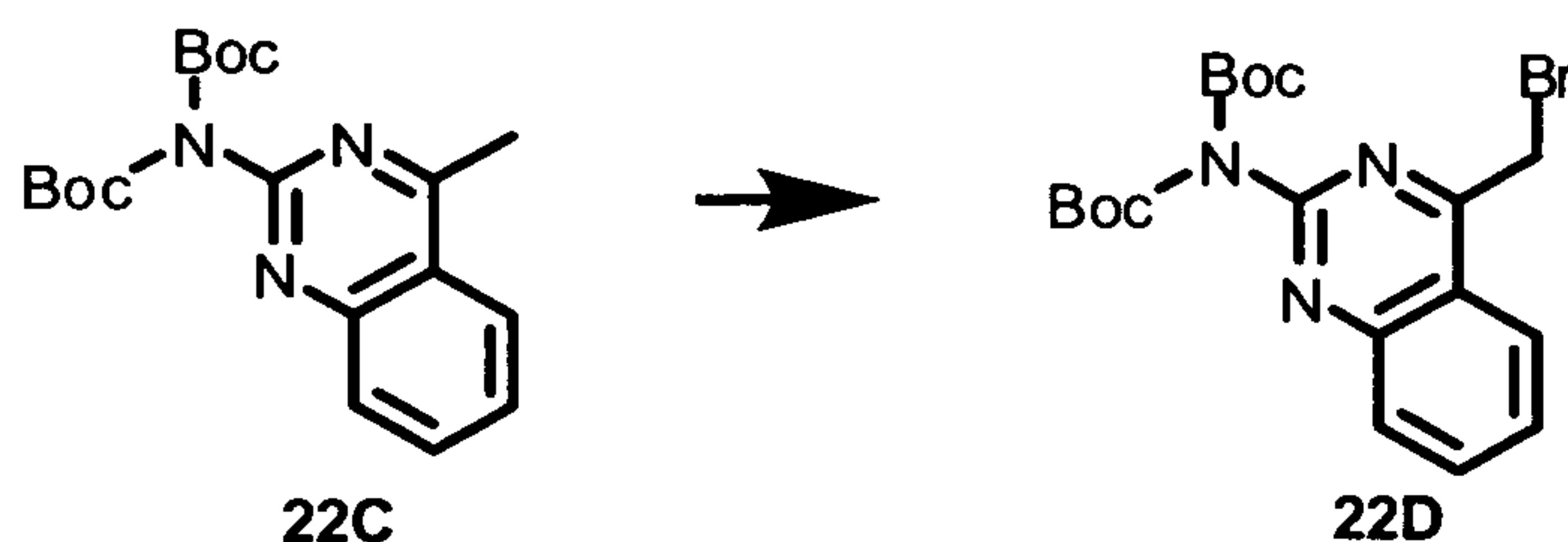
Step B – Synthesis of Compound 22C



A solution of 4-Methyl-quinazolin-2-ylamine **22B** (640 mg; 4.02 mmol) in 10 mL of dry acetonitrile was treated with a solution of Boc-anhydride (2.5 eq; 2.19 g) in 10.0 mL of dry acetonitrile. The resulting solution was treated with DMAP (0.2 eq; 98.2 mg). The mixture was set to stir overnight. TLC (50% THF in hexanes) showed a complete reaction. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (500 mL) and washed with water (3x30 mL), and Brine (40 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in rotavap. The resulting residue was adsorbed on silica gel and purified on an ISCO column (120 g) (0% to 60% THF in hexanes). The fractions with product were collected and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford product **22C** as a light yellow-white solid (1.3 g; 90%).

Step C – Synthesis of Compound 22D

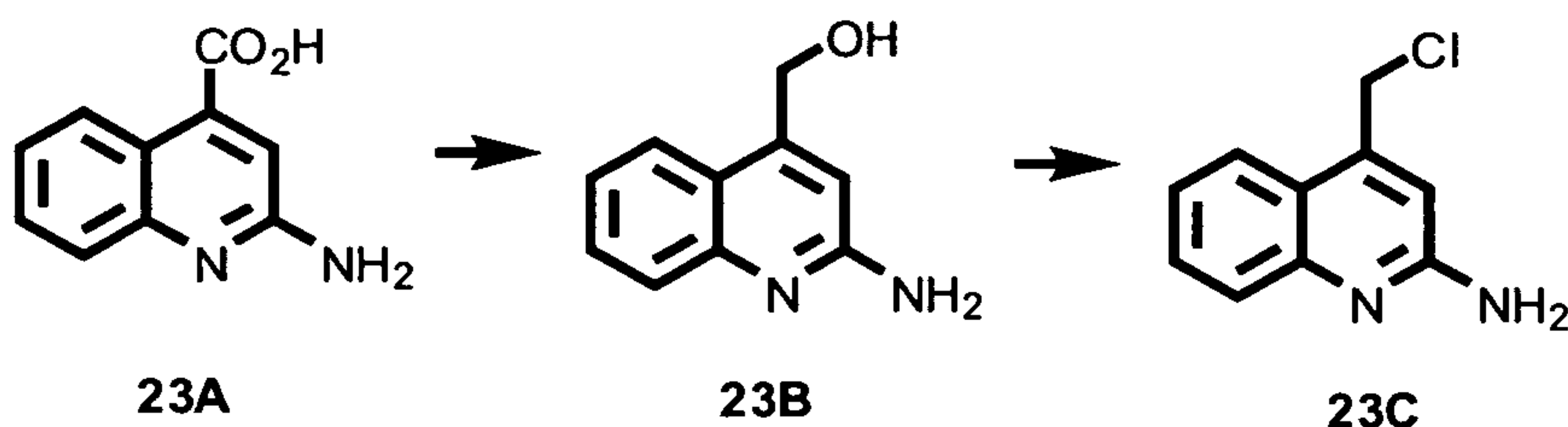
192



Intermediate **22C** (1.11 g; 3.09 mmol), N-Bromosuccinimide (1.05 eq; 577 mg), and benzoyl peroxide (0.1 eq; 75 mg) were combined in round bottom and diluted with dry carbon tetrachloride (31 mL). The reaction was allowed to stir at room temperature for 10 minutes and then heated at reflux overnight. TLC (30% ethyl acetate in hexanes) revealed the reaction has partially progressed. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with ethyl acetate (300 mL), and washed with sat. aqueous sodium bicarbonate (40 mL) and brine (40 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with methylene dichloride, adsorbed onto silica gel, and purified on ISCO (25-M Column; 0-40% ethyl acetate in hexanes). The fractions containing product were concentrated *in vacuo* and afforded product as a clear oil in a 2:1 mixture of pure product **22D** and starting material (Total : 440 mg; 33%).

Example 23

Preparation of Intermediate Compound **23C**



The starting materials **23A** (2.0 g, 10.6 mmol), lithium aluminum hydride (2.0 g, 52.7 mmol), and THF (100 mL) were added to a 250 ml round-bottomed flask. The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction was quenched with 10 ml of saturated ammonium chloride solution followed by 200 ml of ethyl acetate. After filtration, the organic layer was washed with brine (2x100 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide **23B** as a yellowish solid (1.05 g, 59%).

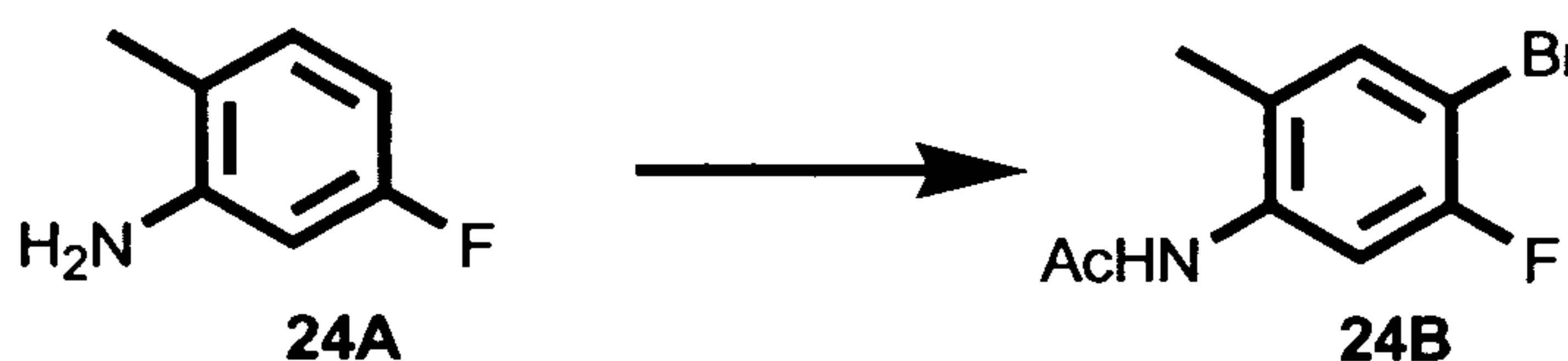
A 250 ml round-bottomed flask was charged with **23B** (1.05 g, 6.03 mmol) and thionyl chloride (10 mL). The resulting mixture was allowed to stir at 60 °C for 4 hours before cooled to room temperature. After removal of excess of thionyl chloride, the resulting residue was

dried under vacuum to afford **23C** as an orange solid (1.45 g). This crude material was used without further purification.

Example 24

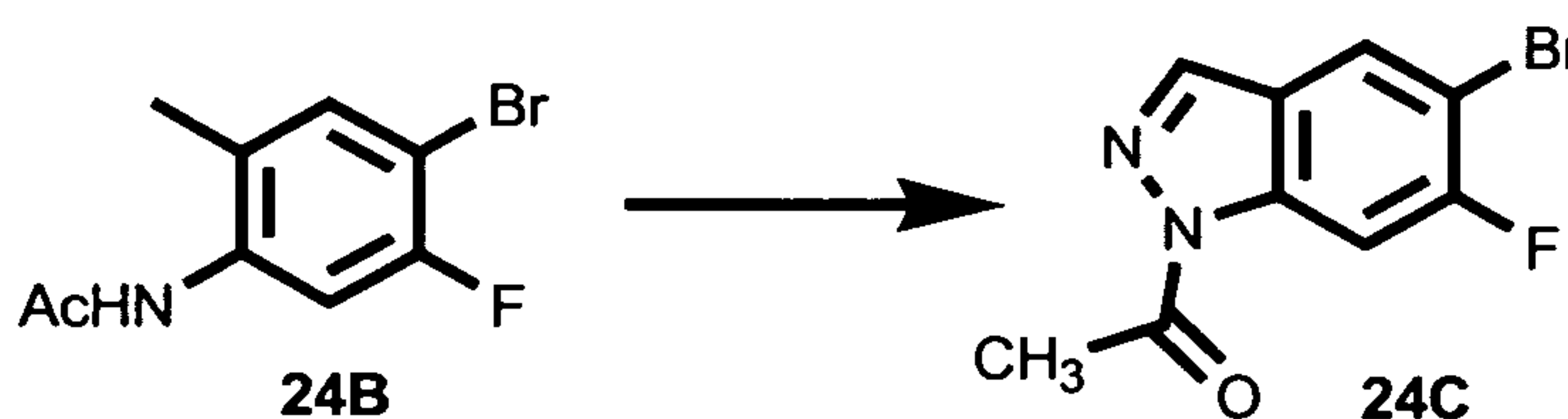
Preparation of Intermediate Compound **24G**

Step A – Synthesis of Compound **24B**



A solution of 5-fluoro-2-methylaniline (**24A**, 25 g, 200 mmol) in toluene (250 mL) was treated with acetic anhydride (25 mL, 226 mmol) heated at reflux for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was cooled when a colorless solid precipitated out which was filtered and washed with a mixture of ether and hexanes. The colorless solid was taken in acetic acid (150 mL) and treated dropwise with a solution of bromine (9.6 mL, 186 mmol) in acetic acid (20 mL) and stirred at rt. for 12 hours. The solution was diluted with water and the solid separating out was filtered and washed to yield N-(4-bromo-5-fluoro-2-methylphenyl)acetamide (**24B**, 40 g) as a colorless solid.

Step B – Synthesis of Compound **24C**

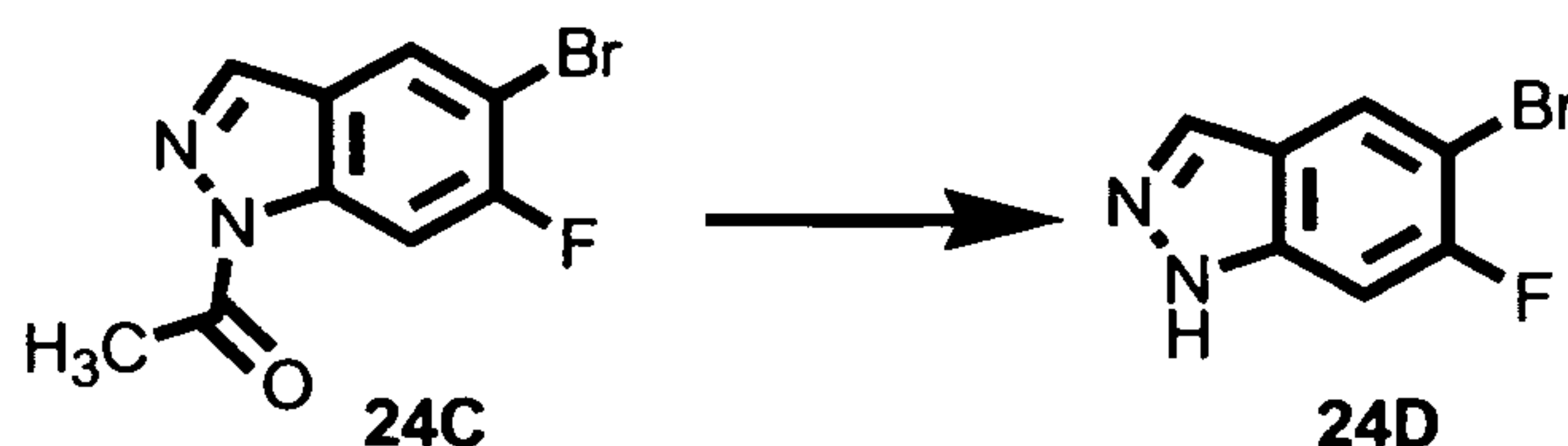


A solution of N-(4-bromo-5-fluoro-2-methylphenyl)acetamide (**24B**, 10.00 g, 40.64 mmol) in chloroform (100 mL) was treated with acetic anhydride (11.5 mL, 122.0 mmol), potassium acetate (8.00 g, 81.5 mmol), and 18-Crown-6 (540.00 mg, 2.0430 mmol) and then with isoamyl nitrite (12.3 mL, 871 mmol) and heated at 65 °C for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and treated with EtOAc (500 mL), washed with water, dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and then concentrated *in vacuo*. A pale yellow solid of 1-(5-bromo-6-fluoro-1H-indazol-1-yl)ethanone (**24C**) precipitated out. The initial filtrate was concentrated and the resulting residue was purified using chromatography (SiO₂,

194

EtOAc/Hexanes) to yield more of product **24C**.

Step C– Synthesis of Compound 24D

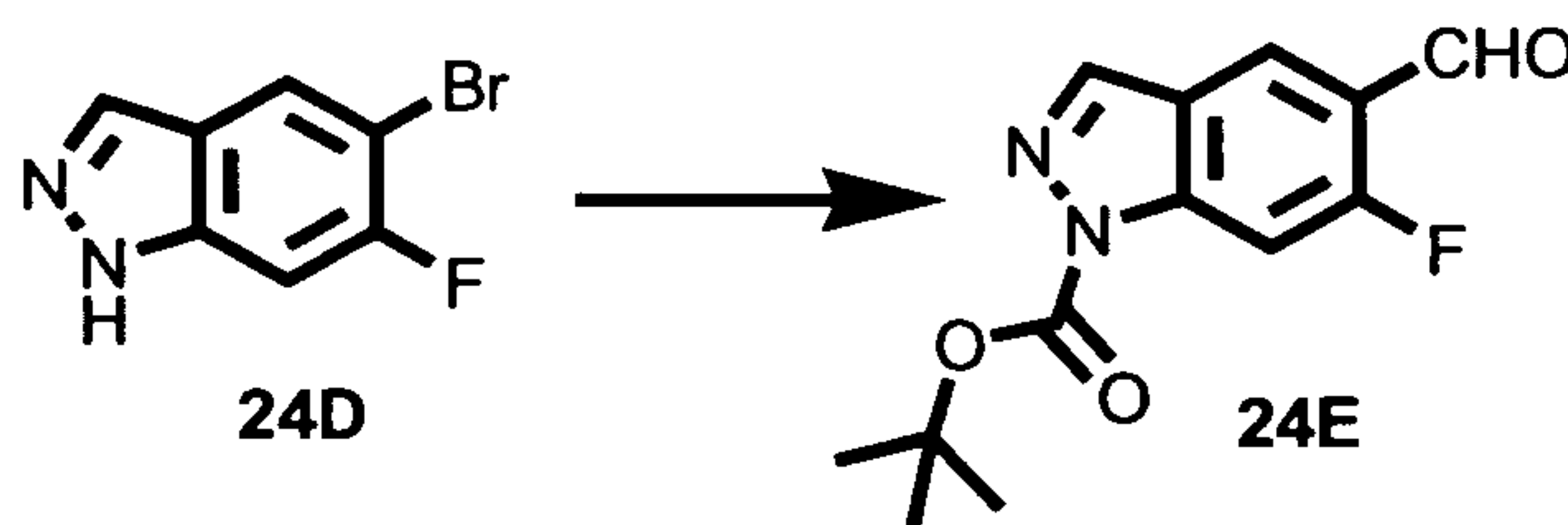


5

A solution of 1-(5-bromo-6-fluoro-1H-indazol-1-yl)ethanone (**24C**, 5.0 g, 19.5 mmol) was treated with aq HCl (3M soln., 100 mL) and methanol (20 mL) and heated at 90 °C for 3h, when the reaction turns homogenous. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and basified with aq. NaOH. A colorless solid precipitated out which was filtered and dried to yield 5-bromo-6-fluoro-1H-indazole (**24D**)

10

Step D – Synthesis of Compound 24E



15

A solution of 5-bromo-6-fluoro-1H-indazole (**24D**, 3.50 g, 16.28 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (200.00 mL) was treated with sodium hydride (60% in mineral oil, 1.172 g) at 0 °C and stirred at rt. for 20 minutes. The reaction mixture was cooled to -78 °C (dry ice and acetone) and treated with 2.5 M of n-butyl lithium in hexane (8.2 mL, 20.3 mmol) dropwise. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at that temperature for 20 minutes and treated with DMF (5.06 mL, 65.11 mmol). The reaction mixture was slowly warmed to room temperature when the viscous solution turn fluidic and stirring was efficient. Analysis of TLC (40% EtOAc/Hexanes) indicated complete conversion of starting material to product. The reaction mixture was acidified with aq. HCl taken up in EtOAc (500 mL) washed with aq. HCl (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, concentrated in *vacuo* and used as it is in next step. A solution of product 6-fluoro-1H-indazole-5-carbaldehyde (2.3 g) in THF (100 mL) was treated with di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (3.56 g, 16.28 mmol) and DMAP (300 mg) and stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated in *vacuo* and

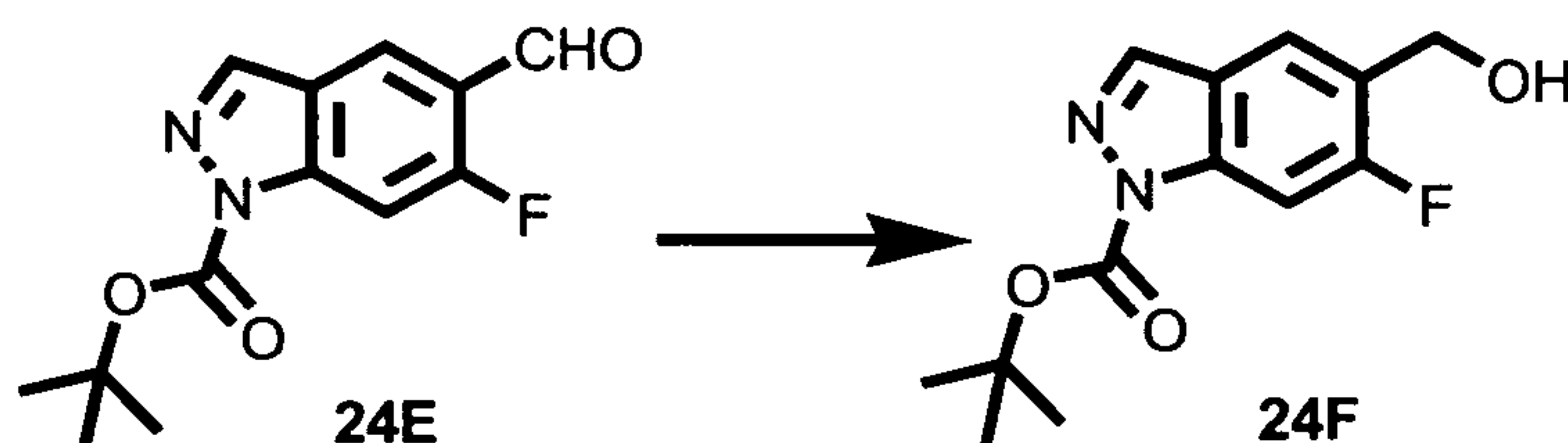
20

25

195

the resulting residue was purified using chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc/Hexanes gradient 0-40%) to yield [2e] *tert*-butyl 6-fluoro-5-formyl-1H-indazole-1-carboxylate (**24E**, 3.5 g; Yield = 81%) as a colorless solid.

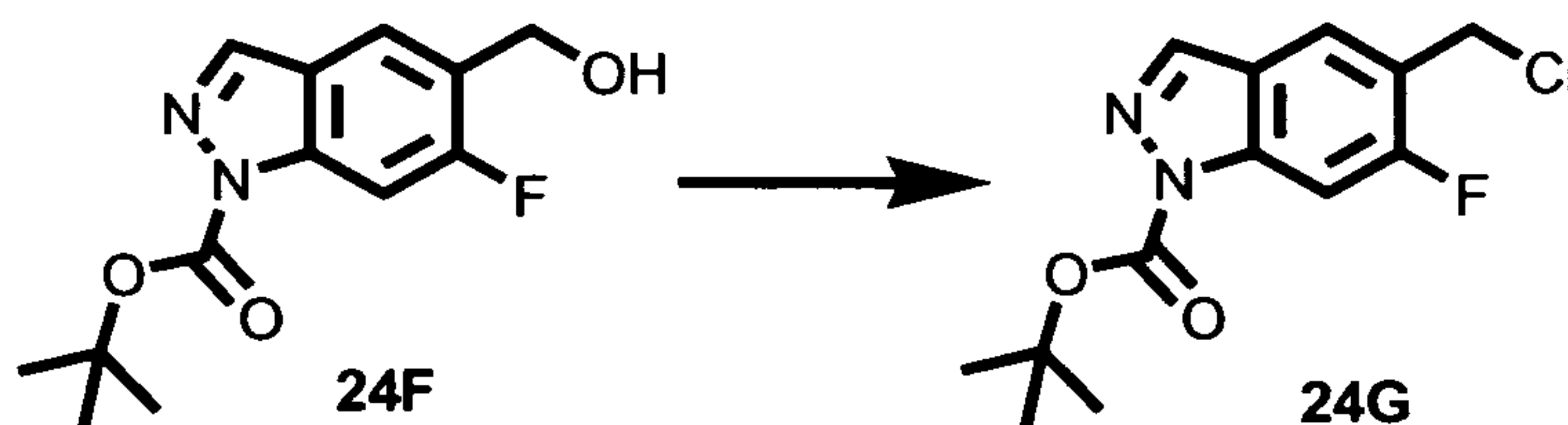
5 *Step E – Synthesis of Compound 24F.*



A solution of *tert*-butyl 6-fluoro-5-formyl-1H-indazole-1-carboxylate (**29E**, 3.55 g, 13.4 mmol) in methanol (50.00 mL) was treated with NaBH₄ (1.02 g, 26.9 mmol) at 0 °C and stirred for 1h. The reaction mixture was diluted with water and EtOAc (500 mL). The organic layer was separated and washed with aq. HCl (1M, 200 mL), aq. NaOH (1M, 200 mL) brine (200 mL) dried (MgSO₄), filtered, concentrated in *vacuo* and resulting residue was purified using chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc/hexanes) to yield *tert*-butyl 5-(hydroxymethyl)-6-fluoro-1H-indazole-1-carboxylate (**29F**, 3.00 g; Yield = 83.9%) as a colorless solid.

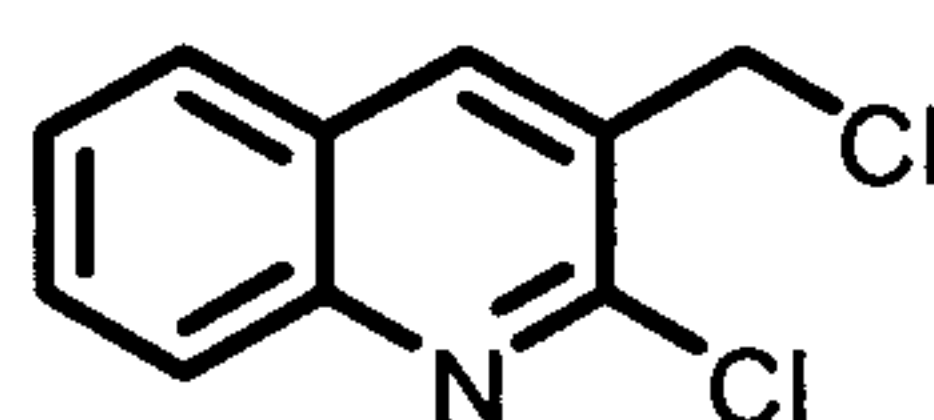
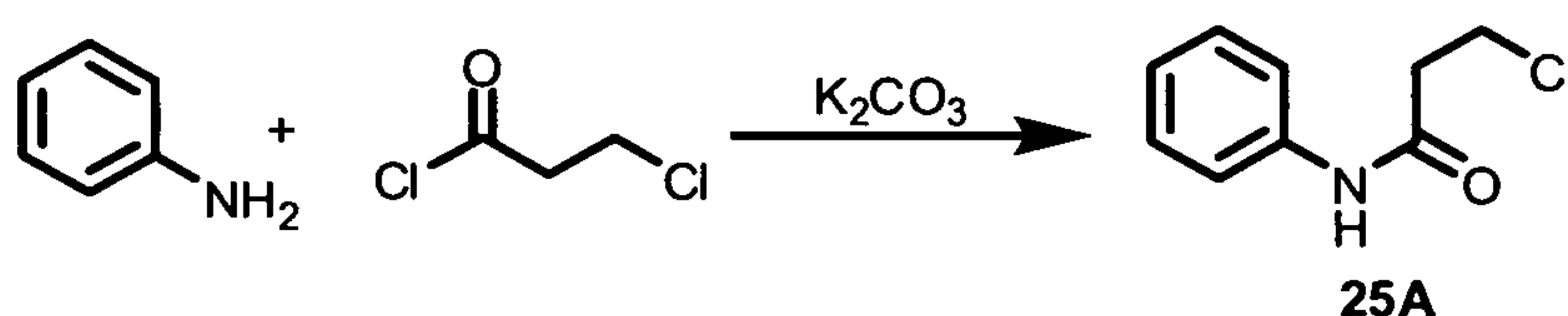
15

Step F – Synthesis of Compound 24G



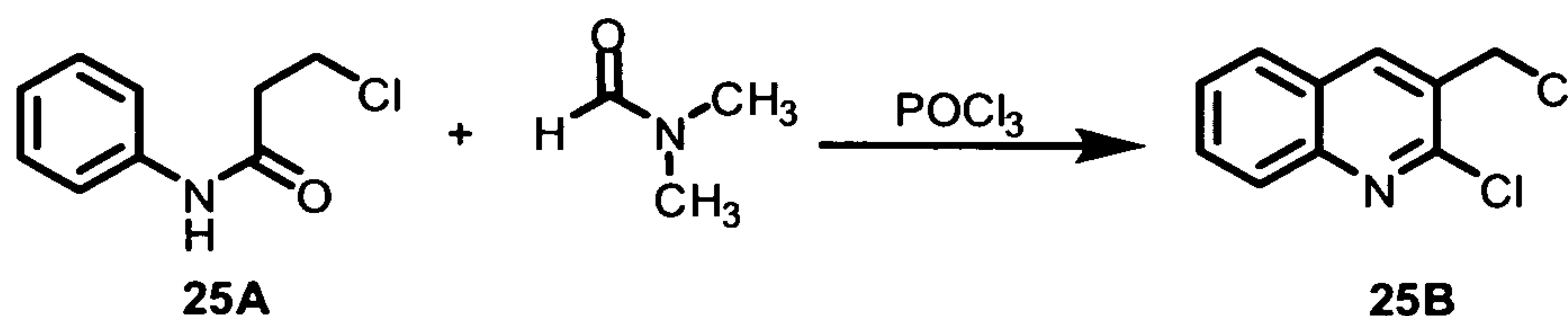
A solution of *tert*-butyl 5-(hydroxymethyl)-6-fluoro-1H-indazole-1-carboxylate (**29F**, 3.0g, 11.27 mmol) in methylene chloride (50.00 mL, 780.0 mmol) at rt. was treated with pyridine (4.56 mL, 56.33 mmol) and methanesulfonyl chloride (1.31 mL) and stirred at rt. for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated in *vacuo* and the resulting residue was dissolved in EtOAc (300 mL) washed with aq HCl (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, concentrated in *vacuo*, and purified using chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc/Hexanes) to yield *tert*-butyl 5-(chloromethyl)-6-fluoro-1H-indazole-1-carboxylate (**24G**, 1.9 g; Yield = 59%)

25

Example 25**Preparation of Intermediate Compound 25B****25B****5 Step A – Synthesis of Compound 25A****25A**

A mixture of aniline (65.04 mL, 713.8 mmol), potassium carbonate (54.4 g, 394 mmol) and water (300 mL) were added to a 2000 mL flask. The resulting reaction was kept at room temperature using a room temperature water bath and stirred with a mechanic stirrer. 3-Chloro-
 10 propionyl chloride (75.18 mL, 787.6 mmol) was added dropwise via additional funnel and the resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered and the collected solid was washed sequentially with water (300 mL), aq. HCl (1M, 2 x 300 mL), and water (300 mL), then dried to provide compound **25A**, which was used without purification (114.5 g, 87%).

15

Step B – Synthesis of Compound 25B**25A****25B**

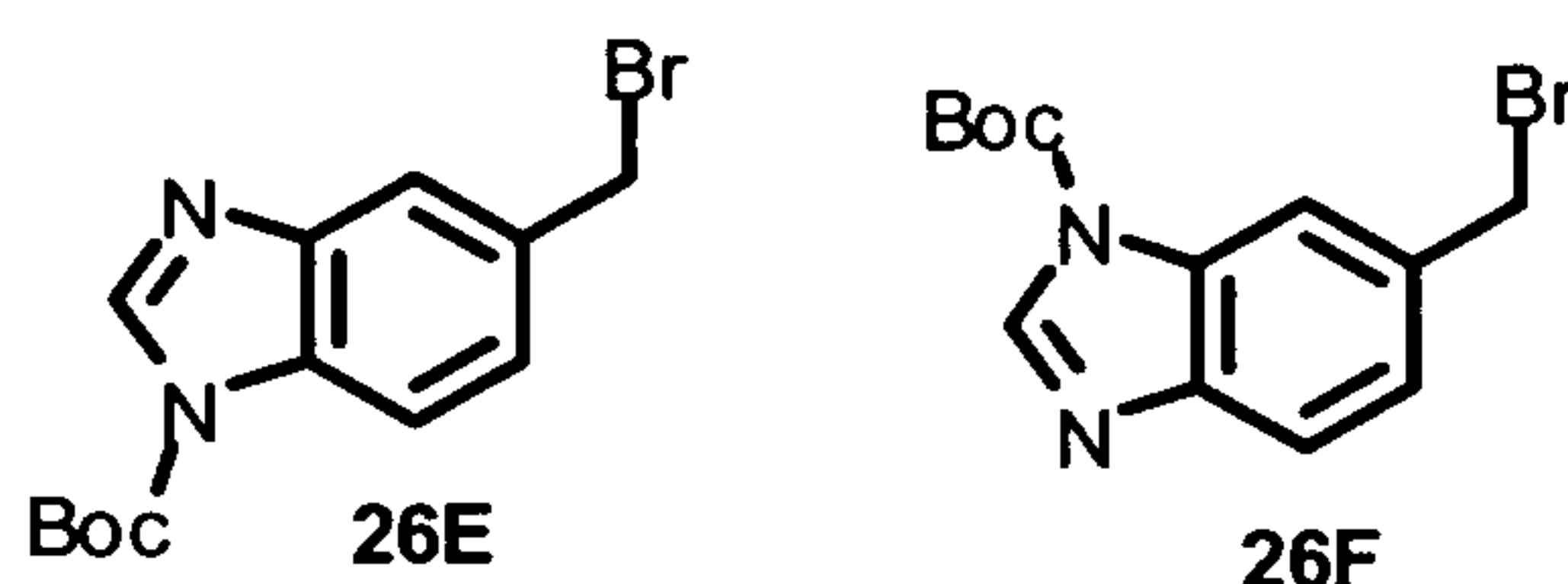
N,N-Dimethylformamide (53.7 mL, 694 mmol) was charged into a three necked flask and cooled to 0 °C and treated with phosphoryl chloride (177.7 mL, 1906 mmol) dropwise.
 20 The reaction was allowed to stir at that temperature for 10 minutes and treated with 3-Chloro-N-phenylpropanamide **25A** (50.00 g, 272.3 mmol) and stirred at room temperature. for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was heated at 80 °C for 3 h and slowly poured into ice. The solid separating out was filtered and washed extensively with water (2x1000 mL), aq. saturated sodium bicarbonate (500 mL), and taken in EtOAc (1L), The solution was dried (MgSO₄)
 25 filtered concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue obtained was recrystallized from boiling hexanes

197

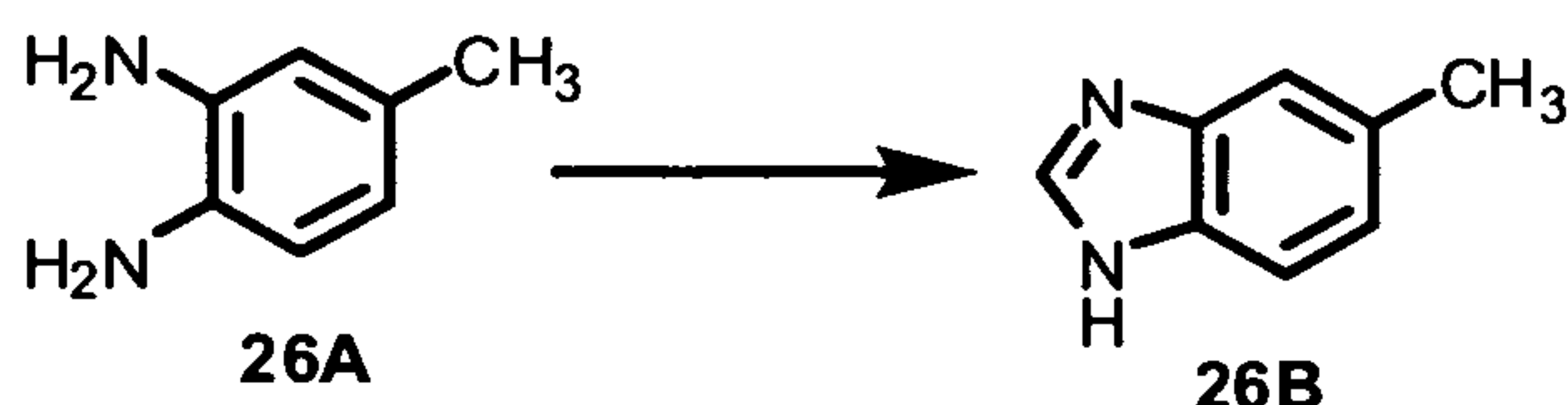
to provide compound **25B** (20 g).

Example 26

Preparation of Intermediate Compounds **26E** and **26F**

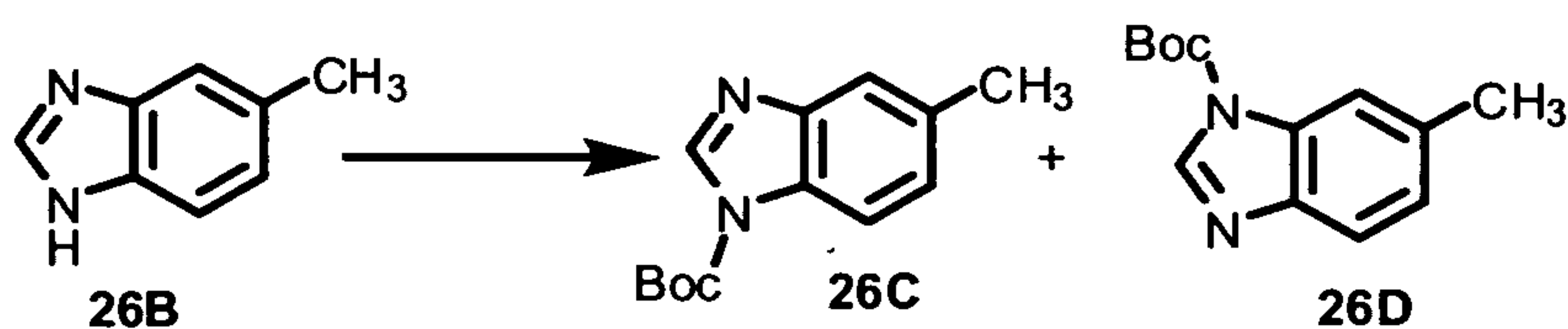


Step A – Synthesis of Compound **26B**



A solution of compound **26A** (3 g, 24.5 mmol) in trimethyl orthoformate (15 mL) was treated with 2 drops conc. HCl and heated to 80 °C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide compound **26B** (3.65 g), which was used without further purification. M.S. found for C₈H₈N₂: 133.2 (M+H)⁺.

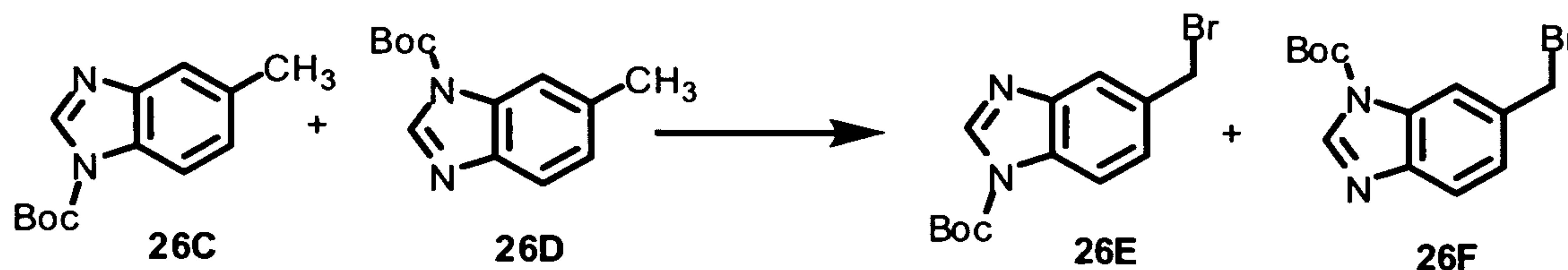
Step B – Synthesis of Compounds **26C** and **26D**



To a solution of compound **26B** (24.5 mmol) in CH₃CN (65 mL) was added di-tertbutyl dicarbonate (5.89 g, 27.0 mmol), triethylamine (3.76 mL, 27.0 mmol) and 4-dimethylamino pyridine (300 mg, 2.45 mmol) and the resulting reaction was heated to 80 °C and allowed to stir at this temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue obtained was purified using flash column chromatography (silica gel, EtOAc/Hexanes 5-20%) to provide a mixture of isomeric compounds **26C** and **26D** (5.38 g, 94.3% yield over steps A and B).

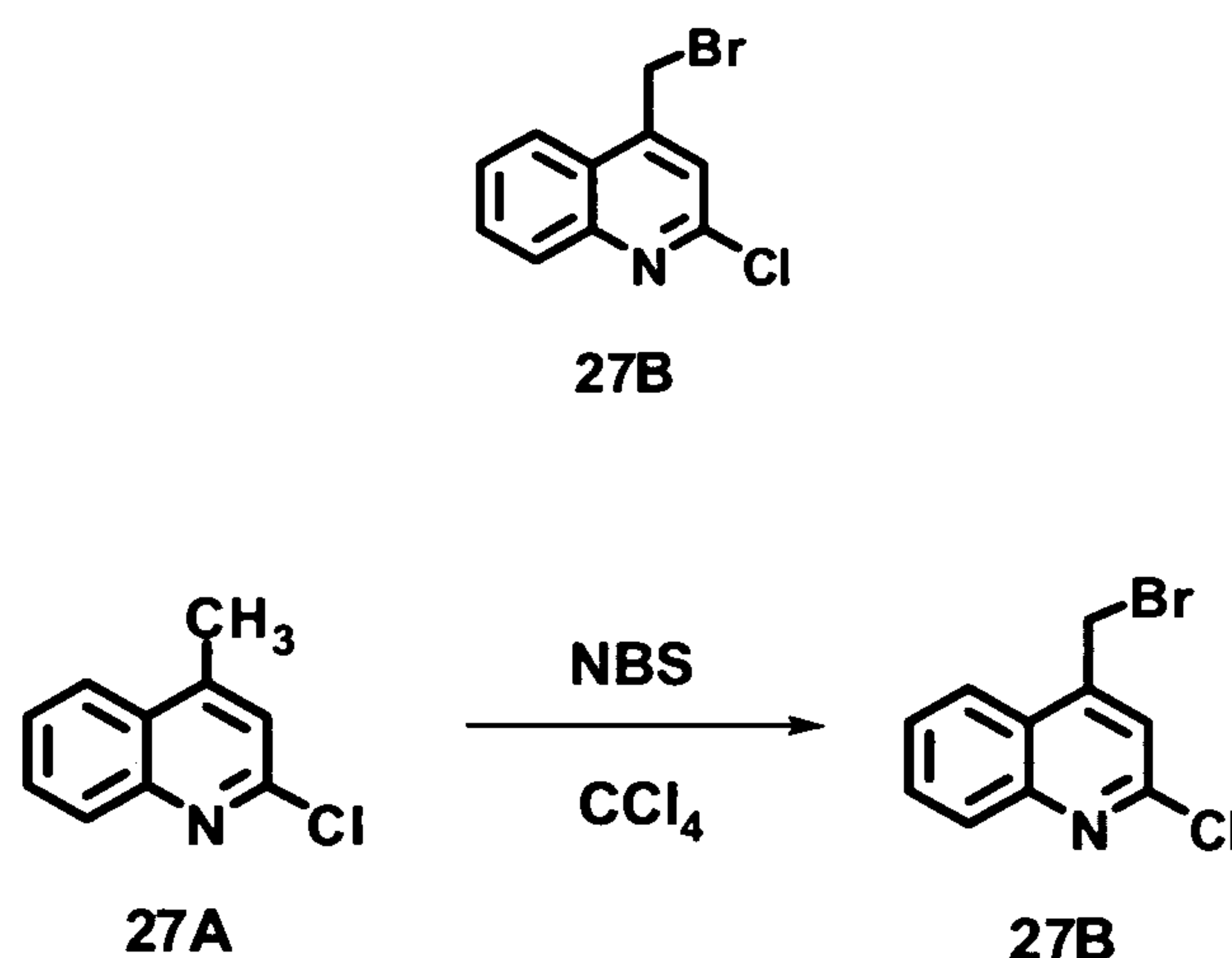
Step C – Synthesis of Compounds **26E** and **26F**

198



To a solution of compounds **26C** and **26D** (2 g, 8.61 mmol) in carbon tetrachloride (40 mL) was added N-bromosuccinimide (1.6 g, 9.04 mmol) and dibenzoyl peroxide (41.7 mg, 0.1722 mmol) and the resulting reaction was heated to 90 °C and allowed to stir at this temperature for 12 hours. The reaction was cooled to room temperature, solids were filtered off and the filtrate was washed with water, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide compounds **26E** and **26F** (2.58 g) which was used without further purification. M.S. found for C₁₃H₁₅BrN₂O₂: 334.7 (M+Na)⁺.

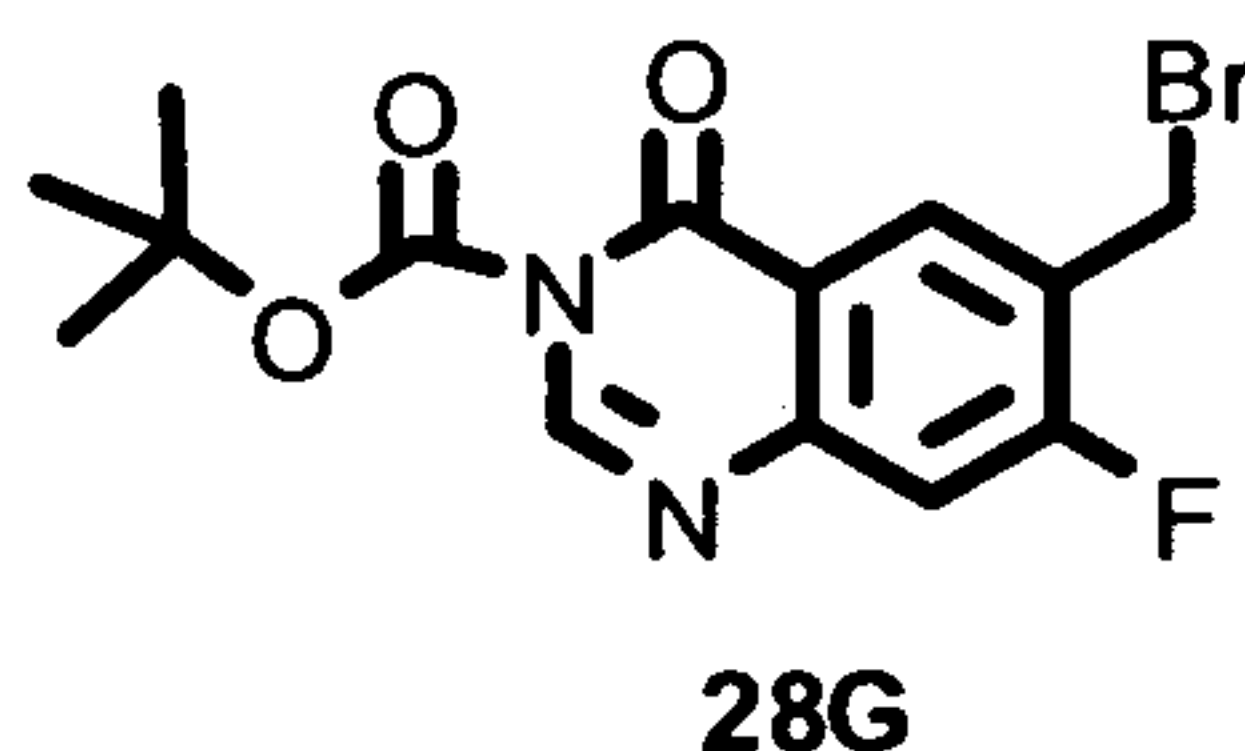
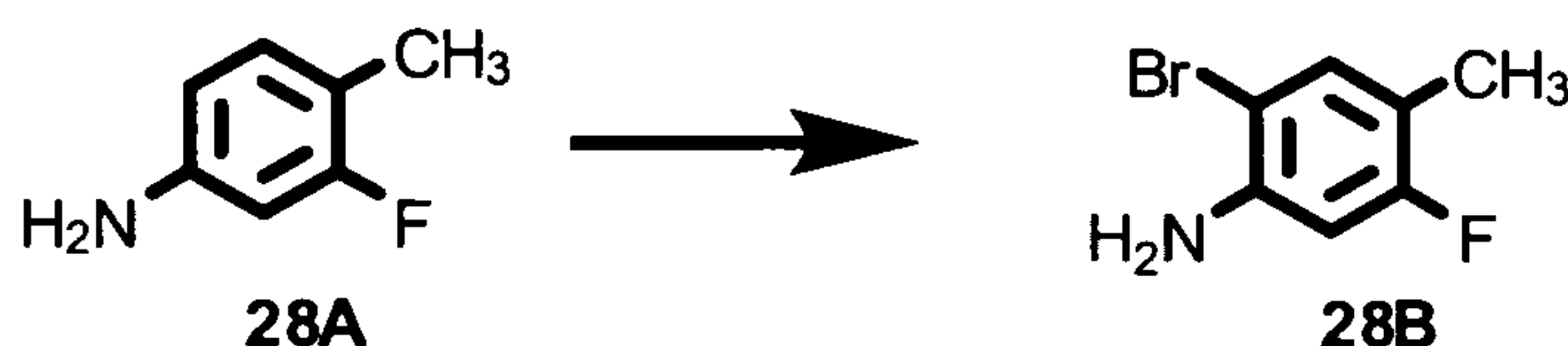
10

Example 27Preparation of Intermediate Compound **27B**

A mixture of compound **27A** (1.5 g, 8.44 mmol), NBS (1.8 g, 10.11 mmol) in carbon tetrachloride (50 mL) was heated to reflux, then benzoyl peroxide (0.21 g, 0.866 mmol) was added. The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at reflux for 19 hours, then cooled to room temperature and filtered. The filtrate was washed with saturated sodium carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a mixture (1.7 g) which contains about 50% of compound **27B**, and was used without further purification.

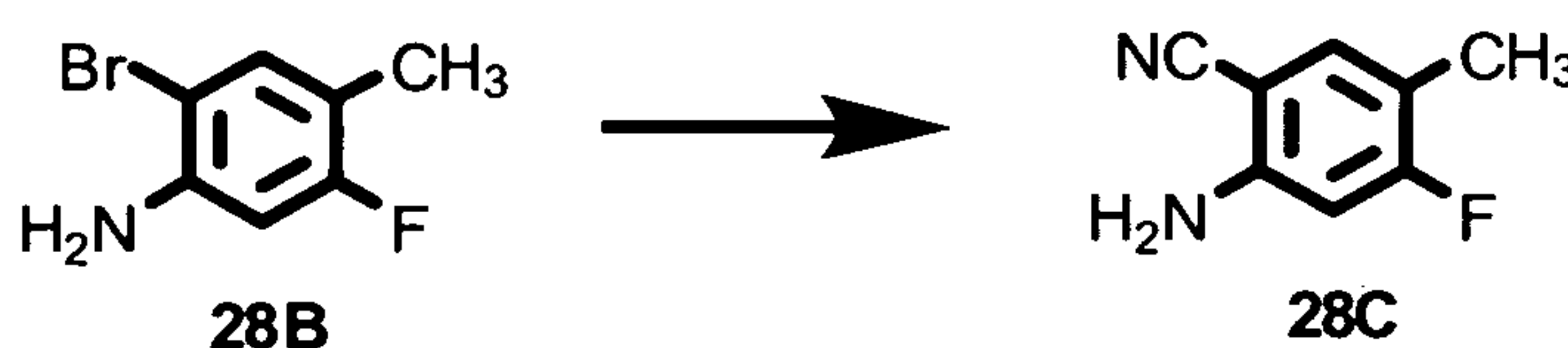
Example 28Preparation of Intermediate Compound **28G**

199

*Step A – Synthesis of Compound 28B*

5 A mixture of compound **28A** (6.00 g, 47.9 mmol) and anhydrous potassium carbonate (6.70 g, 48.5 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (130 mL) was cooled to -15 °C in a salt-ice bath and then added dropwise to a solution of bromine (7.70 g, 48.2 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (80 mL). After addition was complete, the reaction was allowed to stir at -15 °C for 1 hour. Ice water (100 mL) was added to the reaction mixture and the aqueous layer

10 was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide compound **28B** (11.0 g, quant.), which was used without further purification.

Step B – Synthesis of Compound 28C

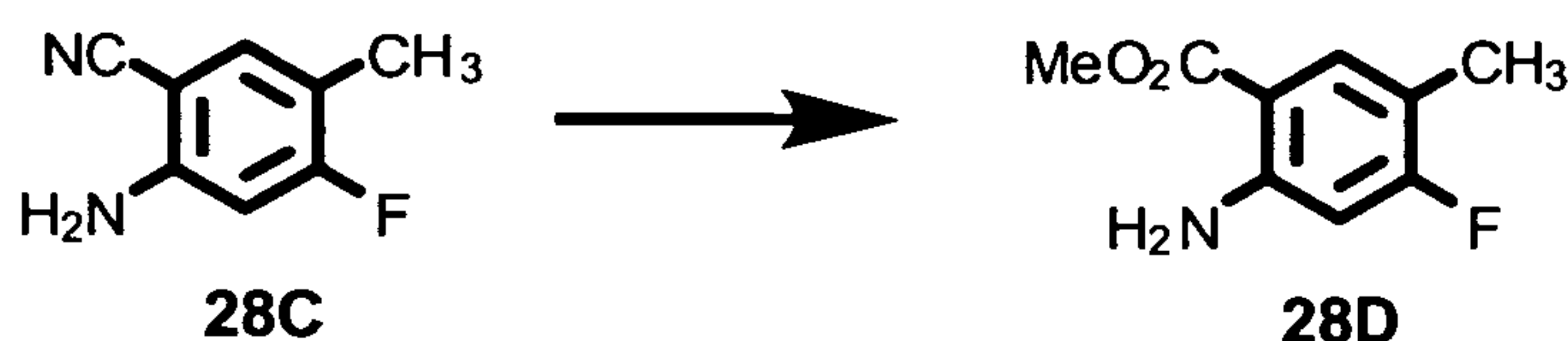
15 Compound **28B** was dissolved in DMF (150 mL) and to this solution was added copper (I) cyanide (11.0 g, 123 mmol). The mixture was heated to 160 °C and allowed to stir at this temperature for 20 hours. After being cooled to room temperature, with water (200 mL), iron (III) chloride (42.0 g, 155 mmol) and concentrated hydrochloric acid (20 mL) were added to

20 the reaction mixture and the resulting reaction was allowed to stir for 45 minutes. The reaction mixture was then basified to pH > 10 using commercial ammonium hydroxide solution. The basic solution was then extracted with ethyl acetate (4 x 400 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue obtained was purified using flash chromatography to provide compound

200

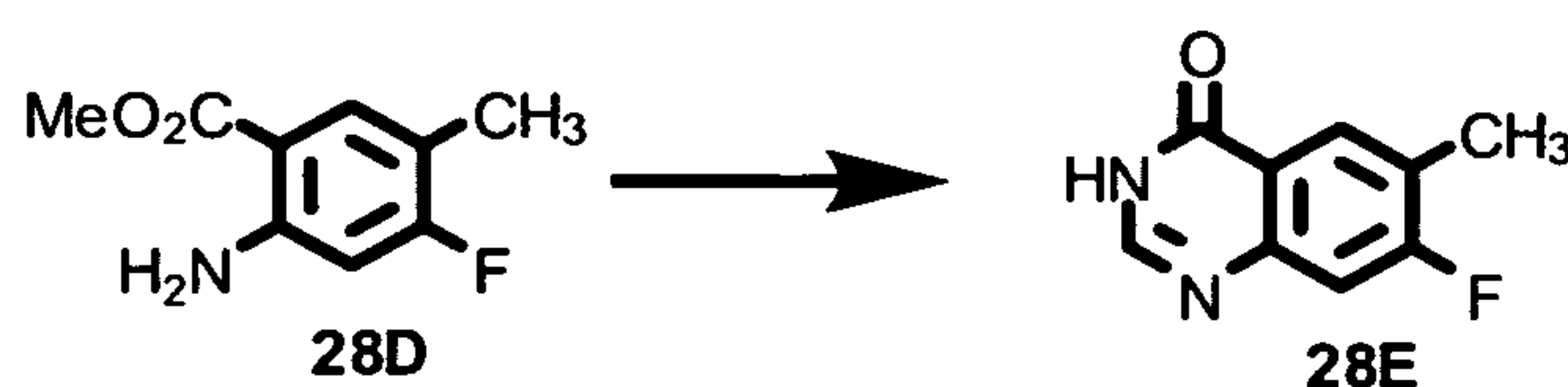
28C (5.82 g, 81 %). ^1H NMR (400 MHz, d_6 -DMSO): δ 7.34 (d, $J = 8.4$ Hz, 1H), 6.52 (d, $J = 12.4$ Hz, 1H), 6.10 (s, 2 H), 2.08 (s, 3 H).

Step C – Synthesis of Compound 28D



To a solution of **28C** (2.0 g, 13.3 mmol) in anhydrous methanol (15 mL) at room temperature was added concentrated sulfuric acid (4.0 mL). The reaction mixture was heated to 70 °C and stirred for four days. After cooled to room temperature, it was poured into with ice water. The mixture was then diluted with ethyl acetate (200 mL) and was made basic (pH > 10) with commercial ammonium hydroxide solution. The layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic solution was dried over MgSO_4 and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product which was purified using flash chromatography to provide compound **28D** (1.0 g, 41 %) and some recovered **28C**. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, d_6 -DMSO): δ 7.61 (d, $J = 8.8$ Hz, 1H), 6.69 (s, 2 H), 6.51 (d, $J = 12.0$ Hz, 1 H), 3.77 (s, 3 H), 2.06 (s, 3 H).

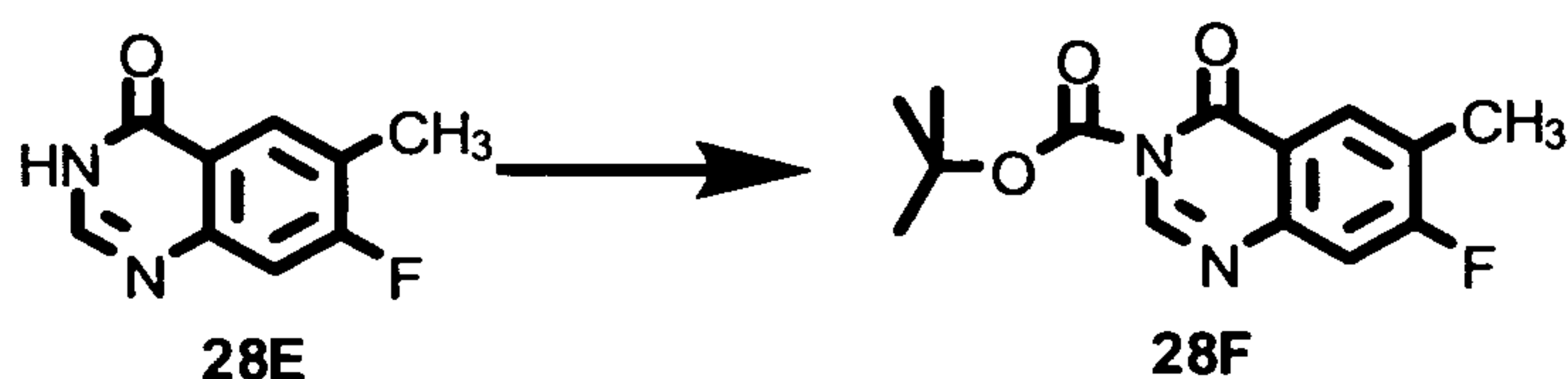
Step D – Synthesis of Compound 28E



The solution of compound **28D** (500 mg, 2.73 mmol) in formamide (6.0 mL) was heated to 150 °C in an oil bath and stirred for 18 hours. After cooled to room temperature, ethyl acetate (100 mL) and water (100 mL) were added and the layers were separated. The organic solution was washed with water (2 x 60 mL), dried over MgSO_4 and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product **28E** (0.50 g, quant.) which was used without further purification. MS found for $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7\text{FN}_2\text{O}$: 179.0 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

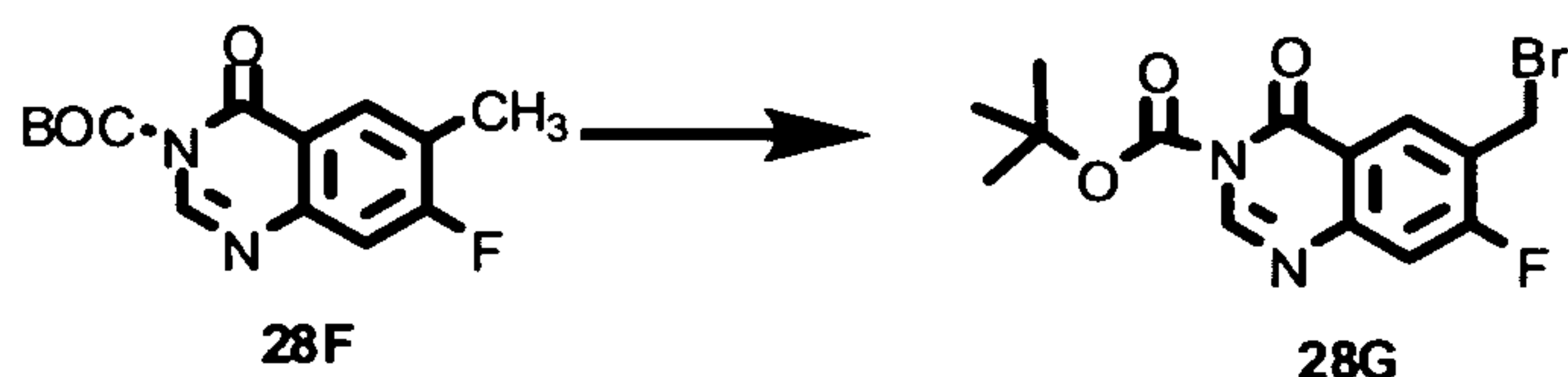
Step E – Synthesis of Compound 28F

201



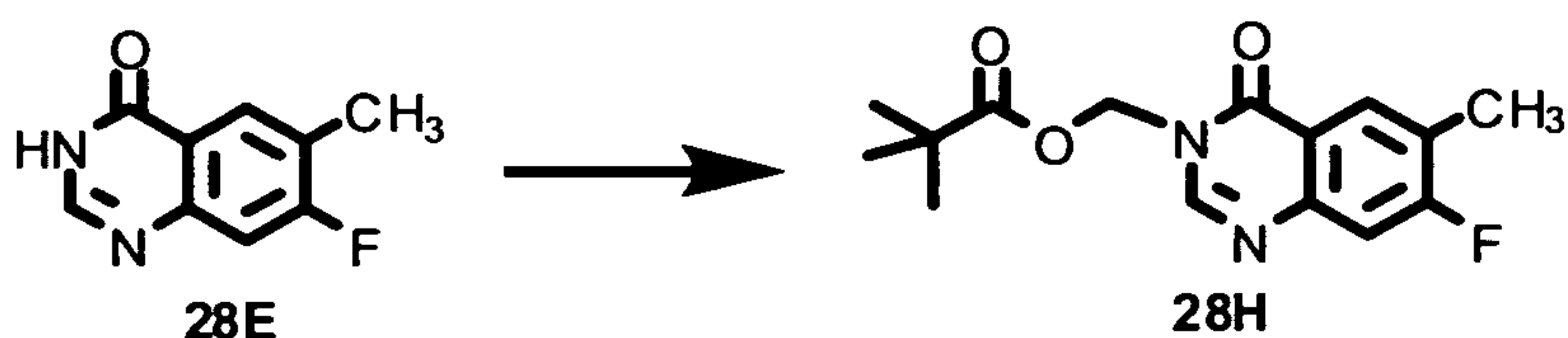
To a solution of **28E** (from Step 4) in anhydrous THF (20 mL) at room temperature was added di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (1.84 g, 8.43 mmol), 4-dimethylaminopyridine (350 mg, 2.86 mmol) and triethyl amine (0.40 mL, 2.87 mmol). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 18 hours. Ethyl acetate (100 mL) and water (100 mL) were added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 50 mL). The combined organic solution was dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product which was purified using flash chromatography to provide compound **28F** (285 mg, 36 %). MS found for C₁₄H₁₅FN₂O₃: 179.0 (M+H-100)⁺.

Step F – Synthesis of Compound 28G



The mixture of **28F** (282 mg, 1.01 mmol), NBS (253 mg, 1.42 mmol) and AIBN (58 mg, 0.353 mmol) in anhydrous carbon tetrachloride (60 mL) was heated to 90 °C in an oil bath and stirred for 4 hours. After cooled to room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo*, the resulting residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The layers were separated. The organic solution was washed with water (100 mL), dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product **28G** (453 mg, quant.) which was used without further purification.

Alternate Step E – Synthesis of Compound 28H



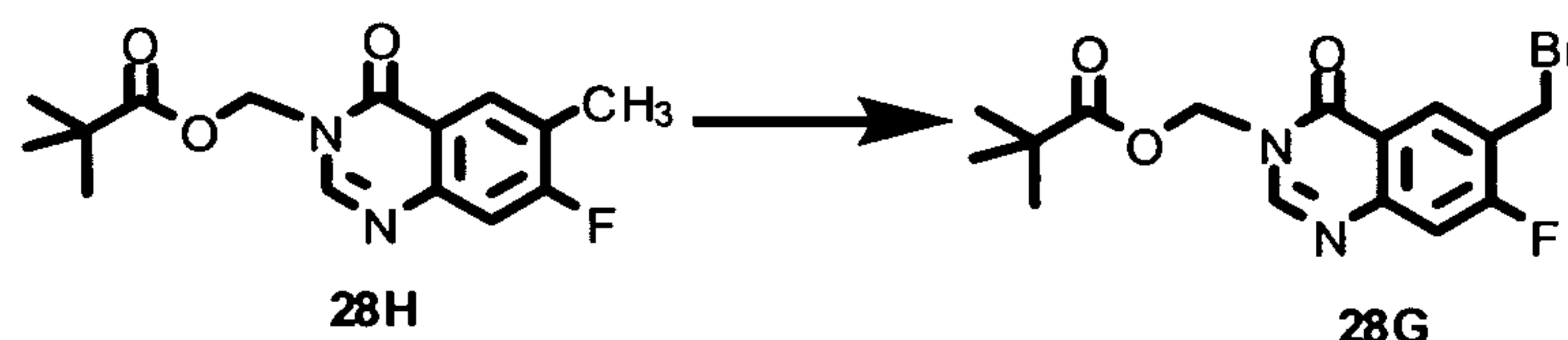
To a solution of **28E** (0.8 g, 4.49 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (50 mL) at room temperature was added chloromethylpivalate (0.085 mL, 5.9 mmol), and cesium carbonate (2.9g, 8.91 mmol). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 18 hours. Ethyl acetate (100

202

mL) and water (100 mL) were added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 50 mL). The combined organic layer was back-washed twice with water, and then dried over MgSO_4 and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product. Purification via flash chromatography afforded compound **28H** (0.8 g, 61 %).

5

Alternate Synthesis of Compound 28G from Compound 28H



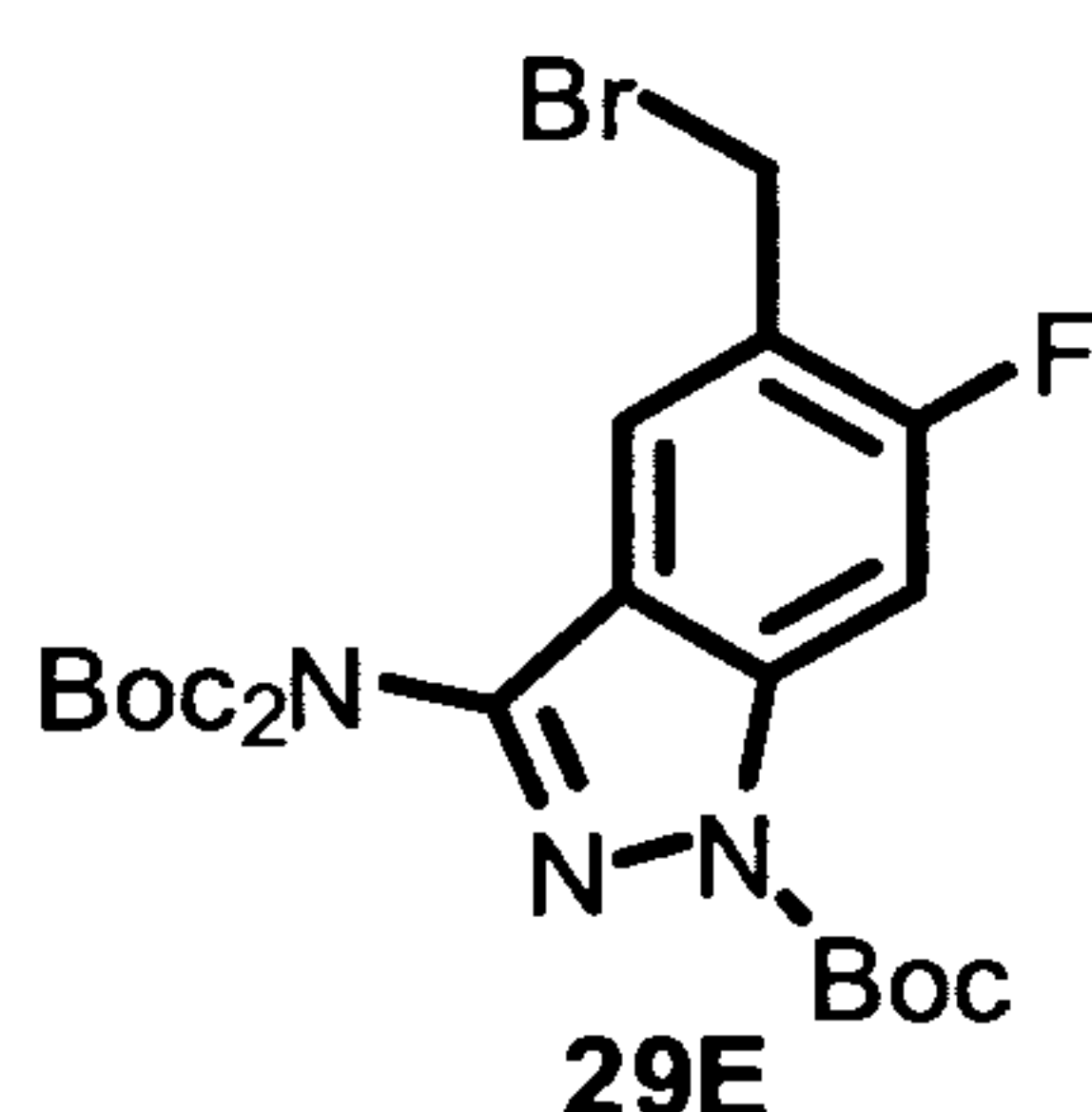
10

The mixture of **28H** (0.8 g, 2.74 mmol), NBS (0.685 g, 3.85 mmol) and benzoylperoxide (0.28 g, 0.826 mmol) in anhydrous carbon tetrachloride (100 mL) was heated to 90 °C in an oil bath. After 6 hours the reaction was cooled to room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo*, the resulting residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The layers were separated. The organic solution was washed with water (100 mL), dried over MgSO_4 and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product **28I** (1.0 g, quant.) which was used without further purification.

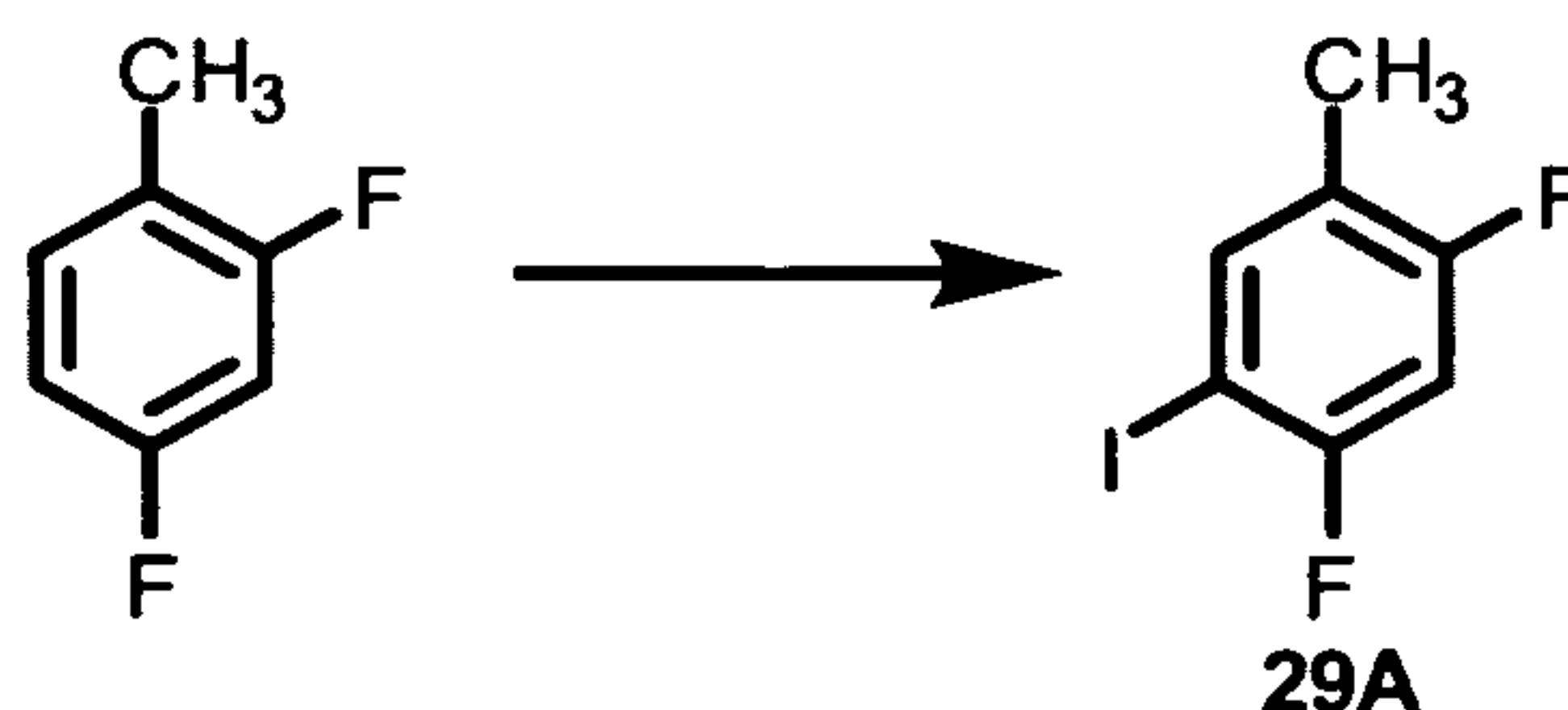
15

Example 29

Preparation of Intermediate Compound **29E**



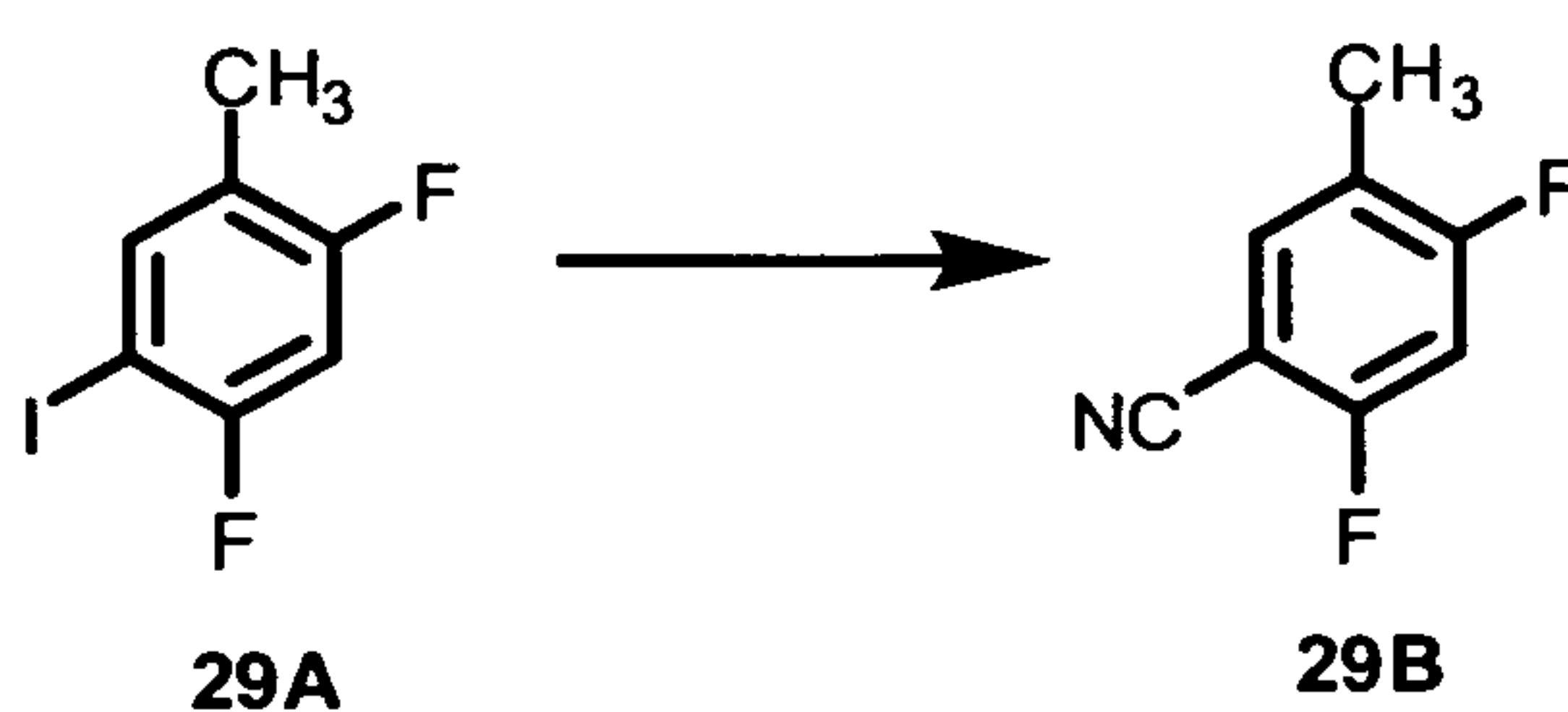
20 *Step A – Synthesis of Compound 29A*



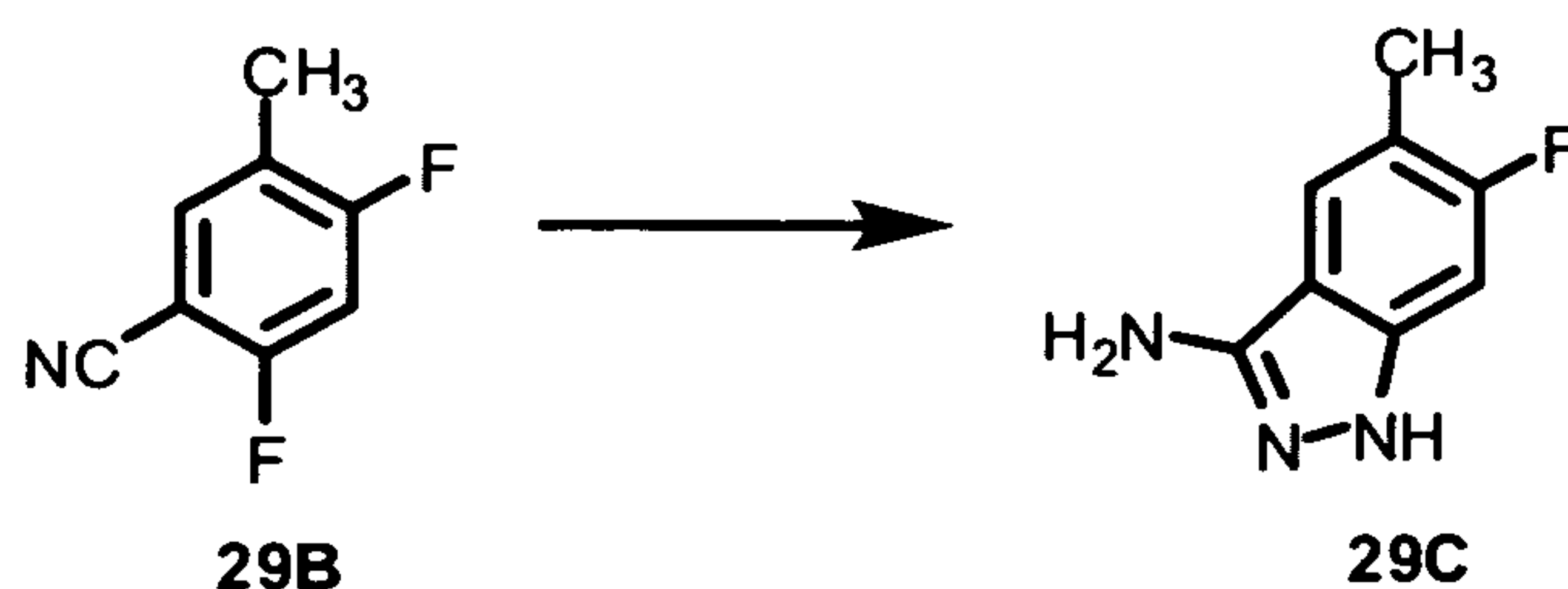
A solution of 2,4-difluorotoluene (4.72 g, 36.8 mmol) in trifluoroacetic acid (12.29 mL,

203

159.5 mmol) was cooled to 0 °C, then N-Iodosuccinimide (9.59 g, 42.6 mmol) was added and the resulting reaction was allowed to stir at room temperature for about 15 hours. The reaction mixture was then concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue obtained was dissolved in hexanes (100 mL), washed with aqueous sodium thiosulfate (100 mL), brine (100 mL), then dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was purified using bulb-to-bulb distillation to provide compound **29A** (7.2 g, 77%) as a colorless oil.

Step B – Synthesis of Compound 29B

A solution of compound **29A** (7.11 g, 28.0 mmol), zinc cyanide (1.97 g, 16.8 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (3.23 g, 2.80 mmol) in DMF (30 mL) was heated to 90 °C and allowed to stir at this temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue obtained was taken up in water (400 mL) and extracted with ether (400 mL). The organic extract was washed with aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution (1N). The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄) filtered, concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a residue that was purified using flash column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc/Hexanes) to provide a mixture that contained product and triphenylphosphine. This mixture was further purified using sublimation at 1 mm/Hg at 45 °C to provide compound **29B** (1.8 g; Yield = 42%).

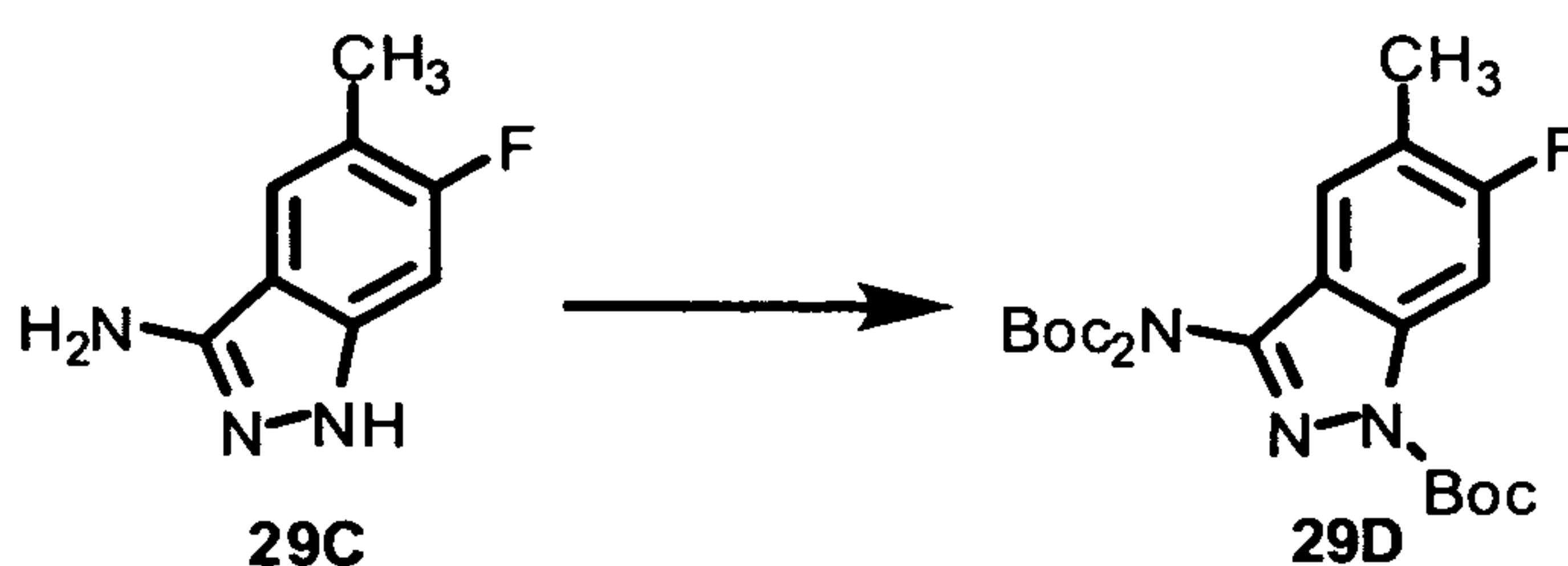
Step C – Synthesis of Compound 29C

A solution of compound **29B** (1.400 g, 9.154 mmol) and hydrazine (0.700 mL, 22.3 mmol) in isopropyl alcohol (50 mL, 653.1 mmol), was heated to reflux and allowed to stir at this temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature,

204

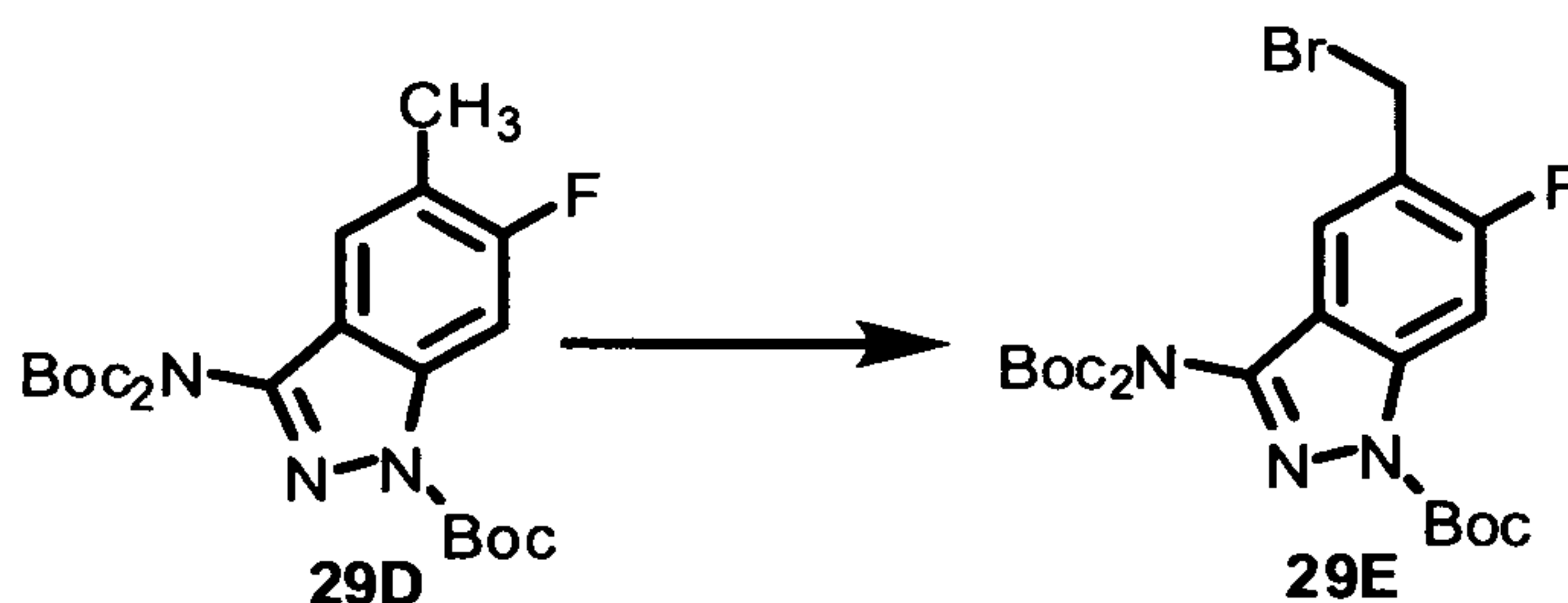
concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue obtained was purified using flash column chromatography (SiO₂, Acetone/Hexanes 0→ 50%) to provide compound **29C** (330 mg, 22%).

Step D – Synthesis of Compound 29D



A solution of compound **29C** (330.00 mg, 1.998 mmol), di-tert-butylidicarbonate (2.6163 g, 11.98 mmol) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (48.817 mg, 0.39959 mmol) in acetonitrile (15mL, 287.2 mmol) was heated to reflux and allowed to stir at this temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, concentrated *in vacuo*, and the resulting residue was purified using flash column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc/Hexanes 0- 20 %) to provide compound **29D** (640.00 mg, 68%) as a colorless oil.

Step E - Synthesis of Compound 29E

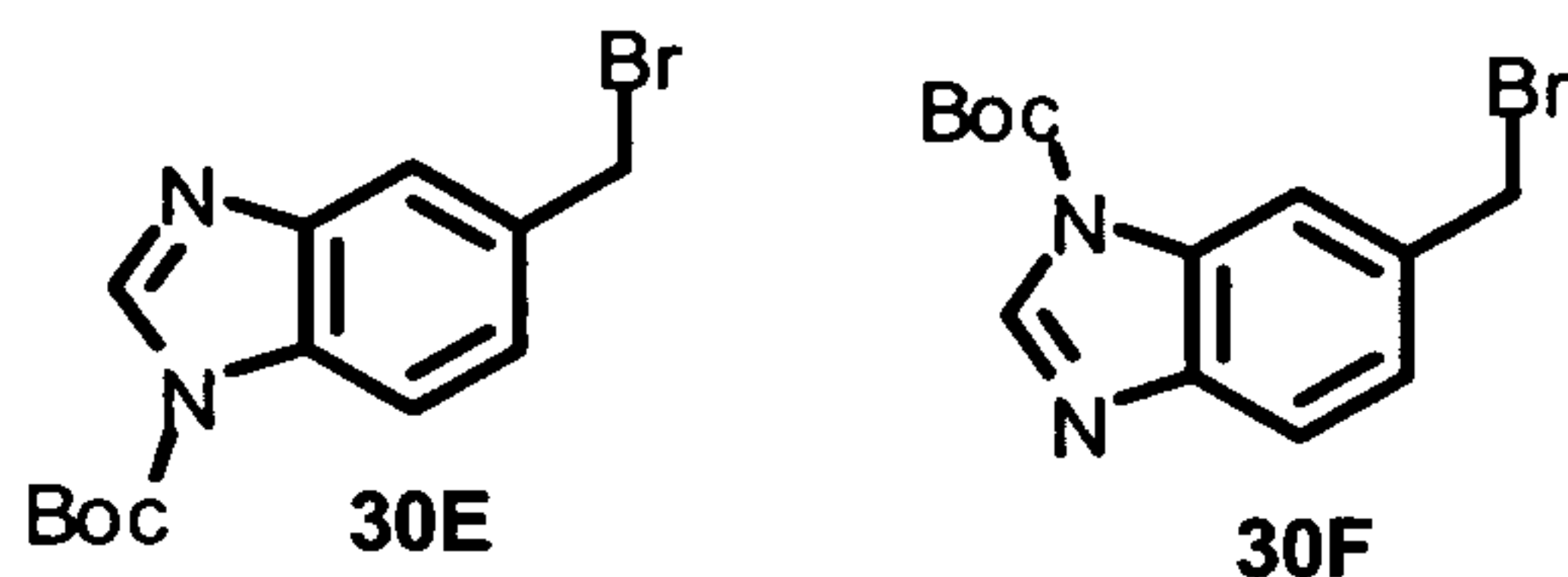


A solution of compound **29D** (630.00 mg, 1.3533 mmol), N-bromosuccinimide (337.22 mg, 1.8947 mmol) and benzoyl peroxide (65.563 mg, 0.27067 mmol) in carbon tetrachloride (20 mL) was heated to reflux and allowed to stir at this temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue obtained was dissolved in EtOAc (300 mL). The resulting solution was washed with aqueous sodium thiosulfate (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue obtained was purified using flash column chromatography (SiO₂, EtOAc/Hexanes) to provide compound **29E** as a colorless oil.

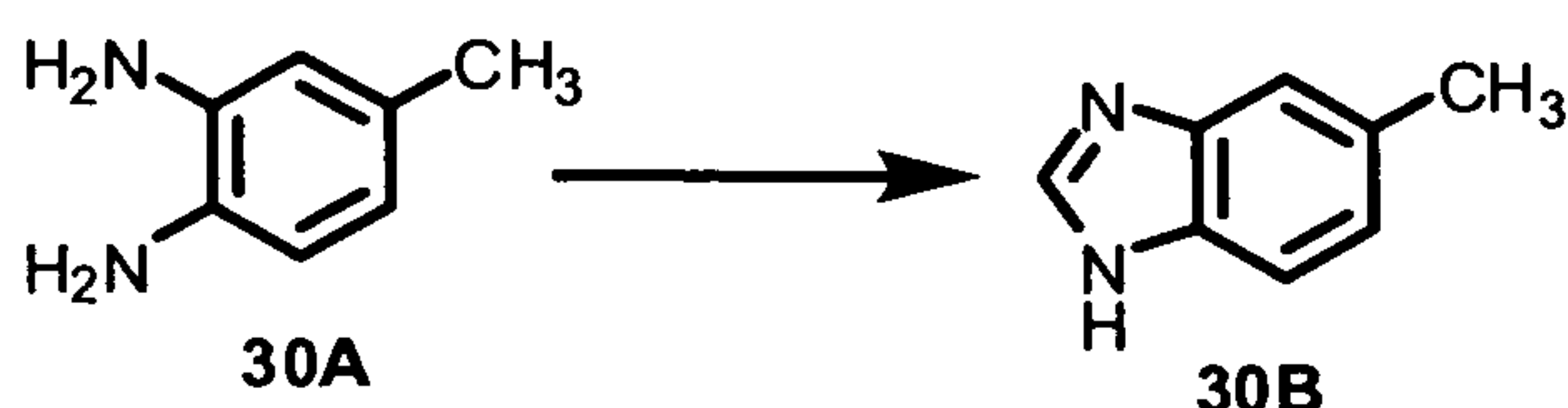
Example 30

Preparation of Intermediate Compounds **30E** and **30F**

205

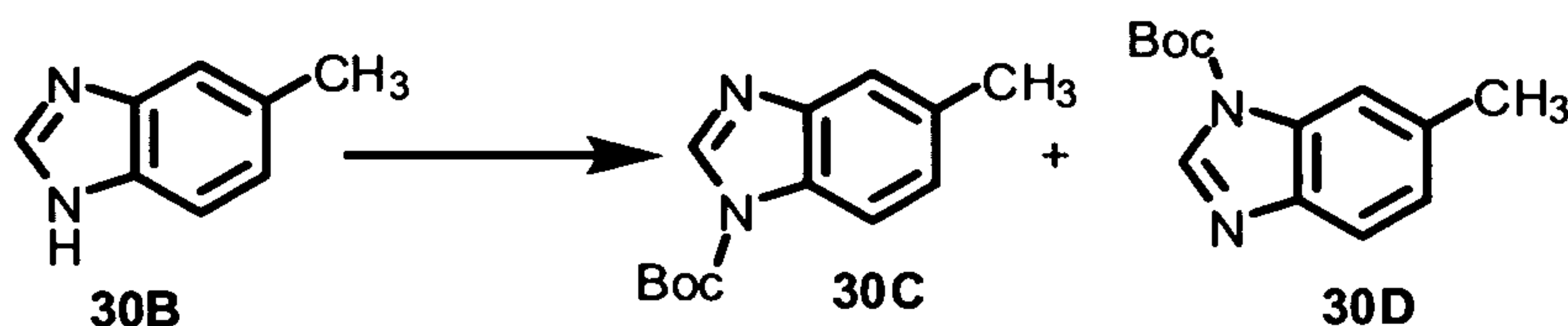


Step A – Synthesis of Compound 30B



5 A solution of compound **30A** (3 g, 24.5 mmol) in trimethyl orthoformate (15 mL) was treated with 2 drops conc. HCl and heated to 80 °C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide compound **30B** (3.65 g), which was used without further purification. M.S. found for C₈H₈N₂: 133.2 (M+H)⁺.

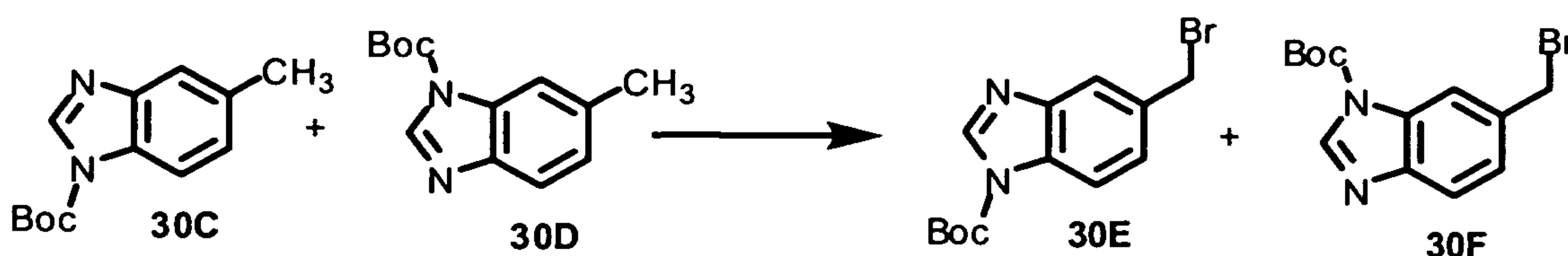
10 *Step B – Synthesis of Compounds 30C and 30D*



To a solution of compound **30B** (24.5 mmol) in CH₃CN (65 mL) was added di-tertbutyl dicarbonate (5.89 g, 27.0 mmol), triethylamine (3.76 mL, 27.0 mmol) and 4-dimethylamino pyridine (300 mg, 2.45 mmol) and the resulting reaction was heated to 80 °C and allowed to stir at this temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue obtained was purified using flash column chromatography (silica gel, EtOAc/Hexanes 5-20%) to provide a mixture of isomeric compounds **30C** and **30D** (5.38 g, 94.3% yield over steps A and B).

15

20 *Step C – Synthesis of Compounds 30E and 30F*

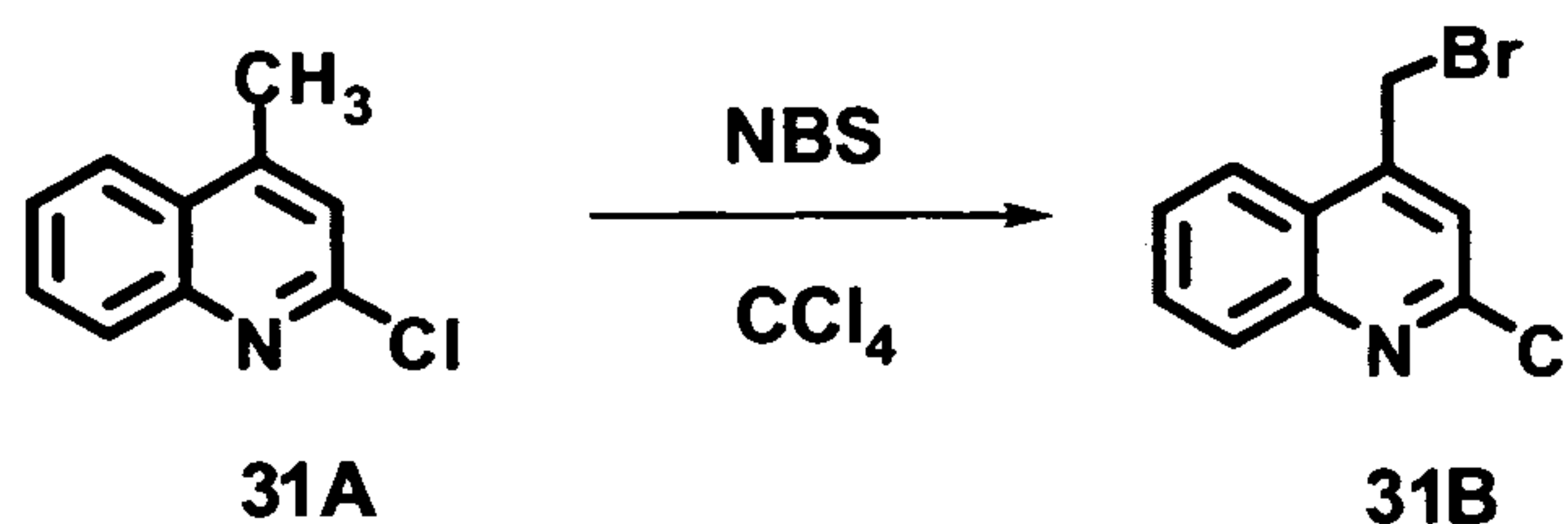


206

To a solution of compounds **30C** and **30D** (2 g, 8.61 mmol) in carbon tetrachloride (40 mL) was added N-bromosuccinimide (1.6 g, 9.04 mmol) and dibenzoyl peroxide (41.7 mg, 0.1722 mmol) and the resulting reaction was heated to 90 °C and allowed to stir at this temperature for 12 hours. The reaction was cooled to room temperature, solids were filtered off and the filtrate was washed with water, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide compounds **30E** and **30F** (2.58 g) which was used without further purification. M.S. found for C₁₃H₁₅BrN₂O₂: 334.7 (M+Na)⁺.

Example 31

Preparation of Intermediate Compound **31B**

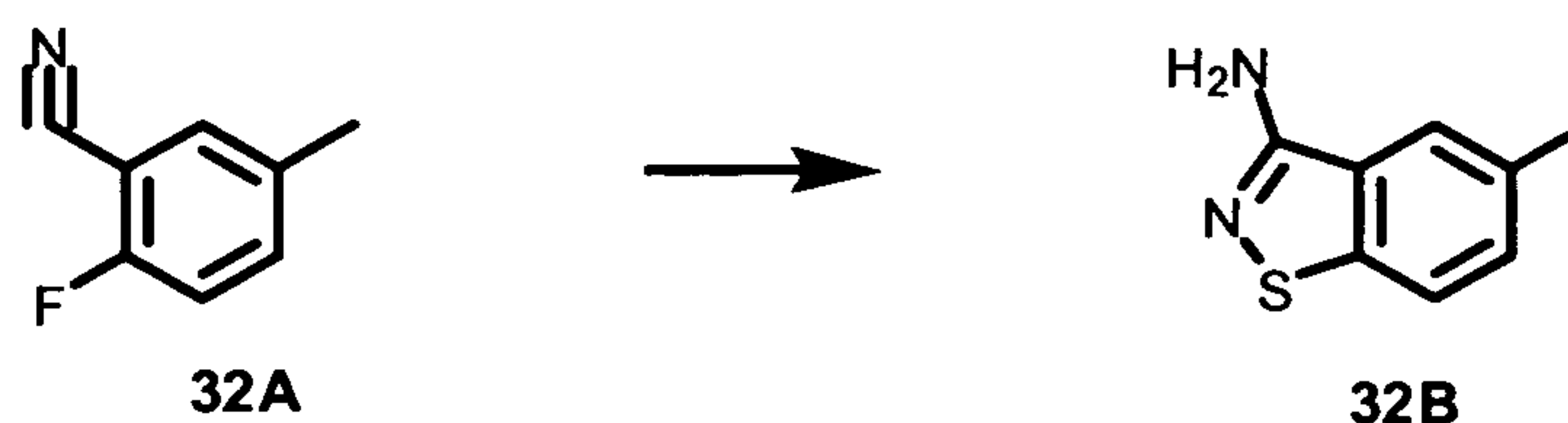


A mixture of compound **31A** (1.5 g, 8.44 mmol), NBS (1.8 g, 10.11 mmol) in carbon tetrachloride (50 mL) was heated to reflux, then benzoyl peroxide (0.21 g, 0.866 mmol) was added. The resulting suspension was allowed to stir at reflux for 19 hours, then cooled to room temperature and filtered. The filtrate was washed with saturated sodium carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a mixture (1.7 g) which contains about 50% of compound **31B**, and was used without further purification.

Example 32

Preparation of Intermediate Compound **32D**

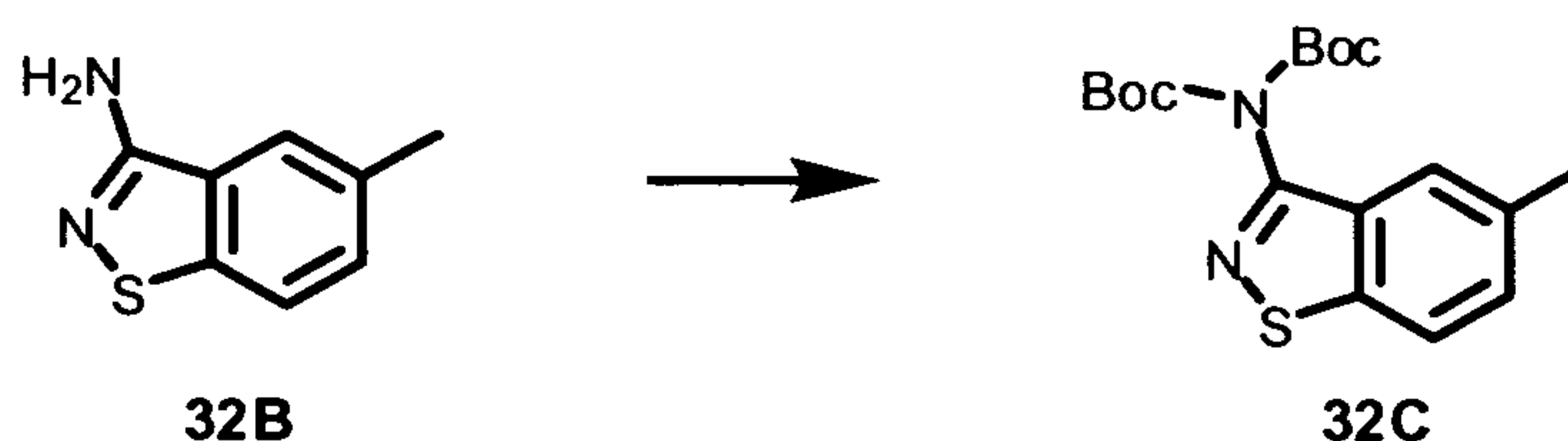
Step A – Synthesis of Compound **32B**



A mixture of 2-fluoro-5-methylbenzonitrile (**32A**, 2.0 g; 14.799 mmol) and sodium sulfide (1.0 eq, 1.15 g) was dissolved in 150 mL of DMSO and heated at 70 °C overnight. The mixture was placed in an ice-water bath and treated with concentrated aqueous ammonium hydroxide (20 mL) and aqueous sodium hypochlorite (20 mL). The reaction mixture was

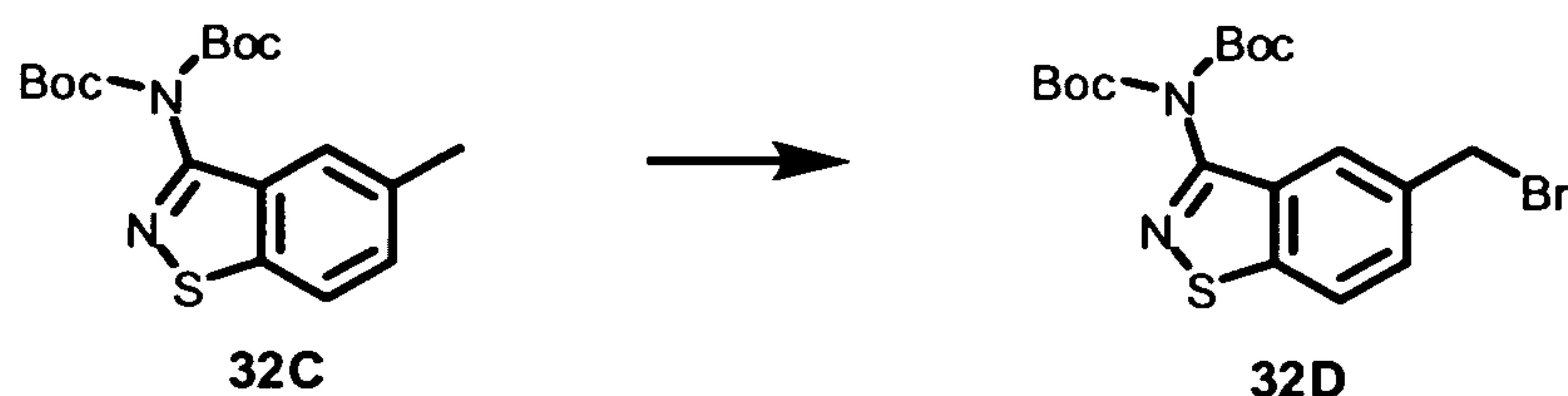
allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 5 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (300 mL) and washed with water (2 x 60 mL) and brine (50 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was adsorbed on silica gel and purified on a Biotage 40-M silica gel column (gradient: 0 to 30 % acetone in hexanes) to provide the product **32B** (860 mg; 36 %) as a white solid. ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃; 400 MHz): δ 7.68 (1H, d, J = 8.54 Hz), 7.48 (1H, s), 7.33 (1H, d, J = 8.54 Hz), 4.89 (2H, broad s), 2.50 (3H, s).

Step B – Synthesis of Compound 32C



A solution of 5-methylbenzo[d]isothiazol-3-ylamine (**32B**, 850 mg; 5.176 mmol) in dry acetonitrile (50 mL) was treated with Boc-anhydride (2.1 eq, 2.37 g) and heated to 50 °C. All starting material had been consumed after 2 h and the mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* to one third of its volume. The resulting residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL) and washed with aqueous sodium hydrogen sulfate (20 mL), and brine (20 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was adsorbed on silica gel and purified on a Biotage 40-M silica gel column (gradient: 0 to 10 % ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide the product **32C** (1.7 g; 91 %) as a white powder. ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃; 400 MHz): δ 7.77 (1H, d, J = 8.54 Hz), 7.55 (1H, s), 7.38 (1H, dd, J = 1.83, 8.54 Hz), 2.51 (3H, s), 1.36 (18H, s). LR-MS (ESI): calcd for C₁₈H₂₅N₂O₄S [M+H]⁺ 365.15; found 365.23.

Step C – Synthesis of Compound 32D



A solution of N,N-bis-Boc-5-methyl-benzo[d]isothiazol-3-ylamine (**32D**, 500 mg; 1.371 mmol) in 15 mL of carbon tetrachloride was treated N-bromosuccinimide (1.05 eq, 256

208

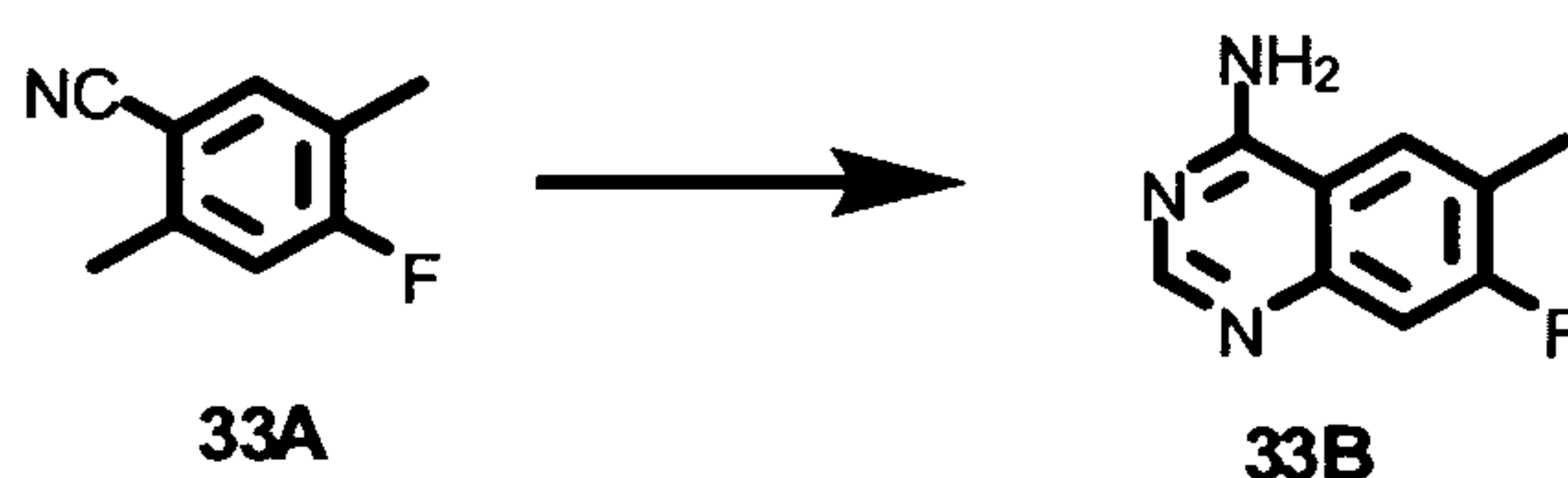
mg) and benzoyl peroxide (10 mol%; 33 mg). The solution was degassed (vacuum/argon flush) and then heated to 75 °C for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated to one third of its volume *in vacuo* and the resulting residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (50 mL). The solution was washed with aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate soln (2 x 10 mL) and brine (10 mL).

- 5 The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was adsorbed on silica gel and purified on a Biotage 40-S silica gel column (gradient: hexanes then 0 to 10 % ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide the product **32D** (396 mg; 69 %) as a white solid. ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃; 400 MHz): δ 7.87 (1H, d, J = 8.54 Hz), 7.78 (1H, s), 7.58 (1H, dd, J = 1.83, 8.54 Hz), 4.63 (2H, s), 1.37 (18H, s). LR-MS (ESI): calcd for C₁₈H₂₄BrN₂O₄S [M+H]⁺ 445.06; found 445.24.
- 10

Example 33

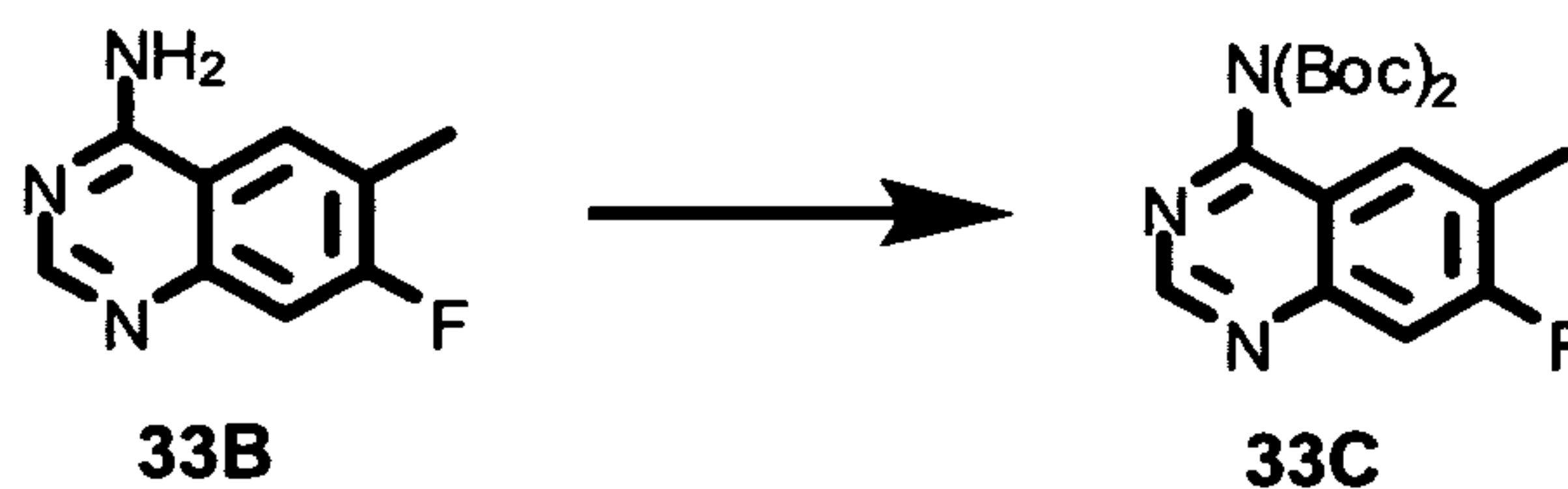
Preparation of Intermediate Compound **33D**

15 Step A – Synthesis of Compound **33B**



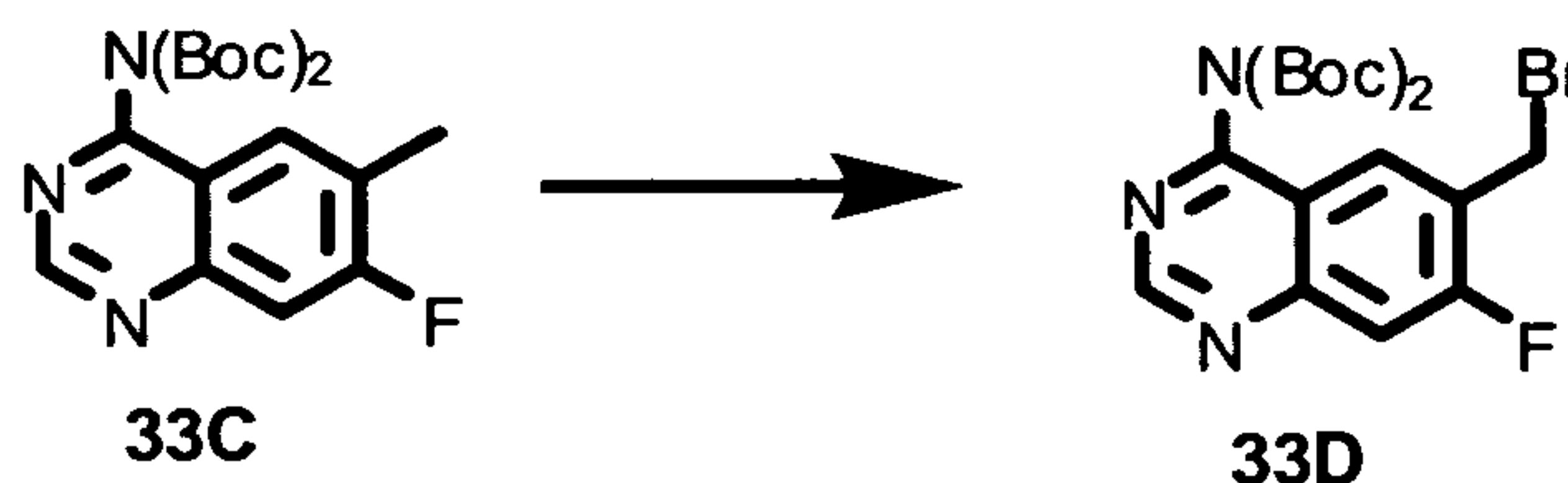
- A solution of **33A** (0.20 g, 1.33 mmol) in formamide (15 mL) was heated to 150 °C and stirred for 18 hours. After cooled to room temperature, ethyl acetate (60 mL) and water (30 mL) were added and the layers were separated. The organic solution was washed with water (3x20 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the crude product **33B** (0.22 g, 93 %). MS found for C₉H₈FN₃: 178.2 (M+H)⁺.
- 20

Step B – Synthesis of Compound **33C**



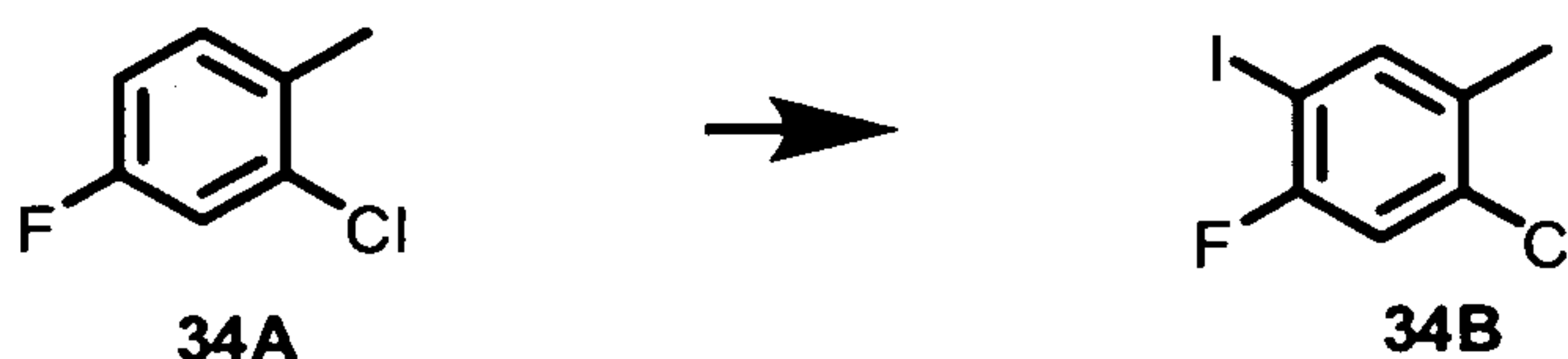
- 25 Compound **33B** was treated with 3.0 equivalent of (Boc)₂O to provide compound **33C**. MS found for C₁₉H₂₄FN₃O₄: 378.4 (M+H)⁺.

209

Step C – Synthesis of Compound 33D

Bromination of compound **33C** using standard conditions with N-bromo succinimide provided compound **33D**. MS found for $C_{19}H_{23}BrFN_3O_4$: 458.3 (M+H)⁺.

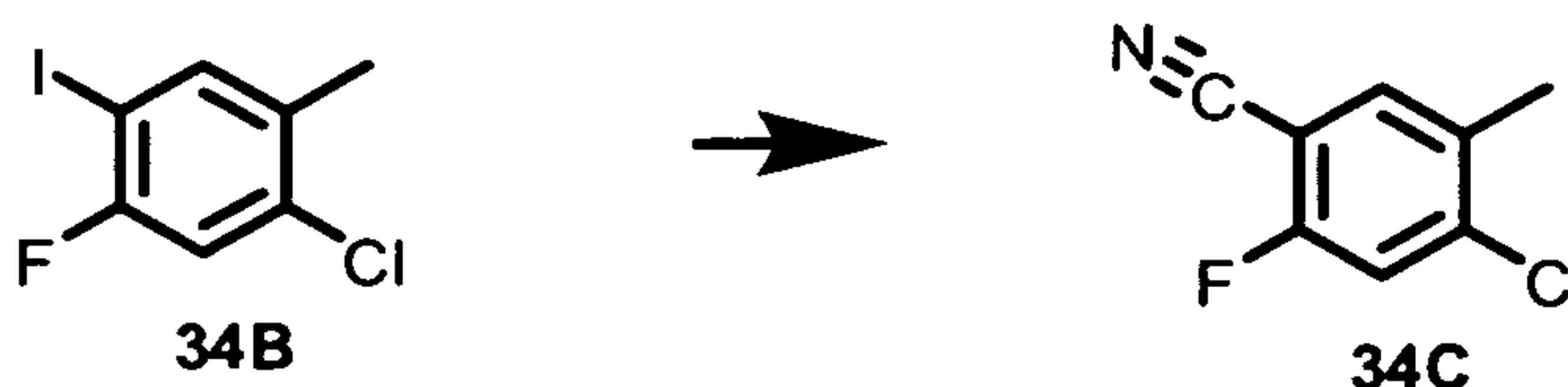
5

Example 34Preparation of Intermediate Compound **34F***Step A – Synthesis of Compound 34B*

10

N-iodosuccinimide (1.1 eq; 17.1 g) was added to a solution of 2,4-difluoro toluene (**34A**, 10.0 g; 69.17 mmol; Alfa Aesar) in trifluoroacetic acid (46 mL). The reaction was set to stir for 12 hours. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure; the remaining slurry was diluted with ether (400 mL) and washed with 5% aq sodium thiosulfate (5x40 mL), water (2x30 mL), and brine (40 mL). The organic layer was collected, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The reaction was purified via bulb to bulb distillation to afford product **34B** as a colorless liquid (17 g; 91%)

15

Step B – Synthesis of Compound 34C

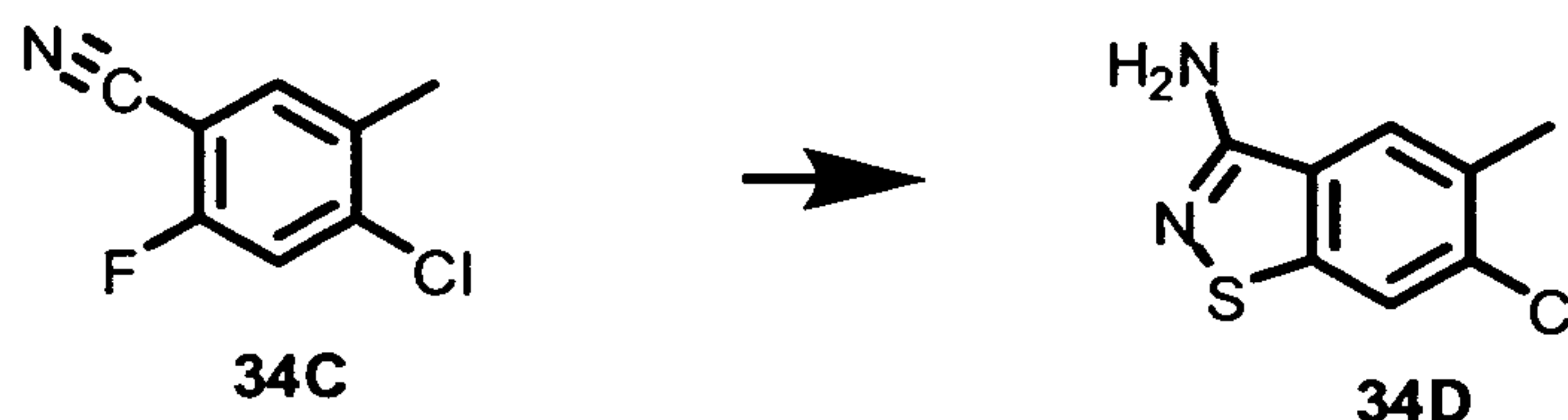
20

A solution of intermediate **34B** (13.0 g; 48.06 mmol) and zinc cyanide (1 eq; 5.644 g) in N,N-dimethylformamide (50 mL) was treated with tetrakis (triphenylphosphine) palladium(0) (0.1 eq; 5.55 g) and heated at 90 °C for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ether (600 mL) and ammonium hydroxide (1:1 concentrated ammonium hydroxide: water 200 mL). The organic layer was separated and washed with water (100 mL)

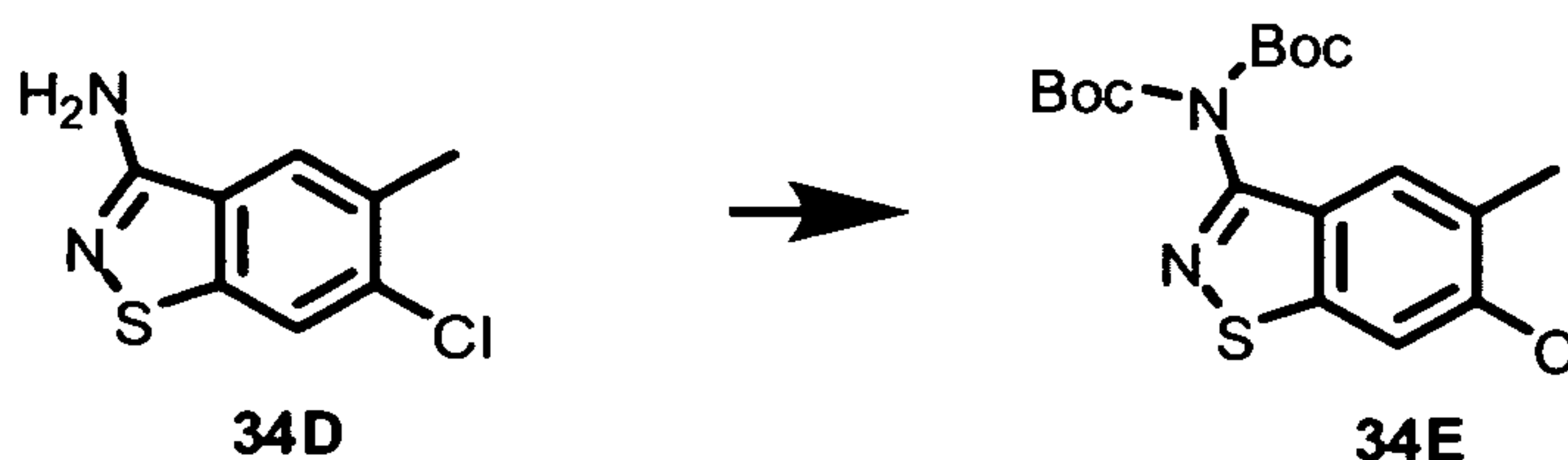
25

210

and brine (100 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, concentrated *in vacuo*, and purified over silica gel first eluting with hexanes, then with 20% ethyl acetate/hexanes. Product **34C** (4.48 g; 33%) was afforded as a clear oil.

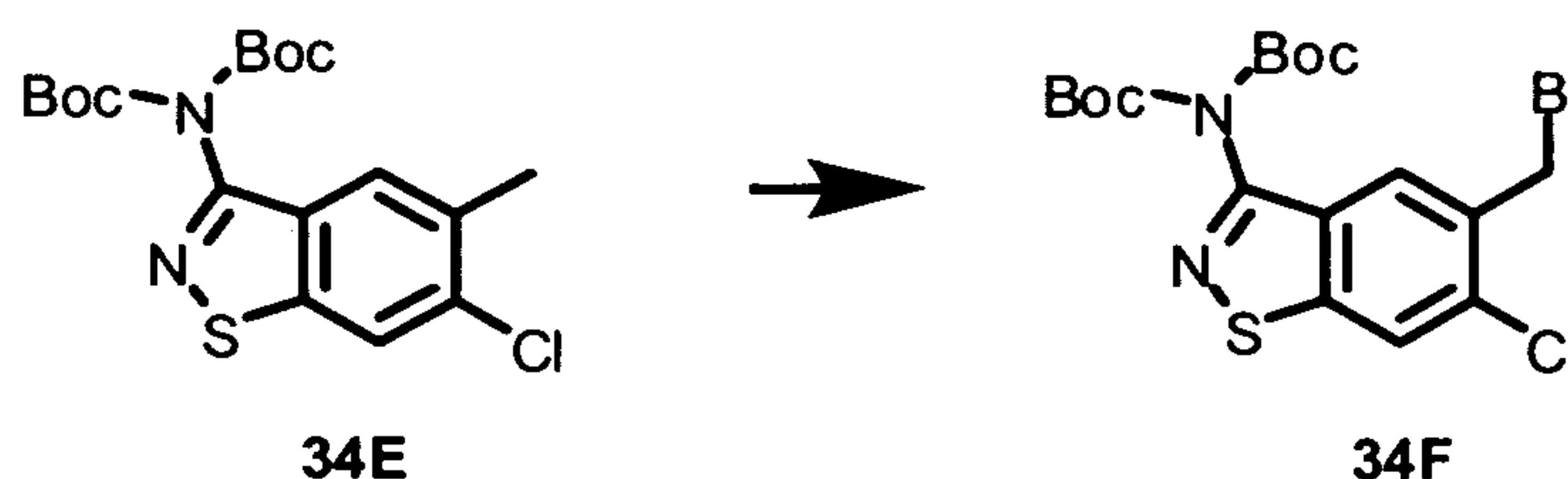
5 *Step C – Synthesis of Compound 34D*

A solution of **34C** (2.25 g; 13.27 mmol) and sodium sulfide (1 eq; 1.035 g) was prepared in DMSO (130 mL) and heated at 70 °C overnight. The mixture was placed in an ice water bath and treated with concentrated aqueous ammonium hydroxide (30 mL) and aqueous sodium hypochlorite (30 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 5 h (temp from 0 to 25 °C). The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (400 mL) and washed with water (2x40 mL) and brine (50 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was adsorbed on silica gel and purified on an ISCO 330G column (gradient: 0-30% acetone in hexanes), affording product **34D** (800 mg; 30.3%) as a white solid.

Step D – Synthesis of Compound 34E

A solution of intermediate **34D** (780 mg; 3.93 mmol) in dry acetonitrile (39 mL) was treated with Boc-anhydride (2.2 eq; 1.885 g) and heated to 50 °C. All starting material had been consumed after 2 h and the mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* to one third of its volume. The resulting residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL) and washed with aqueous sodium hydrogen sulfate (20 mL) and brine (20 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was adsorbed on silica gel and purified on a ISCO 80 gram column (gradient: 0 to 10% ethyl acetate in hexanes) to provide the product **34E** (1.03 g; 66% yield) as a white solid.

211

Step E – Synthesis of Compound 34F

A solution of intermediate **34E** (400 mg; 1.003 mmol), N-Bromosuccinimide (1.05 eq; 187.4 mg), and benzoyl peroxide (0.1 eq; 24.3 mg) in dry carbon tetrachloride (10 mL) was prepared and heated at reflux for 12 hours. TLC (30% ethyl acetate in hexanes) revealed the reaction had partially progressed. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (25 mL) and brine (25 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was then diluted with dichloromethane, adsorbed onto silica gel, and purified on ISCO (25-M Column; 0-40% ethyl acetate in hexanes). The fractions containing product were concentrated *in vacuo* affording intermediate **34F** (278 mg; 58%) as a clear yellow oil.

Example 35**NMR Data For Selected Compounds of the Invention**

Cmpd No.	NMR data
161	¹ H NMR δ (DMSO) 7.98 (d, 1H, J = 8.20 Hz), 7.81-7.76 (m, 2H), 7.66-7.64 (m, 1H), 7.59-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.48 (d, 1H, J = 7.57 Hz), 7.42 (d, 1H, J = 5.36 Hz), 7.20 (s, 1H), 6.36 (t, 1H, J = 6.62 Hz), 5.90 (s, 2H), 3.50 (s, 3H), 2.31 (s, 3H).
162	¹ H NMR δ (DMSO) δ 7.99 (d, 1H, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.80-7.76 (m, 2H), 7.64 (dd, 1H, J = 6.6, 2.2 Hz), 7.58-7.54 (m, 2H), 7.44 (d, 1H, J = 4.7 Hz), 7.38 (d, 1H, J = 7.25 Hz), 7.18 (s, 1H), 6.37 (t, 1H, J = 6.6 Hz), 5.94 (s, 2H), 2.31 (s, 3H); ¹³ C NMR δ (DMSO) δ 162.4, 161.3, 160.7(d), 148.0, 145.9, 140.4, 136.6 (d), 134.4, 130.6, 130.3, 127.5, 127.3, 127.2, 126.7, 125.1, 122.6, 122.4, 122.3, 118.7 (d), 118.0, 105.1, 96.7 (d), 45.7, 14.4.
163	¹ H NMR δ (CD ₃ Cl) 8.00 (s, 1H), 7.84-7.79 (m, 2H), 7.68 (t, 1H, J = 7.25 Hz), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 8.20

212

	Hz), 7.45 (t, 1H, J = 7.57 Hz), 7.37 (s, 1H), 7.29 (d, 1H, J = 6.94 Hz), 6.87 (d, 1H, J = 9.77 Hz), 6.66-6.64 (m, 1H), 6.04 (s, 2H), 5.85 (s, 2H), 2.31 (s, 3H), 1.21 (s, 9H).
164	¹ H NMR δ (CD ₃ Cl) 8.02 (d, 1H, J = 8.20 Hz), 7.68 (t, 1H, J = 7.25 Hz), 7.61-7.58 (m, 2H), 7.54 (dd, 1H, J = 6.94, 1.6 Hz), 7.46 (t, 1H, J = 7.25 Hz), 7.38 (d, 1H, J = 7.57 Hz), 7.28 (s, 1H), 6.89 (d, 1H, J = 10.09 Hz), 6.34 (t, 1H, J = 6.62 Hz), 5.99 (s, 2H), 5.89 (s, 2H), 5.72 (s, 2H), 2.32 (s, 3H), 1.24 (s, 9H), 1.03 (s, 9H).
180	¹ H NMR (400 MHz, D ₆ -DMSO), δ , 13.06 (b, 2 H), 11.79 (s, 1 H), 7.96 (s, 1 H), 7.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.8 & 6.7 Hz), 7.46 (d, 1 H, J = 11.0 Hz), 7.40 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.8 & 6.1 Hz), 7.34 (d, 1 H, J = 10.4 Hz), 7.31 (d, 1 H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 6.7 Hz), 6.32 (t, 1 H, J = 6.7 Hz), 5.87 (s, 2 H), 2.26 (s, 3 H). ¹³ C NMR (125 MHz, D ₆ -DMSO, F-coupled), δ 163.7, 162.2, 161.5, 161.0, 159.6, 159.0, 141.1, 137.3, 137.2, 135.1, 134.5, 128.4, 126.2, 123.3, 123.0, 123.0, 120.6, 120.4, 120.2, 120.1, 120.2, 119.4, 119.2, 118.0, 106.1, 106.1, 97.9, 97.7, 96.8, 96.6, 43.3, 43.3, 15.5, 15.5, 67.8, 25.9.
182	¹ H NMR δ (DMSO) δ 8.26 (d, 1H, J = 8.20 Hz), 7.87 (t, 1H, J = 8.20 Hz), 7.76 (d, 1H, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.63 (m, 2H), 7.51 (d, 1H, J = 11.0 Hz), 7.46 (d, 1H, J = 6.9 Hz), 7.41 (d, 1H, J = 7.25 Hz), 6.34 (t, 1H, J = 5.7 Hz), 6.21 (s, 2H), 5.60 (s, 1H), 2.31 (s, 3H).
183	¹ H NMR δ (CD ₃ OD) δ 7.93 (d, 1H, J = 8.20 Hz), 7.64 (d, 1H, J = 9.14 Hz), 7.50 (t, 1H, J = 7.25 Hz), 7.29-7.26 (m, 3H), 7.20 (d, 1H, J = 7.25 Hz), 6.85 (d, 1H, J = 10.72 Hz), 6.35 (t, 1H, J = 6.30 Hz), 6.10 (s, 2H), 5.53 (s, 1H), 2.19 (s, 3H).
189	¹ H-NMR (400 MHz, in dmsO-d6): δ 12.92 (1H, broad s), 11.77 (1H, s), 7.93 (1H, s), 7.79 (1H, d, J = 8.30 Hz), 7.53 (1H, dd, J = 1.95, 6.84 Hz), 7.46 (1H, d, J = 11.23 Hz), 7.39 (1H, d, J = 6.35 Hz), 7.29 (1H, d, J = 7.32 Hz), 7.05 (1H, dd, J = 0.98, 8.30 Hz), 6.75 (2H, broad s), 6.31 (1H, dd, J = 6.35, 6.84 Hz), 5.85 (2H, s), 2.26 (3H, s).
200	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl ₃) δ 12.83 (s, 1H), 11.82 (s, 1H), 7.98 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.78 (m, 2H), 7.63 (d, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.56 (t, J = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (d, J = 5.7 Hz, 1H), 7.40 (s, 1H), 7.28 (s, 1H), 7.14 (s, 1H), 6.38 (d, J = 6.0 Hz, 1H), 5.93 (s, 2H), 2.29 (s, 6H).

213

202	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl ₃) δ 7.26 (s, 1H), 6.96 (dd, J = 6.9, 1.9 Hz, 1H), 6.77 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.70 (dd, J = 6.6, 1.9 Hz, 1H), 6.63 (d, J = 10.7 Hz, 1H), 6.46 (s, 2H), 5.79 (t, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 5.20 (s, 2H), 1.57 (s, 3H), 1.53 (s, 3H).
204	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl ₃) δ 11.48 (s, 1H), 8.29 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 8.02 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.91 (s, 1H), 7.82 (m, 2H), 7.59 (m, 1H), 7.31 (m, 1H), 7.19 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.11 (m, 1H), 6.21 (m, 1H), 6.10 (s, 2H), 2.23 (s, 3H).
205	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, d ₆ -DMSO): δ 12.9 (bs, 1 H), 12.3 (bs, 1 H), 11.8 (bs, 1 H), 8.39 (d, J = 3.07 Hz, 1 H), 7.55 (q, J = 2.04 Hz, 1 H), 7.51 (d, J = 11.1 Hz, 2 H), 7.43 (d, J = 8.32 Hz, 1 H), 7.34 (d, J = 7.20 Hz, 1 H), 5.91 (s, 2 H), 2.29 (s, 3 H), MS found for C ₂₄ H ₁₆ N ₄ O ₄ F ₂ : 463.3 (M+H) ⁺ .
212	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD): δ 7.77 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.71 (dd, J = 2.2 Hz, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.52 (dd, J = 1.8 Hz, J = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.47 (s, 1H), 7.38 (dd, J = 1.9 Hz, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 7.33 (s, 1H), 7.31 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 6.92 (d, J = 10.7 Hz, 1H), 6.44 (t, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 5.97 (s, 2H), 2.40 (s, 3H), 2.27 (s, 3H).
213	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO): δ 13.01 (bs, 1H), 11.79 (s, 1H), 7.75 (s, 1H), 7.67 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.62 (d, 1H, J = 6.6 Hz), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 11 Hz), 7.40 (m, 3H), 7.10 (s, 1H), 6.35 (t, 1H, J = 6.2, 6.3 Hz), 5.9 (s, 2H), 2.28 (s, 3H). M.S. found: 476.3 (M+H) ⁺ .
216	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD): δ 7.76 (dd, J = 2.2 Hz, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.44-7.40 (m, 2H), 7.34 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (s, 1H), 7.02 (d, J = 1.9 Hz, 1H), 6.98 (dd, J = 2.2 Hz, J = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 6.94 (d, J = 10.4 Hz, 1H), 6.48 (t, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 5.93 (s, 2H), 2.31 (s, 3H).
217	¹ H-NMR (400 MHz, in dmsO-d ₆): δ 11.78 (1H, broad s), 7.95 (1H, d, J = 8.24 Hz), 7.85 (1H, s), 7.76 (2H, m), 7.62 (1H, dd, J = 1.65, 6.59 Hz), 7.54 (1H, dd, J = 7.14, 7.69 Hz), 7.46 (1H, s), 7.42 (1H, dd, J = 1.65, 6.59 Hz), 7.14 (1H, s), 6.35 (1H, t, J = 6.59), 5.94 (2H, s), 2.38 (3H, s); LC-MS (ESI): calcd. for C ₂₅ H ₁₈ ClN ₃ O ₃ ⁺ [M+H] ⁺ 478.07, found 477.96.
218	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, d ₆ -DMSO): δ 12.9 (bs, 1 H),

214

	11.7 (bs, 1 H), 11.3 (s, 1 H), 11.2 (s, 1 H), 7.54 – 7.47 (m, 2 H), 7.42 (d, J = 5.6 Hz, 1 H), 7.35 – 7.31 (m, 2 H), 6.92 (d, J = 10.6 Hz, 1 H), 6.33 (t, J = 6.3 Hz), 5.79 (s, 2 H), 2.28 (s, 3 H), MS found for $C_{24}H_{16}N_4O_5F_2$: 479.3 (M+H) ⁺ .
220	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, d ₆ -DMSO): δ 13.1 (bs, 1 H), 11.8 (bs, 1 H), 8.31 (d, J=9.39 Hz, 1 H), 7.55-7.51 (m, 3 H), 7.43-7.253 (m, 1 H), 7.248 (s, 1 H), 7.20-6.38 (m, 1 H), 6.37-6.34 (m, 1 H), 5.95 (s, 2 H), 3.29 (s, 3 H), 2.37 (s, 3 H), MS found for $C_{24}H_{18}N_3O_5F_2S$: 480.3 (M+H) ⁺ .
221	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO): δ 12.88 (bs, 1H), 11.82 (s,1H), 8.05(dd, 1H, J = 5.6, 5.3 Hz), 7.70 (m, 2H), 7.62 (d, 1H, J = 6.6 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 11 Hz), 7.45 (d, 1H, J = 6 Hz), 7.39 (d, 1H, J= 7.5 Hz), 7.21 (s, 1H), 6.35 (t, 1H, J = 6.2, 6.3 Hz) 5.92 (s, 2H), 2.30 (s, 3H). M.S. found: 480.3 (M+H) ⁺ .
222	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD): δ 7.83 (dd, J = 6.0 Hz, J = 9.1 Hz, 1H), 7.75 (dd, J = 2.2 Hz, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.58 (dd, J = 2.5 Hz, J = 9.8 Hz, 1H), 7.50 (s, 1H), 7.43 (dd, J = 1.9 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 7.38-7.32 (m, 2H), 6.98 (d, J = 10.7 Hz, 1H), 6.49 (t, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 6.03 (s, 2H), 2.31 (s, 3H).
226	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO): δ 7.69 (d, J = 9.1 Hz, 1H), 7.61 (dd, J = 2.2 Hz, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.52 (J = 10.7 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (s, 1H), 7.39-7.36 (m, 2H), 7.18 (dd, J = 2.8 Hz, J = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.11 (s, 1H), 6.35 (t, J = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 5.89 (s, 2H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 2.30 (s, 3H).
230	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, d ₆ -DMSO): δ 13.0 (bs, 1 H), 11.8 (bs, 1 H), 7.53-7.48 (m, 2 H), 7.44-7.42 (m, 1 H), 7.39 (d, J=7.62 Hz, 1 H), 6.34 (t, J=6.60 Hz, 1 H), 5.93 (s, 2H), 3.29 (s, 3 H), 2.90 (s, 3 H), MS found for $C_{24}H_{17}N_3O_5F_2S$: 498.3 (M+H) ⁺ .
231	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO): δ 12.88 (bs, 1H), 11.82 (s,1H), 8.05 (m, 2H), 7.61 (d, 1H, J = 6.62 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 11 Hz), 7.45 (d, 1H, J = 5.6 Hz), 7.39 (d, 1H, J= 7.5 Hz), 7.26 (s, 1H), 6.37 (t, 1H, J = 6.2 Hz) 5.92 (s, 2H), 2.30 (s, 3H). M.S. found: 498.3 (M+H) ⁺ .
238	¹ H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO): δ 7.70-7.67 (m, 2H), 7.61 (dd, J = 1.9 Hz, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.53 (J = 11.0 Hz, 1H), 7.43 (m, 1H), 7.41 (dd, J = 2.2 Hz, J = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.37 (d, J = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.11 (s, 1H), 6.35 (t, J = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 5.90 (s, 2H), 2.60 (s, 3H), 2.30

215

	(s, 3H).
246	¹H NMR (400 MHz, D₆-DMSO, TFA salt), δ 12.11 (s, 1 H), 9.55 (s, 1 H), 7.99 (d, 1 H, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.83-7.78 (m, 3 H), 7.63 (d, 1H, J = 11.0 Hz), 7.59-7.56 (m, 2 H), 7.52 (d, 1 H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.28 (s, 1 H), 6.51 (t, 1 H, J = 6.6 Hz), 5.92 (s, 2 H), 4.38 (bt, 2 H, J = 4.7 Hz), 3.25 (b, 2 H), 2.71 (s, 6 H), 2.33 (s, 3 H). ¹³C NMR (125 MHz, D₆-DMSO, F-coupled), δ 162.3, 162.1, 161.8, 160.2, 149.1, 146.9, 141.6, 137.9, 137.8, 135.5, 135.4, 131.5, 131.2, 128.6, 128.3, 127.7, 126.5, 123.3, 123.2, 123.1, 120.5, 120.3, 118.8, 106.8, 98.1, 97.9, 59.4, 56.0, 47.0, 43.4, 15.6, 15.5.
254	¹H NMR δ (CD₃Cl) 8.05 (d, 1H, 8.20 Hz), 7.70 (t, 1H, J = 6.94 Hz), 7.61-7.59 (m, 3H), 7.48 (t, 1H, J = 7.57 Hz), 7.39 (d, 1H, J = 7.25 Hz), 7.32 (s, 1H), 6.89 (d, 1H, J = 10.09 Hz), 6.37 (t, 1H, J = 6.94 Hz), 5.98 (s, 2H), 5.87 (s, 2H), 3.67 (s, 3H), 2.33 (s, 3H), 1.24 (s, 9H).
255	¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO): δ 7.66-7.63 (m, 1H), 7.61 (d, J = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.57 (J = 10.7 Hz, 1H), 7.46 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (m, 1H), 7.15 (s, 1H), 7.08 (m, 1H), 7.04 (s, 1H), 6.34 (t, J = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 5.85 (s, 2H), 5.61 (s, 2H), 2.31 (s, 3H), 0.89 (s, 9H).
256	¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 11.52 (s, 1H), 7.64 (dd, 1H, J = 6.9, 2.2 Hz), 7.49 (d, 1H, J = 9.1 Hz), 7.4 (m, 2H), 7.37 (d, 1H, J = 2.5 Hz), 7.22 (s, 1H), 7.13 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8, 2.5 Hz), 6.93 (d, 1H, J = 10 Hz), 6.42 (t, 1H, J = 6.62 Hz), 5.90 (s, 2H), 5.76 (s, 2H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 2.35 (s, 3H), 1.05 (s, 9H). M.S. found: Decomposes to lactone under LCMS condns
257	¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 8.01 (d, 1H, J = 8.19 Hz), 7.67 (t, 1H, J = 8.19 Hz), 7.59 (m, 2H), 7.53 (dd, 1H, J = 6.9, 2.2 Hz), 7.45 (t, 1H, J = 7.8, 7.2 Hz), 7.37 (d, 1H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.27 (m, 1H), 6.87 (d, 1H, J = 10 Hz), 6.32 (t, 1H, J = 6.9, 6.6 Hz), 5.99 (s, 2H), 5.88 (s, 2H), 5.71 (s, 2H), 2.32 (s, 3H), 1.24 (s, 9H), 1.03 (s, 9H). M.S. found: 690.4
258	¹H-NMR (400 MHz, in dmso-d₆): δ 12.87 (1H, broad s), 11.79 (1H, broad s), 7.95 (1H, d, J = 8.24 Hz), 7.77 (1H, dd, J = 7.14, 8.24 Hz), 7.62 (1H, d, J

216

	= 6.59 Hz), 7.54 (2H, m), 7.42 (1H, d, J = 6.59 Hz), 7.35 (1H, d, J = 7.14 Hz), 7.20 (1H, s), 6.35 (1H, t, J = 6.59 Hz), 5.92 (2H, s), 2.67 (2H, ABq, J = 7.14, 7.69 Hz), 1.16 (3H, t, J = 7.14 Hz); LC-MS (ESI): calcd. for C ₂₆ H ₂₀ ClFN ₃ O ₃ ⁺ [M+H] ⁺ 476.12, found 476.13.
--	---

Example 36**HCV NS5B Polymerase Inhibition Assay**

5 An in vitro transcribed heteropolymeric RNA known as D-RNA or DCoH has been shown to be an efficient template for HCV NS5B polymerase (S.-E. Behrens et al., EMBO J. 15: 12-22 (1996); WO 96/37619). A chemically synthesized 75-mer version, designated DCoH75, whose sequence matches the 3'-end of D-RNA, and DCoH75ddC, where the 3'-

10 terminal cytidine of DCoH75 is replaced by dideoxycytidine, were used for assaying the NS5B enzyme activity as described in Ferrari *et al.*, 12th International Symposium on HCV and Related Viruses, P-306 (2005). A soluble C-terminal 21-amino acid truncated NS5B enzyme form (NS5BDeltaCT21) was produced and purified from Escherichia coli as C-terminal polyhistidine-tagged fusion protein as described in Ferrari *et al.*, J. Virol. 73:1649-1654 (1999). A typical assay contained 20 mM Hepes pH 7.3, 10 mM MgCl₂, 60 mM NaCl, 100

15 µg/ml BSA, 20 units/ml RNasin, 7.5 mM DTT, 0.1 µM ATP/GTP/UTP, 0.026 µM CTP, 0.25 mM GAU, 0.03 µM RNA template, 20 µCi/ml [³³P]-CTP, 2% DMSO, and 30 or 150 nM NS5B enzyme. Reactions were incubated at 22 °C for 2 hours, then stopped by adding 150 mM EDTA, washed in DE81 filter plate in 0.5M di-basic sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.0, and counted using Packard TopCount after the addition of scintillation cocktail.

20 Polynucleotide synthesis was monitored by the incorporation of radiolabeled CTP. The effect of the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives on the polymerase activity was evaluated by adding various concentrations of a 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative, typically in 10 serial 2-fold dilutions, to the assay mixture. The starting concentrations of the indole derivatives ranged from 200 µM to 1 µM. An IC₅₀ value for the inhibitor, defined as the

25 compound concentration that provides 50% inhibition of polymerase activity, was determined by fitting the cpm data to the Hill equation $Y=100/(1+10^{((\text{LogIC}_{50}-X)*\text{HillSlope}))}$, where X is the logarithm of compound concentration, and Y is the % inhibition. Ferrari *et al.*, 12th International Symposium on HCV and Related Viruses, P-306 (2005) described in detail this assay procedure. It should be noted that such an assay as described is exemplary and not

intended to limit the scope of the invention. The skilled practitioner can appreciate that modifications including but not limited to RNA template, primer, nucleotides, NS5B polymerase form, buffer composition, can be made to develop similar assays that yield the same result for the efficacy of the compounds and compositions described in the invention.

5 NS5B polymerase inhibition data for selected 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives of the present invention was obtained using the above method and calculated IC_{50} values ranged from about 0.001 μM to about 14000 μM .

Example 37

Cell-based HCV Replicon Assay

10 To measure cell-based anti-HCV activity of the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives of the present invention, replicon cells were seeded at 5000 cells/well in 96-well collagen I-coated Nunc plates in the presence of the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative. Various concentrations of a 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative, typically in 10 serial 2-
15 fold dilutions, were added to the assay mixture, the starting concentration of the compound ranging from 250 μM to 1 μM . The final concentration of DMSO was 0.5%, fetal bovine serum was 5%, in the assay media. Cells were harvested on day 3 by the addition of 1x cell lysis buffer (Ambion cat #8721). The replicon RNA level was measured using real time PCR (Taqman assay). The amplicon was located in 5B. The PCR primers were: 5B.2F,
20 ATGGACAGGCGCCCTGA; 5B.2R, TTGATGGGCAGCTTGGTTTC; the probe sequence was FAM-labeled CACGCCATGCGCTGCGG. GAPDH RNA was used as endogenous control and was amplified in the same reaction as NS5B (multiplex PCR) using primers and VIC-labeled probe recommended by the manufacturer (PE Applied Biosystem). The real-time RT-PCR reactions were run on ABI PRISM 7900HT Sequence Detection System using the
25 following program: 48°C for 30 min, 95°C for 10 min, 40 cycles of 95°C for 15 sec, 60°C for 1 minute. The ΔCT values ($CT_{5B} - CT_{GAPDH}$) were plotted against the concentration of test compound and fitted to the sigmoid dose-response model using XLfit4 (MDL). EC_{50} was defined as the concentration of inhibitor necessary to achieve $\Delta CT=1$ over the projected baseline; EC_{90} the concentration necessary to achieve $\Delta CT=3.2$ over the baseline.

30 Alternatively, to quantitate the absolute amount of replicon RNA, a standard curve was established by including serially diluted T7 transcripts of replicon RNA in the Taqman assay. All Taqman reagents were from PE Applied Biosystems. Such an assay procedure was

described in detail in e.g. Malcolm *et al.*, *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* 50: 1013-1020 (2006).

HCV Replicon assay data for selected 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives of the present invention was obtained using the above method and calculated EC₅₀ values ranged

5 from about 0.001 μ M to about 14000 μ M.

Uses of the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives

The 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are useful in human and veterinary
10 medicine for treating or preventing a viral infection or a virus-related disorder in a patient. In accordance with the invention, the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives can be administered to a patient in need of treatment or prevention of a viral infection or a virus-related disorder.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the invention provides methods for treating a viral
15 infection in a patient comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof. In another embodiment, the invention provides methods for treating a virus-related disorder in a patient comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt,
20 solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

Treatment or Prevention of a Viral Infection

The 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives can be used to treat or prevent a viral
25 infection. In one embodiment, the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives can be inhibitors of viral replication. In a specific embodiment, the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives can be inhibitors of HCV replication. Accordingly, the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are useful for treating viral diseases and disorders related to the activity of a virus, such as HCV polymerase.

30 Examples of viral infections that can be treated or prevented using the present methods, include but are not limited to, hepatitis A infection, hepatitis B infection and hepatitis C infection.

In one embodiment, the viral infection is hepatitis C infection.

In one embodiment, the hepatitis C infection is acute hepatitis C. In another embodiment, the hepatitis C infection is chronic hepatitis C.

The compositions and combinations of the present invention can be useful for treating a patient suffering from infection related to any HCV genotype. HCV types and subtypes may differ in their antigenicity, level of viremia, severity of disease produced, and response to interferon therapy as described in Holland *et al.*, *Pathology*, 30(2):192-195 (1998). The nomenclature set forth in Simmonds *et al.*, *J Gen Virol*, 74(Pt11):2391-2399 (1993) is widely used and classifies isolates into six major genotypes, 1 through 6, with two or more related subtypes, e.g., 1a, 1b. Additional genotypes 7-10 and 11 have been proposed, however the phylogenetic basis on which this classification is based has been questioned, and thus types 7, 8, 9 and 11 isolates have been reassigned as type 6, and type 10 isolates as type 3 (see Lamballerie *et al.*, *J Gen Virol*, 78(Pt1):45-51 (1997)). The major genotypes have been defined as having sequence similarities of between 55 and 72% (mean 64.5%), and subtypes within types as having 75%-86% similarity (mean 80%) when sequenced in the NS-5 region (see Simmonds *et al.*, *J Gen Virol*, 75(Pt 5):1053-1061 (1994)).

Treatment or Prevention of a Virus-Related Disorder

The 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives can be used to treat or prevent a virus-related disorder. Accordingly, the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are useful for treating disorders related to the activity of a virus, such as liver inflammation or cirrhosis. Virus-related disorders include, but are not limited to, RNA-dependent polymerase-related disorders and disorders related to HCV infection.

Treatment or Prevention of a RNA-Dependent Polymerase-Related Disorder

The 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are useful for treating or preventing a RNA dependent polymerase (RdRp) related disorder in a patient. Such disorders include viral infections wherein the infective virus contain a RdRp enzyme.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a RNA dependent polymerase-related disorder in a patient, comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

Treatment or Prevention of a Disorder Related to HCV Infection

The 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives can also be useful for treating or preventing a disorder related to an HCV infection. Examples of such disorders include, but are not limited to, cirrhosis, portal hypertension, ascites, bone pain, varices, jaundice, hepatic encephalopathy, thyroiditis, porphyria cutanea tarda, cryoglobulinemia, glomerulonephritis, sicca syndrome, thrombocytopenia, lichen planus and diabetes mellitus.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the invention provides methods for treating an HCV-related disorder in a patient, wherein the method comprises administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

Combination Therapy

In another embodiment, the present methods for treating or preventing a viral infection can further comprise the administration of one or more additional therapeutic agents which are not 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives.

In one embodiment, the additional therapeutic agent is an antiviral agent.

In another embodiment, the additional therapeutic agent is an immunomodulatory agent, such as an immunosuppressive agent.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides methods for treating a viral infection in a patient, the method comprising administering to the patient: (i) at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof, and (ii) at least one other antiviral agent that is other than a 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative, wherein the amounts administered are together effective to treat or prevent a viral infection.

When administering a combination therapy of the invention to a patient, the therapeutic agents in the combination, or a pharmaceutical composition or compositions comprising the therapeutic agents, may be administered in any order such as, for example, sequentially, concurrently, together, simultaneously and the like. The amounts of the various actives in such combination therapy may be different amounts (different dosage amounts) or same amounts (same dosage amounts). Thus, for non-limiting illustration purposes, a 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative and an additional therapeutic agent may be present in fixed amounts (dosage amounts) in a single dosage unit (e.g., a capsule, a tablet and the like). A commercial example

of such single dosage unit containing fixed amounts of two different active compounds is VYTORIN[®] (available from Merck Schering-Plough Pharmaceuticals, Kenilworth, New Jersey).

5 In one embodiment, the at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative is administered during at time when the additional antiviral agent(s) exert their prophylactic or therapeutic effect, or *vice versa*.

In another embodiment, the at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative and the additional antiviral agent(s) are administered in doses commonly employed when such agents are used as monotherapy for treating a viral infection.

10 In another embodiment, the at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative and the additional antiviral agent(s) are administered in doses lower than the doses commonly employed when such agents are used as monotherapy for treating a viral infection.

In still another embodiment, the at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative and the additional antiviral agent(s) act synergistically and are administered in doses lower
15 than the doses commonly employed when such agents are used as monotherapy for treating a viral infection.

In one embodiment, the at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative and the additional antiviral agent(s) are present in the same composition. In one embodiment, this composition is suitable for oral administration. In another embodiment, this composition is
20 suitable for intravenous administration.

Viral infections and virus-related disorders that can be treated or prevented using the combination therapy methods of the present invention include, but are not limited to, those listed above.

In one embodiment, the viral infection is HCV infection.

25 The at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative and the additional antiviral agent(s) can act additively or synergistically. A synergistic combination may allow the use of lower dosages of one or more agents and/or less frequent administration of one or more agents of a combination therapy. A lower dosage or less frequent administration of one or more agents may lower toxicity of the therapy without reducing the efficacy of the therapy.

30 In one embodiment, the administration of at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative and the additional antiviral agent(s) may inhibit the resistance of a viral infection to these agents.

222

Non-limiting examples of other therapeutic agents useful in the present compositions and methods include an HCV polymerase inhibitor, an interferon, a nucleoside, a viral replication inhibitor, an antisense agent, a therapeutic vaccine, a viral protease inhibitor, a virion production inhibitor, an antibody therapy (monoclonal or polyclonal), and any agent
5 useful for treating an RNA-dependent polymerase-related disorder.

In one embodiment, the other antiviral agent is a viral protease inhibitor.

In another embodiment, the other antiviral agent is an HCV protease inhibitor.

In another embodiment, the other antiviral agent is an interferon.

In still another embodiment, the other antiviral agent is a viral replication inhibitor.

10 In one embodiment, the other antiviral agent is a viral replication inhibitor, which is an HCV replicase inhibitor.

In another embodiment, the other antiviral agent is an antisense agent.

In another embodiment, the other antiviral agent is a therapeutic vaccine.

In a further embodiment, the other antiviral agent is an virion production inhibitor.

15 In another embodiment, the other antiviral agent is antibody therapy.

In another embodiment, the other antiviral agents comprise a protease inhibitor and a polymerase inhibitor.

In still another embodiment, the other antiviral agents comprise a protease inhibitor and an immunosuppressive agent.

20 In yet another embodiment, the other antiviral agents comprise a polymerase inhibitor and an immunosuppressive agent.

In a further embodiment, the other antiviral agents comprise a protease inhibitor, a polymerase inhibitor and an immunosuppressive agent.

In another embodiment the other agent is ribavirin.

25 HCV polymerase inhibitors useful in the present methods and compositions include, but are not limited to VP-19744 (Wyeth/ViroPharma), HCV-796 (Wyeth/ViroPharma), NM-283 (Idenix/Novartis), R-1626 (Roche), MK-0608 (Merck), A848837 (Abbott), GSK-71185 (Glaxo SmithKline), XTL-2125 (XTL Biopharmaceuticals), and those disclosed in Ni *et al.*, *Current Opinion in Drug Discovery and Development*, 7(4):446 (2004); Tan *et al.*, *Nature Reviews*, 1:867 (2002); and Beaulieu *et al.*, *Current Opinion in Investigational Drugs*, 5:838
30 (2004).

Interferons useful in the present methods and compositions include, but are not limited to, interferon alfa-2a, interferon alfa-2b, interferon alfacon-1 and PEG-interferon alpha conjugates. "PEG-interferon alpha conjugates" are interferon alpha molecules covalently attached to a PEG molecule. Illustrative PEG-interferon alpha conjugates include interferon
5 alpha-2a (RoferonTM, Hoffman La-Roche, Nutley, New Jersey) in the form of pegylated interferon alpha-2a (*e.g.*, as sold under the trade name PegasysTM), interferon alpha-2b (IntronTM, from Schering-Plough Corporation) in the form of pegylated interferon alpha-2b (*e.g.*, as sold under the trade name PEG-IntronTM), interferon alpha-2c (Berofer AlphaTM, Boehringer Ingelheim, Ingelheim, Germany), interferon alpha fusion polypeptides, or
10 consensus interferon as defined by determination of a consensus sequence of naturally occurring interferon alphas (InfergenTM, Amgen, Thousand Oaks, California).

Antibody therapy agents useful in the present methods and compositions include, but are not limited to, antibodies specific to IL-10 (such as those disclosed in US Patent Publication No. US2005/0101770, humanized 12G8, a humanized monoclonal antibody
15 against human IL-10, plasmids containing the nucleic acids encoding the humanized 12G8 light and heavy chains were deposited with the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) as deposit numbers PTA-5923 and PTA-5922, respectively), and the like). Viral protease inhibitors useful in the present methods and compositions include, but are not limited to, NS3 serine protease inhibitors (including, but are not limited to, those disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos.
20 7,012,066, 6,914,122, 6,911,428, 6,846,802, 6,838,475, 6,800,434, 5,017,380, 4,933,443, 4,812,561 and 4,634,697; and U.S. Patent Publication Nos. US20020160962, US20050176648 and US20050249702), HCV protease inhibitors (*e.g.*, SCH503034 (Schering-Plough), VX-950 (Vertex), GS-9132 (Gilead/Achillion), ITMN-191 (InterMune/Roche)), amprenavir, atazanavir, fosemprenavir, indinavir, lopinavir, ritonavir, nelfinavir, saquinavir, tipranavir and
25 TMC114.

Viral replication inhibitors useful in the present methods and compositions include, but are not limited to, HCV replicase inhibitors, NS3 helicase inhibitors, NS5A inhibitors, ribavirin, viramidine, A-831 (Arrow Therapeutics); an antisense agent or a therapeutic vaccine.

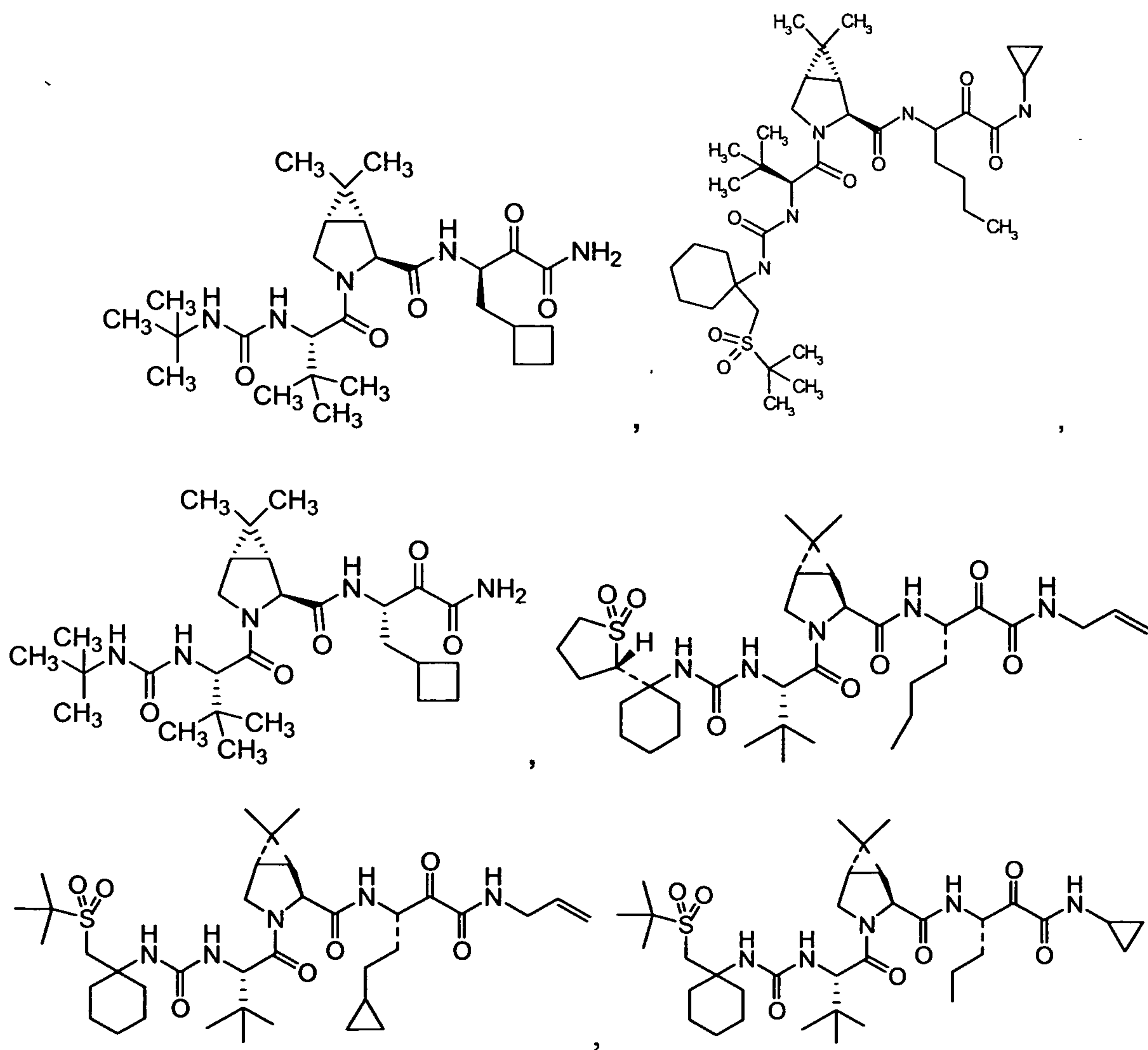
In one embodiment, viral replication inhibitors useful in the present methods and
30 compositions include, but are not limited to, NS3 helicase inhibitors or NS5A inhibitors.

Examples of protease inhibitors useful in the present methods include, but are not limited to, an HCV protease inhibitor and a NS-3 serine protease inhibitor.

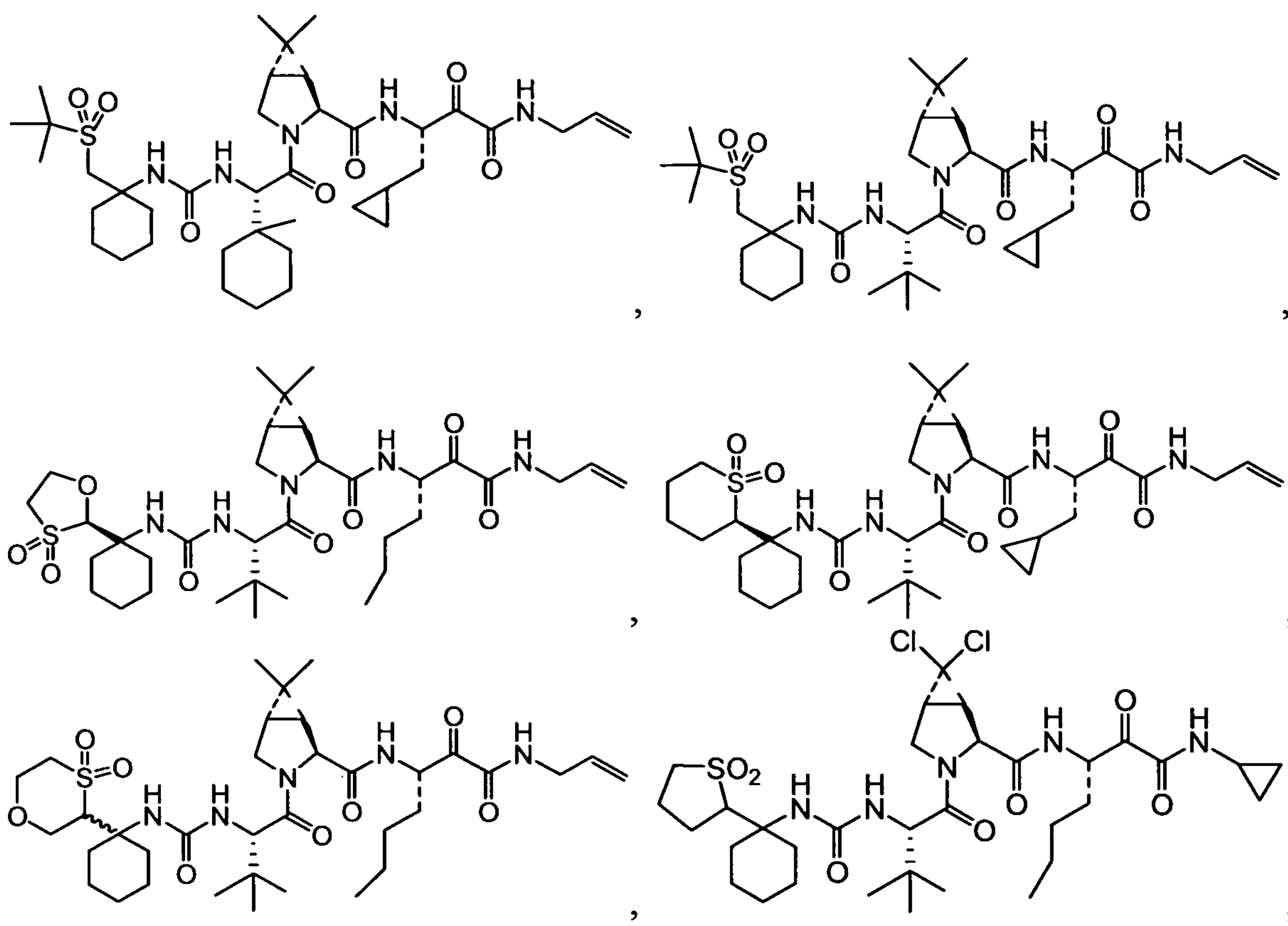
Examples of HCV protease inhibitors useful in the present methods include, but are not limited to, those disclosed in Landro *et al.*, *Biochemistry*, 36(31):9340-9348 (1997); Ingallinella *et al.*, *Biochemistry*, 37(25):8906-8914 (1998); Llinàs-Brunet *et al.*, *Bioorg Med Chem Lett*, 8(13):1713-1718 (1998); Martin *et al.*, *Biochemistry*, 37(33):11459-11468 (1998);

5 Dimasi *et al.*, *J Virol*, 71(10):7461-7469 (1997); Martin *et al.*, *Protein Eng*, 10(5):607-614 (1997); Elzouki *et al.*, *J Hepat*, 27(1):42-48 (1997); *BioWorld Today*, 9(217):4 (November 10, 1998); U.S. Patent Publication Nos. US2005/0249702 and US 2007/0274951; and International Publication Nos. WO 98/14181; WO 98/17679, WO 98/17679, WO 98/22496 and WO 99/07734 and WO 05/087731.

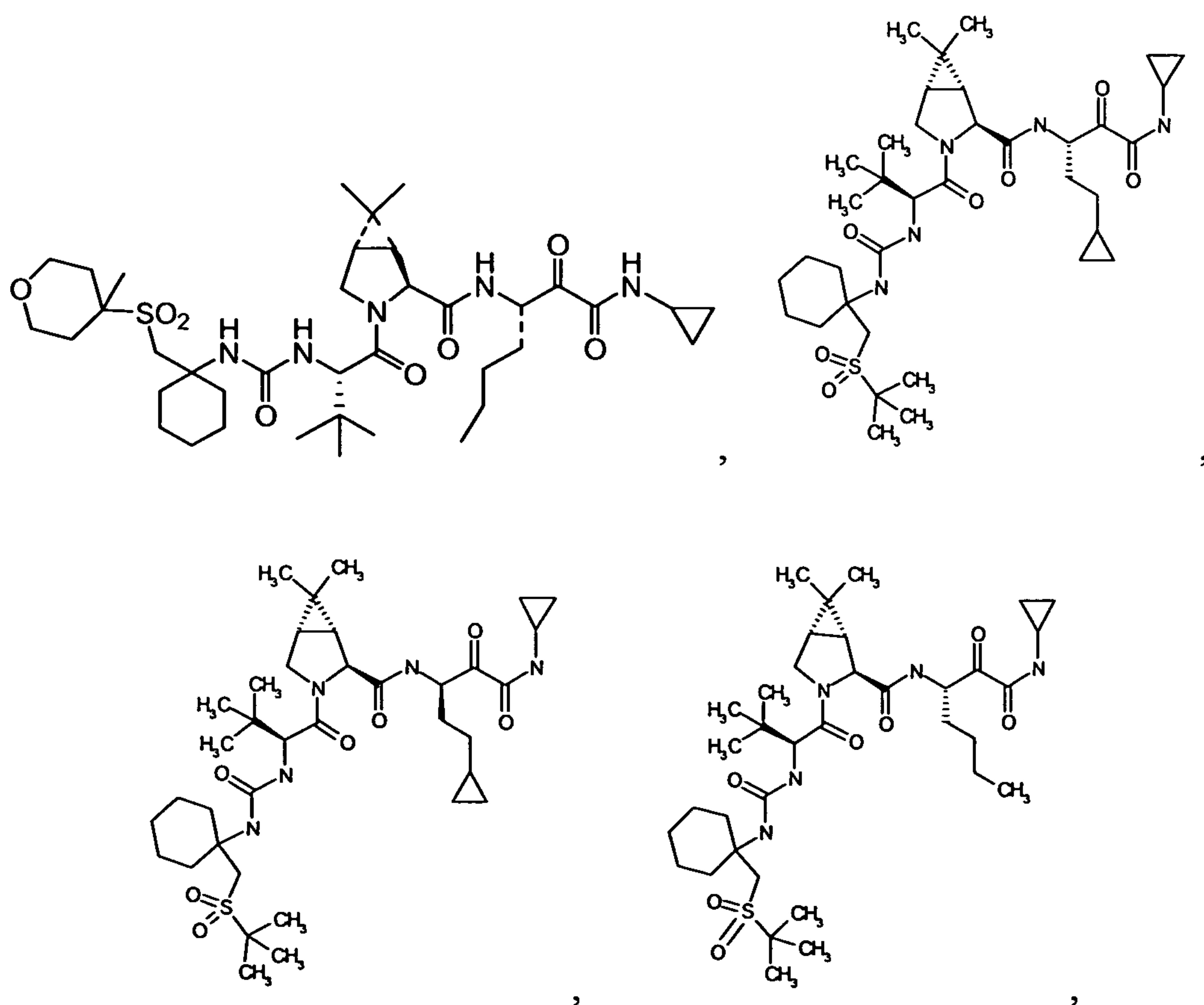
10 Further examples of HCV protease inhibitors useful in the present methods include, but are not limited to, the following compounds:



225

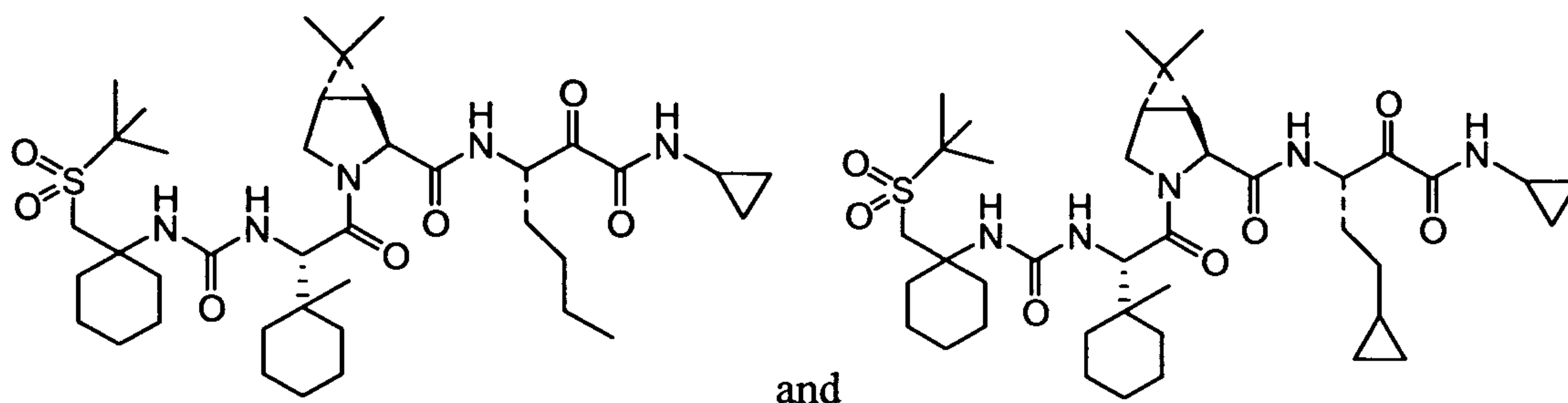


5



10

226



Additional examples of other therapeutic agents useful in the present methods include, but are not limited to, LevovirinTM (ICN Pharmaceuticals, Costa Mesa, California), VP 50406TM (Viropharma, Incorporated, Exton, Pennsylvania), ISIS 14803TM (ISIS Pharmaceuticals, Carlsbad, California), HeptazymeTM (Ribozyme Pharmaceuticals, Boulder, Colorado), VX-950TM (Vertex Pharmaceuticals, Cambridge, Massachusetts), ThymosinTM (SciClone Pharmaceuticals, San Mateo, California), MaxamineTM (Maxim Pharmaceuticals, San Diego, California), NKB-122 (JenKen Bioscience Inc., North Carolina), mycophenolate mofetil (Hoffman-LaRoche, Nutley, New Jersey).

The doses and dosage regimen of the other agents used in the combination therapies of the present invention for the treatment or prevention of a viral infection can be determined by the attending clinician, taking into consideration the the approved doses and dosage regimen in the package insert; the age, sex and general health of the patient; and the type and severity of the viral infection or related disease or disorder. When administered in combination, the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative(s) and the other agent(s) for treating diseases or conditions listed above can be administered simultaneously (*i.e.*, in the same composition or in separate compositions one right after the other) or sequentially. This is particularly useful when the components of the combination are given on different dosing schedules, *e.g.*, one component is administered once daily and another every six hours, or when the preferred pharmaceutical compositions are different, *e.g.* one is a tablet and one is a capsule. A kit comprising the separate dosage forms is therefore advantageous.

Generally, a total daily dosage of the at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative and the additional antiviral agent(s), when administered as combination therapy, can range from about 0.1 to about 2000 mg per day, although variations will necessarily occur depending on the target of the therapy, the patient and the route of administration. In one embodiment, the dosage is from about 10 to about 500 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses. In another embodiment, the dosage is from about 1 to about 200

mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses. In still another embodiment, the dosage is from about 1 to about 100 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses. In yet another embodiment, the dosage is from about 1 to about 50 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses. In a further embodiment, the dosage is from about 1 to about 20 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses. In another embodiment, the dosage is from about 500 to about 1500 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses. In still another embodiment, the dosage is from about 500 to about 1000 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses. In yet another embodiment, the dosage is from about 100 to about 500 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses.

In one embodiment, when the other therapeutic agent is INTRON-A interferon alpha 2b (commercially available from Schering-Plough Corp.), this agent is administered by subcutaneous injection at 3MIU(12 mcg)/0.5mL/TIW is for 24 weeks or 48 weeks for first time treatment.

In another embodiment, when the other therapeutic agent is PEG-INTRON interferon alpha 2b pegylated (commercially available from Schering-Plough Corp.), this agent is administered by subcutaneous injection at 1.5 mcg/kg/week, within a range of 40 to 150 mcg/week, for at least 24 weeks.

In another embodiment, when the other therapeutic agent is ROFERON A inteferon alpha 2a (commercially available from Hoffmann-La Roche), this agent is administered by subcutaneous or intramuscular injection at 3MIU(11.1 mcg/mL)/TIW for at least 48 to 52 weeks, or alternatively 6MIU/TIW for 12 weeks followed by 3MIU/TIW for 36 weeks.

In still another embodiment, when the other therapeutic agent is PEGASUS interferon alpha 2a pegylated (commercially available from Hoffmann-La Roche), this agent is administered by subcutaneous injection at 180mcg/1mL or 180mcg/0.5mL, once a week for at least 24 weeks.

In yet another embodiment, when the other therapeutic agent is INFERGEN interferon alphacon-1 (commercially available from Amgen), this agent is administered by subcutaneous injection at 9mcg/TIW is 24 weeks for first time treatment and up to 15 mcg/TIW for 24 weeks for non-responsive or relapse treatment.

In a further embodiment, when the other therapeutic agent is Ribavirin (commercially available as REBETOL ribavirin from Schering-Plough or COPEGUS ribavirin from

Hoffmann-La Roche), this agent is administered at a daily dosage of from about 600 to about 1400 mg/day for at least 24 weeks.

In one embodiment, one or more compounds of the present invention are administered with one or more additional therapeutic agents selected from an HCV protease inhibitor, an HCV replicase inhibitor, a nucleoside, an interferon, a pegylated interferon and ribavirin. The combination therapies can include any combination of these additional therapeutic agents.

In another embodiment, one or more compounds of the present invention are administered with one additional therapeutic agent selected from an HCV protease inhibitor, an HCV replicase inhibitor, a nucleoside, an interferon, a pegylated interferon and ribavirin.

In another embodiment, one or more compounds of the present invention are administered with two additional therapeutic agents selected from an HCV protease inhibitor, an HCV replicase inhibitor, a nucleoside, an interferon, a pegylated interferon and ribavirin.

In still another embodiment, one or more compounds of the present invention are administered with two additional therapeutic agents selected from an HCV protease inhibitor, an HCV replicase inhibitor, a nucleoside, an interferon, a pegylated interferon and ribavirin. In a specific embodiment, one or more compounds of the present invention are administered with an HCV protease inhibitor and ribavirin. In another specific embodiment, one or more compounds of the present invention are administered with a pegylated interferon and ribavirin.

In another embodiment, one or more compounds of the present invention are administered with three additional therapeutic agents selected from an HCV protease inhibitor, an HCV replicase inhibitor, a nucleoside, an interferon, a pegylated interferon and ribavirin.

In one embodiment, one or more compounds of the present invention are administered with one or more additional therapeutic agents selected from an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, and a viral replication inhibitor. In another embodiment, one or more compounds of the present invention are administered with one or more additional therapeutic agents selected from an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, and ribavirin. In one embodiment, one compound of the present invention is administered with one additional therapeutic agents selected from an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, and a viral replication inhibitor. In another embodiment, one compound of the present invention is administered with two additional

therapeutic agents selected from an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, and a viral replication inhibitor. In another embodiment, one compound of the present invention is administered with ribavirin. In still another embodiment, one compound of the present invention is administered with ribavirin and another therapeutic agent. In still
5 another embodiment, one compound of the present invention is administered with ribavirin and another therapeutic agent, wherein the other therapeutic agent is selected from an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, and a viral replication inhibitor.

Compositions and Administration

10 Due to their activity, the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are useful in veterinary and human medicine. As described above, the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are useful for treating or preventing a viral infection or a virus-related disorder in a patient in need thereof.

When administered to a patient, the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives can be
15 administered as a component of a composition that comprises a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or vehicle. The present invention provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising an effective amount of at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. In the pharmaceutical compositions and methods of the present invention, the active ingredients will typically be administered in admixture with
20 suitable carrier materials suitably selected with respect to the intended form of administration, i.e. oral tablets, capsules (either solid-filled, semi-solid filled or liquid filled), powders for constitution, oral gels, elixirs, dispersible granules, syrups, suspensions, and the like, and consistent with conventional pharmaceutical practices. For example, for oral administration in the form of tablets or capsules, the active drug component may be combined with any oral
25 non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable inert carrier, such as lactose, starch, sucrose, cellulose, magnesium stearate, dicalcium phosphate, calcium sulfate, talc, mannitol, ethyl alcohol (liquid forms) and the like. Solid form preparations include powders, tablets, dispersible granules, capsules, cachets and suppositories. Powders and tablets may be comprised of from about 5 to about 95 percent inventive composition. Tablets, powders, cachets and capsules can be used as
30 solid dosage forms suitable for oral administration.

Moreover, when desired or needed, suitable binders, lubricants, disintegrating agents and coloring agents may also be incorporated in the mixture. Suitable binders include starch,

gelatin, natural sugars, corn sweeteners, natural and synthetic gums such as acacia, sodium alginate, carboxymethylcellulose, polyethylene glycol and waxes. Among the lubricants there may be mentioned for use in these dosage forms, boric acid, sodium benzoate, sodium acetate, sodium chloride, and the like. Disintegrants include starch, methylcellulose, guar gum and the like. Sweetening and flavoring agents and preservatives may also be included where appropriate.

Liquid form preparations include solutions, suspensions and emulsions and may include water or water-propylene glycol solutions for parenteral injection.

Liquid form preparations may also include solutions for intranasal administration.

Aerosol preparations suitable for inhalation may include solutions and solids in powder form, which may be in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, such as an inert compressed gas.

Also included are solid form preparations which are intended to be converted, shortly before use, to liquid form preparations for either oral or parenteral administration. Such liquid forms include solutions, suspensions and emulsions.

For preparing suppositories, a low melting wax such as a mixture of fatty acid glycerides or cocoa butter is first melted, and the active ingredient is dispersed homogeneously therein as by stirring. The molten homogeneous mixture is then poured into convenient sized molds, allowed to cool and thereby solidify.

The 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives of the present invention may also be deliverable transdermally. The transdermal compositions can take the form of creams, lotions, aerosols and/or emulsions and can be included in a transdermal patch of the matrix or reservoir type as are conventional in the art for this purpose.

Additionally, the compositions of the present invention may be formulated in sustained release form to provide the rate controlled release of any one or more of the components or active ingredients to optimize the therapeutic effects, i.e. anti-inflammatory activity and the like. Suitable dosage forms for sustained release include layered tablets containing layers of varying disintegration rates or controlled release polymeric matrices impregnated with the active components and shaped in tablet form or capsules containing such impregnated or encapsulated porous polymeric matrices.

In one embodiment, the one or more 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are administered orally.

In another embodiment, the one or more 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are administered intravenously.

In another embodiment, the one or more 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are administered topically.

5 In still another embodiment, the one or more 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives are administered sublingually.

In one embodiment, a pharmaceutical preparation comprising at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative is in unit dosage form. In such form, the preparation is subdivided into unit doses containing appropriate quantities of the active component, e.g., an
10 effective amount to achieve the desired purpose.

Compositions can be prepared according to conventional mixing, granulating or coating methods, respectively, and the present compositions can contain, in one embodiment, from about 0.1% to about 99% of the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative(s) by weight or volume. In various embodiments, the the present compositions can contain, in one
15 embodiment, from about 1% to about 70% or from about 5% to about 60% of the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative(s) by weight or volume.

The quantity of 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative in a unit dose of preparation may be varied or adjusted from about 0.1 mg to about 2000 mg. In various embodiment, the quantity is from about 1 mg to about 2000 mg, 100 mg to about 200 mg, 500 mg to about 2000
20 mg, 100 mg to about 1000 mg, and 1 mg to about 500 mg.

For convenience, the total daily dosage may be divided and administered in portions during the day if desired. In one embodiment, the daily dosage is administered in one portion. In another embodiment, the total daily dosage is administered in two divided doses over a 24 hour period. In another embodiment, the total daily dosage is administered in three divided
25 doses over a 24 hour period. In still another embodiment, the total daily dosage is administered in four divided doses over a 24 hour period.

The amount and frequency of administration of the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives will be regulated according to the judgment of the attending clinician considering such factors as age, condition and size of the patient as well as severity of the symptoms being
30 treated. Generally, a total daily dosage of the 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivatives range from about 0.1 to about 2000 mg per day, although variations will necessarily occur depending on the target of the therapy, the patient and the route of administration. In one embodiment,

232

the dosage is from about 1 to about 200 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses. In another embodiment, the dosage is from about 10 to about 2000 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses. In another embodiment, the dosage is from about 100 to about 2000 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses.

5 In still another embodiment, the dosage is from about 500 to about 2000 mg/day, administered in a single dose or in 2-4 divided doses.

The compositions of the invention can further comprise one or more additional therapeutic agents, selected from those listed above herein. Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides compositions comprising: (i) at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted
10 Indole Derivative or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof; (ii) one or more additional therapeutic agents that are not a 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative; and (iii) a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, wherein the amounts in the composition are together effective to treat a viral infection or a virus-related disorder.

15 Kits

In one aspect, the present invention provides a kit comprising a therapeutically effective amount of at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug of said compound and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, vehicle or diluent.

20 In another aspect the present invention provides a kit comprising an amount of at least one 2-Carboxy Substituted Indole Derivative, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug of said compound and an amount of at least one additional therapeutic agent listed above, wherein the amounts of the two or more ingredients result in a desired therapeutic effect.

25 The present invention is not to be limited by the specific embodiments disclosed in the examples that are intended as illustrations of a few aspects of the invention and any embodiments that are functionally equivalent are within the scope of this invention. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those shown and described herein will
30 become apparant to those skilled in the art and are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

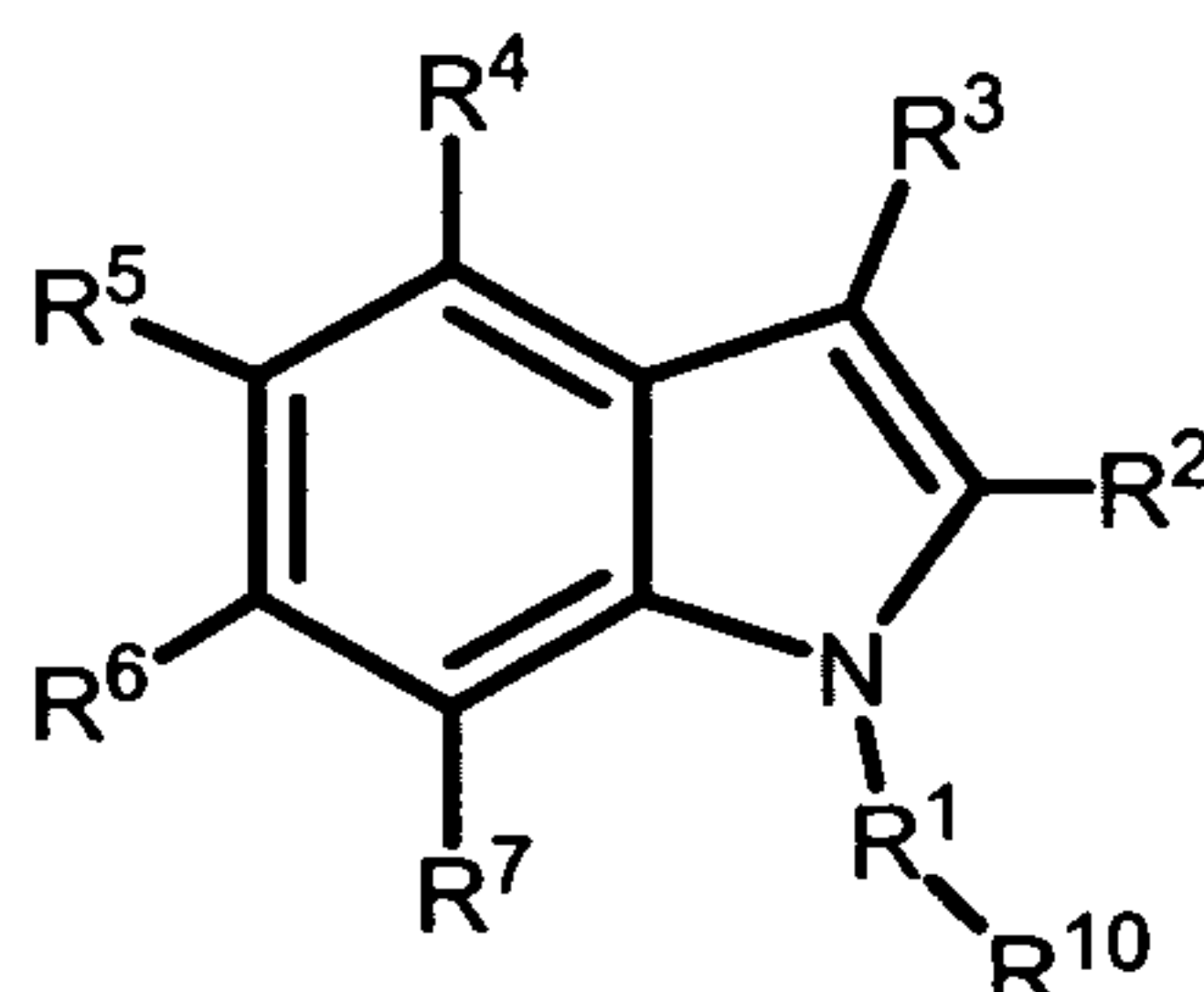
233

A number of references have been cited herein, the entire disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

234

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound having the formula:



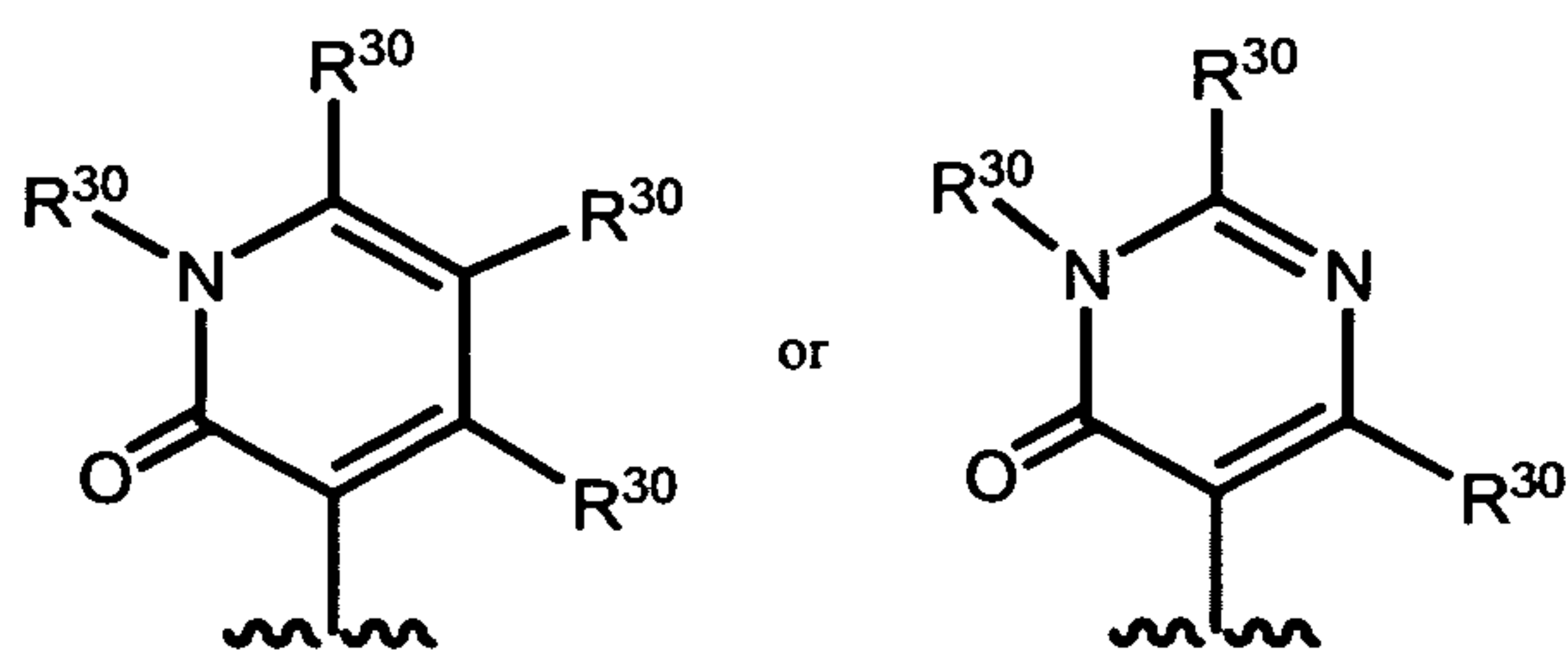
(I)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof,
wherein:

R^1 is a bond, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-O-[C(R^{12})_2]_{q-}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-N(R^9)-[C(R^{12})_2]_{q-}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-CH=CH-[C(R^{12})_2]_{q-}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C\equiv C-[C(R^{12})_2]_{q-}$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2-[C(R^{12})_2]_{q-}$;

R^2 is $-C(O)R^9$, $-C(O)OR^9$, $-C(O)OCH_2OR^9$, $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)C(=NR^9)NR^9$, $-alkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-aryl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkenyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heteroaryl$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkenyl$, wherein an aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl or heteroaryl, group can be optionally substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are the same or different, and are selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkenyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkenyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heteroaryl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-haloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-hydroxyalkyl$, halo, $-OH$, $-OR^9$, $-CN$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ and $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

R^3 is:



R^4 , R^5 , R^6 and R^7 are each, independently, H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$ cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkenyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$

heterocycloalkenyl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heteroaryl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-haloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-hydroxyalkyl}$, halo, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}^9$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NR}^8\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-S(O)}_p\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)_2$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$;

5 each occurrence of R^8 is independently H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-aryl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heteroaryl}$, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

each occurrence of R^9 is independently H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-O-alkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-N(alkyl)}_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-aryl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heteroaryl}$, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

R^{10} is H, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl, heteroaryl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl or heteroaryl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heteroaryl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-haloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-hydroxyalkyl}$, halo, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}^9$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NR}^8\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-S(O)}_p\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)_2$ and $-\text{SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, such that when R^1 is a bond, R^{10} is not H;

each occurrence of R^{11} is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, heteroaryl, haloalkyl, hydroxy or hydroxyalkyl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl or heteroaryl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from $-\text{H}$, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-cycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heterocycloalkenyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-heteroaryl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-haloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-hydroxyalkyl}$, halo, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}^9$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-OR}^9$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHC(O)R}^8$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NR}^8\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-NHSO}_2\text{aryl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_q\text{-SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)_2$ and $-\text{SO}_2\text{N(R}^9)\text{C(O)N(R}^9)_2$;

each occurrence of R^{12} is independently H, halo, $-N(R^9)_2$, $-OR^9$, alkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl or heterocycloalkenyl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl or heterocycloalkenyl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from alkyl, halo, haloalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-C(O)alkyl$, $-C(O)Oalkyl$, $-C(O)NHalkyl$, $-C(O)N(alkyl)_2$, $-O-alkyl$, $-NH_2$, $-NH(alkyl)$, $-N(alkyl)_2$, $-NHC(O)alkyl$, $-NHSO_2alkyl$, $-SO_2alkyl$ or $-SO_2NH-alkyl$, or two R^{12} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or $C=O$ group;

each occurrence of R^{20} is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl, or both R^{20} groups and the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a cycloalkyl, cycloheteroalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl group wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloheteroalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl group can be substituted with up to 4 groups, which are each independently selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, halo, $-OH$, $-OR^9$, $-CN$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkenyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkenyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-haloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-hydroxyalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ and $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

each occurrence of R^{30} is independently H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkenyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkenyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heteroaryl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-haloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-hydroxyalkyl$, halo, $-OH$, $-OR^9$, $-CN$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ or $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$, or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a 3- to 7-membered ring selected from aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl and heterocycloalkyl;

each occurrence of p is independently 0, 1 or 2;

each occurrence of q is independently an integer ranging from 0 to 4; and

each occurrence of r is independently an integer ranging from 1 to 4.

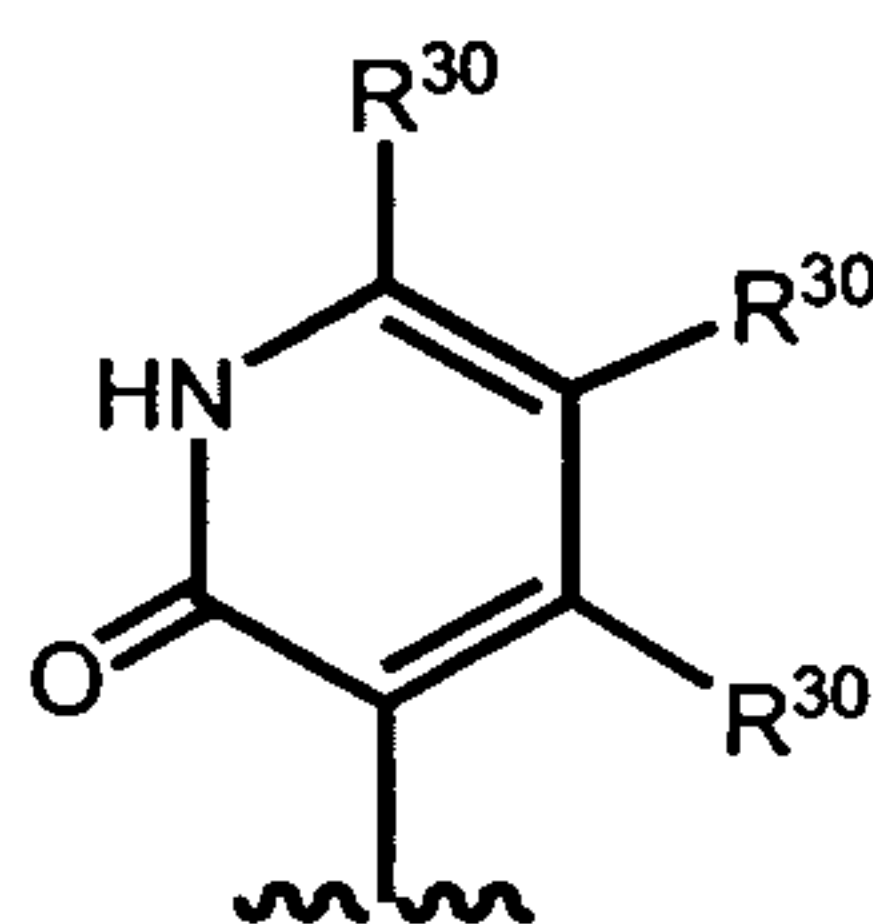
2. The compound of claim 1, wherein R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$,

237

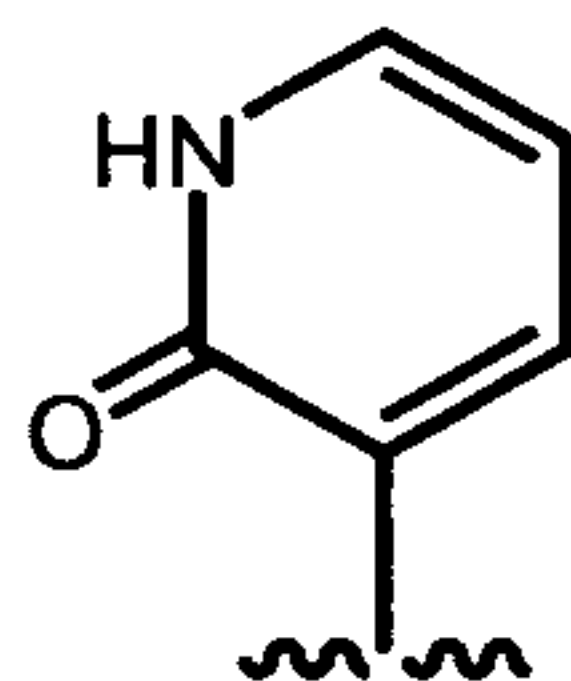
3. The compound of claim 2, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl.

4. The compound of claim 2, wherein R^2 is $-C(O)OH$.

5. The compound of claim 2, wherein R^3 is :

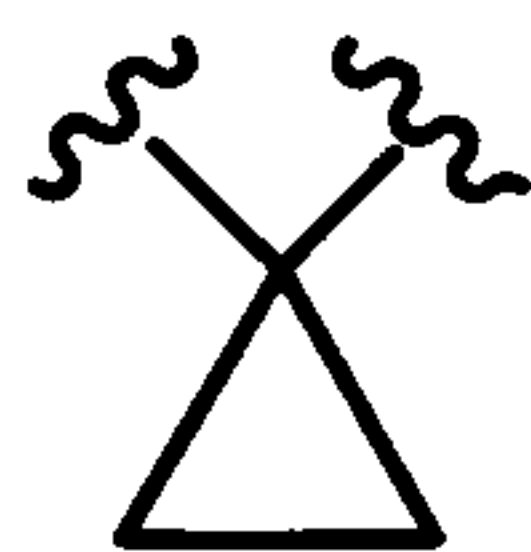


6. The compound of claim 5, wherein R^3 is :



7. The compound of claim 2, wherein R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-$.

8. The compound of claim 7, wherein R^1 is $-CH_2-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$, $-CH(CH_3)-$ or



9. The compound of claim 2, wherein R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or -OH, R^5 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN, and R^6 is H, alkyl, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, -OH, hydroxyalkyl, -NH₂ or -CN.

10. The compound of claim 9, wherein R^4 and R^7 are H.

11. The compound of claim 10, wherein R^5 and R^6 are other than H.

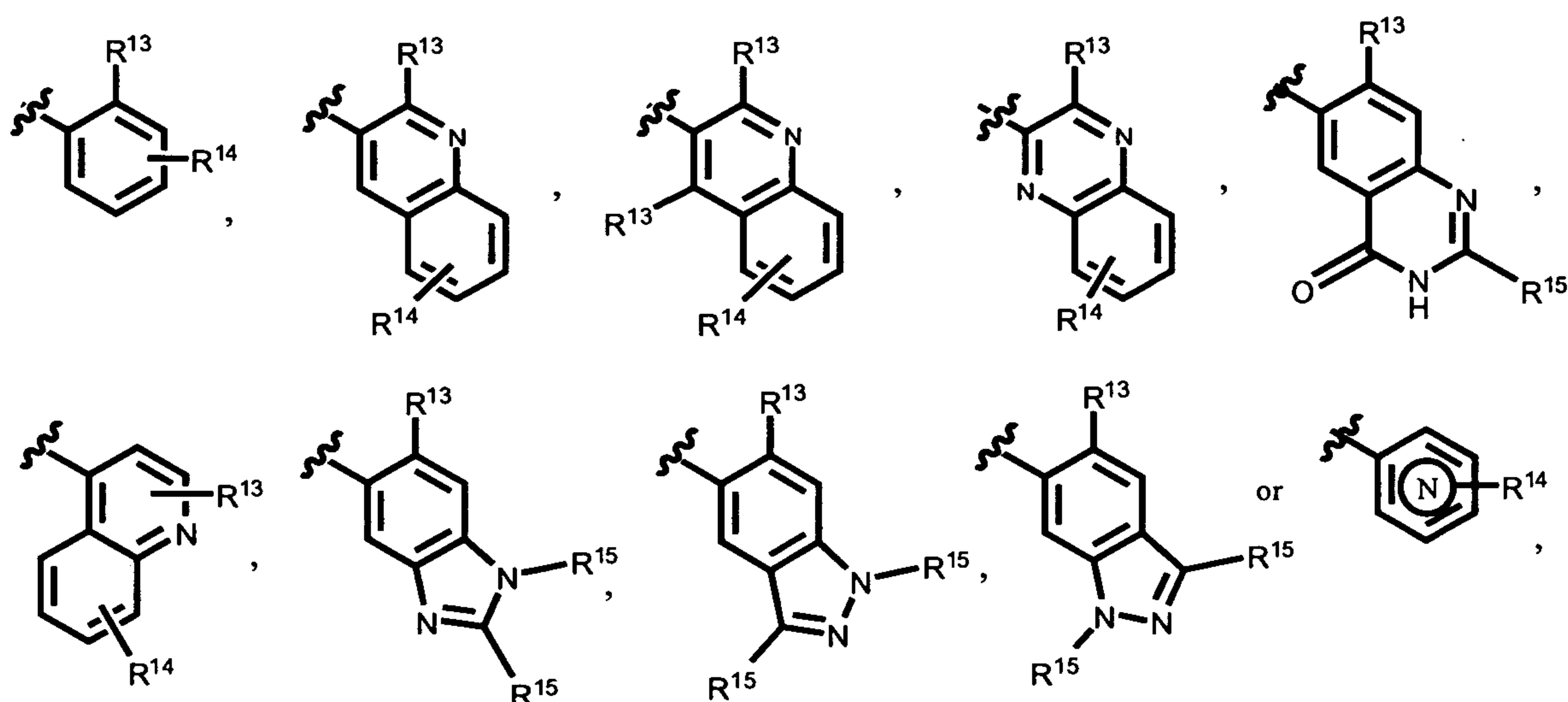
238

12. The compound of claim 11, wherein R^5 and R^6 are each independently selected from alkyl, halo and haloalkyl.

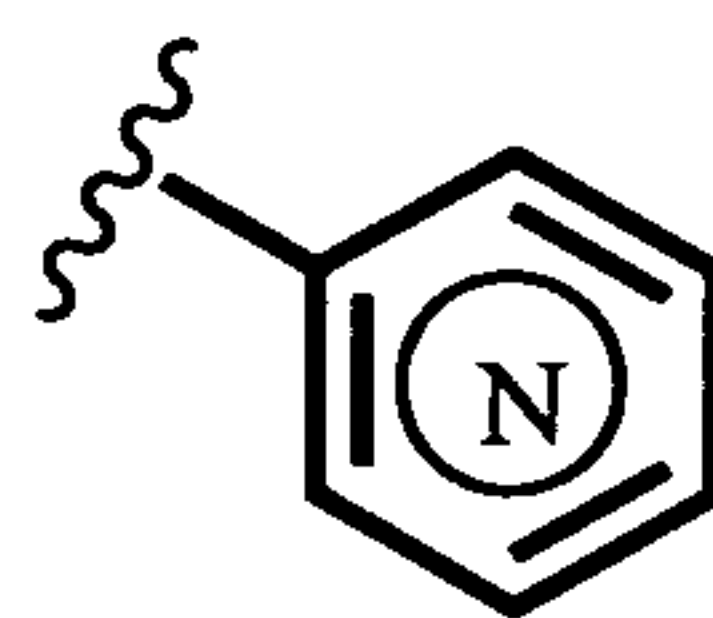
13. The compound of claim 12, wherein R^5 and R^6 are each independently selected from alkyl and halo.

14. The compound of claim 2, wherein R^{10} is aryl or heteroaryl.

15. The compound of claim 14, wherein R^{10} is:



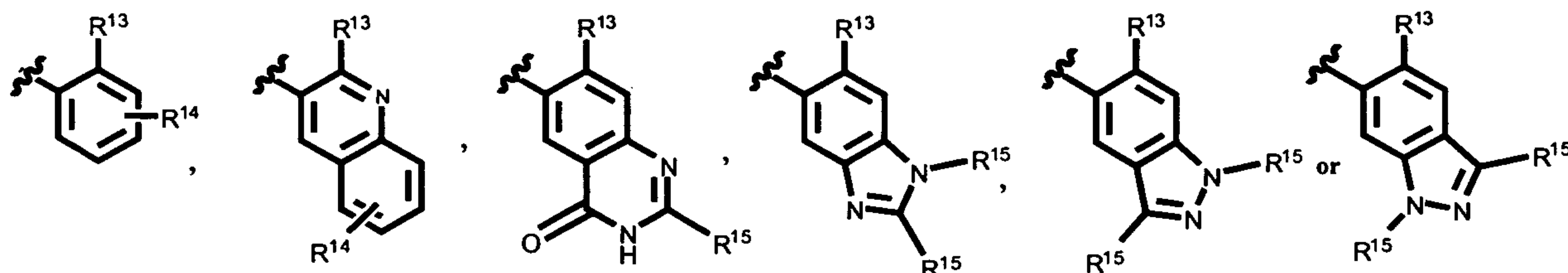
wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-



alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

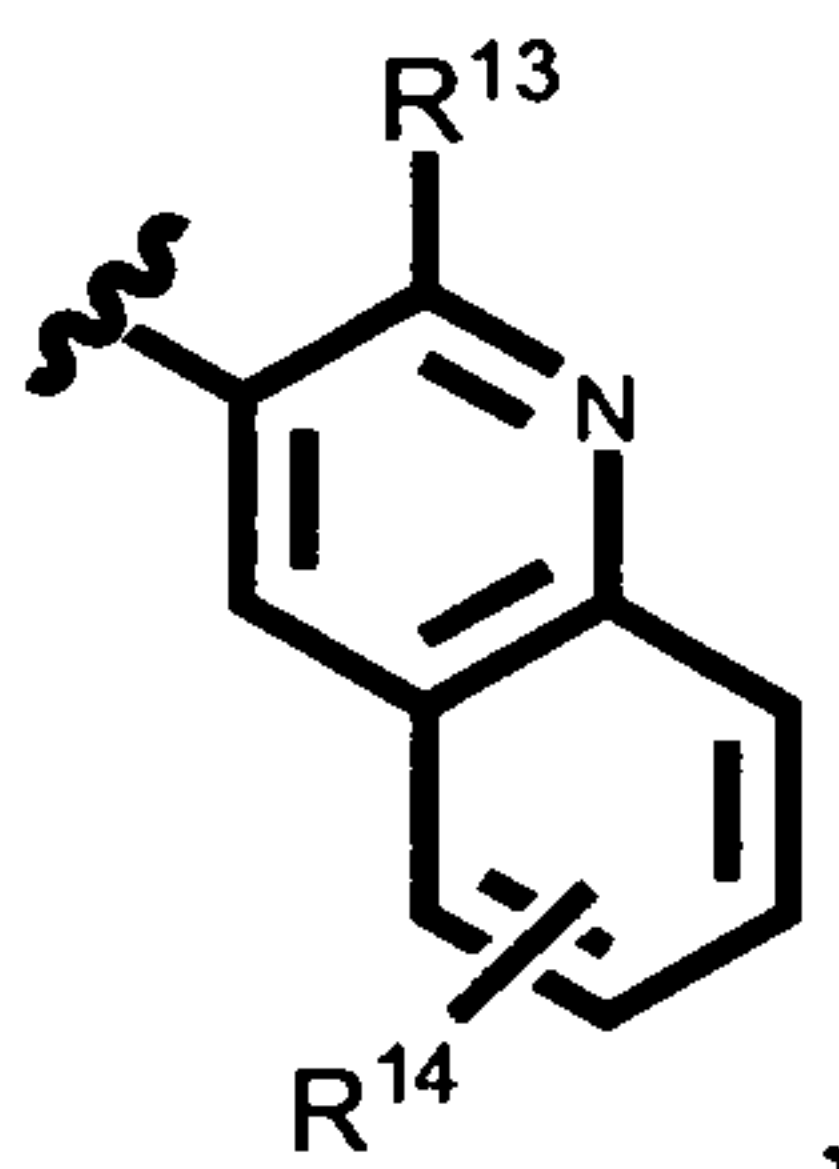
16. The compound of claim 15, wherein R^{10} is:

239



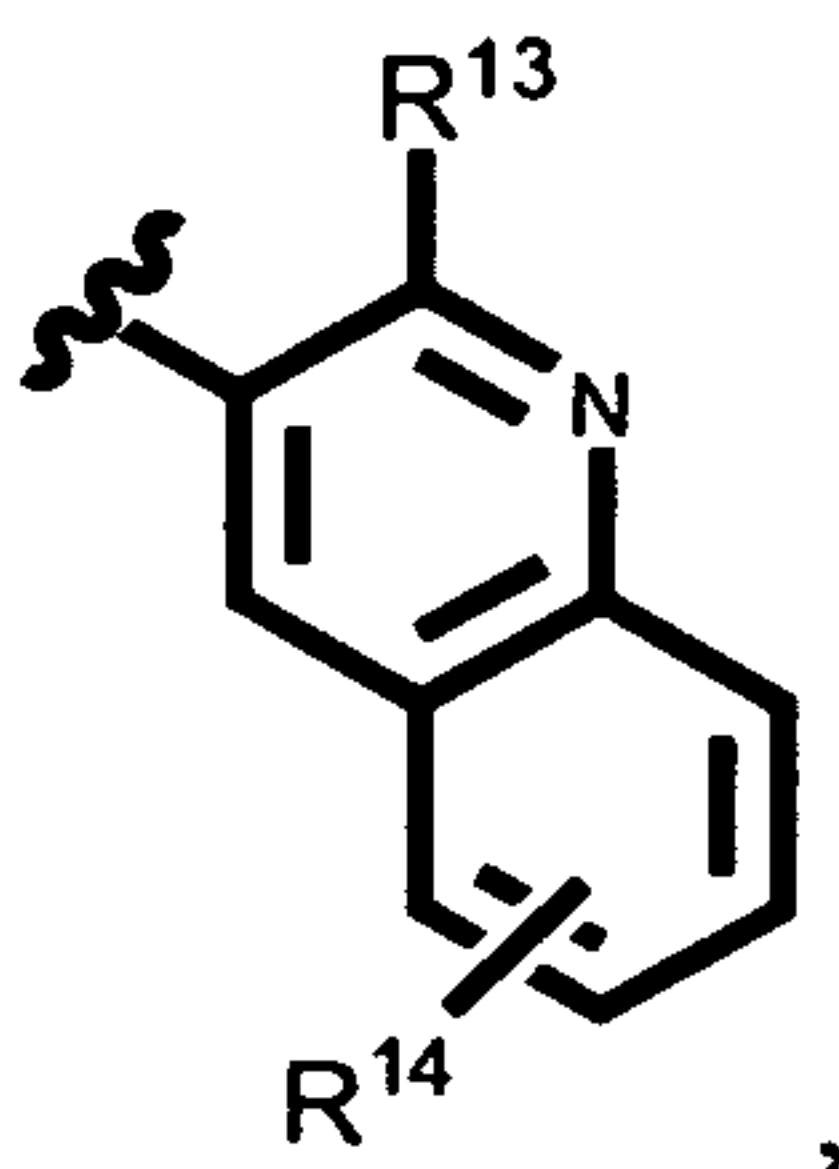
wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

17. The compound of claim 16, wherein R^{10} is:



wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

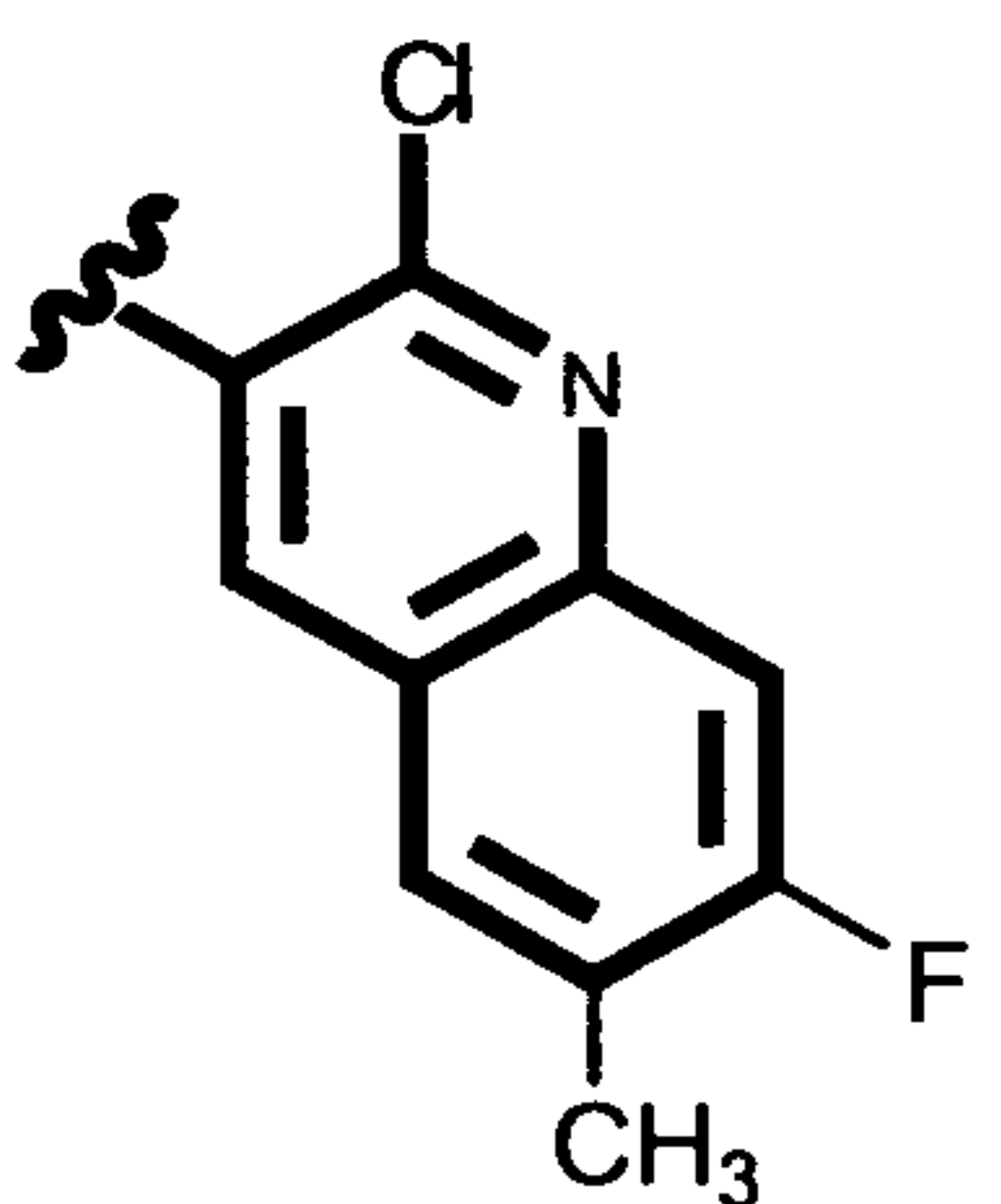
18. The compound of claim 17, wherein R^{10} is:



240

wherein R^{13} is Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl or halo.

19. The compound of claim 18, wherein R^{10} is:



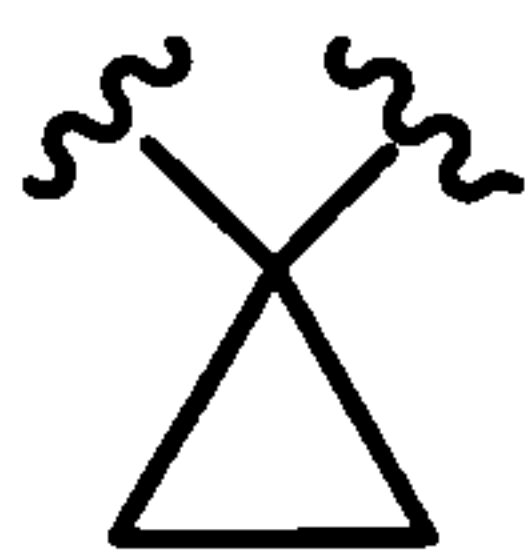
20. The compound of claim 15, wherein R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$.

21. The compound of claim 17, wherein R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$.

22. The compound of claim 19, wherein R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$.

23. The compound of claim 5, wherein R^1 is $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2]_r-$.

24. The compound of claim 23, wherein R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or



25. The compound of claim 23, wherein R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or $-\text{OH}$, R^5 is H, alkyl, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{O-haloalkyl}$, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-\text{OH}$, hydroxyalkyl, $-\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{CN}$, and R^6 is H, alkyl, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{O-haloalkyl}$, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-\text{OH}$, hydroxyalkyl, $-\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{CN}$.

26. The compound of claim 25, wherein R^4 and R^7 are H.

27. The compound of claim 26, wherein R^5 and R^6 are other than H.

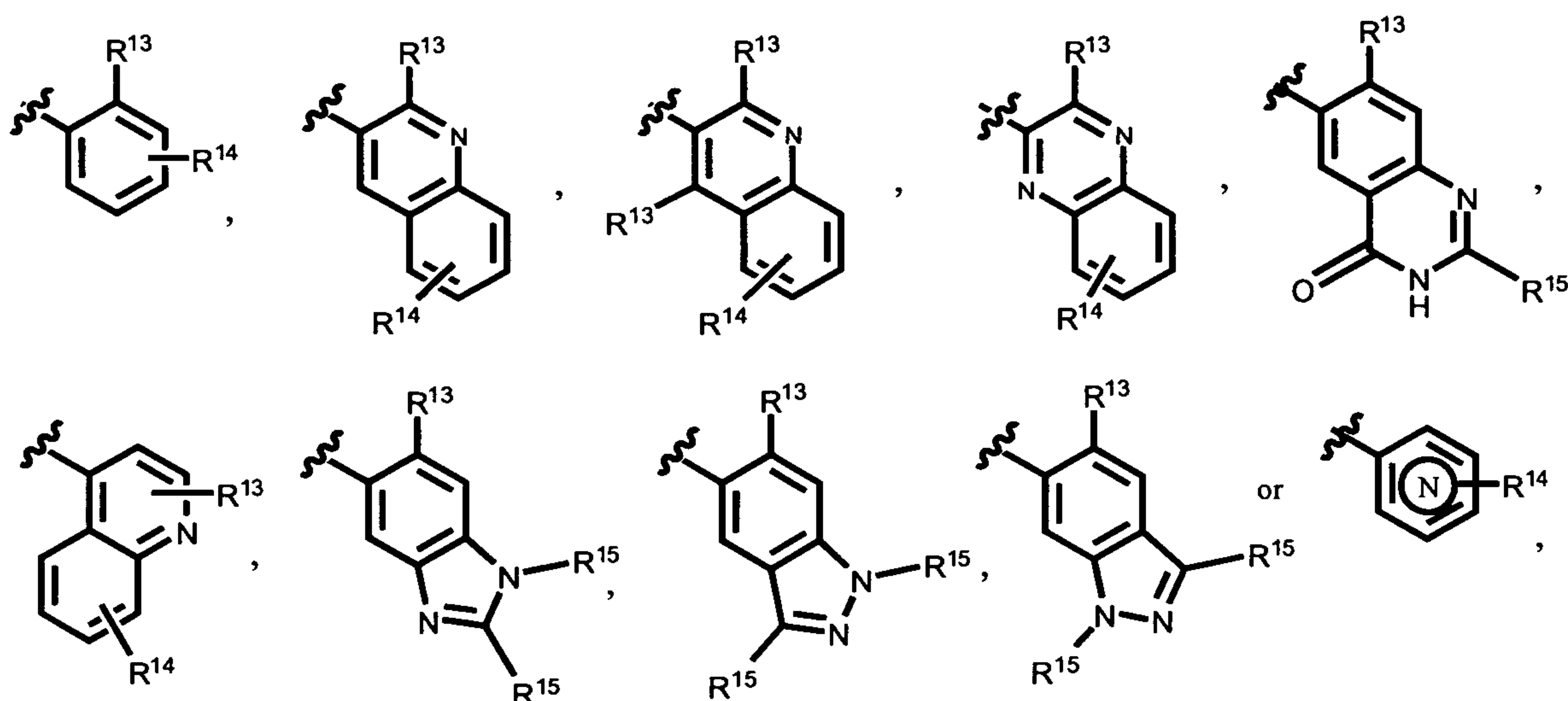
241

28. The compound of claim 27, wherein R^5 and R^6 are each independently selected from alkyl, halo and haloalkyl.

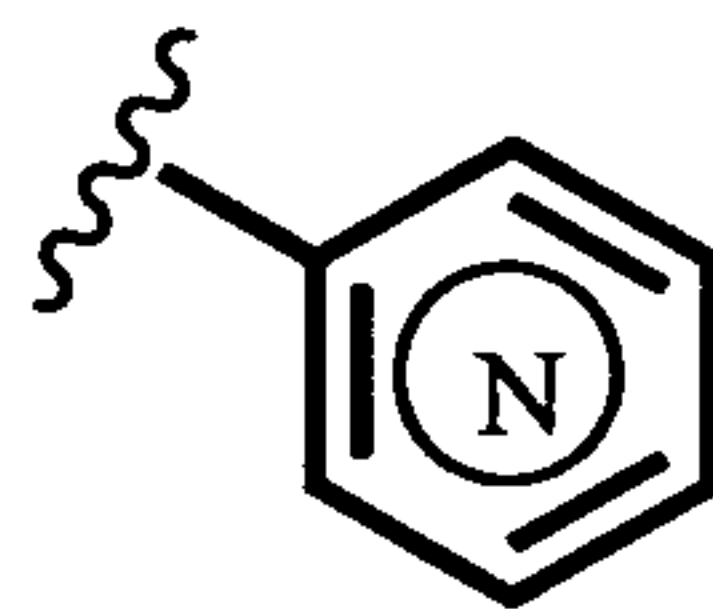
29. The compound of claim 28, wherein R^5 and R^6 are each independently selected from alkyl and halo.

30. The compound of claim 25, wherein R^{10} is aryl or heteroaryl.

31. The compound of claim 30, wherein R^{10} is:



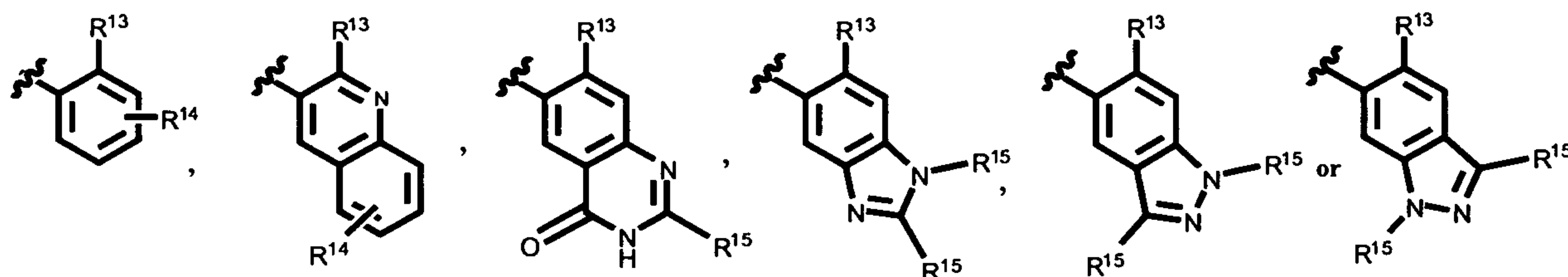
wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-



alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

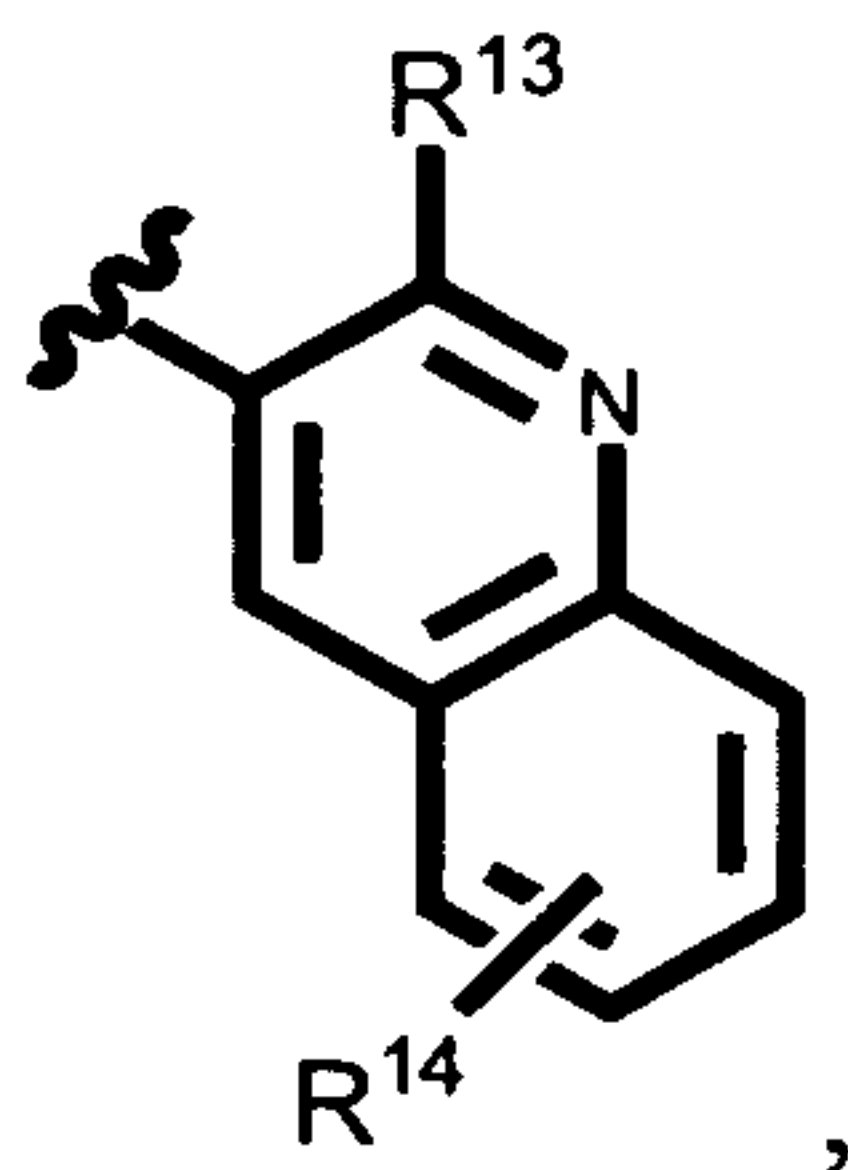
242

32. The compound of claim 31, wherein R^{10} is:



wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; and each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl.

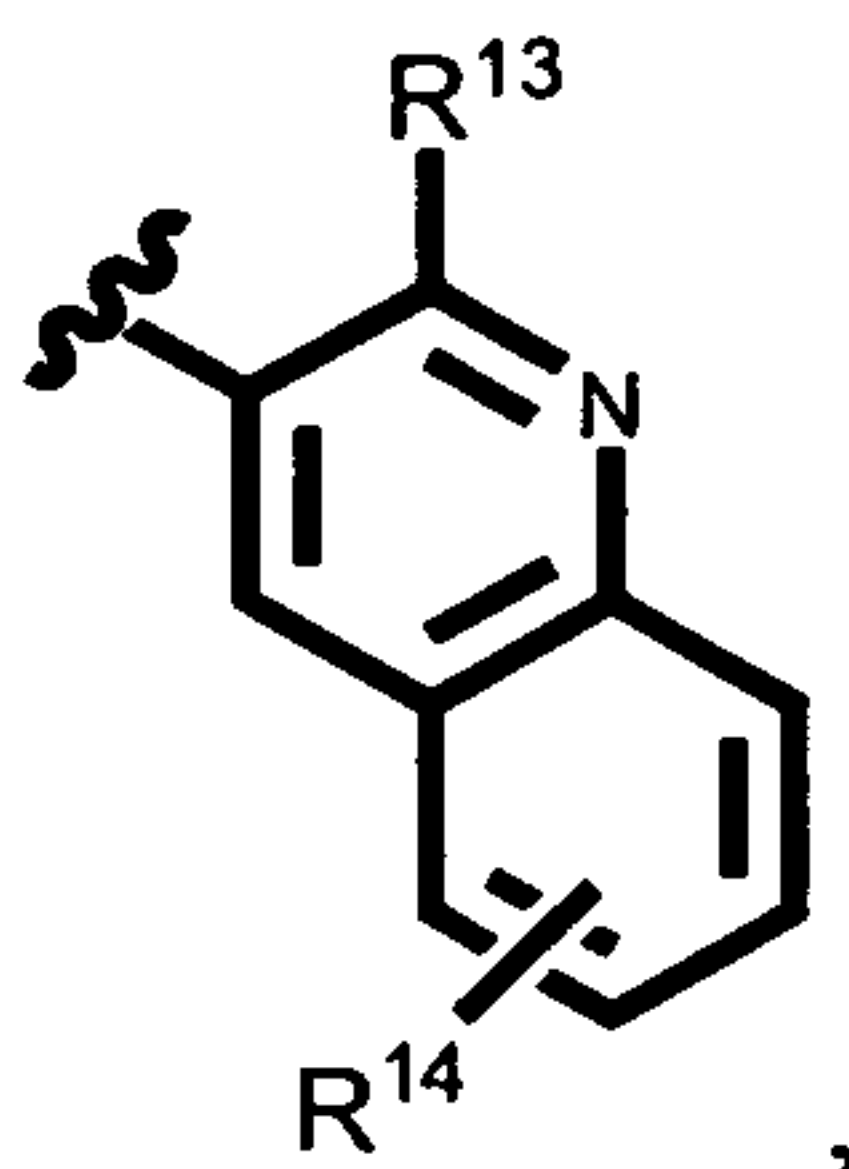
33. The compound of claim 32, wherein R^{10} is:



wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

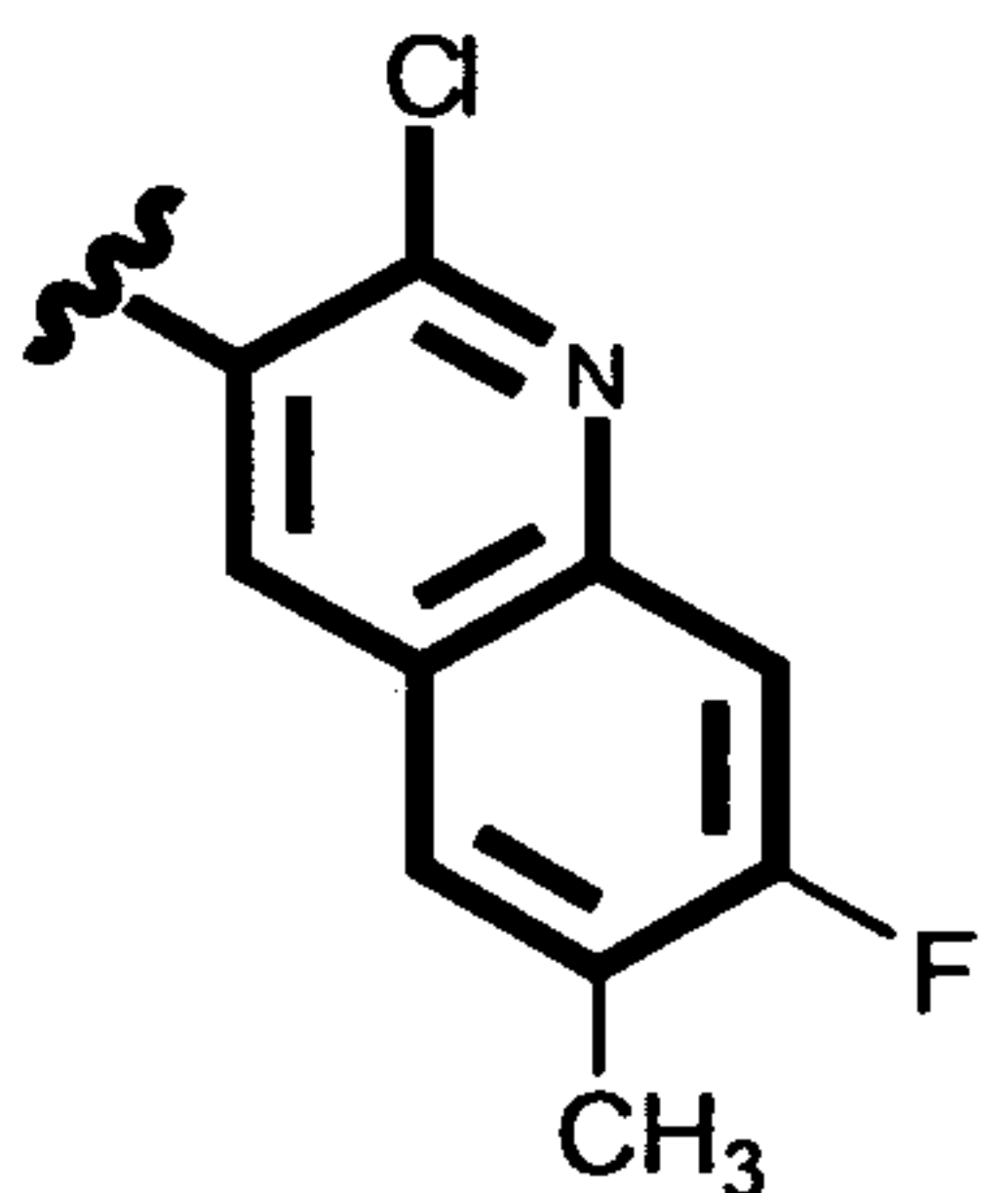
34. The compound of claim 33, wherein R^{10} is:

243



wherein R^{13} is Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl or halo.

- 5 35. The compound of claim 34, wherein R^{10} is:

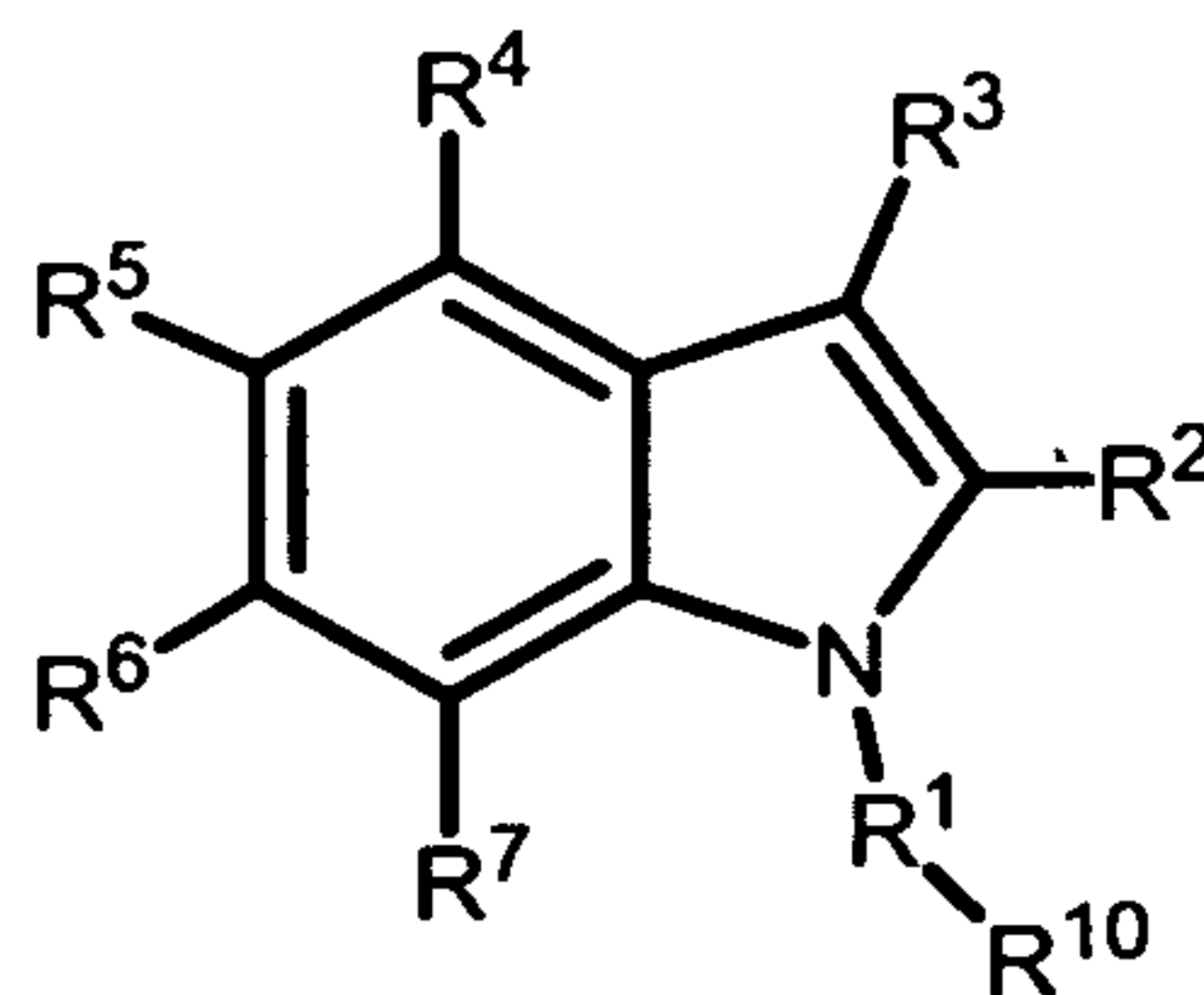


36. The compound of claim 31, wherein R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$.

- 10 37. The compound of claim 35, wherein R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$.

38. The compound of claim 36, wherein R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}-$.

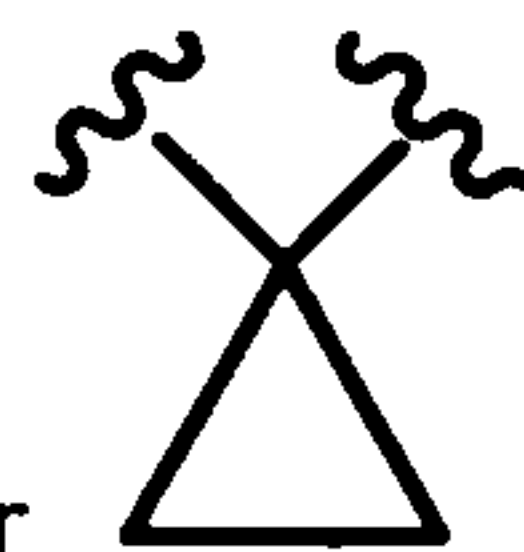
39. A compound of claim 1 having the formula:



(Ia)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof,
wherein:

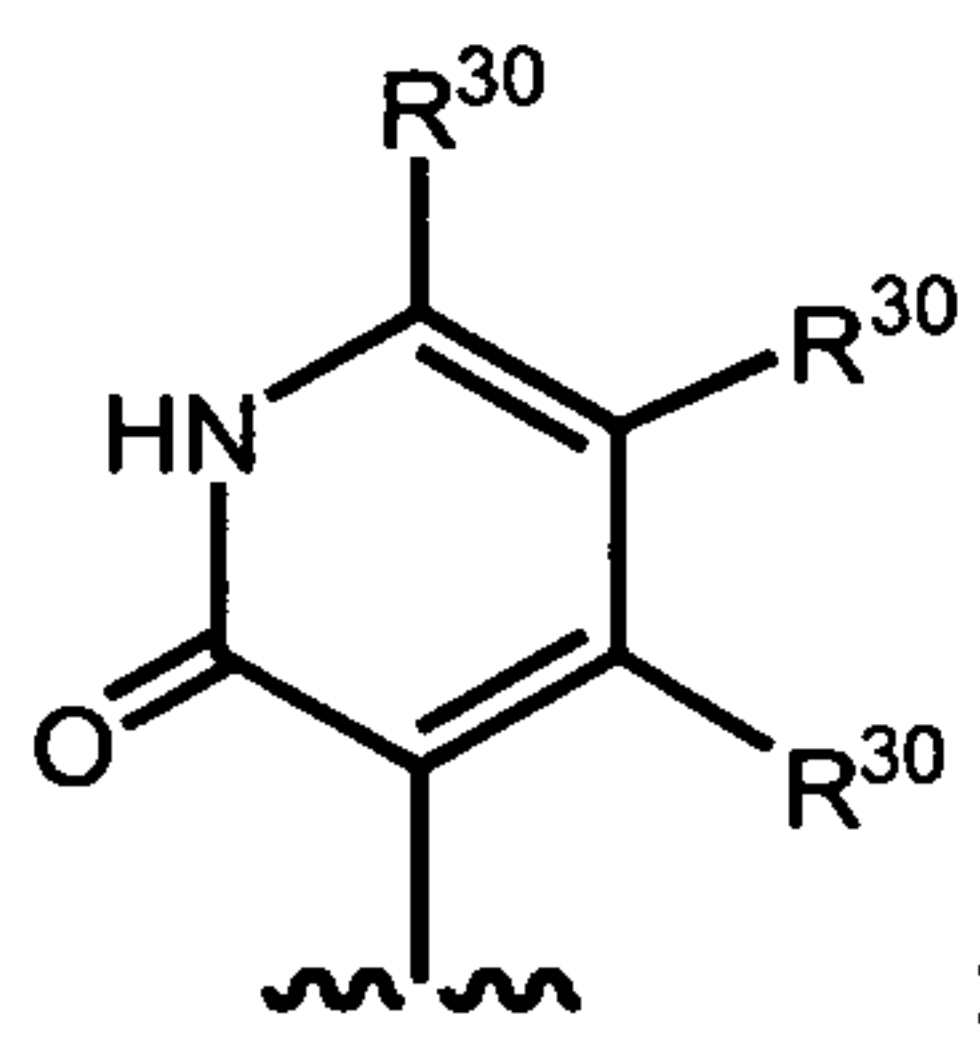
244



R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or  ;

R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{Oalkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NHalkyl}$, or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-cycloalkyl}$;

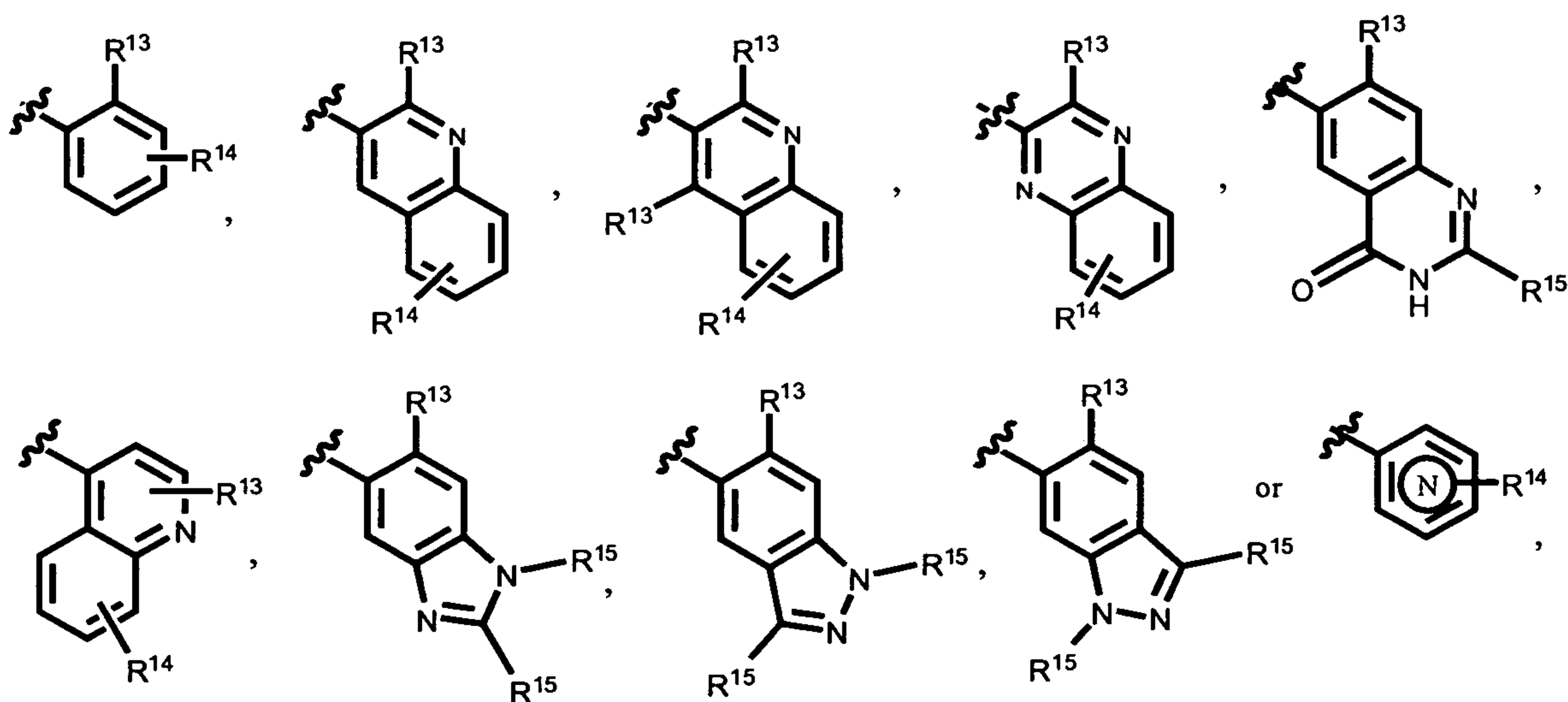
R^3 is:



R^4 , R^5 , R^6 and R^7 are each, independently, H, alkyl, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2\text{]}_q\text{-cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{[C(R}^{12})_2\text{]}_q\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$, haloalkyl, halo, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}^9$ or $-\text{N(R}^9)_2$;

each occurrence of R^9 is independently H, alkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

R^{10} is:



each occurrence of R^{11} is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

each occurrence of R^{12} is independently H, halo, $-\text{N(alkyl)}_2$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two R^{12} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or C=O group;

R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl;

245

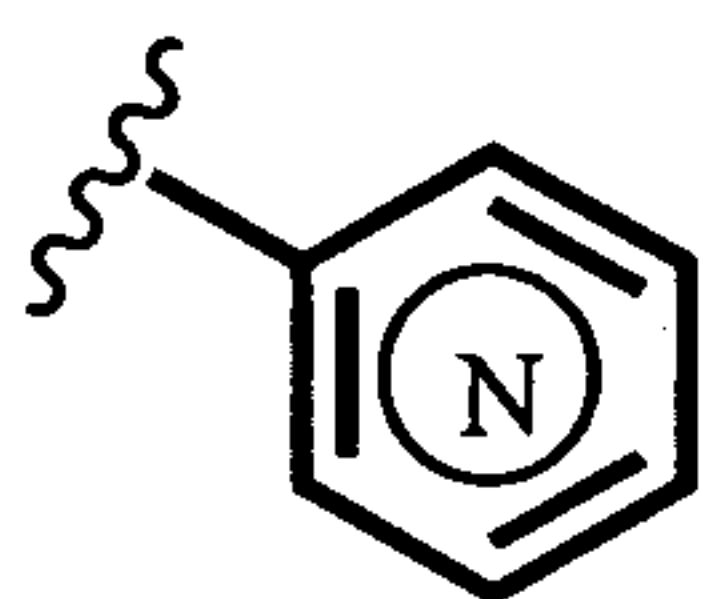
R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl;

each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl;

each occurrence of R^{30} is independently, H, halo, -N(alkyl)₂, -OH, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a -3- to 7-membered ring selected from aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl and heterocycloalkyl;;

each occurrence of q is independently an integer ranging from 0 to 4;

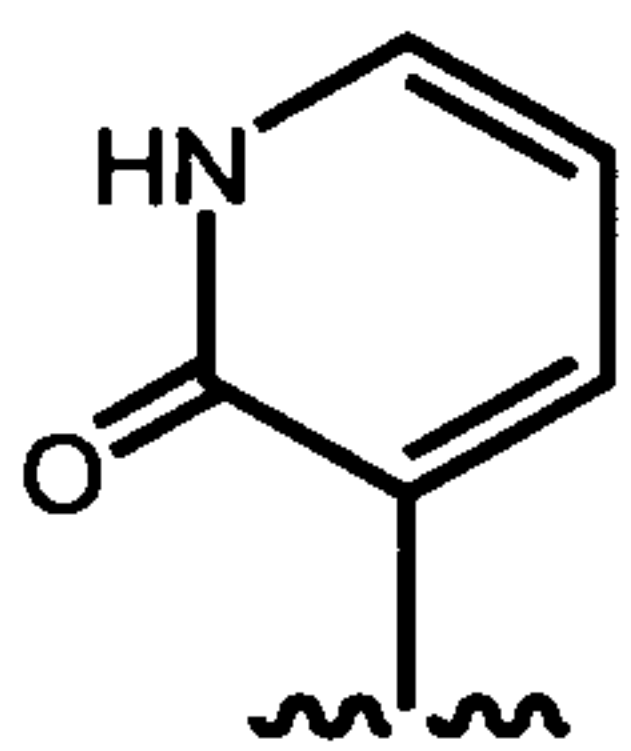
each occurrence of r is independently an integer ranging from 1 to 4; and



represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

The compound of claim 39, wherein R^2 is -C(O)OH or -C(O)O-alkyl.

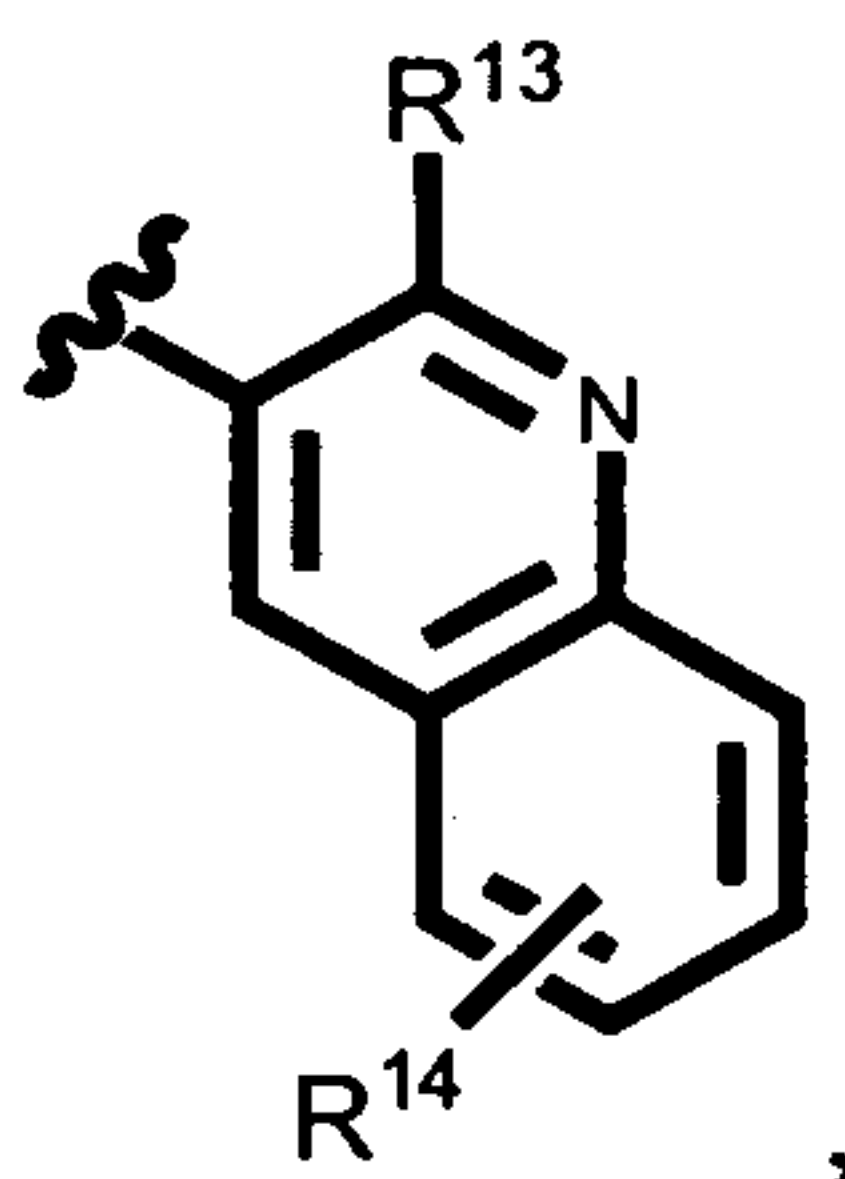
The compound of claim 40, wherein R^3 is:



The compound of claim 41, wherein R^1 is -CH₂-.

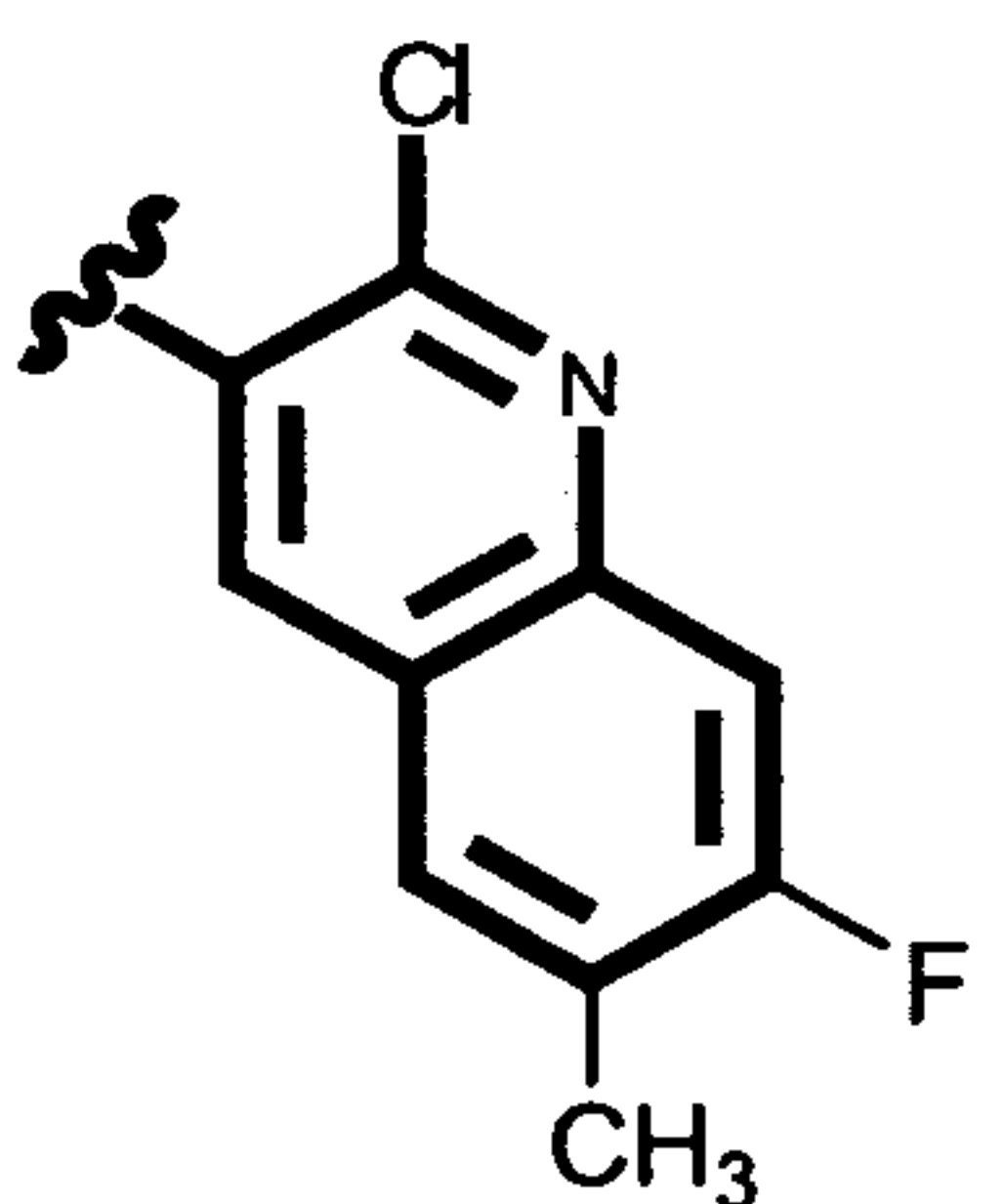
The compound of claim 42, wherein R^{10} is:

246



wherein R^{13} is Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl or halo.

- 5 44. The compound of claim 43, wherein R^{10} is:

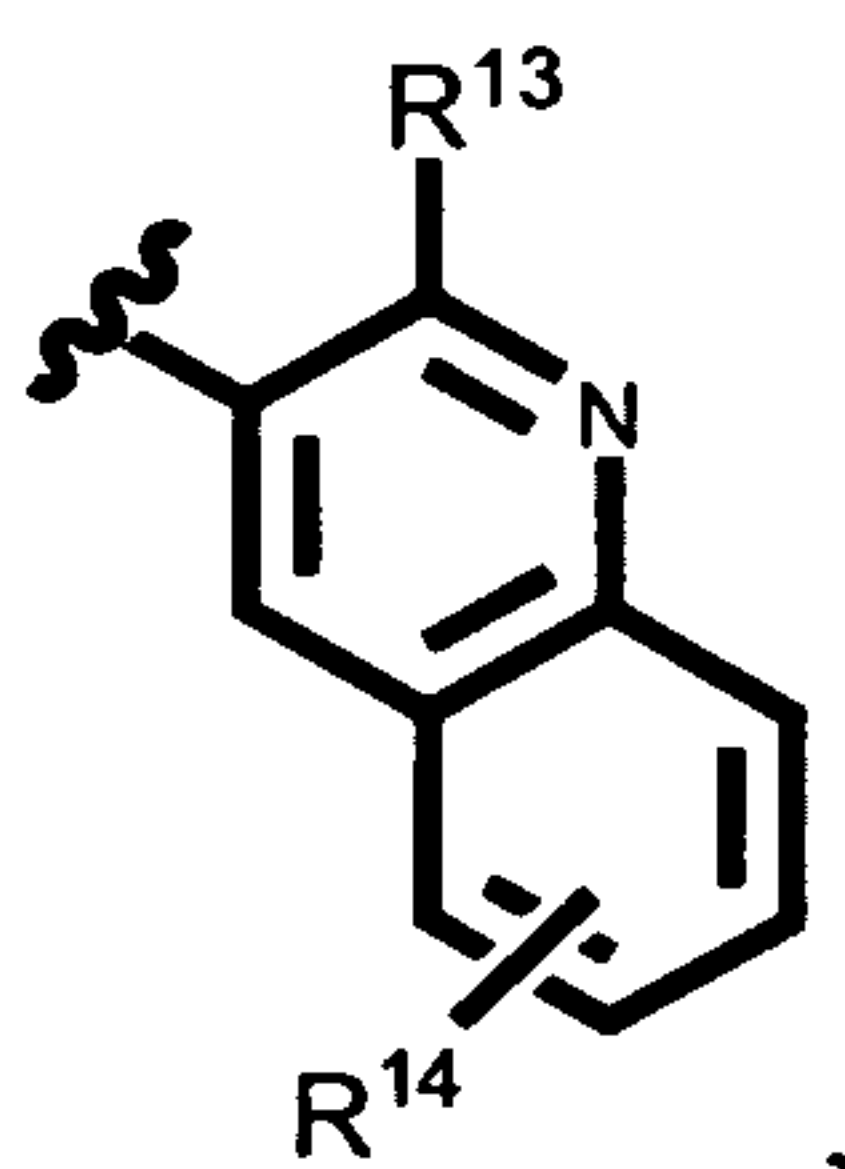


45. The compound of claim 42, wherein R^4 and R^7 are each H.

- 10 46. The compound of claim 45, wherein R^5 and R^6 are each independently H, alkyl, halo or haloalkyl.

47. The compound of claim 46, wherein R^5 and R^6 are each independently alkyl or halo.

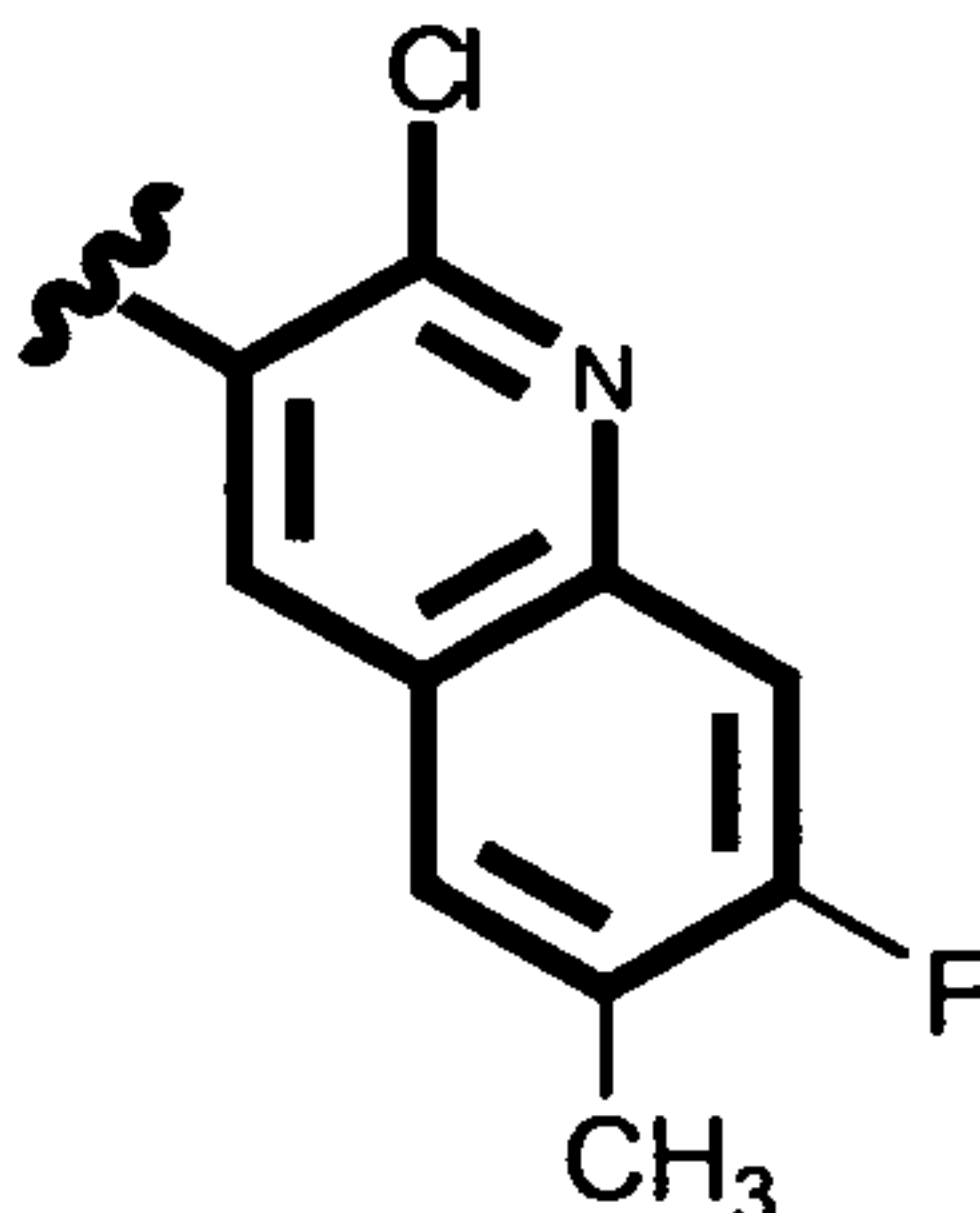
- 15 48. The compound of claim 46, wherein R^{10} is:



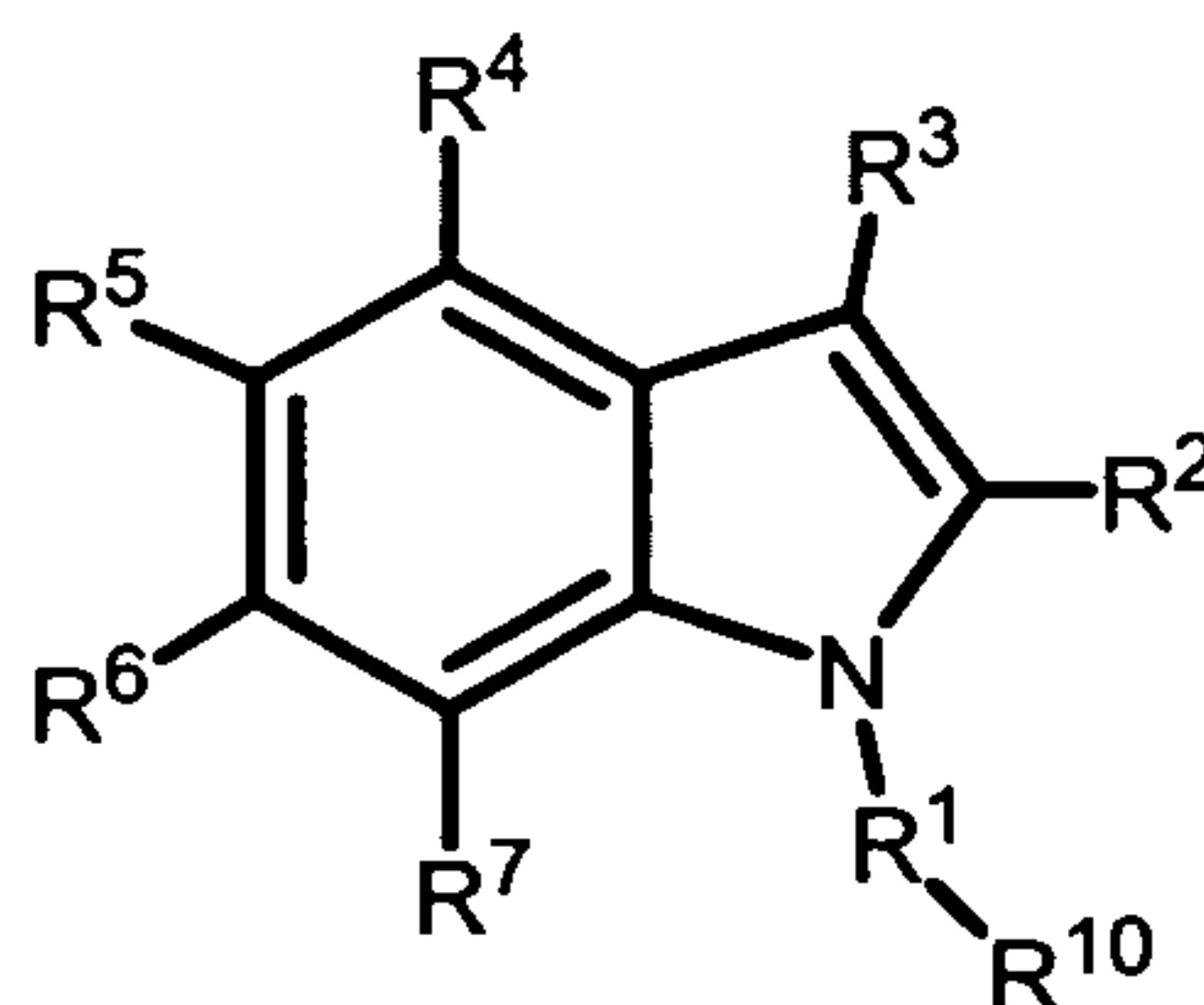
wherein R^{13} is Cl and R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl or halo.

247

49. The compound of claim 48 wherein R^{10} is:



5 50. A compound having the formula:



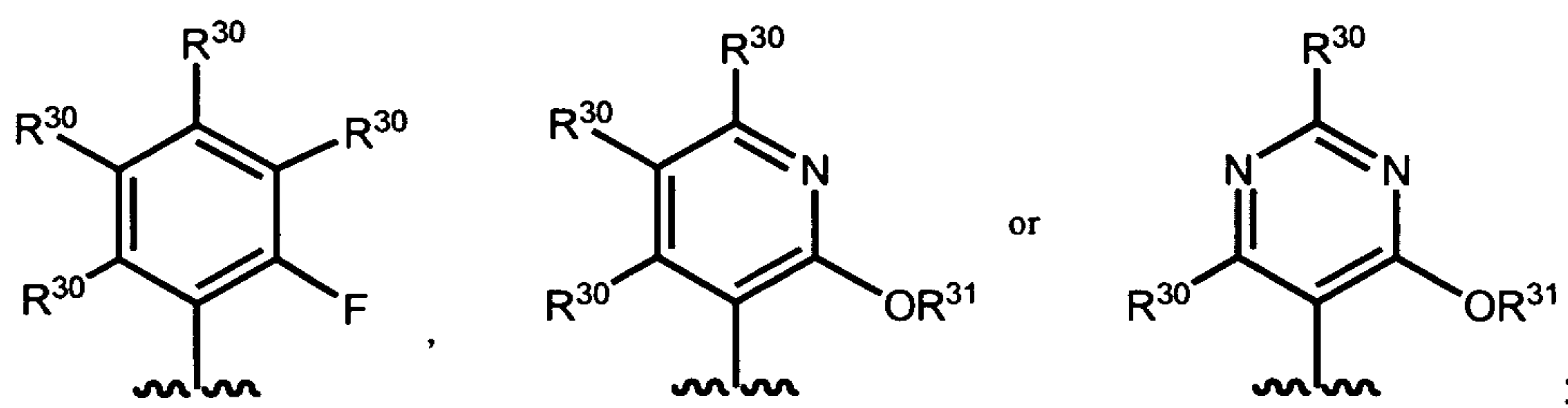
(II)

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, esters and prodrugs thereof,
wherein:

- 10 R^1 is a bond, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-O-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r-N(R^9)-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-CH=CH-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C\equiv C-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$;
- R^2 is $-C(O)R^9$, $-C(O)OR^9$, $-C(O)OCH_2OR^9$, $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)C(=NR^9)NR^9$, $-alkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-aryl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkenyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$
- 15 heteroaryl or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkenyl$, wherein an aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl or heteroaryl, group can be optionally substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are the same or different, and are selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-cycloalkenyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heterocycloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-$
- 20 heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-heteroaryl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-haloalkyl$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-hydroxyalkyl$, halo, $-OH$, $-OR^9$, $-CN$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-OR^9$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHC(O)R^8$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NR^8C(O)N(R^9)_2$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-NHSO_2R^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-S(O)_pR^{11}$, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q-SO_2N(R^9)_2$ and $-SO_2N(R^9)C(O)N(R^9)_2$;

R^3 is

248



R^4 , R^5 , R^6 and R^7 are each, independently, H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl, halo, -OH, -OR⁹, -CN, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)R⁸, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)OR⁹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -OR⁹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHC(O)R⁸, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NR⁸C(O)N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHSO₂R¹¹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -S(O)_pR¹¹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -SO₂N(R⁹)₂ or -SO₂N(R⁹)C(O)N(R⁹)₂;

each occurrence of R⁸ is independently H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

each occurrence of R⁹ is independently H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -O-alkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -N(alkyl)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

R¹⁰ is H, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl, heteroaryl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl or heteroaryl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from -H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl, halo, -OH, -OR⁹, -CN, -NO₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)R⁸, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)OR⁹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -OR⁹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHC(O)R⁸, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NR⁸C(O)N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHSO₂R¹¹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -S(O)_pR¹¹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -SO₂N(R⁹)₂ and -SO₂N(R⁹)C(O)N(R⁹)₂, such that when R¹ is a bond, R¹⁰ is not H;

each occurrence of R¹¹ is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, heteroaryl, haloalkyl, hydroxy or hydroxyalkyl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkenyl, aryl or heteroaryl group can be optionally and independently substituted with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from -H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, -

$[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, -
 $[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl, halo, -OH, -OR⁹, -CN, -
 $[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)R⁸, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)OR⁹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -OR⁹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -
N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHC(O)R⁸, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NR⁸C(O)N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHSO₂alkyl, -
5 $[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHSO₂cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHSO₂aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -SO₂N(R⁹)₂ and -
SO₂N(R⁹)C(O)N(R⁹)₂;

each occurrence of R¹² is independently H, halo, -N(R⁹)₂, -OR⁹, alkyl, cycloalkyl,
cycloalkenyl, heterocycloalkyl or heterocycloalkenyl, wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl,
heterocycloalkyl or heterocycloalkenyl group can be optionally and independently substituted
10 with up to 4 substituents, which are each independently selected from alkyl, halo, haloalkyl,
hydroxyalkyl, -OH, -CN, -C(O)alkyl, -C(O)Oalkyl, -C(O)NHalkyl, -C(O)N(alkyl)₂, -O-alkyl, -
NH₂, -NH(alkyl), -N(alkyl)₂, -NHC(O)alkyl, -NHSO₂alkyl, -SO₂alkyl or -SO₂NH-alkyl, or
two R¹² groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a
cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or C=O group;

15 each occurrence of R²⁰ is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or
heteroaryl, or both R²⁰ groups and the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form a
cycloalkyl, cycloheteroalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl group wherein a cycloalkyl, cycloheteroalkyl,
aryl or heteroaryl group can be substituted with up to 4 groups, which are each independently
selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, halo, -OH, -OR⁹, -CN, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, -
20 $[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, -
 $[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)R⁸, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)OR⁹, -
 $[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -OR⁹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHC(O)R⁸, -
 $[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NR⁸C(O)N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHSO₂R¹¹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -S(O)_pR¹¹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -
SO₂N(R⁹)₂ and -SO₂N(R⁹)C(O)N(R⁹)₂;

25 each occurrence of R³⁰ is independently selected from -H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl,
 $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -
heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl,
halo, -OH, -OR⁹, -CN, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)R⁸, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)OR⁹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -
 $[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -OR⁹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -N(R⁹)₂, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHC(O)R⁸, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NR⁸C(O)N(R⁹)₂, -
30 $[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -NHSO₂R¹¹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -S(O)_pR¹¹, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -SO₂N(R⁹)₂ and -SO₂N(R⁹)C(O)N(R⁹)₂,
or two adjacent R³⁰ groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to
form a -3- to 7-membered ring selected from aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl and heterocycloalkyl;

250

R^{31} is alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -cycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heterocycloalkenyl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -heteroaryl, $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -haloalkyl or $-[C(R^{12})_2]_q$ -hydroxyalkyl;

each occurrence of p is independently 0, 1 or 2;

- 5 each occurrence of q is independently an integer ranging from 0 to 4; and
each occurrence of r is independently an integer ranging from 1 to 4.

51. The compound of claim 50, wherein R^2 is $-C(O)OR^9$ or $-C(O)N(R^9)_2$, wherein R^9 is H, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl.

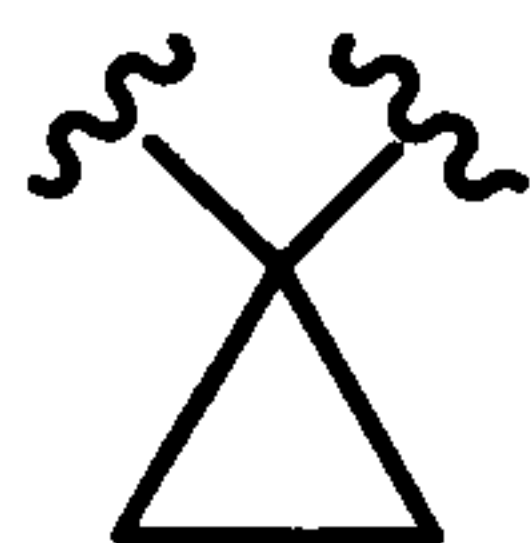
10

52. The compound of claim 51, wherein each occurrence of R^{30} is independently, H, halo, $-N(alkyl)_2$, $-OH$, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form an aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl group.

15

53. The compound of claim 51, wherein R^1 is $-[C(R^{12})_2]_r$.

54. The compound of claim 53, wherein R^1 is $-CH_2-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$, $-CH(CH_3)-$ or



20

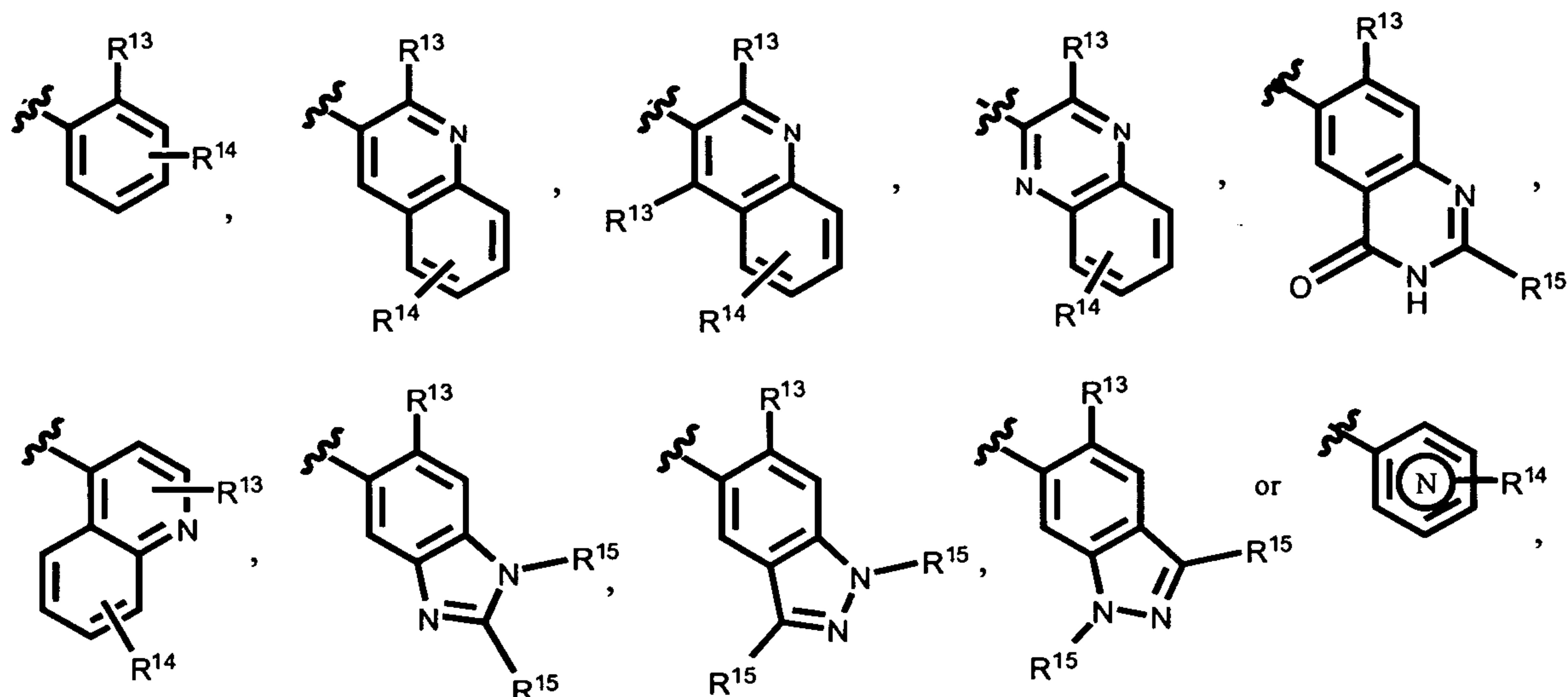
55. The compound of claim 53, wherein R^4 and R^7 are each independently H, halo or $-OH$, R^5 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$, and R^6 is H, alkyl, $-O$ -alkyl, $-O$ -haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, $-OH$, hydroxyalkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-CN$.

25

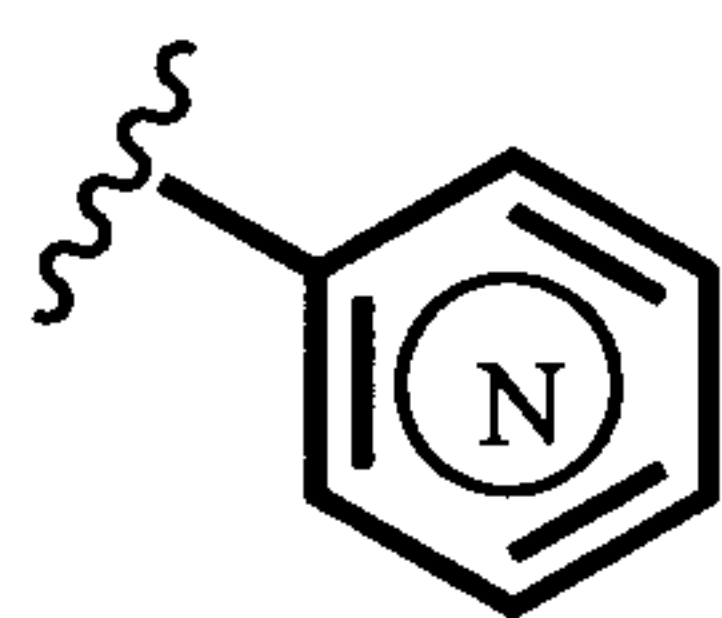
56. The compound of claim 55, wherein R^{10} is aryl or heteroaryl.

57. The compound of claim 56, wherein R^{10} is:

251

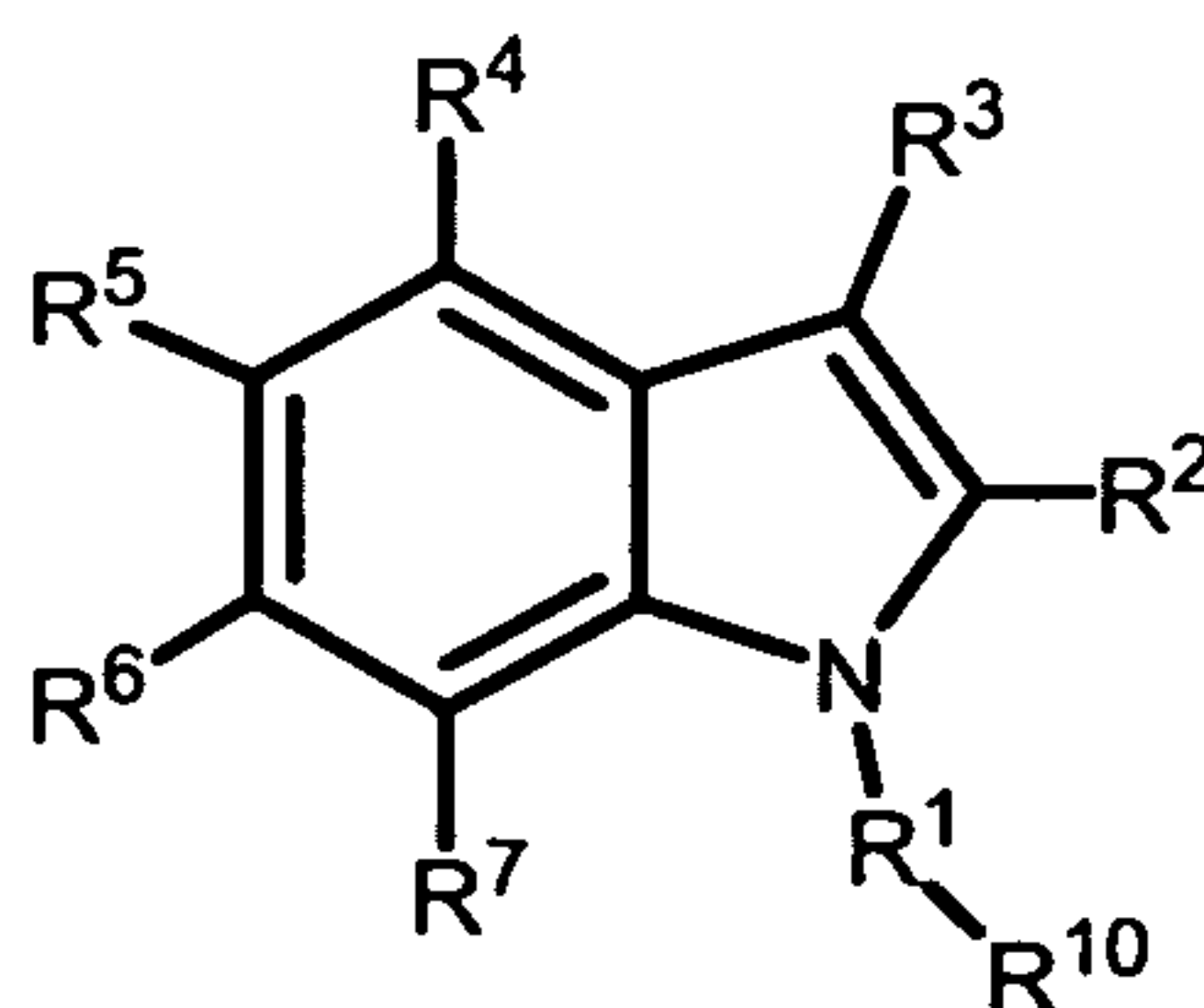


wherein R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl; R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl and heteroaryl; each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl; and



represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

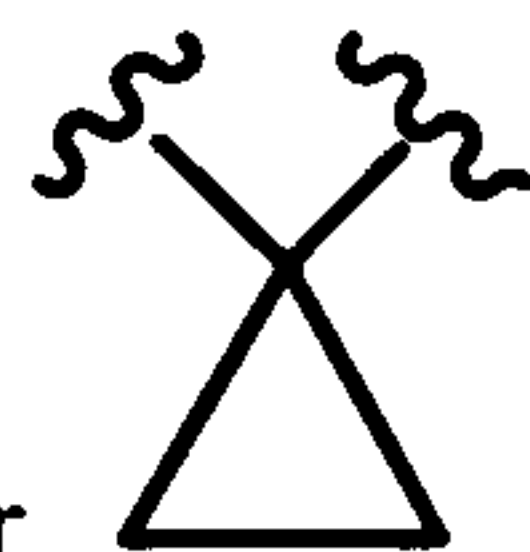
58. A compound of claim 51 having the formula:



(IIa)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof,
wherein:

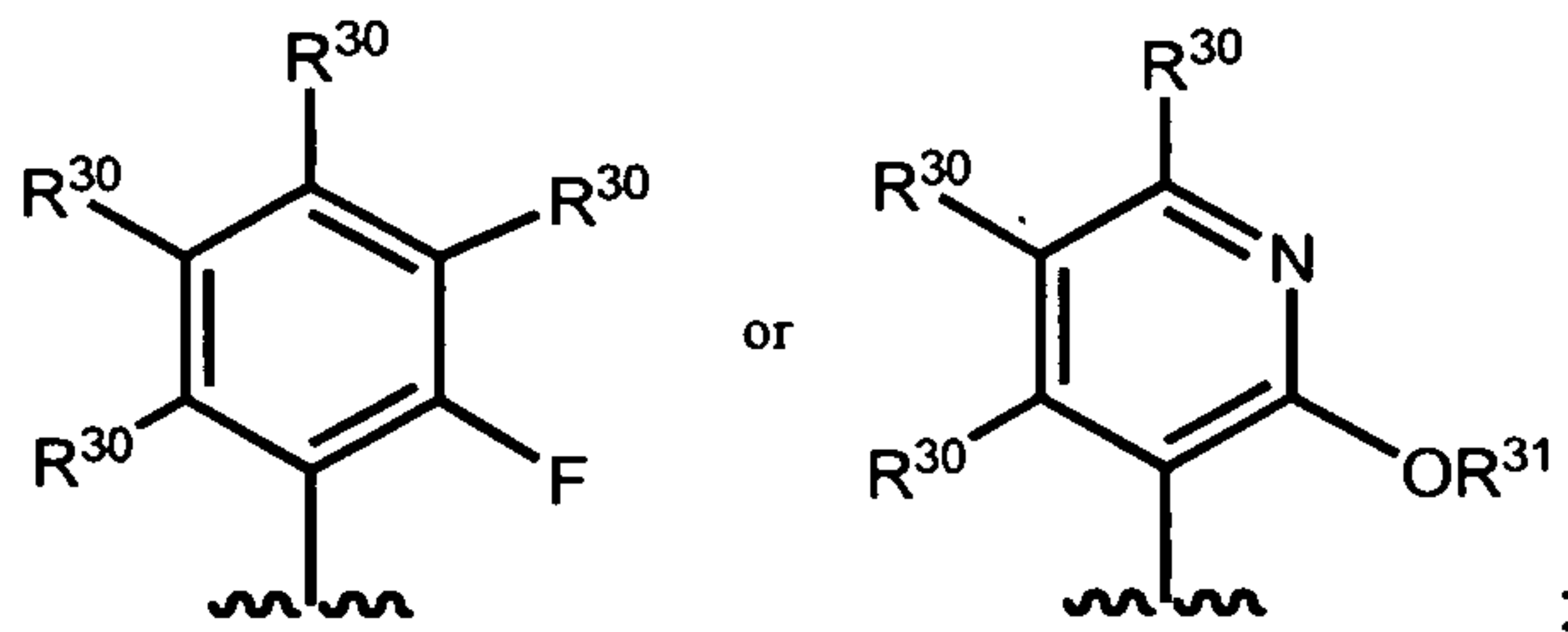
252



R^1 is $-\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-$ or  ;

R^2 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^9$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^9)_2$;

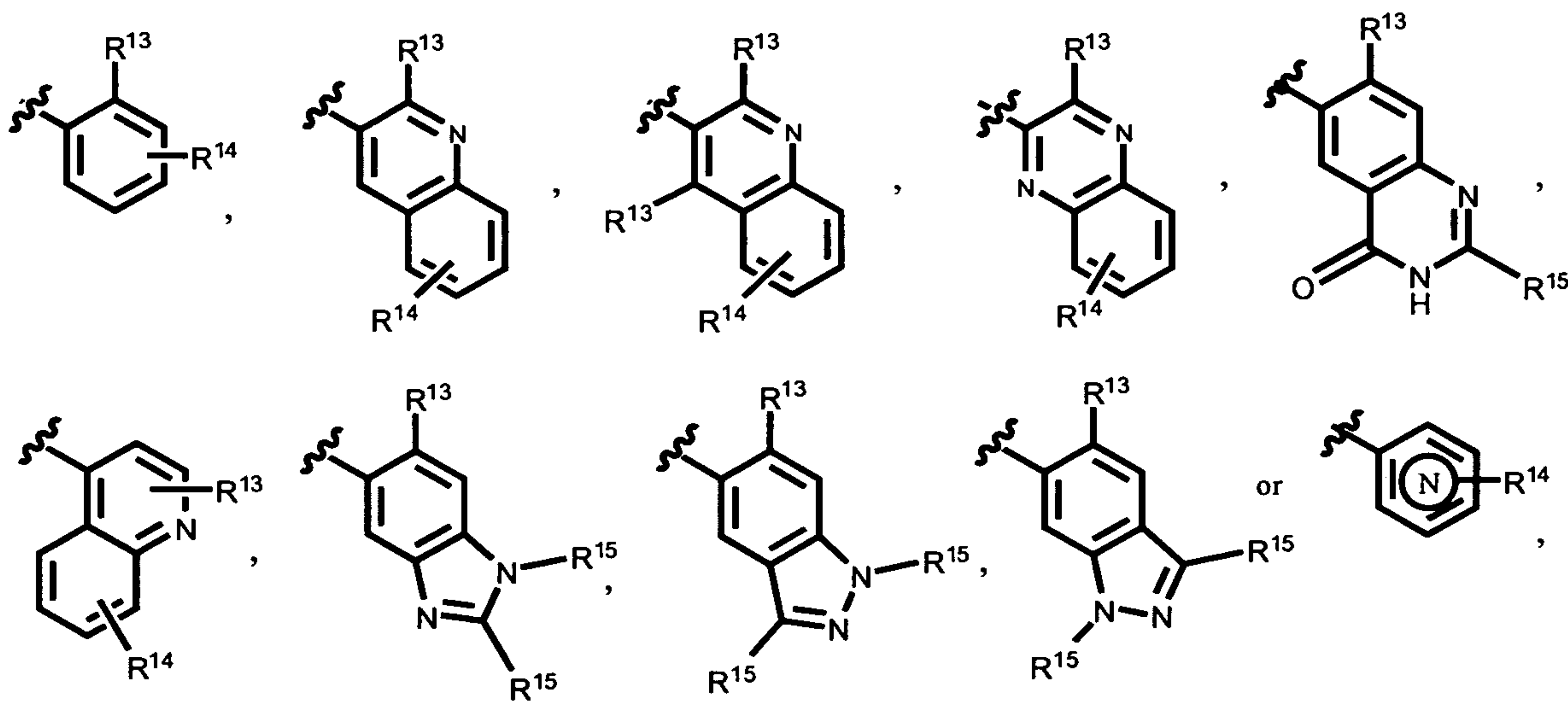
R^3 is:



5 R^4 , R^5 , R^6 and R^7 are each, independently, H, alkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, haloalkyl, halo, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{O-haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NH-alkyl}$ or $-\text{N(alkyl)}_2$;

each occurrence of R^9 is independently H, alkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, haloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

R^{10} is:



10

each occurrence of R^{11} is independently alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, haloalkyl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl;

R^{13} is H, F, Br or Cl;

R^{14} represents up to 4 optional and additional substituents, each independently selected

15 from alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , $-\text{CN}$, halo, $-\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{O-haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH-alkyl}$, $-\text{S-alkyl}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{-heterocycloalkyl}$ and heteroaryl;

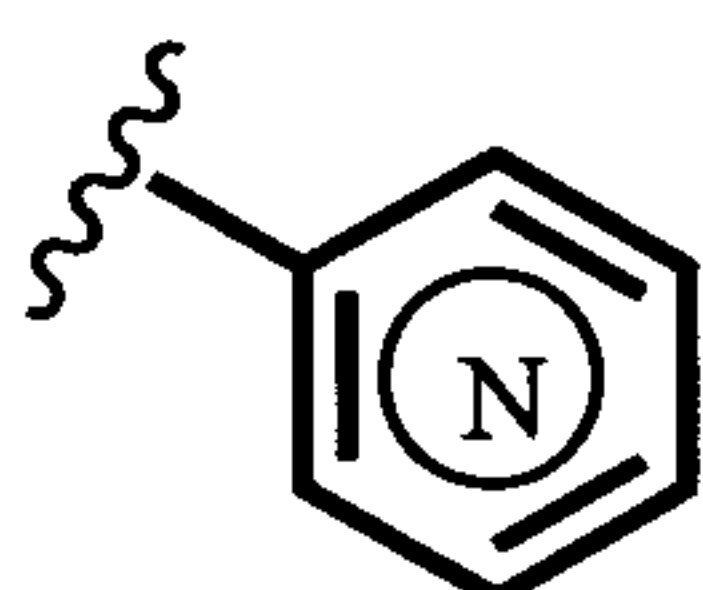
253

each occurrence of R^{15} is independently alkyl, cycloalkyl, CF_3 , -CN, halo, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, -NHSO₂-alkyl, -NO₂, -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NH-alkyl, -C(O)OH, -OH, -NH₂, -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂NH-alkyl, -S-alkyl, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂OH, -SO₂NH₂, -NHC(O)-alkyl, -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)-heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl;

5 each occurrence of R^{30} is independently, H, halo, -N(alkyl)₂, -OH, -O-alkyl, -O-haloalkyl, alkyl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, or two adjacent R^{30} groups, together with the carbon atoms to which they are attached, join to form an aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl group;

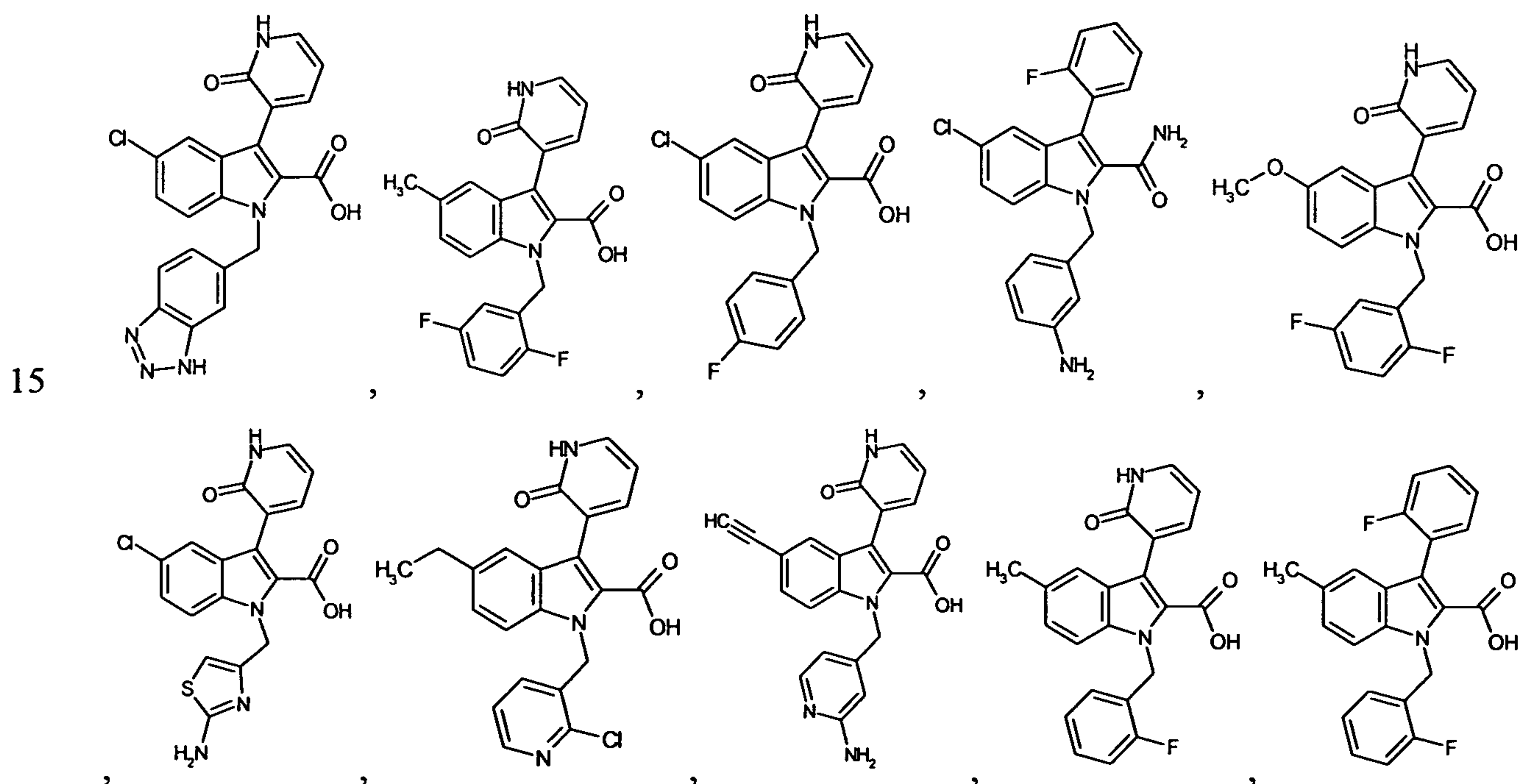
each occurrence of q is independently an integer ranging from 0 to 4;

10 each occurrence of r is independently an integer ranging from 1 to 4; and

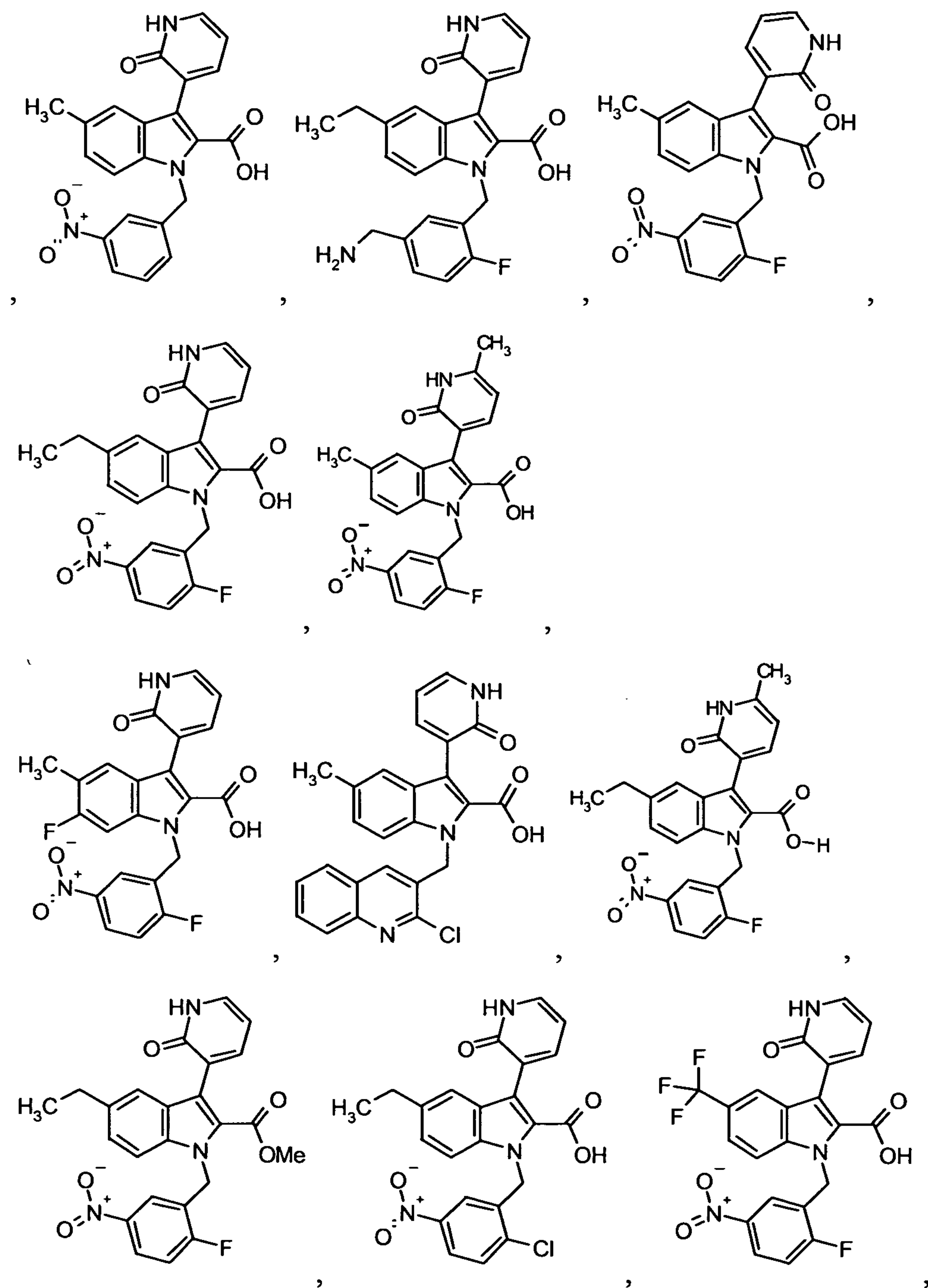


represents a pyridyl group, wherein the ring nitrogen atom can be at any of the five unsubstituted ring atom positions.

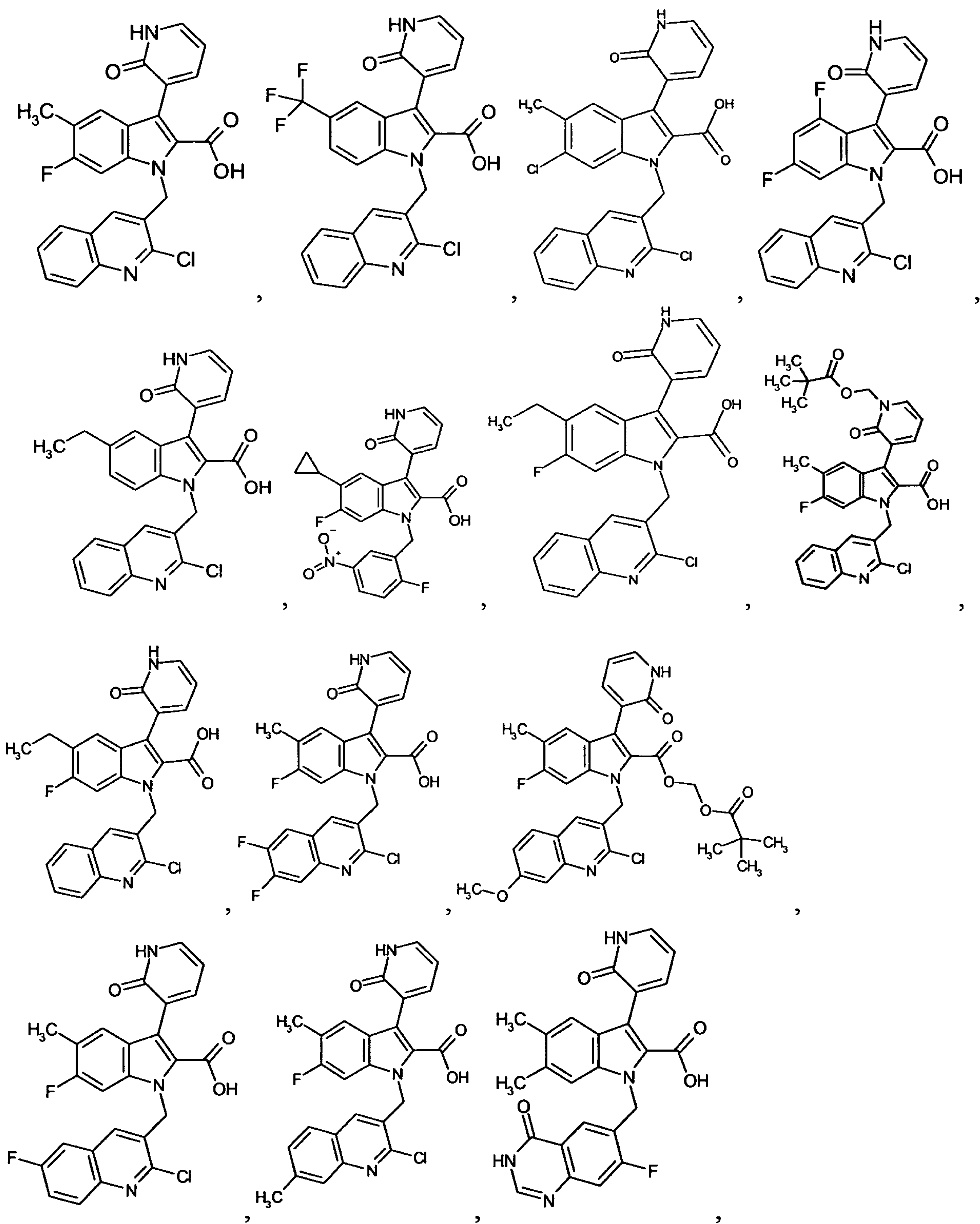
59. A compound having the structure:



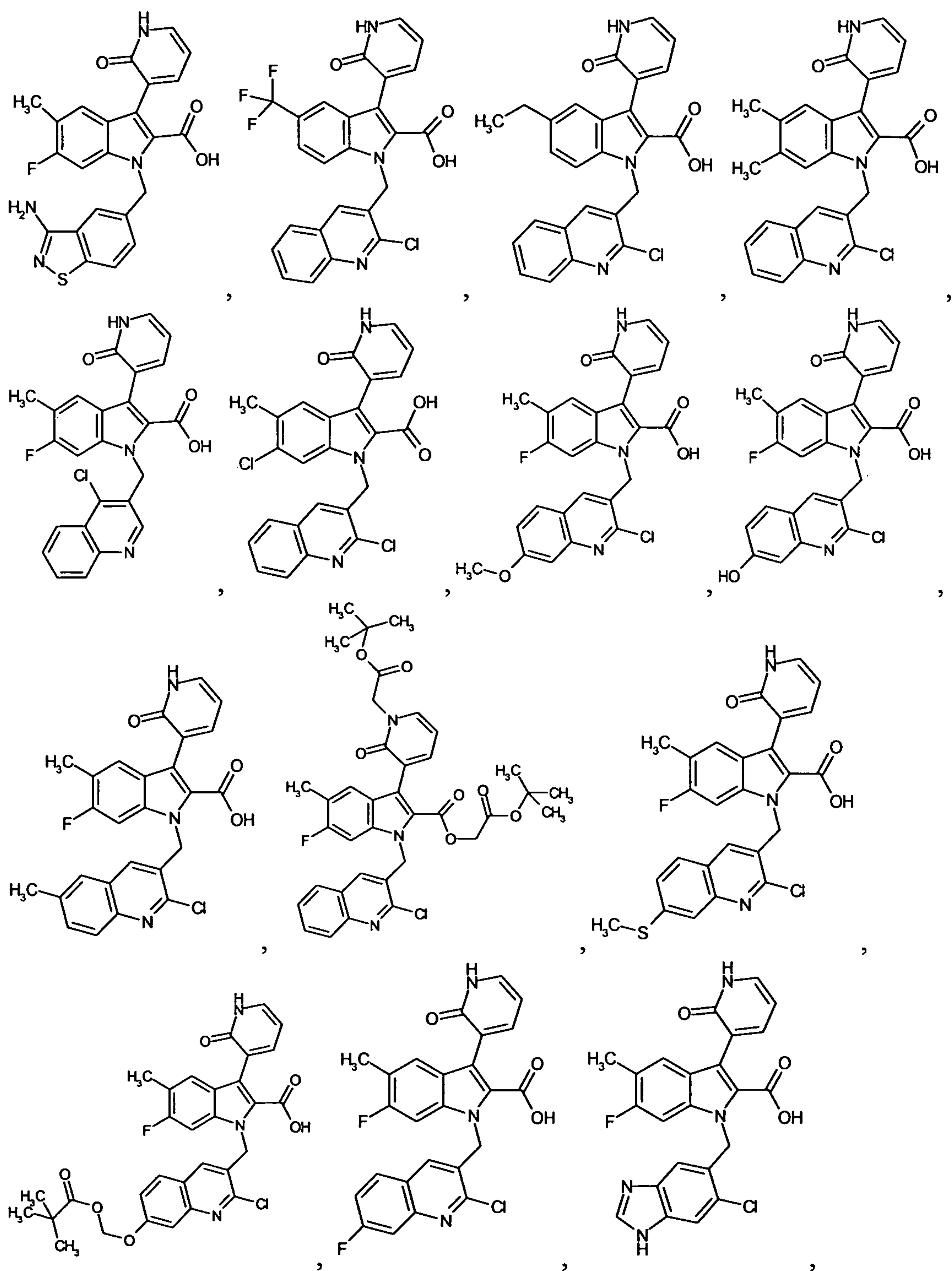
254



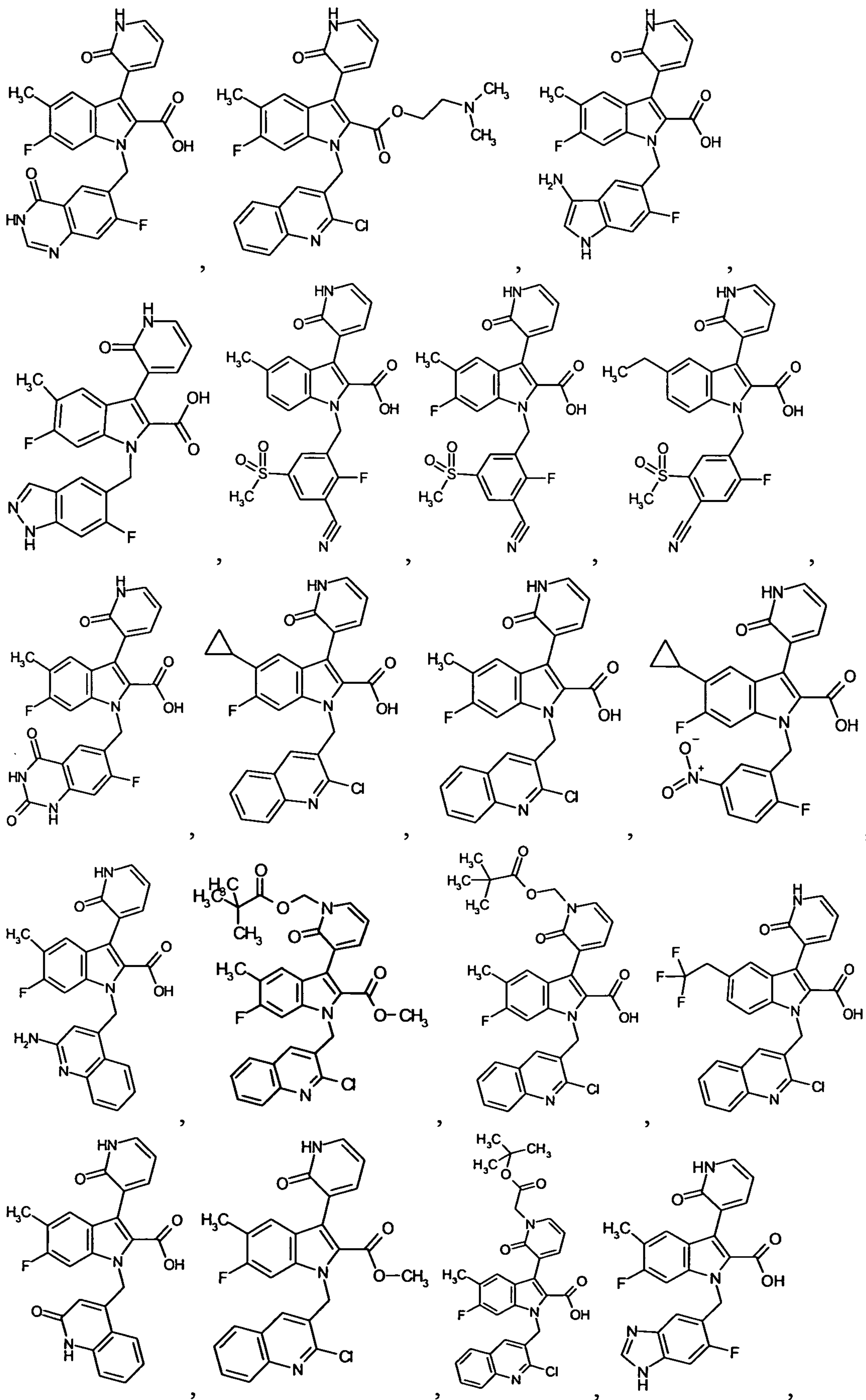
255



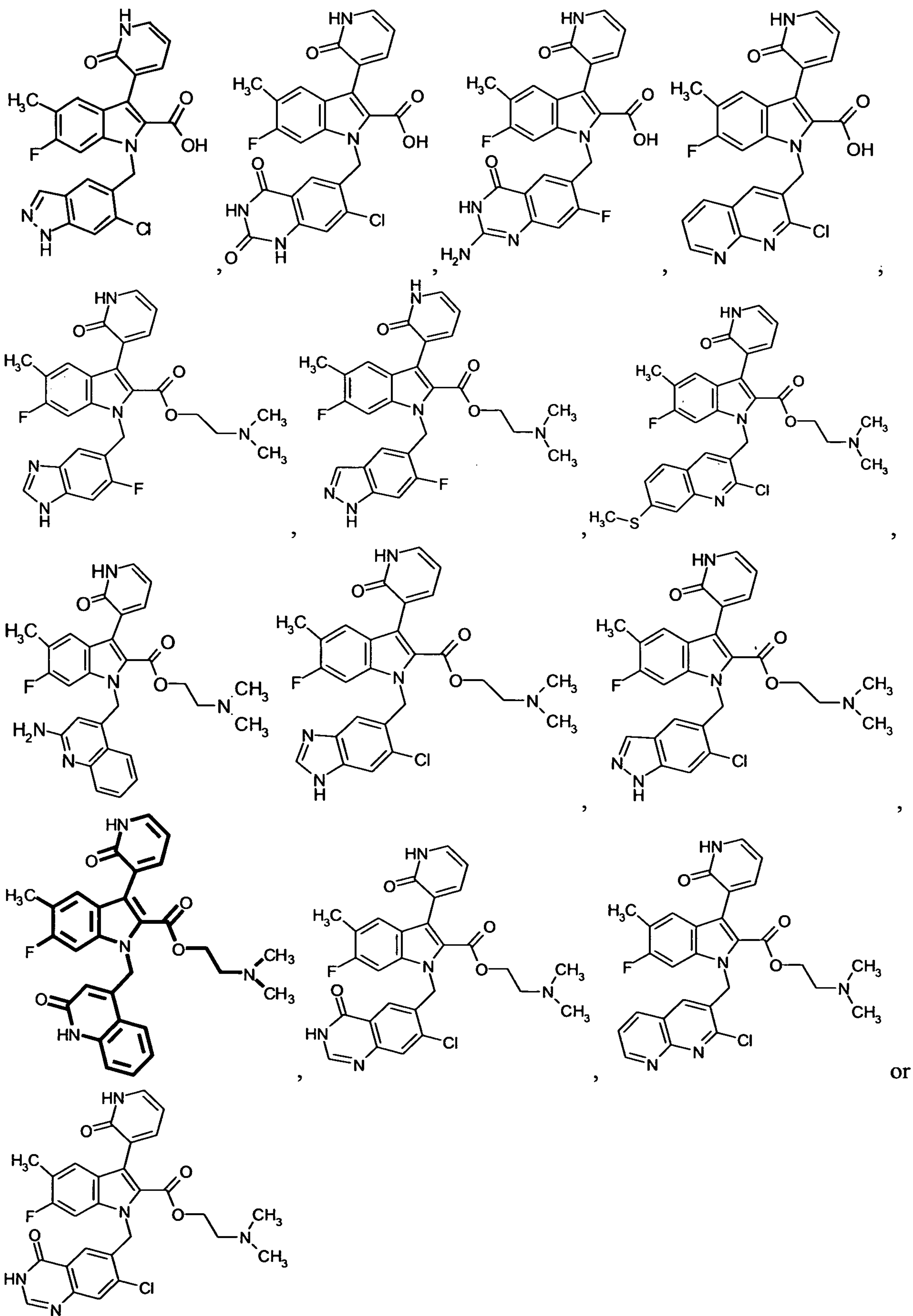
256



257



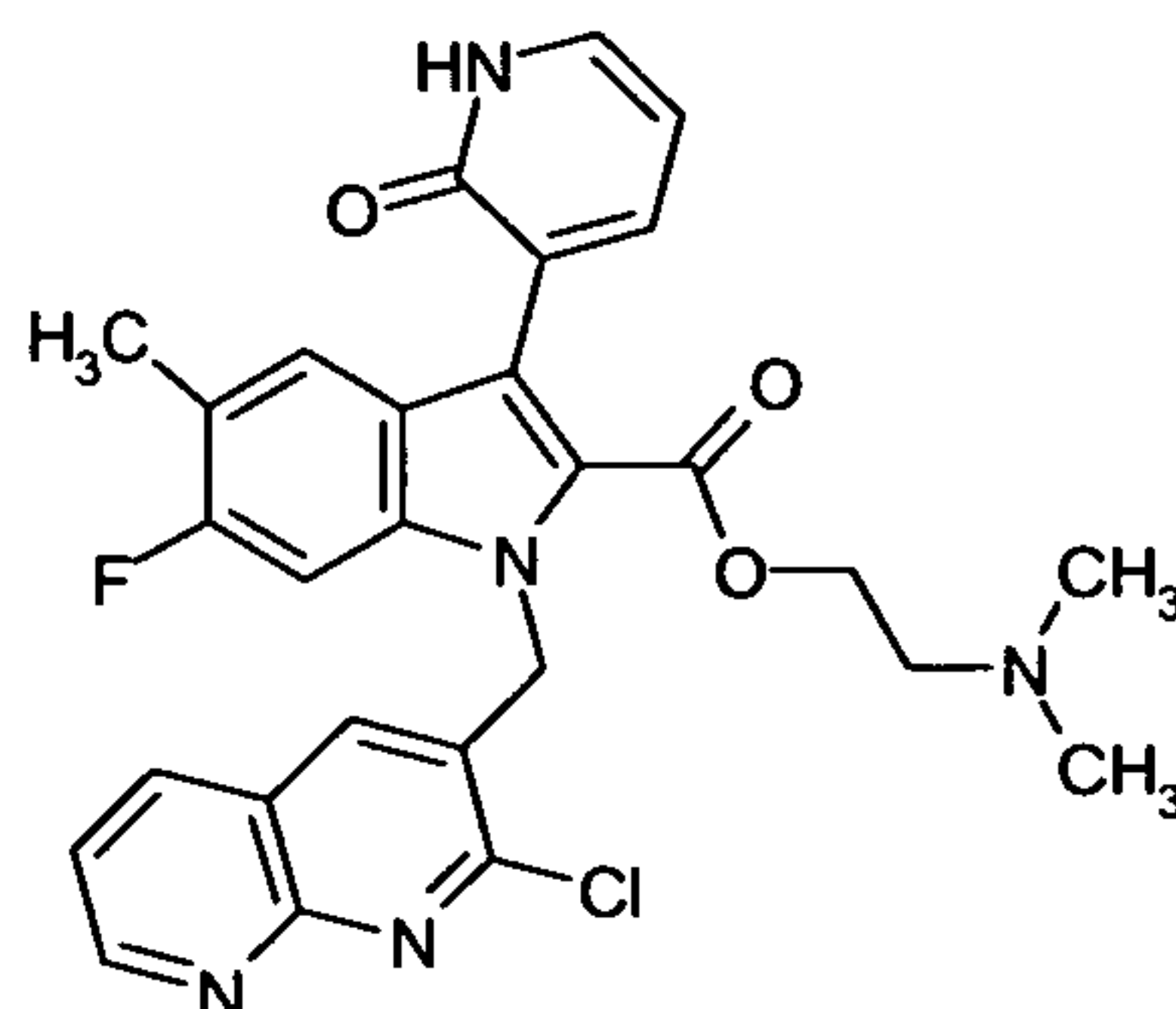
258



259

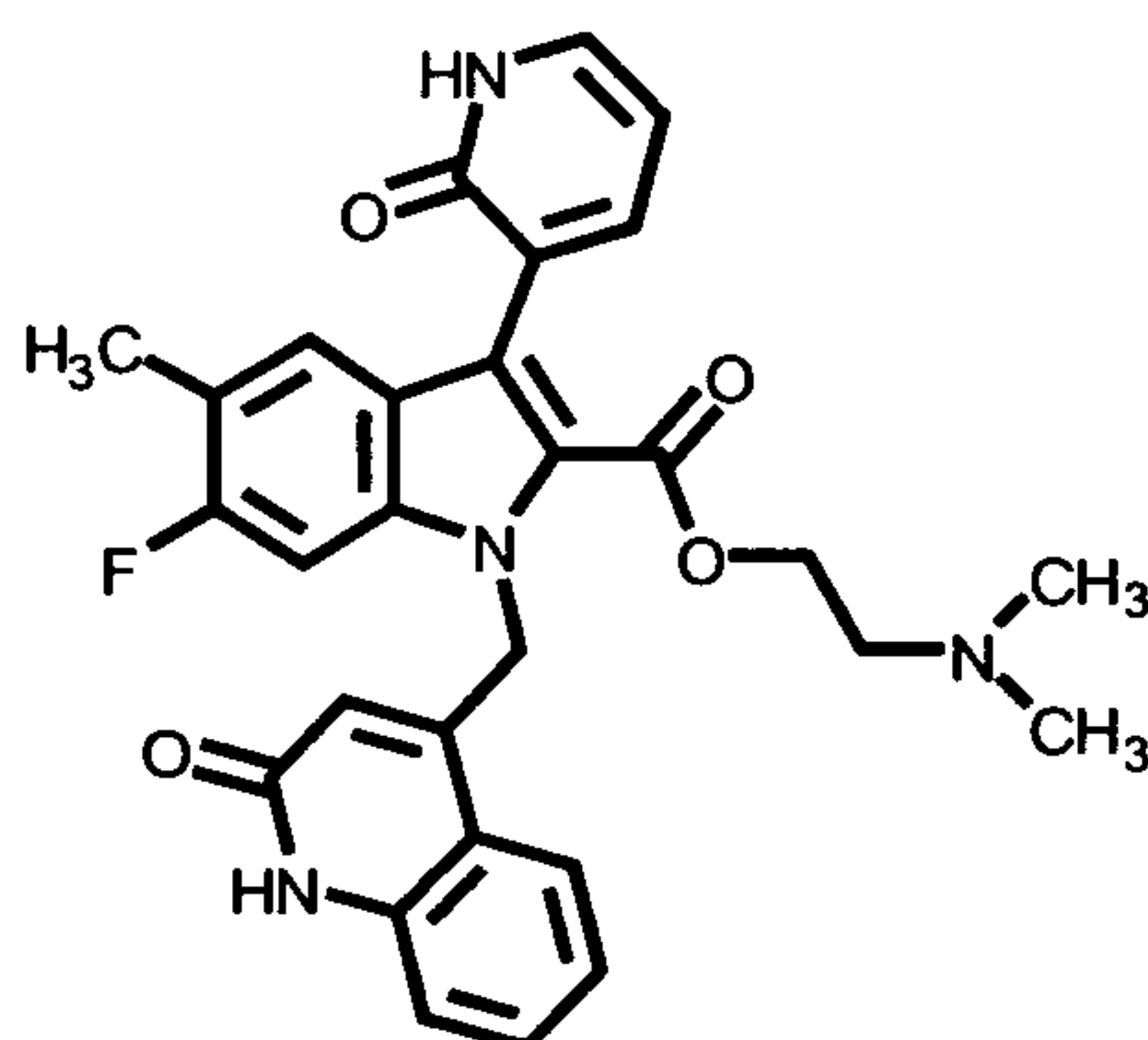
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

- 5 60. A compound having the structure:



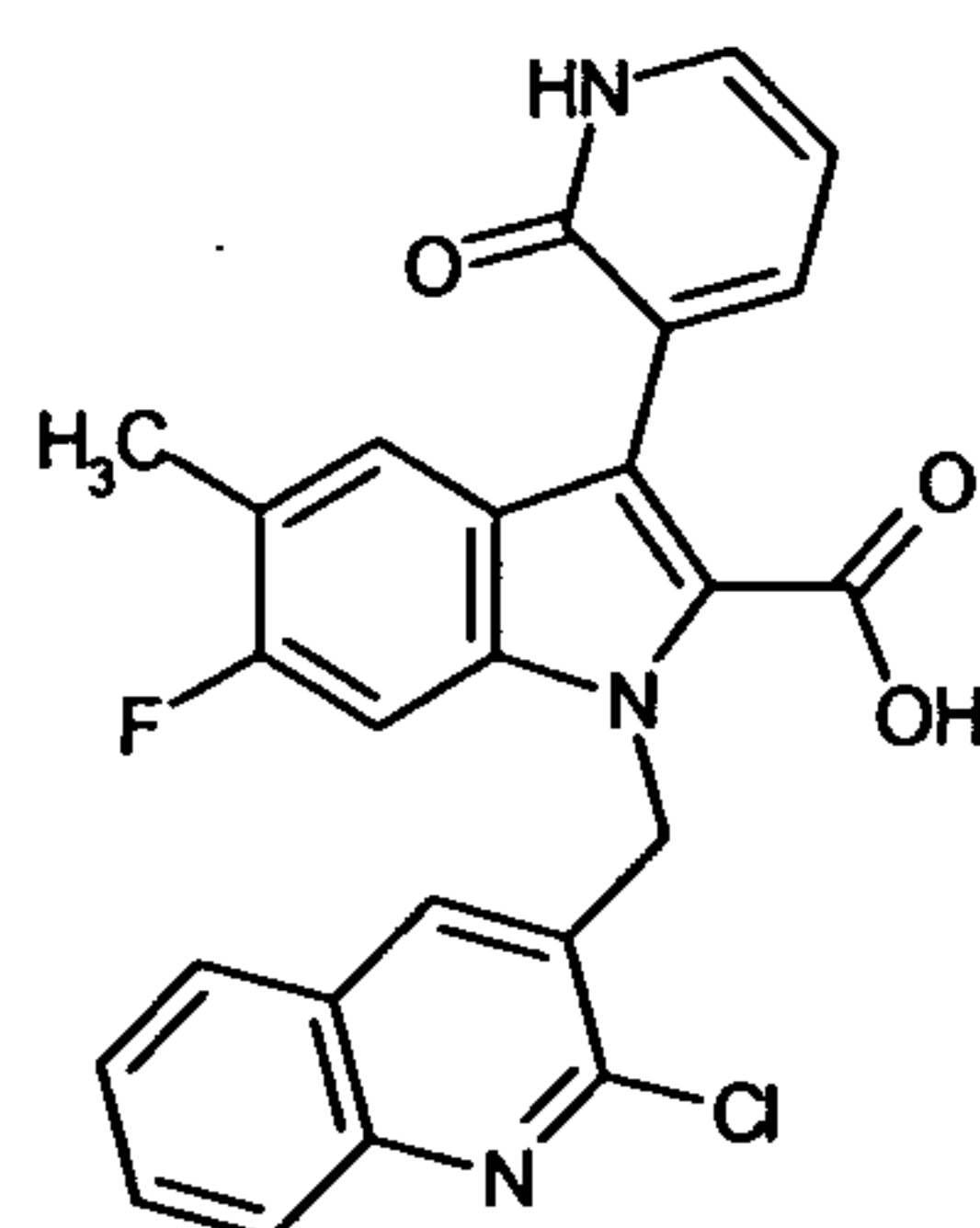
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

- 10 61. A compound having the structure:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

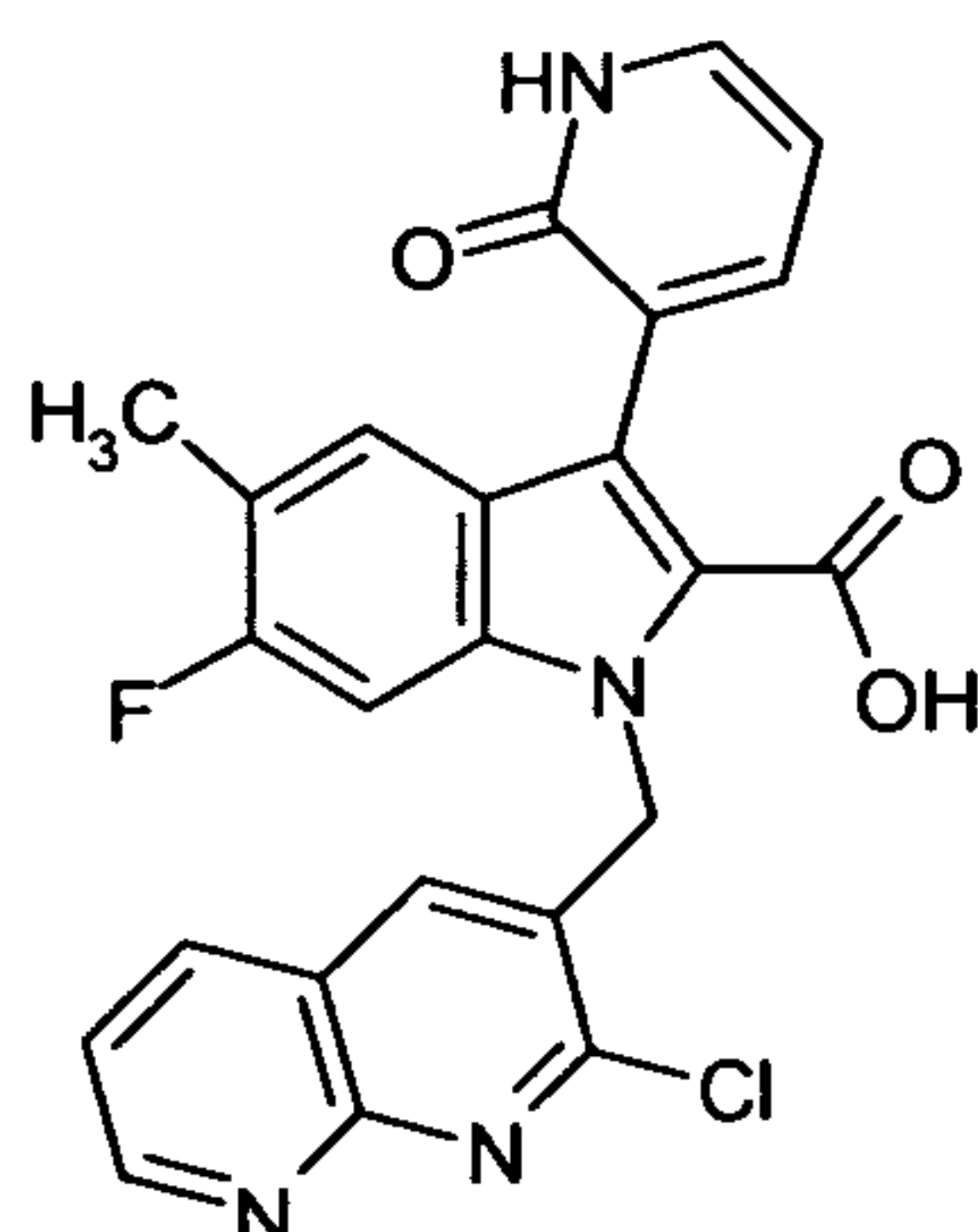
- 15 62. A compound having the structure:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

260

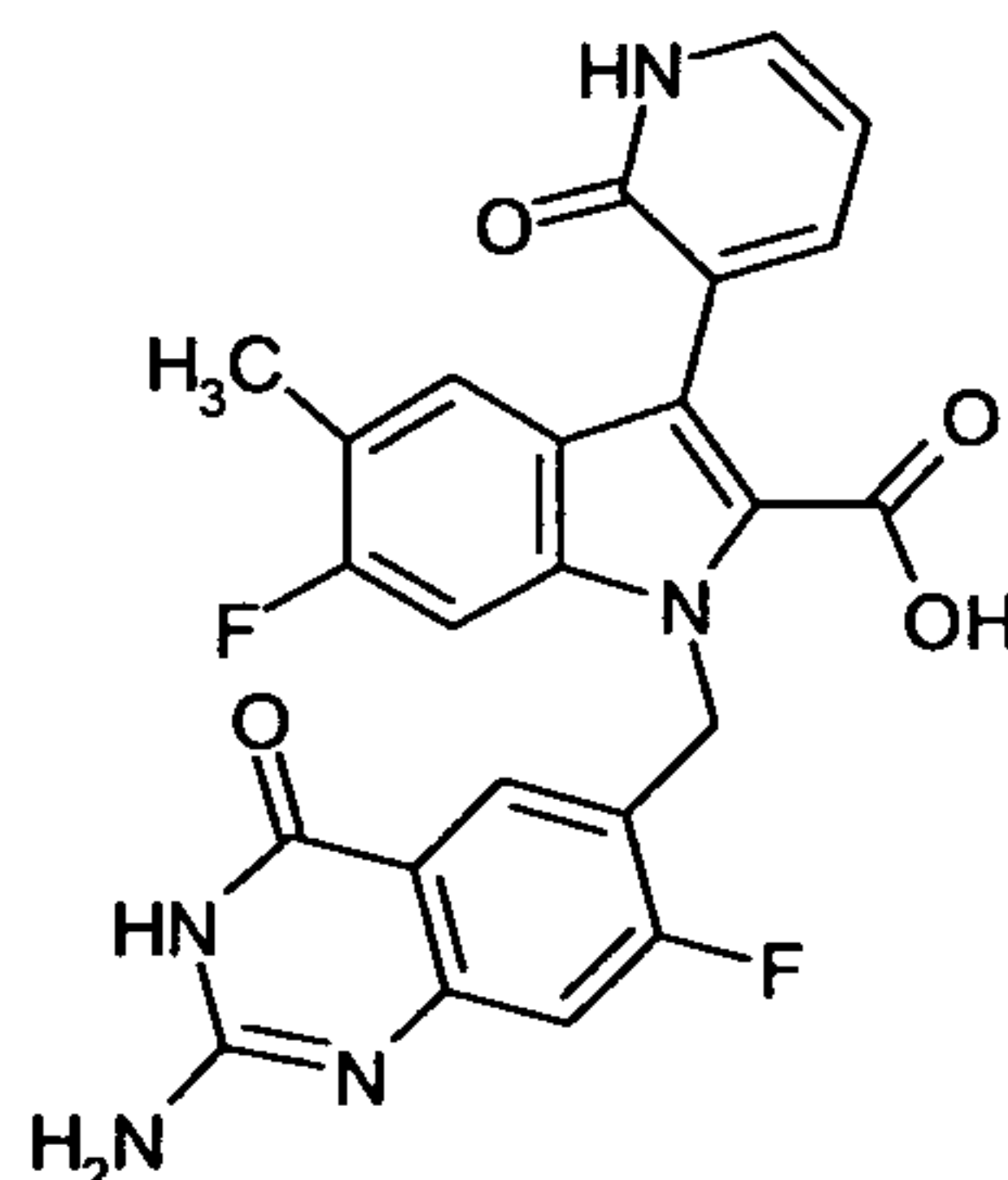
63. A compound having the structure:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

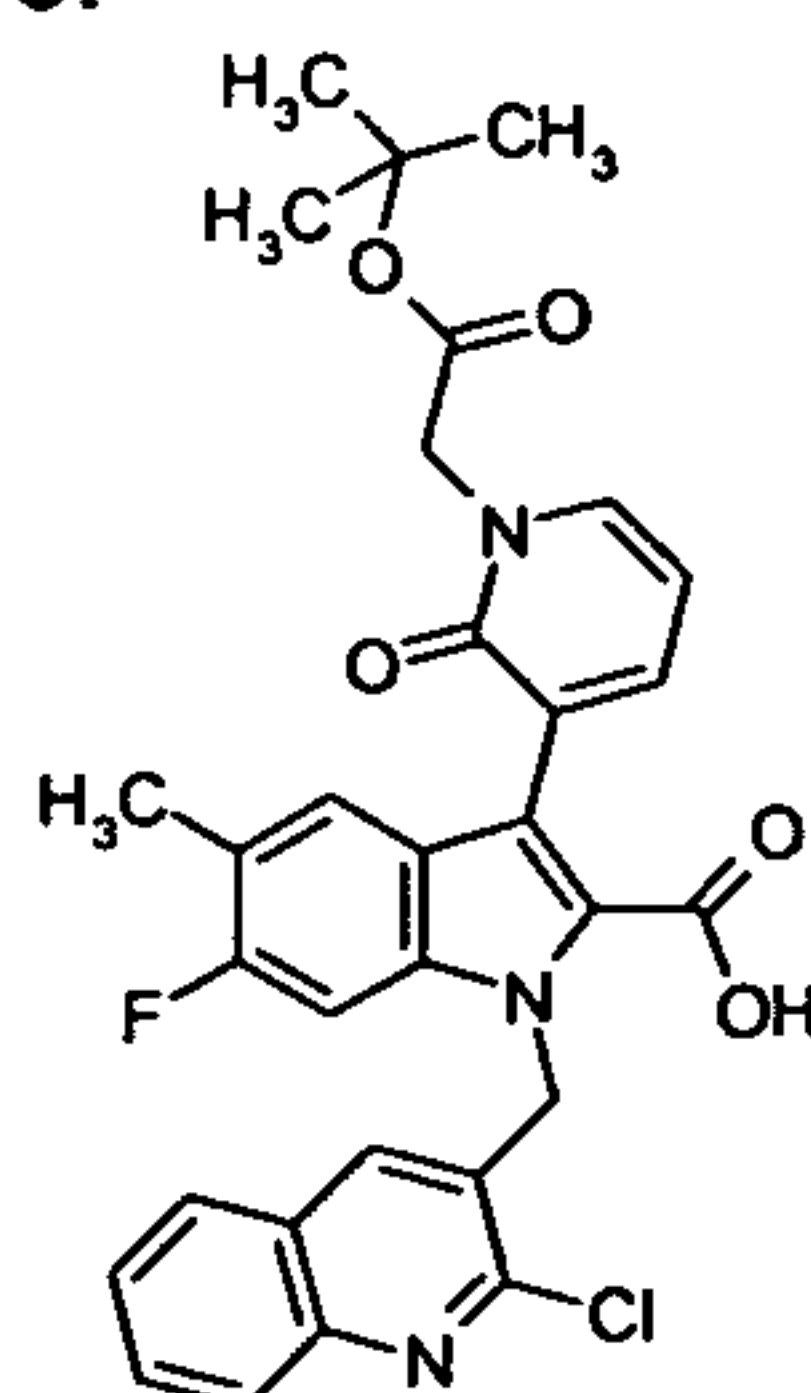
5

64. A compound having the structure:



10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

65. A compound having the structure:



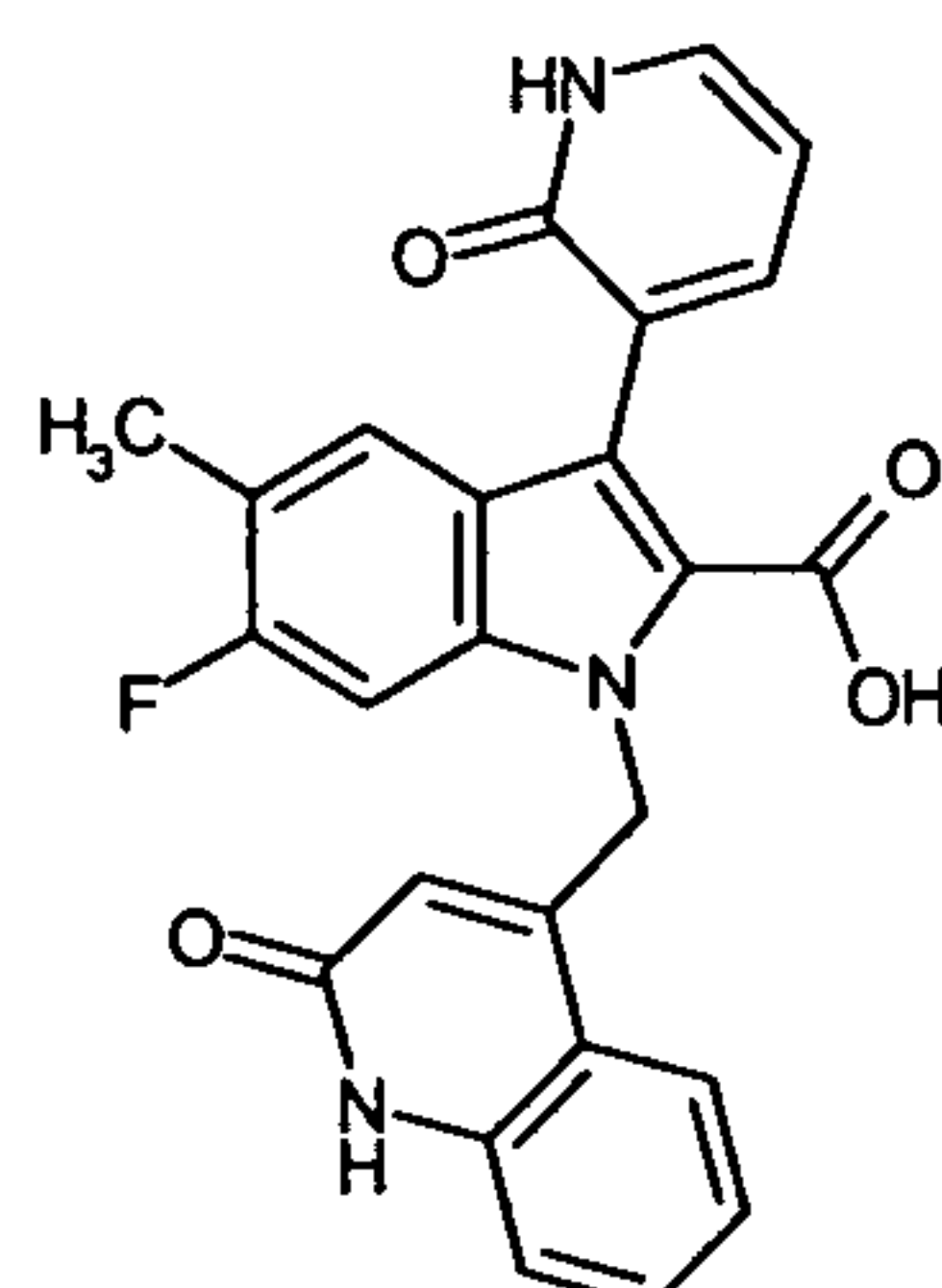
15

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

66. A compound having the structure:

20

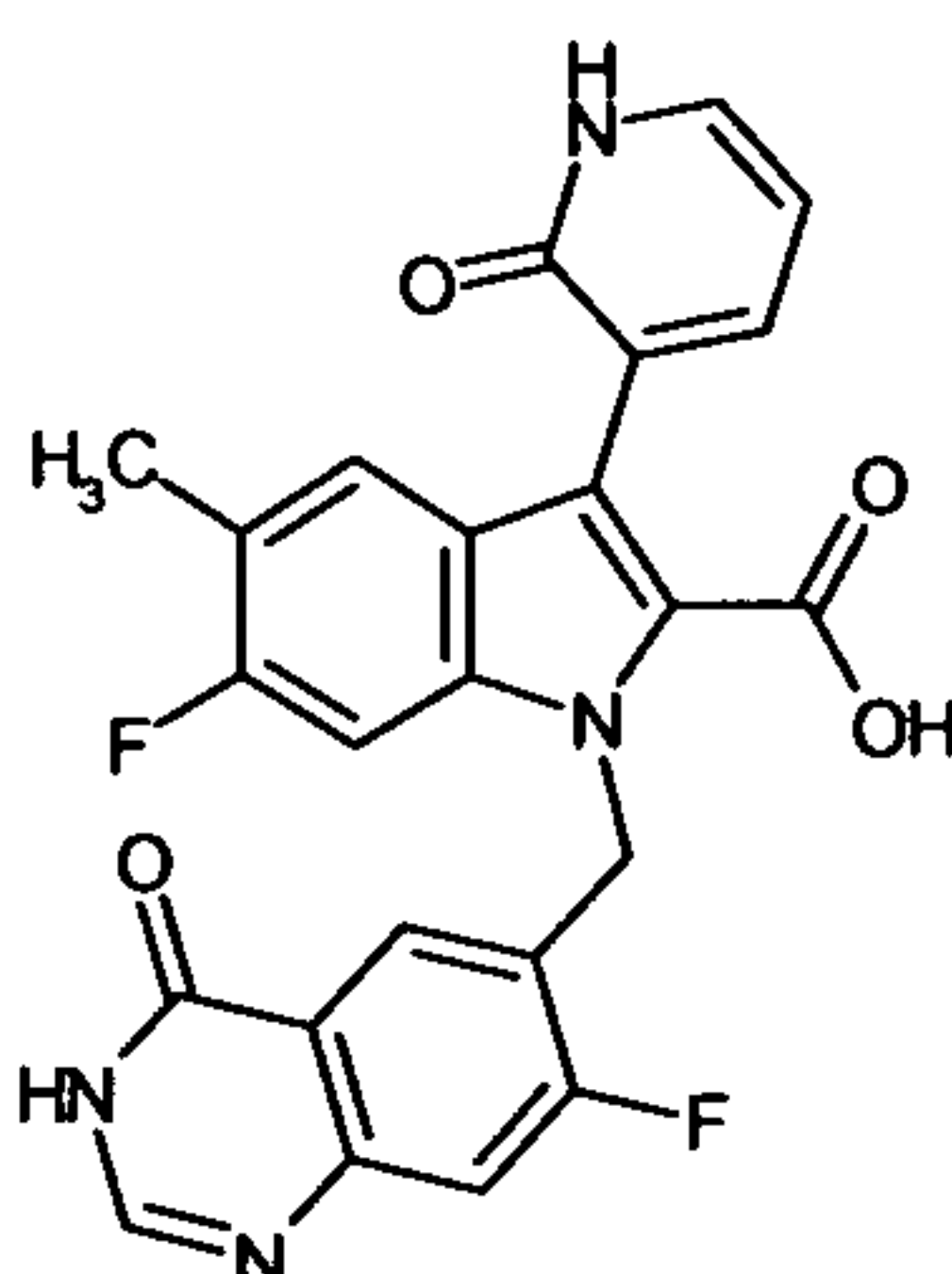
261



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

67. A compound having the structure:

5



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

68. The choline salt of any one of the compounds of claims 60-67.

10

69. A composition comprising at least one compound of claim 1 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15 70. A composition comprising at least one compound of claim 50 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

20 71. A composition comprising at least one compound of claim 59 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

72. A composition comprising at least one compound of any one of claims 60-67 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

5 73. A method for treating a viral infection in a patient, the method comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of at least one compound of claim 1 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

10 74. A method for treating a viral infection in a patient, the method comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of at least one compound of claim 50 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

15 75. A method for treating a viral infection in a patient, the method comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of at least one compound of claim 59 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

20 76. A method for treating a viral infection in a patient, the method comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of at least one compound of any one of claims 60-67 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, ester or prodrug thereof.

25 77. The method of claim 73, further comprising administering to the patient at least one additional antiviral agent, wherein the additional agent is selected from an HCV polymerase inhibitor, an interferon, a nucleoside, a viral replication inhibitor, an antisense agent, a therapeutic vaccine, a viral protease inhibitor, a virion production inhibitor, an antibody therapy (monoclonal or polyclonal), and any agent useful for treating an RNA-dependent polymerase-related disorder.

30 78. The method of claim 74, further comprising administering to the patient at least one additional antiviral agent, wherein the additional agent is selected from an HCV polymerase inhibitor, an interferon, a nucleoside, a viral replication inhibitor, an antisense agent, a therapeutic vaccine, a viral protease inhibitor, a virion production inhibitor, an antibody

263

therapy (monoclonal or polyclonal), and any agent useful for treating an RNA-dependent polymerase-related disorder.

79. The method of claim 75, further comprising administering to the patient at least one additional antiviral agent, wherein the additional agent is selected from an HCV polymerase inhibitor, an interferon, a nucleoside, a viral replication inhibitor, an antisense agent, a therapeutic vaccine, a viral protease inhibitor, a virion production inhibitor, an antibody therapy (monoclonal or polyclonal), and any agent useful for treating an RNA-dependent polymerase-related disorder.

80. The method of claim 76, further comprising administering to the patient at least one additional antiviral agent, wherein the additional agent is selected from an HCV polymerase inhibitor, an interferon, a nucleoside, a viral replication inhibitor, an antisense agent, a therapeutic vaccine, a viral protease inhibitor, a virion production inhibitor, an antibody therapy (monoclonal or polyclonal), and any agent useful for treating an RNA-dependent polymerase-related disorder.

81. The method of claim 77, wherein the additional agent(s) are selected from one or more of an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, a pegylated interferon or a viral replication inhibitor.

82. The method of claim 81, wherein the viral replication inhibitor is ribavirin.

83. The method of claim 78, wherein the additional agent(s) are selected from one or more of an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, a pegylated interferon or a viral replication inhibitor.

84. The method of claim 83, wherein the viral replication inhibitor is ribavirin.

85. The method of claim 79, wherein the additional agent(s) are selected from one or more of an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, a pegylated interferon or a viral replication inhibitor.

86. The method of claim 85, wherein the viral replication inhibitor is ribavirin.

87. The method of claim 80, wherein the additional agent(s) are selected from one or more
5 of an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, a pegylated interferon
or a viral replication inhibitor.

88. The method of claim 87, wherein the viral replication inhibitor is ribavirin.

10 89. The composition of claim 69, further comprising administering to the patient at least
one additional antiviral agent, wherein the additional agent is selected from an HCV
polymerase inhibitor, an interferon, a nucleoside, a viral replication inhibitor, an antisense
agent, a therapeutic vaccine, a viral protease inhibitor, a virion production inhibitor, an
antibody therapy (monoclonal or polyclonal), and any agent useful for treating an RNA-
15 dependent polymerase-related disorder.

90. The composition of claim 70, further comprising administering to the patient at least
one additional antiviral agent, wherein the additional agent is selected from an HCV
polymerase inhibitor, an interferon, a nucleoside, a viral replication inhibitor, an antisense
20 agent, a therapeutic vaccine, a viral protease inhibitor, a virion production inhibitor, an
antibody therapy (monoclonal or polyclonal), and any agent useful for treating an RNA-
dependent polymerase-related disorder.

91. The composition of claim 71, further comprising administering to the patient at least
25 one additional antiviral agent, wherein the additional agent is selected from an HCV
polymerase inhibitor, an interferon, a nucleoside, a viral replication inhibitor, an antisense
agent, a therapeutic vaccine, a viral protease inhibitor, a virion production inhibitor, an
antibody therapy (monoclonal or polyclonal), and any agent useful for treating an RNA-
dependent polymerase-related disorder.

30 92. The composition of claim 72, further comprising administering to the patient at least
one additional antiviral agent, wherein the additional agent is selected from an HCV

265

polymerase inhibitor, an interferon, a nucleoside, a viral replication inhibitor, an antisense agent, a therapeutic vaccine, a viral protease inhibitor, a virion production inhibitor, an antibody therapy (monoclonal or polyclonal), and any agent useful for treating an RNA-dependent polymerase-related disorder.

5

93. The composition of claim 89, wherein the additional agent(s) are selected from one or more of an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, a pegylated interferon or a viral replication inhibitor.

10

94. The composition of claim 93, wherein the viral replication inhibitor is ribavirin.

95. The composition of claim 90, wherein the additional agent(s) are selected from one or more of an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, a pegylated interferon or a viral replication inhibitor.

15

96. The composition of claim 95, wherein the viral replication inhibitor is ribavirin.

97. The composition of claim 91, wherein the additional agent(s) are selected from one or more of an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, a pegylated interferon or a viral replication inhibitor.

20

98. The composition of claim 97, wherein the viral replication inhibitor is ribavirin.

99. The composition of claim 92, wherein the additional agent(s) are selected from one or more of an HCV polymerase inhibitor, a viral protease inhibitor, an interferon, a pegylated interferon or a viral replication inhibitor.

25

100. The composition of claim 99, wherein the viral replication inhibitor is ribavirin

30

101. The method of claim 73, wherein the viral infection is hepatitis C infection.

102. The method of claim 74, wherein the viral infection is hepatitis C infection.

266

103. The method of claim 75, wherein the viral infection is hepatitis C infection.
104. The method of claim 76, wherein the viral infection is hepatitis C infection.